

HC 4YY2 H

BOSTON MEDICAL LIBRARY

PURCHASED FROM THE INCOME OF THE

OLIVER F. WADSWORTH FUND















# APPLIED BIOCHEMISTRY

By



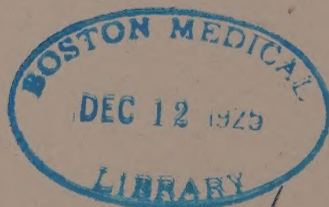
WITHROW MORSE

Professor of Physiological Chemistry and Toxicology,  
Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia

*Dii laboribus omnia vendunt*

PHILADELPHIA AND LONDON

W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY



22326 Rad. 6 30

Copyright, 1925, by W. B. Saunders Company

S.A. 164.

MADE IN U. S. A.

PRESS OF  
W. B. SAUNDERS COMPANY  
PHILADELPHIA



To

I. N. K.

Physicist, Teacher, Friend.





"I know of nothing that is so conducive to cheerful optimism as the pursuit of science. The laboratory is the habitation of buoyancy, enthusiasm, and hope. Its occupant has no moral right to be despondent, and if he is so, there is surely something pathological in the activities of his brain-cells. Actually, however, one rarely meets with a pessimistic man of science."—Lee, Columbia University.

"Science owes a great deal to the reasoning power of the thinker and to the acumen of the guesser, but both alike are futile until facts are actually determined."—Halliburton, Kings College, London.

"The laboratory is the fore-court of the temple of philosophy; and whoso has not offered sacrifices and undergone purification there, has little chance of admission into the sanctuary."—Huxley, English physiologist, 1825–1895.

"The ultimate object of all medical research is practice. In the final analysis the test of the value of any research is to be found in the application of the results."—Patterson, Dean, Jefferson Medical College.

"The hospital represents what we know; the laboratory what we hope to know."—Trudeau, Founder of the Adirondack Sanitarium.



## PREFACE

---

THE following pages have been written with a view to weaving the woof of biochemistry into the warp of medicine. The student of general chemical physiology already has at his command excellent treatises, like that of Mathews, the first modern text-book of biochemistry. There remains the task of providing the medical student with the biochemical facts and principles which bear more or less directly upon his science and art. Each of the sciences contributory to medicine tends to grow until, like the fabled camel, it nearly fills the curricular tent. It is essential, therefore, if the curriculum is to remain well-balanced, that each department present only such material as is definitely related to medicine as a whole. This book aims so to present biochemistry.

Theory and practice are intermingled in all science. Facts are the bricks and theory is the mortar with which the edifice of biochemistry has been erected.

No apology is offered for the somewhat detailed and exhaustive treatment of many subjects. Even the casual student becomes restless with mere mathematical factors and incomplete explanations. The theory of Benedict's method for the detection of sugar may not be essential to diagnosis, but it leads to a clearer understanding and satisfies the inquiring mind.

"The gods sell everything for labor."<sup>1</sup> Unless the present generation becomes parasitic upon the past, it must contribute to the development of science. To that end the student of biochemistry, whether he intends to be a theoretical or a practical worker, must, like Ulysses,

"Follow knowledge like a sinking star  
Beyond the outmost bound of human thought."

That is all there is to the problem of research. It must ever be a by-product in the work-a-day world of the physician, but, like the tar

<sup>1</sup> This inscription stands over the portal of Jefferson Medical College; see title page.



of the coal, the wastings may become the most valuable part of the yield.

Science is a mosaic, the parts of which have been made by the labors of thousands of workers. Text-books are largely compilations and it is impossible to assign credit where credit is due. Nevertheless the author is unwilling to close the book without expressing his gratitude to colleagues and friends:

To Professor Albert P. Brubaker he is indebted for many exceptional courtesies, not the least of which is the privilege of using the magnificent library of the College of Physicians as well as Dr. Brubaker's private books and separata.

The officers of the American Society of Biological Chemists Inc. have permitted the publication of their portraits. This favor will enable the student to visualize the men who are contributing to the advance of biochemistry. While science knows no international boundaries, American workers are naturally of signal interest to the American student.<sup>1</sup>

The Arthur H. Thomas Company has been of great assistance in many ways. The reproductions of standard biochemical apparatus published herewith are largely those provided for the purpose by this house.

Finally, the author expresses his appreciation of the patient consideration given him by the W. B. Saunders Company.

The manuscript was read by Mr. J. S. De Frates<sup>2</sup> of the Department of Physiological Chemistry, Jefferson Medical College, and edited by Miss Esther G. Price of New York City. For these painstaking labors the author is most grateful.

THE AUTHOR.

LANSDOWNE, PENNA., *October, 1925.*

<sup>1</sup> The photograph of Carl Voit, Fig. 170, page 583 was loaned by Professor Brubaker.

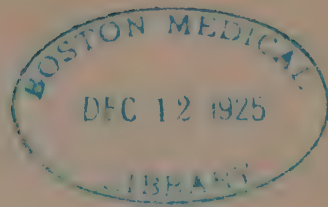
<sup>2</sup> Harvard University, Fellow in Biochemistry, 1925-1926.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.....	17
CHAPTER I	
MAN AND HIS ENVIRONMENT.....	27
CHAPTER II	
THE PROMOTERS OF CHEMICAL ACTION: THE ENZYMES.....	93
CHAPTER III	
THE BODY AND ITS MAINTENANCE.....	125
CHAPTER IV	
ENERGY PRODUCERS: THE GLUCIDS.....	139
CHAPTER V	
ENERGY PRODUCERS: THE LIPIDS.....	192
CHAPTER VI	
STRUCTURE-PRODUCING SUBSTANCES: THE PROTIDS.....	215
CHAPTER VII	
THE SPECIAL CHEMISTRY OF THE TISSUES.....	342
CHAPTER VIII	
THE CHEMISTRY OF COMMON FOODS.....	404
CHAPTER IX	
THE DIGESTION OF FOODS.....	421
CHAPTER X	
THE ABSORPTION OF FOODS.....	481
CHAPTER XI	
THE FATE OF THE ABSORBED MATERIALS: INTERMEDIATE METABOLISM.....	494
CHAPTER XII	
NUTRITION FROM THE CHEMICAL STANDPOINT.....	536

CHAPTER XIII	PAGE
THE ENERGETICS OF NUTRITION.....	582
CHAPTER XIV	
METABOLIC ADJUVANTS.....	623
CHAPTER XV	
THE EXCRETIONS OF THE BODY.....	665
CHAPTER XVI	
METHODS FOR THE DETERMINATION OF BLOOD CONSTITUENTS.....	790
CHAPTER XVII	
METABOLIC STUDIES ON BLOOD AND URINE.....	842
APPENDIX: REAGENTS, ETC.....	863
INDEX.....	921
NORMALS.....	<i>Inside Back Cover</i>





# APPLIED BIOCHEMISTRY

## INTRODUCTORY

BIOCHEMISTRY is a science.<sup>1</sup> Huxley defined science as "Knowledge set in order." It is not merely facts. We know that a sulphurous odor arises when hair is burned; that hair grows from the body, and that the body receives all its substance from food. If we organize this knowledge, we may assume that sulphur occurs in our food. This is, however, merely an hypothesis and must be verified by chemical analysis before it becomes a part of science. The more perfect science becomes, the greater the surety that our predictions (hypotheses) are correct.

**Acquiring Knowledge.**—The human body may be compared to a ship upon the sea. Both the body and the ship have mechanisms for receiving impressions from the external world. Man has his photo-receptors (eyes), phono-receptors (ears), and other specialized organs. The ship carries binoculars, fog-horn and submarine bell receptors, aërials for wireless messages, and sextants for determining location. Impressions are gained by these instruments. On the ship they are entered into the log and are interpreted by the commanding officer. In the body they are transmitted to the brain and interpreted by it; the brain is the commanding officer. Until facts are interpreted, that is, correlated with other facts, they do not form a part of science.

**Different Kinds of Knowledge.**—When we organize facts we find that there are different classes of knowledge. One kind concerns living things, while another deals with lifeless objects and processes. Knowledge of living things forms the science of biology,<sup>2</sup> of their form, morphology,<sup>3</sup> and of their actions, physiology.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Latin *scio*, I know.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *bios*, life, and *logos*, a discourse.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *morphe*, form.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *physis*, nature or character.

**Physical and Chemical Physiology.**—The science dealing with the activities of living things may be considered from the standpoint of the mechanics of movements, of the flow of body fluids, and of the passage of impulses through the nerves. Such considerations demand a knowledge of physics and may be designated as “physical physiology” or “bio-physics.” On the other hand, we may be interested in the substances of which the body is composed and the manner in which these substances undergo transformation in the organism. This brings us into the field of chemistry and we term such studies “chemical physiology.”

In chemical physiology, or, as it is usually termed, “physiological chemistry,” we have a blending of biology and chemistry and for this reason the science is frequently designated “biochemistry.” The terms “chemical physiology,” “physiological chemistry,” “biological chemistry,” or “biochemistry” are all synonymous.

**Biochemistry and Chemistry.**—For the medical student who aims to utilize chemistry in his studies of the human being in health and in disease, chemistry is a means to an end and not an end in itself. Chemistry must be the tool for the study of the structure and functions of the body as physics is the instrument whereby the physiologist determines the flow of the blood and the movements of muscles and bones. Thus, biochemistry will advance as new facts and principles are developed in pure chemistry.

**Medicine and Biochemistry.**—Medicine aims to prevent or cure faulty action of the body and biochemistry is concerned with those actions which are interpretable in chemical terms. It is evident, then, that the two sciences are closely interrelated. The physician must understand the chemical processes of digestion; thereby he may learn the normal way in which foods are prepared for use in the body. He must know the chemical composition of body fluids; it is through them that foods are distributed and the waste is gathered from the organs. He must know the chemical composition of the urine; in this fluid the excretions of the body are largely disposed. By learning the normal processes of the body one is enabled to deal with the abnormal or pathological conditions. While practically all sciences have contributed to the great advances of medicine, chemistry holds an important place. Urinalysis is necessary in clinical medicine. Serious diseases, like diabetes mellitus, nephritis, and goiter, are influenced and sometimes controlled by chemical means. Surgery is

dependent upon chemistry for aid in diagnosis and treatment. Everywhere the physician and the surgeon appeal to the chemist for assistance.

**The Instruments of Biochemistry.**—Science is divided into branches principally because special means must be employed for study in certain fields. For example, astronomy deals with large but remote objects, whereas chemistry is concerned with minute but tangible substances. Hence the study of one requires the telescope, and of the other, the instruments of the chemical laboratory. Likewise, biochemistry and physiology each require special types of instruments. The physiologist utilizes apparatus to record elapsed time for the study of muscle contraction and for timing the passage of a nerve impulse. The biochemist uses the balance, the spectroscope, and other instruments. The peculiar nature of living substance requires procedures and apparatus which differ from those used by the general chemist.

Biochemistry in America is especially characterized by the invention of methods. Folin,<sup>1</sup> Benedict,<sup>2</sup> Van Slyke,<sup>3</sup> Myers,<sup>4</sup> and others have devised methods which greatly shorten the period necessary for making determinations and which also require small amounts of material. It is a routine procedure for the clinical chemist to report within two hours after the



Fig. 1.—Stanley R. Benedict, Professor of Biochemistry, Cornell University Medical College, New York, N. Y. Critical student and inventor of biochemical methods, contributor to the biochemistry of glucose, uric acid, creatinin, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Otto Folin, Professor of Biochemistry, Harvard Medical School, Boston, Massachusetts.

<sup>2</sup> S. R. Benedict, Professor of Biochemistry, Cornell University Medical College, New York (Fig. 1).

<sup>3</sup> D. D. Van Slyke, Member of Rockefeller Institute, New York (Fig. 33).

<sup>4</sup> V. C. Myers, Professor of Biochemistry, University of Iowa, Iowa City, Ia. (Fig. 222).



blood is drawn from the patient the following quantitative determinations made upon 10 mls. of blood:

	Mgs. per 100 mls. blood.
Non-protid nitrogen, normal amount.....	25
Urea nitrogen.....	12
Uric acid.....	3
Creatinin.....	1.5
Chlorides as NaCl.....	500
Sugar.....	100

The degree of accuracy varies with the chemist, but the error may be under 0.01 mg. per 100 mls. blood.

**The Aim of Biochemistry.**—This may be stated in the words of an eminent British chemist: "In the not far distant future the whole subject of biochemistry, which is the chemistry of life, will form but a part of organic chemistry, and we shall be able to apply to it the means and methods which have been attended with such astounding success during the past sixty years in the treatment of the parent science. When this is the case, the causes of our bodily ills will be as clear as the structure of indigo; and their removal as easy as a test-tube reaction. The treatment of disease will be as sure and as certain as the neutralization of ammonia by sulphuric acid."<sup>1</sup> If this statement seems extravagant, let it be recalled how considerably the length of life in diabetes mellitus has been prolonged since the introduction of insulin after its discovery by the Toronto group,<sup>2</sup> and that this decrease in mortality has occurred in spite of a material increase in the incidence of the disease. Again, owing to the discovery of various chemical substances, such as the arsenical compounds (salvarsan, etc.), the dread disease syphilis, responsible for the terrible conditions during the whole of human history, and more particularly since the discovery of America by Columbus, has been brought under control by medical treatment.<sup>3</sup> Lastly, we should remember how much we owe the

<sup>1</sup> J. S. Thorpe, Imperial College, London. See Armstrong in Suggested Readings, page (21).

<sup>2</sup> Banting, the discoverer of the means by which the pancreatic extract can be obtained without destruction; Best, his collaborator; Collip, who devised the method for quantity production, and Professor J. J. R. MacLeod, the head of the department in which the work was done. See Joslin's treatise on Diabetes for statistics concerning the use of insulin.

<sup>3</sup> Read Huxley's contrast of his time and that of the founders of the Royal Society of London in "Methods and Results," article Progress of Science.

completion of the Panama Canal to the chemical means of sanitation and the quinin treatment of malaria.<sup>1</sup>

### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Armstrong, E. F. (editor). *Chemistry in the Twentieth Century*, New York, The Macmillan Company, 1924.
- Bayliss, W. M. *The Principles of General Physiology*, 4th ed., New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1923.
- Gregory, R. A. *Discovery and the Spirit of Science*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1916.
- Huxley, T. H. *Collected Essays*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1921.
- Joslin, E. P. *The Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus*, 3d ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1923.
- Mellor, J. W. *A Comprehensive Treatise on Inorganic and Theoretical Chemistry*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., vol. i, 1922; other volumes following.
- Poincaré, H. *Science and Hypothesis*, New York, The Science Press, 1912.
- Slosson, E. E. *Creative Chemistry*, New York, The Century Co., 1921.

### THE ORIGIN OF AMERICAN BIOCHEMISTRY

**Biochemistry a Young Science.**—Biochemistry is a youth among the sciences. Its beginnings lie far in the past, if we ascribe to the making of wine from grapes,<sup>2</sup> the making of vinegar,<sup>3</sup> and similar phenomena of enzyme nature evidence of the dawn of biochemical knowledge. To the French, however, we must turn for the foundations of biochemistry as a science proper; for the closing years of the 18th Century witnessed alike the epoch-making generalizations of Lavoisier<sup>4</sup> and his untimely death in the Reign of Terror. Associated with Lavoisier was Pierre Simon Laplace, who carried the investigations into the Nineteenth Century. Together they founded the essentials of the energetics of the body<sup>5</sup> and laid the foundations for the modern principles of nutrition and the methods of diagnosis of certain diseases.

<sup>1</sup> The impotence of science, after discovering the means of relieving human ills in the face of political events, is well illustrated by the plague of malaria devastating eastern countries, while at the same time a great state producing quinin is advertising elaborately for markets for her product.

<sup>2</sup> Genesis, Chapter 9, verse 21.

<sup>3</sup> Numbers, Chapter 6, verse 3.

<sup>4</sup> Antoine Laurent Lavoisier. For picture see Bayliss's *General Physiology*.

<sup>5</sup> For a discussion of these principles see Chapter XIII, page 583.

**The Foundations of Biochemistry.**—It is easy to remember the date of the birth of biochemistry as a science, for it falls at the beginning of the Nineteenth Century. The mantle of these French savants fell somewhat later upon Justus von Liebig, from whom American biochemistry may be assumed to have been derived; for from the first chemical laboratory<sup>1</sup> ever founded, that at Giessen, in Germany, by Liebig after his student days in Paris under disciples of Lavoisier, and later from Liebig's Munich workshop have descended several students of biochemistry who laid the foundations of that science in America. Among these may be mentioned Chittenden,<sup>2</sup> who indirectly

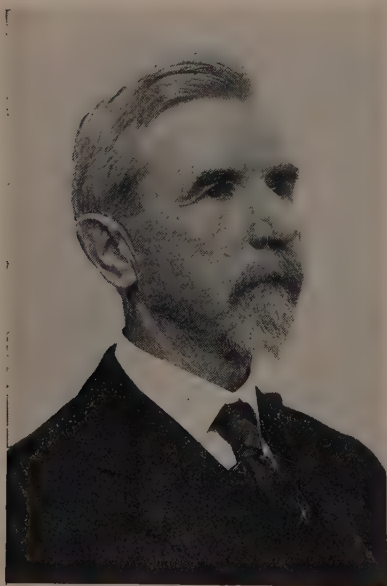


Fig. 2.—Russell H. Chittenden, Professor Emeritus, of Physiological Chemistry, Yale University. Researches bearing upon nutrition. Responsible for the training of many American biochemists.

received the influence of the Munich school and who founded the Yale school of biochemists. Many of the important posts in various institutions of this country are held by students of Chittenden or his followers. A quarter century ago William J. Gies and colleagues opened the first teaching department of biochemistry in America at the College of Physicians and Surgeons, now a part of Columbia University, New York. It would be impossible to follow the development of the various groups of biochemists in this chapter, and recourse is made to a chart<sup>3</sup> to illustrate some of the lines in the history of American biochemistry. In addition to the Yale group we have the students of Otto Folin and of Mandel of

New York University. A somewhat different line is that derived

<sup>1</sup> A laboratory was founded in Leningrad by Lomonossov before Liebig opened the Giessen laboratory, but the result was far less influential on chemistry than the German plant.

<sup>2</sup> Russell H. Chittenden, Emeritus Professor of Physiological Chemistry, Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut (Fig. 2).

<sup>3</sup> Page 24.



from the Munich School of Nutrition under Carl Voit,<sup>1</sup> which is represented in this country by the late W. O. Atwater<sup>2</sup> and Graham Lusk.<sup>3</sup>

**The Development of Practical Biochemistry.**—Throughout the world biochemistry has become an integral part of every hospital of importance. Sanatoriums, like that at Clifton Springs, New York<sup>4</sup>; special research foundations, like Rockefeller Institute<sup>5</sup> and Hospital,<sup>6</sup> and the Mayo Foundation of the University of Minnesota<sup>7</sup>; and the great metropolitan hospitals, like Roosevelt in New York,<sup>8</sup> the Presbyterian in Philadelphia<sup>9</sup> and others are centers of biochemical work. The importance of the subject in purely commercial institutions is made evident by the development of laboratories for routine and for research in such institutions as the pharmaceutical firm of Eli Lilly<sup>10</sup> and the life insurance company, the Metropolitan<sup>11</sup> of New York.

**Periodicals on Biochemistry.**—*Journal of Biological Chemistry*, published by the American Society of Biological Chemists, Inc. Address, Rockefeller Institute, New York. This is the important medium for the dissemination of biochemical information in the United States (\$5.00 per volume, about \$15.00 a year).

*Journal of the American Medical Association.* Address Chicago, Illinois. Important editorials and abstracts covering especially applied

<sup>1</sup> Figure 170.

<sup>2</sup> W. O. Atwater, onetime Professor of Chemistry at Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. Later Atwater was associated with the Department of Agriculture at Washington. The first laboratory for the study of nutrition was built at Middletown. This was later moved to Washington, D. C., and its continuation is the Nutrition Laboratory of the Carnegie Institution of Washington; the laboratory is near the Harvard Medical Buildings, Boston, and its director is F. G. Benedict, a former associate of Atwater.

<sup>3</sup> Graham Lusk, Professor of Physiology, Cornell University Medical College, New York. Dr. Lusk is scientific director of the Russell Sage Institute of Pathology, New York, in which important studies in human nutrition have been conducted. The medical director is E. F. DuBois. See Chapter XIII.

<sup>4</sup> R. S. Hubbard, of the Folin Laboratory, biochemist.

<sup>5</sup> P. A. Levene is the Member in charge of chemistry (Fig. 91).

<sup>6</sup> D. D. Van Slyke is biochemist (Fig. 33).

<sup>7</sup> E. C. Kendall (Fig. 193), the discoverer of thyroxin (page 136), is chemist. The professor of biochemistry at Minneapolis is J. F. McClendon.

<sup>8</sup> A special department, the Harriman Research Laboratory, has as chemist K. G. Falk, and as biochemist, I. Greenwald.

<sup>9</sup> F. A. Cajori is a biochemist.

<sup>10</sup> Eli Lilly & Co., Indianapolis, Indiana. The biochemist is G. H. A. Clowes.

<sup>11</sup> F. B. Kingsbury is biochemist.

## ORIGINS OF AMERICAN BIOCHEMISTRY AND SOME OF THE LINES OF ITS DEVELOPMENT

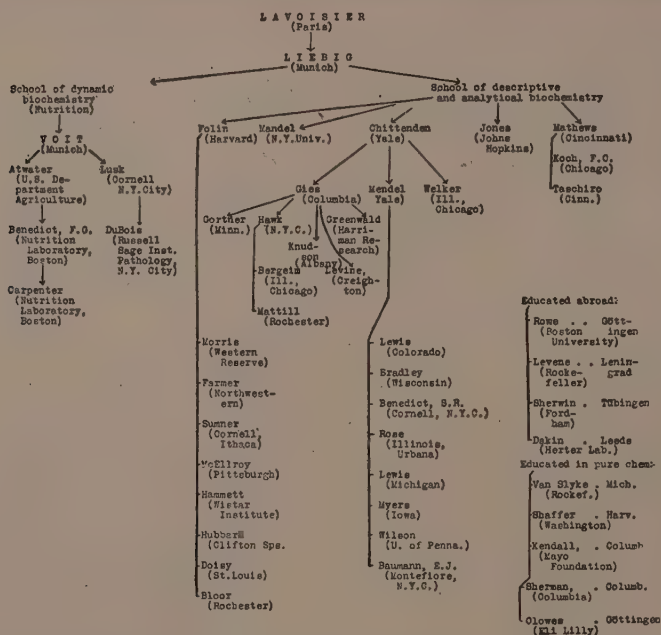
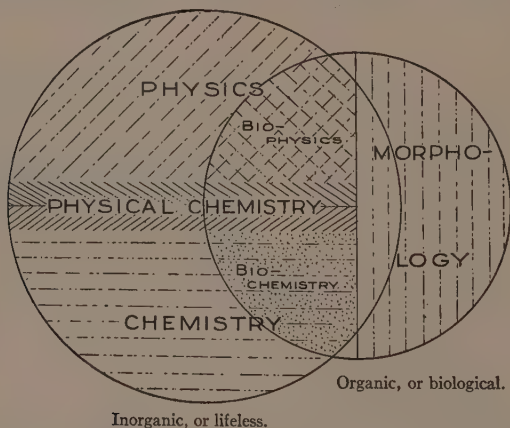


DIAGRAM SHOWING THE RELATION OF BIOCHEMISTRY TO OTHER SCIENCES



The larger circle represents the departments of knowledge dealing with the non-living world. No name has been applied to lifeless nature. The smaller circle represents the department of the living, biology being the science. The overlapping region is physiology, consisting of biophysics and biochemistry.

biochemical knowledge are published in each issue (weekly, \$5.00 a year).

*Abstract Journal of the American Chemical Society*, issued every fortnight. Contains reviews of most biochemical papers in all languages. Membership in the American Chemical Society (\$15.00 per year) gives subscription without extra charge to three chemical journals: (1) Chemical Abstracts, (2) Journal of the American Chemical Society, and (3) Industrial and Engineering Chemistry. Biochemical articles appear in all of these magazines.

*American Journal of Physiology*. Address the editor, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md. While largely devoted to physical physiology, biochemical papers are published (\$20.00 a year).

*Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine*. Address the Secretary, A. J. Goldforb, College of the City of New York, New York. This is virtually a "Compte rendus" in which brief abstracts of important papers that appear later in some journal in full are published (\$5.00 a year).

*Biochemical Journal (England)*. Address Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, England, or the University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Illinois, U. S. A. This journal occupies in England and colonies the same place that the Journal of Biological Chemistry does in the United States. Issued every two months (\$14.00 a year).

*Zeitschrift fuer physiologische Chemie* ("Hoeppes-Seyler's Zeitschrift"). Obtainable from B. Login & Son, New York. An important German biochemical publication, published since 1877 (\$25.00 a year).

*Berichte ueber die gesamt Physiologie*. Address Julius Springer, Berlin, Germany. The most exhaustive abstract journal. About 2 volumes per year (\$18.00).

*Biochemical Journal of Japan*. The articles are in English when the journal is sent to English-speaking countries. A recently founded journal. Obtainable from B. Login & Son, New York (\$5.50 a year).

Books in foreign languages may be obtained from A. Bruddehausen, 1309 Webster Ave., New York, N. Y.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

Atwater, W. O. Articles on Nutrition in the Century Magazine for the years 1887 and later. Out of print, but obtainable at times at Leary's second-hand book-shop, Ninth and Market Streets, Philadelphia, Pa.

- Brown, E. G. *Arabian Medicine*, Cambridge, University Press and University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Illinois.
- Contemporary Chemists: A series of biographical notes in the *Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry* for the years 1921 and later.
- Drinkwater, H. *Fifty Years of Medical Progress, 1873-1922*, London, H. K. Lewis & Co., Ltd., 1924.
- DuBois, E. F. *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1924.
- Foster, M. *History of Physiology*, Cambridge (England), University Press, 1901.
- Garrison, F. H. *A History of Medicine*, 2d ed., Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 1921.
- Hopstock, H. *History of Physiology*, London, Clarendon Press, 1910.
- Locy, W. A. *Biology and Its Makers*, New York, Henry Holt & Co., 1910.
- Osler, William. *The Evolution of Modern Medicine*, New Haven, Yale University Press, 1921.
- Stirling, W. *Some Apostles of Physiology*, London, Waterlow, 1902.
- Tilden, W. A. *Discoveries and Inventions in the Twentieth Century*, London, Routledge, 1916.
- Wurtz, A. (translated by Cleminshaw). *The Atomic Theory*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1881.



## CHAPTER I

### MAN AND HIS ENVIRONMENT

"But a knowledge of the compositions of bodies is, after all, only the statical or secondary object of chemical inquiry; for, in common with physics, chemistry has primary reference to the varied existence of matter in time, and to the series of changes which it manifests."—*Odling*.<sup>1</sup>

THE human being as we see him today is the product of the action of forces and events which have molded him from beings quite unlike himself. The physician should bear this truth in mind. The chemical composition of the human blood<sup>2</sup> resembles that of sea-water or, rather, that of the sea-water of past ages. We know that animals who live in the sea incorporate sea-water into their bodies, and use it as blood is used in man. The correlation of these facts indicates that man's ancestors lived in the ocean,<sup>3</sup> and leads to the belief that the essential chemical composition of the water of the ocean is retained in the veins of man today. Mucin, a substance which is a typical component of the mucus or slime of the outer covering of the lower animals, is found in various parts of the human body. Within the nervous system of man and also in his hair and nails there is a chemical compound, keratin, which commonly covers the body of lower forms. The apparent anomaly of finding such substances in the central nervous system is explained when we recall that this system originates from the outer layer, or ectoderm. Again, the teeth of man represent chemical compounds found in the protective coverings like the shagreen of the shark.

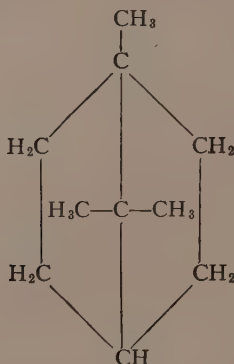
Various theories have been offered to explain the evolution of man from lower forms of life; of these, the theory of direct effect of the

<sup>1</sup> Odling, W., English chemist of the 19th Century, lecturer, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London.

<sup>2</sup> See Lotka, A., *The Elements of Physical Biology*, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1925, p. 201.

<sup>3</sup> Macallum, A. B. (McGill University, Montreal, Canada), *Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.*, vol. 156, p. 1, 1918. Magnesium has increased in the sea-water since man's ancestors lived in that medium. (Percentage Mg in sea-water at present, 3.79 mgs.; in human blood, 0.4 mg.)

environment of Lamarck<sup>1</sup>; that of the survival of best-adapted variations of Darwin,<sup>2</sup> and the mutation theory of DeVries<sup>3</sup> may be mentioned. In the world of lifeless things we find illustrations of characteristics which are especially adapted to the substances bearing them. Thus, in camphor, two methyl groups lie in the middle of



the molecule in such a manner that they stabilize the structure, which would otherwise become unstable because of the methyl group at the top of the aromatic ring. Evidence of inorganic evolution is also found among the elements which will be discussed presently.

**Man's Environment.**—So far as we know man exists only upon the Earth. The Earth is one of many planets which revolve around the Sun, and comprise the Solar System. The Sun is but a star among thousands of stars belonging to the Universe, and our universe is but one of many. The astronomer considers the spiral nebulae as other universes. It is well within the range of probability that beings similar to man exist in other worlds than ours. Indeed, it is possible that man exists on one of the planets, Mars.

<sup>1</sup> Jean B. Pierre Antoine de Monet Chevalier de Lamarck, eminent French natural historian of the 18th Century, supposed that the surroundings impressed themselves upon animals, and in time these effects became inherited.

<sup>2</sup> Charles Darwin, English naturalist of the 19th Century, suggested that all animals varied more or less from one another; the characteristics which are best adapted to the needs of the animal persist, others being lost.

<sup>3</sup> Hugo DeVries, formerly Professor of Botany, University of Amsterdam, The Netherlands, found that variations studied by Darwin arose suddenly in animals and plants, and that instead of small variations, frequently these changes were large and, if favorable, persisted. Read, however, modern criticisms by T. H. Morgan in various books published by him.

**Macrocosm and Microcosm.**—Emerson<sup>1</sup> has spoken of the monotonous plan which nature uses in her work. The structure of the universe which we have just described is essentially duplicated in miniature in the atom,<sup>2</sup> which has its central nucleus with positively charged proton or protons, surrounded by negatively charged electrons—the whole corresponding to the Solar System. The astronomer finds, in many cases, binary stars which rotate around each other. The analogy with the protons is obvious. The mass of the atom is in the nucleus. The proton or positive mass is 1845 times that of the negative or electron mass (Fig. 3). The chemical qual-

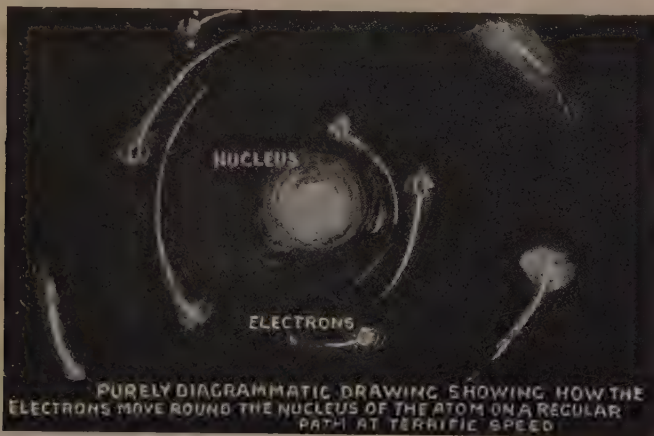


Fig. 3.—After Sir William Bragg, showing the planetary relations of electrons (representing planets) moving in definite orbits around the proton (representing the sun). The mass of the atom is relegated to the proton, which is charged positively. The electrons are charged negatively. (Sir William Bragg, in *Illustrated London News*.)

ities of the atom,<sup>3</sup> however, are determined by the external *electrons* which revolve around the nucleus in circles and rosettes, far from the central body (Fig. 4). The numbers of these various bodies is indicated by the position of the substance in the periodic scale of Men-

<sup>1</sup> Page 342.

<sup>2</sup> See Kramer, H. A., and Holst, H., *The Atom and the Bohr Theory of Its Structure*, New York, A. A. Knopf, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> For a simple account of the structure of the atom see articles by Sir William Bragg in the *London Illustrated News*, 1924, pages 676 and following. See also Bragg, William, *Concerning the Nature of Things*, New York, Harper, 1925. Some of the drawings in the present volume are after those in this series of articles.

deléjeff as modified by Moseley.<sup>1</sup> The nucleus contains as many protons in excess of its electrons as the atomic number represents.

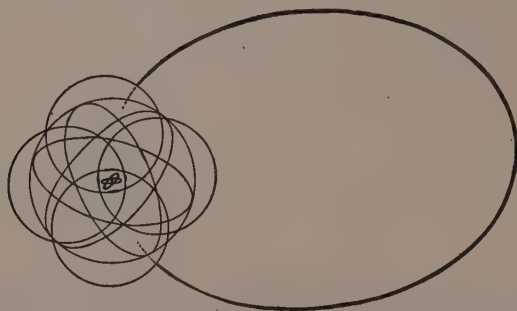


Fig. 4.—Illustrating the Bohr theory of composition of the atom. Like the heavenly bodies, the electrons in the atom move in fixed orbits. Atom of sodium having one octet (8) and three external electrons, making 11 in all. Hence the position of Na as 11 in the table on page 31.





















H. 1  Nucleus HYDROGEN	He. 2  HELIUM	Li. 3 (2:1)  LITHIUM	Be. 4 (2:2)  BERYLLIUM	B. 5 (2:3)  BORON	C. 6 (2:4)  CARBON	N. 7 (2:5)  NITROGEN	O. 8 (2:6)  OXYGEN				
F. 9 (2:7)  FLUORINE	Ne. 10 (2:8)  NEON	Na. 11 (2:8:1)  SODIUM	Mg. 12 (2:8:2)  MAGNESIUM	Al. 13 (2:8:3)  ALUMINIUM	Si. 14 (2:8:4)  SILICON	P. 15 (2:8:5)  PHOSPHORUS	S. 16 (2:8:6)  SULPHUR	Cl. 17 (2:8:7)  CHLORINE	Ar. 18 (2:8:8)  ARGON	K. 19 (2:8:8:1)  POTASSIUM	Ca. 20 (2:8:8:2)  CALCIUM

Fig. 5.—Plate, after Sir William Bragg, to illustrate the composition of the atom. The protons are shown as central spheres and the external electrons as gray and black spheres. Hydrogen possesses a single external electron; helium, two; sodium, two central electrons, an outer octet (8) and a single outlying one. Compare Fig. 4. (Sir. William Bragg, in Illustrated London News.)

There are as many external electrons as the atomic number represents

<sup>1</sup> H. G. J. Moseley, English physicist, killed at Gallipoli, age twenty-eight. Moseley proved that the characteristic of the proton, namely, mass, increases with regular steps as we pass from one element to the next higher in the periodic scale, and that the atomic weight is not an index of the relation of the elements. The table of the atomic weights given on page 31 is from the work of Bohr.



(Fig. 5). The following table gives the number of electrons which determine the characteristics of the atom:

TABLE OF PERIODIC ARRANGEMENTS OF THE ELEMENTS

The atomic numbers are given to the left. The lines connect members of the same groups; for instance, 1A of the Mendeléeff Table (lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.) is indicated by the lines from Li to Na, etc.

1. H	3. Li	11. Na	19. K	37. Rb	55. Cs	87. -
2. He	4. Be	12. Mg	20. Ca	38. Sr	56. Ba	88. Ra
	5. B	13. Al	21. Sc	39. Yt	57. La	89. Ac
	6. C	14. Si	22. Ti	40. Zr	58. Ce	90. Th
	7. N	15. P	23. V	41. Nb	59. Pr	91. Pa
	8. O	16. S	24. Cr	42. Mo	60. Nd	92. U
	9. F	17. Cl	25. Mn	43. Tc <sup>2</sup>	61. -	
	10. Ne	18. Ar	26. Fe	44. Ru	62. Sa	
			27. Co	45. Rh	63. Eu	
			28. Ni	46. Pd	64. Gd	
			29. Cu	47. Ag	65. Tb	
			30. Zn	48. Cd	66. Dy	
			31. Ga	49. In	67. Ho	
			32. Ge	50. Sn	68. Er	
			33. As	51. Sb	69. Tm	
			34. Se	52. Te	70. Yb	
			35. Br	53. I	71. Lu	
			36. Kr	54. Xe	72. Hf	
					73. Ta	
					74. W	
					75. Re <sup>2</sup>	
					76. Os	
					77. Ir	
					78. Pt	
					79. Au	
					80. Hg	
					81. Tl	
					82. Pb	
					83. Bi	
					84. Po	
					85. -	
					86. Nt <sup>1</sup>	

Thus far it has not been possible to build up atoms of greater mass from those of smaller mass, but it has been possible to cause the loss of electrons, thus producing another element of lower mass. By bombarding nitrogen with helium protons, which make up the so-

<sup>1</sup> Or radon.

<sup>2</sup> Discovery announced by the German chemists, Noddack and Tacke, June, 1925, leaving only numbers 61, 85, and 87 undiscovered.

called "alpha-particles" of the radiations of radioactive substances, an electron is driven out of the nucleus and carbon results. The table given above shows that nitrogen has one more electron than

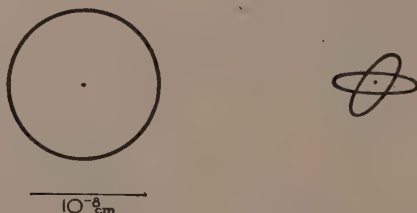


Fig. 6.—Hydrogen atom, with one external electron. Right, helium atom with two external electrons. The orbits are shown.

carbon. Aluminium has atomic number 13 and magnesium number 12. Rutherford, Chadwick, and others have shown that magnesium remains after bombardment of aluminium with helium's positively



Fig. 7.—A crystal of ice showing the arrangement of oxygen and hydrogen atoms. Oxygen, large spheres; hydrogen, small. (Sir William Bragg, in Illustrated London News.)

charged bodies. This is a basis for belief in an inorganic evolution. Hydrogen seems to be present as a nucleus in all elements. There is one positive electron in the hydrogen nucleus in excess of the negatively charged electrons. Helium consists of the hydrogen atom

plus an electron. If it were possible to remove one electron from helium hydrogen would be left.

The following diagram gives the relations of matter in different states:

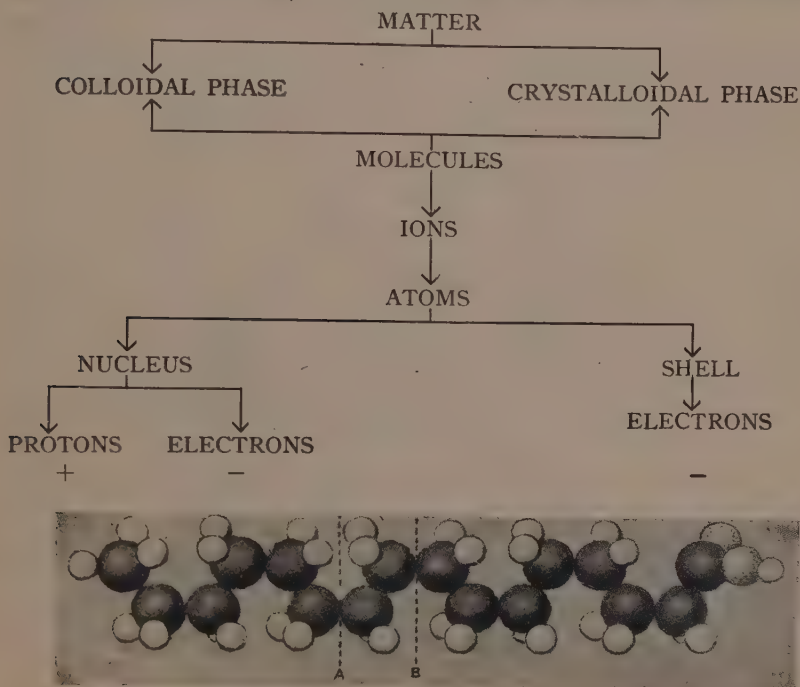


Fig. 8.—Molecule of palmitic acid. Large atoms, carbon; smaller, hydrogen. Removing the portion of the molecule between the lines makes a molecule of myristic acid. Removing two more, makes lauric acid. (After Sir William Bragg, in Illustrated London News.)

According to the conception of the structure of the atom given above, usually called the “physical atom,” in which the electrons are in motion, it is difficult to explain how atoms are made into molecules. In order to explain this process more easily American chemists replace the dynamic method by a static model of the atom, and the scheme is called the “chemical atom.”<sup>1</sup> In it it is assumed that the

<sup>1</sup> G. N. Lewis, Professor of Chemistry in the University of California, Berkeley and Irving Langmuir, research chemists to the General Electric Company, Schenectady, N. Y. The basis for such models is the work of the Abbé Haeuy, who first used the “lattice structure” for crystals. Recently the younger and elder Bragg (Manchester and London) have used the x-ray to analyze crystal structure. The illustration (Fig. 10) is from their work.

circulation of electrons stops in such a manner that they come to occupy the corners of a cube. The nucleus lies in the center of the cube (Fig. 9). Such a conception may be considered as the average position assumed by the electrons in their rotations. The external

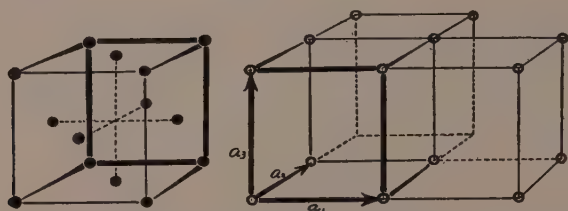
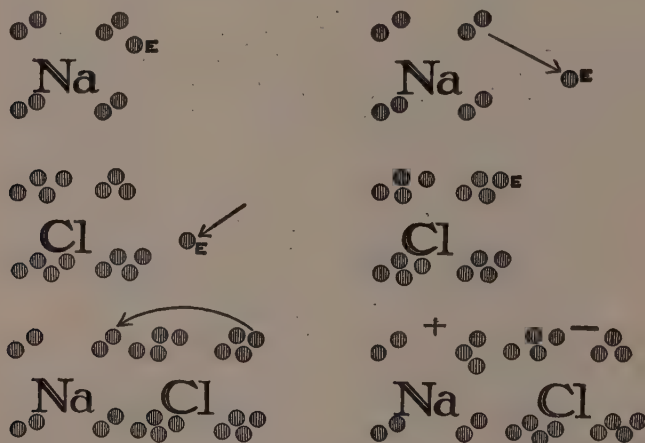


Fig. 9.—The static model of a molecule. To the right, a molecule of water,  $\text{H—O—H}$ , showing the sharing of electrons in order to combine the atoms into the molecule.

electrons are present from one (H) to eight (Neon); at this point the cube becomes “saturated,” for all the corners are full. If more electrons are present, as in sodium, where there are nine external electrons, a new cube is started.<sup>1</sup> Thus, the electrons are arranged



Ionization: In order to stabilize the atom, sodium loans an electron, leaving an octet. Chlorine stabilizes its atom by accepting an electron. When a molecule of salt,  $\text{NaCl}$ , is formed, an interchange of electrons occurs.

in octets, or in parts of octets (Fig. 9). When an atom unites with another atom in the formation of a molecule, duplets of two electrons

<sup>1</sup> This is in conformity with the Rule of Abegg, that all atoms have the same total number of valencies, namely, eight.

are held in common, unless one atom can take on another electron from the atom pairing with it. Such transfer of electrons is known as co-valence. In the inert gases (helium,<sup>1</sup> neon, argon, etc.) the octets are full, and therefore there is no such process. In all other cases, when molecules are formed, there is first a rearrangement of electrons in which they are exchanged from the outer octet of one atom with the electrons of the outer octet of the other atom. A balance is reached, leaving the atoms in stable condition, with all octets full.

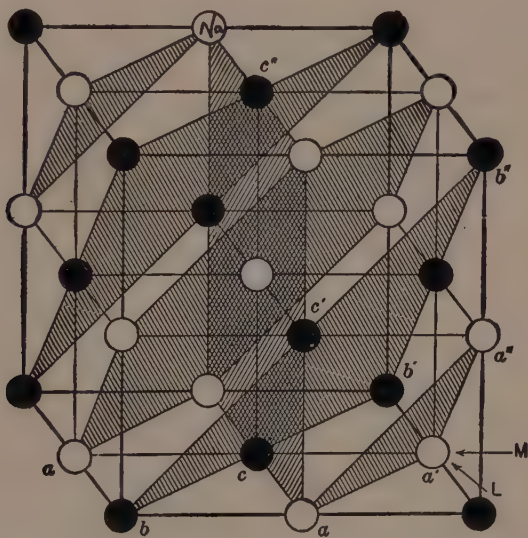


Fig. 10.—A crystal of salt analyzed by the  $x$ -ray method of Bragg. The sodium atoms are white; chlorine, black. (From Deming's Chemistry.)

**Dissociation**, or **ionization**, occurs when the substance is thrown into a solution in which "co-ordination" takes place, that is, each ion attempts to maintain its stability and neither lose nor accept an electron. It is necessary to believe that when  $\text{NaCl}$  dissociates in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  that the ions  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{OH}^-$  react with  $\text{Na}^+$  and with  $\text{Cl}^-$  causing the disruption of the molecule (ionization).<sup>2</sup>

*The Ionization of Water.*—A molecule of water is a very stable substance (Fig. 11). It is a well-recognized insulator of electrical

<sup>1</sup> Should be called "helion," to resemble argon, etc.

<sup>2</sup> The theory of A. Werner (Zurich), which assumes that auxiliary valencies of the atoms differing from the valencies that hold the molecule together, react with the medium and cause dissociation of the molecule.



effects because it is a very poor conductor of the current. Since the ion<sup>1</sup> carries the current or is the current, there must be few ions in pure water. Water ionizes into the cation  $H^+$  and the anion  $OH^-$ . There are three substances in pure water:  $H^+$ ,  $OH^-$ , and  $H_2O$ . The following diagram roughly represents the condition of water with respect to ionization:

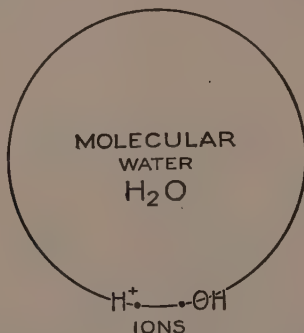


Fig. 11.—Showing relative proportions of molecule and ions in water at 20° C.

**The Reaction of Fluids.**—By the reaction of a fluid we mean that the fluid is acid, basic or neutral. In earlier times acidity was attributed to oxygen<sup>2</sup> (Lavoisier). Later it was found that oxygen does not exist in certain substances which give the acid reaction, whereas another element, hydrogen, always is present. We know now that acidity is due to the presence of hydrion ( $H^+$ ) in excess of the hydroxylion ( $OH^-$ ). Although there is but a small amount of ionization in the purest water,<sup>3</sup> there is some, and by methods about to be described it has been found that the concentration<sup>4</sup> of hydrogen ions in pure water at ordinary temperatures (22° C.) is one gram-ion (1.008 g.  $H^+$ )

<sup>1</sup> Greek *ion*, going; that is, wandering about.

<sup>2</sup> See Franklin, E. C. (President of the Amer. Chem. Soc. and Professor of Chemistry, Leland Stanford, Jr. University, Palo Alto, California). Systems of acids, bases, and salts. Presidential address, Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 46, p. 2136, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> The purest water is obtained by distilling through a copper distillation apparatus followed by redistillation in quartz vessels. This is called "conductivity water" because it does not conduct!

<sup>4</sup> Mass per capacity. The liter is the standard unit of capacity. A thousandth of a liter is a milliliter (ml.). It is approximately the same as the cubic centimeter, the unit of volume. A milliliter is equivalent to 1.000,027 c.c. The milliliter will be used throughout this book in conformity with the recommendations of the U. S. Bureau of Standards and because pharmaceutical glassware is standardized in this system.

per ten million liters of water. This is about equivalent to one gram  $H^+$  per 100,000 barrels of water.

We may express the normality<sup>1</sup> of water at 24° C. by saying that it is a  $\frac{1.0}{10,000,000}$  normal solution of  $H^+$  since we are speaking in terms of liters. A mathematician would abbreviate this expression by saying:

$$\frac{1}{10,000,000} \text{ normal} = \frac{1}{(10)^7} \text{ normal} = (10)^{-7} \text{ normal.}$$

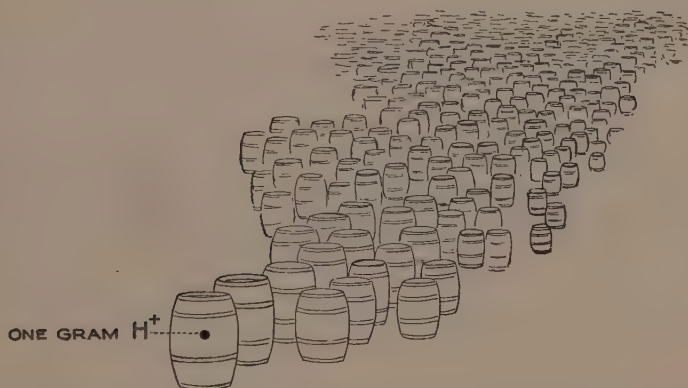


Fig. 12.—Ionization of water: One hundred thousand barrels of water with one gram of hydrion.

Briefly stated, *the concentration<sup>2</sup> of hydrogen ions in pure water at ordinary temperature is  $(10)^{-7}$  normal.* It is customary to use such an expression to designate the reaction of fluids, but in place of using the whole expression, since 10 appears in all cases, it is omitted, as well as the minus sign, leaving only the logarithm,<sup>3</sup> in which case we no longer speak of " $C_H$ ," but of  $pH$ .

<sup>1</sup> By normality we mean the concentration compared to that in a normal solution. A normal solution is the number of grams of substance indicated by the hydrogen equivalent of the molecular weight, made up to a liter of water. By hydrogen equivalent we mean the number of hydrogen atoms replaceable with a metal.  $NaOH$  has one, since with  $HCl$ ,  $Na$  replaces one hydrogen.  $Na_2SO_4$  has two hydrogens replaceable, since the acid  $H_2SO_4$  has two hydrogen atoms replaceable with  $Na$ . To make a normal solution of  $H_2SO_4$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$  molecular weight must be taken. The normality is one-tenth (0.1 n.), one-fifth (0.2 n.), etc., normal.

<sup>2</sup> Abbreviated " $C_H$ ."

<sup>3</sup> This nomenclature follows the suggestion of S. P. L. Sørensen, Copenhagen, Denmark. See Clark for picture of Sørensen and a discussion of the significance of these expressions. The reader may obtain from the U. S. Public Health Service, Washington, D. C., a pamphlet by F. H. McCrudden (Surgeon), giving a statement of these factors. (Reprint No. 300, February 17, 1922.)

**Definition of  $pH$ .**— $pH$  is equivalent to the expression  $(-\log C_H)$ , that is, the logarithm to the base 10 of the normality of the solution, the minus sign being omitted (but understood). It is simply a convenient way of expressing, quantitatively, the reaction of a fluid, inasmuch as the reaction is dependent upon the concentration of hydrogen ions. The logarithm is usually not a whole number, as we have indicated above. A decinormal solution of hydrogen ions should have  $pH$  1.0, since:

$$\text{decinormal} = \frac{1}{10} \text{ normal} = \frac{1}{(10)^1} \text{ normal} = (10)^{-1} \text{ normal}.$$

This would be the case at infinite dilution where there is complete ionization of  $H_2O$  into  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$ . Ordinary decinormal solutions, however, do not undergo complete dissociation. A decinormal solution of  $HCl$  at  $25^\circ C.$  is but 94.8 per cent. dissociated. Actually, it is a 0.0948 normal solution of ions  $H^+$  and  $Cl^-$ :

$$\begin{array}{l} 0.10 \text{ normal solution} \\ 0.9480 \text{ parts ionized at } 25^\circ C. \\ \hline 0.0948 \text{ normal solution respecting ions.} \end{array}$$

This figure may be stated:

$$0.0948 \text{ normal} = \frac{948}{10,000} \text{ normal} = \frac{948}{(10)^4} = 948 (10)^{-4}.$$

This last expression is the  $C_H$ . In order to express the quantity in terms of  $pH$ , we convert the number 948 into logarithmic terms by finding the logarithm in a table of logarithms; then we combine this logarithm with that of 10, remembering that to multiply logarithms, the logs are added algebraically:

$$\begin{array}{l} \log 10 = -4.00,000 \\ \log 948 = +2.97,681 \\ \text{Multiplying (adding)} \quad -1.02,319, \text{ the } pH \text{ of a decinormal solution of } HCl \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{at } 25^\circ C., \text{ if the minus sign be omitted.} \end{array}$$

**The Neutral Point.**—We have stated above (page 37) that the  $C_H$  of pure water is practically  $(10)^{-7}$  normal.<sup>1</sup> The  $pH$  is then 7.0. Ionization varies with the temperature, and this figure represents the

<sup>1</sup> Practically, because there may be a secondary dissociation in which the hydroxyl ionizes:  $H_2O = H^+ + OH^- = 2H^+ + O=$ .

$pH$  of water at a definite temperature, namely,  $22^{\circ} C$ . At temperatures below and above  $22^{\circ} C$ . the  $pH$  is different:

$16^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 7.10$
$18^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 7.07$
$20^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 7.03$
$22^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 7.00$
$24^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 6.96$
$26^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 6.93$
$28^{\circ} C$ .....	$pH\ 6.90$
$37^{\circ} C$ . (body temperature).....	$pH\ 6.75$

These figures represent the  $pH$  of the neutral point of water because water is essentially neutral, which means that there is an excess neither of  $H^{+}$  nor of  $OH^{-}$ . An excess of  $H^{+}$  would make water acid; an excess of  $OH^{-}$  would make it alkaline. There is about as much  $H^{+}$  as  $OH^{-}$  at the neutral point. Since  $pH$  indicates the degree of hydrogen ion concentration in pure water, there must be as many hydroxyl ions as hydrogen ions.

$pH$  of pure water at  $22^{\circ} C$ . is 7.0 (average value)  
 $pOH$  of pure water at  $22^{\circ} C$ . is 7.0

**The Proportion of  $H^{+}$  and  $OH^{-}$  in Pure Water.**—Water is a one-ten-millionth normal solution of hydrogen ions, and it is likewise a one-ten-millionth normal solution of hydroxyl ions. We have seen that a decinormal solution of hydrochloric acid is  $\frac{948}{10,000}$  normal, having its  $pH$  nearly unity (1.023). A solution that is completely ionized gives  $pH\ 1.0$  for decinormality. Between a decinormal solution and one at neutrality, various degrees of acidity exist:

$pH$  of normal urine is about 5.0  
 $pH$  of normal gastric juice, 1.2<sup>1</sup>

Therefore, we may say that the reaction of acid fluids passes from

$pH\ 1.0$	to	$pH\ 7.0$
Decinormal.		Neutral.

A decinormal solution of alkali must have a  $pH$  as far from the neutral point as decinormal acid is on the opposite side of the neutral point, that is:

$pH\ 7.0$	to	$pH\ 14.0$
Neutrality.		Decinormal alkali.

<sup>1</sup> The  $pH$  for various foods is given on page 579.

We may erect, then, a line to represent this range:

pH 1.0	5.0	7.0	7.3	8.0	14.0
I	I	I	I	I	I
Decinormal acid.	Urine.	Neutral.	Blood.	Maximum intestinal reaction.	Decinormal alkali.

**The Ionization Constant.**—The chemically active substances in water are the ions  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$ . When they react they produce molecular water,  $H_2O$ . The Law of Mass Action expresses the relation between the active mass and the product. For water this is:

$$(H^+) \times (OH^-) = (H_2O) \times k_a$$

where the brackets indicate concentration and  $k$  a constant varying with the kind of substance under consideration.<sup>1</sup> From this expression we find:

$$\frac{(H^+) \times (OH^-)}{(H_2O)} = k_a$$

but we have seen (Fig. 11) that there is an almost infinite amount un-ionized water compared to the amount of ions and hence we may disregard molecular water in the above equation; then we have:

$$(H^+) \times (OH^-) = K_w^2$$

The quantity  $K_w$  is called the ionization constant. The expression signifies that no matter how many hydrions there are, there must be hydroxylions sufficient to make the equation balance. We have seen above that at neutrality

$$pH = pOH = 7.0.$$

Substituting these figures in the above equation, we have

$$7 + 7 = 14^3$$

This is the ionization constant<sup>4</sup> for water at 22° C.

<sup>1</sup> In this case  $H^+$  and therefore acid (a).

<sup>2</sup> A new constant is used in this case, where  $w$  refers to water.

<sup>3</sup> Because  $pH = (-\log CH)$  and logs are added when numbers are multiplied.

<sup>4</sup> This constant has been determined by many observers, and slight differences are obtained according to the method used. The Dutch chemist, Wijs, found  $1.44(10)^{-14}$ ; the American chemist, G. N. Lewis, found  $1.006(10)^{-14}$ . Lewis' figure corresponds to  $pH$  6.9987.



**Calculations of  $pH$ .**—Rule to find the  $pH$  of a solution, given the  $C_H$ :

- (I) Convert the common fraction into decimal fraction, the denominator being expressed as power of 10. Ex.:  $\frac{14.2}{100,000}$  normal =  $14.2 (10)^{-5}$  normal.
- (II) Add, algebraically, the log of the number standing before 10, to the log of 10. Ex.: Log of 14.2 is + 1.152  

$$\begin{array}{r} - 5.000 \\ \hline \text{Combined log,} \quad - 3.848 \end{array}$$
- (III) Express  $pH$  by omitting the minus sign. Ex.:  $pH = 3.848$ .

Rule to pass from  $pH$  to  $C_H$ :

- (1) From the integer<sup>1</sup> next above the  $pH$  figure, subtract the  $pH$ . Ex.:  
 $pH$  3.848. The next whole number is 4.000  
 Subtracting..... 3.848  

$$\begin{array}{r} 4.000 \\ - 3.848 \\ \hline 0.152 \end{array}$$
- (2) Find the antilog<sup>2</sup> in a book of logarithms. Ex.: Antilog of 0.152 is 1.42.
- (3) Write the expression for  $C_H$  by placing the number just found before 10, the exponent of 10 being the integer in (1), with the minus sign. Ex.:  
 The number found in (2) is 1.42.  
 The integer found in (1) is 4.000.  
 Then  $C_H$  is  $1.42 (10)^{-4}$ , which is the same as  $14.2 (10)^{-5}$ .

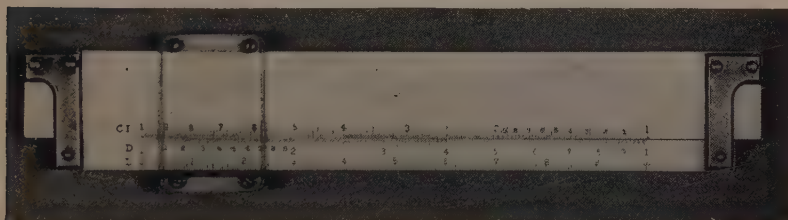


Fig. 13.—A Duplex slide-rule, with inverted scale: CI useful in converting  $pH$  into  $C_H$ , and vice versa. L is the natural logs of numbers on the D scale. For directions see text, pages 41, 42. As the rule is set, scale L reads the fraction to right of the decimal point in the  $pH$ , namely, 0.14, and the scale CI reads the number preceding the expression “(10)” in the  $C_H$ ; in the above setting it is 172, the decimal point being determined by the particular case.

**Calculation by Duplex Slide-rule.**—The duplex slide-rule<sup>3</sup> (Fig. 13) affords a ready means of making these calculations. The scale of equal parts (L) gives the fraction to the right of the decimal point in the  $pH$  expression (the figure 848 in  $pH$  3.848 and the scale CI

<sup>1</sup> Whole number.

<sup>2</sup> The antilog is the number in the log-book corresponding to the log.

<sup>3</sup> Or an ordinary rule with the slide reversed. A duplex rule is shown in Fig. 13.

(inverted) gives the number that stands to the left of  $(10)^{-n}$  in a  $C_H$  expression ( $14.2$  in the expression  $14.2(10)^{-5}$ ). The negative exponent,  $-4$ , is always one greater than the whole number ( $3$ ) of the  $pH$ . The antilog and logs are readily found on these rules and they are quite convenient.

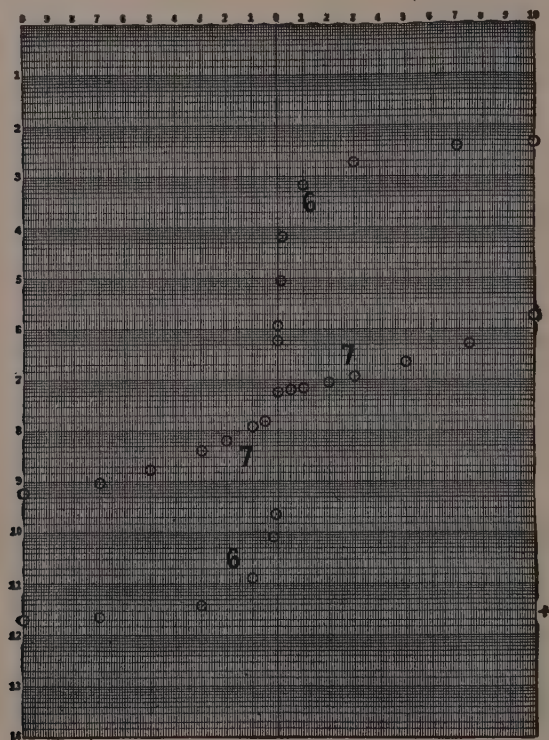


Fig. 14.—Titration curves: Curve 6 to right, HCl added to distilled water;  $pH$  from 7 to 2.4. Curve 6 to left, NaOH added to water;  $pH$  from 7 to 11.8. Curve 7 shows the buffering effect of gelatin; the additions are the same as in Curve 6, but there is much less change in  $pH$ . Courtesy A. H. T. Co. after graph made by the Bovie direct reading potentiometer.

**Strong and Weak Acids.**—In hospital work boric acid<sup>1</sup> is used as a weak antiseptic. It is one of the weakest acids. It ionizes to an extent less than 0.01 per cent. in decinormal solution, as compared with hydrochloric at 94.8 per cent. The following table gives the percentage ionization of some common acids:

<sup>1</sup>Frequently called "boracic acid," a safer term than the curt "boric" in the sick-room, but chemically improper.

Acids 90 per cent. or over dissociated in decinormal solution:

Hydrochloric, HCl,	ionizing as	$H^+$ and $Cl^-$
Nitric	" "	$H^+$ and $NO_3^-$
Sulphuric	" "	$H^+$ and $HSO_4^-$
and as		$H^+$ , $H^+$ and $SO_4^{=}$

Acids 45—20 per cent. ionized:

Phosphoric acid, $H_3PO_4$ ,	ionizing	$H^+$ and $H_2PO_4^-$
and as		$H^+$ , $H^+$ and $HPO_4^{=}$
also as		$H^+$ , $H^+$ , $H^+$ and $PO_4^{=}$
Oxalic acid, $HOOC.COOH$		$H^+$ and $HOOC.COO^-$

Acids 10—1 per cent. dissociated:

Nitrous acid, $HNO_2$ ,	ionizing	$H^+$ and $NO_2^-$
Acetic acid, $H_3C.COOH$	" "	$H^+$ and $H_3C.COO^-$

Acids ionizing below 0.01 per cent:

Boric acid, $H_3BO_3$	ionizing	$H^+$ and $H_2BO_3^-$
Hydrocyanic acid, HCN		$H^+$ and $CN^-$
Water <sup>1</sup>		$H^+$ and $OH^-$

EXERCISE 1. *Strong and Weak Acids*.—Obtain from the store-room 25 mls. of each of the following solutions (all decinormal): (I) HCl; (II)  $CH_3COOH$ ; (III)  $H_3BO_3$ . Clean the end of a stirring-rod and transfer one drop of (I) to the tip of the tongue.<sup>2</sup> Immediately after detecting the taste, rinse the mouth with water and proceed with (II) in the same manner. Continue until the whole series has been sampled. Record in your note-book your experience in each case and correlate your findings with the table given above (page 43).

EXERCISE 2. Secure from the store-room 10 mls. each of a half-molecular solution of table sugar, sucrose. Place 4 clean test-tubes in your rack and label them A, B, C, and D. Add to:

- A, 1 ml. sugar solution and also 10 mls. of 0.01 normal HCl.<sup>3</sup>
- B, 1 ml. sugar solution and also 5 mls. of 0.01 normal HCl.
- C, 1 ml. sugar solution and also 15 mls. of 0.01 normal acetic acid solution.
- D, 1 ml. sugar solution and also 10 mls. of distilled water (control).<sup>4</sup>

Place the 4 tubes in a beaker of boiling water, or a boiling water-bath for exactly one minute. Cool. Transfer the contents of tube A to your burette and dilute to 25 mls. with distilled water. Mix the

<sup>1</sup> Considered here as acid because of the ionization into hydron,  $H^+$ .

<sup>2</sup> The taste-buds responding to acid lie on the tip and sides of the tongue.

<sup>3</sup> By properly diluting the decinormal HCl of Exercise 1.

<sup>4</sup> Every experiment must have a control or controls. In the above experiment we are adding water in each case along with the special substance, like sugar, HCl, etc. What effect has water itself? Many scientific errors have been the result of omitting the control.

contents of the burette by stoppering the open end with a stopper and inverting the tube several times. Now transfer to an evaporating dish exactly 25 mls. of Benedict's solution<sup>1</sup> for the quantitative determination of reducing sugar, by means of a 25 ml. pipette. Add about 5 gs. desiccated sodium carbonate. Place the evaporating dish on a tripod over a Bunsen burner and bring the contents to a gentle boil. Add the sugar solution from the burette, drop by drop, until the greenish-blue of the cupric sulphate is discharged, leaving a colorless liquid. Read the burette and enter the reading in your note-book. Repeat this procedure with each of the solutions B, C, and D. Twenty-five mls. of Benedict's solution oxidize 0.050 g. of sugar as glucose. Calculate for each solution the amount of glucose obtained from the sucrose by boiling with acid. Which acid causes the largest amount of glucose to be produced in one minute?

#### **Quantitative Determination of the Number of Ions in Solution.—**

We have said that ions carry electricity and that the conductivity of a solution depends upon the number of ions present. These are substances with definite properties; the hydrion, for instance, causing acidity. Hydrion is a definite substance, as hydrochloric acid is a definite substance. Ions react with other substances. In a solution, each particle attracts other particles, and for this reason a solution containing an ionizable substance does not boil as readily as one containing the same amount of substance which does not undergo dissociation. In the first case, where substances are ionized, there are more particles to react upon one another, and these bodies keep the water molecules from bounding above the surface of the liquid, which is the phenomenon we know as boiling. On the other hand, the greater the number of ions in a solution, the lower the freezing-point.<sup>2</sup> Freezing involves an orientation or "disciplining" of molecules, and the rapidly moving ions like  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  do not lend themselves to discipline. We have, then, the following methods for determining the degree of ionization in solutions:

- (1) Electrical conductivity.
- (2) Elevation of the boiling-point.
- (3) Depression of the freezing-point.

<sup>1</sup> Page 156 and Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Common salt is thrown upon icy pavements in order that the ice melt. Salt solution freezes at a lower temperature than pure water, and at 0° Centigrade the solution remains unfrozen, although water freezes at that temperature.



(1) **Conductivity.**—The divided current principle of the Wheatstone bridge. The following diagram (Fig. 15) illustrates the principle:

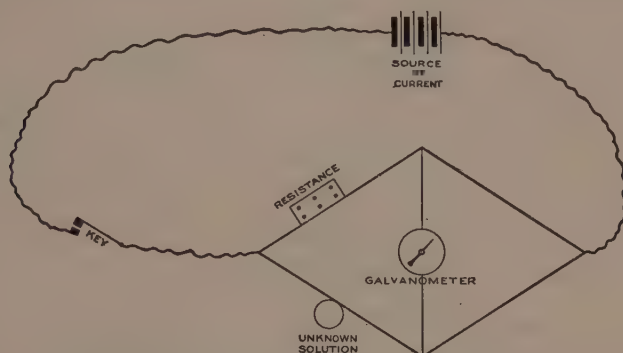


Fig. 15.—Principle of the determination of conductivity of solutions. The current, arising from the source above, divided exactly equally into the two arms, one of which bears the resistance box and the other the cup for the unknown. By means of the "null-point" instrument (galvanometer) connecting the two arms it is possible to tell when the current in one arm exactly equals that in the other; this is brought about by changing the resistance in the box. In equilibrium the conductance through the unknown is the reciprocal of the resistance in the box.

The solution contains ions and molecules and electricity is transferred in proportion to the number of ions. The current is derived from the battery ("source of current"). By introducing resistance (resistance box, Figs. 15 and 16) into the upper arm of the apparatus the point is reached at which the galvanometer shows no more deflection when the key is closed. Resistance is introduced by withdrawing the

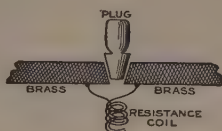


Fig. 16.—Details of the conductivity method, one of the units in the resistance box; when resistance is desired the plug is removed in order that the current pass through the coiled wire, the exact resistance of which in ohms is known.

plugs, which, as long as they are in place, permit the current to pass through the brass with practically no resistance, but which, when withdrawn, cause the current to pass through the fine wire connecting the sides of the brass plates (Fig. 16). These wires are calibrated in terms of conductance which is the reciprocal of resistance:

$$R = \frac{1}{C}$$



The unit of conductance is the mho, the reverse of the word for the unit of resistance, the ohm.

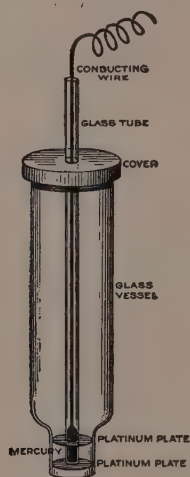


Fig. 17.—Ostwald type conductivity vessel. The conductivity of the fluid lying between the upper and lower platinum electrode plates is determined.

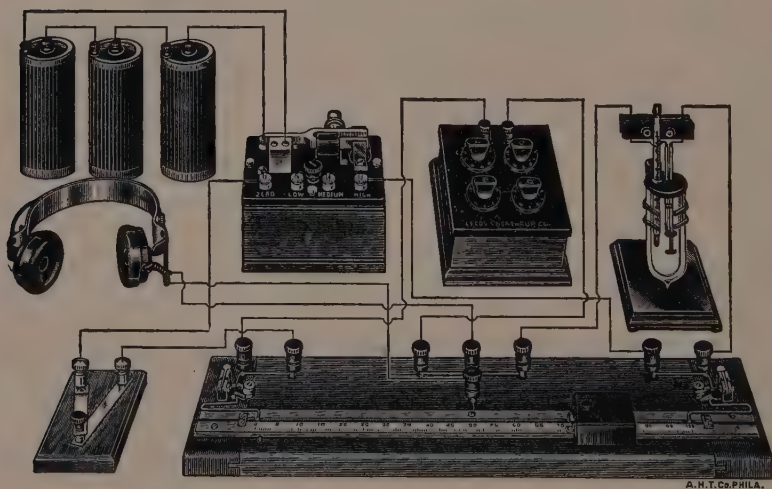


Fig. 18.—Conductivity apparatus. The resistance ( $\frac{1}{C}$ ) of the unknown placed in the vessel (right) to a current activated by the batteries (left) is estimated by means of the resistances of the box (upper right) and the meter-bridge (front). The “no-point” is determined by the alternating current set up by the inductorium (upper left); the telephone receiver (left) detects variations in the current.

**DEMONSTRATION.** *The Conductivity of Decinormal Solution of Hydrochloric Acid.*—This is done by using the Wheatstone bridge, galvanometer, cell, resistance, and Oswald conductivity vessel (Fig. 17). The meter bridge consists of a meter stick with terminals for wires at each end connected with the bridge-wire, which is a fine wire running from one end of the stick to the other. A contact is provided which may be slipped along the wire. The meter-stick with its wire supplement the coarser resistance of the box. Since the meter-bridge is stretched along a meter-stick, the wire is divided thereby into thousandths (millimeters) and hence the readings are in milliohms. In place of a galvanometer as “null-point” instrument, a telephone (Fig. 18) may be introduced, the current for which being either a small inductorium, or the alternating<sup>1</sup> house-current suitably cut down. When there is no sound in the telephone, or when the galvanometer is undeflected, the current from the resistance box and slide-wire exactly balances that from the conductivity vessel containing the solution of decinormal hydrochloric acid. The quantity  $R$  is obtained by counting up the ohms represented by the plugs removed and also the position of the slide-wire contact, on the meter-stick. Then

$$C = \frac{1}{R}$$

After this result has been obtained, the conductivity cup is washed out and the procedure is repeated with decinormal acetic acid.

(2) **Cryoscopy**<sup>2</sup> (or the method of the determination of ionization by freezing-point estimation).—*Method of Beckmann.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle (Fig. 19): To determine  $\Delta$ ,<sup>4</sup> or the depression of the freezing-point, the temperature at which the pure solvent, like water, freezes is first determined by means of a very delicate thermometer, and then the determination is repeated after introducing a known amount of the substance being studied.

Procedure: A Beckmann differential thermometer<sup>5</sup> is generally

<sup>1</sup> Not the direct current.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *cryos*, ice, and *skopis*, sight.

<sup>3</sup> German chemist. The principle is that of F. M. Raoult, French chemist, 1884.

<sup>4</sup> The Greek letter delta.

<sup>5</sup> Differential, because it does not register the temperature over more than six degrees Centigrade. It is used as a comparison thermometer to tell the difference between freezing temperatures.

used. This is a thermometer (Fig. 20) about 60 centimeters long with about 6 degrees of scale accurately divided into hundredths of degree Centigrade. In order to facilitate the reading, a reservoir

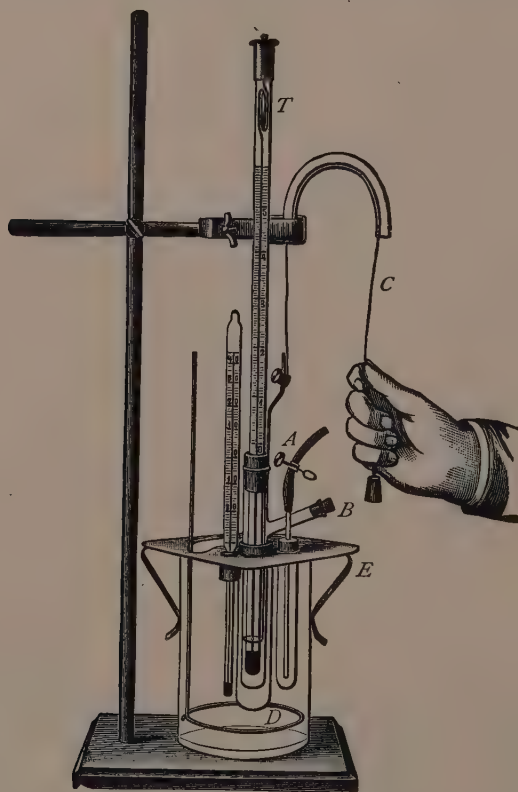


Fig. 19.—Cryoscopic apparatus for determining the difference in freezing-points of a pure solvent like water and with a solute like the constituents of blood. A battery-jar containing a wire stirrer (*D*) is filled with a salt-ice mixture. Suspended in this mixture is a small thermometer to avoid supercooling; also a large test-tube bearing within it a smaller, side-neck tube, *B*. In this tube the unknown and its solvent are placed. A delicate thermometer (*T*) is in direct contact with these fluids. (See Fig. 20.) A hand-operated stirrer is shown at *C*. In order to save time the unknown fluid is previously brought to freezing in the tube *A*. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

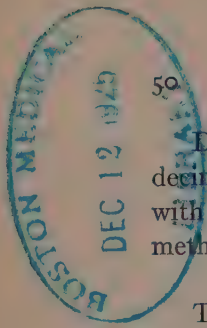
for mercury is provided at the top of the instrument as well as at the bottom (Fig. 20). By means of this reservoir it is possible to so adjust the length of the column of mercury that it appears on the scale when freezing has occurred. If the temperature is elevated,

the column does not remain on the scale, in which case one must warm the mercury by means of the hand and cause it to siphon into the upper reservoir. Then the column is broken by a slight jar with the finger, so that the column, when freezing occurs, remains on the scale. When the freezing-point is reached while the column of mercury is below the scale, the column is siphoned as before into the reservoir at the top of the tube and more mercury is attached. The thermometer is slipped into a stopper which is fitted into a test-tube with side neck (Fig. 19). In order to insulate this tube, which contains the substance under examination, so that heat will neither be gained nor lost, the side neck of the tube is slipped into a stopper which fits into a larger test-tube, the latter remaining empty. The tube bearing the smaller, side-neck tube and thermometer is then inserted into a freezing mixture, the temperature of which must not be too far below that of the freezing-point of the solvent.<sup>1</sup> When ready, the freezing mixture is stirred gently and the column of mercury will be seen to siphon and to move down the thermometer. This will continue for a time; then suddenly the mercury will rise to a certain point and remain stationary. This is the freezing-point of the solvent. Now, through the side neck of the inner tube, a weighed amount of solute, or substance under examination (concentrated HCl, for example), is added to the solvent; or one may replace the solvent with the unknown solution itself. The difference in freezing-points is  $\Delta$ , the quantity sought. The reader is warned to distinguish between the freezing-point of a solution and  $\Delta$ , the difference in freezing-points of two solutions, one being the solvent. The  $\Delta$  of urine depends upon such constituents as NaCl, dissolved in  $H_2O$  (pure solvent).



Fig. 20.—Beckmann type thermometer used in calorimetry, cryoscopy, and other biochemical processes. The scale covers only about  $6^{\circ}C$ . and is divided into  $0.01^{\circ}$ . The reservoir at the top permits adjustment of the column of mercury for different freezing-points.

<sup>1</sup> Because supercooling results, which interferes with rapid and accurate work. Supercooled liquids are such substances as glass.



DEMONSTRATION.—Demonstrate the difference between the  $\Delta$  of decinormal HCl and of 0.1 normal acetic acid. Compare the figures with those obtained for differences in conductivity determined by the method in (1).

The *determination of the boiling-point* is done with similar apparatus, but for practical purposes the freezing-point, which is more easily determined, will usually give the necessary information.

*Method of Determining the Concentration of Individual Ions.*—If we are dealing with a solution of a single substance, like acetic acid, we may determine the concentration of ions by the conductivity method. If, however, our problem is to determine the concentration of any one kind of ion, such as  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ ,  $\text{H}^+$ , etc., we must utilize another method.<sup>1</sup> In biochemistry it is seldom that a solution consists of one kind of substance. Blood, urine, gastric juice, and spinal fluid have many kinds of ions. If we desired to determine the reaction of these fluids we must obtain the concentration of hydrogen ions, or, in other words, their  $p\text{H}$ , because reaction depends upon the equilibrium expressed by the equation already given:

$$(\text{H}^+) \times (\text{OH}^-) = K_w$$

If there is a larger number of  $\text{H}^+$ , the reaction is acid, and an excess of  $\text{OH}^-$  ions (or fewer  $\text{H}^+$ ) produces an alkaline reaction.

The principle upon which the determination of the concentration of individual ions rests is the same for all types of ions. The disease rickets, which affects many children and some adults, is due to an imperfect balance of calcium in the body; it is therefore desirable to know the degree of concentration of the calcion in the body, normally and pathologically. The sodium ion participates in the regulation of neutrality in the organism,<sup>2</sup> while at the present time the hydrion holds the greatest interest owing to its relation to the reaction of the body fluids.

The principle by which the concentration of an ion is obtained in the presence of other ions is as follows: We have shown<sup>3</sup> that charged particles tend to leave substances and to wander or diffuse as ions

<sup>1</sup> Conductivity and potentiometer data, about to be given, are not quite the same owing to "activity" (Clark).

<sup>2</sup> Page 79.

<sup>3</sup> Page 34.



through the medium surrounding the substance from which they come. If the medium around a stick of zinc is water, the ions  $\text{Zn}^{++}$  diffuse through the water, leaving the zinc with a double layer of charges, known as the Helmholtz double layer (Fig. 21). Eventually, some of the ions migrate back towards the stick of zinc, or electrode and set up a potential difference. If the electrode is placed, not in water, but in a solution of zinc ions, more ions will migrate back to the electrode and a greater potential difference will develop between the diffused ions and those on the electrode. This potential difference is proportional to the concentration of zinc ions.

**The Hydrogen Electrode.**—We are not interested at present in zinc ions, but the concentration of hydrogen ions must be determined in all

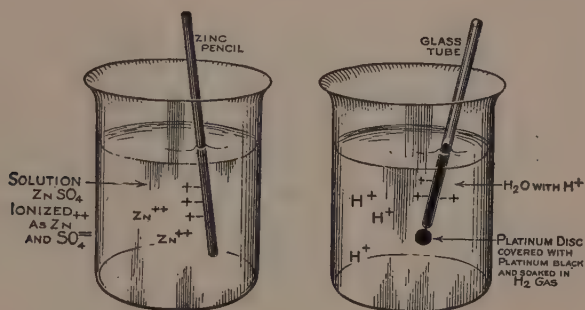


Fig. 21.—Diagrams to explain the hydrogen electrode. The potentiometer determines the potential difference between an electrode, like zinc or hydrogen, and a solution of known concentration of ions ( $\text{Zn}$ ,  $\text{H}$ , etc.).

studies of the reaction of body fluids, such as urine, blood, and gastric juice. We cannot use a stick of hydrogen because this element is gaseous at the temperatures in which we work. We may make a hydrogen electrode, however, by taking advantage of the power of certain metals to absorb hydrogen. Platinum is such a substance; palladium is another and one which absorbs hydrogen to a greater extent. The power of absorption of hydrogen is greater if the surface of the metal exposed to hydrogen is increased. To this end we cause finely divided platinum to be deposited upon a platinum disk (Fig. 21) by electrolysis of a platinic chlorid solution. Then we bring this platinum-coated disk into contact with pure hydrogen gas and the colloidal<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Page 96. The process of adsorption is undoubtedly a chemical phenomenon and not a simple physical process.

platinum "adsorbs," or soaks up some of the hydrogen gas, thus forming a hydrogen electrode (Figs. 21 and 25) which is used just as if it were a stick of hydrogen endowed with negative charges. The hydrogen electrode is placed in a vessel containing acid, that is, hydrogen ions, and the same effect is obtained as in the case of zinc: Hydrogen ions leave the electrode and migrate out into the solution thereby creating a difference in potential. Here, as before, the potential difference is between the hydrogen ions in the solution and the hydrogen on the electrode and is proportionate to the number of ions of hydrogen in the solution.

Therefore, to determine how many hydrogen ions there are in the solution, it is only necessary to devise some means of measuring the potential difference.

**The Measurement of the Potential Difference.**—Wherever a potential difference occurs, a current of electricity would flow if the proper connection were made, just as in a lock in the Panama Canal, the water rises back of the gates and the flow of current through the lock depends upon the height of the water at the gate, the current flowing the instant the gates are opened. The fall of potential is determined by measuring the current set up. This is accomplished by the same method as we utilized in determining the conductivity of solutions, namely, by throwing a known resistance against the current until we have equalled it, that is, neutralized it, but here we use for this resistance a countercurrent of electricity of known strength,<sup>1</sup> which passes toward the electrode in the same strength as the current comes from the electrodes.

*The Potentiometer.*—This is an instrument for measuring the fall of potential between two electrodes. It is virtually a resistance box for adjusting a known source of current against the current coming from the hydrogen electrode. It includes a galvanometer, or null-point instrument,<sup>2</sup> to show when the two currents are equal; at this time the needle will show no deflection.

*The Source of the Known Current.*—This is a cell of known strength, expressed in volts. The cell usually employed has a current which is due to the fall of potential between the elements mercury and cad-

<sup>1</sup> This is the Poggendorf compensation method.

<sup>2</sup> A capillary electrometer can be used. The potentiometer may require a galvanometer in addition to the potentiometer as in the instrument described below.

mium,<sup>1</sup> and when made up as the Weston type<sup>2</sup> is made with pure cadmium sulphate, mercuric sulphate, mercury, and cadmium element, the voltage will be slightly over a volt, 1.0183 volt when measured at 20° C.<sup>3</sup>

*The Use of the Known Current of the Standard Cell.*—In continued use a standard cell would soon run down and it would no longer be standard. In order to avoid this difficulty it is customary to standardize a dry-cell or storage-battery current against the standard cell and to use the battery current for the potentiometer. Comparisons with the standard cell must be made at frequent intervals.

*The Hydrogen Electrode Current.*—No practical means has been discovered for determining the potential of a single hydrogen electrode such as we have described (Fig. 21, page 51). One might use two hydrogen electrodes, one dipping into a known hydrogen solution, but the difficulty is that the introduction of an unknown solution would require that we assume no change in the electrode after it has been standardized, which would probably never be the case. In order to make the system more constant we use the current developed from the fall of potential between mercury and platinum in the so-called mercurous chlorid or calomel electrode. As in the case of the cadmium cell, where, by making up the cell in a definite manner, the value of the current becomes known, so, likewise, if the calomel element is made up in a certain way<sup>4</sup> the potential difference will be

<sup>1</sup> Cadmium is used because its salts, like the sulphate used in these methods, are less readily hydrolyzed than other metals, like zinc. Cadmium stands about half-way in the electrochemical series. (See Deming, H. G., General Chemistry, New York, John Wiley & Son, 1924, p. 384.)

<sup>2</sup> So-called because of the commercial concern making it.

<sup>3</sup> This simply means that in making up the cadmium cell, of Weston type, cadmium sulphate is saturated in aqueous solution at 20° C. It is known as a saturated cell. If the solution is made saturated at 40° C., or near the freezing-point of water, it does not matter what temperature is used in the determination in which the cell is used. It is necessary that each Weston cell be labeled as to its being of one or the other type, and also its voltage, determined by comparison with an absolutely standard cell such as those maintained at the Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C.

<sup>4</sup> Accomplished by covering a layer of pure mercury in an electrode vessel (Fig. 26) with calomel and over the calomel a layer of saturated, normal, or decinormal potassium chlorid solution, depending on the type of the cell, is placed. If the KCl is saturated, then a current of electricity flowing from a cell having for one electrode this element and for the other a hydrogen electrode immersed in a normal solution of hydrogen ions has an E. M. F. of 0.245 volt. If a normal solution of KCl is used in making the element, then the potential difference between calomel and normal hydrogen solution is 0.283 volt. Finally, a decinormal KCl electrode gives 0.336 volt.

constant and known. Hence we have the requisites for a cell which develops a current, namely, two electrodes, the one being the calomel electrode and the other the hydrogen electrode. Since we know the potential difference between the platinum and mercury in the calomel half-cell, the unknown is the potential difference between the hydrogen electrode and the unknown solution of hydrogen ions (blood, urine, etc.). Obviously this potential difference in the calomel element will add to the total current produced by the hydrogen cell, and hence we must subtract the value of this potential difference from the

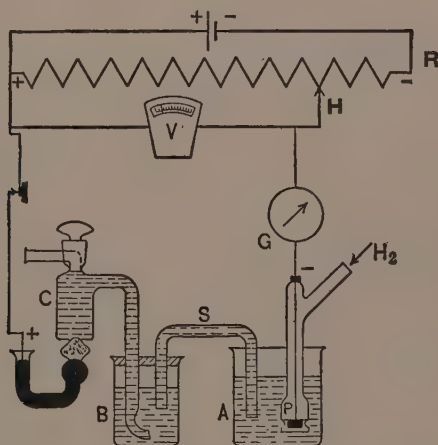


Fig. 22.—The voltmeter-potentiometer method for determining  $pH$ . A voltmeter,  $V$  (calibrated potentiometer), reads the difference in potential between the cell composed of the hydrogen (lower right) and calomel (lower left) elements, and the cell shown in middle, top, the voltage being regulated by the resistance shown immediately above the voltmeter. (Deming's Chemistry.)

observed potential difference obtained by the use of the potentiometer.

**Demonstration of the Method of Determining Hydrogen-ion Concentration of Normal Blood.**—(1) *By Means of the Voltmeter.*—The arrangement of the apparatus is shown in the diagram (Fig. 22). The blood is placed in the hydrogen electrode vessel  $A$ , and the electrode, saturated with hydrogen gas,<sup>1</sup> is lowered into it. Communication is made with the other electrode of the cell, the calomel electrode,  $C$ , by means of the liquid junction,  $B$  and  $S$ , consisting of a tube with

<sup>1</sup> The arrow shows the mode of entrance of the gas.



KCl<sup>1</sup> of the same strength used in making up the calomel electrode. The cell, A, B and C, has a current which is balanced against that from the battery (top).<sup>2</sup> The rheostat R is regulated by means of the sliding contact H. When the two currents are equal, as shown by the stationary position of the mercury in the capillary electrometer, the voltmeter reads directly the potential difference. We shall defer the calculation until after the consideration of the second method.

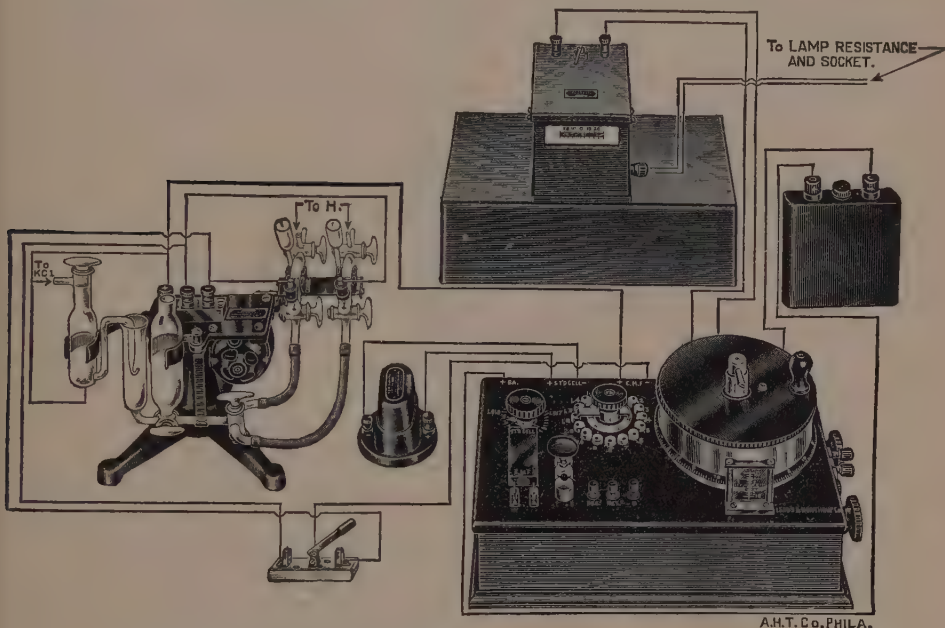


Fig. 23.—Complete apparatus for the electrometric method of determining  $pH$ . From left to right: Stand bearing oscillating clamps holding calomel and hydrogen electrode vessels (compare Fig. 26); key for switching circuit from one  $H^+$  electrode vessel to the other; standard cadmium element; (above) galvanometer; (below) potentiometer; (upper right) accumulator for furnishing source of current, with which the current from the hydrogen and calomel electrode is compared. The accumulator current is standardized by means of the standard cell.

(2) *By Means of the Potentiometer* (Fig. 23).—A standard potentiometer method in common use in biochemical laboratories of the

<sup>1</sup> Potassium chlorid is used, so that there will be as little potential difference set up at this junction as possible.  $K^+$  moves at the rate of 64.6 units and  $Cl^-$  at 65.4; hence the low potential difference set up.

<sup>2</sup> Standardized by the voltmeter V, the null-point apparatus being the capillary electrometer or galvanometer, G. The voltmeter permits immediate determination of the reading, and hence a standard cell is not needed.



United States will be described; it involves apparatus made in this country and available at all times. Assuming that a determination is to be made of the hydrogen-ion concentration of a body fluid like blood, the procedure is as follows<sup>1</sup>:

(A) To standardize the storage battery against the standard cell W: Read the tag attached to the standard cell and set the figure, indicated on the tag, upon the dial in the upper left-hand corner of the potentiometer; this makes all future readings in terms of exactly one volt. Set the double knife-switch near the dial on "Std. Cell," which completes the circuit between the resistances of the potentiometer, the accumulator (storage battery), and the standard cell.

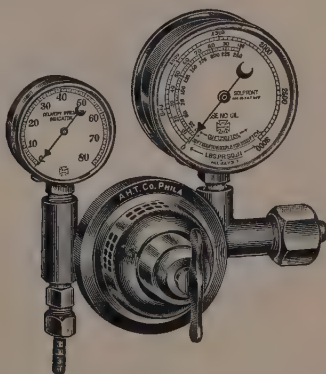


Fig. 24.—Details of gas-regulator for cylinders of  $H_2$ , etc. The flow of gas is regulated by means of the handle operating a diaphragm between the gages. The larger gage registers cylinder pressure; the smaller, pressure in the system passing to the bomb, or other apparatus.

Touch key "Res. 1" and note the deflection of the galvanometer streak of light. Now turn the nearer of the two milled heads at the right-hand end of the potentiometer box until, on touching the key just mentioned, there is but a small deflection of the galvanometer; the exact balance is finally made by adjusting the second milled head until there is no deflection of the galvanometer. Now try touching key "Res. 2"; there will be a slight deflection of the galvanometer,

<sup>1</sup> The instructions are for the Leeds and Northrup Type K potentiometer and the Clark scheme for accessories. It is supposed that the instrument and accessories have been carefully set up and tested against standard solutions of buffers (page 60). The whole apparatus should be enclosed in a thermostat for constant temperature. The thermostat may be a large box, insulated, with sleeve-holes for making the various adjustments.

which is again adjusted, and, finally key "0" is touched and the resistance is adjusted.<sup>1</sup> You now have the accumulator delivering exactly one volt current.

(B) To make the determination: Start the motor operating the hydrogen electrode vessels<sup>2</sup> (Figs. 25 and 26), and let the vessels tilt

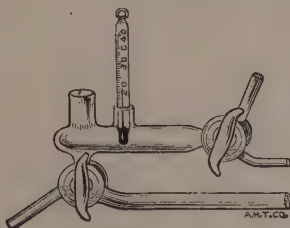


Fig. 25.—The Clark hydrogen electrode vessel. The electrode is placed in the opening to the left, above. The lower tubes below the cock are for drainage (right) and for connection with the liquid junction (left). The unknown is admitted from the upper right tube and hydrogen gas from the tube extending toward the right from the cock.

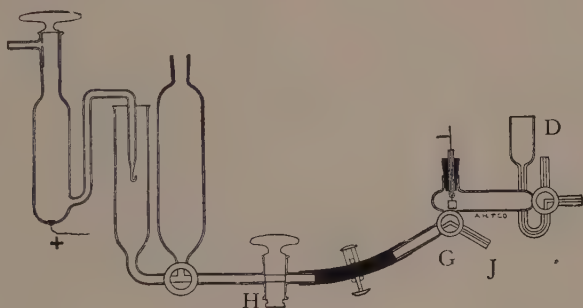


Fig. 26.—Detail of the apparatus for determining pH electrometrically. From left to right: Calomel half-cell; intermediate vessel containing KCl; KCl reservoir; liquid juncture; hydrogen electrode and its vessel. The electrode is shown as a small square inserted in the vessel.

away from the end containing the electrode.<sup>3</sup> Place some of the solution to be tested in the burette D at the opposite end of the vessel

<sup>1</sup> These three keys have smaller and smaller resistance to protect the instrument from too great potential differences to start with.

<sup>2</sup> It is customary to use two of these vessels for rapidity and accuracy.

<sup>3</sup> The electrodes should be blackened before the determination. They are first cleaned with chromic acid and then electroplated with platinum by means of a dry-cell and platinum dipping-electrode, the second electrode being the hydrogen electrode. The deposit of platinum must be uniform and the effect a mossy black.

from the electrode and immediately before admitting the unknown fluid into the vessel, flood the vessel with hydrogen gas from the hydrogen cylinder, or other source of supply<sup>1</sup>; then fill the vessel with the unknown and again pass hydrogen gas into the vessel until it has displaced about half of the contents of the vessel. The electrode should be adjusted so that it is alternately bathed and exposed to the hydrogen atmosphere as the vessel is rocked by the motor. Adjust the column of connecting fluid KCl, first by letting some run through H and G to J, and then, by turning G appropriately, let the fluid come into contact with that in the electrode vessel.<sup>2</sup> Throw the knife switch to "E. M. F.," which completes the circuit from the accumulator through the potentiometer to the galvanometer and there brings it into contact with the current coming from the cell consisting of hydrogen and calomel electrodes. Start the motor and let it cause the hydrogen and  $H^+$  in the solution to come into equilibrium. Then manipulate the dial in the middle of the potentiometer box until there is but a small deflection of the galvanometer when the key Res. 1 is depressed. Complete the balance by rotating the extended wire wound upon the drum. The readings on the dial are in tenths of a volt and those on the drum in thousandths of a volt (millivolt). Add together the two readings<sup>3</sup> and enter the result into your notebook. Note the temperature of the solution registered on the thermometer in the electrode vessel. Make three readings at five-minute intervals, and continue, if necessary, until uniform results are obtained.

**The Calculation of  $C_H$  from Voltage.**—The fundamental equation is based upon Nernst's equation derived from thermodynamics. For the present purpose:

<sup>1</sup> Hydrogen gas in cylinders under compression are obtainable. The gas is impure and must be freed from oxygen. The best procedure to effect this is to wash the gas through two gas washing bottles containing pyrogallol solution, and finally pass the hydrogen through a tube containing asbestos wool soaked with palladium hydrochlorid and then ignited; the palladium, as we have said previously, absorbs hydrogen and passes it, but oxygen does not pass. The tube should be heated electrically by winding around it a layer of nichrome wire connected with the house current through proper resistance.

<sup>2</sup> If the rubber tubing connecting the KCl vessel with the electrode vessel is pinched before opening the cock that admits the KCl to the electrode vessel, and then released after the cock is opened, a good intercommunication is established.

<sup>3</sup> Suppose the dial reads 0.6 and the drum 427. Then the total potential difference between the standard cell and the other cell (calomel and hydrogen electrodes) is 0.6427 volt or 642.7 millivolts.

$$\text{Observed reading of potentiometer} = 0.245 + 0.0591 \left( \frac{1}{\log \text{ of hydrogen-ion conc.}} \right)$$

or, more condensed:

$$V = v + 0.0591 \text{ pH}$$

in which the quantity  $v$  represents the voltage of the calomel-hydrogen cell when the hydrogen element of this cell is in contact with a normal solution of hydrogen ions.<sup>1</sup> The expression  $\text{pH}$  replaces the value following the figure 0.0591 which may be stated as  $-\log C_{\text{H}^+}$ .<sup>2</sup>

**Simplified Method for Determining pH. The Colorimetric Method of Sørensen.**—By mixing solutions of electrolytes like acid and basic phosphates,  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$  and  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , it is possible to secure sets of solutions which range from acidity to neutrality and from neutrality to alkalinity. If these solutions are made up carefully so as to determine the proportions of the two salts, it is possible to obtain a set of solutions which, when colored with certain dyes, or indicators, can be used as standards to determine the acidity or alkalinity of an unknown solution. An appropriate indicator will exhibit a range of colors each shade corresponding to a certain degree of acidity or alkalinity. Not all indicators, however, will produce this specific variation in colors, and the indicator must be selected with care. The salts used in these preparations permit a relatively large addition of acid or alkali before exhibiting a change in reaction, a phenomenon which we shall study in more detail later. If one were interested in the hydrion concentration around neutrality, the dye phenolsulphonephthalein<sup>3</sup> would be an excellent indicator, as it produces a finely graduated range of colors in solutions on either side of the neutral point. For ranges beyond the effective colors of phenol red other dyes are used.<sup>4</sup> Such solutions must be verified by the potentiometer method, but with care in obtaining pure ingredients and in weighing very accurate standards may be obtained. There are factors enter-

<sup>1</sup> This latter procedure is never done in routine, for it is well known that, given the strength of KCl and the temperature, the factor for the cell is determined.

<sup>2</sup> Page 37. For the use and explanations of logarithms see Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Called also phthalein and phenol red. The dye is used elsewhere in medicine, as in the detection of kidney lesions.

<sup>4</sup> For a complete list of dyes suitable for these purposes see Clark, W. M., *The Determination of Hydrogen Ions*, 2d ed., Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1924. Associated with Lubs, these two investigators in the Government laboratories worked out a complete list of salt solutions and dyes for the colorimetric determination of hydrions. See page 60 for a list of dyes and solutions (Fig. 27).



ing into the use of the colorimetric method for  $pH$  determinations which limit its usefulness; these are the presence of substances that alter the chemical composition of the dye; materials which interfere with the passage of light through the solutions, etc. In some cases it is possible to compensate for these difficulties, but in others recourse to the electrometric method must be made.

*Limits of the Above Ranges.*—For studies on the reaction of blood the phosphate mixtures and the three indicators—Methyl Red ( $pH$  5.28–6.23), Phenol Red ( $pH$  6.5–7.38), and Cresol Red ( $pH$  6.95–8.04)—are adequate (average normal  $pH$  of whole blood, 7.3), but if other body fluids, like gastric juice ( $pH$  1.7), are under consideration, these indicators and solutions must be supplemented by those giving



Fig. 27.—Clark-Lubs indicators. The dry substance is furnished in decigram amounts as shown above.

greater range. For the gastric juice a more acid range must be used, with appropriate indicators. For the preparation of solutions and selection of indicators see Appendix.

**EXERCISE 3.**—Preparation of a set of standard solutions for blood  $pH$ . Secure from the store-room one-fifteenth molecular solutions of the basic salt,  $Na_2HPO_4$  and of the acid salt,  $KH_2PO_4$ . Arrange a series of 12 clean Pyrex<sup>1</sup> test-tubes size 100 x 10 mms. in your test-tube rack. Provide each tube with a cork stopper that has been boiled in paraffin. Number each tube with a glass-marking pencil.<sup>2</sup> Now, using the Mohr 1 ml. pipette, graduated to tenths of ml.

<sup>1</sup> Pyrex glass is widely used in making baking-dishes and other ware which must resist high temperatures or the solvent action of reagents. It is manufactured by the Corning Glass Company, Corning, N. Y.

<sup>2</sup> The best pencil for such use is a "dermatograph" pencil that has a somewhat softer "lead" than the ordinary glass-marking pencil which is designed principally for marking commercial glassware and not the more delicate ware of the chemical laboratory. The dermatograph pencil is used by physicians and surgeons for marking out boundaries on the skin.



see (Fig. 216), and other pipettes as required, transfer accurately to Tube No. 1, exactly 0.25 ml. of  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  solution<sup>1</sup>; to Tube 2, exactly 0.5 ml; and so on until the 12 tubes have received their proper amounts. Clean the pipettes<sup>2</sup> first with tap-water from the fosset, then with distilled water, and finally with a little of the next solution to be used,<sup>3</sup> discarding this washing solution. Now begin to place the  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  solution in the tubes, beginning with Tube 1, 9.75 mls. (5 mls. with the 5 ml. pipette, then 4 with the Ostwald-Folin 1 ml. pipette and

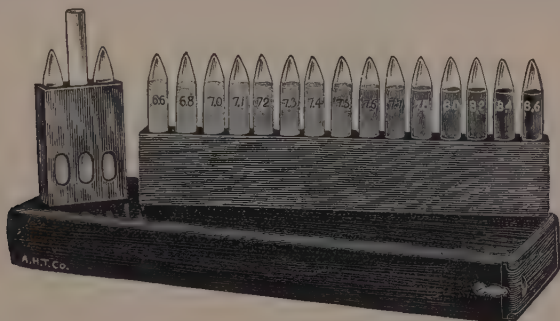


Fig. 28.—Set of solutions of known *pH* ranging from *pH* 6.6 (acid) to 8.6 (alkali), covering the range of reaction of blood and body fluids other than gastric juice and urine. To the left, a small comparison colorimeter. The unknown, in the middle test-tube, is compared with the nearest two tubes, placed one on either side.

0.75 with the Mohr 1 ml. pipette). Continue until all the 12 tubes are filled. Now to each tube add exactly 2 drops of the indicator as follows:

Tubes 1 to 4 inclusively,	brom-cresol-purple
5 to 8	brom-thymol-blue
9 to 12	cresol red

<sup>1</sup> Some Mohr pipettes are graduated to the tip, while others are not. If the pipette belongs to the second class, it is necessary to exercise care in delivering small amounts and to remember that the zero is not at the end of the tip.

<sup>2</sup> Pipettes of the ordinary volumetric kind are so graduated that they either contain the amount indicated on them or deliver that amount when they are permitted to drain against the side of the vessel for about ten seconds. The first kind is called a "contain" pipette, the second, "deliver" or "tip-off" pipette. One should never blow through a pipette. If it is necessary to remove all the liquid (as in the contain pipette), hold one finger over the mouth-piece of the pipette and the warm hand around the bulb; the heat of the hand will cause the confined air to expand, driving out the last drop of liquid (see Appendix).

<sup>3</sup> Do not rinse the pipettes during the delivery of the  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  solutions, because each solution is nearer in composition to the others than to water.

Mix by rolling the tube between the palms of the hands, then stopper each tube carefully, and invert it into an evaporating dish of paraffin on a water-bath so that the stopper and about half a centimeter of

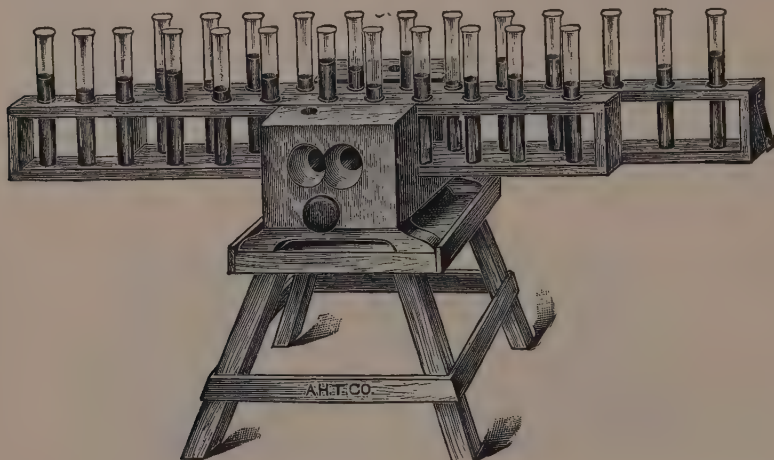


Fig. 29.—Comparison colorimeter for use with the standard buffer solutions for determining  $pH$ .

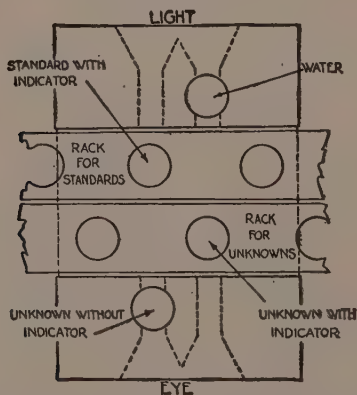


Fig. 30.—Details of the Coolidge colorimeter (Fig. 29). The view is from above. The tube without indicator is to compensate for differences of turbidity, etc.

the tube are coated with the melted paraffin<sup>1</sup>; remove the tube and place upright in your rack to cool. Write the  $pH$  of each tube on a

<sup>1</sup> Or one may use a solution of "hard" paraffin (melts at  $60^{\circ} C.$ ) dissolved in carbon tetrachlorid, which is not inflammable.

gummed label attached to the tube and make it permanent by paraffining. Compare your standards with those of the Department, and also note carefully whether the gradation of your colors is regular. Keep the tubes in your locker when not in use, for light causes a deterioration and change in color. The standards thus made are accurate for a year or sometimes longer.

**Method of Withdrawing Blood** (Fig. 31).—For the purpose of such determinations as the reaction of blood it is necessary to have at least 2 mls. of blood, which give about 1 ml. of plasma.<sup>1</sup> Blood is



Fig. 31.—Showing method of obtaining blood from a vein. (From Todd, *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods*.)

obtained in the adult by puncturing a vein ("venipuncture"), ordinarily the radial vein, as it passes superficially<sup>2</sup> along the palmar surface

<sup>1</sup> Corpuscle-free blood, unclotted; the clotted plasma is serum.

<sup>2</sup> In obese subjects the vein is obscured. The best method of procedure in such cases is to adjust the collar of a plethysmograph around the biceps muscle portion of the arm and to pump up the sleeve to a degree that varies with the subject. By this means the vein becomes palpable, if not visible. A final effort in locating the vein in difficult subjects is made by causing the arm to hang loosely from the shoulder and to have the subject open and close the fist. For arteriosclerotic cases, or in the older subject in which the skin is loose and permits the vein to move freely, place the first and second fingers, somewhat spread, across the vein and thus hold it while the needle is being inserted. The needle must be sharp. "There is,

of the forearm below the elbow (Fig. 31; also Fig. 224). Proceed as follows: Expose the subject's forearm and support it on a table. Dip a small pellet of absorbent cotton<sup>1</sup> into a 10 per cent. solution of iodine in 80 per cent. ethanol and wash the surface of the arm where the puncture is to be made. Now, using a sterile syringe<sup>2</sup> with No. 18 or 20 needle, push the plunger into the syringe as far as possible and then hold it ready to insert into the blood-vessel. In an ordinary subject, press with your thumb against the vein so as to stop the flow of blood through the vein toward the heart; this will cause an engorgement of the blood in the vein and make it stand out prominently. Lay the needle obliquely to the surface of the arm, parallel with the vein and directed toward the subject's body. Push the needle through the skin and through the upper wall of the vein, maintaining with the



Fig. 32.—A satisfactory syringe (Record). This syringe has a glass barrel and metal plunger. It is easily sterilized, durable, and works smoothly and accurately. (From Kolmer, *Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy*.)

thumb of the hand holding the syringe a slight pull upon the plunger so that when the lumen of the vessel is reached the plunger will be easily moved upward, accompanied by blood. Do not withdraw the plunger with any but the slightest effort, for the blood must be collected as it flows unaided. When the desired amount of blood has been obtained, remove the needle by withdrawing it in the same plane as it entered, wash with iodine solution, lay a piece of sterile gauze across the cut, and request the subject to hold it in place with

---

perhaps, no greater enemy to the blood chemist than a clinician armed with a blunt needle" (Beaumont and Dodds, *Recent Advances in Medicine*, page 2). A small carborundum stone should be kept ready for use. The bevel should be less acute than in the commercial needle (Fig. 232). These methods are employed by A. H. Sterner, of Jefferson Hospital, in handling the thousands of blood specimens of the Department of Physiological Chemistry in that institution.

<sup>1</sup> It is not necessary that this cotton be sterile, for it is to be used with alcoholic tincture of iodine, which will sterilize it.

<sup>2</sup> For human subjects the all-glass Luer hypodermic syringe is the best, but for animal work the "Record" type (Fig. 32) is preferable.

his free hand until bleeding has ceased. Immediately inject the blood from the syringe into a "half-test-tube" made by filing and breaking an ordinary 150 mm. test-tube in half; the tube has previously been provided with about 10 mgs. of powdered crystalline potassium



Fig. 33.—Donald D. Van Slyke, member of the Rockefeller Institute, New York, N. Y. Responsible for numerous standard methods in analyses of blood-gases, dynamics of maintenance of neutrality, methods for analysis of protids, quantitative determination of amino-acids, etc. Extensive researches on the biochemistry of normal and pathological processes.

oxalate for every 5 mls. of blood.<sup>1</sup> Mix the oxalate with the blood thoroughly.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As recommended by Folin. See Laboratory Manual of Biological Chemistry, edition of 1922 with Supplement, New York, D. Appleton & Co., page 229.

<sup>2</sup> In collecting blood for the purpose of studying its reaction it is necessary to avoid contact with the air. Before the blood has been introduced into the half-test-tube pour about 2 mls. of paraffin oil into the tube, and when the needle is introduced, insert the tip below the surface of the oil. If the blood is to be kept for any length of time, a small amount of sodium fluorid mixed with thymol should be used; Sander (Wisconsin Psychiatric Institute, Mendota, near Madison) recommends a mixture of 50 milligrams NaF and 5 mgs. thymol for each 5 mls. of blood. See Sander, F. V., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 58, p. 1, 1923. Determinations made upon preserved blood are never satisfactory.



**EXERCISE 4.** Determination of the reaction of blood by the colorimetric method:

Place about 1 ml. of blood, drawn under oil, in a collodion tube<sup>1</sup> of about 2 mls. capacity. Tie the end of the tube with a piece of thread, leaving one end of the thread long enough to suspend the bag in 5 mls. of special saline,<sup>2</sup> in a test-tube that has been washed carefully with the saline. Leave ten minutes and then remove the bag. Add to the dializate in the test-tube 5 drops of phenol red indicator<sup>3</sup> and mix. Compare the color of the solution with that of a set of standard phosphate mixtures<sup>4</sup> bearing phenol red as indicator. Repeat, using blood that has been oxalated as directed on page 65, and compare the results with those obtained on unoxalated blood. Lastly, repeat, using blood that has had preservative (sodium fluorid and thymol) added, and compare results.

**How the Blood Maintains its Neutrality.**—The blood of a healthy person shows a remarkable uniformity in reaction; indeed, there is but little variation even in disease. A reaction of  $pH$  8 has been detected in certain cases of carcinoma, and immediately before death in severe diabetes a reaction of  $pH$  6.9 has been found. The average normal reaction of blood is  $pH$  7.35.<sup>5</sup> However, if one remove and measure the  $CO_2$  of normal blood<sup>6</sup> it will be found that about 55 mls. of the gas may be collected from 100 mls. of blood.<sup>7</sup> If 55 mls. of  $CO_2$  gas be bubbled through pure water, the reaction will be not  $pH$  7.35, but  $pH$  4.5. The following exercise demonstrates the power of sodium bicarbonate, which plays a major rôle in aiding the body to maintain its neutrality in the presence of acid, to compensate for the addition of acid:

**EXERCISE 5.**—Place 10 mls. of a decinormal bicarbonate solution in a small beaker and 10 mls. of distilled water in a second,

<sup>1</sup> For directions for making collodion tubes see Appendix. No anticoagulant is used in blood drawn for the purposes of studying its reaction, neutral K-oxalate giving  $pH$  0.1 to 0.2 too high.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Page 60.

<sup>5</sup> See Van Slyke at end of chapter. Also Koehler, A. E., Brunquist, E. H., and Loevenhart, A. S., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 64, p. 313, 1925.

<sup>6</sup> The method is given on page 70.

<sup>7</sup> Reduced to standard temperature and pressure as described on page 73.

similar beaker. To each add 2 drops of indicator phenol red. Now titrate to  $pH$  7.35 in both cases with hundredth normal  $HCl$  solution, comparing the colors with the standards. Note how many mls. are necessary to bring a decinormal  $NaHCO_3$  to  $pH$  7.35.

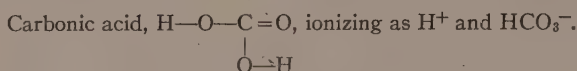
*The Explanation of the Regulation of Neutrality.*—The key is given in the Appendix, where the Sørensen standards are described. A relatively small change in  $pH$  is obtained by adding salts in the middle of the set, but at either end a much greater difference is obtained by the addition of smaller amounts of salt. A quarter of a ml. of solution in the first tubes ( $0.50 - 0.25 = 0.25$ ) causes a difference of  $pH$  0.30, while four times that amount or 1 ml. in Tubes 7 and 8 causes a difference of but  $pH$  0.16 ( $6.97 - 6.81 = 0.16$ ). The reason for this is implied in the following principle: Ionization is decreased when more ions of the same kind are added.<sup>1</sup> The greater the ionization, the stronger the phosphate solutions will become, and hence anything that will retard ionization will maintain the reaction near the neutral point. At either end of the series of phosphate mixtures there is a relatively lower addition of ions, and hence there will be greater ionization. Similarly<sup>2</sup> the addition of relatively greater amounts of ions toward the middle of the series causes repression of ionization and hence a larger amount of acid or alkali may be added to the tubes in the middle of the series than in the first or last tubes. Such salt solutions are known as buffers,<sup>3</sup> and it should be observed that such salts are always those of inactive acid or base. A complete definition of a buffer is a salt of an inactive acid or base tending to hold the concentration of ions ( $H^+$  or  $OH^-$ ) to a constant value.

<sup>1</sup> This is a simple expression of the Law of LeChatelier, f. Mellor.

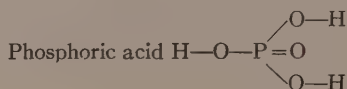
<sup>2</sup> For example, compare the addition of phosphon in Tubes 7 and 8 (1 ml.) and in Tubes 11 and 12 (0.5 ml.). This phenomenon is expressed technically by saying: The greatest buffer value is gained when the dissociation constant equals the hydrogen-ion concentration, that is,  $\frac{BA}{HA} = 1.0$ , BA being a salt, and HA, a corresponding acid, and  $C_H = K$ ; the expression K is described on page 40.

<sup>3</sup> From the analogy of a structure, such as is used in train terminals to oppose the movement of cars past certain points. In modern political parlance a "buffer state" is one standing between two rival states. Bayliss, some years before his death, suggested the term "tampon"; such an object is a roll of absorbent gauze laid upon some portion of the body for the purpose of absorbing liquid, as in "weeping" wounds. The analogy is a better one than "buffer," since it is the conception originally used by Sørensen and faultily translated into English as "buffer."

**The Buffers of the Blood.**—Two inorganic acids are involved, along with protid:



The carbonates are characteristic of the blood plasma.

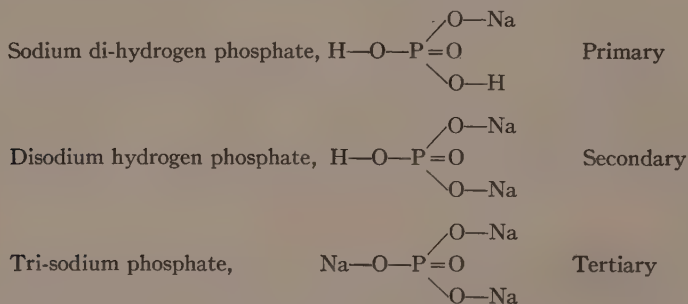


The phosphates are characteristic of the blood-cells.

In the case of carbonic acid the "acid" salt,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ,<sup>1</sup> is formed by the replacement of one hydrogen atom,  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\underset{\text{O}-\text{Na}}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}=\text{O}$ . Both hy-

drogens may be replaced, yielding sodium carbonate:  $\text{Na}-\text{O}-\underset{\text{O}-\text{Na}}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}=\text{O}$ ,

but this salt plays a minor rôle in maintaining the reaction of the body; it is present in blood only to the extent of 0.5 per cent. because of the reaction  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 = 2\text{NaHCO}_3$ . In the case of phosphoric acid there are three possibilities for salts:

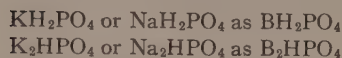


However, in the blood, the last is never realized, owing to its reversion to the secondary phosphate. Since it is immaterial whether sodium or potassium be used in such discussions, it is customary to abbreviate the term base, B, to designate any monovalent base, rather than to use a specific element (cation); hence we may speak of:

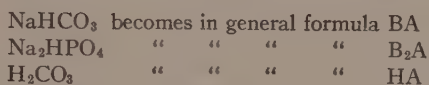
<sup>1</sup> Sodium is used throughout this discussion for simplicity, but potassium and perhaps other cations may form similar salts. Sodium salts are by far the most important.



and



The acid radicles like  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{HPO}_4^{=}$ , etc., are designated as A, so that



The chief protid buffer of the blood is the coloring-matter, *hemoglobin*, a weak acid which exists either as oxyhemoglobin (more acid), or reduced hemoglobin, *i. e.*, simply hemoglobin (less acid).

Oxyhemoglobin becomes in general formula	$\text{HHbO}_2$	(free oxyhemoglobin)
The basic salt	“ “ “	$\text{BHbO}_2$

It is this basic salt that is responsible for three-quarters of the power of the blood to transport carbon dioxid from the tissues to the lungs through the venous blood. The buffers of the blood are, then,  $\text{BHCO}_3$ ,  $\text{B}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , and  $\text{BHbO}_2$ . These three substances comprise the alkali reserve of the blood which is utilized to neutralize acids that are given to the blood by the tissues. Acidosis is that condition in which the alkali reserve is abnormally low, and hence inadequate to carry as much acid as the body demands for health.

**The Reaction of Blood.**—It is so easy to form misconceptions concerning the relation between acids and bases in the blood that we offer the following statements to help the reader to avoid pitfalls:

- (1) The reaction in normal man is always slightly alkaline; considering  $p\text{H}$  7 as neutrality, the reaction of arterial blood is  $p\text{H}$  7.33, that of venous blood  $p\text{H}$  7.35.
- (2) The reaction of the blood in disease rarely encroaches on the acid side of neutrality, and when it does, death inevitably ensues. A reaction of 6.92 has been reported in patients nearing death.
- (3) In acidosis the blood never becomes acid save under the conditions spoken of in (2) above; such conditions are called “uncompensated acidosis.” Hence  $p\text{H}$  determinations of blood show little variations and are of no value in acidosis as single estimations.

- (4) The reason why, even in acidosis, the blood does not become acid is because of the protective action of the alkali reserve made up of the three factors previously mentioned—the carbonate, phosphate, and protid, which act like a sponge, chemically soaking up the acid. When the sponge becomes so saturated or fixed with acid that it can accept no more, death ensues. For the manner in which the alkali reserve is depleted see page 74.

**The Measurement of the Alkali Reserve.**—There are several methods of measuring the alkali reserve. The one commonly used in clinical medicine at the present time is the Van Slyke method<sup>1</sup> which is based upon the following principles:

**DEMONSTRATION: The Van Slyke Method.**—Principle: Carbon dioxid in the presence of water becomes the organic acid  $\begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O—H} \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{O—H} \end{array}$  which ionizes as the monovalent  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . It may ionize farther as a bivalent acid,  $\text{H}^+$ ,  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{CO}_3^{=}$ , but the former is the important form in this discussion. The anion  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is capable of reacting with the alkali reserve of the blood; thus we have B or  $\text{B}_2$  as cations, and these form, with the anion  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , such substance as  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . Carbon dioxid is chemically bound in this manner in the blood. In addition to this carbonate method of binding  $\text{CO}_2$ , there is the binding of the acid by the hemoglobin.<sup>2</sup> Some  $\text{CO}_2$  is also bound by the plasma protids.<sup>3</sup> If, then, we desire to determine the amount of alkali in the blood, we must determine how much  $\text{CO}_2$  gas these various factors will accommodate. The blood is saturated with  $\text{CO}_2$  derived from a cylinder of compressed  $\text{CO}_2$  such as the proprietor of a soda fountain uses<sup>4</sup>; or the breath of a normal person may be used. To accomplish this the blood is spread upon a surface in a thin layer and exposed to the gas; then a measured quantity of blood<sup>5</sup> is subjected to a Torricellian vacuum<sup>6</sup> produced in the Van Slyke apparatus (Fig. 34).

<sup>1</sup> The apparatus used in this determination is also used for other analyses (page 384). <sup>2</sup> Page 78. <sup>3</sup> Page 78.

<sup>4</sup> If such a source is employed, the tension of the  $\text{CO}_2$  gas must be adjusted to about the average of that in the human breath, that is, 40 mms. of mercury.

<sup>5</sup> Or plasma; plasma is used frequently, because the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  bound by the corpuscles is proportionate to the amount bound by the alkali of the plasma, and the manipulation of the plasma is much easier than whole blood.

<sup>6</sup> A vacuum is established similar to that overlying the mercury of a barometer.



**Procedure:** Into the burette, A, introduce 2 mls. dilute ammonium hydroxid solution. With the leveling bulb J held below B, open B to permit the hydroxid, but no air, to enter C. Then raise J above the top of A and turn B until communication is made between C and D, expelling the hydroxid solution. Permit a small amount of mer-

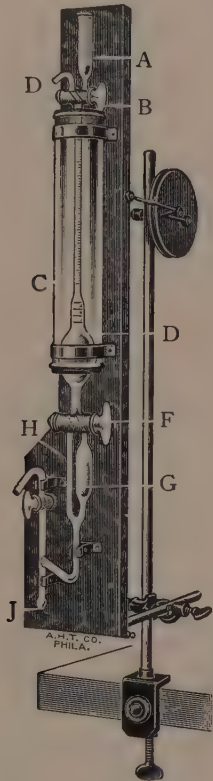


Fig. 34.—Van Slyke apparatus for determining the  $\text{CO}_2$ -combining power of blood in studies of acidosis. Rubber tubing of the leveling bulb is attached to J.

cury to remain in D to act as seal. Place about 1 ml. of albolene in A. The instrument is now ready for use. Saturate 2 mls. or more of blood plasma<sup>1</sup> with  $\text{CO}_2$  by pipetting it, without exposure to the air, into a separatory funnel, the tube of which communicates with a

<sup>1</sup> The plasma has been obtained by the method given on page 63, followed by centrifuging. The plasma layer is about one-half of the total volume of blood. The plasma is carefully pipetted from beneath the oil into the separatory funnel mentioned in the text.

column of glass beads in a bottle; the bottle is provided with a mouth-piece. After rotating the funnel to apply the blood in a thin layer over its inner surface, so that it may come into immediate contact with the  $\text{CO}_2$ , breathe, naturally, through the column of beads and thence through the funnel, the breath passing out the mouth of the funnel. The excess moisture of the breath is thus condensed upon

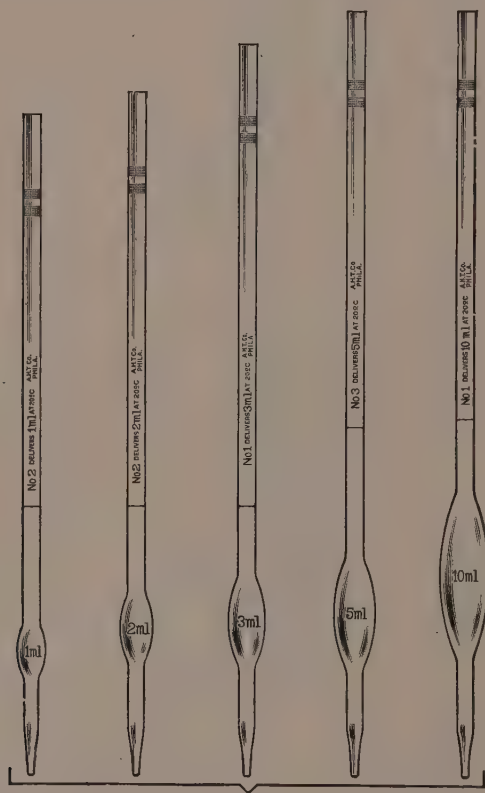


Fig. 35.—The Ostwald-Folin type of pipette widely used in biochemical work.

the beads and does not dilute the blood. Pipette by means of an Ostwald-Folin 1- or 2-ml. pipette (Fig. 35) exactly 1.0 or 2.0 mls. of the blood into the burette, placing the tip of the pipette beneath the surface of the oil to avoid loss of  $\text{CO}_2$ . Place J low and carefully permit the blood to flow into C by turning B appropriately. Add 3 drops caprylic alcohol to the burette and let this follow the blood. Permit no air to enter the apparatus. Finally add enough 5 per cent.

H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> solution to the burette and thence to the graduated tube to bring the reading to exactly 2.5 mls. Place a drop of mercury in the burette to act as a seal. Now lower F below the mercury level in a barometer,<sup>1</sup> thus establishing a vacuum in which the CO<sub>2</sub> gas leaves the substances with which it has been chemically bound and exists as a free gas. Permit the mercury to fall to F and close the cock before any of the blood leaves E. Before the column of CO<sub>2</sub> gas is measured the liquid portion of the blood must be disposed of; open F and permit the blood to pass into G. No gas may accompany the blood.<sup>2</sup> Raise J above B and then turn F until the mercury from H passes into E and thence into C, carrying with it the column of CO<sub>2</sub> gas. Bring the surface of the mercury in the level attached to the mercury reservoir J into the same horizontal plane as the meniscus of the mercury in C and read the graduation on the calibrated tube at this plane.

*Calculation:* As in all gas analysis, it is necessary to express results in standard measurements. The volume of a gas varies inversely with the pressure (Boyle's law) and directly with the temperature (Charles' law). The barometer stands, on the average, at sea-level, 760 mm. of mercury and zero of the Absolute Scale is -273° C. Then:

$$\frac{\text{Barometric reading}}{760} \times \frac{273}{273 + \text{temperature}} \times 100$$

gives the CO<sub>2</sub> bound by 100 mls. of blood.<sup>3</sup>

Tables for rapid conversion of the data obtained by this method are given in Appendix. The average normal figure is 55 to 65 mls. CO<sub>2</sub> per 100 mls. of blood.

**What Causes Variation in the Alkali Reserve? Acidosis.**—The body is continually producing acids of various kinds. Each of the

<sup>1</sup> Average barometer reading at sea-level (Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, for instance, 760 mms.; Philadelphia, Washington, and similarly located cities, about 755 mms.; cities lying in the great valleys, like Chicago, 750 mms. The weather bureau maps are reduced to sea-level readings. A simple form of barometer for gasometric work, such as this determination and the gasometric method for amino-nitrogen (page 292), is the siphon barometer shown in Fig. 114. In the present instance, of course, it is not necessary to use a barometer, but the manipulation is made easier if the excursions of the leveling bulb be maintained within the limits of the barometric reading for the locality. The barometer is used, however, in the calculation.

<sup>2</sup> Except the negligible amount dissolved in the blood.

<sup>3</sup> If 1 ml. of blood was used.

three typical kinds of food (starches, fats, and protids) give rise to  $\text{CO}_2$  when they undergo change in the body. Much of this acid is exhaled from the lungs as  $\text{CO}_2$  gas, and some is excreted through the kidneys in conjugated form.<sup>1</sup> This conjugated  $\text{CO}_2$  is fixed and does not reappear as gaseous  $\text{CO}_2$  capable of being eliminated by the lungs.

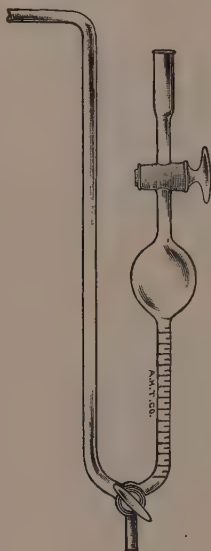


Fig. 36.—The Fridericia alveolar air method for acidosis. The patient respire through the mouth-piece (upper right). The breath is trapped by closing the stopcock below the mouth-piece and also the lower cock. A rubber bulb is attached to the left-hand arm of the tube, the lower tip below the cock just mentioned dipped into 20 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$  solution, the cock turned to admit the alkali into the left arm, and then by appropriate turning of the lower cock aided by the rubber bulb, about 3 mls. of the alkali are permitted to flow into the right arm. The cock is closed, the instrument shaken, immersed in water for constant temperature, the lower cock turned to admit water into the right-hand arm, and the percentage  $\text{CO}_2$  read on the scale. The method is less accurate than others.

In much the same way, certain acids, when present in abnormal amounts, owing to derangement of the oxidizing powers of the body, hold the alkali reserve in conjugated "fixed" form. Such derangement occurs in the lessened oxygen tension on high mountains, and

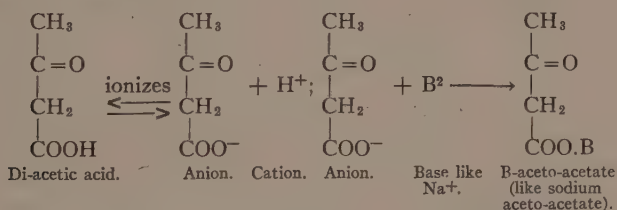
<sup>1</sup> As, for example, in urea,  $\text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}\begin{matrix} \text{O} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{matrix}$ ; uric acid  $\begin{matrix} \text{HN}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ \text{O}=\text{C} \quad \text{C}-\text{N}-\text{H} \\ \text{HN}-\text{C}-\text{N}-\text{H} \end{matrix}$

the lowered efficiency of body oxidation in diabetes mellitus. Four-carbon acids, like the hydroxy-acid beta-hydroxy-butyric acid,



Fig. 37.—The Marriott method for detection of acidosis by alveolar air  $\text{CO}_2$ . The patient breathes back and forth into a football bladder previously filled with 600 mls. of air. The contents of the bladder are then bubbled through a buffer solution (in the tall test-tube) and the resulting color is matched with one from the set. The calibrations are in mms. Hg. alveolar air pressure. Normal is 35 to 40.

$\text{CH}_3\text{.CHOH.CH}_2\text{.COOH}$ ; the keto-acid, aceto-acetic acid<sup>1</sup>  $\text{CH}_3\text{.C=O.CH}_2\text{.COOH}$  arise in diabetes mellitus and these react with the alkali reserve; taking di-acetic acid as an example:



The alkali reserve (B) is exhausted by being thus “fixed” and eliminated through the urine, and  $\text{CO}_2$ , being unable to be carried through the blood, accumulates in the tissues. Consequently, the Van Slyke

<sup>1</sup> Also known as di-acetic and acetyl-acetic acid.

<sup>2</sup> Representing base as explained on page 69.



method for chemically bound  $\text{CO}_2$  shows a lowered reserve in acidosis; that is, a lower combining power of the blood for  $\text{CO}_2$ .<sup>1</sup>

**Characteristics of the Alkali Reserve.**—The carbonate is characteristic of the blood plasma and the phosphates of the cell. At the normal reaction of the blood ( $p\text{H}$  7.3) the phosphates are more efficient than the carbonates in taking care of the acids. The carbonates represent 6 per cent. of the total alkali reserve as measured by the ability of the blood to transport  $\text{CO}_2$ ; the phosphates, 25 per cent. A glance at the table of Sørensen phosphate buffer mixtures<sup>2</sup> reveals the fact that when  $\frac{\text{BA}}{\text{HA}} = 1.0$ ,<sup>3</sup> buffers are most efficient, that is, in the table, the least change in reaction ( $p\text{H}$ ) occurs where  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4 = \text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ . In the blood, however, at ordinary  $p\text{H}$ , 7.3, the corresponding carbonate ratio  $\frac{\text{BHCO}_3}{\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3} = \frac{20}{1}$ , a ratio quite different from unity, but which approaches more nearly to unity when the  $p\text{H}$  of the blood becomes more on the acid side of the normal blood reaction  $p\text{H}$  7.3. When the reaction of blood approaches a point which is clinically critical (more acid than  $p\text{H}$  7.33; see page 66), the bicarbonate is at its theoretically maximum efficiency in neutralizing carbonic acid. At  $p\text{H}$  6.95 the phosphates are also at their greatest efficiency, but they always work at a ratio more nearly that of unity than the carbonates; for when the ratio  $\frac{\text{B}_2\text{HPO}_4}{\text{BH}_2\text{PO}_4} = 1.0$ , the  $p\text{H}$  is 6.8 as compared to the  $p\text{H}$  6.1 when the bicarbonate ratio  $\frac{\text{BHCO}_3}{\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3} = 1.0$ . It is interesting to note that of all the various possible buffers which might have been adopted by the organism to take care of acid, the carbonate and phosphate work at greater efficiency at the ordinary normal blood reaction, namely, near neutrality.

**What is the Magnitude of Gain in Buffer Efficiency?**—We have

<sup>1</sup> A homely illustration of the depletion of alkali reserve in acidosis may be given: Persons, representing the  $\text{CO}_2$ , are waiting on the corner for a street-car; ordinarily there are plenty of seats (alkali reserve) in the cars, but on this occasion (acidosis) the seats have been occupied before the car arrives. The persons in the seats represent the fixed acids which crowd out the  $\text{CO}_2$ . In order to determine the total seating capacity ( $\text{CO}_2$  combining power), one might fill the empty seats during ordinary times and count the number of persons filling the seats after requesting all of them to assemble outside the car; this represents the Van Slyke procedure which fills up the alkali reserve with  $\text{CO}_2$  and then withdraws it for the purpose of estimating its amount.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Page 67.

stated that the alkali reserve becomes more efficient as the acidity of the blood increases, and the question may be asked, How much more acid than is normal could the buffers of the blood accommodate under extreme conditions? Using the figures of Van Slyke,<sup>1</sup> when the change is from the normal alkalinity of the blood ( $pH$  7.35) to  $pH$  7.25, 1.67 mls. of  $H_2CO_3$ <sup>2</sup> could be added for every 100 mls. of blood to neutralize the increased alkalinity produced by the greater efficiency of the buffers. Phosphate is largely responsible for the buffer effect that permits an additional 1.67 mls. of  $H_2CO_3$  to be added to blood; bicarbonate has a less important buffer action. It is seen that the buffering of the phosphate is highly efficient.

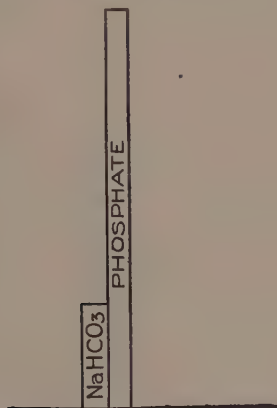
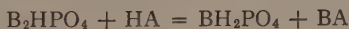
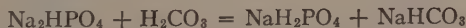


Fig. 38.—Relative buffer value of bicarbonate and phosphate; as the  $pH$  tends to rise in body fluids, the  $NaHCO_3$  efficiency rises.

**Behavior of the Phosphate in Buffer Action.**—The fundamental equation is:



As an example we may use:



**What Share Has the Cell in Buffering?**—It is evident from the above discussion that the cell is rich in buffer substance. Under certain conditions the cells impart to the plasma of the blood some of their buffer value, becoming indirectly the chief reservoir of alkali. The alkali of the cell is composed of phosphate and protid. The

<sup>1</sup> Van Slyke, D. D., *Physiological Reviews*, vol. 1, p. 141, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> Or, considering the  $CO_2$  as bicarbonate, then 9.86 mls. of bicarbonate  $CO_2$ .

protid in turn consists of hemoglobin and stroma protid. The hemoglobin is by far the more important:

	Per cent.
Total buffer power of the cell protid.....	94
Due to hemoglobin as a buffer-salt.....	9
Due to hemoglobin as changed from more acid hemoglobin to less (page 79).....	85 <sup>1</sup>

In this analysis the hemoglobin is given full credit for all the buffering of the cell so far as protid is concerned. We shall explain in detail, presently, how the hemoglobin acts as buffer. Considering the total cell buffer value:

	Per cent.
Total buffer value of the blood.....	100
Due to cell buffers.....	84
Due to hemoglobin.....	62
Due to phosphate.....	22 <sup>2</sup>

From this table the phosphate appears to be responsible for about one-quarter of the total buffer value of the blood.

**How the Hemoglobin Furnishes Alkali** (Fig. 39).—We have just seen that the hemoglobin has a dual capacity in furnishing alkali to the blood: (1) by means of its buffering power, and (2) by means of change in reaction. The red coloring-matter of the blood is a salt,<sup>3</sup> but it possesses an acidity, inasmuch as the acidic properties of the cell (the coloring-matter of the substance) preponderate over the basic nature (of the protid part of the substance). When the compound is oxidized it imparts to the blood a normal reaction of *pH* 7.33 (lungs); but when it is reduced (tissues), and becomes hemoglobin, it is less acid (*pH* 7.35). This property of becoming more alkaline<sup>4</sup> (by *pH* 0.02) leads to its important rôle in buffer action. A reaction difference of *pH* 0.02 may seem inadequate to account for such profound changes in the buffer value of the blood, but in actual experiment,<sup>5</sup> of the total 8 mls. CO<sub>2</sub> carried in every 100 mls. of blood, the

<sup>1</sup> Van Slyke, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 562, 1921. The figures are from the subject "J. J." studied by two English biochemists, Joffe and Poulton.

<sup>2</sup> These figures are compiled from Van Slyke's evaluation of the case "J. J." They differ from those given by Van Slyke in that they are calculated from 100 per cent. rather than the total addition percentage obtained by adding together the quantities obtained by Poulton, who analyzed the blood of "J. J."

<sup>3</sup> Page 318.

<sup>4</sup> That is, less acid; the substance is always acid.

<sup>5</sup> See Van Slyke's *Physiol. Revs.* article, p. 545. Also Campbell, J. M. H., and Poulton, E. P., *Journal of Physiol. (English)*, vol. 54, p. 152, 1920.

reaction of which is between  $pH$  7.35 and 7.25, hemoglobin is responsible for 5.8 mls. per 100 mls. blood.

**Consequences of the Increase in Alkaline Properties of Reduced Hemoglobin.**—In the tissues the blood loses oxygen, and consequently

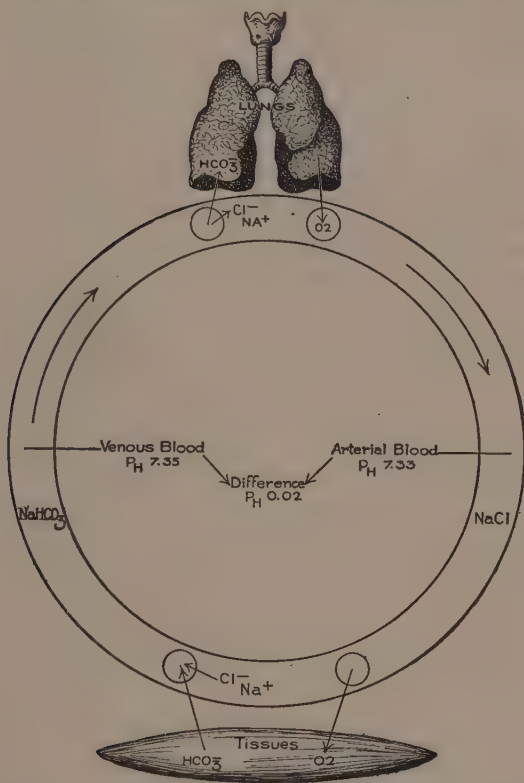


Fig. 39.—The "chlorid shift" in the blood. In the lung hemoglobin becomes oxygenated ( $O_2$ ) and is more acid; in the tissues the hemoglobin becomes reduced and more alkaline. Anions tend to enter the erythrocyte ( $HCO_3^-$ ;  $Cl^-$ );  $Na^+$  remains in the plasma and receives  $HCO_3^-$  to form the bicarbonate,  $NaHCO_3$ . When oxidized in the lungs, the erythrocyte becomes more acid, causing anions ( $HCO_3^-$ ;  $Cl^-$ ) to leave the erythrocyte. The volatile  $CO_2$  passes from the blood, while the  $Cl^-$  links with  $Na^+$  to form  $NaCl$ .

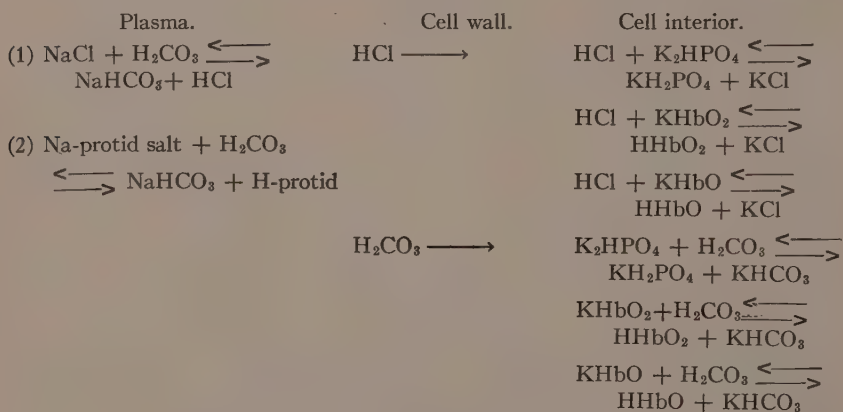
the oxyhemoglobin becomes reduced hemoglobin. During this process, as we have seen, the hemoglobin becomes less acid by  $pH$  0.02. This basicity of the hemoglobin must be compensated, which might be done by the hemoglobin leaving the corpuscle and becoming neutralized in the blood or plasma; or by acid substances entering

the corpuscle and neutralizing the alkalinity there. The latter is the case, for hemoglobin leaves the cell only in pathological states.

**The Anion Shift (Chlorid Shift).**—Hemoglobin cannot leave the cell and sodium cannot enter it<sup>1</sup>; but anions, like  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{HSO}_4^-$ , and especially  $\text{Cl}^-$ , may and do pass into the corpuscle to aid in neutralizing the alkalinity. Of these the chlorion is the most important; it is obtained from the dissociation of sodium chlorid:



When the anion  $\text{Cl}^-$  is absorbed into the corpuscle, the cation  $\text{Na}^+$  is free to unite with  $\text{CO}_2$  from the tissues:  $\text{Na}^+ + \text{HCO}_3^- \rightleftharpoons \text{NaHCO}_3$ . The possibilities of ionic reaction under these conditions, all instigated by the reduction of oxyhemoglobin, are of the nature of an endowment, or loan of alkali by the cell to the plasma and the following reactions give the combinations:



Scheme of ion behavior in blood reactions.

Sulphion does not play a rôle of any importance; this ion does not readily pass through membranes.<sup>2</sup> In the capillaries of the lungs  $\text{NaCl}$  is regenerated since the oxidation of  $\text{HbO}$  by the oxygen within the lungs causes increased acidity in the corpuscle and the acid-producing ions  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , etc., leave the cell. The anion  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is volatile and passes off,  $\text{Cl}^-$  remaining in the blood to form  $\text{NaCl}$  with the  $\text{Na}^+$  freed from the bicarbonate,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ .

<sup>1</sup> Repeated analyses of blood-corpuscles fail to show the presence of sodium.

<sup>2</sup> This quality is employed in catharsis when magnesium sulphate (Epsom salts) is used. See page 64.



**Summary for Buffers.**—The blood, being a transport system, must maintain its neutrality and serve as a means of carrying  $\text{CO}_2$  from the tissues to the lungs where it is exhaled through the breath. The chief agent producing the alkali for this purpose is the red coloring-matter of the blood-corpuscle, hemoglobin, abbreviated  $\text{HHbO}_2$  for oxyhemoglobin of arterial blood and  $\text{HHbO}$  for reduced hemoglobin of venous blood. During the process of reduction of hemoglobin in the capillaries of the tissues it becomes less acid (more alkaline) and this alkalinity is the greater portion of the alkali reserve. The alkali reserve is capable of chemically binding the carbon dioxide which arises from the processes of burning in the tissues. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is carried in the venous blood as bicarbonate, as a part of hemoglobin, and in other ways of lesser importance. In the lungs, the  $\text{CO}_2$  passes from the corpuscle and enters the alveoli of the lung, whence it passes to the outside air. At the same time that  $\text{CO}_2$  leaves the corpuscle, other substances that are acidic in nature, like  $\text{Cl}^-$ , also depart into the plasma. The  $\text{Cl}^-$  is reorganized into  $\text{NaCl}$  from the  $\text{Na}^+$  that was freed from the bicarbonate when  $\text{CO}_2$  passed into the alveoli. This latter process (and accompanying ion shifts) is known as the chlorid shift or, better, the anion shift.<sup>1</sup> In these ways the blood is able to transport carbon dioxide from the tissues. In acidosis the alkali reserve is “fixed” by non-volatile acids, and  $\text{CO}_2$  remains in the tissues, causing, in severe cases, unconsciousness and, ultimately, death.

**Accessory Factors Regulating Reaction of the Blood.**—When one starts to exercise after a period of repose his breathing is accelerated. This is due to a temporary lack of compensation and an increase in the acidity of the blood,<sup>2</sup> owing to the sudden increase in the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  produced by the tissues. There is a center in the medulla in the brain, known as the respiratory center, which responds to small changes in the reaction of the blood. Whenever an increase in hydrion concentration occurs, this center is stimulated, impulses are sent to the ventilating apparatus of the lungs,<sup>3</sup> and increased ventilation ensues. On the other hand, too much ventilation, as with forced breathing, leads to apnea<sup>4</sup> because the  $\text{CO}_2$  is pumped out of the lungs, leaving a decreased hydrion content in the blood,

<sup>1</sup> Attempts to show that the cations like  $\text{Na}^+$  play a part in such regulation of neutrality have not met with success.

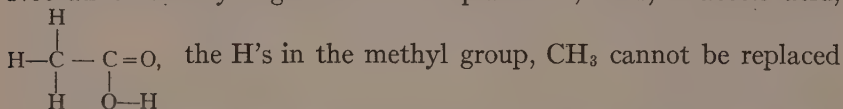
<sup>2</sup> Decreased alkalinity.

<sup>3</sup> Thoracic muscles and diaphragm.

<sup>4</sup> Gr. *a*, without, and *pneumon*, breath; breathing is suspended.

with consequent lack of stimulation of the respiratory center. The alkalosis observed in inexperienced mountain climbers is due to this "Auspumpung,"<sup>1</sup> which has been described by German and English investigators, and also by American physiologists.<sup>2</sup>

**Momentary Acidity and Titrable Acidity.**—Throughout the preceding discussions we have purposely not mentioned titration, the common method for determining reaction of fluids in the general chemical laboratory. We shall now explain why this method has a limited application, especially in biochemistry: Titration determines the total amount of acidity which can be obtained from a given substance *if ionization were complete*. But ionization is not complete under ordinary circumstances. Moreover, ionization differs with different substances,<sup>3</sup> a decinormal solution of a strong acid, like HCl (*pH* 1.07) having a higher acidity than a weak one like acetic acid (*pH* 2.87),<sup>4</sup> yet titration gives the same figure in each case, for the term "decinormal" means one-tenth the number of hydrogen atoms replaceable with a metal like Na, existing in a liter of solution, Not all of the hydrogen ions are replaceable; thus, in acetic acid,



by a metal, while the carboxyl-hydrogen is replaceable; but even this H is bound ten times as tightly to the oxygen as the H in HCl is bound to the Cl. It is for this reason that titration seldom gives the desired answer. If it is necessary to determine the total amount of acidity obtainable from a given solution of acid, titration will give this figure. If, however, it is essential to know how much H<sup>+</sup> is free from the carboxyl, hydrion concentration determination must be made. The acid of the stomach, HCl, is a good example. If the acid in a sample of gastric juice is titrated, a certain amount of hydrogen is found to be replaceable by the metal used (Na, for example, in

<sup>1</sup> German for "pumping out."

<sup>2</sup> Schneider, E. C., special investigator, U. S. Aviation Field, New York. His studies have been made largely on Pike's Peak, Colorado, and at Mitchell Field, New York.

<sup>3</sup> Page 43.

<sup>4</sup> The reader must recall that in using *pH* the higher the number, the lower the acidity. In this book an increase in *pH* means increased acidity, regardless of the fact that it means a decrease in the number indicating the degree of acidity. Thus, in the expression "the *pH* increases from 7.35 to 7.33," the meaning is that there is an increase in acidity, although there is a decrease in numbers.

NaOH), which represents 100 per cent. ionization as the successive stages of titration are accomplished. However, in the stomach under normal conditions ionization occurs only from 85 to 92 per cent., and consequently titration would indicate about one-sixth more acidity than actually occurs physiologically. If we attempt to replace HCl with sulphuric acid in the same normality (about decinormal), we find that the gastric secretion does not digest food for two reasons: (1) the sulphion is not as effective with the enzyme pepsin which causes gastric digestion; and (2) (which is important in the present discussion), sulphuric acid is a weaker acid than hydrochloric, ionizing a third less than HCl. Therefore, about 45 per cent. more acid is found by titrating  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  of the same normality than actually exists, or, to be more exact, than is capable of acting in digestion. However, for some comparative purposes, in gastric analysis,<sup>1</sup> titration serves in place of hydron concentration determinations.

The *relative merits of hydron concentration determinations and titration* for practical biochemical work may be presented as follows:

It is desirable to utilize:

*Hydron determinations.*

In all cases in which reaction affects physiological action, as in the activity of enzymes, maintenance of blood and tissue reactions, etc.

In considerations of growth of micro-organisms, like bacteria, fungi, etc., and especially in studies concerning infection.

Pharmacological effects, depending upon the actual (momentary) acidity at the time of administering the agent. Thus the urinary antiseptic hexa-methylene-tetramin<sup>2</sup> is efficacious, as Hanzlik<sup>3</sup> has shown only when the pH5, at which reaction, formaldehyde,  $\text{H}\cdot\text{CHO}$ , is formed and acts as the antiseptic. Consequently this substance has no value except when used within the hydron limits given above.

*Titration.*

In reactions of body fluids in which no especial correlation exists between ( $\text{H}^+$ ) and physiological action, as in the case of the urine, in which the reaction is a function of the acid-base intake of the food and the excretion of phosphates.

In chemical determinations involving mass-volume reactions such as one encounters in determinations of substances in biochemical material: The determination of nitrogen by the Kjeldahl<sup>4</sup> method; chlorion by the Volhard method,<sup>5</sup> etc. In cases in which comparative rather than actual results are required, as in clinical expressions of gastric acidity, which run parallel by the two methods, ( $\text{H}^+$ ) and titration.

<sup>1</sup> Page 439.

<sup>2</sup> Commercially known as "urotropin" after the German preparation of Schering and Glatz.

<sup>3</sup> P. J. Hanzlik, Professor of Pharmacology, School of Medicine, Leland Stanford, Jr., University, San Francisco, California. See Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 54, p. 1140, 1910; also vol. 62, p. 295, 1914.

<sup>4</sup> Page 282.

<sup>5</sup> Chap. XV.

By means of indicators, properly selected, titration results are convertible into hydron concentration, and *vice versa*, hydron determinations are always in terms of normality, for  $pH$  signifies the minus logarithm of normality. These points will become apparent in future exercises.

**Preparation of Standard Solutions.**—For purposes of titration to be given in the following pages it is essential to use standard solutions of known normality. The principles of the composition of such fluids will be given now as practical exercises:

**EXERCISE 5. Standardization of Chemical Glassware.**—While at the present time commercial glassware has reached a more dependable stage than heretofore has existed, it is never safe to assume that a pipette or burette is correctly calibrated.

(I) *Calibration of a 5-ml. Pipette.*—Secure, from the store-room, some slips of gummed paper. Warm some cleaning solution<sup>1</sup> in a

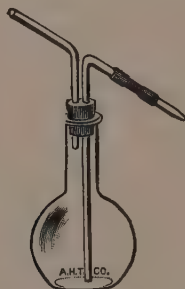


Fig. 40.—Wash-bottle.

small casserole or beaker and pour it through the mouth-piece of the pipette (never suck up such a solution), drop by drop, rotating the pipette and inclining it so that all parts of the interior surface are brought into contact with the solution. Hold the mouth-piece of the pipette against the palm of your hand with the tip directed upward at an angle of about  $45^\circ$  and hold your hand beneath running water from a tap; this will force the water upward through the pipette and insure that all portions of the inner surface come into contact with the cleansing fluid. After about a minute's washing, rinse with distilled water from your wash-bottle, remove as much adhering water as possible by shaking the pipette, and then remove the water by sucking

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.



up through it, first, ethanol and then ether in small amounts from a beaker. Finally, insert the tip of the pipette into a piece of rubber tubing attached to the side-tube of a filter-pump (Chapter XVI) and pass air through the pipette for about five minutes. The instrument is now thoroughly clean. By means of a piece of filter-paper remove all oil from the hands that accumulates on the exterior of the pipette while handling, so that the tube is bright and clean and quite transparent. Now carry the tube, along with the pieces of gummed

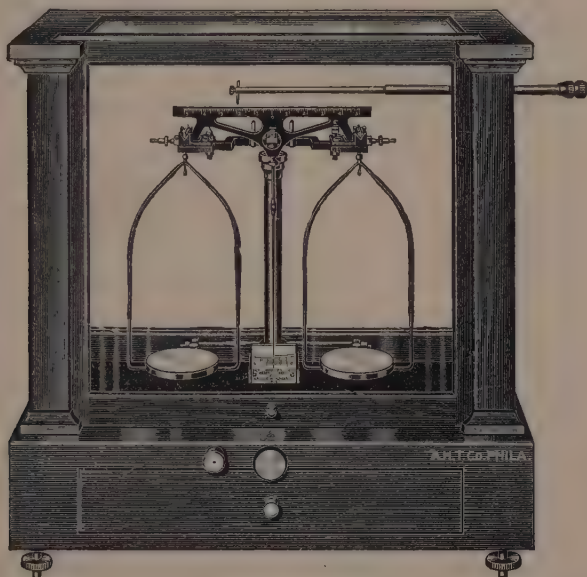


Fig. 41.—Type of laboratory balance. Great care must be exercised in using the balance if exact results are sought. Load the balance only while the knife-points are not in contact. For weighings below 1 gram use the plunger at the left of the central milled head for releasing the pans.

paper, two 50 ml. beakers, and your wash-bottle to the balance room, where you are assigned a balance. First adjust the balance: See that the rider has been removed from the graduated beam, that the pans are clean, and then note the swing of the pans; they should not cause the indicator to vary more than 10 spaces on the graduated scale as the beam rocks. If anything is wrong with the instrument, call the attention of the instructor to it. Do not attempt adjustments yourself. After bringing the instrument to rest, place a beaker on each pan and adjust the sweep of the pointer to equilibrium by



adding a drop or more of water from your wash-bottle to the lighter beaker. Remove the delivery tube from your wash-bottle, insert the pipette, and draw up a column of water past the mark by about 2 cm. Place the tip of your index-finger over the upper end of the pipette to prevent the escape of the water, remove the pipette, dry



Fig. 42.—Rider for analytical balance. Five mg. riders are used with the balance (Fig. 41).



Fig. 43.—Box of gravimetric, analytical weights for use with the balance (Fig. 41). Weights must be handled only with care, with the tweezers provided with each box, and never permitted to touch the hand or any corrosive chemical. The weights shown above are from 0.500 to 0.001 g. For the larger weights see Fig. 44.

the exterior carefully with a piece of filter-paper, and then adjust the meniscus. Hold the tip of the instrument over one of the beakers on one of the balance pans; permit the water contained in the pipette to flow into the beaker until the contents are quite removed, the last portions being removed by capillary action as the tip of the pipette



Fig. 44.—Analytical balance weights. Compare Fig. 45 for weights less than 1 gram.



Fig. 45.—Set of weights for use with the analytical balance, from 1 to 500 mgs. (0.001–0.500 g.). These weights must be returned to their proper places in the box (Fig. 43) after use. They are to be handled with forceps.

is held against the side of the beaker. Let it remain ten seconds; there will be left a small amount of water in the extreme tip<sup>1</sup> that is never removed, since the pipette is graduated—not to contain 5 mls., but to deliver that amount. Now proceed to weigh the water de-

<sup>1</sup> The description is for a "delivery" pipette; a "tip-off" or "contain" pipette must have the last drops removed by the method given in the Appendix.

livered from the pipette by adding weights until the balance is again in equilibrium. Compare the weights with those given in the table<sup>1</sup> which gives the weight of pure water at different temperatures for volumes like 5 mls., etc. If the pipette needs adjustment,<sup>2</sup> make it in this manner: Balance the instrument and then lay weights upon one pan equal to the weight called for, for a volume of water at the temperature of the experiment, as indicated by the table. Fill the pipette again, as in the beginning of the exercise, but adjust the meniscus slightly above or below the mark on the pipette according to the error. Now let the water flow from the pipette into the lighter beaker, drop by drop, until the instrument is in equilibrium;

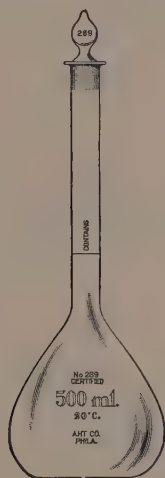


Fig. 46.—Volumetric flask. In accurate work the temperature of the fluid must be 20° C.

stop the flow immediately. When the proper point is reached, after repeated trials, place a piece of moistened gummed paper exactly opposite the meniscus of the column of water in the pipette. This is the correct mark for the pipette. By means of a file,<sup>3</sup> etch a shallow ring around the tube of the pipette to indicate the new marking. Use this pipette for other calibrations mentioned below.

*Calibration of a 250-ml. Volumetric Flask.*—Proceed in the manner described above for standardizing a pipette, making necessary modifications for the type of glassware in this case.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> It is well to make three determinations and take the average of the three.

<sup>3</sup> After a duplicate determination for the sake of accuracy.

*Calibration of a 25-ml. Volumetric Cylinder.*—Clean and dry the cylinder as directed above for the pipette. Fill the calibrated 5-ml. pipette with distilled water, noting temperature. Adjust the meniscus to the corrected mark. Empty the pipette into the cylinder as described for the pipette and note the position of the meniscus in the cylinder. Note any discrepancies between the present calibration and that done by the manufacturers of the cylinder and note, in your note-book, the adjustments necessary for the different 5 ml. markings.

*Calibration of the 1-ml. Ostwald-Folin Pipette.*—This should be done with the greatest care: Proceed exactly as described for the 5-ml. pipette, but using the quantities appropriate for the smaller pipette, as given in the table in the Appendix.

*Calibration of a 25-ml. Burette.*—This may be done by filling the cleaned burette to the zero mark toward the lower portion of the



Fig. 47.—Arrangement for burettes without glass stop-cocks. In place of the metal clamp a glass bead may be inserted into the rubber tubing, which, being pinched, permits the flow of liquid from the burette.

instrument with distilled water and delivering 5-ml. portions of water at known temperature to the burette from the calibrated 5-ml. pipette, noting in your book the discrepancies observed. Or, the burette may be filled to the zero mark at the top of the instrument and weighing successive 5-ml. volumes as described for the 5-ml. pipette calibration.

*Procedure for Making Standard Solutions.*—Place about 25 gs. of sodium hydrogen carbonate,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , in an evaporating dish and bring the temperature to  $180^\circ \text{C}$ . on a sand-bath, or, preferably, in a thermostat automatically held at that temperature.<sup>1</sup> Leave for half an hour or longer, remove the dish by means of crucible

<sup>1</sup> The reaction involved is as follows:  $2\text{NaHCO}_3 = \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \uparrow$  (the arrow means that  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$  passes off as a gas).

tongs, and transfer the contents to a small, clean, warmed bottle which can be tightly stoppered. Let the contents cool and then place the unstoppered bottle in your desiccator<sup>1</sup> over  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Leave until the following period, giving your attention now to the making of standard acid (Exercise 6). When you are able to return to the preparation of the alkali, proceed as follows: From the bottle in the desiccator weigh out half-gram lots of the sodium carbonate<sup>2</sup> formed from the bicarbonate, according to the following directions: Weigh the loosely stoppered bottle to the third place of decimals accurately and enter the figures in your note-book. Remove the stopper by means of crucible tongs and with a clean spatula or knife-blade, remove to a small Erlenmeyer flask, without spilling, about a half

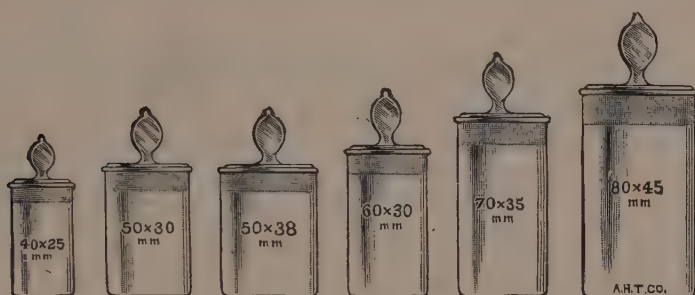


Fig. 48.—Weighing bottles of various capacities. For careful analysis the substance must be placed in the bottle of suitable size, the bottle weighed, and then about the required amount is removed; a second weighing shows the amount removed.

spoonful of the powder. Stopper the bottle and the flask and then reweigh the bottle as before. Subtract this weight from the previous weight and label the Erlenmeyer flask with glass-marking pencil, indicating the weight of the  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  within it. Repeat this procedure three times. You have now obtained three accurately weighed samples of alkali. Add to each a little distilled water and dissolve the powder. Add one drop of indicator (methyl orange; sodium alizarin sulphonate; methyl red, or other good indicator, excepting

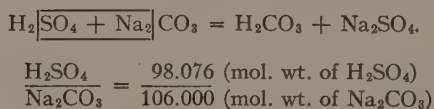
<sup>1</sup> The Hempel form of desiccator, in which the acid is contained in the rim of the cover of the desiccator is preferable, because water-vapor rises. The best way to make an  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  desiccator for ordinary use is to soak lumps of pumice about the size of cranberries with pure concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and lay them in the bottom of the desiccator. The dish containing the reagent undergoing desiccation is supported upon short pieces of large size glass tubing laid horizontally.

<sup>2</sup> See the reaction given in the footnote, page 88.

phenolphthalein) to each flask. From a burette holding some of the standard acid, made according to the directions given in the following Exercise, run in, carefully, acid until the indicator is seen to exhibit a change in color. Stop the instant any change is observed and arrange a control specimen by adding a drop of indicator to a little distilled water in a test-tube or Erlenmeyer flask, and then add a drop of the standard acid from the stock bottle. Now, with this control giving the color to which titration is to be carried, before you proceed to add acid drop by drop from the burette until the control color is reached. Take the reading, subtract the original burette reading from it, enter the reading in your book, and also pencil it on the Erlenmeyer flask. Repeat with the second and third Erlenmeyer flasks in similar manner. Now with these figures, determine the normality of the acid: If the acid were exactly decinormal, each ml. would contain 0.0049 g.<sup>1</sup> of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and  $n$  mls. would therefore contain 0.0049  $n$ . gs. Therefore:

Sought..... 0.0049  $n$ . gs.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$

The amount found is found as follows: The fundamental equation is:



The amount of  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  taken for the first titration is  $y$  gs., which requires for neutralization by the  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ :

$$\frac{98.076}{106.000} = \frac{x}{y}$$

$$x = 0.925 y.$$

Therefore:

Found: 0.925  $y$  gs.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .

The normality is the number of times the amount found must be increased or decreased to represent exactly normal  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Hence:

When "found" must be  $\begin{matrix} \text{increased} \\ \text{decreased} \end{matrix}$  to equal "sought,"  $\frac{0.0049n}{0.925 y}$  is

<sup>1</sup> Molecular weight of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = 98.076$ . A normal solution contains one-half that amount, because of double hydrogen equivalent and a decinormal solution contains 0.1 of that amount of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , or 4.9038 gs., per liter of solution, each ml. of which contains 0.0049 g.



the normality. Take the average of the three figures for normality as the strength of the standard acid.

With this standard acid prepare a standard decinormal solution of sodium hydroxid, NaOH, from the concentrated, 50 per cent. solution of sodium hydroxid as follows: By titrating against the standard acid solution, determine the normality of the hydroxid solution, using exactly one ml. of the acid. By proper dilution, adjust the normality of the alkali solution to decinormality.<sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE 6. *Preparation of Approximately Decinormal Sulphuric Acid Solution.*—The commercial concentrated sulphuric acid of specific gravity 1.84 is about twenty times normal, because it is about 98 per cent. pure  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , that is, 98 gs.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  per 100 mls. of "concentrated" solution. A decinormal sulphuric acid solution contains 4.9 gs.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  per liter.<sup>2</sup> Therefore 5 gs., or 4.2 mls., of the concentrated solution from the desk must be diluted to one liter to make a decinormal solution. Dilute to the mark with distilled water<sup>3</sup>; this makes a solution approximately decinormal.

#### SUMMARY

(1) Man's present organism, chemically as well as morphologically, is the result of development through long ages.

(2) About one-fifth of the total number of known elements are incorporated in the human body.

(3) While many of these elements are indispensable to the composition and maintenance of the body, hydrogen is of especial importance owing to its relation to the reaction of the tissues and fluids of the body. It is responsible for their acidity.

(4) A mechanism exists in man for the critical regulation of the reaction of the body, which is maintained at practical neutrality notwithstanding the great amount of acid produced in the tissues.

(5) Methods are given for determining both the acidity and the

<sup>1</sup> If the normality of an approximately decinormal NaOH solution is exactly known, it is not necessary to make it exactly decinormal, but it is frequently convenient to have an exactly decinormal standard solution of both acid and base.

<sup>2</sup> Page 90.

<sup>3</sup> Throughout the work the temperature must be kept at about 20° C. (room temperature). The volumetric flasks are, as a rule, calibrated for 20° C. or else 15° C., or 25° C. The accuracy demanded by the present work will be met by maintaining the temperature at 20° C.

reserve basicity which regulates the reaction of the body. These methods depend upon the determination of momentary acidity, due to the amount of hydrion per volume or weight of fluid or tissue.

(6) The method of titration, which determines the normality of a solution when dissociation of the acid-producing substances is 100 per cent., is of only limited use in biochemistry, since the critical factor ordinarily is the amount of hydrion free to manifest itself under the conditions existing at the time the determination is made.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Brockman, C. J. Co-ordination. *Chemistry and Industry*, vol. 43, p. 756, 1924.
- Burns, D. *An Introduction to Biophysics*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1921.
- Clark, W. M. *The Determination of Hydrogen Ions*, 2d ed., Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1923.
- Creighton, H. J. *Principles and Applications of Electrochemistry*, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1924. (Volume 1 of Creighton and Fink, *Electrochemistry*.)
- Deming, H. G. *General Chemistry*, 2d ed., New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1924.
- Henderson, L. J. *The Fitness of the Environment*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1914.
- Lewis, W. C. Mc. *A System of Physical Chemistry*, New York, Longmans Green & Co., 1918 (3 volumes).
- Mellor, J. W. *A Comprehensive Treatise on Inorganic and Theoretical Chemistry*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 8 volumes, vol. 1, 1922.
- Michaelis, L. *Ueber die Wasserstoffionenkonzentration*, Berlin, Julius Springer, 1923.
- Sørensen, S. P. L. *Ueber die Messung und Bedeutung der Wasserstoffionenkonzentration bei biologischen Prozessen*, *Ergebnisse der Physiologie*, vol. 12, p. 393.
- Van Slyke, D. D. The Carbon Dioxid Carriers of the Blood, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 141, 1921.
- Van Slyke, D. D., and Cullen, G. E. Studies in Acidosis, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 30, p. 289, and other articles of similar nature in this journal for 1917 and later.
- Wilson, D. W. Neutrality Regulations in the Body, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 295, 1923.

## CHAPTER II

### THE PROMOTERS OF CHEMICAL ACTION. THE ENZYMES<sup>1</sup>

"Deus magnus in magnis, maximus in minimis."—*St. Francis of Assisi.*

**Peculiarities of Biochemical Reactions.**—One of the most evident differences between animate and inanimate objects is the power of the living organism to perform quickly reactions which, outside it, require either prolonged intervals of time or special conditions, such as increased pressure and temperature. What power does the body possess by which it can perform these actions quickly at the ordinary temperatures and pressures to which it is subjected? The answer involves a study of the phenomena of surfaces and membranes which separate different parts of the organism. Each cell is separated from other cells by a membrane, and within each cell are separating surfaces, such as the nuclear membrane surrounding the nucleus. At the surface of the nucleus many important phenomena occur. It is there that the granules are first seen in a secreting gland-cell. Cartilage and bone first form at the boundary between nucleus and cytoplasm (Fig. 49). These are only a few of the phenomena of surfaces. At the present time such phenomena are largely explained on physical-chemical grounds, under the general category of capillary, or surface phenomena, but it is possible to show in certain cases that apparently purely physical processes are in reality special chemical phenomena, explicable by chemical equations. The number of such cases, however, is limited, and until more are discovered it is well to adhere to the physical conception. The only truly chemical processes of this nature that have been satisfactorily explained are those of two enzymes concerned with oxidation: (1) *thyroxin*,<sup>2</sup> the principle of the thyroid gland, insufficiency or absence of which leads to goiter;

<sup>1</sup> The term "promoter" has been used in technology to designate an agent which works with another substance in producing a certain reaction. Thus, in a process for synthetic ammonia, iron is used to hasten the process, but if tungsten is added also, the reaction is more complete. Iron is called the *catalyzer*, and tungsten the *promoter*. Here, however, we use the term synonymously with catalyzer.

<sup>2</sup> Page 136.

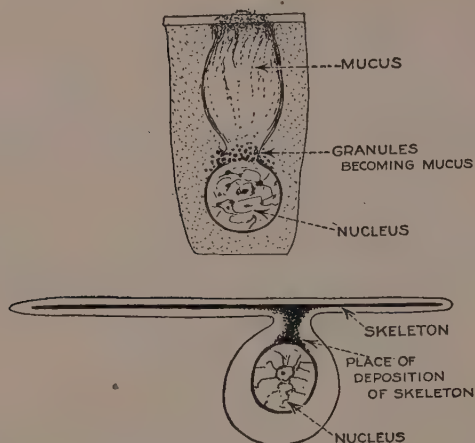


Fig. 49.—Illustrating the importance of the interface in the organism. Above, a gland cell, secreting mucus; the secretion arises at the interface between nucleus and cytoplasm. Below, a secreting skeletal cell, showing the origin of the skeletal substance in the region of the interface, the nuclear membrane. Such a cell is encountered in the spicule-forming cells of the sponge animal and, in a modified manner, in the human bone-forming cell.

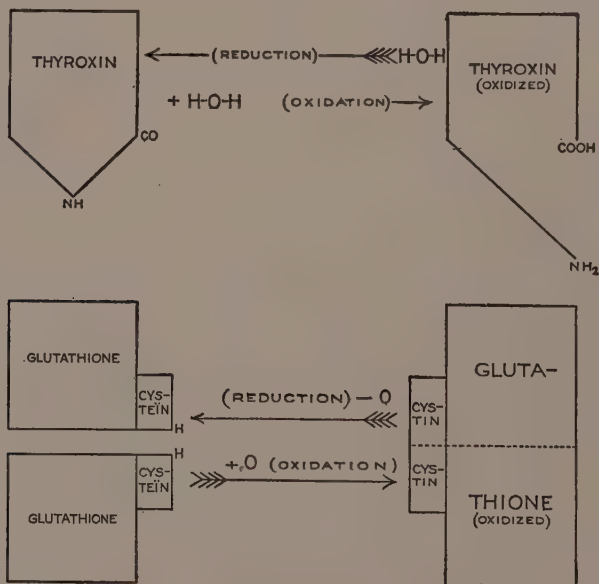


Fig. 50.—Illustration designed to show, diagrammatically, the only two demonstrable cases of enzyme action. Thyroxine alternately opens and closes its ring, involving an acceptance of oxygen and a release of oxygen. As a result the freed oxygen is available for oxidations in the body. A similar action is seen in the case of glutathione.

and (2) *glutathione*, found in various tissues.<sup>1</sup> We shall discuss these later.

**Colloidal States of Matter.**—When matter exists in such a form that much surface is exposed in proportion to its bulk, that state is called colloidal.<sup>2</sup> The surface of a given sphere compared to its volume may be greatly increased by breaking it up into smaller bodies. Each time a sphere is divided (Fig. 51) two halves are formed and the line of cleavage between them adds to the surface of each half, the length of the line A-B. The surface of two spheres are related by the squares of the radii, whereas the volumes are related by the cubes. Consequently, as the size (radius) of the sphere is reduced by cutting it into two portions, the volume is relatively more reduced than the surface. This principle is at the basis of the emulsification accompanying the digestion of fat.<sup>3</sup> The properties of a substance in

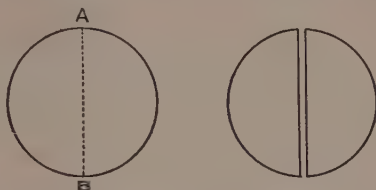


Fig. 51.—Illustrating the increase in surface as a sphere becomes divided. This is the principle of the action of bile in fat digestion.

finely divided state differ from those of the same substance in larger masses; or, as Ostwald<sup>4</sup> said: "Every structure assumes special properties and a special behavior when its particles are so small that they can no longer be recognized microscopically, while they are too large to be called molecules."

**Enzymes are Known to Be Colloidal.**—Enzyme action seems to resemble in many respects the behavior of matter in finely divided state, known as catalysis,<sup>5</sup> an example of which we shall now present:

<sup>1</sup> Page 339. The "Bios" of Wildiers and of Eddy may be a third case, as Kendall suggested. (Page 548.)

<sup>2</sup> Greek *kolla*, glue, and *oidos*, like; so named by Thomas Graham, English physicist of the 19th century.

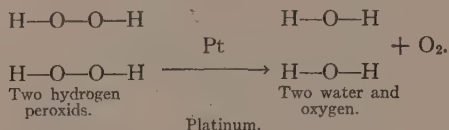
<sup>3</sup> Page 452.

<sup>4</sup> W. Ostwald, German chemist.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *kata*, down, and *lysis*, loosen; we should say "loosen up." For a discussion of the chemistry of enzyme action and related topics see Falk.



EXERCISE 1.—Into 5 mls. of 3 per cent. hydrogen peroxid solution pour one volume of colloidal platinum solution made by the laboratory.<sup>1</sup> Note the evolution of gas according to the reaction:



**The Surface Phenomenon of Platinum Black.**—In the preparation of the platinum solution used in the Exercise just given a piece of platinum wire about 0.1 cm. radius was divided, electrically, into small particles, so small that they are invisible under the highest powers of the microscope. The platinum, considered as a sphere 0.1 cm. in radius, is broken into small spheres with a radius each of  $\frac{1}{1,000,000}$  centimeter.<sup>2</sup> The surface of the platinum wire, considered as a sphere, is 0.628 sq. cms. The combined surface of the small platinum colloidal particles is over 100 sq. meters, that is, about 10,000,000 times greater than the original surface of the platinum. Figure 53 shows the relative sizes of particles exhibiting colloidal properties, compared with the proportions of some common microscopic objects, such as bacilli and blood-corpuscles. This extent of surface of the colloidal particles is responsible for the hastening of the reduction of hydrogen peroxid according to the equation given above.

Everyone knows that certain chemicals tend to become attached to surfaces. Water adheres to a pane of glass exposed to the rain. Iron adheres to porcelain of the bath-tubs. On the other hand, some substances will not adhere to surfaces: Mercury does not adhere to glass. It is known that the same chemical affinities which matter exhibits in chemical reactions are responsible for the adhesion of substances on surfaces. The question may be asked, What has this power of adsorption to do with hastening chemical reactions? It has been shown by Langmuir<sup>3</sup> that such adsorption involves the spread of the substance, or the tendency for it to spread over the colloidal particle

<sup>1</sup> The method is given in the Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> The unit of measurement of these small particles is the millimicron, one millionth of a millimeter and abbreviated  $\mu\mu$ . One  $\mu$  is a thousandth of a millimeter.

<sup>3</sup> I. Langmuir, Chemist, General Electric Company, Schenectady, N. Y.





Fig. 52.—Colloidal gold reactions. Application of colloidal chemistry. The upper set shows a reaction with the cerebrospinal fluid of a parietic ("paretic curve"); the lower set shows a reaction with the cerebrospinal fluid of a tabetic ("luetie curve"). (From Kolmer, Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy.)

in a very thin layer, frequently one molecule thick. It is evident then why hydrogen peroxid is rapidly reduced in the above experiment. Hydrogen peroxid, like all peroxids is unstable, and if it is spread over a surface in an extremely thin layer, the opportunities for chemical action with consequent reduction, are infinitely increased.<sup>1</sup> Dust will produce the same result as platinum black, and for this reason the surgeon who uses  $H_2O_2$  must prevent dust from falling into his opened bottle of peroxid.

**The Surface Phenomenon of Gold Particles.**—The Lange<sup>2</sup> test for cerebrospinal syphilis and other diseases depends upon changes in the color of colloidal gold preparations (Fig. 52). Certain abnormal constituents of the fluid precipitate the gold particles, and the color varies according to the number of particles left in suspension in the solution. The particles of gold are about  $10\ \mu\mu$  in diameter. The abnormal substances must reach a certain concentration in the fluid before they will cause the precipitation of the gold particles.

**DEMONSTRATION.**—Colloidal gold is formed by reducing gold solutions by means of formaldehyde,<sup>3</sup> and the distribution of the gold particles throughout the solution cause the color. The character and degree of dispersion determine whether the solution can be used in the Lange test. Syphilitic fluid causes the precipitation known as Group 1; cerebrospinal meningitis, Group 2; and paresis, Group 3.

**Peptization.**—If chlorid, bromid, or iodid is added to the gold solution the solution becomes more stable. These substances form compounds with gold. On the other hand, the addition of fluorid to gold solutions causes the particles of gold to become precipitated and to mass together. The term "peptized" is used to indicate that a colloidal solution is relatively stable. Fluorid does not form a combination with gold, and therefore has no peptizing power. When peptization occurs, the colloidal particle assumes the electrical charge of the substance peptizing it. Chlorid,  $Cl^-$ , is negatively charged and endows the gold with this charge. It is impossible to

<sup>1</sup> Persons familiar with photography know that if a plate is in contact with the sides of the developing tray, that edge develops somewhat more rapidly than other parts.

<sup>2</sup> C. Lange, German physician, contemporary.

<sup>3</sup> The method for making the solution is given in the Appendix.

have only negative charges; positive charges must be present within the limits of the electrostatic distance.<sup>1</sup>

0.1 $\mu\mu$	1 $\mu\mu$	10 $\mu\mu$	1 $\mu$	10 $\mu$	100 $\mu$	1 mm.
Diameter of H <sub>2</sub> mol.	Diameter of starch mol.	Diameter of gold suspension.	Diameter of clay suspension.	Maximum length of bacillus.	Limits of unaided vision.	
Diameter of ethanol molecule.	Gold particles begin to settle.	At about 1 $\mu$ particles begin to pass through ordinary qualitative filter-paper.		Brownian movement disappears.		

At about 1  $\mu\mu$  colloidal phenomena begin to appear.

Chart showing relative sizes of submicroscopic, microscopic, and visible objects (unaided vision).

1  $\mu$  (micron) = 0.001 mm. = 0.00,003,937 inch.

1  $\mu\mu$  (milli-mu) = 0.000,001 mm. = 0.00,000,003,937 inch.

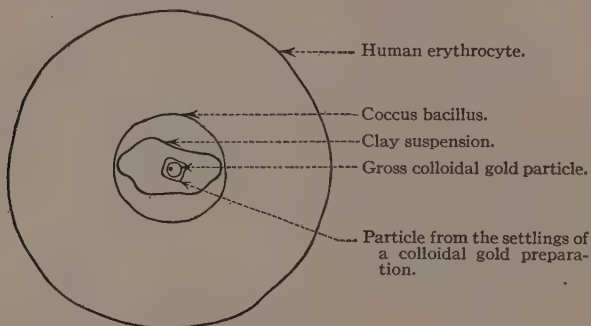


Fig. 53.—The diagram is designed to show the dimensions of particles in colloidal state. The dot at the center represents a hydrogen molecule, much too large.

**Why the Suspended Particles Remain Suspended in Solution** (Fig. 54).—The negative charges on the gold particles bring to themselves positive charges of the cation Na<sup>+</sup>, if NaCl be added. Besides these cations, the charges of which balance the negative charges of the gold, there are the Na<sup>+</sup> cations ionized along with Cl<sup>-</sup>. More Na<sup>+</sup> than Cl<sup>-</sup> ions are present near the gold. The total number of ions near the gold will be greater than in the solution. This con-

<sup>1</sup> The distance that charges may move apart from one another. The electrostatic distance varies with the kind of substance in which the ionization occurs, as well as with the substance itself.



dition means that an electrical potential difference occurs between the gold particles and the solution, which tends to bring the ions together, but to cause repulsion of the gold particles. We can think, then, of gold particles being mutually repellant within the solution, much as a room-full of tennis balls bounding against each other.<sup>1</sup>

**The Rate of Movement of the Particles.**—If the colloidal gold particles could move as quickly as the ions, there would be no difference in distribution of ions on the particles and in the solution. However, one of the chief characteristics of all colloidal particles is the relatively slow movement. The movement of the particles may be seen under special forms of illumination.

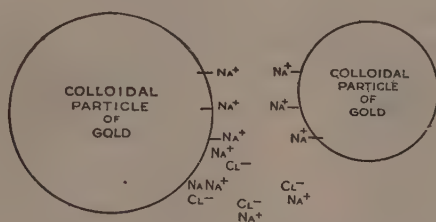


Fig. 54.—Diagram to show the cause of the suspension of colloidal particles in a solution. The particles of gold act as anions, holding the positively charged cations,  $\text{Na}^+$ , and since like charges repel, each particle repels all others. Note the potential difference between particles and solution: Two classes of cations are found near the gold, namely, (1) The  $\text{Na}^+$  having the gold as cation and (2) the  $\text{Na}^+$  having  $\text{Cl}^-$  as cation. There is a membrane potential difference (Donnan's equilibrium).

**The Ultramicroscope; Demonstration.**—This instrument is a condenser placed beneath the stage of a microscope. The construction is shown in Figs. 55 and 56. All direct light is stopped by the diaphragm D, but light which comes from an angle passes across the stage of the microscope more or less horizontally. If there are particles on the slide, light is caught by them and reflected or refracted up the tube to the eye. The phenomenon is much like that of planets at night; we see them against a black background, the sky, because they reflect the light from the sun, which is hidden from us by the earth. The particles do not present definite discs, even under the highest powers of the microscope; the same is true of the planets seen through opera glasses.<sup>2</sup> It is the pencil of light coming from

<sup>1</sup> Concerning the charges on the gold particles, see Bogue, article by Wilson.

<sup>2</sup> The analogy is perhaps better with the fixed stars which do not give a disk with the highest powers of the telescope.

them which strikes the eye. The principle of the ultra-microscope may be shown by the Faraday-Tyndall phenomenon:

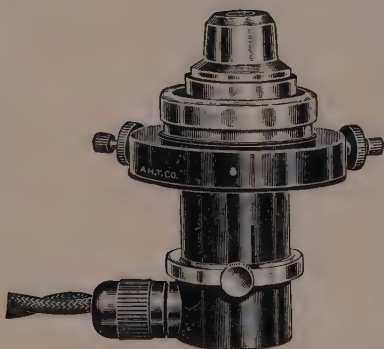


Fig. 55.—“Ultramicroscope.” The apparatus fits beneath the stage of an ordinary microscope, replacing the condenser. The path of the light through the apparatus is shown in Fig. 56.

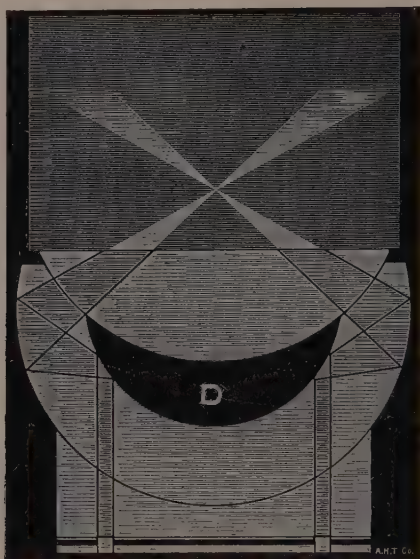


Fig. 56.—The path of rays in the “ultramicroscope.” The colloidal substance is contained in the vessel in which the rays cross. The black disk D prevents light from passing directly to the eye. The light which reaches the eye is only that which is refracted by the colloidal particles.

**The Faraday-Tyndall Phenomenon<sup>1</sup>; Demonstration (Fig. 57).—**Place three rectangular museum jars of clear glass upon the desk and to the first add distilled water that has just been distilled and is free from dust; to the second add colloidal gold solution, and to the third, add dialyzed iron solution.<sup>2</sup> Throw a beam of light from a small arc or concentrated filament electric lamp provided with a condensing lens<sup>3</sup> through the jars successively and note the intensity of the light-

<sup>1</sup> This exercise is frequently called the Tyndall phenomenon, but it was used by Michael Faraday at the Royal Institution, London, before Tyndall employed it.

<sup>2</sup> This is the pharmaceutical preparation known as Dialyzed Iron or Liq. Ferri Dialyzatus, consisting of ferric hydroxid solution dialyzed against distilled water with a small amount of ferric chlorid.

<sup>3</sup> The light rays should enter parallel.

beam. Water, when distilled with the greatest care contains suspensions and there will always be some beam, but there will be great differences between the beam in the water and in the colloidal gold

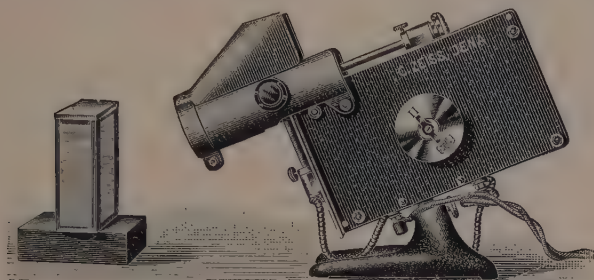


Fig. 57.—The Faraday-Tyndall phenomenon. The jar contains the colloidal suspension. Light from the arc passes through the suspension, causing a beam of light produced by reflection and refraction by the colloidal particles.

and iron suspensions. Dilute the liquids and determine when the beam, characteristic of the solution, disappears.

All colloidal solutions show this phenomenon.

**Brownian Movement.**—Under the ultramicroscope the minute particles may be seen to dart here and there in zigzag paths. This motion was discovered by the British botanist, Brown, and has been

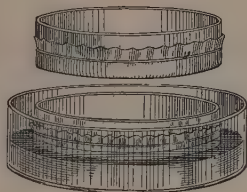


Fig. 58.—Graham's apparatus for the application of dialysis. Graham's experiments laid the foundation for the modern theories of the structure of colloidal states, of protoplasm, etc. (From Holland, *Medical Chemistry and Toxicology*.)

named after him. It is due to the bombardment of the colloidal particles by molecules and ions. The movement of the ions and molecules cannot be seen, but that of the colloidal particles (many times larger), as they are pushed about by the smaller bodies, is visible.

**The Colloidal Nature of the Living Substance.**—The typical food substances—starches, fats, and meat—are colloidal in nature. They have large molecules, which behave much as the gold particles. Moreover, they are limited by membranes which prevent them from mov-

ing freely. Like the gold particles, these food substances hold ions and restrain them from moving away; consequently, there is the same unequal distribution of ions around the molecules, and the cause of their being in suspension in solution is the same.

EXERCISE 2. *Dialysis of Colloidal Solutions.*—The preparation of the dialyzing membranes is described in the Appendix.

Into sac A, suspended in a beaker of distilled water, place 25 mls. of a 1 per cent. dialyzed iron solution.

Into sac B, similarly suspended, pipette 25 mls. of egg-white solution.

Into sac C, similarly suspended, place 25 mls. of a 1 per cent. NaCl solution.

Into sac D, similarly suspended, pipette 25 mls. of a 1 per cent. solution of mastic.<sup>1</sup>

Into sac E, suspended as before, place 25 mls. of a 5 per cent. tannic acid solution in water.

Into F place 25 mls. of a 5 per cent. alcoholic solution of tannic acid.

Set the beakers containing your preparations in your locker, and leave until the following period. Then analyze the dialyzates for evidence of the dialysis of the special agent introduced into the sacs, as follows:

Sac A: Test for the presence of ferric iron: (I) Add a drop of potassium ferrocyanid; a positive test for ferric iron is indicated by the appearance of a blue color (Prussian blue). (II) Add a drop of potassium thiocyanate; red ferric thiocyanate is formed.

Sac B: Test for egg-white; see page 219, Exercise 2.

Sac C: Test for chlorion; see page 354.

Sac D: Test for mastic; mastic is a gum insoluble in water. Select two test-tubes as nearly alike as possible. Fill one with pure, freshly distilled water. Fill the other to the same height with the dialyzate. Compare the appearance of the two solutions, looking down the tubes. If the mastic suspension has passed into the dialyzate, it will exhibit a cloudiness compared with water. A confirmatory test may be made.

Sac E: Tannic acid has the property of precipitating egg-white from solution; utilizing this principle, place 10 mls. of the dialyzate in a test-tube and add, drop by drop, pure egg-white,<sup>2</sup> noting any coagulation.

Sac F: Repeat the procedure just given for Sac E. The colloidal nature of the substances used in Sacs A, B, D, and E is evident.

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix for method of preparation.

<sup>2</sup> This egg-white must have been dissolved in water and filtered. It should be a concentrated solution, about 5 or 10 per cent.



**The Donnan Equilibrium.**—Donnan<sup>1</sup> showed that there is an unequal distribution of charges wherever one part of the system prevents the free movement of molecules and ions. We have illustrated this theory in the discussion of the cause of the suspension of gold particles in colloidal solution. An illustration is also afforded by the dialyzed iron colloidal solution: 5 per cent. ferric chlorid is held by the ferric hydroxid,<sup>2</sup> which would otherwise dialyze. Loeb<sup>3</sup> applied this theory to the behavior of such substances as gelatin and other meat-like substances. These compounds, also starch and fat, do not diffuse through membranes like collodion, parchment, and animal membranes, but nevertheless hold certain ions captive; the result is the same as that described for gold particles. Gelatin is an amphoteric<sup>4</sup> compound; that is, it has the properties both of an acid and of a base. As base, it forms a salt with anions, such as  $\text{Cl}^-$ ; and as an acid, it forms a salt with cations, such as  $\text{Na}^+$ . Gelatin also receives similar anions and cations, as they are equally distributed on either side of a membrane separating gelatin from the medium in which it exists. Hence, as in the case of the gold particles, we have a preponderance of ions in the gelatin because we find there (1) ions chemically bound by the gelatin, and (2) ions equally distributed throughout the whole solution. The result for gelatin, then, is:

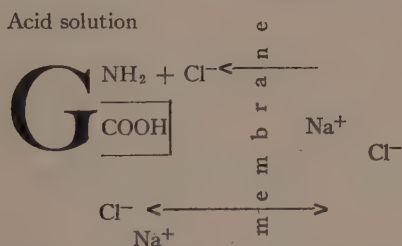


Diagram showing the unequal distribution of ions on two sides of a membrane separating gelatin from a salt solution. The gelatin acts as a cation in acid solution, and as an anion in alkaline solution. Note that there are more  $\text{Cl}^-$  anions on the gelatin side than on the salt-solution side of the membrane

<sup>1</sup> F. G. Donnan, Professor of Physiology, University College, London. An explanation of the theory of Donnan is given by Bayliss, by Loeb, and by Donnan in his review in *Chemical Reviews*, vol. i, p. 73, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> The ferric hydroxid is the true colloidal solution, ferric chlorid being a crystalloid.

<sup>3</sup> J. Loeb, Rockefeller Institute, died 1924 at Hamilton, Bermuda.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *amphi*, both, and *terma*, term.



As a consequence of the unequal distribution of ions, gelatin assumes the characteristics known as colloidal; the like signs of the ions concerned repel one another and also the gelatin bearing them.

**Cataphoresis<sup>1</sup>; Demonstration.**—The Y-tube connects with a rubber connection leading from the bottom A, whereby the solution in the leveling bulb may be led into the two portions of the Y. The tube is clamped by means of a screw-clamp after the liquid in the tube has reached the turn of the limbs in Y. A solution of zinc sulphate is now poured into each of the limbs of the Y, carefully, to avoid mixing the two liquids,  $\text{ZnSO}_4$  and the gelatin solution below. Electrodes of zinc are lowered into each of the arms of the Y and then the gelatin solution is carefully added from below by gradually raising the leveling bulb after opening the clamp. When the solutions have filled the arms of the Y, clamp the screw-clamp and open the electric circuit, which should consist of about half the voltage of the ordinary house current (110 volts), that is, about 50 volts and of 6 amperes. After half an hour the presence of gelatin in each arm is tested.<sup>2</sup> If the gelatin were less acid than  $p\text{H}$  4.6, it will be found on the cathodal arm of the cataphoresis apparatus, while if the solution were more acid than  $p\text{H}$  4.6, the gelatin will be found in the anode arm (the  $-$  arm). The explanation is that if the solution is more acid than  $p\text{H}$  4.6, the gelatin is positively charged and moves to the opposite pole, the anode ( $-$ ), and if it is less acid, it moves to the cathode ( $+$ ). The reaction  $p\text{H}$  4.6 is the iso-electric point at which gelatin moves neither toward one pole nor the other, being electrically neutral.

**The Iso-electric Point.<sup>3</sup>**—Several very important characteristics appear in colloidal solutions in the state of electrical equilibrium. In this state:

- (1) Precipitation of the substance occurs.
- (2) The substance is least soluble.
- (3) The viscosity is least.
- (4) Water is least absorbed.
- (5) The particles tend to adhere to the greatest extent.
- (6) Salt formation with acid or with alkali does not occur.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *kata*, down, and *phoreo*, carry.

<sup>2</sup> The method is given on page 304, *e*, 1, 2, and 3.

<sup>3</sup> "I always feel inclined to leave the word 'point' to its proper use by mathematicians and geometers," R. B. Sosman, Geophysical Laboratory, Washington.

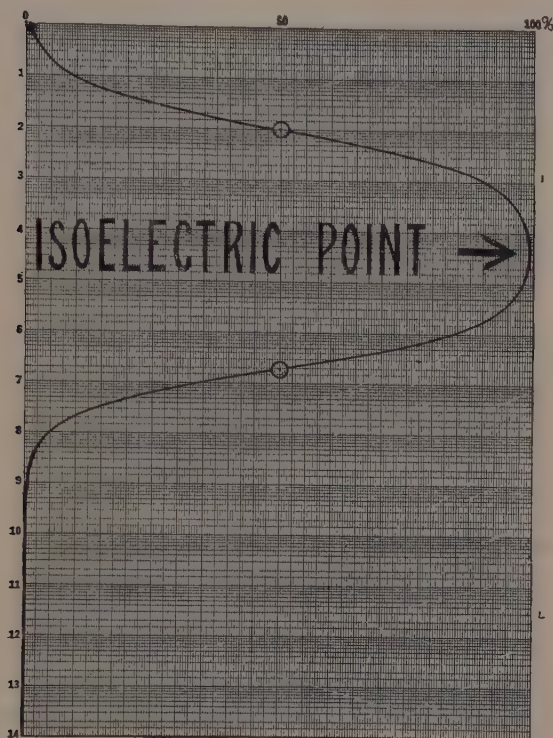


Fig. 59.—Curve representing the condition of an amphoteric electrolyte, such as gelatin, at the iso-electric point. At pH 4.6 neither the acid nor the basic portion of gelatin exerts itself. The curve is made on the Bovie direct reading potentiometer, Jour. Med. Research, vol. xxxiii, p. 295, 1915.

EXERCISE 3. *The Determination of the Iso-electric Point of Pure Casein.*<sup>1</sup>—Into a 50-ml. volumetric flask place 0.30 g. casein and dilute with about 25 mls. distilled water at 37° C. Add, while agitating the contents, exactly 5 mls. normal sodium hydroxid solution and continue to shake the flask until the casein has dissolved. Add one drop of caprylic alcohol to prevent foaming. When the casein is entirely dissolved add, rapidly, 5 mls. normal acetic acid. Mix and keep the flask under the cold tap. Make up to the mark (50 mls.) with distilled water. The contents should now exhibit an opalescence. Arrange 9 test-tubes of similar bore in a rack and add to

<sup>1</sup> Pure casein can be obtained from the Harris Laboratories, Tuckahoe, New York. The method is based on Cole, S., Practical Physiological Chemistry, 5th ed., Mosby, 1919.

each 1 ml. of the casein solution and the amount of water, etc., indicated by the table (Mohr pipette):

Contents of tube number.....	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Mls. distilled water.....	8.3	7.7	8.7	8.5	8.0	7.0	5.0	1.0	7.4
Mls. 0.01 n. $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ .....	0.6	1.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Mls. 0.1 normal acid.....	0.0	0.0	0.2	0.5	1.0	2.0	4.0	8.0	0.0
Mls. normal acetic acid.....	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1.6

Tabulate in your note-book the following data:

Tube.....	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
-----------	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

On mixing contents:

"0," no change in appearance.

"x," precipitate.

"+" or "−," degree of opalescence in solution.

Tube No. 5 should show the greatest precipitation. The iso-electric point of pure casein is given in the Appendix, along with the same data for several biochemical substances.

**The Iso-electric Point and Enzyme Action.**—Digestion of meat substances, like steak, cheese, and similar compounds, requires coagulation or precipitation of the substance. In the case of milk, from which casein is obtained, if sodium bicarbonate is taken with it, casein does not become digested. The physician frequently administers sodium bicarbonate for various purposes, and milk is the universal food for the sick. Following ingestion of the two, flatulency often develops, owing to the fermentation of the milk-sugar, lactose. This action is enhanced by delay or retention of the undigested milk in the stomach. There are other instances in biochemistry of the inhibition of enzyme action when some agent prevents the precipitation of meat substances; an example is seen in the self-digestion (autolysis<sup>1</sup>) described on page 456, in which liver substance undergoes enzyme action at a certain degree of acidity. Bradley<sup>2</sup> finds a correspondence between the iso-electric point of certain substances and the point at which digestion appears:

<sup>1</sup> Greek, *autos*, self, and *lysis*, to loosen; also called maceration.

<sup>2</sup> Bradley, H. C., Professor of Physiological Chemistry, University of Wisconsin. See *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 415, 1922 (Fig. 71).

TABLE SHOWING RELATION BETWEEN KNOWN ISO-ELECTRIC POINTS OF SUBSTANCES AND THE REACTION AT WHICH DIGESTION OCCURS (BRADLEY)

Substance.	Iso-electric point, pH.	Digestion begins at pH.
Egg-white (albumin).....	4.8	5.0
“ (globulin).....	5.2	5.3
“ (whole).....		5.5-5.3
Blood serum (albumin).....	4.7	5.0
“ (globulin).....	4.4	4.8
“ (whole).....		4.6
Hemp-seed substance (edestin).....	6.9	7.0 <sup>1</sup>

**The Intermediate Compound in Enzyme Action.**—While it has not been definitely demonstrated, it is probable that an enzyme attaches itself to the substance upon which it is acting and that a more or less definite compound is formed. This phenomenon may be illustrated in the following two experiments with inorganic catalyzers:

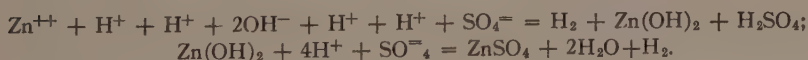
**EXERCISE 4. *The Catalytic Action of Water.***—Place two or three pieces of granular zinc in a test-tube and overlay the zinc with concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Aside from the enmeshed air in the interstices of the granules of the zinc there is no evidence of gas formation which might be expected from the equation:



Now add 1 drop of water and watch for an evolution of gas. Here the reacting substances are:



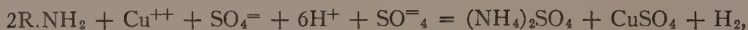
and to explain the observed effects of water, it is necessary to assume that there is a temporary addition of ions to the zinc, perhaps as  $\text{Zn}(\text{OH})_2$ . Afterward, by rearrangement,  $\text{ZnSO}_4$  is formed which indicates the previous formation of an intermediate compound with the ions of water. Completing the equation:



Water is a catalyzer and appears at the end of the reaction in the same amounts as those at the beginning of the reaction.

<sup>1</sup> Approximate.

EXERCISE 5. *The catalizer appears at the end of the reaction:* In the Kjeldahl reaction (page 283) the cupric sulphate appears at the end of the reaction and is indicated by its color. Place 1 ml. concentrated sulphuric acid in a test-tube and add 1 ml. of a 1 per cent. egg-white solution. To a second test-tube, add 1 ml. concentrated sulphuric acid, 1 ml. 1 per cent. egg-white solution, and one drop of 5 per cent. cupric sulphate. Arrange the tubes so that they may be heated as nearly alike as possible. Note the time of the appearance of a clear yellowish-green color after the disappearance of the brown color due to the charring of the substance in the strong acid. The tube containing the cupric sulphate clears more quickly than the other tube and the clear green color of cupric sulphate remains, showing that it is a catalyzer, appearing at the end of the reaction. The reaction may be written:



the R being a radicle attached to the  $NH_2$  group in the egg-white and the  $H_2$  being used in the transformation of the R.

EXERCISE 6.—Intermediate compounds in the precipitation of egg-white: To 5 mls. of a 1 per cent. egg-white solution, in a test-tube, add 1 drop of a 0.01 normal sodium hydroxid solution. The egg-white becomes electronegative:



EW stands for egg-white, and in the alkaline solution the alkaline portion,  $NH_2$  is suppressed, leaving the  $COOH$  free to become attached to a cation after dissociation. Add, drop by drop, 5 per cent. NaCl solution until precipitation occurs. Repeat this experiment, using sodium iodid in place of NaCl; note that much larger amounts of iodid must be used to cause precipitation than when NaCl is used. Prepare a third tube of egg-white and render the substance electro-positive by adding one drop of 0.01 normal acetic acid. Repeat the procedure given above, first with NaCl, then, in another tube, with NaI. Here, the iodid caused precipitation first. There is formed:



In the alkalinized electronegative egg-white, sodium egg-white. Iodid does not form such a compound.

In the acidified, electro-positive egg-white, egg-white iodid. The chlorion does not form such a compound.

**EXERCISE 7. Adsorption.**—To a dilute solution of crystal-violet<sup>1</sup> in a test-tube add a knife-point of charcoal. Roll the tube between the palms in order to mix the charcoal and the dye. Filter. The filtrate should be colorless. If it is not, add charcoal to the filtrate and filter again. Suspend the charcoal in warm water and add acetone; the dye is dissolved from the charcoal. This principle has been used in the preparation of insulin<sup>2</sup>; here benzoic acid is used to displace the insulin from the charcoal. The quantitative relation, known as Freundlich's adsorption equation, giving the amount of carbon,  $M$ , necessary to decolorize  $X$  grams of color, leaving  $C$  units of color in the solution is:

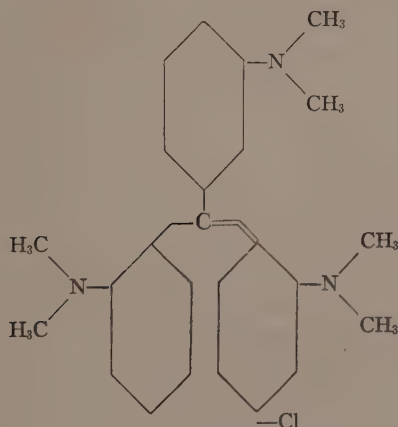
$$\frac{X}{M} = K \times C^{\frac{1}{n}}$$

$K$  and  $\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)$  are constants for different kinds of charcoal.

The relation, then, between charcoal and the amount of dye is a quantitative one.

**The Mechanism of Adsorption.**—Adsorption is a surface phenomenon. We have shown that chemical reaction occurs between sub-

<sup>1</sup> The formula is:



<sup>2</sup> Page 500.

stances which cling to a surface and the substance adhered to. A substance which accumulates on the surface of a liquid lowers the energy of the surface (electrical, or surface energy-tension). Conversely, a substance which reduces surface energy tends to accumulate on the surface. These two facts constitute the Law of Willard Gibbs.<sup>1</sup> The importance of the subject for practical medicine is witnessed by the attempts that have been made to block the destruction of blood and bile-pigments by causing the "blocking" of the reticulo-endothelium system.<sup>2</sup>

**Surface Tension.**—There is a difference in molecular arrangement on the surface and in the solution. On the surface the molecules are oriented,<sup>3</sup> while in the solution they bear no definite arrangement

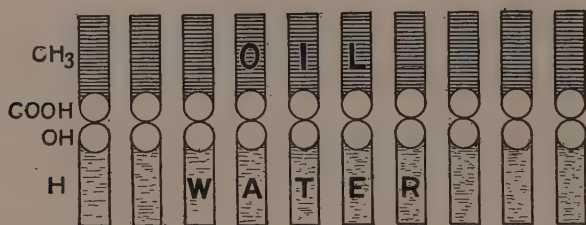


Fig. 60.—To illustrate the principle of surface tension. An oil, like oleid,  $\text{CH}_3 \dots \text{COOH}$ , is dropped on water. The molecules become polarized, "like with like," that is, OH with OH in COOH.

toward one another.<sup>4</sup> On the surface of water the active portions of molecules are turned toward the surface. The active groups of the molecule are known as the polar groups. Oil is used by vessels at sea to reduce the tension on the surface; this permits the waves to pass the vessel without breaking. The waves break and fall with great force upon the ship if the surface of the sea retards the wave impulse. It is customary to represent the molecules of the surface

<sup>1</sup> J. Willard Gibbs, Mathematical Physicist, Yale University, deceased. His work laid the foundation of much of our knowledge of solutions. See page 111 for practical exercise.

<sup>2</sup> See Aschoff, L. (Freiburg, i. B., Germany). Lectures on Pathology in the United States, 1924. New York, P. P. Hoeber, 1924, p. 22.

<sup>3</sup> Literally "turned toward the East," a saying taken from the religious habit of the Mohammedan, who prays toward Mecca. The expression means that there is a regular arrangement of the molecules.

<sup>4</sup> Unless there is some special agent to cause a regular arrangement. A current of electricity passing through the solution causes orientation.

by the character  $\text{Ü}$ , the polar or asymmetrical group being represented by the circle. In the case of a fatty acid,  $\text{CH}_3 \dots \text{COOH}$ , acting to reduce the surface tension of oil,<sup>1</sup> we have the diagram (Fig. 60) to show orientation on surface of oil.

If it is true that the polar groups are directed toward the water and the methyl groups are freely exposed to the surface, the surface energy of water covered by various substances, like acids, alcohols, etc., in which the terminal groups are  $\text{CH}_3$ , should be the same. This is known to be true. The hydrocarbons arrange themselves on water with the  $\text{CH}_3$  groups extending outward. The surface energy of the hydrocarbon-water interface<sup>2</sup> is similar to that of  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}-\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ -water interface, for the  $\text{CH}_3$  groups of the alcohols lie exposed to the surface.

**EXERCISE 7.** *Hay's<sup>3</sup> Test for the Presence of Bile Salts.*—Arrange two small beakers before you. Place 100 mls. distilled water in each. To beaker A add a small amount of bile. To both beakers add sprinklings of flowers-of-sulphur. Note that in A the sulphur particles drop through the surface and sift slowly to the bottom, while in B the flowers remain on the surface. This test is used clinically for determining the presence of bile in the urine.

*The Udranszki<sup>4</sup> Viscosity Test for the Presence of Bile.*—Procure a sample of your urine and into each of two test-tubes place 5 mls. of the fluid. To A add 1 ml. of bile. Stopper each tube and shake them vigorously for one minute. Note the foam in A. The bile contains mucus<sup>5</sup> which adds to the viscosity of the urine and permits the formation of foam. This exercise illustrates the Willard Gibbs principle<sup>6</sup>: To 5 mls. of urine containing bile add 1 drop of 1:1000 solution of furfural.<sup>7</sup> Stopper the tube and shake

<sup>1</sup> Page 110.

<sup>2</sup> The term "interface" means the plane separating two phases, that is, states of matter. Thus, the planes separating the air enclosed in soap-bubbles are interfaces.

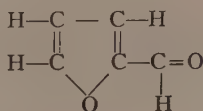
<sup>3</sup> M. Hay, Scotch physician of the 19th century.

<sup>4</sup> L. Udranszki, physiologist, Buda-Pest, Hungary, died, 1914.

<sup>5</sup> Page 462.

<sup>6</sup> Page 110.

<sup>7</sup> The formula is:



it as before. After a heavy foam has formed unstopper the tube and add 3 drops of concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; the foam turns reddish, owing to a condensation of the aldehyde to form a colored compound.<sup>1</sup> The colored substance accumulates in the foam because it lowers the surface tension.<sup>2</sup>

**EXERCISE 8.**—Select two small funnels of similar size and place each in an Erlenmeyer flask. Fit filter-paper into each funnel in the usual way. Fill both funnels with olive oil, leave two minutes, and then pour the oil into its container as completely as possible. To A add bile and insure that it comes into contact with the entire surface of the paper in the funnel. Drain the bile from the funnel. Fill each funnel with water and note which one permits the water to flow more freely. You will find that it is funnel A, because the surface tension of the oil has been lowered by the bile.

**Bile an Accessory to Enzyme Action.**—Fat, taken into the stomach, undergoes little if any change unless bile has been regurgitated from the intestine, through the pylorus, into the stomach. The bile in this case lowers the surface tension of the fat and small globules of fat form from the larger masses, according to the Law of Plateau,<sup>3</sup> which predicts that spheres like oil drops tend to form such a shape that their surfaces (stress) are reduced to a minimum; the form which, for a given volume, presents the least surface is the sphere. The immense increase in surface of the fat globules, by emulsification, or division to form smaller spheres, permits the gastric lipase, or fat-digesting enzyme, to come into intimate contact with the oil. Bile, therefore, aids the fat-digesting enzymes in their work.<sup>4</sup>

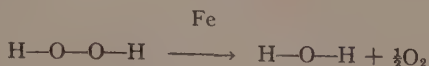
<sup>1</sup> This phenomenon will be encountered throughout the following pages. The manufacture of bakelite and similar substances, used for fountain-pens, etc., employs the same principle of condensing aldehydes.

<sup>2</sup> The possibility of collecting substances that occur in small amounts in fluids by this principle has been investigated by commercial concerns abstracting enzymes from solutions; the enzyme in some cases has greater concentration in the foam than in the solution, so that it may be skimmed off with the foam.

<sup>3</sup> Belgian physicist.

<sup>4</sup> Another factor probably plays a part; the enzyme must dissolve in the fat if the fat is to be digested by the enzyme, and it is probable that bile-salts aid in this process.

EXERCISE 9. *The "Peroxidase" of the Blood.*—The red coloring-matter of the blood contains iron, which produces nascent oxygen from peroxides:



Compare this equation with that on page 96 for the catalysis of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  by platinum. The difference between these two reactions is that in the organic peroxides there is a receptor for the nascent oxygen, while in other cases two half-molecules of oxygen unite to form one oxygen. The following experiment illustrates this action; it is used in the detection of blood in urine, stools, on cloth, etc.:

*Principle:* The acceptor of nascent oxygen is guaiaconic acid obtained from gum guaiacum. In the presence of oxygen this acid becomes guaiacum-blue.<sup>1</sup> Benzidine<sup>2</sup> and other substances may be used as oxygen receptor.

*Procedure:* Transfer by means of a knife-blade tip a small amount of crystalline benzidine hydrochlorid to a test-tube. Add about 3 mls. glacial<sup>3</sup> acetic acid and mix. After the crystals have dissolved, add one volume of Merck's Superoxyl<sup>4</sup> or 5 volumes of the ordinary hydrogen peroxid 3 per cent.<sup>5</sup> Transfer one-half of the contents to another test-tube. To tube A add one drop of blood. Mix, and note the appearance of the blue color of the nitro-compound formed from the benzidine.

**Other Consequences of Membranes on Particles. Osmosis** (Fig. 61).—We have seen<sup>6</sup> that if one particle does not travel as fast as other particles, especially ions, there is a disturbance of equilibrium in electric charges on the particles and in the solution. If particles are mechanically prevented by membranes from moving freely through them, other phenomena occur. One of the most characteristic is *osmosis*, which is a consequence of a change in the diffusibility of substances when a membrane is interposed. We shall first examine diffusion:

<sup>1</sup> The reaction is given on page 393.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> Crystallizable acetic acid, 99.5 per cent. pure.

<sup>4</sup> Hydrogen peroxid, 30 per cent. It must be handled with care.

<sup>5</sup> Hydrogen peroxid should be purchased in small containers and opened only as needed.

<sup>6</sup> Page 99.



EXERCISE 10.—Into a 100-ml. cylinder, filled with distilled water, add one crystal of potassium permanganate,  $\text{KMnO}_4$ . Let the cylinder stand without disturbing the contents. The dark permanganate begins to penetrate throughout the water; the process is known as diffusion. The diffusion pressure is that generated by the molecular vibration of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  molecules. Being free to move throughout the liquid, they tend to distribute themselves throughout the water, and equilibrium is reached only when the concentration of molecules and ions in one part of the cylinder is the same as it is in any other part. Note that diffusion pressure is directed centrifugally (Fig. 63).

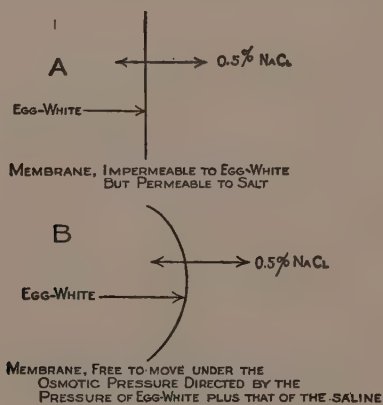


Fig. 61.—Diagrams A and B show the development of osmotic pressure. Salt passes freely through the membrane, but egg-white cannot; there is, therefore, a pressure difference, with the result that the membrane is pushed outward.

EXERCISE 11. *Osmotic Pressure Illustrated by the Fragility Test of Erythrocytes.*—Place in your test-tube rack 20 blood tubes,<sup>1</sup> 10 in the front row and 10 in the rear row. Beginning with the lower left-hand tube, on the front row, label the tubes from left to right 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, 0.9, etc. Add to each tube<sup>2</sup> the number of mls. of 1 per cent. sodium chlorid solution<sup>3</sup> indicated on the tube. Drop into all the tubes the number of mls. of distilled water necessary to bring the total volume up to 2 mls.; that is:

<sup>1</sup> Wassermann tubes, or small tubes holding about 5 mls.

<sup>2</sup> Using the 1-ml. Mohr pipette graduated in tenths of ml.

<sup>3</sup> Weigh 10 grams of highest purity NaCl crystals and dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

Tube.....	1	2	3	4	5
Mls. 1 per cent. NaCl.....	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
Mls. dist. H <sub>2</sub> O .....	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.1	1.0
Percentage salt concentration.....	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.50

Tube.....	6	7	8	9	10.
Mls. 1 per cent. NaCl.....	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5
Mls. dist. H <sub>2</sub> O.....	0.9	0.8	0.7	0.6	0.5
Percentage salt concentration.....	0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.75

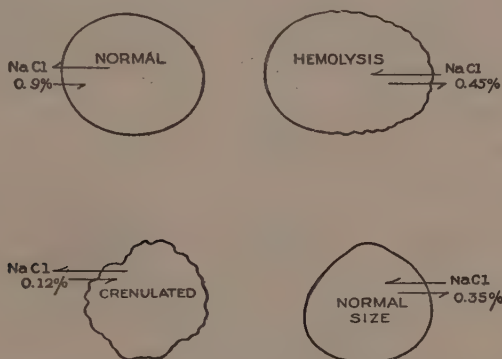


Fig. 62.—Upper left: Isotonic relations; NaCl passes freely in either direction through cell membrane. Upper right: Hypotonic relations; lower concentration without than within; consequently, accumulation of liquid within and bursting of membrane. Lower left: Hypertonic conditions; greater concentration without and hence withdrawal of liquid to outside, with shrinkage of cell membrane. Lower right: Corpuscle able to resist changes in tonicity relations; although there is a concentration of 0.35 per cent. NaCl without, the membrane does not rupture. This is the basis of the “fragility test” for corpuscles (page 114). Compare also Fig. 61.

Now, to each tube in the front row, add 0.1 ml. blood. Mix by rotating the tube between the palms of the hands. Note in which tube the blood has hemolyzed and in those tubes in which it has not; this is indicated by the clearness of the red liquid in hemolyzed and the murkiness in tubes in which the blood has not been hemolyzed. Normal blood usually hemolyzes at 0.45 per cent. NaCl. The test is used in clinical diagnosis for the purpose of distinguishing different forms of jaundice.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> If blood of icterus patients is available, the test may be made interesting; add 0.1 ml. patient's blood to each tube in the rear row, mix, and compare with that in the front row (control). Jaundice, in which there is no bile in the urine, exhibits a fragility greater than normal (above 0.45 per cent.). In obstructive jaundice of the prevalent catarrhal form fragility is lessened and hemolysis does not occur in saline stronger than 0.45 per cent.

**The Factors of Osmosis.**—The osmotic pressure in the saline solution in which the erythrocytes are suspended becomes too high or too low; the pressure in the corpuscle becomes decreased or increased. Rupture of the stroma of the corpuscle results. Thus the hemoglobin is freed to the surrounding plasma or saline solution. If the osmotic pressure within and without the corpuscle is the same, then the condition is isosmotic. If the pressure within is greater than without, then the outer liquid is hypotonic with respect to that within the corpuscle. If the pressure within the corpuscle is less than that without, then the solution without the corpuscle is hypertonic. Ions

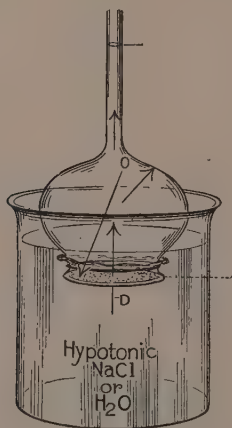


Fig. 63.—An osmometer. Water or other hypotonic solution is placed in the beaker and a fluid, one or more components of which cannot pass through the membrane, in the thistle-tube. The arrows within the tube show the direction of osmotic pressure the only release for which is the passage of the liquid up the narrow tube. Hence the rise of liquid in the osmometer.

pass through the membrane in both directions until equilibrium is reached. If there are fewer molecules outside the corpuscle than within, water, bearing the ions and molecules, flows until the hydrostatic pressures are the same on both sides of the corpuscular membrane. A practical illustration of this phenomenon is seen in the use of saline purgatives<sup>1</sup> (Fig. 64). A salt of low absorbability like magnesium sulphate (Epsom salt) is given by mouth. It passes into the intestine (A) as a mass of molecules and ions ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ;  $\text{Mg}^{++}$ ;  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$ ).

<sup>1</sup> The osmotic process is not the sole cause of the purgative action of saline cathartics. See Sollmann, T., *Pharmacology*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1923.

The mass is hypertonic to the molecular and ionic concentration in the blood, and since  $\text{MgSO}_4$  cannot pass very quickly through the membranes, water must flow into the intestine from the blood until the hydrostatic conditions are in equilibrium (B). This is indicated in the diagram (Fig. 64) by the equal spacing of the dots in the blood and in the intestine. Water, thus introduced from the blood, aids in the movements of the feces.

The factor of inequilibrium of ions, due to the retention of some of these bodies by the substance of the corpuscle, according to the theory of equilibria of Donnan,<sup>1</sup> comes into play here also. Molecules

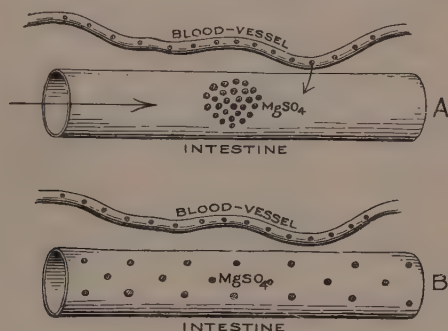


Fig. 64.—Diagrams to show the physical chemistry of saline purgatives. Magnesium sulphate is administered in large doses and reaches the intestine; the sulphate is but slowly absorbed into the tissues; owing to the differences in concentration water flows from the blood into the intestine until equilibrium is established. The redistribution of the particles after equilibrium has been reached is shown in the lower diagram.  $\text{MgSO}_4$  above is hypertonic; compare Fig. 63.

and ions accumulate on the inside of the corpuscle, chemically bound to the contents of the corpuscle.

**The Osmotic Pressure of Substances in Colloidal State.**—Osmotic pressure is a colligative property<sup>2</sup> of solutions, that is, it depends upon the number of particles in the solution, regardless of their kind. A colloidal solution has a definite number of bodies (colloidal masses dispersed through a certain volume, along with a constant amount of molecules, and ions). It has, therefore, an osmotic pressure. If the substance is homogeneous and the molecular weight is known, a gram-molecule, dissolved in water and made up to 1000 mls. has the

<sup>1</sup> Page 103.

<sup>2</sup> Latin *col* or *con*, and *ligato*, bind; that is, a collecting together. The term means "taking all bodies into consideration."

same pressure as any other colloidal mass under similar conditions; the  $\Delta$  of the freezing-point of such a solution is always  $-1.86^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

**The Osmotic Pressure of Acids, Bases, and Salts.**—These substances ionize and therefore the colligative properties are different from those of colloidal solutions, which do not ionize to the same extent. In the so-called "electrolytes" (acids, etc.), besides molecules, there are cations and anions. Hence the osmotic pressure is greater in a gram-molecular solution of salt than in a gram-molecular colloidal solution of salt.<sup>1</sup> The freezing-point of an acid, base, or salt solution is always lower than the calculated depression of the freezing-point,

unless the ionization is taken into account. A gram-molecular solution of NaCl, did ionization not occur, would freeze at  $-1.86^{\circ}\text{C}$ . However, about 75 per cent. of the molecules become ionized and cause osmotic pressure themselves. Roughly, the osmotic pressure of a substance which undergoes ionization in water is three times the theoretical, calculated osmotic pressure if ionization is not considered.

It is evident, therefore, that the character of the membrane has a profound influence on the behavior of substances.

**Methods for the Determination of Surface Tension.**—Two chief methods for measurements of surface tension are in use, namely: (1) the drop-weight method and (2) the direct method. The first method employs the stalagmometer; the second,

some form of delicate balance which measures the force necessary to cause a disk to be torn from the surface of the liquid under discussion. Quantitative determination of surface tension:

(1) **By Means of the Stalagmometer.**<sup>2</sup>—*Principle.*—The size of a drop of liquid falling from a pipette depends upon the surface tension

<sup>1</sup> That is, NaCl made into a colloidal state. All substances are capable of becoming colloidal if the proper method is employed.

<sup>2</sup> From the Greek *stagon*, to drop. Stalactites are accumulations of precipitated limestone in caves. They are attached to the roof and gradually increase in size as the water, bearing dissolved limestone, passes over them and, by evaporation, the limestone is deposited.

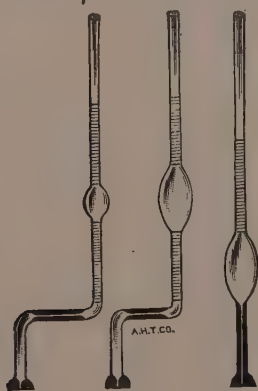


Fig. 65.—Stalagmometer for determining surface tension by the drop-volume method. Left to right, tube for thin liquids; larger quantities of thin liquids, and, to the right, tube for viscid liquids like blood.



which counteracts gravity. Figure 65 shows the conventional stalagmometer. For the purposes of this book the following Exercise may serve:

**EXERCISE 12.**—Count the drops of freshly distilled water at 20° C. falling from the end of an Ostwald-Folin 1-ml. pipette<sup>1</sup> until the full 1 ml. of water has passed. Dry the pipette with ethanol 95 per cent., followed by ether and the air-blast. Repeat, filling the pipette with olive oil. Calculate the surface tension from the following formula, expressing the result in ergs<sup>2</sup> of energy:

$$\frac{\text{Number of drops of water} \times \text{specific gravity of oil}}{\text{Number of drops of oil}} \times \text{gravity constant.}$$

The gravity constants for different locations are given in the Appendix; specific gravity, also in the Appendix.

The principle may be illustrated by the following Exercise (Worssnop, B. L., and Flint, H. T., *Advanced Practical Physics*, New York, E. P. Dutton & Co., 1925, p. 125):

(2) **By Means of the Torsion Balance** (Fig. 67).—*Principle:*

**EXERCISE 13.**—Place the small specific gravity bench (Fig. 66) over the left pan of the balance, being careful that it does not touch it. Fasten to the hook from the end of the beam a thread bearing a piece of nichrome-wire or other platinum substitute. The wire is bent into a wide, shallow U and fastened to the thread by its middle, so that, when dipped beneath the surface of the solution under examination, and then withdrawn, it will carry with it a film of liquid between the prongs of the U.<sup>3</sup> Then determine by weighing how much mass is added to the wire by the adhering liquid when weights are added to the right pan until the beam is horizontal. Then the surface tension in dynes,  $T$ , equals the added mass  $m$  (obtained by counting the counterpoised weights in the right pan) times the gravity constant  $g$ , for the place,<sup>4</sup> divided by twice the length of the wire between the prongs,  $l$ , measured in centimeters; that is:

$$T = \frac{m \times g}{2 \times l} \text{ dynes per centimeter.}$$

<sup>1</sup> The pipette must be cleaned as described on page 84.

<sup>2</sup> The unit of work. An erg is the work done when 1 gram is moved through the distance of 1 cm. with 1 dyne of force.

<sup>3</sup> The thread is attached to the rounded part of the U and hence the wire is suspended like the figure  $\Omega$ .

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

The du Noüy torsion balance<sup>1</sup> for surface tension determinations (Fig. 67<sup>2</sup>). A platinum ring (Fig. 67, *R* and Fig. 68) is attached to a lever (*K*) which is fastened to the torsion wire after it passes across the rest (*I*). The torsion wire is controlled by the milled head (*D*) and the extent of torsion is indicated on the dial (*S*). The platinum ring (*R*) is brought into contact with the liquid under examination in the dish placed on the platform (*T*). The dial (*S*) registers the amount of torsion necessary to cause the ring to break from the surface of the liquid. This amount of torsion is then converted into weight by weighing a circle of filter-paper which just fits into the ring, and when the disk is in place on the ring, by adding weights to it until the in-

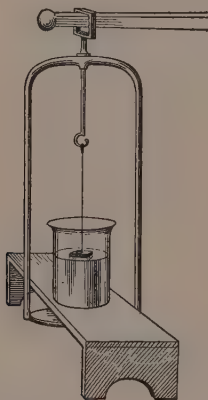


Fig. 66.—Showing arrangement for roughly determining surface tension by means of a laboratory balance. By applying weights to the opposite pan of the balance, until the disk breaks away from the surface of the liquid, the surface-tension of which is sought, the dynes of force exerted by the surface may be estimated. This is the principle of the du Noüy method (Fig. 67).

indicator on the dial (*S*) registers just zero. The combined weight of the paper and of the metal weights is the weight necessary to break through the surface. The unit of surface tension is the same as before, the dyne. Gravity exerts a force of 980.15 dynes in Philadelphia. The ring is 4 cms. in circumference, that is, 4 cms. of platinum come into contact with the liquid. Moreover (Fig. 68), the pull of the sur-

<sup>1</sup> While the description is written for the du Noüy apparatus, the Searle (Pye & Co., Cambridge, England) apparatus, designed earlier, can be understood at the same time.

<sup>2</sup> The author is indebted to the Central Scientific Co., Chicago, who make the instrument, for the use of the figure.

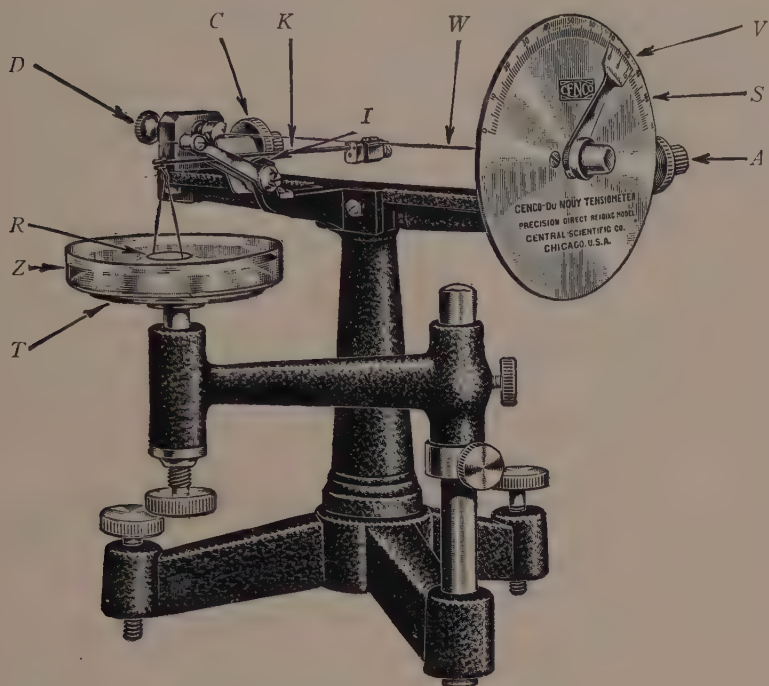


Fig. 67.—Apparatus for determining surface tension. The tension exerted by the surface of the liquid in the shallow dish, *Z*, upon the platinum ring, *R*, when tension is applied by the torsion of the wire, *W*, operated by the arm, *V*, is estimated in work units on the calibrated disk, *S*.



Fig. 68.—The disk used in the direct method of determination of surface tension (see the du Noüy method, Fig. 67) to show the tension of the surface film within and that without the ring, a necessary consideration in calculations.

face is exerted twice, once upon the wire from within the ring, and again upon the wire from outside the ring. The dynes of force exerted upon the surface by its tension are:

$$\frac{\text{Combined weight of paper and weights in grams} \times \text{gravity constant}}{2 \times 4}$$

**Precautions.**—The tension wire must be kept clean (cleaning solution, Appendix), likewise the watch-glass must be free from grease. Determination of the zero: Bring the indicator (*V*) to zero. Turn the milled head (*A*) until the lever is just free from the rest (*I*). Tighten the screw (*C*). Loading the apparatus: Place the watch-glass upon the platform (*T*), and by means of the adjusting milled head below the platform bring the surface of the liquid in the watch-glass so that it just touches the ring (*R*). Making the determination: Turn the milled head (*A*) carefully until the ring becomes free from the surface of the liquid. Read the dial (*S*). Calibrate the dial: By means of a large cork-borer cut disks of filter-paper to fit the ring (*R*). Weigh one disk accurately. Place the disk upon the ring and balance with weights until the indicator (*V*) comes back to zero. The calculation is given above.

**The Behavior of Colloids Toward Water.**—Colloidal substances may be divided into two classes according to their relation to water:

Hydrophobic<sup>1</sup> colloidal solutions:

The substance does not absorb water.

Ex.: Au, Pt-suspensions.

Hydrophilic<sup>2</sup> colloids:

The substance absorbs water.

Ex.:

Egg-white; gelatin.

Hydrophilic colloidal solutions are used to peptize hydrophobic colloidal solutions, an example of which is the use of egg-white in the making of French dressing (olive oil and vinegar); egg-white protects the colloidal oil-drops from coalescing. It is possible to precipitate a hydrophilous colloidal suspension, like egg-white, by introducing a dehydrating agent. The following Exercise is designed to show this process:

**EXERCISE 14.**—Place 10 mls. of 1 per cent. egg-white in a test-tube and add crystals of ammonium sulphate  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  to saturation.<sup>3</sup> Filter. Test the filtrate for egg-white by adding one drop of 1 : 10 acetic acid solution and boiling; there should be no appearance of cloudiness; if such appear,<sup>4</sup> repeat, using about 2 gs. more of the sulphate for the whole of the filtrate.

<sup>1</sup> From the Greek *hydor*, water, and *phobos*, fear.

<sup>2</sup> From the Greek *hydor*, water, and *philia*, affection.

<sup>3</sup> Eight grams ammonium sulphate crystals at room temperature (20° C.).

<sup>4</sup> Owing, as a rule, to incomplete saturation.

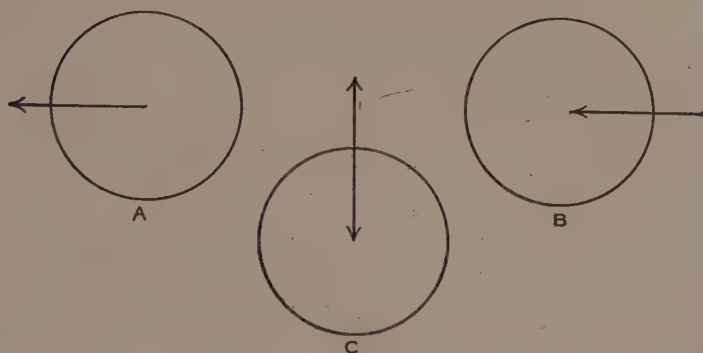
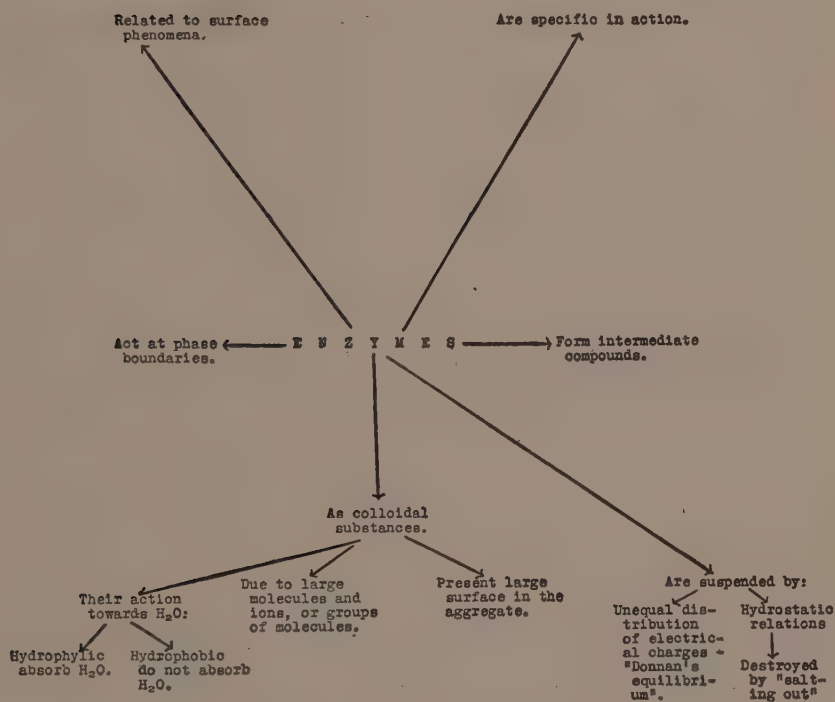


Fig. 69.—A, Condition of hypertonicity; B, hypotonicity; C, isotonicity. Compare Fig. 62.

### GRAPHIC SUMMARY FOR ENZYMES.



Ammonium sulphate behaves here as does magnesium sulphate when used as a saline purgative (page 117); it absorbs water. Egg-white exists as a colloidal solution partly because of hydrostatic



properties, and if equilibrium between the amount of water in the egg-white and that in the surrounding medium is disturbed, as in the experiment described above, precipitation occurs. Such processes are called "salting -out." The principle will be utilized later (page 221) to separate some of the meat-like substances from each other.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bancroft, W. D. Applied Colloidal Chemistry, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1921.
- Bayliss, W. M. Principles of General Physiology, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 2d ed., 1918. (Third edition later.)
- Bogue, R. H. (editor). Theory and Application of Colloidal Behavior, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1924 (two volumes).
- Bredig, G. Anorganische Fermente, Leipzig, 1901 (obtainable from B. Login & Son, New York, N. Y.).
- Clark, W. M. The Determination of Hydrogen Ions, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 2d ed., 1923.
- Falk, K. G. The Chemistry of Enzyme Actions, New York, The Chemical Catalog Co., revised edition, 1924.
- Loeb, J. Colloidal Chemistry and Medicine. In Contributions to Medical and Biological Research, Honor of William Osler, vol. 1.
- (a) Proteins and the Theory of Colloidal Behavior, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1922.
- (b) See Bogue, vol. 1, p. 23.
- McClendon, J. F. Physical Chemistry, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925.
- McLeod, J. J. R. Physiology and Biochemistry in Modern Medicine, St. Louis, C. V. Mosby & Co., 2d ed., 1923.
- Michaelis, L. Die Wasserstoffionenkonzentration, 2d ed., Berlin, Julius Springer, 1923. Also printed in the United States as follows: Hydrogen-ion Concentration. Its Significance in Biology and Methods for the Determination, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1925.
- Ostwald, Wolfgang. Die Kolloide. Translated as an American edition by Martin Fischer, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1923.

## CHAPTER III

### THE BODY AND ITS MAINTENANCE

"Like studying life through creatures you dissect—  
You lose it the moment you detect."

Pope, "Essay on Man."

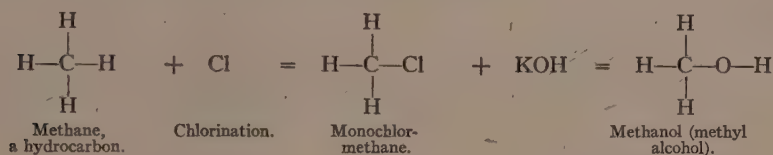
**Body Structure.**—The human body is essentially like all organisms in its chemical structure, for by the great *Law of Similar Function*, all organisms perform certain fundamental functions, which are either for the maintenance of the individual or of the race; that is, nutrition or reproduction. There are functions accessory to the former: locomotion, employed in searching for food; sensation, which correlates the different parts of the body; digestion, by which process foods, which are typically colloidal, become crystalloidal and are made to pass through membranes into the blood; excretion, or the elimination of substances which become more or less completely oxidized, or serve to remove such compounds. For the purposes of reproduction specialized tissues have as their function the production of individuals similar to those whence they came. Affiliated with reproduction is growth, by which the individual reaches the proportions of the parent.

**Specialization.**—A specialization of parts of the body exists in order that various reactions may be performed in a regular manner. This morphological specialization is accompanied by a chemical differentiation, which is to be expected, since chemical behavior determines both functional and morphological states. Certain qualities accompany chemical configurations: No matter where we find the radicle OH we find a characteristic behavior. It is not always possible to tell what function a chemical substance or radicle plays, because we do not have enough knowledge of the substance to predict what it may do. For instance, creatin<sup>1</sup> always occurs in muscle, but we do not know its precursors, nor what relation it has to muscle action. Nevertheless, we believe that it is concerned in some way with this action, owing to its invariable presence in muscle. Specialization of

<sup>1</sup> Page 361.



**The Foods.**—The body cannot utilize as food, substances which have great chemical activity. The teeth contain fluorin, the most active of the elements. In the body its activity is limited by being combined with calcium to form calcium fluorid. For the same reason foods enter the body in partly 'oxidized form. The glucids<sup>1</sup> are hydroxy-compounds; likewise the fats. The protids<sup>2</sup> are similarly hydroxy-compounds, with ammonia. All materials used by the body as food resemble it in chemical composition, and comparatively slight variations from this composition render substances undesirable as food. For instance, the hydrocarbons are not used as food; yet the addition of a single atom of oxygen to methane, making methanol, converts the hydrocarbon to a food substance.<sup>3</sup>



**Sources of Foods.**—The human body cannot derive its energy from inorganic foods.

It must depend upon organisms which can utilize inorganic substances, such as the green plants, which contain chlorophyl,<sup>4</sup> chemically similar to hemoglobin the coloring-matter of the blood. Chlorophyl sieves the light, permitting only rays of definite wave length to enter the cells. Chlorophyl absorbs light in the region of the red rays<sup>5</sup> and also of the violet rays.<sup>6</sup> At these points, where light is absorbed to the greatest extent, the optimal chemical activity occurs, according to the Draper-Grottus Law,<sup>7</sup> which predicts that light must be absorbed to be effective in chemical reactions, as well as in electrical and other types of reactions.

<sup>1</sup> Carbohydrates; they are the starches, sugars, substances like paper, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Meat-like substances, muscle, beans, cheese, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Speaking in general terms; methanol in any but very limited amounts is extremely poisonous, and the same may be said of all the alcohols.

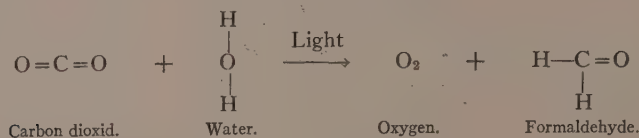
<sup>4</sup> Greek *chloros*, green, and *phyllon*, leaf, "leaf-green."

<sup>5</sup> 6500 Å (Ångstrom units). One unit is the wave length of light measured in ten millionths of a millimeter.

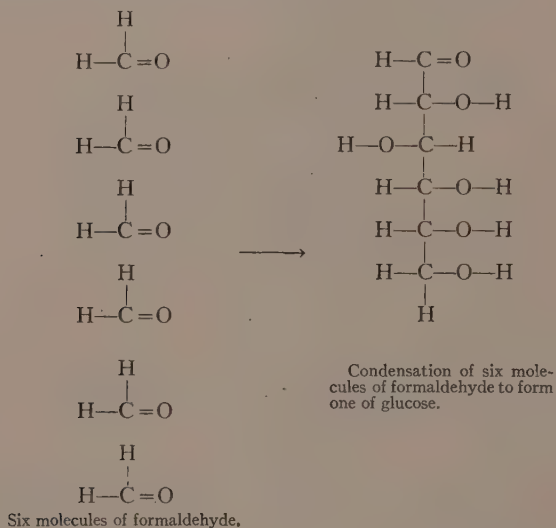
<sup>6</sup> 4250 Å.

<sup>7</sup> J. W. Draper, pioneer chemist of the United States in the Free Academy, now College of the City of New York. Grottus, C. J. T., German chemist, 1819.

**Synthesis of Foods from Inorganic Sources.**—Photosynthesis<sup>1</sup> is the process of conjugation of carbon dioxide and water to form formaldehyde, which becomes condensed to form sugar. Oxygen is evolved. The general reaction may be given as follows:



Formaldehyde may then be condensed into glucose:



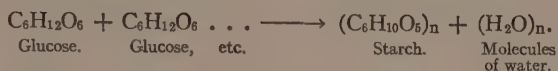
The optimal wave length for photosynthesis is about 2200 Å. Waves shorter than 1900 Å destroy formaldehyde. This wave length has been determined experimentally by moving a quartz-mercury-vapor lamp toward and away from the vessel holding the CO<sub>2</sub> and water. Waves that are deleterious to formaldehyde are screened by colloidal iron. Formaldehyde is produced by spraying from an atomizer carbonized water, like that used in soda-fountains, before a quartz-mercury lamp.<sup>2</sup> If this vapor is caught and, in turn, exposed

<sup>1</sup> Greek *phos*, light, and *syn*, together; that is, a synthesis by means of light.

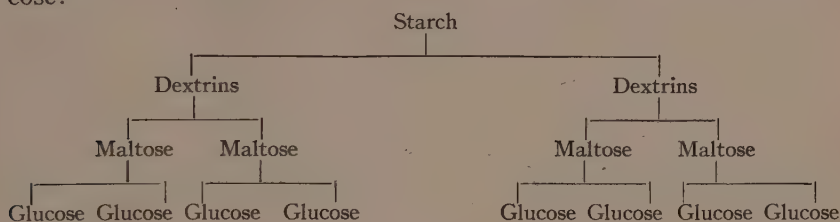
<sup>2</sup> The reason that quartz is used is that it is permeable to such waves as these. Ordinary glass is opaque to shorter wave-length light. The quartz-mercury lamp is used in therapy in rickets, etc. See page 548.



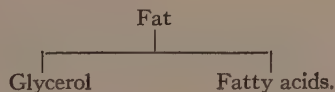
to the light, sugar is formed according to the structural formulæ already given. It is possible, therefore, experimentally to imitate photosynthesis in the green plant. In order to protect the sugar thus formed in the plant the glucose is dehydrated and further condensed to starch:



**The Fundamental Chemical Structure of Foods.**—Each energy-producing food substance is resolvable into typical structural units, or is already in unit form. During digestion the process of fragmentation of the compound sugar, fat, or protid occurs: Starches are digested to sugar (glucose). One may think of starch as a building composed of bricks, the foundation bricks being molecules of glucose:

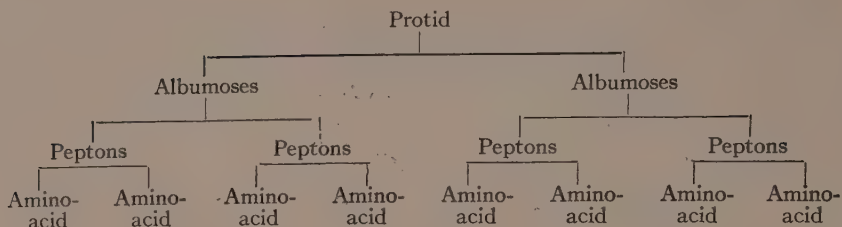


Two molecules of glucose condense to form maltose; the maltose is in turn condensed to form the dextrins, and the dextrins to form starch. We designate the products of starch digestion, collectively, as *glucidtemns*.<sup>1</sup> Again, the fats are composed of building stones, the alcohol, glycerol, and fatty acids:

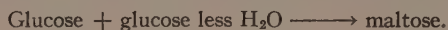


Glycerol and the fatty acids are collectively known as *lipidtemns*. Similarly, the protids or the meat-like, nitrogenous substances are digested to simple acids, the *amino-acids*, through a group of intermediate substances analogous to the dextrins and maltose of the glucid series:

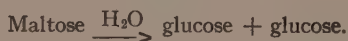
<sup>1</sup> Greek *glucid*, and *temno*, to cut; that is, the dextrins, maltose and glucose, are the products "cut" from the glucid, starch, by chemical action during digestion.



**The Mode of Union of the Fundamental Chemical Units Into the Molecules of the Foods.**—There is a simple plan throughout the chemistry of foods whereby the various constituents, glucidtemns, lipidtemns, and protidtemns, are condensed into the molecules of starches, fats, and protids. The process is known as *dehydration synthesis*; a molecule of water is removed for each condensation:



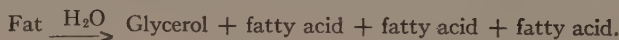
During digestion water is restored:



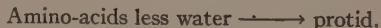
Similarly for the fats:



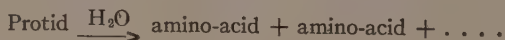
During digestion water is replaced:



For the protids:



In the digestion of protids:



**Assimilation.**—The term “assimilation”<sup>1</sup> has been used for years to designate the process whereby the digested products become a part of the body. Our present knowledge permits us to use the term

<sup>1</sup> Latin *ad*, to, and *similis*, like; that is, “like unto.”

in a more critical sense. The products of the digestion of starch are absorbed into the blood and are distributed as glucose throughout the body. It is probable that in the active man much of the glucose is destroyed at once, but some is converted into animal starch<sup>1</sup> and stored in the liver and muscles. Other sugars, like milk-sugar, are converted into glucose, utilized at once, or excreted. Fats may be carried in the blood as neutral fats, or in special combinations with phosphoric acid or with cholesterol.<sup>2</sup> The "neutral" fat may be stored in the adipose tissues, or used at once. The amino-acids are sent through the blood-stream and are absorbed by the various tissues. The amino-acids which can replace those lost in the wear and tear of the muscles, etc., are incorporated into the substance of these tissues, and those which cannot be used are returned to the blood-stream and disposed of.

**The Uses of the Foods.**—Foods have two principal uses: (1) *To provide heat* which is necessary to bring the body to the optimum temperature for enzyme action, and to compensate for the loss of heat by evaporation, etc. Heat is necessary to maintain the constant temperature of the normal body (37° C.; 98.6° F.). This temperature is the optimum for almost all enzymes occurring in the body,<sup>3</sup> and must be maintained for the proper functioning of the organism.

(2) *To repair the structures of the body* destroyed in its activities. Glucids, lipids, and one portion of the protid are used for the production of energy. Fats afford the greatest amount of heat.<sup>4</sup> The nitrogenous portion of the protids serves to restore the nitrogen that is lost in the urine.<sup>5</sup>

**Excretion** permits the body to free itself from the products of metabolism, and from substances which, not being useful, pass unchanged through the body. Excretion has three aspects:

<sup>1</sup> Glycogen, see page 139.

<sup>2</sup> The substance of which types of gall-stones are made, see page 209.

<sup>3</sup> And, strangely, for enzymes occurring in organisms that do not maintain a constant temperature, like the so-called "cold-blooded" animals, which should be termed variable-temperated organisms, for they adopt the temperature of their surroundings (poikilothermous animals).


<sup>4</sup> In making this statement the author has not forgotten the discrepancies pointed out by Professor Graham Lusk in the modern conceptions of heat production in the organism and the explanation of muscle movement. (See page 140.)

<sup>5</sup> About 12 gms. of nitrogen are lost from the body through the urine each day, and protids must be fed to compensate for this loss.

(1) Excretion of substances like inorganic salts which have formed a part of the tissues, but, having played their part, are thrown into the blood-stream and conducted thence to the kidneys to be excreted in the urine. The reason for this is not known, save in certain cases.


(2) Excretion of the end-products of combustion in the body. These ( $\text{CO}_2$ ;  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) are the "ash" of the fires.

(3) Excretion of substances to maintain the osmotic pressure or reaction equilibrium of the body. Sodium chlorid<sup>1</sup> is an example of the former group. Salt is introduced daily into the body in the foods and would accumulate if some means were not provided for its elimination. Acid phosphate,  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , is excreted in order that the reaction of the blood be maintained at near neutrality ( $\text{pH}$  7.3). By the daily elimination of a certain portion of these inorganic substances, their concentration, for osmotic purposes, is maintained at a fairly definite level.<sup>2</sup> While the urine is the principal means of voiding these substances, the lungs excrete  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , which are end-products of the metabolism of all three of the chief organic food stuffs. The lungs also aid in maintaining the neutrality of the body by eliminating  $\text{CO}_2$  (carbonic acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ). The feces consist largely of the remains of bacteria, the secretions (mucus, enzymes, etc.) of the alimentary tract, and certain substances like iron and calcium which have been a part of the body. The fat of the feces is not simply body fat, but is a true excretion product. The skin excretes water, some inorganic salts, and nitrogenous substances like urea. From the glands in the mouth uric acid is excreted to some extent. The kidney, however, is the chief excretory organ of the body.

**The Accessory Substances of the Foods.**—We have spoken of the inorganic salts which accompany the foods; these do not give rise to energy, but in various ways aid in its production. Certain organic substances or radicles, like the aromatic ring, , accompany the foods, but the power of the body to cleave the ring and thus render the substance available as food is small, and from the standpoint of

<sup>1</sup> We have said above that the reason for the loss of inorganic substances is unknown. It is. We do not know save in the case of one or two why they are not saved.

<sup>2</sup> About 15 grams of  $\text{NaCl}$  are taken into the body daily and an equal portion is excreted through the urine, perspiration, etc. By these means the amount of  $\text{NaCl}$  in the blood is maintained at a constant level (0.5 g. per 100 mls. blood).

nutrition, negligible. These organic substances are combined with sulphuric acid, or with an acid derived from glucose and excreted in this conjugated form, which is a harmless substance, while the ring involves dangerous possibilities. After metabolism has robbed the ring of its side-chains, a poisonous substance, phenol, , is usually

left. Many cases similar to this will occur in biochemistry. Among the accessory foods may be included the vitamins, the chemical nature of which we are just beginning to learn. The minute amounts in which they seem to function does not warrant classifying them as energy producers, yet energy is produced in abnormally low amounts in their absence.

**Inorganic Salts.**—These compounds are utilized in the body to keep certain substances in solution; to aid in enzyme activities; to aid in certain phenomena, like the clotting of blood and the curdling of milk to which calcium is indispensable. Structures which behave rhythmically, like the heart and cilia, require a very definite concentration of inorganic substances in the medium in which they work. The development of certain structures, like the bones, is dependent upon the presence of properly balanced concentrations of inorganic salts. Rickets, a disease of the child and occasionally of the adult, bears a definite relation to the calcium and phosphorus content of the blood. Sulphur occurs in cystin, which is one of the amino-acids resulting from the breaking down of meat-like substances. The function which sulphur performs in this way is unknown, but recently it has been shown that it probably has part in oxidation within the tissues. Iron occurs in the blood, where it undoubtedly serves as a peroxidase.<sup>1</sup> Iodin, found in minute amounts throughout the body, occurs in largest amount in the thyroid gland; the function of iodine is not clear, but this element is contained in the molecule of a special substance, thyroxine, which plays a most important rôle in the organism both in health and in disease.

**Inorganic Constituents of the Body.**—The following inorganic substances as elements have been found in the human body; note that the statements made on page 91 concerning the elementary composition of the body are illustrated on page 134.

<sup>1</sup> Page 113.



Atomic number.	Element.	Characteristic distribution.	Atomic weight.
1.....	Hydrogen	Throughout, as $H_2O$ .	1.008
3.....	Lithium	Lungs, etc.	7.010
6.....	Carbon	Throughout.	12.005
7.....	Nitrogen	Throughout in protid.	14.008
8.....	Oxygen	Throughout as $H_2O$ .	16.000
9.....	Fluorin	0.2 per cent. bone-ash.	19.000
11.....	Sodium	Throughout as $NaCl$ .	23.000
12.....	Magnesium	Throughout less than Ca in lungs, kidney, liver, and glands; greater than Ca in brain, muscle, and heart.	24.320
14.....	Silicon	Lens, 0.05 per cent.; muscle, 0.002 per cent.; skin, 0.004 per cent.	28.000
15.....	Phosphorus	Phospholipids; phosphoprotids; in urine, acidity.	31.04
16.....	Sulphur	In cystin (hair), 0.5 per cent.; liver, 0.9 per cent.	32.060
17.....	Chlorin	Throughout as $NaCl$ ; in cytoplasm rather than in nucleus. Blood, 0.2 per cent.; kidney, 0.1 per cent.; bile, 0.01 per cent.	35.460
19.....	Potassium	In cytoplasm. Blood-serum, 0.2 per cent. as $K_2O$ . About 20 per cent. less K than Na at birth in the total body. Muscle has six times as much K as Na. Liver, two times as much.	39.100
20.....	Calcium	Typically in nuclei of cells. As $CaO$ , muscle has 0.005 per cent.; lung, 0.001 per cent.; kidney, 0.008 per cent.	40.070
25.....	Manganese	Accompanies iron in many tissues. As $MnO_2$ blood contains 0.00005 per cent. In ash of pancreas, 2.2 per cent.	54.930
26.....	Iron	Throughout in amounts under 0.01 per cent. Human fetus, 0.14 per cent.; liver, 0.2 per cent.; more in female.	55.84
29.....	Copper	Kidney, 0.001 per cent.; liver, 0.0002 per cent. Traces in blood.	63.57
30.....	Zinc	Liver, 0.001 per cent. to 0.007 per cent.	65.37
33.....	Arsenic	Thyroid, 0.000,007 per cent.; brain, 0.000,001 per cent.; liver, 0.000,001 9 per cent.	74.96
53.....	Iodin	Thyroid, 0.04 per cent.; liver, 0.001 per cent.; brain, 0.002 per cent.	126.92

It is seen that no inert element, like argon,<sup>1</sup> occurs in the body; that radio-active elements and those that are undergoing decomposition are lacking; and that with regard to atomic weight, iodine is the farthest up the scale. Heavy elements, such as lead, and the noble metals, are not found. Two explanations may be offered:

(1) The distribution of the elements in the organism is an historical matter, representing the period in evolution when only those

<sup>1</sup> Argon accompanies the air into the lungs as nitrogen does, but in both cases they play no part in the economy of the body.

elements that are of lighter weight than iodine were evolved. This is not probable.

(2) The lighter kinds occur in living things because these elements were relegated to the surface of the earth and were available for the use of the organism as it has undergone evolution. The geologist believes that the heavier elements lie toward the center of the earth,



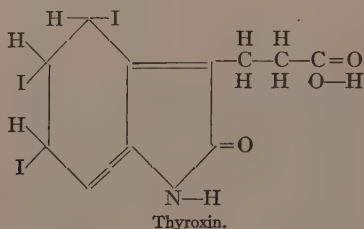
Fig. 71.—H. C. Bradley, Professor of Physiological Chemistry, University of Wisconsin, Madison. Investigations concerning the rôle of enzymes in biochemical processes, especially those of tissue ("autolytic") enzymes, the function of lipases in fat metabolism; earlier investigations concerning the presence of inorganic substances like manganese in organisms.

since the total weight of the earth demands heavier substances near the center of mass.

**Correlative Systems of the Body.**—In an organism as complex as the human body special means are required to adjust the various parts to each other. Two great systems exist for this purpose: the *nervous* and the *chemical*. The first is practically a telegraph system. The second is known as the endocrine system, or the system of internal secretions.<sup>1</sup> This subject will be considered in more detail

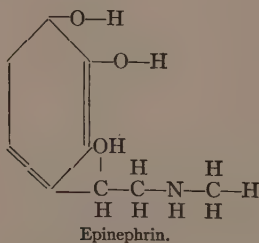
<sup>1</sup> Page 642. It is also called the cryptorhetic and the hormone system.

later in the present volume, but one or two examples may be given here. Iodin has been mentioned as a constituent of the thyroid gland. The substance which is present in the gland and which is doubtless its characteristic ingredient is thyroxin<sup>1</sup>:



This substance has the power of accelerating metabolism, according to the mechanism described on page 94. If 1 mg. for every 1000 gms. of body weight be introduced into a normal person, a 2.8 per cent. increase in utilization of oxygen results. This indicates that the function of the substance is to maintain the oxidation of the body, regardless of whatever may interfere with the normal impulse to burn the foods. When too much thyroxin is formed the body is on a heightened plane of metabolism and serious pathological changes, known as hyperthyroidism, a type of goiter, develop. On the other hand, thyroxin may not be produced in sufficient quantities to maintain the proper oxidative impulse, and another type of goiter, hypothyroidism, occurs.

Another compound which exerts a regulatory action on portions of the body, either locally or far distant from the gland in which it is produced, is epinephrin<sup>2</sup>:

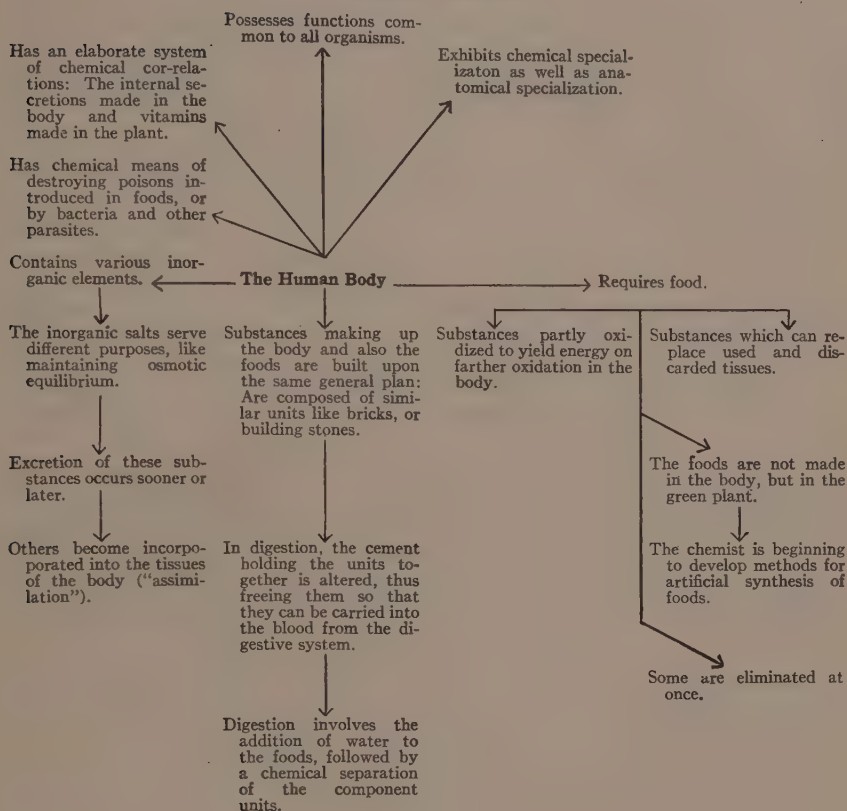


A 1 : 10,000 solution of this substance causes decided constrict-

<sup>1</sup> See Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 83, p. 1166, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Also called adrenin, adrenalin, and suprarenin.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



tion of the smaller blood-vessels of the mucous membrane and of other tissues. Both thyroxin and epinephrin have been produced synthetically.

**Detoxication.**—One of the great characteristics of the human body is the power to protect itself against dangers. Besides the morphological means of protection, such as the horny layer of the skin, there is an elaborate chemical system of rendering poisons harmless. Bacteria in the intestine produce substances which are toxic, and which are absorbed into the blood with compounds that are non-toxic. It is essential that these poisons be disposed of rapidly. This is accomplished through the liver,<sup>1</sup> which conjugates them with sulphuric

<sup>1</sup> And other organs. There is a tendency in modern biochemistry to distribute the functions that once were ascribed wholly to the liver to other tissues.

acid<sup>1</sup> or with glucuronic acid, derived from glucose. Certain food substances are likewise toxic and must be detoxicated by chemical conjugation. In man, on an excessively high vegetable diet, there may be increase in toxic substances. In the herbivorous animal like the horse, there is a large excretion of these detoxicated substances, like hippuric acid. The whole problem of bacterial intoxication and how to combat it is a chemical study and a part of the general field of detoxication.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Baly, E. C. C., and associates. Articles in the Journal of the Chemical Society (Great Britain), vol. 119 and following, 1921 and 1923. Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, vol. 16, p. 1016, 1924.
- Bayliss, W. M. Principles of General Physiology, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 3d ed., 1922.
- Euler, H. Pflanzenchemie, Dresden, Encke, 2 vols., revised, 1923.
- Loeb, J. Proteins and the Theory of Colloidal Behavior, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1922.
- McCollum, E. V. The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition, New York, The Macmillan Company, revised edition, 1923.
- Meltzer, S. J. Factors of Safety in the Animal Structure and Economy. Harvey Lectures (of the Harvey Society, New York), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1906-07.
- Oppenheimer, C. Handbuch der Biochemie des Menschen und der Tiere, Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1909. (Four volumes and supplementary volumes; a new edition is in progress.)
- Parsons, T. R. Fundamentals of Biochemistry in Relation to Human Physiology, Cambridge (England), W. Heffer & Sons, Ltd., 1923. Also available in the United States as follows: Same title, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1924.
- Sherwin, C. P. The Fate of Foreign Organic Compounds in the Body, Physiol. Revs., vol. 2, p. 242, 1922.
- Wells, H. G. The Chemical Aspects of Immunity, New York, The Chemical Catalog Co., 1925.

<sup>1</sup> Sulphuric acid does not occur as such in the tissues, but what is meant is that the sulphion, in contact with certain cations, is available to perform this function.



## CHAPTER IV

### ENERGY PRODUCERS: THE GLUCIDS<sup>1</sup>

"Une fois établis, ils restent; l'interprétation humaine varie seule, comme les moyens d'observation."—*Charles Robin*.<sup>2</sup>

THE compounds embraced by the term "glucid" are, in popular language:

The sugars: Grape-sugar, fruit-sugar, cane-sugar, malt-sugar, milk-sugar, etc.

The starches: Potato, rice, corn, and other starches.

The celluloses: Substances from which paper is made; these are the supporting structures of the cell walls of plants and are indigestible. They play an important rôle, nevertheless.

The pectins: These are the framework of the jellies; recently jellies have been made from artificial pectin, mainly derived from the apple.

Perhaps the commonest glucids are the starches. Both in the animal and the plant kingdom starch is a fundamental form of food, and also represents the stored energy derived from food. In the potato, starch is laid down in the tuber as a reserve to be drawn on in the spring. In somewhat the same way man stores starch in the liver and muscle. It is this starch which is used in producing muscle energy, as we shall explain.

Many new glucid substances have been introduced into our dietary during the last twenty years, and additions are being made each year. The introduction of beet-sugar several years ago is an illustration of changing habits. Recently the Jerusalem artichoke has been intro-

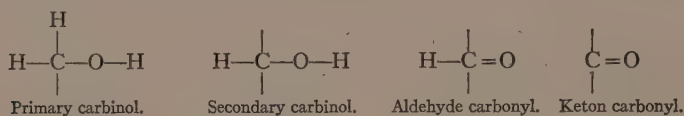
<sup>1</sup> Carbohydrates. The nomenclature is that of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry. The term "carbohydrate" is misleading; it is based on the erroneous assumption that the sugars and starches have their elements arranged as carbon =  $n$  and hydrogen and oxygen as in water  $(H_2O)_n$ . Thus glucose, having an empiral formula,  $C_6H_{12}O_6$ , is resolvable into  $C_1$  and  $(H_2O)_1$ . However, lactic acid ( $C_3H_6O_3$ ) is not a member of this group of sugars, yet its formula is resolvable also into  $C_1$ ,  $(H_2O)_1$ .

<sup>2</sup> French biochemist, 1853.

duced as a source of sugar (page 166). Special uses for glucids were introduced when insulin was discovered (page 20).

Glucids are compounds of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. They consist of one or more simple sugars, such as glucose, bound together by the elimination of water, one molecule for each group of two simple sugars. The hydrogen and oxygen are in the form of either carbinols<sup>1</sup> or carbonyls.<sup>2</sup>

**Terminology.**—The suffix *-ose* has been adopted by chemists to indicate a glucid just as *-ol* indicates an alcohol, *-yde* an aldehyde, and *-ene* a hydrocarbon. Since all glucids are either aldehydes or ketons, we term them *ald-oses* or *ket-oses*.



**What Kind of Energy Do the Glucids Produce?**—Of the various kinds of energy which living things utilize, the most conspicuous are the energy of movement and of heat, and it is these that the glucids

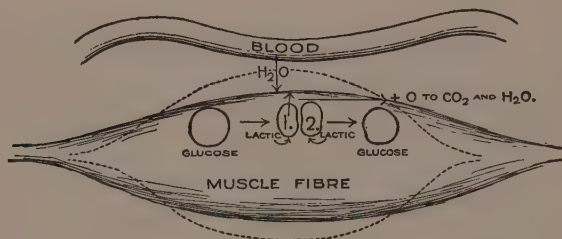


Fig. 72.—To explain the Meyerhof-Hill theory of muscle action. Glucose, at the beginning of contraction, is hydrolyzed from the store of glycogen. Six carbon glucose becomes two molecules, each, of three carbon lactic acid. A portion of the acid thus formed increases the permeability of the muscle-fiber for water; the remainder of the lactic acid becomes reconverted into glucose and glycogen. Water causes the muscle to swell (contract) and the acid is burned to CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O in order to maintain the optimum temperature of the reaction. The contracted muscle is shown in the dotted lines.

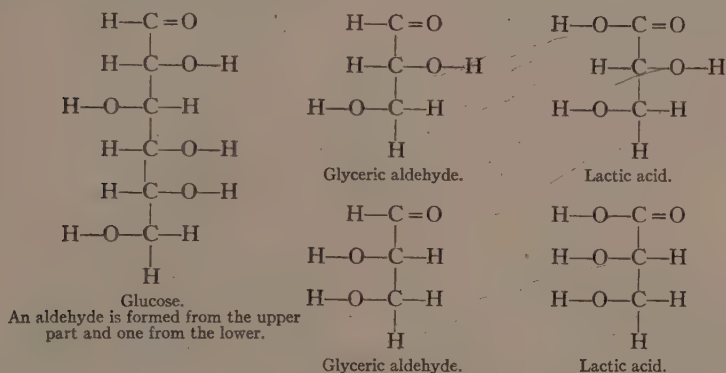
produce. Little is known regarding the rôle of electricity, light, and other forms of energy in the human body. An electrical impulse accompanies the movement of muscles. We are just becoming aware

<sup>1</sup> Primary and secondary alcohols.

<sup>2</sup> Aldehyde or keton radicles.

of the influence which light, especially of shorter wave lengths, like ultraviolet rays of about 2200 Å, exerts upon the body, and also upon the substances used for food.<sup>1</sup> The energy of visible rays of light is utilized by the eye to distinguish form and color. The energy of sound is used by the ear to detect the distance of objects from the human body; to appreciate rhythmic and unison music, etc.

The manner in which the glucids are converted into energy is interesting (Fig. 72). Glucose gives rise to two molecules of lactic acid or equivalent substance<sup>2</sup>:



Lactic acid increases the permeability of the muscle membranes for water, which flows into the muscle, causing greater turgidity and contraction, *i. e.*, movement. The other molecule of lactic acid by reversible reaction becomes converted into glucose again and the molecule of acid which caused the increased permeability for water is burned to afford heat necessary to maintain the optimal temperature of the reaction (Fig. 72). Glucose, then, performs a double task:

It acts physicochemically in muscle contraction, making the muscle membrane more able to absorb water.

It acts chemically, being burned, and the resultant heat maintains the temperature for the reactions in the body.<sup>3</sup>

**Structural Uses of the Glucids.**—The glucids not only produce energy but also serve in various tissues as integral portions of the supporting structures:

<sup>1</sup> Page 548.

<sup>2</sup> The complete reactions are given on page 168.

<sup>3</sup> See footnote, page 131.

Combined with protid they form part of the characteristic substance of the mucous slime, such as occurs in saliva and in the mucus of the mucous membrane.

Combined with protid they form a part of cartilage (gristle).

Combined with nitrogenous substances they make up the substance which the histologist calls chromatin and which is concerned with heredity and sex.

Combined with phosphoric acid they make up a compound of the general nature of the foregoing, but derived from plants and found chiefly in muscle.<sup>1</sup>

A glucid (milk-sugar) occurs in milk. One-half of the milk-sugar is used in making parts of the nervous tissue (medullary sheaths).

A condensation product, resembling starch, is called "animal starch" (glycogen), of which we have spoken.

#### A STUDY OF THE GLUCID, STARCH

As a basis for more detailed study of the various members of this important group, we shall first make a study of starch, since it is the most common of all glucid foods.

EXERCISE 1.—Examine under the higher power of the microscope<sup>2</sup> the various kinds of starch given you. Compare with the figures (Figs. 73-76) and be able to identify unknowns given you.

EXERCISE 2.—Using one of the preparations from the previous Exercise, add a drop of iodine solution to the granules on the slide, cover with cover-glass, and, by means of a piece of filter-paper, draw, by capillary action, some water through the opposite side; this will remove excess iodine.<sup>3</sup> The granules turn blue. Compare with the color given to a minute granule of dry egg-white, or casein. Distinction from protid. Explanation of the blue color: The reaction is one of colloidal adsorption.<sup>4</sup> Quantitatively, it may be expressed as follows:

$$\left(\frac{x}{m}\right)^5 = k \times c$$

where  $k$  is a constant varying with the kind of substance,  $c$  the concentration of which  $m$  units are taken. The amount of iodine adsorbed

<sup>1</sup> Pages 335 and 367.

<sup>2</sup> For table of magnification see Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> A drop of thiosulphate will sometimes aid in decolorizing the medium so that the granules may be seen more clearly.

<sup>4</sup> Page 109.

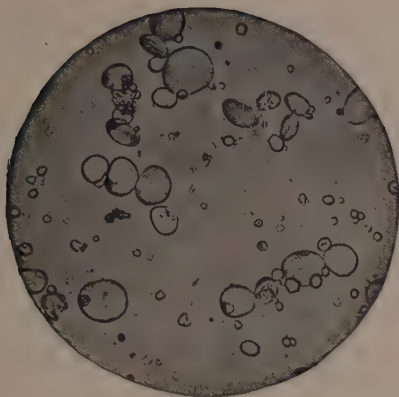


Fig. 73.—Wheat starch grains magnified 250 times. (As seen by a 6 ocular and 4 mm. objective.) (From Woodman, Food Analysis, McGraw-Hill Co., New York.)

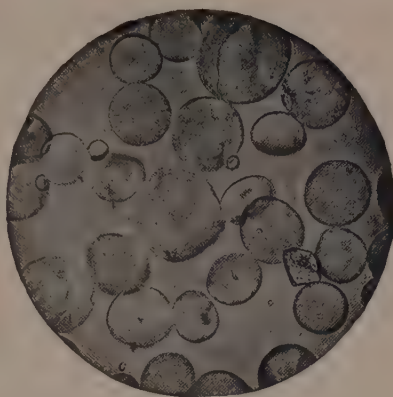


Fig. 74.—Rye starch grains. Magnification as in Fig. 73. (From Woodman, Food Analysis, McGraw-Hill Co., New York.)

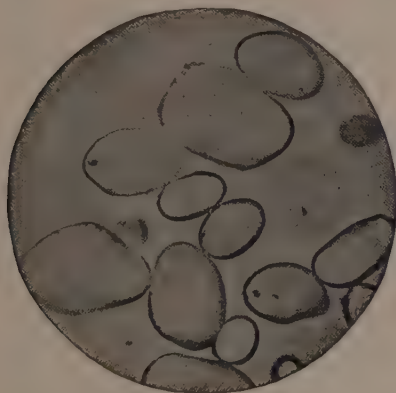


Fig. 75.—Potato starch grains. Magnification as in Fig. 73. (From Woodman, Food Analysis, McGraw-Hill Co., New York.)

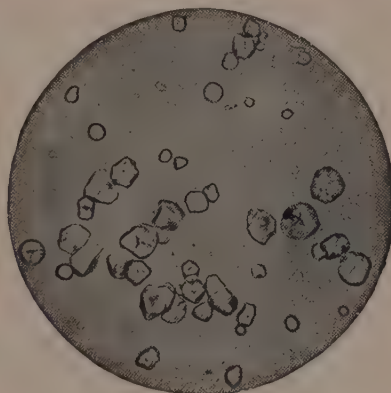


Fig. 76.—Cornstarch grains. Magnification as in Fig. 73. (From Woodman, Food Analysis, McGraw-Hill Co., New York.)

is x. Lanthanum acetate affects iodine in the same way that starch does. In this case,  $k=2$ . Hydriodic acid is necessary for the reaction and for this reason the following result should be negative:

EXERCISE 3.—Into 10 mls. of distilled water in a test-tube place as much starch as will lie on a 5-cent piece. Mix until the starch is thoroughly dispersed through the water. Boil 50 mls. of distilled



water in a small beaker and pour the contents of the test-tube into the beaker. Let the solution in the beaker boil until an opalescent suspension of starch is obtained. Cool under the tap.

Pour 2 mls. of the solution prepared in this manner into a test-tube and add one drop of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Mix. Add a few drops of iodine solution. Note whether color develops. Repeat, using 1 drop of glacial acetic acid in place of the NaOH. Does the color develop?

EXERCISE 4.—To show that heat disintegrates the iodine-starch adsorption compound. Repeat the second part of the preceding Exercise, and after obtaining the color, gently warm the solution in the test-tube. Note that the color disappears. Cool the test-tube under the tap; the color returns.

EXERCISE 5.—Shake 5 mls. of the iodine solution with one volume of charcoal. Filter. Using the filtrate, add a small amount of the starch solution from Exercise 3. Do you obtain color? What was the color of the filtrate before the addition of the starch?

EXERCISE 6.—Decolorize a small amount of iodine solution with drops of sodium thiosulphate solution. Does such an iodine solution color starch? What would you say of the "white iodine" of commerce?

EXERCISE 7.—Test various sugars, cellulose (filter-paper, cotton), and pectin (commercial fruit pectin), with iodine. Note with what substances you obtain the color.

EXERCISE 8.—Hydrolysis of starch. To 5 mls. of the solution from Exercise 3 add 2 drops of hydrochloric acid (conc.) and place the tube in boiling water. Transfer to the concavities of a spot-plate drops of iodine solution and at intervals test the contents of the tube for the starch-iodine reaction. Note when the color becomes changed. Note when the blue color is lost. It is necessary to perform this test with cooled starch solution (see Exercise 4); therefore, remove a drop of the solution by means of a glass rod and let the liquid cool in the air before plunging in the iodine. Leave the test-tube in the bath for about five minutes after the blue color disappears and then test the

contents of the tube with Fehling's solution,<sup>1</sup> for the presence of a simple sugar.

**The Products of Starch Hydrolysis.**—In Exercise 8 we found that, as time proceeded the starch underwent changes which were indicated by different colors of iodine. The first change was the appearance of a reddish color; the product of starch hydrolysis giving this color is erythrodextrin.<sup>2</sup>

When the color with iodine disappears, achroödextrin<sup>3</sup> is the product. Subdivisions of these groups of hydrolysis products of starch may be recognized by special methods, but further detail is not warranted here.

**Chemical Structure of Starch.**—It has already been stated<sup>4</sup> that starch resembles other typical energy-producing or repair food substances in being built up from a number of simple units. The units from which starch is derived are molecules of glucose which gives a positive reaction with Fehling's solution and a negative with iodine. This is readily demonstrated by testing pure glucose with Fehling's solution and with iodine, or one may identify glucose absolutely by means of the so-called osazone test.<sup>5</sup> Glucose is made into a molecule of maltose by the union of two molecules of glucose and the elimination of one molecule of water. Maltose, likewise, may be identified by means of its osazone.<sup>6</sup> The maltose molecules are united to form achroödextrin and this in turn composes erythrodextrin, and finally the complete molecule of starch. The best determinations of molecular weight of starch give the empirical formula as  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_7$ , with a molecular weight of 32,000. However, such weights are theoretical,<sup>7</sup> being calculations on the assumption that colloidal starch follows the laws of gases and of solutions, and in all probability do not represent accurately the true molecular weight of the starch molecule.

**Physical Structure of the Starch Grain** (Fig. 77).—Starch is grouped in minute bodies or grains around a central core, the hilus.

<sup>1</sup> Page 155.

<sup>2</sup> Greek, *erythraios*, red, and Latin, *dexter*, right, the dextrins turning the plane of polarized light to the right, like glucose.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *a*, privative, meaning without, and *chroma*, color.

<sup>4</sup> Page 129.

<sup>5</sup> Page 158.

<sup>6</sup> Page 158.

<sup>7</sup> Bancroft, W. D., Professor of Physical Chemistry, Cornell University, Ithaca, N. Y. See Applied Colloidal Chemistry, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1921.

By examining a bit of potato starch under the microscope, one finds that the grains are not homogeneous throughout, but that concentric layers of different materials exist in the grain. The true starch which turns blue with iodine, called *amylum*, *granulose*, and *amylose*, is surrounded by a protective layer of a cellulose, *amylopectin*, which does not turn blue with iodine. Cellulose, as we shall see,<sup>1</sup> is refractory to reagents, such as water, acids, alkali, enzymes. Granulose, on the other hand, when heated in water is readily soluble (Lintner's starch).<sup>2</sup> The purpose of cooking starchy foods is to cause mechanical rupture of the insoluble amylopectin layers and to make the amylose avail-

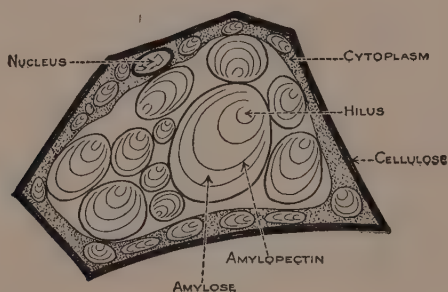


Fig. 77.—A typical starch cell. The starch is produced in the protoplasmic layer surrounding the central space, and as the starch grains develop, they intrude and obliterate the space. Each grain consists of (1) starch proper, amylose; (2) amylopectin, which protects the starch. Amylose is the nutritive starch.

able for action of the digestive juices. However, 90 per cent. of raw potato starch is digested by man.

**Identification of the Hydrolysis Products of Starch.**—The dex-  
trins are identified by their color reaction with iodine. The simpler  
sugars below the dextrans (maltose and glucose) are identified by the  
type of crystals (osazones) formed when they react with the com-  
pound phenylhydrazine ( $C_6H_5.HN.NH_2$ ).

**EXERCISE 9. Maltosazone.**—Grind together in a dry mortar as  
many phenylhydrazine-hydrochloride crystals as will lie upon a quarter  
piece and twice as many sodium acetate crystals.<sup>3</sup> Using a solution  
of maltose, add to 10 mls. of this solution 1 ml. of glacial acetic acid

<sup>1</sup> Page 189.

<sup>2</sup> Lintner, C. J., German beer chemist.

<sup>3</sup> The acetate acts as a buffer (page 67) against the HCl, which becomes loosened from the molecule.



Glucosazone



Maltosazone



Lactosazone

Fig. 78.—Phenylhydrazin test for sugars. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)





and mix this solution with the phenylhydrazin—HCl—acetate mixture, warming to aid solution. Filter. Place the test-tube containing the filtrate in a boiling water-bath for half an hour. Then remove the flame<sup>1</sup> and let the water cool spontaneously. Crystals will appear. Follow their appearance and note the time necessary for first crystallization. Note their appearance in mass and under the lower power of the microscope, omitting cover-glass. Compare with the figures of osazones (Fig. 78). Recrystallize from hot water, dry between filter-paper, and determine the melting-point as follows: From small-bore glass tubing draw out a bulb and cut above and below the bulb so as to leave one end a funnel-shaped opening (Fig. 214.) Seal the opposite end completely. With a knife blade transfer some of the crystals to the funnel, and by tapping it make them fall into the bulb. Now seal the funnel end, taking care not to melt the crystals. When the tube is cool, tap the crystals to the bottom of the bulb, invert it carefully, attach it to the bulb of a thermometer by means of rings cut from rubber tubing. Next immerse the preparation in a small beaker of sulphuric acid standing upon a wire gauze over a micro-burner. Add a crystal of  $\text{KNO}_3$  to prevent discoloration of the acid. Increase the temperature of the acid and note carefully the melting-point of the crystals (approximately  $200^\circ \text{C.}$ ). The Thiele tube (Fig. 214) is a desirable means of obtaining the melting-point of the osazones.

EXERCISE 10. *Glucosazones*.—Repeat the osazone formation, using glucose. Compare the shape of the crystals with that shown in the figure (Fig. 78).

#### TECHNICAL CLASSIFICATION OF THE GLUCIDS

Let us now proceed to a more detailed study of the glucids, insofar as they are of interest to the medical student. The classification presented is based on the chemical features of the different members.

The glucids consist of the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen arranged in the form of aldehydes, with the characteristic group

$\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{C}-\text{H} \\ || \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , or ketones,  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ | \end{array}$  and other radicles arranged as carbinols,

primary  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{O}-\text{H} \\ | \end{array}$ , or secondary  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{O}-\text{H} \\ | \end{array}$ . They are hydroxy

<sup>1</sup> The preparation must not be shaken.

compounds, the number of hydroxyls being one less than the number of carbon atoms. In aqueous solutions they stabilize themselves with

respect to water by forming internal anhydrides, like lactons (page 176). From the fact that many, but by no means all, have the hydrogen and oxygen proportional to the amounts of these elements in water, they are frequently called "carbohydrates."<sup>1</sup> While typically distributed in plants, glucids also occur in animals (glycogen in the liver; a special cellulose, tunicin, in the Tunicates,<sup>2</sup> etc.).

The glucids are subdivided into three groups according to the number of simple sugars, like glucose, which compose the molecule.

**Monoglucids.**<sup>3</sup>—The individual names

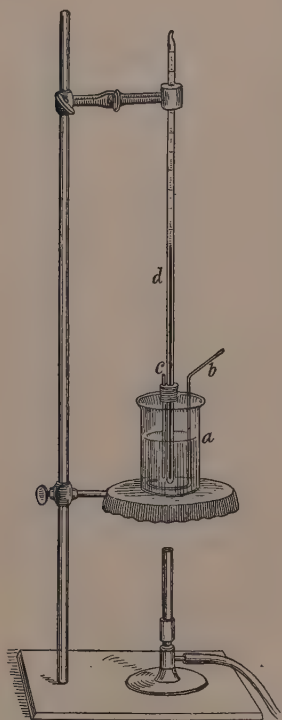


Fig. 79.—Determination of melting-point: *a*, Beaker; *b*, stirrer; *c*, melting-point tube (see Fig. 214); *d*, thermometer. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

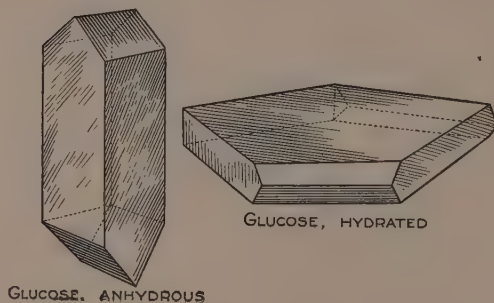


Fig. 80.—Crystals of highly purified glucose. The graphic formula for anhydroglucose is shown in Fig. 84, page 174.

for these sugars terminate in *-ose* (compare glucose). The molecule consists of a single simple sugar. Examples: glucose<sup>4</sup>; levulose<sup>5</sup>; galactose, in milk; mannose,<sup>6</sup> from manna and from the ivory nut,

<sup>1</sup> Page 139.

<sup>2</sup> Animals lying at the base of the great vertebrate series.

<sup>3</sup> Greek, *mono*, single; frequently called monosaccharids.

<sup>4</sup> Also called grape-sugar and dextrose. Greek *glykos*, sweet; Latin *dexter*, right.

<sup>5</sup> Also called fruit sugar, fructose and (recently) artichoke sugar. Latin *levis*, left.

<sup>6</sup> From the Oriental *manna*, food.

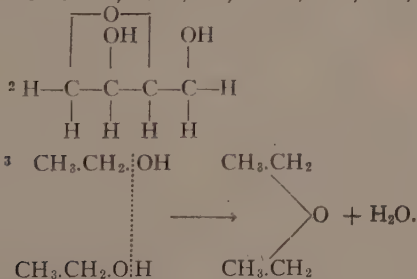
used for making buttons. The monoglucids may in turn be subdivided as bioses, trioses, tetroses, etc., according to the number of carbon atoms in the molecule.<sup>1</sup> Of these groups, the pentoses and hexoses are of primary importance to the medical student.

On oxidation monoglucids are converted into acids. Thus glucose becomes gluconic, glucuronic, or saccharic according to the degree of oxidation. On reduction, the monoglucids become alcohols; glucose, for example, becomes sorbitol.

**Diglucids.**—The suffix of the individual diglucids is the same as in the case of the monoglucids, *-ose*. Two simple sugars are united in the molecule in an internal anhydrid arrangement, an atom of oxygen uniting the integral parts. The arrangement is similar to that of an ether, like butylene ether.<sup>2</sup> The analogy extends further, because one alcohol molecule unites with another to form an ether.<sup>3</sup> Glucosides are compounds of an aldehyde (glucose) and another substance, like methyl-radicle, CH<sub>3</sub>, or another glucid molecule. Sucrose<sup>4</sup> is a gluco-fructoside; maltose a gluco-glucoside; lactose, a gluco-galactoside. During digestion of the diglucids, the ether-like bond is destroyed by the addition of a molecule of water (hydrolysis).<sup>5</sup> Enzymes specific for the glucoside or galactoside accelerate such decompositions.

**Polyglucids.**<sup>6</sup>—The suffix is *-an*. The group consists of the starches, pectins, gums, and celluloses. The starches are glucosans; they become hydrolyzed to units identical with the diglucid, maltose. Celluloses are also glucosans. They also become hydrolyzed to diglucids. Pectins are galactosans, becoming hydrolyzed to galactose, and the unit is not a diglucid, but a triglucid. A group of celluloses, known as hemicelluloses, occur in the coats of peas and beans and, on being fermented, produce CO<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>S, and other gases, a frequent source of

<sup>1</sup> Greek *bis*, twice; *tris*, thrice; *tetra*, four, etc.



<sup>4</sup> Table sugar, cane-sugar, beet sugar, saccharose.

<sup>5</sup> Page 130.

<sup>6</sup> Polysaccharids (Greek *poly*, many).

flatulence. Raffinose is a triglucid composed of fructose and a galactoside, mellibiose. On digestion fructose is first separated by hydrolysis from the mellibiose and then the remaining diglucid mellibiose is hydrolyzed to galactose and glucose. Raffinose occurs in molasses, a food which is tolerated by diabetics in some respects. Agar-agar is a galactosan; it is prepared from certain Asiatic species of sea-weeds and is useful as a mechanical laxative. It readily absorbs water and, being indigestible, is carried to the intestine where it serves to lubricate the feces. Gums, like gum-mastic, gum-arabic, etc., belong to the polyglucids. Inulin is found in the dahlia root and affords the bacteriologist a medium for proving the presence of certain types of bacteria, which contain an enzyme capable of hydrolyzing inulin; man does not possess this enzyme. Inulin is a fructosan and is being obtained commercially from the Jerusalem artichoke; the fructose is hydrolyzed from the inulin and placed on the market in competition to cane- and beet-sugar, sucrose.<sup>1</sup>

#### CHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GLUCIDS

**The Lability of the Glucids.**—The rôle played by glucids in the economy of man and animals as well as plants suggests that these substances have some peculiar property or special fitness for the work they perform. This particular function is their susceptibility to undergoing chemical change. Although the celluloses are resistant to hydrolysis and to the action of enzymes of the human alimentary tract, the individual sugars which form them are chemically very active and hence readily affected by reagents. They become oxidized easily, like all aldehydes, and it is this property that lies at the basis of several of the tests, like that of Fehling, for their detection. Their ability to become oxidized is responsible for the use of sugar in making mirrors, for sugar removes oxygen from metal hydroxides, leaving the metals, like silver, deposited upon the glass. Cupric hydroxid is reduced, especially in alkaline solution, leaving either cuprous hydroxid or oxid, or metal copper. Again, aldehydes themselves oxidize substances, that is, they become reduced, forming, like all aldehydes, alcohols of the primary series; sorbitol is derived from glucose, dulcitol from galactose, etc. Sucrose differs from other diglucids in being refractory to reagents.

**Polymerization** occurs on treating glucids with alkali and leads to

<sup>1</sup> See Jour. Ind. and Eng. Chem., volume for 1924.



the formation of resins. This process is the basis of Moore's test for glucids.<sup>1</sup> Similarly, lower aldehydes, like acetaldehyde, form aldehyde resins, insoluble in water and of dark color. The higher glucids like starch are formed from the simple monoglucids by condensation. While lower aldehydes may undergo condensation in acid solution,<sup>2</sup> the condensation of the glucids like formaldehyde takes place in alkaline solution. Formaldehyde in the presence of lime-water ( $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ ) condenses into compounds of the general nature of glucose, with identical empirical formula,  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6)_n$ , but with different internal arrangement and with different optical properties.

The **instability of glucids in alkaline media** is of great importance in chemical physiology. Diabetes mellitus is caused by the inability of the organism to utilize sugar by oxidation, and it is recognized that the disease involves the intramolecular arrangement of the sugars. A change in their environment, due to disturbance of the acid-base balance, will of course affect these relations. Glucids are especially prone to undergo intramolecular re-arrangement in alkaline solution, and a characteristic change in structure is the adoption of an unstable hydroxy-form known as the enol, the characteristic radicle of which is  $-\overset{\text{||}}{\underset{\text{||}}{\text{C}}}-\text{O}-\text{H}$ , as defined by Wohl and Neuberg<sup>3</sup> and worked in detail by Nef,<sup>4</sup> whose analyses of the constitution of the sugars are of primary importance. The hydrogen of the enol may be replaced by a metal or radicle, and it is probable that this is the salt formation which occurs when a sugar solution is treated with  $\text{NaOH}$ . Condensation also occurs when the sugars are heated. Sucrose heated to  $200^\circ \text{C}$ . undergoes condensation to caramel. For an unknown reason diabetics tolerate caramel to a certain extent.

**Oxidation Products of the Glucids.**—We have seen that many of the characteristic reactions of the glucids are due to their ability to become oxidized readily,<sup>5</sup> and there is but one exception to the rule, namely, sucrose, as has just been pointed out. In order to understand the mucic acid test, which involves the oxidation of the monoglucid, galactose to mucic acid, it is well to glance at the products of oxidation of the other sugars. Moreover, in so doing acids are en-

<sup>1</sup> Heat, in the presence of concentrated alkali.

<sup>2</sup> Aldol-condensation.

<sup>3</sup> German chemists. See *Ber. d. deutsch. chem. Ges.*, vol. 33, p. 3095, 1910.

<sup>4</sup> Organic chemist, University of Chicago, deceased.

<sup>5</sup> Compare page 150.



countered which are of great interest not only in biochemistry, but also in pharmacology and in therapeutics.

According to the degree of oxidation, which depends upon the available oxygen, the activity of the reacting substances, or the presence of catalyzers, three categories of acids are possible:

	Sugar.	Carbinol acid.	Carbonyl acid.	Dicarboxylic acid.
Bioses <sup>1</sup> :	CHO   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Glycol-aldehyde.	COOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Glycolic acid.	COOH   CHO Glyoxylic acid.	COOH   COOH Oxalic acid.
Trioses:	CHO   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Glycerose.	COOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Glyceric acid.	COOH   CHOH   CHO (Unknown.)	COOH   CHOH   COOH Tartronic acid.
Tetroses:	CHO   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Erythrose.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Trihydroxy-butyric acid.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHO (Unknown.)	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   COOH Tartaric acid.
Pentoses:	CHO   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Arabinose.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Arabic acid.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHO Arabonic acid.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   COOH Trihydroxy-glutaric acid.
Hexoses:	CHO   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Galactose.	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CH <sub>2</sub> OH Galatonic acid. <sup>2</sup>	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHO Galacturonic acid. <sup>3</sup>	COOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   CHOH   COOH Mucic acid. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Page 188.

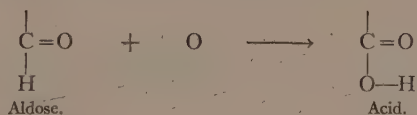
<sup>2</sup> Also known as lactonic acid.

<sup>3</sup> Galacturonic acid is responsible for the acidity of commercial pectin used in making jellies.

<sup>4</sup> Mucic acid is used in making baking powders.

**Reduction Products of the Glucids.**—On reduction by proper means, the sugars mentioned above are reduced to alcohols, the structural formulæ being the same as for the sugars except that the aldehyde group becomes  $\begin{array}{c} \text{—CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | \end{array}$ . The names of the alcohols below the hexoses are adapted from those of the corresponding sugars: Glycerol from glycerose; erythritol from erythrose; arabitol from arabinose. In the hexose series the alcohols, being more familiar than many of the others, bear more popular names: Sorbitol from glucose; dulcitol from galactose; manitol from mannose.

**Reduction Tests for Glucids.**—Of the many methods that have been devised to take advantage of the readiness with which the sugars reduce certain substances, only those of practical value to the chemical physiologist, and especially to the student of medicine, will be discussed here. The principle of all such tests is the oxidation of the glucid at the expense of the oxygen of the reagent. The reagent may become reduced to a compound of lower valence; or reduced to metallic form; or a new substance with lower oxygen content may be formed. Alkaline cupric sulphate<sup>1</sup> affords an example of the first; bismuth<sup>2</sup> of the second, and picric<sup>3</sup> acid of the third. The glucid becomes oxidized to an acid, the particular kind of acid depending upon the degree of oxidation. The reaction expressed in chemical symbols is as follows:



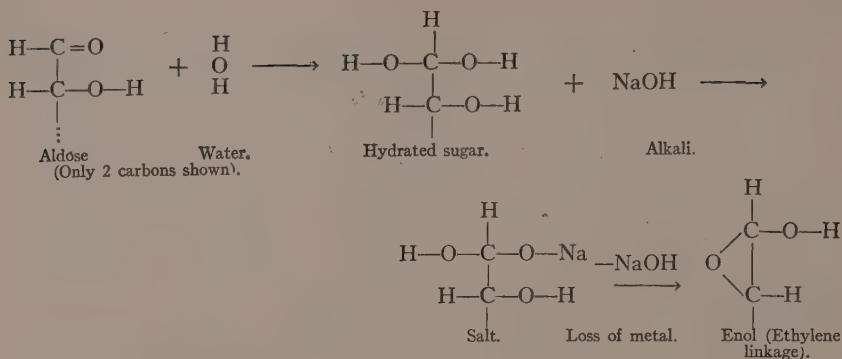
**EXERCISE 11.**—Arrange two test-tubes, A and B. In A place 5 mls. distilled water and add a drop of Fehling's solution<sup>4</sup> No. 1. Mix by rolling the tube between the palms of the hands. In B, place 5 mls. of a 1 per cent. solution of glucose in distilled water and add 1 drop of Fehling's solution No. 1 as before, and mix. Now to each tube add 2 drops of 10 per cent. NaOH. Note the colloidal precipitate of cupric hydroxid in tube A and that a precipitate does not form, but a colloidal suspension remains in tube B. The reaction thus far is: (1) The NaOH converts the aldehyde radicle into an enol:

<sup>1</sup> Page 155.

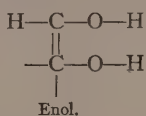
<sup>2</sup> Test known as Nylander's.

<sup>3</sup> Page 157.

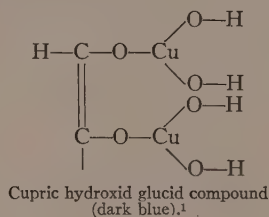
<sup>4</sup> See Appendix for composition.



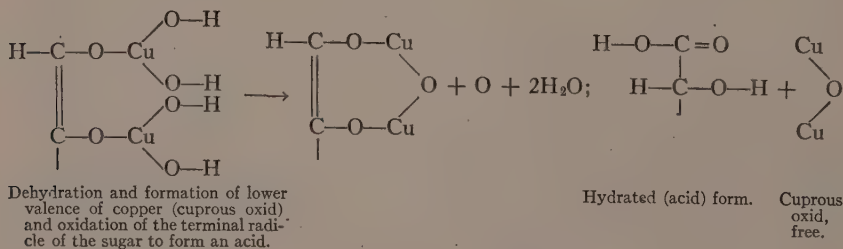
By tautomeric rearrangement, there is formed:



the hydroxy-radicles of which take on cupric hydroxid by replacement of the hydrogens:



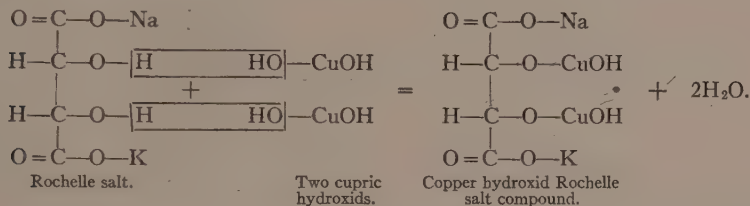
The numerous hydroxids cannot remain attached in this manner, and water is withdrawn from the two molecules of cupric hydroxid, leaving a free oxygen which oxidizes the sugar to an acid and cuprous oxid:



<sup>1</sup> The description is given as if glucose acted with a single  $\text{Cu}(\text{OH})_2$  molecule, but, as Fehling first showed, it reacts with either eight or ten.

If the amount of sugar is adequate to prevent cupric hydroxid from being converted into the black hydrated form,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{Cu} \\ \diagup \text{O.H}_2\text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{Cu} \end{array}$ , when the solution is boiled, we have *Trommer's test*,<sup>1</sup> which involves simply  $\text{CuSO}_4$  and  $\text{NaOH}$ . By the following reaction cupric hydroxid is formed and this is reduced to cuprous hydroxid when boiled with glucose:  $\text{CuSO}_4 + 2\text{NaOH} = \text{Cu}(\text{OH})_2 + \text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . If, however, additional hydroxyls are introduced to hold the cupric hydroxid and to give it to the solution as needed, successful tests are almost always obtained.

**Fehling's method**<sup>2</sup> utilizes hydroxyls from potassium and sodium tartrate (Rochelle salt):



In other respects the reaction is very similar to that given above for glucid alone.

**EXERCISE 12.** *Quantitative Determination of Glucose by Fehling's Method.*<sup>3</sup>—The solution is so made that 10 mls. exactly oxidize 50 mgs. of glucose. Place the unknown solution of glucose in a burette and pipette into an evaporating dish exactly 10 mls. of a mixture of equal parts of Fehling's Solutions 1, 2 and 3. Lay the dish upon a wire gauze on a tripod over a Bunsen burner. Heat the dish and when the contents nearly boil add, a few drops at a time, the unknown solution from the burette. The appearance of a permanent yellow indicates the end-point. Since the unknown has been added until the glucose it contains just reduces the 10 mls. of Fehling's Solution in the dish and since this solution was so made that exactly 10 mls. oxidize 50 mgs. of glucose, this means that there are 50 mgs. of glucose in the volume of

<sup>1</sup> Trommer, C., German chemist, published 1841. It is interesting that the original article was not considered sufficiently important to insert the full name of the chemist.

<sup>2</sup> Fehling, H., von, famous German chemist, publishing seven years after Trommer, at Stuttgart.

<sup>3</sup> For composition of the solution see Appendix.

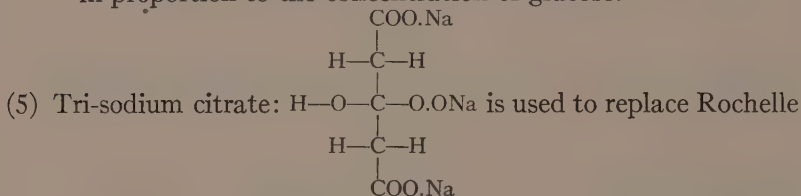
unknown that has been added from the burette. If the burette reading were 23.5 mls., then: 23.5 mls.  $\approx$ <sup>1</sup> 10 mls. of Fehling's Solution  $\approx$  50 mgs. glucose.

Then:  $\frac{1}{23.5}$  of 50 mgs. gives the weight of glucose in 1 ml. of the unknown.

One hundred times this result gives the milligrams per cent. glucose.

**Benedict's Solution.**<sup>2</sup>—This solution is more dependable and useful than Fehling's:

- (1) Having less active alkali ( $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  replacing the  $\text{NaOH}$  of Fehling), there is less danger of glucose destruction before reduction.
- (2) It is a single solution and therefore more convenient.
- (3) Its stable qualities are superior to those of Fehling.
- (4) A gradation of colors ranging from olive to brick-red develops in proportion to the concentration of glucose.



salt because it holds the optimal amount of cupric hydroxid out of solution.

**EXERCISE 13.**—Set up 4 test-tubes in your rack and to each add 1 ml. of 1 per cent. glucose solution. Dilute the solution in tube A with 4 mls. distilled water, using the Ostwald-Folin pipette. Pipette 1 ml. of the resulting solution into tube B, dilute the contents of B with 4 mls. distilled water, and repeat for tubes C and D. Calculate the content of the sugar in each tube after water has been added in each case to make 5 mls. total volume in each tube.

Now in a fifth tube, E, place 5 mls. of Benedict's Qualitative Solution<sup>3</sup> and add 8 drops (0.5 ml.)<sup>4</sup> of the contents of tube A, label the tube with a piece of gummed paper, and repeat with other tubes from

<sup>1</sup> This *sign* means equivalent to.

<sup>2</sup> Benedict, page 19.

<sup>3</sup> The composition is given in Appendix. If a mistake is made between Benedict's Quantitative and Qualitative Solutions different end-points are obtained. The description is for the qualitative solution.

<sup>4</sup> For pure glucose solutions the concentration is not a vital matter, but it is when there are substances present, as in the urine, that are capable of reducing copper.

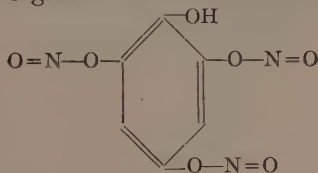


test-tubes B, C, and D. Leave the tubes in a boiling water-bath for exactly 2.5 minutes and then compare the colors developed. Record in your note-book the concentrations with the corresponding colors.

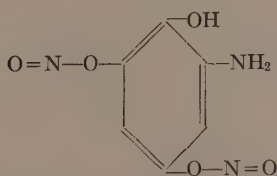
**EXERCISE 14.**—Using the diabetic urine provided,<sup>1</sup> make a preliminary qualitative test for glucose by the above method, recording your estimate of the percentage of sugar. Then determine the exact quantity of glucose by Benedict's Quantitative Method: Repeat the procedure for Fehling's Method; the end-point is reached when the blue color is discharged, due to the formation of white cuprous thiocyanate,  $\text{Cu}_2(\text{CNS})_2$  by the reaction of reduced copper with potassium ferrocyanide ( $\text{K}_4\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) contained in the Benedict's Solution. The calculation is the same in principle as in the Fehling method, but 25 mls. of Benedict's Solution are equivalent to 50 mgs. glucose.

**EXERCISE 15.**—Introduce 1 ml. 5 per cent. cupric sulphate solution into a test-tube and add an equal volume of 20 per cent. solution  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  and 2 drops of a 1 per cent. solution of glucose. Boil for two minutes. Cool under the tap and add 2 mls. of an alkaline molybdate solution.<sup>2</sup> Note the immediate appearance of a dark indigo-blue due to the formation of an oxid of molybdenum of uncertain composition.<sup>3</sup> This reaction is the basis of a quantitative method for the determination of glucose in the blood.<sup>4</sup>

We have been considering the reduction of copper compounds by the glucid. Other substances may also be reduced. Thus picric acid,



is reduced to picramic acid,



<sup>1</sup> If a true diabetic urine is not available, a sample of normal urine treated with 1.5 gm. glucose for every 100 mls. of urine may be used, but the effect is not quite the same, owing to colloidal properties.

<sup>2</sup> See Appendix for constitution.

<sup>3</sup>  $\text{M}_2\text{O}_5$ , according to Klasom, German chemist.

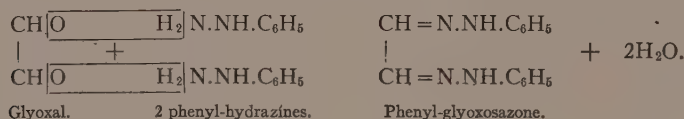
<sup>4</sup> The Folin-Wu method, Chapter XVII.

EXERCISE 16.—To 1 ml. of 1 per cent. solution glucose in a test-tube add 5 mls. saturated picric acid solution and boil until the solution becomes cloudy. Note the change in color during the boiling. This is the basis of Benedict's blood-sugar method.<sup>1</sup>

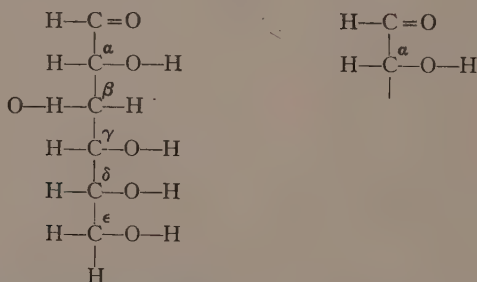
**The Formation of Osazones.**—We have already<sup>2</sup> used this method to identify the end-products of glucid hydrolysis, but we shall now consider the reactions involved. All aldehydes react with hydrazin,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{NH}_2$ , or its common derivative phenylhydrazin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{HN}-\text{NH}_2$ , to form compounds differing with regard to the number of reacting parts in the aldehyde. Thus, if we have a simple aldehyde, like acetaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$ , the reaction is:



A hydrazone is formed in a mono-aldehyde, but in the case of a di-aldehyde, like glyoxal,<sup>3</sup> there is formed a di-hydrazone, or osazone:



For the higher aldehydes and ketones, the sugars and glucids in general, the principles are the same, but only the two uppermost radicles affected. Hence, whether we are considering a triose, tetrose, pentose, or hexose, we are only concerned with the ultimate<sup>4</sup> and penultimate<sup>4</sup> radicles. Hence for glucose, which, as we shall see, is



Glucose, indicating the nomenclature.

<sup>1</sup> Chapter XVII.

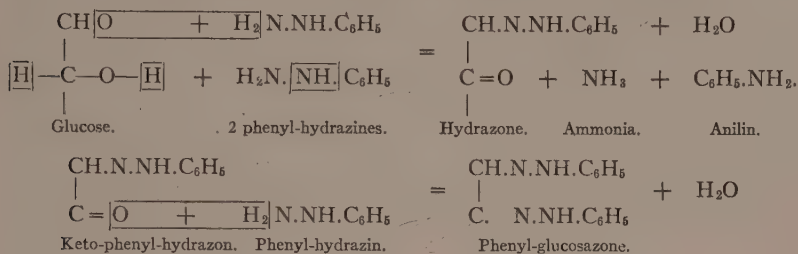
<sup>2</sup> Page 146.

<sup>3</sup> A biose; see page 152.

<sup>4</sup> Latin *ultima*, the most distant; Latin *paene*, almost.

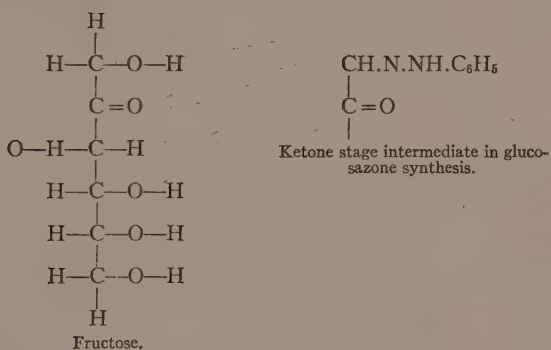
we shall need but the upper two radicles<sup>1</sup> as given to the right of the glucose formula.

The formation of the glucosazone is represented by stages as follows:



A di-hydrazone, or osazon, is formed in the second reaction, which is actually a third reaction, since three molecules of phenylhydrazine were used.

**The Fructosazone Identical with Glucosazone.**—This is evident from the comparison of the structural formula for fructose with that of the intermediate and final stages of glucosazone formation:



The sequence of stages in the synthesis of glucosazone and fructosazone is different, but the end-result is the same.

**Lactosazone.**—It is frequently necessary for the physician to determine in a maternity case whether a reducing sugar in the urine indicates true diabetes or whether the sugar is due to lactation. Lactose and glucose may be distinguished by means of the osazones. The shapes of the crystals are different, lactosazone being fine and feathery, and also glucosazone forms much more quickly than lactosazone, owing to its lower solubility in water.\*

<sup>1</sup> The organic chemist writes the most reactive radicles first; in the case of glucose the aldehyde radicle is the most reactive, the  $\alpha$  radicle next, and so on.

**Confirmatory Test Differentiating Lactose and Glucose.**—*Method of Cole*<sup>1</sup>:

EXERCISE 17.—(1) Place in a test-tube 2 mls. of the unknown solution which is supposed to contain both (or either) glucose and lactose and add one volume of concentrated (50 per cent.) NaOH. Boil for not less than three hours. Cool and make test with Benedict's solution; or, without cooling, add half a volume of Fehling's solution. Since strong alkali completely changes glucose into products which do not give reduction reactions,<sup>2</sup> while lactose is not affected, the latter, if present, gives reduction.

(2) Charcoal adsorbs lactose and permits its removal from solution and filtration. Perform the test as follows: Place 1 g. of blood charcoal<sup>3</sup> in a test-tube and add about 10 mls. of the solution under examination. Stopper the tube, shake it vigorously, then boil, repeating this procedure at intervals several times. Filter. Filtration may be accelerated by means of a filter-pump, hardened paper, and a small Buchner funnel (Appendix). Drain the paper dry by suction and scrape off the residue (charcoal), transferring it to a small Erlenmeyer flask or large test-tube. Dilute with about 10 mls. of water and add 1 ml. glacial acetic acid. Boil gently ten minutes and filter through paper in a small funnel into a test-tube. Make the phenylhydrazin test as described above,<sup>4</sup> but leave the tube in the bath for forty-five minutes and let cool as long as possible before examining for crystals. The preparation must not be agitated.

*Barfoed's Acid-copper Solution.*<sup>5</sup>—This reagent is composed of cupric acetate,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{COO} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{Cu} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COO} \end{array}$ , in acetic acid solution, and hence dif-

fers from other copper solutions used in sugar analysis. Whereas as small an amount as  $5(10)^{-3}$  g.<sup>6</sup> of glucose will cause the reaction

<sup>1</sup> Cole, S. W., Professor, Trinity College, Cambridge University, England. See his text: *Practical Physiological Chemistry*, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Page 151.

<sup>3</sup> The best preparation for this purpose is Merck's blood charcoal, "White Label," purified by acid. Other brands are on the market and may be useful for this purpose.

<sup>4</sup> Page 146.

<sup>5</sup> The reagent is described in Appendix. Barfoed, C. T., Swedish physician of the 19th century.

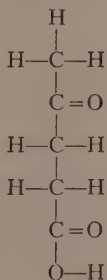
<sup>6</sup> 0.0002 g.

lactose in amounts smaller than  $2(10)^{-2}$  g.<sup>1</sup> will give no reaction. Even greater concentration is required for maltose ( $3(10)^{-2}$  g.<sup>2</sup> being required for the test).

**EXERCISE 18.**—Perform the test as follows<sup>3</sup>: Place 5 mls. of Barfoed's solution in a test-tube and add 1 ml. of the unknown. Leave the tube in the boiling water-bath for exactly three and five-tenths minutes and then examine it for evidences of reduction. Now dilute the solution 1 : 5 and repeat the procedure. Whether reduction is obtained at first or not, it will not occur at this dilution with ordinary solutions, like urines, unless glucose is present.

*Barfoed's test as a distinguishing agent between mono- and diglucids.* The statement is frequently made that Barfoed's method gives a means of distinguishing monoglucids, like glucose and fructose, from diglucids, like lactose and maltose. The basis for this assertion has just been given, where we have shown that certain quantitative relations exist between the reducing power of sugars and the reduction of copper acetate. In larger amounts it is impossible to distinguish the several sugars, but in smaller quantities it is possible to so adjust the volumes and concentrations of both sugar and copper that an effective test is possible.

**The Effect of Acids on Glucids.**—The simple sugars are more stable in acid than in alkaline media, but nevertheless do undergo changes in acid media. The fact that an acid copper solution is reduced by glucose, as in Barfoed's method, suggests that the effect of acid may, in some respects, be similar to that of alkali. When glucose is boiled with mineral acid, like HCl, a characteristic product is the five-carbon gamma keto-acid, levulinic acid



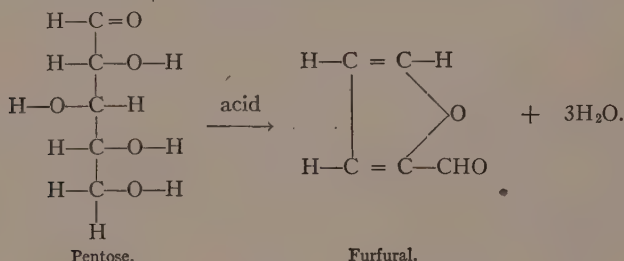
<sup>1</sup> 0.02 g.

<sup>2</sup> 0.003 g.

<sup>3</sup> Hinkel, F. C., and Sherman, H. C. (Columbia University), Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 29, p. 1744, 1907.



which is responsible, probably, for the reduction; yet other substances, like formaldehyde and  $\text{CO}_2$ , which accompany the formation of levulinic acid, may be factors in this reaction. Continual boiling of any of the glucids with mineral acid leads to the production of dark brown or black substances of uncertain composition; some of these are doubtless condensation products. The boiling of pentoses<sup>1</sup> with acid gives rise to products which differ from those resulting from similar treatment of hexoses (glucose). The characteristic product of the pentoses is a cyclic aldehyde, *furfural*<sup>2</sup> (using l-xylose):



**EXERCISE 19. Detection of Pentose.**—(1) *By distillation after acid treatment:* Dip into a furfural solution a piece of filter-paper which has been treated with anilin acetate.<sup>3</sup> In the presence of furfural the paper turns crimson.

(2) *Phloroglucinol test (Tollens'<sup>4</sup> Test):* Principle: Condensation of an aromatic substance with an aldehyde in acid solution.<sup>5</sup> Procedure: To about 5 mls. of pentose solution add one volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid and as much phloroglucinol<sup>6</sup> as the size of a pea. Place in a boiling water-bath. After a time a reddish color develops. If the solution is cooled and filtered, the residue dis-

<sup>1</sup> Five carbon sugars; see page 152.

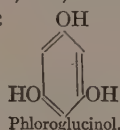
<sup>2</sup> Furfuraldehyde, or "furfurol"; but since it is an aldehyde and not an alcohol, it must not be called the latter term, which has the alcohol suffix, *-ol*.

<sup>3</sup> Not acetanilid. Anilin acetate is  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH}_2\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$  and is prepared by the method given in the Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Tollens, B., German chemist.

<sup>5</sup> This is an example of many such syntheses, utilized to detect a particular agent. See pages 112, 164, and 468 (Pettenkofer's Test).

<sup>6</sup> Phloroglucinol:



solved in alcohol and examined by means of the spectroscope, a characteristic band or series of bands are found in the region of the yellow<sup>1</sup> and the yellow-green.<sup>2</sup> The heated solution itself may show bands without filtering.

(3) *Orcinol test* (Bial<sup>3</sup>): In a test-tube boil about 5 mls. of the solution to be tested and, while boiling, add the reagent drop by drop; a bright green solution will result if pentose is present. Shake up the solution with amyl-alcohol, which dissolves the green substance and hence concentrates the color.

**The Color Reactions of the Pentoses.**—It is not known definitely what substance or substances are responsible for the phloroglucinol reaction, the anilin acetate test and other pentose procedures, but furfural is to some extent a participant in the reactions. Its intermediate forms may likewise be responsible. While certain substances known to contain pentoses give reactions similar to those of the pure pentoses when boiled with acid, the spectroscope fails to confirm the belief that the colors are due to furfural.

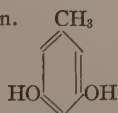
**Quantitative Test for Furfural.**—*Colorimetric Method of Youngburg and Pucher.*<sup>4</sup>—Principle: Reaction between furfural and anilin acetate, as described on page 162, the color being used for colorimetric comparison with that of a known solution.

Procedure: A known quantity of the pentosan<sup>5</sup> is boiled with mineral acid for several hours and the furfural distilled into a receptacle at the end of a Liebig condenser. Then pipette 2 mls. of the distillate, which has been carefully measured, into a 100-ml. volumetric cylinder, add 2 drops of 0.5 per cent. ethanol solution of phenolphthalein as indicator and into two similar cylinders pipette, respectively, 1 ml. of the weaker standard solution<sup>6</sup> and 1 ml. of the stronger solution.<sup>7</sup> Then<sup>8</sup> to all three tubes add successively drop by drop 50

<sup>1</sup> The D-line; about 6000 Å.

<sup>2</sup> The E-line; about 5500 Å.

<sup>3</sup> Bial, M., German physician.



<sup>4</sup> Youngburg, G. E., and Pucher, G. W. (Buffalo General Hospital, Buffalo, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 741, 1924.

<sup>5</sup> Substance containing the pentose and from which it must be freed by hydrolysis.

<sup>6</sup> Containing 0.02 mg. furfural per 1 ml. of solution in water.

<sup>7</sup> 0.05 mg. furfural per 1 ml. solution.

<sup>8</sup> During the process of neutralization the cylinders must rest in cold water.

per cent. NaOH solution until a permanent pink is obtained. Then add to each cylinder 0.5 ml. anilin (Mohr pipette) and 4 mls. acetic acid. Dilute to 100 mls. with distilled water and mix. Let stand in a dark place for fifteen minutes. Compare in a colorimeter.<sup>1</sup>

The calculation is made on the following principle<sup>2</sup>:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard in mm.}}{\text{Reading of the unknown in mm.}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown.}}{\text{Concentration of standard.}}$$

*Effect of Acids on Diglucids and Polyglucids.*—The application of acids to diglucids and polyglucids causes hydrolysis which destroys the ether-like linkage of the component simple sugars. This will be discussed later (pages 184 and 186).

**Distinguishing Test for Ketoses.**—Levulose appears in the urine in cases of metabolic errors involving the hexoses<sup>3</sup> (diabetes mellitus). Pure levulosuria is a rare condition. However, a functional test for hepatic efficiency, dependent upon the liver's power to convert fructose into glycogen, has been described. This power is interfered with when the liver is diseased, as in cirrhosis, and the physician is called upon to distinguish levulose from other hexoses. The test herewith given is frequently spoken of in biochemistry and in clinical medicine as a test for levulose, but it is rather a test for any ketose, whether levulose or another ketose. It is essential to perform the test exactly according to directions, for slightly positive reactions may be obtained from aldoses.

**Selivanoff's<sup>4</sup> Test.**—Place 5 mls. of the reagent<sup>5</sup> in a test-tube and add a few drops of the suspected fluid. Heat the contents of the tube to boiling. A red color and brownish precipitate form if levulose is present. The precipitate may be filtered off and taken up in strong alcohol for the purpose of spectrum analysis; the spectrum is similar to that of the phloroglucinol reaction.<sup>6</sup>

What is responsible for the Selivanoff reaction? The effect of acid on any hexose, but especially on those which are ketoses differs from

<sup>1</sup> For the description of a colorimeter and method of use see Chaps. XVI, XVII

<sup>2</sup> This is the general formula of Beer for calorimetric calculations.

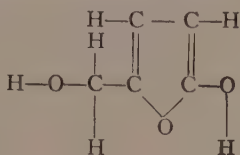
<sup>3</sup> It is supposed that tautomeric (Greek *to auto*, the same) changes occur, glucose and levulose being interchangeable.

<sup>4</sup> Selivanoff, Th., Serbian-German chemist, publishing in 1887.

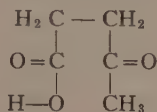
<sup>5</sup> See Appendix for the reagent's composition.

<sup>6</sup> Page 162.

that on pentoses and leads to the formation of two characteristic groups, namely, levulinic acid<sup>1</sup> and a secondary alcohol derived from furfural, known as methyl-hydroxy-furfural<sup>2</sup>:



It is this substance which condenses with the resorcinol of Selivanoff's solution, to form the colored substance of the test.<sup>3</sup> Levulinic acid, built somewhat like a thiophen:

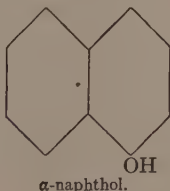


may become condensed with the above compound to form a furfural-levulinic acid, which may be partially responsible for the reaction.

#### Molisch Reaction: A General Test for the Presence of a Glucid.

—To determine whether any form of glucid is present in a solution the following test is used. It is applicable to pure sugars, starches, or celluloses, and also to glucids which are a part of other compounds, such as the protid-glucose compounds and the phosphoric esters of glucose<sup>4</sup>; all of which will be described later.

The chemical principle of the Molisch reaction<sup>5</sup> is similar to that of the Selivanoff reaction, namely, a condensation of an aldehyde in the presence of another substance to form a characteristic colored substance. The special chemical agent in the Molisch solution is  $\alpha$ -naphthol:



$\alpha$ -naphthol.

<sup>1</sup> Page 161.

<sup>2</sup> Also known as  $\omega$ -hydroxy-methyl-furfural.

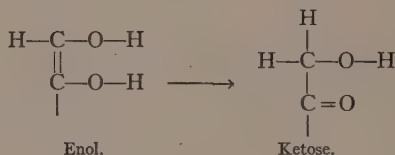
<sup>3</sup> Compare the reaction and note, page 112.

<sup>4</sup> Mucin, of the saliva, is an example of the protid-glucid compound (page 142) and hexosephosphoric acid esters of the second (page 171). The latter are, at the present time, affording great interest in relation to the question as to how the glucids are utilized in the body.

<sup>5</sup> Molisch, H., Austrian chemist, publishing 1886.

**EXERCISE 20.**—Place 5 mls. of the unknown glucid solution in a test-tube. Mix with 5 drops of the solution of  $\alpha$ -naphthol.<sup>1</sup> Layer carefully with concentrated sulphuric acid,<sup>2</sup> and at the zone of junction a violet ring indicates a positive reaction.

**The Special Chemistry of Fructose (Levulose).**—It has been found<sup>3</sup> that fructose can be obtained in large quantities from the Jerusalem artichoke,<sup>4</sup> which has been known for many years to contain inulin, a fructosan.<sup>5</sup> This plant can be grown throughout the world, whereas sugar-cane can be raised only in warm climates. Fructose can be crystallized to resemble sucrose and will become a competitor of our ordinary table-sugar. The student of medicine should become familiar with its chemistry and physiology. Chemically, fructose is a ketose. The formula is given on page 159. In sucrose it is linked as a gluco-fructoside with glucose. The following reactions show how fructose is converted into glucose in the animal body (refer to enol, page 154):



Physiologically, fructose is of interest as a food for diabetics. Over 90 per cent. is utilized by these patients when administered in amounts of about 1.5 g. per kilogram of body weight.<sup>6</sup> The end products of oxidation ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) appear about one-half as quickly after fructose feeding as when glucose is fed; this is partly due to the rapidity of absorption from the intestine. The more severe the case, the more it responds to the feeding of fructose. The degree of utilization of this sugar varies with the functioning of the pancreas and it is when more

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix for composition of the solution.

<sup>2</sup> These strong reagents should never be sucked from a bottle through a pipette by means of the mouth. Either use a rubber-bulb dropping bottle, or, holding the stoppered bottle over the test-tube, carefully remove the stopper and permit a drop to fall.

<sup>3</sup> Department of Agriculture, Washington, D. C.

<sup>4</sup> To be distinguished from the "artichoke" commonly seen in the fruit stores. The name is a corruption of the Italian name for sunflower (*girasole*). The Jerusalem artichoke is edible only in the tubers which grow on the roots and act as store-houses of the starch-like substance, inulin.

<sup>5</sup> For the meaning of the suffix see page 149.

<sup>6</sup> A subject weighing 150 pounds, or 68 kilos, would receive 102 gs. fructose.



than seven-eighths of that organ are removed that fructose is utilized to the maximum degree. Whatever is unused after full feeding is converted into animal starch (glycogen). Folin has shown that ordinarily there is little if any fructose in the tissues of the normal human being, but under abnormal conditions, such as those just cited, the tissues of the whole body take up large amounts of it. Some fructose becomes converted into fat. It increases the production of heat in the body. After continued use it seems that the body tolerates this sugar less readily, and in the case of diabetics it appears in the urine in gradually increasing quantities. It is being used as a part of invert sugar, "fondant,"<sup>1</sup> etc., in confectionery. Altogether the American family will use greater quantities of fructose.

### FERMENTATION

When the methods of detecting lactose were discussed<sup>2</sup> one of the most useful was intentionally omitted because it involved a discussion of fermentation. This is the method of Mathews<sup>3</sup>: Using 50 mls. of the diabetic urine<sup>4</sup> suspected of containing both lactose and glucose, make Benedict's quantitative determination.<sup>5</sup> Record your result; this gives the total reducing power of the urine. Then subject 20 mls. of the urine from the original sample to fermentation by placing them in a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube and adding half a cake of fresh, compressed yeast. Mix thoroughly and leave at 42° C. for one hour. Agitate the contents of the tube at intervals and have the tube inclined so as to permit the release of bubbles of gas, CO<sub>2</sub>, which come off continually if glucose is present. Filter, using a fluted (Fig. 206) filter, and again determine the reducing power by means of Benedict's quantitative method on the filtrate. The difference between this figure and the total reduction, first obtained with Benedict's quantitative solution, is the glucose concentration. The glucose has been fermented by the yeast, but lactose, if present, remains intact, for yeast

<sup>1</sup> This is the technical name for a mixture of glucose and sucrose. An enzyme capable of hydrolyzing the sucrose of fondant is added, which produces free fructose from the sucrose.

<sup>2</sup> Page 160.

<sup>3</sup> Mathews, A. P., Professor of Biochemistry, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, Ohio. See Preface. See also the text: *Physiological Chemistry*, New York, William Wood & Co., 4th ed., 1925. (See Fig. 151.)

<sup>4</sup> Or a synthetic urine made by adding fructose and glucose.

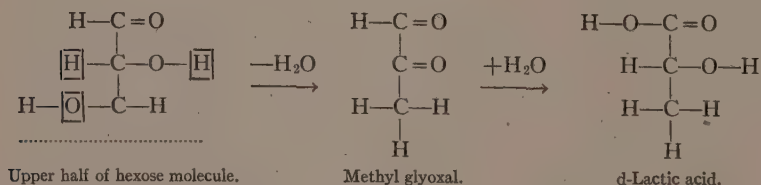
<sup>5</sup> Page 157.

does not ferment it. Identify lactose by the osazone. Corroborate the statements regarding the fermentation of lactose and glucose, and extend the experiment to galactose, maltose, fructose, sucrose, starch, a pentose, like arabinose, or xylose, to cellulose (filter-paper), and to pectin (commercial apple pectin).

**The Chemistry of Fermentation.**—The term “fermentation”<sup>1</sup> is a group name for the action of enzymes<sup>2</sup> accelerating oxidations, reductions, hydrolyses, and other chemical reactions in organic compounds, like sugars, leading to end-products such as alcohol, organic acids, aldehydes, CO<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>O, H<sub>2</sub>, etc. We shall discuss principally alcoholic fermentation of the sugars because the chemistry involved is somewhat similar to that of the normal metabolism of sugar in the human body.<sup>3</sup> However, since lactic acid fermentation affords a simpler view of the processes of fermentation, as a chemical reaction, it will be considered first.

**Lactic Acid Fermentation.**—The hexose is composed, as the term<sup>4</sup> implies, of six carbon atoms united into primary and secondary alcohol and aldehyde or keton radicles. The structure is shown on page 158, where the atoms are indicated by Greek letters,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ ,  $\delta$ , and  $\epsilon$ . On page 141 we have also shown the decomposition of glucose into two molecules of lactic acid. It is in the region of the gamma ( $\gamma$ ) carbon atom that the chain disrupts. In the process of fermentation lactic acid is split from the hexose.<sup>5</sup> There is an intermediate forma-

tion of methyl-glyoxal,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ | \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , which is formed by dehydration:



<sup>1</sup> Latin *ferveo*, to boil; *fermentum*, yeast; that is, the substance which causes solutions to form gaseous exudations or ebullitions seen in fermenting concoctions.

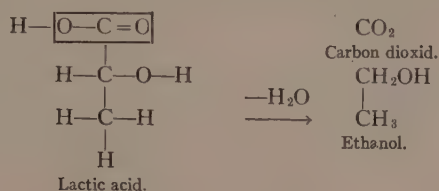
<sup>2</sup> Greek *en*, within, and *zyme*, yeast.

<sup>3</sup> Page 170.

<sup>4</sup> Greek, *hex*, six, and *-ose*, suffix accepted as meaning sugar.

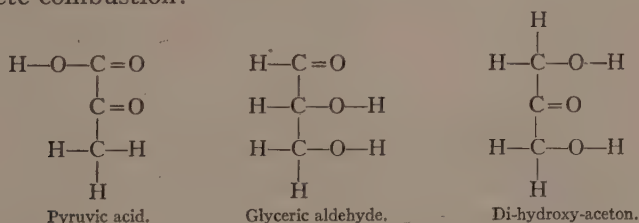
<sup>5</sup> In the case of the souring of milk lactose is hydrolyzed into glucose and galactose and lactic acid is derived from both.

The same transformation takes place in the lower half of the hexose molecule; thus two molecules of lactic acid arise from a single molecule of hexose. Finally, lactic acid is converted into ethanol by decarboxylation:



The end-products are ethanol and carbon dioxide. The bubbling off of the gas is "fermentation." The process of decarboxylation is common to the lower forms of life, but uncommon in man, for in many cases it involves the production of extremely poisonous compounds, especially where protids are concerned.<sup>1</sup> Lactic acid fermentation is brought about by bacteria of certain species, like *Bacillus acidophilus*, which is prepared in cultures, embedded in candy, which, when taken into the alimentary tract of man, is digested and the bacteria freed; they become fixed in the intestine and aid in regulating the flora,<sup>2</sup> and in eliminating excessive numbers of undesirable bacteria. "Salt-rising" bread utilized the same species of bacteria known to produce gas disease.

**Alcoholic Fermentation.**—The principles of lactic acid fermentation are similar to those of alcoholic fermentation by yeast. Besides methyl glyoxal, lactic acid, ethanol, and CO<sub>2</sub>, other substances of intermediate nature have been identified in the fermentation by yeast. Of these, pyruvic acid,<sup>3</sup> glyceric aldehyde,<sup>4</sup> and dihydroxy acetone are particularly characteristic. All of these substances bear hydroxy- or ketone radicles which indicate that they are substances of incomplete combustion:



<sup>1</sup> Page 256.

<sup>2</sup> The term (Latin, flower) refers to the members of the vegetable kingdom growing in a certain region. Here it means the kind of bacteria.

<sup>3</sup> The acid of which the aldehyde is methyl glyoxal.

<sup>4</sup> The aldehyde the alcohol of which is glycerol.

The relation between these various substances is represented by the following table: The amount of lactic acid in fermentation mixtures by yeast leads to the question whether this acid is an intermediate

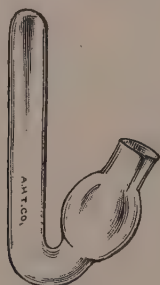


Fig. 81.—Fermentation tube. For mounting, when in use, see Fig 82.

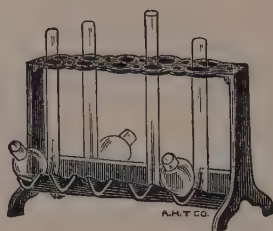
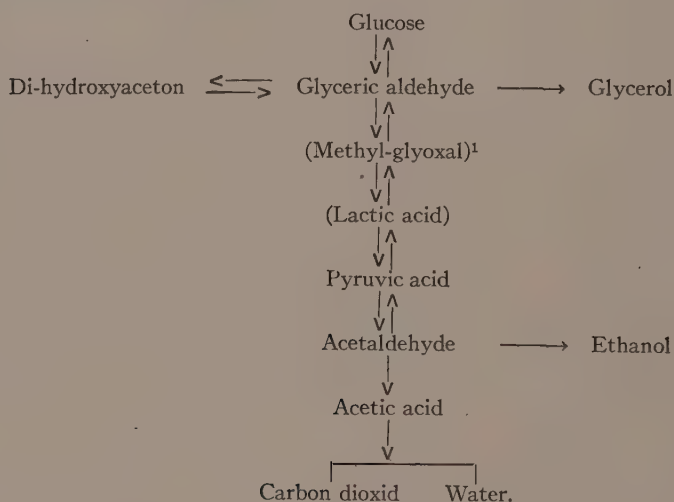


Fig. 82.—Fermentation tubes in a test-tube rack.

product in alcoholic fermentation. Lactic acid is included in the following scheme as a possibility:

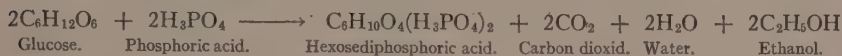


### THE METABOLISM OF GLUCIDS

The foregoing table serves, in a general way, to indicate the sequence of stages in the metabolism of glucose in the body, but certain factors have to be modified. In the first place there is an intimate association of glucose and phosphoric acid. This has been explained

<sup>1</sup> The rôle of methyl-glyoxal, as well as that of lactic acid, is questionable.

in various ways, but some such scheme as the following equation may represent the relation:



The rôle of the acid is unknown. It is cleaved from glucose during the utilization of glucose in the body, and when insulin is administered, it is synthesized.

Secondly, the similarity if not identity of alcoholic fermentation and sugar utilization in the body is made evident by the fact that those sugars that are utilized in the body of a diabetic when insulin is given are those and only those that are fermentable by yeast.<sup>1</sup> On a later page we shall discuss these matters in greater detail.

#### OPTICAL RELATIONS OF THE SUGARS

Substances which have been or are connected with living things exhibit optical activity, that is, possess the power of rotating polarized light. This statement may be challenged by mentioning substances which are known not to have been connected with life and which nevertheless exhibit this power, an example of such substances being quartz, but in such instances there is little correlation with any other factors, while in the case of optical activity in substances in living things there is a constancy. Almost all the glucids utilized in the organism are dextrorotary, while the protids are practically built upon a levorotatory basis. A specificity of enzymes follows this phenomenon.

**What Causes Optical Activity?**—The answer to this question is the result of studies by Pasteur,<sup>2</sup> who, as a boy, detected the difference between dextro- and levorotatory crystals by means of certain facets on the crystals of d-tartaric and l-tartaric acid, and found that racemic<sup>3</sup> tartaric acid crystals were intermediate between the two, and may be considered as equal mixtures of d-rotatory and l-rotatory acids. Now we know that there is a definite relation between chemical constitution and physical structure, due to LeBel and van't Hoff.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Herring, P. T., Irvine, J. C., and Macleod, J. J. R. (for Macleod, see page 20; Irvine is Principal of St. Andrews University, Scotland), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 18, p. 1023, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Pasteur, L., French savant.

<sup>3</sup> Optically inactive.

<sup>4</sup> LeBel, J. A., living in France; van het Hoff, J. H., Dutch chemist, deceased.



**The Asymmetry of the Carbon Atom.**—The students of chemistry just mentioned explained optical activity by assuming that the carbon atom possessed four equivalent valencies, each directed toward the inner angles of a tetrahedron (Fig. 83). If these affinities are satisfied by four similar elements or radicles, light passing through the substance is unaffected. Such a substance is methane  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ . If, on the other hand, all four are attached to four *different* substances, the atom becomes asymmetrical and light passing through will become

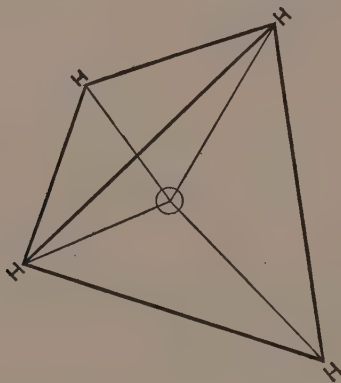


Fig. 83.—Model of a carbon atom having its four valencies attached to a hydrogen, each making  $\text{CH}_4$  (methane). The bonds are of equal value, the carbon mass being assumed to occupy the center of a regular tetrahedron.

altered. Polarized light, that is, light in one plane, is affected by causing it to become displaced in the direction of that portion of the molecule which is preponderatingly asymmetrical. A substance like  $\begin{array}{c} 2 \\ | \\ 1-\text{C}-3 \\ | \\ 4 \end{array}$ ,

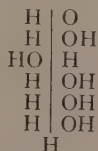
where the numbers indicate different substances or radicles, will cause a rotation of the light. If the spin is toward the right, as seen in a polariscope,<sup>1</sup> the substance is called “dextrorotary” and “levorotatory” if the spin is toward the left. As a standard Emil Fischer<sup>2</sup> recommended dextrorotatory glucose<sup>3</sup> which he gave a structural formula

<sup>1</sup> Page 178.

<sup>2</sup> Emil Fischer, foremost German organic chemist, University of Berlin, died 1919.

<sup>3</sup> See page 158 for structural formula and notation of carbon atoms.

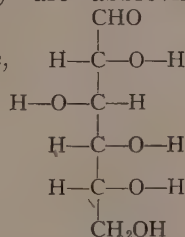
with the primary and secondary alcohols and the aldehyde group placed in a certain way to indicate the optical properties:



d-Glucose, showing the preponderance of hydroxyls on the right to indicate dextro-rotary properties. The line represents carbon atoms.

**Isomeres.**—Any substance having the general configuration of d-glucose is known as an isomer<sup>1</sup> of glucose, and according to the empirical findings of van't Hoff, it is possible to have as many isomeres as there are asymmetrical carbon atoms; but, in addition, since it is possible to make mirror pictures of each isomer, there are as many isomeres possible as 2<sup>n</sup> carbon atoms that are asymmetrical. The following formulæ illustrate this point. They are abbreviated,

only the right side being given; that is, d-glucose,  $\text{H}-\text{C}-\text{O}-\text{H}$ , be-



comes OH, H, OH, OH, giving the hydrogens and hydroxyls on the right side of the asymmetrical carbons:

Aldohexose series:

d-Glucose.....	OH, H, OH, OH	l-Glucose.....	H, OH, H, H.
d-Mannose.....	H, H, OH, OH	l-Mannose.....	OH, OH, H, H.
d-Galactose.....	OH, H, H, OH	l-Galactose.....	H, OH, OH, H
d-Talose.....	H, H, H, OH	l-Talose.....	OH, OH, OH, H
d-Idose.....	OH, H, OH, H	l-Idose.....	H, OH, H, OH
d-Allose.....	H, H, H, H	l-Allose.....	OH, OH, OH, OH
d-Altrose.....	OH, H, H, H	l-Altrose.....	H, OH, OH, OH
d-Gulose.....	H, H, H, OH	l-Gulose.....	OH, OH, OH, H

Of these, three, with their isomeres, occur in nature (the first three); of the others, all the d-forms are known, but of the l-isomeres, l-allose and l-altrose are unknown.

<sup>1</sup> Gr. *isos*, same, and *meros*, part.

## Ketohehexose series:

d-Fructose.....	H, OH, OH,	1-Fructose.....	OH, H, H
d-Sorbose.....	H, OH, H	1-Sorbose <sup>1</sup> .....	OH, H, OH
d-Tagatose.....	OH, H, H	1-Tagatose <sup>2</sup> .....	H, OH, OH

The ketone series have but three asymmetrical carbon atoms, and hence  $2^3 = 8$ , so that our knowledge is incomplete concerning the ketohehexoses.

The reader is warned that the designations “*d*” and “*l*” have no significance with regard to the optical relations, but simply mean that

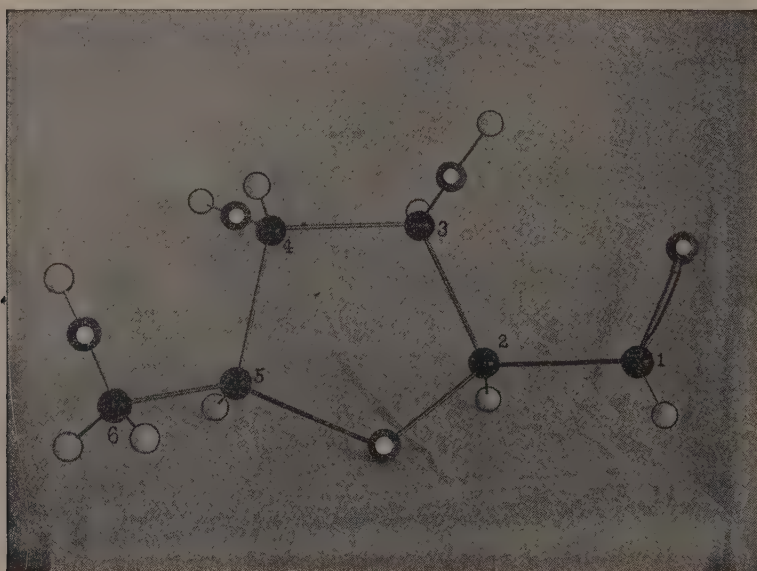


Fig. 84.—Levene's model of a form of glucose (2, 5-anhydro-glucose), designed to show (1) the cyclic anhydride ring and (2) the free aldehyde (extreme right). Carbon atoms in black; hydrogen in white and oxygen black with white centers. The presence of the free aldehyde indicates the great activity of the substance. (Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. 137, 1924.)

taking a certain arrangement to represent a known sugar, the other configurations follow. Thus, the sugars, glucose, and mannose among the aldoses, and fructose among the ketoses, have the property in common of being fermented by yeast; and the similarity of the last

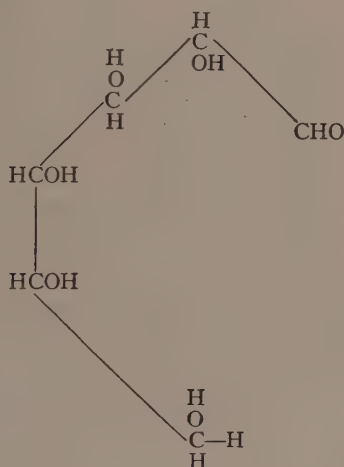
<sup>1</sup> Note that 1-sorbose resembles d-glucose; Hudson (American chemist) believes that the designation 1-sorbose should become d-sorbose for this reason.

<sup>2</sup> Unknown.

three carbon atoms (H, OH, OH) is meant to indicate this similarity along with other common properties.

These formulæ, however, present certain difficulties—some of the most important characteristics are not represented. Thus, a formula such as that for d-glucose does not conform to an organic chemist's idea of the activity of such a compound; glucose is not as active as the formula, with the terminal aldehyde, would imply. In order to meet this and other difficulties the chemist has resorted to the same designation that he uses in the aromatic series, namely, a ring formation, somewhat resembling the benzene ring. It is easy to believe that such a configuration actually represents glucose better than the straight one; if it is true that the bonds of a carbon atom lie directed to the inner angles of a tetrahedron,<sup>1</sup> then we find that the angles subtended between these affinities are  $109^{\circ} 24'$ . A model of glucose built on this basis will become something like this:

In a plane figure we have

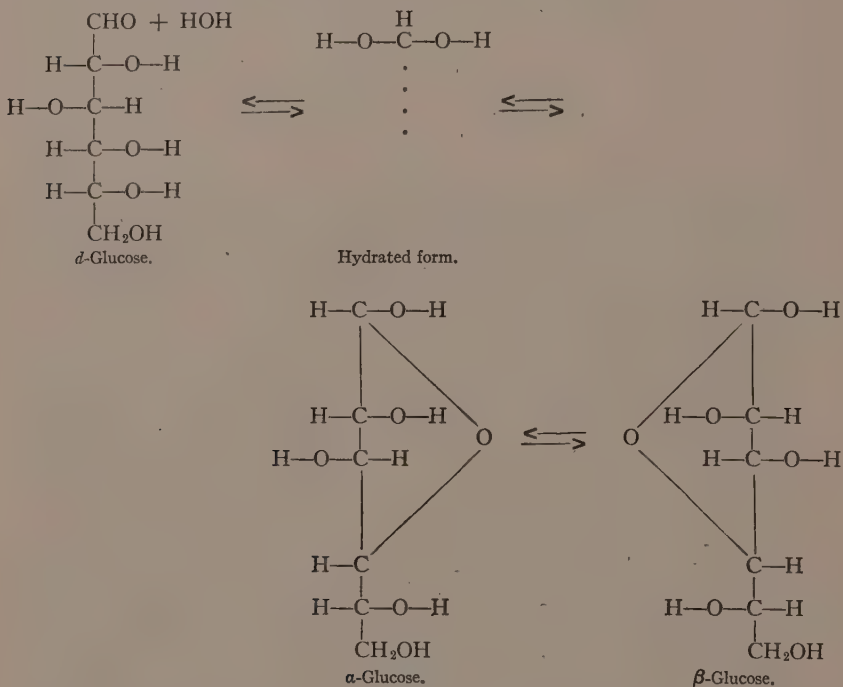


*The tendency to form a ring is evident.* Such a formula, however, does not answer all requirements. For example, it does not account for mutarotation,<sup>2</sup> which is that phenomenon seen when glucose is made into aqueous solution. The glucose becomes hydrated with the water of the solution and, in addition, it exhibits changes in rotatory power. At first the rotatory power is  $110^{\circ}$ , sinking gradually to  $52.5^{\circ}$ .

<sup>1</sup> Page 172.

<sup>2</sup> Latin *muta*, change.

This is known as  $\alpha$ -glucose. Then it was discovered that another form of glucose arose that started with  $19^\circ$ , passing to  $52.5^\circ$ ; this was termed  $\beta$ -glucose.<sup>1</sup> These are isomeres. The optical rotatory changes are supposed to be connected with the factor water, and the following formulæ are designed to represent the various factors:



Such a formula is that of a gamma-lactone, so called because it concerns the gamma, or third carbon below the terminal aldehyde-bearing one.<sup>2</sup> Such butylene rings are commonly found in hydroxy-compounds like glucose.

Summarizing, we find that the lactone formula for glucose gains the following advantages as a means of designating characteristics: (1) A formula for glucose when it is freshly dissolved in water, with a rotation of  $110^\circ$ . (2) A formula for glucose in solution after equilibrium has been reached, rotation  $52.5^\circ$ . (3) The formulæ are reversible, in-

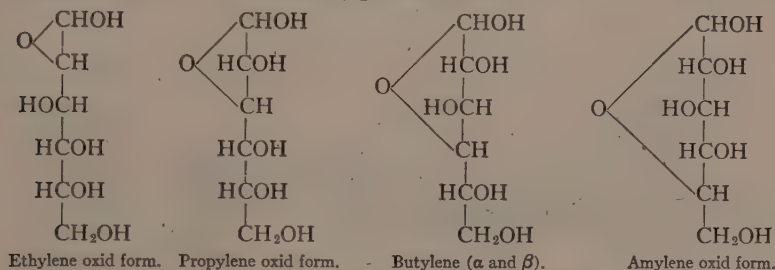
<sup>1</sup> These figures are those derived by Hudson, C. S., Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 32, p. 889, 1910.

<sup>2</sup> Page 158. The term has nothing to do with "gamma-sugar" which will be discussed presently.



dicating the reversible reaction as equilibrium is being reached. (4) The aldehyde, which is the active group of the substance, is linked up into an internal anhydrid or butylene oxid formation, which makes the formula conform to the lower activity known to be possessed by glucose.

**Gamma Sugars.**—In the foregoing discussion it has been assumed that the ring is of the nature of a lactone, but there is no reason for eliminating other carbon atoms in the formation of the ring. Theoretically, we have the following possibilities:



The term "gamma sugar" means a form that has the oxygen ring in a position other than butylene, which occurs in the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  sugars. "Gamma" simply means not alpha or beta.

**The Medical Interest in Gamma Sugars.**—Blood-sugar seems to be a highly reactive sort<sup>1</sup> of glucid, compared with the activities of the ordinary known forms of glucose,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . It has been suggested that the blood of the diabetic is different from that of the normal subject in having less reactive sugar, but Denis<sup>2</sup> and others have been unable to find any special form of glucose in diabetic blood.

**Fermentation and Optical Relations.**—The enzymes exhibit a specificity, choosing certain isomeres and leaving others untouched, at least at first; later, other isomeres may be attacked. The glucids mentioned above may be taken as examples of specific action, but the specificity of enzyme action has been worked exhaustively on certain compounds similar to the diglucids and known as glucosides, which will be discussed presently.<sup>3</sup> For the purpose here suffice it to say that there is a *d*-glucoside and an *l*-glucoside. The enzyme maltase,

<sup>1</sup> Winter, L. B., and Smith, W. (English physiologists), *Journal of Physiology* (English), vol. 57, p. 100, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Denis, Winifred, Professor of Biochemistry, Tulane University School of Medicine, New Orleans, Louisiana. See Denis, W., and Hume, H. V., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 59, p. 603, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> Pages 183 and 184.

which splits maltose (a gluco-glucoside) into two glucose molecules readily acts upon the *d*-form, but not at all upon the *l*-form. Another enzyme, emulsin, has little or no effect upon the *d*-form, but acts readily upon the *l*-form. This enzyme specificity is found throughout biochemistry and we shall have reference to it later. It is the basis for the statement made on page 171, that glucids occurring in living things are of the *d*-series, while protids are built upon the *l*-plan.

**The Polariscope** (Fig. 85).—This is an instrument for the study of optical relations. Polarized light may perhaps be more readily con-

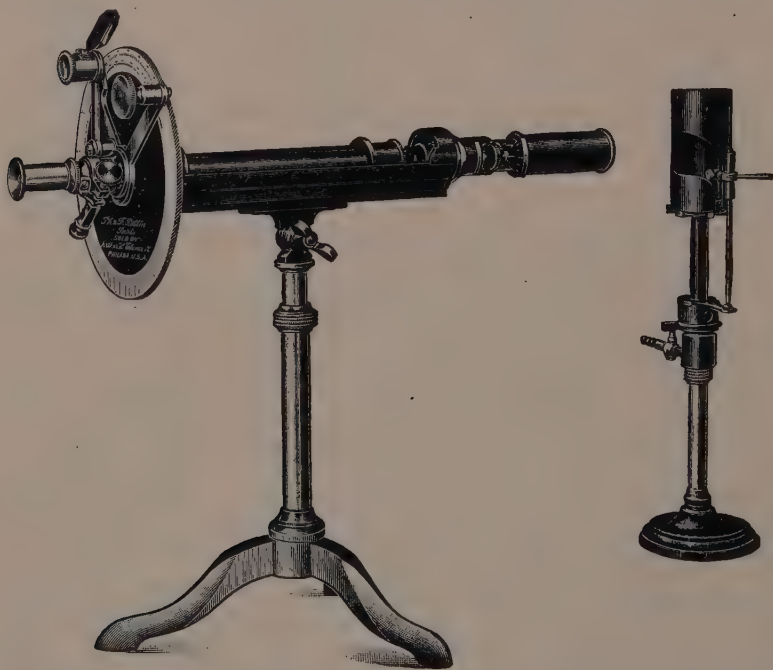


Fig. 85.—Polariscope used in biochemical analyses. The eye is applied to the ocular at the left and the object between it and the "polarizer" (extreme right); lamp, fitted for monochromatic light (sodium, or "D"-light). The "analyzer" is operated by the rotating arm on the calibrated disk to the left. A lens permits reading of the vernier.

ceived by comparing it to sound waves which are polarized as follows (Fig. 87): Set up two synchronous tuning-forks at such a distance from one another that they beat sympathetically, that is, one wavelength or multiple, apart. When one fork is struck, the other responds. While the sound is passing between them, interpose a book, the leaves

of which are separated, so that the sound may pass freely between the pages. The sound is now polarized, since only vibrations in the plane of the book pass on to the second fork. Interpose, now, a second book so that the sound-waves may pass between the pages as in the case of the first book; the pages of both books must be in the same plane.



Fig. 86.—Tube used in the polariscope (Figs. 87 and 88). The tube is laid in the trough between polarizer and analyzer.

The tuning-fork should vibrate sympathetically. Now turn the second book so that the pages cut the plane of the waves at an angle; obviously, the sound will not pass through this book and the second fork will not vibrate sympathetically. You have crossed the planes of the book and no polarized sound can pass.

Similarly, the polariscope has two prisms, corresponding to the two books. These prisms may be composed of plates of glass, but

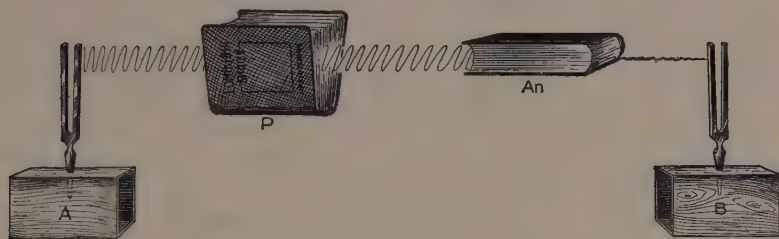


Fig. 87.—Illustration to show the principle of polarization. Sound coming from tuning-fork *A* is polarized by the leaves of the book, *P*. The sound-waves leave *P* only in one plane. Book *An* represents the analyzer of a polariscope (Fig. 88) and as long as the plane of its leaves lies in that of *P*, the sound passes through and strikes tuning-fork *B*. If the polarizer and analyzer are "crossed," that is, if *An* is turned on its axis until its plane cuts that of *P* at an angle, no sound reaches *B*. In the polariscope the unknown, like glucose, turns the plane of polarized light (waves between *P* and *An*) and hence *An* must be turned until its plane is coincident with that of the rotated plane of light leaving the solution.

more commonly of Iceland spar ( $\text{CaCO}_3$ ), which crystallizes in a rhombohedron, the prism being composed of many layers of these rhombs. In place of a single Iceland spar crystal Nichol<sup>1</sup> cut the crystal diagonally and cemented the two halves together with Canada

<sup>1</sup> Scotch physicist, 1828.

balsam, the gum having an index of refraction less than that of the spar. When light falls upon one face of the Nichol prism thus constructed, it is broken into two rays, the so-called "ordinary" and the "extraordinary." The ordinary ray, which would otherwise pass through the prism unchanged, meets the balsam layer and is totally reflected, while the extraordinary ray is transmitted as the polarized ray. If the planes of the first Nichol prism<sup>1</sup> and of the second

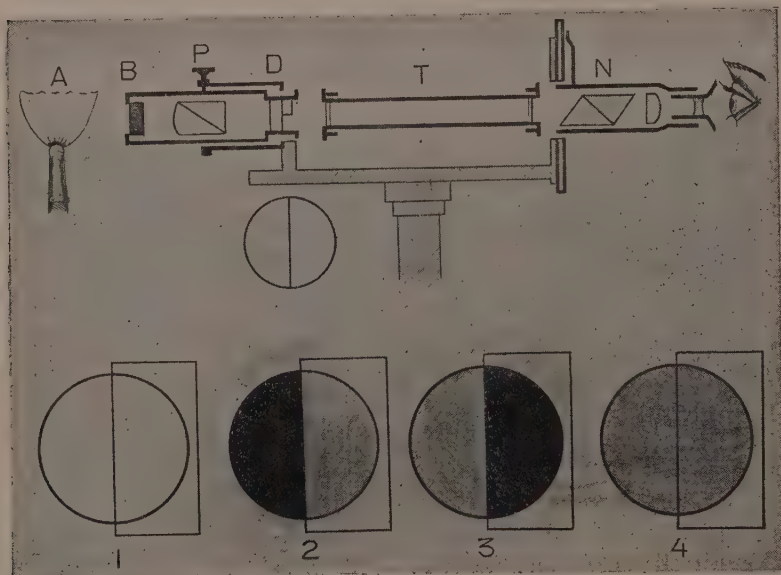


Fig. 88.—Laurent's half-shadow polarimeter: Monochromatic light (A) passes through the slit (B), through the polarizer (P), the diaphragm (D), and then through the tube (T) containing the unknown solution. The eye perceives the light in one of the ways shown in the diagrams 1, 2, 3, and 4, accordingly as to how the analyzer (N) is turned. If it is turned so that the prisms are crossed (Fig. 88), then no light enters (4); intermediate positions are in 2 and 3. If the plane of polarizer and analyzer is identical, then the eye perceives 1. (From Holland's Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

prism<sup>2</sup> are parallel, polarized light reaches the eye. If they are "crossed," like the books above, no light passes. If, now, a substance like d-glucose solution is interposed between the parallel prisms, light will not pass to the eye, since the glucose molecules have rotated the plane of polarized light through an angle of  $52.5^\circ$ , which gives the

<sup>1</sup> The "polarizer," producing the polarized light (Fig. 88, P).

<sup>2</sup> The "analyzer," nearest the eye (Fig. 88, N).

same effect as if the prisms were crossed. In order to bring the light through the system again it is necessary to rotate the analyzer on the polarizer. A calibration in degrees of arc, with vernier,<sup>1</sup> is attached to the analyzer, and hence it is possible to determine the rotation produced by the substance glucose. Such a polarizer is known as a polarized light measurer, or polarimeter.

For making a determination, monochromatic light, or light of one wave-length, is used if accuracy is desired, for the angle of deviation between the ordinary and the extraordinary rays varies with different wave-lengths, and that which is generally used is 5880Å, giving the yellow light given by heated sodium at the "D" line of the spectrum. Definite distance is established between the polarizer and the analyzer and a tube of certain length is used; ordinarily a 2.2 decimeter length. Specific rotatory power ( $\alpha$ , or alpha) is defined as the rotation of 1 gm. of the substance (like glucose) per ml. of solution viewed through a column 1 dm. (10 cms.) long with D, or sodium light (hence  $\alpha_D$ ) at a standard temperature, 20° C. Specific rotation has been found by observation for many substances. Thus glucose in 10 per cent. solution gives  $\alpha_D^{20} = +52.7^\circ$ ; fructose,  $-93^\circ$ ; galactose,  $+83^\circ$ ; lactose,  $+52.5^\circ$ ; maltose,  $+138^\circ$ ; sucrose,  $+66.5^\circ$ ; starch,  $+199^\circ$ . Knowing this, one may calculate the concentration of a solution according to the formula:

$$\alpha_D^{20} = \frac{a \times 100}{c \times l}$$

where

$$c = \frac{a \times 100}{\alpha_D^{20} \times l}$$

in which  $a$  is the observed rotation;  $c$  the concentration, and  $l$  the length of the column (tube) in dms.

**Racemization.**—If the optically active *d*- and *l*-isomeres are mixed in equal quantities, racemic substances are produced, which are optically inactive. The term "racemization" is derived from the Latin,<sup>2</sup> meaning cluster, and refers to grapes; from the grape, two kinds of tartaric acid are produced, namely, *d*-tartaric and *dl*-tartaric acid, the latter being called racemic. Pasteur<sup>3</sup> found that molds split

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Latin *racemus*; Greek *rach*, berry.

<sup>3</sup> Page 171.



racemic acid into *d*-tartaric and *l*-tartaric acids. Similar actions of enzymes in general are observed and we have already referred to the fact that *d*-glucids are affected by enzymes, while *l*-glucids are not; and that *l*-amino-acids of the meat series are subject to certain enzymes, while *d*-forms are not. This property is encountered in the pharmacological action of drugs, in which physiological action depends upon whether a *d*- or an *l*-isomere is used. Thus, *l*-alkaloids are more potent than *d*-forms and Cushny<sup>1</sup> and others have shown that certain *d*-forms of drugs are antagonistic to other drugs in *l*-form, as in the antagonism of *l*-epinephrin and *d*-pilocarpin. Dakin<sup>2</sup> has shown that it is possible to cause protid to become racemized by treating it with dilute alkali, and under these circumstances animals cannot utilize it; if fed in this form it will be recovered almost completely in the feces, the slight amount lost being destroyed probably by bacteria in the intestine. The amino-acid known as leucin,<sup>3</sup> when boiled with barium solution at 100° C., becomes racemized to *l*-leucin. In effecting syntheses, if we use an optically inactive agent, like barium, the product is inactive, while an optically active agent, like an enzyme, will produce optically active products. It is interesting to note that in serology we encounter the same conditions. Ten Broeck<sup>4</sup> found that Dakin's racemized protid was non-utilizable in the mammalian organism to cause the production of antibodies, the only exception known to the rule that any complete (page 305) protid may act as antigen.

EXERCISE 21.—Under the direction of an instructor determine with the polarimeter the specific rotation of preparations<sup>5</sup> of glucose, fructose, galactose, maltose, sucrose, and of cornstarch.

EXERCISE 22.—In preparations made for you, determine the concentrations of the sugars, using the data given on page 181.

<sup>1</sup> Cushny, A. R. (formerly Pharmacologist, University of Michigan, now of Edinburg, Scotland). See Cushny, A. R., Text-book of Pharmacology and Therapeutics, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1924, 8th ed.

<sup>2</sup> Dakin, H. D., Anglo-American biochemist, contemporary.

<sup>3</sup> Page 240.

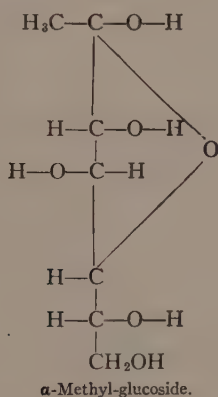
<sup>4</sup> Ten Broeck, C., Pekin-Union Medical School, Pekin, China.

<sup>5</sup> These solutions have been placed in tubes, ready for use in the polarimeter.

THE CHEMISTRY OF THE DIGLUCIDS<sup>1</sup>

In an earlier paragraph<sup>2</sup> we have discussed, briefly, the composition of the polyglucid starch, and the statement was made that it is composed of molecules of glucose. Turning to the diglucids, we find that they also are composed of molecules of the simple sugars, monoglucids, but unlike starch, there is a qualitative difference in the component sugars. Starch has but one type of sugar (glucose), while, with the exception of maltose, the diglucids are composed of two different sugars. Thus, table-sugar, sucrose,<sup>3</sup> is composed of glucose and fructose; lactose, of glucose and galactose.

**What is the chemical linkage of the component sugars in the diglucids?** It is a glucoside bond. In the case of sucrose it is a glucoside of *d*-levulose; in maltose it is a glucoside of *d*-glucose, and in lactose it is a galactoside bonding. The structural formula of a typical glucoside resembles that of glucose with a side-chain. A simple glucoside is  $\alpha$ -methyl-glucoside:

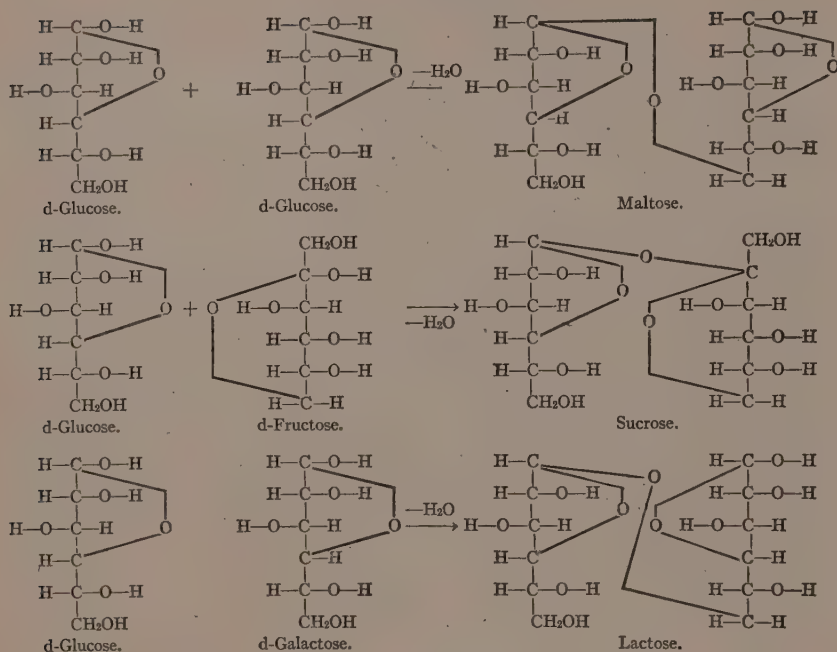


In  $\alpha$ -methyl-glucoside the side-chain is the methyl radicle,  $\text{CH}_3$ . The following structural formulæ give the linkage in the three common diglucids, maltose, sucrose, and lactose:

<sup>1</sup> Called also disaccharids.

<sup>2</sup> Page 145.

<sup>3</sup> Cane-sugar, beet-sugar, saccharose, table-sugar, etc., being synonyms.



### PROPERTIES OF THE DIGLUCIDS

The formulæ just given indicate the chief chemical features of the sugars. In maltose and lactose there are free terminal carbonyls, the aldehyde radicles of the first portion of the molecule; but in the case of sucrose there are no free carbonyls, carbinols being everywhere terminal. The inference is that maltose and lactose reduce copper and other reagents and sucrose does not, or, if so, only after the terminal carbinol is converted into some more active radicle. The following exercises demonstrate these facts:

**EXERCISE 23.**—Set up four tubes as follows: In A place 5 mls. of glucose solution; in B place a similar volume of maltose solution; in C, lactose, and in D, sucrose, using the solutions prepared for you. Add to each tube 2 drops of concentrated sulphuric acid. Leave the tubes in boiling water for two, four, six, eight, and ten minutes, at the end of each period adding 8 drops from each tube to clean test-tubes, one for each tube, A, B, C, and D. To each of the four tubes add 5 mls. of 10 per cent.<sup>1</sup> NaOH solution and 5 mls. of Benedict's qualitative

<sup>1</sup> If this amount of alkali does not neutralize the acid of the solution of sugar, add more before applying the Benedict test.

solution. Place the four tubes in the boiling water-bath for exactly two minutes after vigorous boiling has begun and compare the colors, which indicate the relative readiness with which the different glucids become oxidized.

EXERCISE 24.—Make corresponding tests<sup>1</sup> for the times of appearance of osazones, using the same solutions as in the foregoing exercise.

EXERCISE 25. *Mucic Acid Test for Lactose or Galactose.*—Principle: Galactose<sup>2</sup> is oxidized to its diatomic acid, mucic acid.<sup>3</sup> Procedure: Using the lactose solution from the previous exercises, place 25 mls. in a small Erlenmeyer flask and add 10 mls. of concentrated nitric acid. Boil intermittently (five-minute intervals) for half an hour. Restore the original volume by adding cold water, and, after thorough mixing, let stand until the next period. Filter, saving the residue on the paper. Recrystallize by adding dilute ammonium hydroxid solution to the crystals and then a few drops of concentrated HNO<sub>3</sub>. Examine under the microscope for small, powder-like crystals.


#### CHEMISTRY OF THE POLYGLUCIDS

**Glycogen.**—EXERCISE 26.—Having selected a rabbit which has been well fed for a few days previous to the experiment, arrange for the excision of the liver and the immediate destruction of the enzymes capable of hydrolyzing glycogen to glucose as follows: By stomach-tube<sup>4</sup> administer to the rabbit a lethal dose<sup>5</sup> of urethane about thirty minutes before the operation as an anesthetic. Have ready a large beaker of boiling water, leaving room enough to accommodate the excised liver. When ready apply an ether cone to the rabbit's nose and administer ether until the eye reflex is lost.<sup>6</sup> Then make a rapid incision along the ventral midline by means of a sharp scalpel from

<sup>1</sup> The method for osazones is given on page 146.

<sup>2</sup> Lactose is hydrolyzed to galactose in a preliminary series of reactions by the HNO<sub>3</sub>.

<sup>3</sup> Page 152.

<sup>4</sup> A male catheter serves for this purpose. Provide a small mouth-piece, preferably made from a piece of cigar-box and whittled to the form ; a hole large enough for the passage of the catheter is reamed through the center of the wooden mouth-piece.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.

<sup>6</sup> By touching the cornea gently it can be determined whether the reflex is lost.

the ensiform, caudad<sup>1</sup> for about 5 cms. Then, with bone-scissors, cut through the sternum, cephalad,<sup>2</sup> exposing the liver. Place a pair of hemostats so as to isolate the biliary cyst (gall-bladder), and with scalpel, excise that organ. Lay a pair of hemostats so as to cut off all blood-supply to the liver and rapidly excise the liver, throwing it into the boiling water and mincing it, so that all parts may come into contact with the boiling water. Boil five minutes, strain off the residue by means of scrim, transfer the residue to a mortar bearing a small amount of pure sea-sand, and grind the tissue to a paste. Return this paste to the filtrate, boil up once, and filter through paper in a funnel. Concentrate the filtrate, if desired, in a large evaporating dish, keeping the solution alkaline to litmus paper, adding  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  if necessary. Allow the solution to cool; then precipitate the nitrogenous substances by adding one volume of 95 per cent. ethanol. Filter. Note the opalescent solution of glycogen, resembling clam-broth.

**EXERCISE 27. Alternate Method for Obtaining Glycogen.**—If fresh oysters or scallops are obtainable these may be used as a source of glycogen: Place four of the adductor muscles of the scallop,<sup>3</sup> or six oysters, in a mortar containing washed sea-sand and grind them to a mash. Add one volume of boiling water and transfer to a beaker or casserole; boil half an hour. Strain off the tissue, precipitate the nitrogenous substances as before with ethanol, and use the concentrated filtrate for the following exercises:

**EXERCISE 28. Iodin Test for Glycogen; Distinction from Starch.**—To 2 mls. of the filtrate in a test-tube add 1 drop of glacial acetic acid and 2 drops of iodine solution.<sup>4</sup> Compare the color developed with that of a starch solution similarly treated. Note that the glycogen gives a reddish color, while starch gives a pure blue.

**EXERCISE 29. Acid Hydrolysis of Glycogen.**—To 2 mls. of the filtrate in a test-tube add 1 drop of concentrated sulphuric acid;

<sup>1</sup> Toward the tail; the terms "up" and "down" are confusing in the lower mammals.

<sup>2</sup> Toward the head.

<sup>3</sup> The scallop (*Pecten tenuicostata*) is a large shelled mollusk living off the coast of North America. Only the large muscle that closes the shell is sold as "scallop."

<sup>4</sup> Page 142.



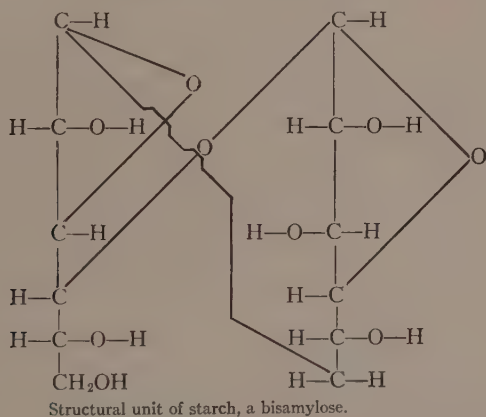
leave in the boiling water-bath for ten minutes, neutralize with 50 per cent. NaOH solution, and test for reducing properties with Benedict's qualitative reagent.

**EXERCISE 30. *Hydrolysis by Means of Enzymes.***—(a) Saliva: Chew paraffin and collect the saliva on a filter-paper in a funnel, draining into a small beaker. Add to 5 mls. of the glycogen suspension from Exercise 26 or 27, above, 2 mls. of the filtered saliva. Leave at not over 50° C. for one minute and test the solution for the time of disappearance of the iodine reaction by removing a drop and bringing it into contact with a drop of iodine solution in the depression of a spot-plate. Continue heating the glycogen-saliva mixture until the color imparted by iodine disappears. Then apply Benedict's qualitative test for the presence of a reducing substance.

(b) Pancreatic amylase<sup>1</sup>: Conduct, simultaneously with the previous exercise, one involving hydrolysis of glycogen by means of the commercial "pancreatin"<sup>2</sup> or, better, pancreatic tissue.

An alkaline reaction must be present in both (a) and (b).

**The Structure of Starch.**—The following structural formula represents one of the units of starch (amylose), which consist of two monoglucids (glucose) in glucosidal<sup>3</sup> union:



This unit becomes united with other, similar units, and gives rise

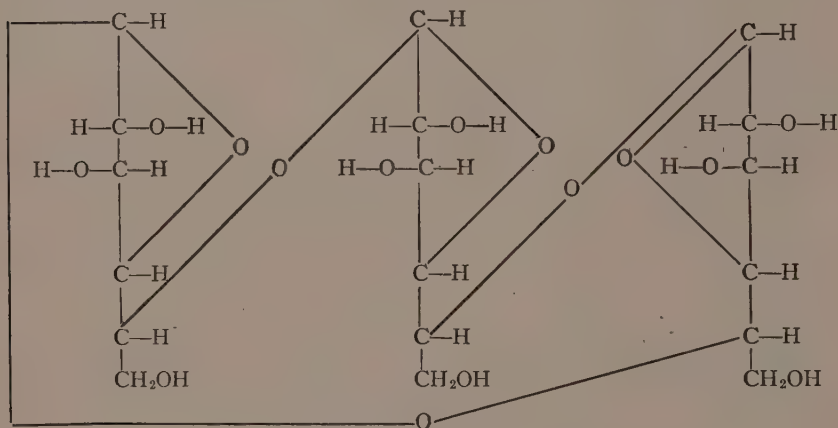
<sup>1</sup> Commonly called amylopsin; see page 460.

<sup>2</sup> A powder containing pancreatic extract.

<sup>3</sup> Page 183.

first to a tetramylose,<sup>1</sup> having two bisamylose units and then to a hexamylose, which has three. It is to be observed that starch is built up by the simple addition of such units. Comparison of the above structural unit with maltose<sup>2</sup> shows that bisamylose is a maltose unit. It represents the final stage of starch digestion by the saliva.

**Cellulose.**—The following structural formula has been given as one of the units of the molecule of amylopectin<sup>3</sup> of the starch grain. It may be taken, also, as the unit of all of the celluloses and pectins<sup>4</sup>:



Tri-glucosan formula for the celluloses.

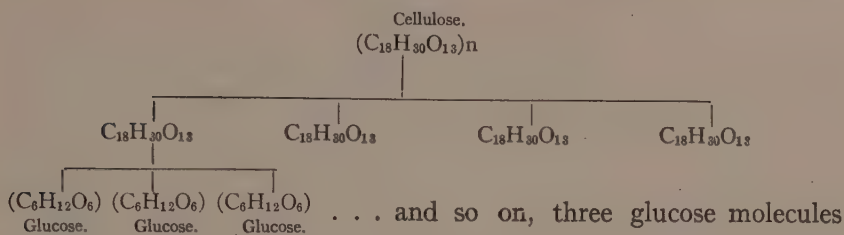
This unit is taken a number of times to make up the molecule of cellulose and similar products. On hydrolysis, it is probable that cellulose is converted into multiples of these tri-glucids, which represent the dextrans of starch hydrolysis. The dextrans are in units of two (bisamylose), while the corresponding hydrolysis products of cellulose are in units of three, as shown above. The following scheme shows the manner of decomposition of cellulose, which is effected by bacteria and other lower organisms, but not by enzymes in man:

<sup>1</sup> The terms "amylotetrose," etc., have been advocated for these units. One can readily see that such terms are confusing, since the term "tetrose" has long been used to designate a four-carbon monoglucid. The difficulty may be escaped by reversing the parts of the word, making it tetramylose. The same applies to the term "amylobiose" which has been applied to the above maltose unit of starch; the term "bisamylose" will be used in the present volume, the Greek words involved being *bis*, twice, and *amylon*, starch.

<sup>2</sup> Page 184.

<sup>3</sup> Page 146.

<sup>4</sup> Agar-agar is a galactosan, being hydrolyzed to galactose.



for each molecule of the triglucosan  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{30}\text{O}_{13}$ .

EXERCISE 31. *Cellulose Prepared from Cotton-wool.*<sup>1</sup>—Using about 1 gram of cotton-wool, in a test-tube, add 2 mls. of diluted (1 per cent.) sodium hydroxid solution and wash with water to remove pectins. Now add bromin water,<sup>2</sup> and then a strong solution of sodium sulphate; wash the threads thoroughly with it. Decant and wash with water. Dry in the open air. The residue is pure cellulose. Note the color. Note that it absorbs water from the environment.<sup>3</sup> Test the solubility in water, both cold and boiling; in ethanol, in weak acids, in weak bases, and in strong bases. Test the solubility in Schweitzer's reagent.<sup>4</sup> Add acid and obtain a precipitate of cellulose. Test the solubility in a solution of one part zinc chlorid and two of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Nitrocellulose is formed when cotton is treated with  $\text{HNO}_3$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; 1 : 3 gun-cotton is formed. Cotton may be hydrolyzed to glucose by boiling with concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , as in the case of starch,<sup>5</sup> glycogen, etc.

EXERCISE 32. *Pectin.*—Using the commercial fluid pectin, test the solubility in water and in ethanol. Cause some to become hydrolyzed to pentose by acid; neutralize and apply Benedict's qualitative test.<sup>6</sup> The diagram on page 189 gives the scheme of hydrolysis if pentose is substituted for glucose.

<sup>1</sup> Cotton-wool contains pectin as well as cellulose. For pectin see next Exercise. Cotton-wool is largely used in bacteriology in stopping tubes.

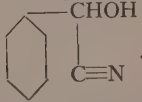
<sup>2</sup> If the experiment is performed under a hood, pour, very carefully, one drop of the heavy bromin liquid into the test-tube. In case of overbreathing of bromin fumes or of contact with bromin, see the Appendix for the method of treatment by anilin.

<sup>3</sup> It is hygroscopic. Greek *hugros*, wet, and *skopos*, watcher; that is, sensitive.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

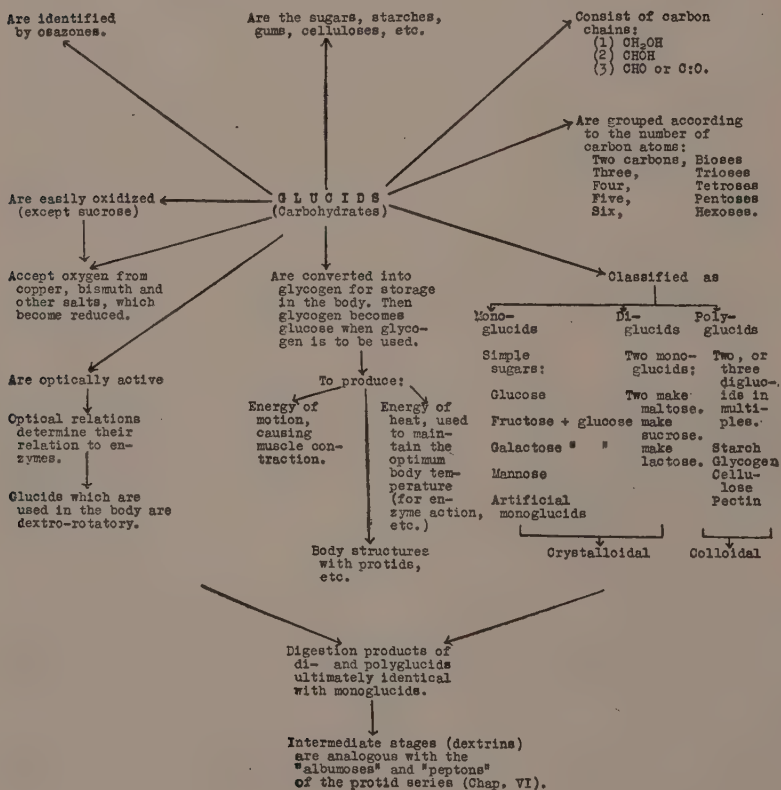
<sup>5</sup> Page 144.

<sup>6</sup> Page 156.

EXERCISE 33. *Glucosides*.—Cherry bark contains the glucoside amygdalin. Boil the bark with a small amount of water and filter. Test the filtrate with Benedict's qualitative reagent. Add 0.5 ml. of concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to 5 mls. of the filtrate and boil to hydrolyze the glucoside. To a portion of the filtrate thus treated add alkali and treat with Benedict's reagent again. Reducing sugar is identified; it is glucose. which bears as a side-chain a nitrile of mandelic acid, . The nitrile may be detected by its conversion

during the heating with acid into  $\text{HCN}$ , and the cyanid is identified by its precipitation with silver nitrate solution.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Armstrong, E. F. *The Simple Carbohydrates and the Glucosides*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1924, 4th ed.
- Armstrong, E. F. *The Development of Chemistry in the Twentieth Century*.
- Bernard, C. *Comptes rendus de l'Acad. des Sciences*, vol. 41, p. 461; 44, p. 1325; 48, p. 77.
- Euler, H. *Pflanzenbiochemie*. Two volumes. Obtainable through B. Login & Son, New York, N. Y.
- Fraenkel, S. *Die Arzneimittelsynthese*, Berlin, Julius Springer, 1919, 4th ed.
- Garrod, A. E. *Inborn Errors of Metabolism*, London, H. Frowde and Hodder & Stoughton, 1923, 2d ed.
- Harden, A. *Alcoholic Fermentation*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1923, 3d ed.
- Nef, J. U. Articles in *Annalen der Chemie*, 1912-13. See Wells, H. G., *Chemical Pathology* (article by Woodyatt), Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925.
- Robertson, T. B. *Biochemistry*, 3d ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger.
- Rowe, A. W. Metabolism of Galactose, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 55, p. 6 (Proc.).
- Sollmann, T. *Pharmacology*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1922.
- Tollens, B. *Kurzes Handbuch der Kohlenhydrate*, 2d ed., Breslau, 1898 (obtainable through B. Login & Son, New York, N. Y.).



## CHAPTER V

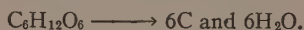
### ENERGY PRODUCERS: LIPIDS

"The principles of science have been worked out by slow degrees and much blundering by fallible human beings."—*Slosson*.<sup>1</sup>

**Function.**—The lipids, or fats and their allies, are par excellence heat producers. We have shown<sup>2</sup> in Chapter IV how part of the glucose molecule is burned, but the amount of heat generated in this way is only about one-half the amount of heat produced by burning an equivalent mass of lipid.

- One gram of glucid on being oxidized produces 4.2 Calories.<sup>3</sup>
- One gram of lipid on being oxidized produces 9.5 Calories.

The reason for this great heat production by the fats is that there is little oxygen and much carbon and hydrogen in the fat molecule. Moreover, the intramolecular oxygen does not give rise to heat when it unites with carbon or hydrogen during oxidation. Oxygen must be introduced from the outside to produce heat energy. The amount of oxygen necessary to burn the carbon in a glucid to CO<sub>2</sub> is 6 atoms per molecule of glucid. Taking glucose for an example,



Since the 6 atoms of oxygen contained in the glucose molecule are used in burning the hydrogen to H<sub>2</sub>O, the 6 atoms of carbon must be burned by oxygen introduced from without, that is, 6 oxygen molecules.

For palmitid,<sup>4</sup> a common fat, the process is as follows:

Formula.....	$\text{C}_{61}\text{H}_{94}\text{O}_6$
Subtracting intramolecular water.....	$\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$
	$\text{C}_{61}\text{H}_{88}$
	left for oxidation by oxygen from without.

<sup>1</sup> Slosson, E. E., chemist; head of the Science Service, Washington, D. C.

<sup>2</sup> Page 140.

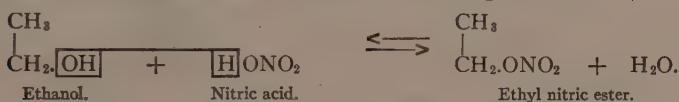
<sup>3</sup> A Calorie (Latin *calor*, heat) is the heat necessary to raise the temperature (degree of heat referred to a standard, like that of melting ice, the boiling-point, etc.) of a substance. 1° C. A Calorie (large Calorie) is 1000 times that amount of heat. The figures given above are large Calories.

<sup>4</sup> Following the nomenclature of the International Congress, the suffix *-id* will be used for fats.

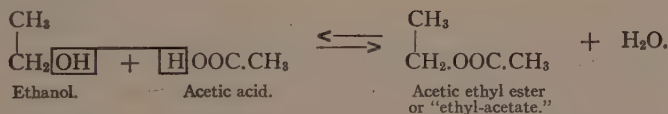
This requires 142 oxygen molecules. Contrast this amount of oxygen with that required for the burning of a molecule of glucose, given above.

**Types of Lipids.**—Lipids comprise the true fats, such as suet; oils, such as olive oil; the waxes, such as spermaceti; phosphorized fats, such as the so called lecithin of brain, and various special fats which are not popularly known and bear no common name. Associated with the lipids, but of no chemical relationship to them, are the sterols, such as the cholesterol found in gall-stones, and the lanolin in lambs' wool fat, used for pharmaceutical preparations.

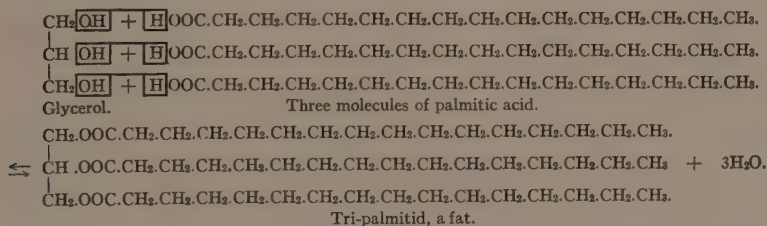
**Chemical Composition.**—Fats are esters of higher alcohols and fatty acids. The alcohol of the common fats and oils is glycerol.<sup>1</sup> In some fats the place of glycerol is taken by other alcohols or even by a glucid, like galactose. An ester is an organic salt:



This reaction occurs because of the affinity of hydrogen for the hydroxyl. We have shown<sup>2</sup> that water ionizes to a very slight extent, which means that the ions,  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$ , are separated only with difficulty from the molecule of water. The reaction is reversible. Using an organic acid, we have:



In these cases we are dealing with an alcohol with only one hydroxyl, but in glycerol there are three hydroxyls, each of which unites with an acid molecule; consequently, three acid molecules are used in the making of the glycerids:



<sup>1</sup> "Glycerine," but glycerol is proper, since *-ol* indicates an alcohol.

<sup>2</sup> Page 36.

All the so-called "neutral" fats, or natural fats, consist of an ester of alcohol (glycerol) and three fatty acids; hence they are called tri-compounds (tri-palmitid, tri-stearid, tri-oleid).

**EXERCISE 1.** *Detection of Fat.*—Drop upon a piece of paper a bit of the melted substance suspected of being a fat or containing fat; a grease spot is formed, which renders the paper translucent,<sup>1</sup> or semi-transparent. Paraffin will do much the same; apply, to another part of the paper, a drop of albolene. Note the characteristic difference between the two spots; the oil spreads and the outer margin of the spot is clear, while that of the paraffin oil is less distinct. Hold the spots over a low flame and note the spread of the fat and oil; the fat spreads more widely than the oil.

**EXERCISE 2.**—Using the spots made in the preceding exercise, hold them over a bottle of 1 per cent. osmium tetroxid ("osmic acid"); note the blackening<sup>2</sup> of the lipid, while the albolene remains clear.

**EXERCISE 3.**—Make additional spots as in Exercise 2 above. Apply to one set a solution of Scharlach R<sup>3</sup> and to another Sudan III. Note the difference in colors between the lipid and the paraffin.

**EXERCISE 4.** *The Acroleïn Test for the Presence of Fats.*—Before making the test for suspected fat use pure glycerol. Make a solution of glycerol in water and add a small crystal of potassium hydrogen sulphate, KHSO<sub>4</sub>; or phosphoric acid<sup>4</sup> may be used. Boil. Note the pungent, characteristic odor of acroleïn. Now repeat the experiment, using the suspected fat; if the fat is solid, dissolve it in a small amount of carbon tetrachlorid, CCl<sub>4</sub>.<sup>5</sup> Note the odor of acroleïn. Acroleïn is acrylic aldehyde removed by dehydration from glycerol:

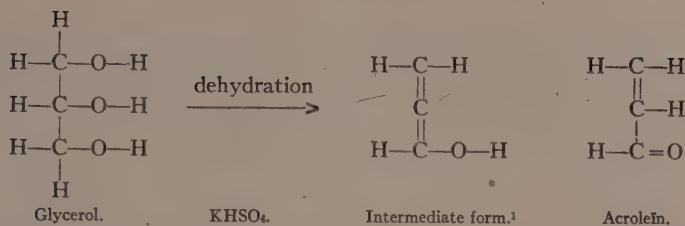
<sup>1</sup> Before the introduction of glass (discovered by the Phoenicians in their camp-fires built upon the sands, quartz being fused to glass), oiled paper was used instead.

<sup>2</sup> If the osmic preparation is old, a drop may be applied to the spots.

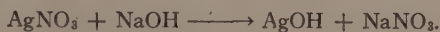
<sup>3</sup> This dye is used in making the "scarlet ointment" of the drug-store, which is sold for the treatment of burns, the principle being that the dye kills the half dead cells surrounding the burn and leaves an impulse for the development of new cells, which close the wound.

<sup>4</sup> Eighty-five per cent. syrupy phosphoric acid U. S. P.

<sup>5</sup> Carbon tetrachlorid is non-inflammable. It is used in fire extinguishers and in non-inflammable cleaning mixtures.

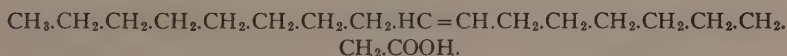


Since acrolein is an aldehyde it possesses reducing properties for metal hydroxides, like silver hydroxid, which is made as follows:



Dampen a piece of filter-paper with silver hydroxid solution to which a little ammonium hydroxid has been added and hold the paper tightly over the mouth of the test-tube containing the acrolein solution. Boil and note the deposition of metallic silver as a brownish spot on the paper. Fat may be used in place of pure glycerol, since there is an hydrolysis of the fat, freeing glycerol. Verify this statement, using a  $\text{CCl}_4$  solution of tallow.<sup>2</sup>

**EXERCISE 5.** *The Absorption of Iodin by Fats.*—Using oleic acid:



To 2 mls. of the acid in a test-tube add 5 mls. of water and, drop by drop, 0.01 normal iodine solution. Note the disappearance of the brown color of the iodine until a certain point has been reached, after which the addition of iodine no longer is followed by a discharge of the brown color; this is the point of saturation. Repeat, using 1 drop of olive oil dissolved in 5 mls. of carbon tetrachloride. The amount of iodine absorbed by fats is a factor in their identification. The following Exercise gives one of the methods:

**EXERCISE 6.** *Method of Wijs.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle: A known amount of fat is subjected to an excess of iodine. Iodine is readily absorbed by

<sup>1</sup> The hydroxyl is united with an unsaturated carbon atom, which is unstable, and a shift takes place to satisfy the open bond to make the aldehyde group.

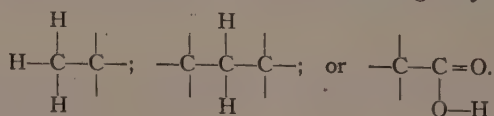
<sup>2</sup> The tallow should be "rendered" by melting it, letting it stand, and skimming off the fat from the protid.

<sup>3</sup> Wijs, H., chemist of the Netherlands; the word is pronounced "vayze."

the fat. The amount of iodine remaining after exposure to fat can be titrated with sodium thiosulphate, thus making possible the calculation of the iodine value, that is, the index of the iodine-absorbing power of the fat. Procedure: Weigh, accurately, about 0.3 g. olive oil into a 250-ml. Erlenmeyer flask and dissolve the oil in 10 mls. chloroform. Now add exactly 25 mls. of Wijs' solution by means of a 25-ml. pipette. Stopper the flask and leave in a dark place for half an hour. Then add 15 mls. 10 per cent. potassium iodide solution and 100 mls.  $H_2O$ . Titrate the solution against decinormal thiosulphate solution. This is done by running in the thiosulphate until the above solution becomes straw color, after which 5 drops of starch solution<sup>2</sup> are added. Now titrate again until the iodine is decolorized. Standardization of the thiosulphate in terms of iodine: Repeat the above titration, using in place of the oil the iodine solution itself to which 15 mls. 10 per cent. KI are added. The difference between the titration figure for the oil and that for the iodine represents the amount of iodine absorbed by the oil. Express as per cent. The student may be aided by an arbitrary example:

Titration figure for the unknown after standing in the dark 35 mls. 0.1 n. "hypo."  
 Twenty-five mls. of the Wijs' solution alone titrate . . . . . 60 " " " "  
 Therefore, the amount iodine absorbed is  $60 - 35 = \dots\dots\dots 25$  " " " "  
 Atomic weight iodine = 126.92; an 0.1 normal solution is . . 0.12692 g. per ml.  
 Then, 25 mls. 0.1 normal thiosulphate  $\approx \dots\dots\dots 3.173$  gs. iodine.  
 Converting to per cent.,  $\frac{100}{\text{Figure in grams of oil weighed}} \times 3.173 = 105.978$ , the iodine number of the oil.

**Nature of Iodine Absorption.**—Not all fats and oils absorb iodine. Thus, if members of the acetic acid series, like palmitic or stearic, which are found in tallow, are treated with iodine, or other halogen, like bromine, no absorption occurs.<sup>3</sup> An examination of the structural formulæ of these fats, like that of tripalmitic,<sup>4</sup> shows no provision for iodine absorption, for all the valencies are filled, each carbon atom having its bonds satisfied in one of the following ways:



<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

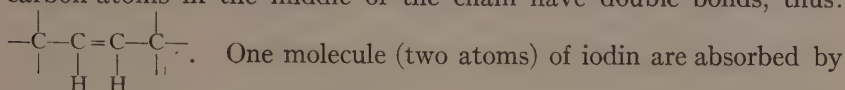
<sup>2</sup> Page 143.

<sup>3</sup> If the student try to verify this, he may find a slight absorption, due to the factors that were described on page 109, that is, adsorption. This phenomenon is quite different from iodine absorption, as we have described it above.

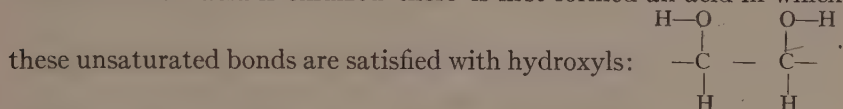
<sup>4</sup> Page 193.



Oleic,<sup>1</sup> however, belongs to a different class, being one of the series to which acrolein belongs.<sup>2</sup> A glance at the formula shows that two carbon atoms in the middle of the chain have double bonds, thus:



One molecule (two atoms) of iodine are absorbed by one molecule of oleic acid and three for the oil, trioleid. The reason for placing the unsaturated carbon atoms in the middle of the chain is that when oleic acid is oxidized there is first formed an acid in which



This acid is known as di-hydroxy-stearic acid; it forms by cleavage of the molecule between the carbons bearing the hydroxyls, two acids, each representing one-half of the original oleic acid molecule, one acid becoming pelargonic acid:



and the second acid becoming the dicarboxylic acid, azelaic acid:



The unsaturated carbon atom, then, represents the place of rupture of the molecule. Unsaturation generally involves color, which explains the color of oleic acid, as obtained on the market.<sup>3</sup>

**Hydrogenation of Fats and Oils.**—In place of halogens, or hydroxyls, hydrogen atoms may be used to satisfy the unsaturated carbon atoms and are so used in the arts. We have just seen that by saturating oleic acid with hydroxyls, we obtain iso-oleic or elaidic acid, or even stearic acid which are acids belonging to the saturated, or acetic acid series. The members of this series occurring in common fats and oils have higher melting-points than those of the acrylic series:

Tri-oleid	melts at $-5^{\circ} C.$
Tri-palmitid	at $+62.0$
Tri-stearid	at $-71.6$

If, by introducing hydrogen into the molecule of the fats and oils which are liquid at ordinary temperatures, they can be converted into fats

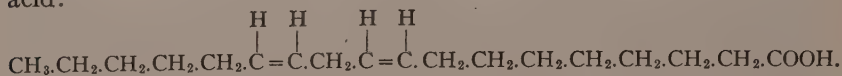
<sup>1</sup> See the formula for oleic acid, page 195.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the structural formula for acrolein, page 195.

<sup>3</sup> Pure oleic acid, free from oxidation, is colorless.

which are solid at these temperatures, packing of the products is facilitated and there is also less danger of the substances spoiling during commercial handling. This process is extensively used in making butter substitutes.

**Oxidation of Fatty Acids with More Than One Bond.**—Linolic acid:



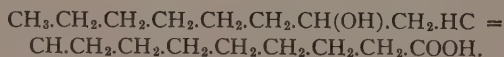
occurs as a triglycerid accompanying olive oil. It has been obtained also from hydrolysis products of lecithin,<sup>1</sup> which undergoes oxidation readily probably because it contains unsaturated fatty acids of the series we are considering. White lecithin (unoxidized) is rare.

Another acid is used as a "drying oil" in painting; it is linoleic acid:



It is found in linseed oil. It readily gives up oxygen to the wood upon which the oil is laid, the wood in its turn becoming oxidized and hence preserved. The unpleasant odors from dead fish are due to the oxidation of unsaturated oils causing rancidity which is partly a process of oxidation, partly hydrolysis, and partly the action of bacteria and of moulds. The exact nature of rancidity is obscure.

Castor oil is largely (90 per cent.) an unsaturated hydroxy-acid, ricinoleic acid:



The presence of hydroxyls causes ricinoleic acid to show some of the characteristics of alcohols (solubility in alcohols, ester formation with acids, etc.). When ricinoleic acid is saturated it becomes ricinelaidic acid.<sup>2</sup> Another acid, saturated, bearing two hydroxyls, also occurs in castor oil; it is known as di-hydroxy-stearic acid (1 per cent.) referred to on page 197.

**The Physiological Interest in Unsaturation.**—From the work of Leathes<sup>3</sup> it is evident that unsaturation is a factor in the metabolism of the fats, for one may distinguish between "depot" fat and organ fat. Depot fat is deposited in the great fat storage places of the body

<sup>1</sup> Page 204.

<sup>2</sup> Page 197.

<sup>3</sup> Leathes, J. B., English biochemist, Sheffield University. See Leathes, J. B., *The Fats*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1910.

—over the kidneys, in the great omentum, etc. Organ fat lies in the tissues themselves, like the liver. Cod-liver oil has been known for years as a readily assimilable oil, quite distinct in nutritional properties from suet and other depot fats. Leathes has shown that in fat metabolism the saturated fats are mobilized from the fat depots and carried by the blood-stream from the region of the kidney and elsewhere to the liver, where the process of desaturation is accomplished. Thus the fat is made ready for combustion.<sup>1</sup> Outside the body unsaturated fats burn no more readily than saturated ones, but within the body the opposite is true, in fact, it is probable that saturated fats are not burned as such in the organism. There must, therefore, be some chemical change which accompanies desaturation, rendering the fats available for oxidation. Exactly what this change is remains unknown, but we have seen how oleic acid becomes divided at the point of unsaturation, each half of the original oleic acid being converted into an independent acid. Each of these acids then loses one carbon atom by the process of decarboxylation<sup>2</sup> and then is burned to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  by the process known as beta-oxidation.<sup>3</sup> Whatever the reason for this desaturation procedure, the tissue fats of the body have properties not possessed by fats of the acetic acid series.

**The Character of Body Fats.**—The characteristics of body fat depend upon several factors, such as their location in the body, and the type of food from which they originate. In man the content of unsaturated fats in various parts of the body as measured by the iodine number is as follows (Abderhalden, after different authors):

Source.	Iodin number.
Subcutaneous fat, abdomen.....	66.3
breast.....	64.4
Kidney, depot fat.....	57.8

Human fat consists of three fats, proportionated according to their fatty acids as follows:

	Per cent. of total
Stearic acid	10.0
Myristic acid	10.0
Palmitic acid	80.0

	Per cent. of total fatty acids hydrolyzed.
Stearic acid.....	4.9-6.3
Palmitic acid.....	16.9-21.1
Oleic acid.....	65.6-86.7

It is probable that the first and third acids exist in the fat as a dioleostearid compound, tripalmitid, accompanying this compound in simple physical mixture. Human fat may melt at as low a tempera-

<sup>1</sup> The powder is dried, as has been remarked.

<sup>2</sup> Page 519.

<sup>3</sup> Page 519.

ture as  $17.6^{\circ}\text{C}$ . as contrasted with the average melting point of lard (hog-fat),  $27.6^{\circ}\text{C}$ . and tallow (mixed ox- or sheep-fat),  $45^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Inasmuch as these body fats are nearly neutral,<sup>1</sup> they are commonly called "neutral fats."

**Butter Fat.**—This is a tissue fat and hence we should expect it to have a low melting-point. In fact, it is an oil. The limits of melting

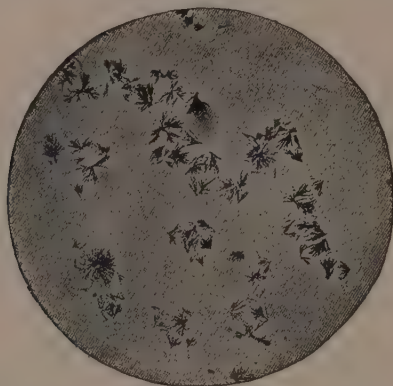


Fig. 89.—Crystals of coconut oil, magnified 45 times. Compare Fig. 163. (From Woodman, Food Analysis, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, N. Y.)

of the average butter fat derived from cow's milk are between  $28^{\circ}$  and  $35^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The iodine number varies between the same numbers (25–35). Unlike the depot fats, butter fat contains volatile fatty acids, butyric 6 per cent.:



Capronic:



Caprylic:



Caprinic:



these three making up 3 per cent. Myristic (see Fig. 8):



associated with palmitic and stearic when quantitative determinations are made. Other acids are formic,  $\text{H}\cdot\text{COOH}$ ; acetic,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ ; lauric,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_{10}\text{COOH}$ ; and arachic  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_{18}\text{COOH}$ . Glycerol and other substances are found in quantitative analyses. Hence, the

<sup>1</sup> They are neutral to litmus.

presence of butter may readily be detected by distilling off the substances at comparatively low temperatures (or rapidly at the boiling-point of water, 100° C.) and titrating the distillate with standard alkali. This is the principle of the Reichert-Meissl and similar modifications of the original Reichert method for the estimation of volatile constituents of the fats by various chemists, like Wollny, Polenski, Leffmann, and others. The Leffmann<sup>1</sup> procedure is given herewith:

The Leffmann method for quantitative determination of volatile acids: Weigh 5 gs. fat into a small Kjeldahl (300-ml.) flask. Add 20 mls. of the special glycerol solution (Appendix). Heat over a free flame<sup>2</sup> until the foaming ceases and the mixture becomes perfectly clear (five minutes). Add 135 mls. distilled water in small amounts to prevent foaming. Add pieces of pumice. While rotating the contents of the flask under the cold-water tap, add 8 mls. 25 per cent. sulphuric acid solution<sup>3</sup> and immediately attach to a Liebig condenser,<sup>4</sup> receiving the distillate in a 250-ml. volumetric cylinder. When 110 mls. of distillate have been collected,<sup>5</sup> disconnect and, after thoroughly mixing the contents of the cylinder, filter through a dry filter. Titrate exactly 100 mls. filtrate with 0.1 normal NaOH solution (phenolphthalein).

Calculation: Multiply the figure obtained by titration by 1.1. If exactly 5 gs. of fat were weighed for the determination, the Reichert-Meissl number is given directly, but if the weight is not exactly 5.0 gs., then a proportion must be made, since the factor is meant for that weight, and also for exactly 110 mls. of distillate. Example:

4.9 gs. fat were weighed.

100.0 mls. of distillate were obtained.

30.0 mls. of 0.1 normal NaOH were used in titration.

Then:  $30 \times 1.1 = 33.0$  mls.<sup>6</sup>

For 4.9 gs. in place of 5.0,  $4.9: 33 = 5: x$ .

$x = 33.5$  Reichert-Meissl number.

<sup>1</sup> Leffmann, H., Chemical Pathologist, Emeritus, Jefferson Hospital, Philadelphia. See Leffmann, H., and Beam, William, Analyst, vol. 16, p. 153, 1891.

<sup>2</sup> The heating may be done by holding the flask by means of tongs directly over the flame if resistance glass, like pyrex, is used.

<sup>3</sup> This sets free the acids. The sulphuric acid must be added slowly and with care.

<sup>4</sup> If the Kjeldahl condenser has been well washed by distilling 300 mls. of water through it, it may be used for such distillations.

<sup>5</sup> This should take about half an hour.

<sup>6</sup> 1.1 is the ratio  $\frac{110}{100}$ .



If it is desired to determine the content of acetic acid, the acetyl number is determined by acetylating the fat in the distillate by means of acetic anhydrid and then titrating with standard alkali. The acetyl number is the amount of KOH by weight required to neutralize the acetic acid volatilized from 1 g. of fat after acetylating. By using the data of such determinations it is possible to discover adulteration in butter:

Reichert-Meissl number for:	
Butter.....	30.00
Lard.....	0.68
Tallow.....	0.50
Cocoanut oil.....	7.00
Olive oil.....	0.60

### PHOSPHATIDS AND CEREBROSIDES

The term "lipoid"<sup>1</sup> has been applied to fat-like substances, differing in certain respects from the neutral fats, which we have been considering. These compounds may be classified as follows for purposes of discussion<sup>2</sup>:

A. Phosphatids, substances containing, besides fatty acids similar to those which have just been discussed, a nitrogenous and phosphoric acid radicle; *e. g.*, lecithin; kephalin.

B. Cerebrosides, substances containing fatty acids, but which are phosphorus free and contain a glucid group; *e. g.*, phrenosin.

**Phosphatids.**—The classification of phosphatids given by Thudicum (1884) is as satisfactory as any, but is more detailed than is necessary for our present purposes. We will, therefore, use the one suggested by Leathes<sup>3</sup> in 1910:

I. Phospholipids: Glycerids of fatty acids with nitrogen and phosphorus. Called "Phosphatids" by Thudicum.

- (1) Lecithin, in tissues in general; soluble in alcohol; unsaturated acids are oleic and arachidonic. The nitrogenous part is cholin.
- (2) Kephalin, in nervous tissue, especially; insoluble in ethanol; the unsaturated acid is kephalin-linolic acid; the nitrogenous part is amino-ethyl-alcohol.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *lipon*, fat, and *oidos*, like.

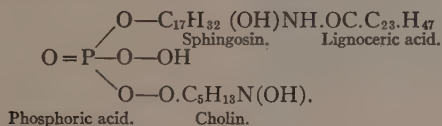
<sup>2</sup> Following Thudicum, German-English biochemist, whose work laid the foundation of our knowledge of such compounds.

<sup>3</sup> With nomenclature modified to conform to that of the International Congress (page 139).

- (3) Cuorin, in heart tissue; insoluble in ethanol; the unsaturated acids are linolic and linoleic; the nitrogenous part is unknown. Cuorin may be a mixture rather than an individual compound.
- (4) Sphingomyelin, in brain, principally, but also in other tissues. Insoluble in ethanol; precipitated by acetone. Levene finds an unnamed hydroxy-acid, the unsaturated bonds satisfied with OH. Lignoceric acid also present. Since the acids are saturated, sphingomyelin does not become altered on standing. There are two nitrogenous compounds, namely, cholin and sphingosin. Tentative structural formula for sphingosin:



The formula for sphingomyelin is given as:



II. Galactolipids: Compounds of fatty acids containing no phosphorus. Instead of glycerol, galactose is present. The fatty acid is phrenosinic or lignoceric acid.<sup>1</sup> These substances were called, collectively, cerebrosides by Thudicum.

- (1) Phrenosin: Soluble in 85 per cent. ethanol, insoluble in ethyl-ether. The nitrogenous part is sphingosin. The fatty acid is phrenosinic acid, which resembles stearic acid. Crystallizes both as liquid crystals<sup>2</sup> and as formed crystals. Resembles lecithin in forming myelin-forms in water. The optical relations of these substances have been studied in pyridin solutions, which are dextrorotatory.
- (2) Kerasin: Precipitated from hot ethanol in groups of finely spun crystals, the groups adhering and causing the formation of a gelatinous consistency of the residue from hot ethanol. In amounts above one part to 321 of ethanol,

<sup>1</sup> Until the discovery of this acid in phospholipids and galactolipids it had been found only in coal-tar.

<sup>2</sup> These substances have been studied by Lehmann. For an account of his discoveries see Mellor (citation on page 2), vol. 1, p. 645.

kerasin is soluble; this property is utilized in purifying the crystals. In all other respects kerasin resembles phrenosin, save one: The acid is lignoceric acid. In pyridin solution the rotation is levorotatory.

In an earlier section<sup>1</sup> it was suggested that galactose may be an indispensable constituent of food for the growing child, because it is a part of the nervous system. We are enabled to understand this reference now, for it is in the galactolipid that galactose is found to the greatest extent in the body.



Fig. 90.—Walter R. Bloor, Professor of Biochemistry, Rochester School of Medicine, Rochester, N. Y. Student of lipids, creator of methods for analyses of blood-lipids.

Galactose enters the body in milk and also in green leaves, in which it forms a part of the supporting structure of the cells (galactosans). Galactose may enter the body, also, when brains are ingested as food. Galactose is converted into glycogen and is stored as such, but there is no evidence that galactose can form from glycogen, although it may do so by way of glucose.

**Chemistry of Lecithin.**—This phosphatid occurs in all actively growing cells, in nervous tissue, and in the yolk of eggs. Its occurrence is suggestive of an important rôle, either as a by-product, a precursor, or an active metabolite of the cell. The fact that it contains in its chemical composition some of the configurations found in

the characteristic compound of the cell nucleus—the vital part of the cell—leads to the assumption that lecithin may contribute to the formation of the “chromatin” of the cell, which is associated in the minds of biologists with hereditary transmission, sex, etc. Lecithin affords a means of transport in the blood of the unsaturated fatty acids (Bloor).<sup>2</sup>

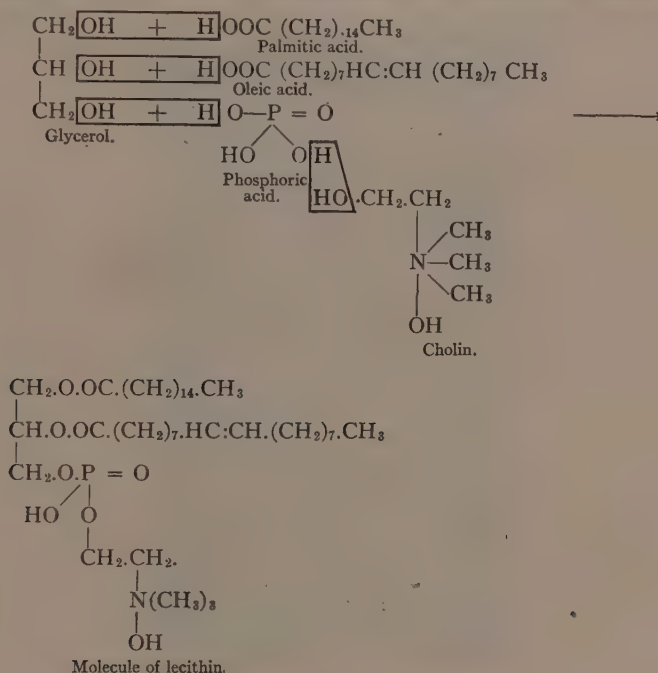
The following diagram gives the general composition of the molecule of lecithin:

<sup>1</sup> Page 142.

<sup>2</sup> Bloor, W. R., Fig. 90.

- GLYCEROL
1. FATTY ACID (saturated)
  2. FATTY ACID (unsaturated)
  3. PHOSPHORIC ACID
    - NITROGENOUS RADICLE  
(cholin, in lecithin)

Completed formula for a molecule of the phosphatid, lecithin:



The reasons for believing that all lecithins contain at least one unsaturated acid are the iodine number and the readiness with which the compound, which in its purest state is white, becomes brownish by oxidation. The iodine number varies for lecithin derived from different sources in the body:

Lecithin from:

	Iodine number.
Egg-yolk, fresh.....	69.0
old.....	48.7
Heart (beef).....	100.0
Liver (beef).....	63.0
Testicles (beef).....	117.0
Thyroid (beef).....	69.0

Besides the unsaturated acid, oleic, linolic,<sup>1</sup> and, recently,<sup>2</sup> arachidonic, another unsaturated acid of the acrylic series has been found. The presence of unsaturation in lecithin is of the greatest interest, for it leads to the belief that this compound plays an active rather than passive rôle in the cell, inasmuch as lecithin is labile and may possibly be linked with protid metabolism. Through the work of Levene and others it is evident that many different kinds of lecithins exist, char-



Fig. 91.—P. A. Levene, Director of the Rockefeller Institute Department of Chemistry. Intensive investigations on the pure chemistry of numerous biochemically important substances.

acterized by the presence of certain kinds of unsaturated acids. Thus, Levene found four different lecithins in liver, the fatty acids consisting of:

	Saturated.	Unsaturated.
Lecithin I	Palmitic.....	Oleic
Lecithin II	Stearic.....	Oleic
Lecithin III	Palmitic.....	Arachidonic <sup>3</sup>
Lecithin IV	Stearic.....	Arachidonic

<sup>1</sup> Formula, page 198.

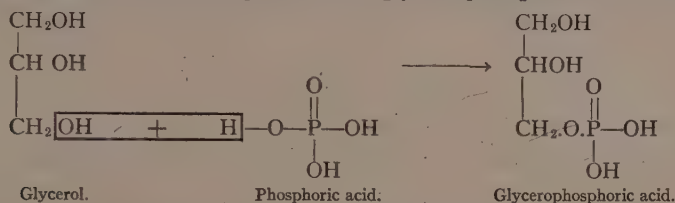
<sup>2</sup> By P. A. Levene, head of the Department of Chemistry, Rockefeller Institute, New York; portrait, Fig. 91.

<sup>3</sup> A 20-carbon, unsaturated acid.

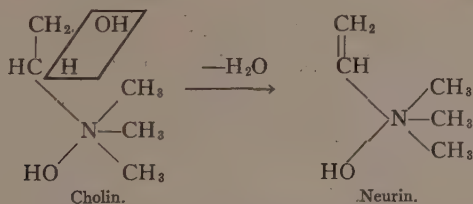
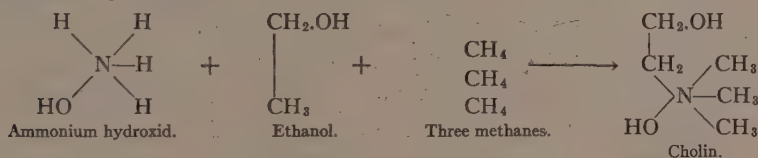


In egg-yolk Levene found three lecithins, combinations of palmitic and stearic saturated acids, together with the unsaturated acids—oleic, linoleic, and arachidonic. Hence the term “lecithin” is a general one and the especial type should be designated in each case.

*The Chemistry of the Nitrogenous Parts of the Phospholipids.*—The alcohol, glycerol, or its ally, galactose, may be separated from the nitrogenous portion of the molecule of a phosphatid, as a glycerophosphoric acid.<sup>1</sup> The composition of glycerophosphoric acid is:



In the case of cholin, which is closely related to substances of powerful pharmacological action, like neurin and muscarin, the nitrogenous portion separated off is a tri-methyl-amin. The interrelationships of these three substances are shown as substituted ammonium hydroxid:



All of these tri-methylamin compounds are highly toxic, stimulating the terminals of certain nerves, like the vagus or tenth nerve. Cholin does not ordinarily occur freely in the body, but may be absorbed after intestinal putrefaction. The ordinary digestive juices do not cleave lecithin to free cholin, but autolytic processes<sup>2</sup> do.

<sup>1</sup> See New and Non-official Remedies, Chicago, Amer. Med. Assoc.; issued in revised form at frequent intervals. Glycerophosphates are used in therapeutics.

<sup>2</sup> Page 436.

Cholin occurs in certain drugs, like ergot. Cholin is an excellent example of the correlation of chemical configuration and pharmacological action. Thus, if the ethanol radicle in cholin is acetylated, a compound results which is one hundred times as potent as cholin in lowering the blood-pressure, but the toxicity is decreased only three times.

The nitrogenous part of other phosphatids, such as kephalin, consists of substances somewhat similar to those found in cholin. Kephalin

contains amino-ethanol:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{N} \\ \diagup \\ \text{H} \end{array} - \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , nitrogen being trivalent, not pentavalent as in cholin.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PHOSPHOLIPIDS

**EXERCISE 7.** *Preparation of "Lecithin" from the Brain.*—Using the brain material which has been dried in a current of warm air (40° C.), ground in a mill, and powdered in a mortar, transfer 100 gs. to a 250-ml. Erlenmeyer flask and add one volume of ethanol, 95 per cent. Shake the contents thoroughly and filter through dry paper. Repeat this procedure twice and save the filtrates. Then add one-half volume of ethanol ("absolute," 99.6 per cent.) and combine the filtrate with that from the previous filtrations. After each extraction the material may be passed through cheese-cloth previous to filtration through paper, in order to conserve time. Concentrate the combined filtrates on the water-bath at about 55° C. until a syrup of thin consistency is obtained. Dissolve the residue in a small volume of ethyl ether. Some of the material goes into solution and much remains insoluble; but without attempting further separation add acetone and mix thoroughly with a pestle. Strain through muslin and filter through paper, saving both fractions. To the residue add another portion of acetone and repeat the extraction. Combine the filtrates, transfer the residue to a mortar, and make an emulsion with a large excess of saline (4 volumes). Add one-half volume of acetone to the emulsion. Remove the floating white flaky material by means of a stirring-rod and complete the preparation by filtering through paper which has been perforated with the sharp end of a lead-pencil. This white residue contains lecithin. Dissolve in ether and centrifuge the ether from a precipitate; this is sphingomyelin. Decant the

ether layer and add one volume of acetone. Centrifuge the solution and find the lecithin as the residue at the bottom of the tube. Decant the supernatant liquid. Dissolve the residue in "absolute" ethanol. If the solution is murky, it contains a suspension of cephalin. This may be centrifuged from the supernatant layer, which is saved, concentrated on the water-bath, and dried in a desiccator<sup>1</sup> over sulphuric acid. If the procedure has been carried out properly, the lecithin obtained is quite pure and not discolored with oxidation products which will render it brownish.

**EXERCISE 8.**—Place a bit of the lecithin on a microscope slide and add a drop of water. Note the "myelin" formation—finger-like extensions somewhat like pseudopodia of *Amoeba*. Warm the slide and note that the material becomes brownish, owing to oxidation. Transfer a small portion of the lecithin to a small test-tube and add 5 drops of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Boil and note the "fishy" odor, due to tri-methylamin formed in the decomposition of the cholin. Test for the presence of phosphoric acid by thoroughly mixing lecithin and dry powdered  $\text{KNO}_3$  in a crucible. Warm gradually, then more rapidly, and continue heating until the dark color has disappeared. Let the crucible cool, add water to dissolve the residue, and make the ordinary test for the presence of  $-\text{PO}_4$ .<sup>2</sup> On another sample of lecithin make the acrolein test.

### THE STEROLS

Associated with the true lipids are certain substances related to the aromatic groups, but having no chemical affinity for the fats. For want of a more logical place of introduction these substances, known as *sterols*, are commonly discussed with the true fats, to which they bear only physical relationships. Some fat solvents (hot ethanol, ethyl ether, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, and carbon bisulphide) will dissolve the sterols, but others (cold ethanol) will not. Conversely, some solvents for cholesterol will not dissolve all lipids (acetone).

There are three principal groups of sterols:

(1) **Phytosterols.**—Crystalline form, hexagonal. Melting-point of the crystals,  $137^\circ \text{C}$ . The acetate melts at  $125^\circ \text{C}$ . Occurrence: Plants, especially seeds.

(2) **Cholesterol.**—Crystalline form, quadrilateral, with character-

<sup>1</sup> Page 89.

<sup>2</sup> Page 355.

istic notched edges.<sup>1</sup> Acetate crystals melt at 114° C. Occurrence: Animal structures, like gall-stones (whence the name, Greek *chole*, bile; *stereos*, solid); in nervous tissue and in rapidly growing cells. Occurs in fairly constant concentration in normal human blood (150 mgs. per 100 mls. whole blood), increasing in pregnancy and in some diseases. Present in diabetes and in atheromatous arteries in arteriosclerosis. Soluble in bile-salts solutions and hence in bile. Exists as such, or as esters in the fat of wool, hence the water-repellant action of such materials as Harris tweed, from which the lanolin has not been removed; the lanolin of the pharmacist, etc. Dissolved by fat, it serves in the latter case as a medium for dispensing mercury, etc., in ointments.<sup>2</sup> Separable from the esters by making a digitonin-cholesterid<sup>3</sup> in which the esters are insoluble. The sterols, especially cholesterol, have been associated with the curative factors in rickets.<sup>4</sup> It is not known what especial chemical configuration is responsible for the favorable action in the treatment of this disease.

(3) **Koprosterol.**<sup>5</sup>—Cholesterol-like substances of the feces, probably formed from cholesterol by reduction. Melting-point of the crystals, 95° C.

EXERCISE 9.—Grind up a portion of a gall-stone in a mortar and dissolve the mass in a mixture of ethanol (“absolute”) and ethyl ether. Filter. Transfer the filtrate to a small beaker and evaporate the solvent on the water-bath. The residue contains practically pure cholesterol. Transfer some of the material to a microscope slide and examine under the microscope for squarish crystals with characteristically notched edges, the whole resembling a number of microscope cover-glasses piled upon one another with some of the corners broken away.

EXERCISE 10.—*Tests for the Presence of Cholesterol.*—Salkowski's test<sup>6</sup>: Dissolve a small amount of cholesterol crystals in 2 mls. of chloroform in a test-tube. Add one volume of concentrated sul-

<sup>1</sup> The form of cholesterol crystal described is the one commonly found, but this is formed under the stress of surface tension. Since this is the characteristic form obtained except under special methods of procedure, it alone is described here.

<sup>2</sup> Paraffin-oil may be used, but lanolin prevents the tissues from becoming dry.

<sup>3</sup> Digitonin from digitalis, used to treat broken compensation in the heart.

<sup>4</sup> Page 548.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *kopros*, dung, *stereos*, solid.

<sup>6</sup> Salkowski, E., Berlin chemist, eminent in biochemistry.

phuric acid. Let stand and note the colored layer of chloroform floating on the acid solution. Pour into an evaporating dish. A variety of colors will appear. Transfer a small portion back to a test-tube and add one-half volume of water. Note that the color disappears. Add one-half volume of concentrated sulphuric acid and note the return of the color. Add a portion of glacial acetic acid and note the reddish color imparted. The reaction is due to the condensation of the aromatic ring by the sulphuric acid to form colored substances.<sup>1</sup> The reaction may be produced by using glycerol, which gives a more characteristic color: The chloroform extract of cholesterol is treated with a drop or two of glycerol and this solution is layered with sulphuric acid; a pink to magenta color is developed.<sup>2</sup>

Liebermann's<sup>3</sup> reaction: The principle of this test is the acetylation of cholesterol<sup>4</sup> by means of acetic anhydrid and then condensation to the colored substance of the preceding reaction. Procedure: Place a few crystals of cholesterol in a dry test-tube and add 3 mls. of chloroform. To this solution add about 10 drops of acetic anhydrid,

$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{C}=\text{O} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{O} \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH}_3\text{C}=\text{O} \end{array}$ , and drop into the mixture, one by one, about 3

drops of concentrated sulphuric acid. Mix the solution thoroughly and a deep blue color will develop.

**Chemical Characteristics of Cholesterol.**—Cholesterol is a cyclic terpene or, more definitely, member of the phenanthrenes:



Phenanthrene.

<sup>1</sup> Page 165.

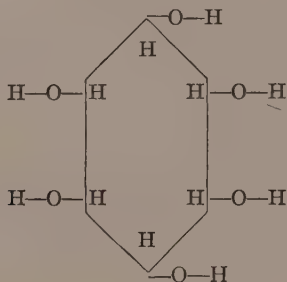
<sup>2</sup> Read, B. E., and Meleney, F. L., Cholesterol: Its Occurrence in Two Thyroid Cysts; a Modification of the Salkowski Test, China Medical Journal, March-April, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Liebermann, A., Austro-Hungarian physician.

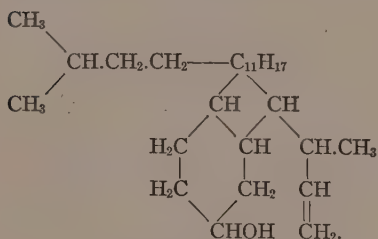
<sup>4</sup> The acetylation is done by way of the secondary alcohol radicle; see formula, page 212.



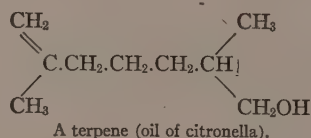
A group found in coal-tar and similar compounds and radicles occurs in plants of rather wide distribution. To this group the general term Cycloses was given by Lippmann.<sup>1</sup> One of the most common of these aromatic compounds is inosite which has the same empirical formula as glucose, but is entirely different in composition, being a tri-hydroxy-benzene:



In the animal kingdom it occurs in heart tissue and in brain; in the plant kingdom, in legumes like peas and beans, before germination. Cholesterol is associated in plants with such members of the aromatic series as we have mentioned. Its chemistry is not entirely clear, but the following formula represents fairly accurately the modern concept of the molecule:



Windaus' formula for cholesterol.



The formula of a well-known terpene is shown to the right of that of cholesterol.

The characteristic features of the cholesterol formula are:

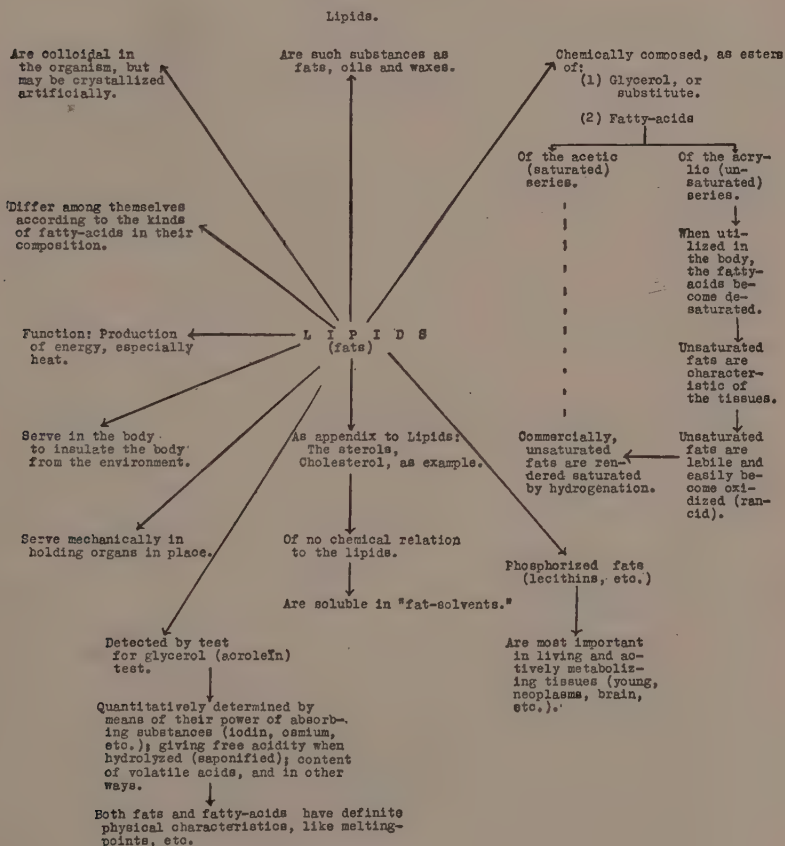
- (1) The terpene configuration.
- (2) The unsaturated group,  $\text{CH}_2$ , terminating the right-hand portion of the incomplete aromatic ring; this is a common characteristic of terpenes (compare citronella).

<sup>1</sup> Lippmann, A., German chemist.

(3) The secondary alcohol group, HCOH, which is acetylated in the Liebermann reaction given above (page 211). This secondary alcohol radicle is responsible for calling cholesterol an alcohol.

The meaning of the group  $C_{11}H_{17}$  is unknown. Bloor believes that much of the digested fat, especially the unsaturated fatty acids, is carried through the blood-stream as cholesterol esters, the esterification being accomplished by way of the secondary alcohol. Other than this and the rôle of cholesterol in the matter of photic effects, mentioned above (page 210), nothing is known concerning the participation of cholesterol in the economy of the body. Indeed, until recently cholesterol has been considered as a by-product and as something for the body to eliminate as best it can. The possibility that cholesterol

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



and its esters, passing through the blood of the skin may act as a transmission mechanism for photic energy to become carried internally, is interesting and perhaps of far-reaching importance.<sup>1</sup>

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bang, I. Article *Chemie der Zell-Lipoide*; in Ascher-Spiro's *Ergebnisse der Physiologie*, vol. 6, p. 131, 1907.
- Bloor, W. R. Articles in the *Journal of Biological Chemistry* for the years 1915 to date. These articles should be read by students.
- Euler, H. *Pflanzenbiochemie*, 2 vols. Obtainable through B. Login & Son, New York, N. Y.
- Gardner, J. A. Article on Steroles in Allen, *Commercial Organic Analysis*, vol. 2, p. 479, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1910.
- Koch, W. Articles in *Zeitschr. f. physiologische Chem.*, for the years 1902 and later.
- Leathes, J. B. *The Fats*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 2d. ed., 1923.
- Levene, P. A. Articles in the *Jour. Biol. Chem.* for the years 1912 and later.
- Macleay, H. *Lecithin and Allied Substances*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1918.
- Posner, E. R., and Gies, W. J. *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 1, p. 59, 1905.
- Robertson, T. B., and Burnett, T. C. The influence of Lecithin and Cholesterin Upon the Growth of Tumors, *Jour. Exp. Med.*, vol. 17, p. 344, 1913.
- Rosenheim, O. Articles in the *Biochemical Jour.*, 1913 and later.
- Thudicum, J. L. W. *The Chemical Constitution of the Brain*, London, Baillière, Tindall & Cox, 1884 (to be found only in certain libraries).

<sup>1</sup>Page 548.

## CHAPTER VI

### STRUCTURE-PRODUCING SUBSTANCES: PROTIDS

"Proteins are very much the same. Yet each animal and plant is different. Some constituent is evidently placed in a different position and the general mixture is open to all sorts of variations."—*Plimmer*.<sup>1</sup>

**Nitrogenous Compounds.**—In the preceding chapters we have discussed substances which have the elements carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen.<sup>2</sup> We shall now consider compounds which contain these three elements and an additional one, nitrogen. These substances are the protids,<sup>3</sup> so called because they are regarded as fundamental in the composition of protoplasm. It is still a question what relation exists between protids and the life processes, but this much is certain: The substratum of vital activities everywhere contains protids.

**The Chemical Structure of "Protoplasm."**<sup>4</sup>—Protids as well as glucids and lipids have bonds which serve to link them all together into a protoplasmic unit. There are theoretical reasons based on laboratory experience, however, to weigh against this view; these reasons will be discussed later.<sup>5</sup> The term "protoplasm" has no significance in chemical physiology, but serves simply as a descriptive expression for that material accompaniment of life, or, as Huxley expressed it, "The Physical Basis of Life." It is colloidal in nature and chemical analyses show that it has a variable constitution, as might be expected from a mixture of different substances. Nevertheless, some physiologists have believed that protoplasm is composed of one large molecule, known as a "biophore," "biogen,"<sup>6</sup> etc., which is very labile, that is, it readily undergoes change. The modern conception of protoplasm is virtually that of Hofmeister,<sup>7</sup> namely, that

<sup>1</sup> Plimmer, R. H. A., Professor of Biochemistry, St. Thomas Hospital, London. See *Practical Organic, and Biochemistry*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1923.

<sup>2</sup> With the exception of the nitrogenous portions of the lipids, page 207.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *protos*, first. Named proteins by Mulder; see Mendel, L. B., *Nutrition* (cited on page 582), pp. 15, 16.

<sup>4</sup> Von Mohl called the slimy material found in living substances *protoplasm*, which was named *sarcode* (Greek *sarx*) by the French savant, Dujardin.

<sup>5</sup> Page 278.

<sup>6</sup> Greek *bios*, life, *phore*, carry. Greek *bios*, life, *gen*, produce.

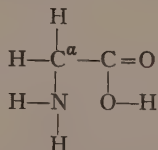
<sup>7</sup> Hofmeister, F., German physiologist and biochemist, founder of important biochemical journals, professor at Strassbourg. See Hofmeister, F., *Die chemische Organisation der Zelle*, Braunschweig (Brunswick), 1901.

the cell is a little laboratory where various chemical reactions take place, the reactions confined to some distinct part of the cell by means of its physical structure. It has been pointed out by Hopkins<sup>1</sup> that the place of essential action of vital activities of the cell is at the great interface, the nuclear membrane which separates the nuclear plasma from the cytoplasm.<sup>2</sup> The peculiar reactions in colloidal solutions take place at the interfaces and not in the interior of the particles, and probably vital functions are similar. In fact, this organization of the unit of living matter into cells, etc., is one of the great characteristics of life, wherever found.

### CHEMICAL STRUCTURE OF PROTIDS

If we select protid from several sources, such as meat, cheese, or beans, and subject it to chemical analysis, it is found that the chemical structure is similar, regardless of the source. In our study of the glucids we found that the higher and more complex compounds are capable of being built up of simple sugars, like glucose. In our discussion of the fats a similar construction was pointed out, fatty acids and higher alcohols being combined to form the more complex fats. Now in the protids we have a repetition of this building up of complex substances from simpler ones. The chemical principles involved in analyses and syntheses are similar in all three instances, for synthesis involves the abstraction of water, while analysis, or breaking down, is a matter of furnishing water for the process of hydrolysis.

**Amino-acids: the End-product of the Protids.**—The nitrogen of the protid exists in the form of ammonia incorporated into a fatty acid. This ammonia radicle  $\text{NH}_2$ , known as the amino-group, enters the fatty acid in the alpha position, that is, on the carbon atom preceding the carboxyl. Alpha-amino-acetic acid, the simplest of the amino-acids and derived from acetic acid, illustrates this point:



Alpha-amino-acetic acid or glycine.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hopkins, F. G., Professor of Biochemistry, Cambridge, England.

<sup>2</sup> The protoplasm outside the nucleus (Fig. 49).

<sup>3</sup> Also called glycocoll. The alpha carbon is shown at  $\alpha$ .

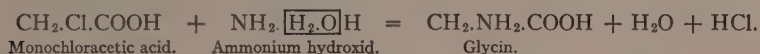


All the amino-acids which enter into the composition of protids are alpha-amino-acids.<sup>1</sup> Beta-amino-acids are unstable and do not enter into the composition of protids and gamma- and delta-amino-acids never form a part of the protid, although they may be found in connection with living activities, as in the fermentation of muscle, gelatin, etc., in which they are derived from  $\alpha$ -amino-acids.

**The Structure of the Amino-acids.**—One of the hydrogens of the

methyl group,  $\text{H}-\overset{\text{H}}{\underset{\text{H}}{\text{C}}}-$ , in a fatty acid may be replaced by one of a

number of atoms, radicles, etc., such as an halogen atom, an hydroxyl, an alkyl group,<sup>2</sup> or by ammonia in the form of the radicle  $\text{NH}_2$ , in which case an amino-acid is formed. The introduction of ammonia into a fatty acid is easily accomplished in the laboratory by heating monohalogen fatty acids, like monochloroacetic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl.COOH}$ , with ammonia; the ammonia replaces the halogen, chlorin, to form glycine, the substance mentioned above:



Other radicles, like the benzene and other rings, may be incorporated into amino-acids, but none of these affects the position of the amino-group.

**Protids of Blood.**—The protids of the blood may be used as practical examples. They are useful in the diagnosis and differentiation of certain diseases. Interesting theoretical considerations concerning them also arise. For example, under certain pathological conditions protids appear in the urine. What is their origin? Are they derived from the blood?

**Preparation of Blood-serum for Study.**—The clear, yellowish liquid exuding from a bleeding wound after clotting has taken place is blood-serum. Quantities of blood may be obtained from slaughter-houses and if such blood be placed in tall cylinders and permitted to clot, the serum will collect at the top of the blood column, the clot being withdrawn downward by gravity. This serum is pipetted out and diluted with distilled water, one part of serum to nine portions of water. Note that some of the constituents of the serum are precipi-

<sup>1</sup> The possibility of  $\beta$ -alanin is discussed on page 367.

<sup>2</sup> Like methyl, ethyl, etc.

tated; these constitute the globulin fraction, the albumin<sup>1</sup> remaining in the filtrate from the diluted serum. The diluted serum must be filtered, both portions being saved.

EXERCISE 1. *The Characteristics of the Globulin Fraction.*—To 5 mls. of the filtrate, mentioned above, which contains dissolved globulin,<sup>2</sup> add 5 mls. of a saturated solution of ammonium sulphate<sup>3</sup> and let stand for ten minutes. Note the additional precipitate of globulin. Filter this off, washing once with 5 mls. of distilled water and save both fractions. Proceed, now, to the study of the globulin. Scrape a small amount from the filter-paper and suspend it in distilled water in a test-tube. Note whether it goes into solution or not.<sup>4</sup> If it does not go into solution, add, drop by drop, some of the ammonium sulphate solution, shaking the tube after each addition of the salt solution and noting when the globulin begins to dissolve. Globulin is insoluble in distilled water, but soluble in dilute salt solutions. It is insoluble in half-saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. Try the effect of adding crystals of magnesium sulphate to a solution of globulin in a dilute salt solution (NaCl). Note that blood-serum is insoluble in fully saturated solution of magnesium sulphate,  $\text{MgSO}_4$ .<sup>5</sup> By adding saturated solution of sodium chlorid<sup>6</sup> to a suspension of globulin in distilled water, pseudo-globulin is dissolved, which may be again precipitated with half-saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. Globulin prepared by simple precipitation as in the first part of the exercise, is called true, or euglobulin, to distinguish it from the pseudo-globulin which is soluble in distilled water and also in concentrated (saturated) sodium chlorid solution. Pseudo-globulin is probably a protected colloid,<sup>7</sup> lecithin or cholesterol being the protective agent. The toxicity of stronger solutions of sodium chlorid is due to the physical rather than to chemical actions, namely, alterations of the water content of the colloidal protid.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Note the spelling; the term ending in *-en* is synonymous with protid, but the term "albumin" is the technical one for water-soluble protid described above.

<sup>2</sup> Only a part of the globulin is precipitated from distilled water. There is enough salt adhering to the protid to keep some globulin in solution.

<sup>3</sup> At room temperature, 80 gs. solid, crystalline  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  to 100 mls. of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

<sup>4</sup> If it does, there is sufficient ammonium sulphate adhering to cause it to do so, in which case wash the original globulin on the filter-paper more thoroughly with distilled water.

<sup>5</sup> 102 gs.  $\text{MgSO}_4$  to 100 mls. distilled water.

<sup>6</sup> 36 gs. NaCl per 100 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

<sup>7</sup> Page 122.

<sup>8</sup> Page 122.

**EXERCISE 2. Coagulation of Globulin.**—(1) By heat: Transfer 5 mls. of a solution of globulin in 1 : 10 NaCl solution to a test-tube and acidify with a drop of glacial acetic acid. Place the tube so that the bottom is about 1 cm. above the tip of the flame of a micro-burner and watch carefully for evidences of coagulation. Repeat, omitting the addition of acid. Free hydrogen ions (acidity) are necessary for heat coagulation. See next Exercise for evidence that an electrolyte is necessary also.

(2) By alcohol: To 5 mls. of the solution made as directed in the previous section, add 95 per cent. ethanol, drop by drop, until a cloudiness is visible in the solution of globulin, agitating the tube as the additions are made. Now filter off the precipitate, wash with distilled water, and scrape some of the solid from the paper. Transfer the scrapings to a test-tube containing 1 : 10 NaCl solution and determine whether they go into solution. The brief contact with alcohol causes precipitation. Repeat this experiment, but leave the protid in contact with the alcohol over night and then test for solubility as before. The prolonged exposure of protid to alcohol causes irreversible coagulation.

**EXERCISE 3. Globulin by Dialysis.**—See page 102 for the method of procedure for dialysis of a protid. Using the suspension of globulin obtained by half-saturating the diluted blood-serum with ammonium sulphate, dialyze it against running tap-water over night, or until the following period. Collect some of the globulin thus prepared and test its solubilities. Test its ability to undergo coagulation, referring to the previous Exercise; for coagulation requires not only acid reaction but also the presence of an electrolyte, such as an inorganic salt.

In cooking eggs salt is added unless the frying is in bacon grease, when the bacon introduces sufficient salt. The better cooks in poaching eggs also add a drop of weak vinegar (acetic acid) in order that the egg-white may be coagulated evenly and not become toughened around the edges.

**Practical Applications.**—In the diagnosis of renal disease (nephritis), it is necessary to differentiate between two principal types of lesion: Interstitial and parenchymatous nephritis. The former involves a retention of various blood constituents; the latter is characterized by the loss from the blood of protid which passes

off in the urine. Robertson,<sup>1</sup> found that in interstitial nephritis globulin accumulated in the blood to the extent of 25–50 per cent. of the total protid (albumin and globulin), the average normal ratio being from 16–35 per cent. of the total protid. In chronic parenchymatous nephritis, although the total protid is greatly reduced in the blood and increases in the urine, the globulin is greatly increased in the blood:

	Total protid per cent.	Globulin per cent.
Normal.....	7.4 gs.	37.0 gs.
Chronic interstitial nephritis.....	6.7 "	35.7 "
Chronic parenchymatous nephritis.....	3.9 "	89.22 "

Robertson devised a method for estimating the various portions of the protid of blood by refractometry, which requires only about 1 ml. of serum for a determination. The importance of diagnosis of a particular form of nephritis is evident when we consider that the method of treatment, feeding, etc., is quite different for the two forms of the disease. Besides nephritis, other diseases exhibit differences in the ratio of globulin to total protid and to albumin, infections and toxemias causing a typical rise in the proportion of globulin. The globulin content of spinal fluid is a reliable diagnostic agent. Again it has been shown that a relation exists between the globulin content of the blood and the age of the animal. Howe<sup>3</sup> found that the newborn calf before beginning to feed from the mother lacked globulin in the blood, but that after the colostrum<sup>4</sup> had been taken in during the first feeding from the mother's teats, the globulin ratio rapidly rose. Quite interesting is the correlation between colostrum and immunity from infection in calves, those receiving colostrum being much less susceptible to infections than those from which colostrum was withheld.<sup>5</sup> However, for the human infant this relation does not seem to hold<sup>6</sup> as definitely as for the calf.

<sup>1</sup> Robertson, T. B., Professor of Biochemistry, Adelaide, South Australia. See *Principles of Biochemistry* (citation, page 191), p. 339.

<sup>2</sup> After Epstein, A. A., Mount Sinai Hospital, New York. See article, *Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.*, vol. 154, p. 638, 1917.

<sup>3</sup> Howe, P. E., U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 49, p. 115, 1921.

<sup>4</sup> Page 414.

<sup>5</sup> Smith, T., Director of the Rockefeller Institute Department of Animal Pathology, Princeton, New Jersey. See *Jour. Exp. Med.*, vol. 36, p. 181, 1922.

<sup>6</sup> See Kuttner, A., and Ratner, B., *Amer. Jour. Diseases of Children*, vol. 25, p. 413, 1923.



It is interesting, likewise, that ultraviolet light of 2900 Å is capable of converting albumin into globulin; such a factor may be responsible for the curative effect of such light in tuberculosis and other diseases. Globulins differ from albumins in the fact that they are incapable of undergoing crystallization.

EXERCISE 4. *The Characteristics of the Albumin Fraction.*—Using the filtrate saved from the first filtration of blood-serum,<sup>1</sup> the filtrate being a half-saturated ammonium sulphate solution containing dissolved albumin, add solid ammonium sulphate crystals to complete saturation; albumin is precipitated. Filter it from the solution, washing with 2 mls. H<sub>2</sub>O, and use it in the following tests:

EXERCISE 5.—Scrape some from the paper and test its solubility in distilled water, in a 1 : 10 NaCl solution and dialyze some against distilled water. Does it dialyze? Can you recover albumin as you did globulin by dialysis? Can you cause heat coagulation of albumin as you did globulin? Aside from solubility, the reactions of albumin and of globulin are similar.

EXERCISE 6.—Precipitate the globulin from about 25 mls. of serum diluted 1 : 10 with distilled water, filter, and then determine whether you can precipitate the albumin by (1) Saturating the filtrate with solid magnesium sulphate, or (2) by adding one volume of saturated ammonium sulphate to one of the filtrate. Repeat (2), using (a) Filtrate which has had a drop of 10 per cent. NaOH solution added to it, and (b) filtrate which has had a drop of decinormal sulphuric acid added to it. Neither saturated MgSO<sub>4</sub> nor half-saturated (NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> in neutral or in alkaline reaction causes precipitation of albumin, but precipitation occurs in acid medium.

EXERCISE 7. *The Temperature of Coagulation of Serum Protids.*—Make a dilution of serum 1 : 10 and filter. Add a drop of 1 : 10 HCl. Draw out a small bulb upon a glass tube, permit the tube to cool, and then suck the diluted filtrate into the bulb.<sup>2</sup> Break the tubing from the upper part of the bulb at a distance of about 2 cms. and seal the end in a low flame. Permit the glass to cool in an inverted position,

<sup>1</sup> Page 218.

<sup>2</sup> Figure 214.



invert the bulb, and, after the liquid has drained from the extension of the bulb, seal it as you did the upper end. Let the tube cool before re-inverting it. Now attach the bulb containing the filtrate to the bulb of a thermometer by means of two narrow rings of rubber tubing. Lower the thermometer into a beaker of water and fasten the thermometer in position by means of a ring-stand and clamp. Place this beaker in a second one containing enough water to become level with that in the first beaker. Place the larger beaker on a wire gauze over a small flame and carefully determine the point at which coagulation of the serum protids occurs as indicated by the developing cloudiness of the solution within the bulb. If bubbles on the surface of the beakers interfere with observations of the bulb, remove the bubbles by means of a rubber-tipped glass rod, commonly called a "police-man."

It will be found that a 10 per cent. solution of serum is coagulated by heat at  $75 \pm 5^\circ \text{C}$ . Egg-white coagulates at a lower temperature—about  $62^\circ \text{C}$ .

Serum protid resembles egg-white in responding to various electrolytes in different ways when undergoing coagulation, depending upon electrochemical relations. If protid is in an acid medium, it becomes electropositive as explained on page 103; the protid behaves as a cation and makes salts of the nature of protid-chlorid. The anion is the effective agent in producing precipitation, and it is the valence of the anion, not the kind that is effective.<sup>1</sup> Monovalent ions, like  $\text{Cl}^-$ , are less effective than bivalent anions, like  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$ . The reason why protids are precipitated to a greater extent by bivalent and polyvalent ions than by monovalent is because the monovalent ion permits water absorption by the protid; this supports the protid in suspension. On the other hand, polyvalent ions, like  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{\equiv}$ , give a smaller number of ions to the protid; the chlorion requires one protid cation to unite with it, the sulphion two, and the phosphion three. Hence it will require one-third as much  $\text{PO}_4^{\equiv}$  to cause precipitation as  $\text{Cl}^-$ .

*Clinical Application.*—Determination of the time necessary for the blood of a patient to clot spontaneously is a routine procedure in

<sup>1</sup> The reader may encounter the so-called "Hofmeister Series" of anions arranged according to their supposed effect. Loeb showed that if the reaction of the solution of protid is not permitted to change, all anions of a given valence work alike. See Loeb, citation, p. 138.

hospital work because of its influence on surgery. Fibrinogen is a globulin-like protid in the blood which becomes converted into fibrin under special conditions.<sup>1</sup> Two chief methods for the determination of blood-clotting time are in use:

(1) *The Method of Howell*<sup>2</sup>: Draw 5 mls. of blood as directed on page 63, but without the use of any anticoagulant or preservative. Transfer to a clean test-tube and determine the time necessary for a clot to form, so that the tube can be inverted without causing any flow of blood. The average time by this method is five minutes.

(2) *Method of Wright*<sup>3</sup>: Draw out, from a 2 mm. glass tube with heavy walls, capillary tubes about 2.5 cms. long. Cool and draw up into them blood freshly drawn as described in (1). Make the tubes into a bundle by means of two rubber bands, one broad enough to close the ends of the tubes as the band is passed around them lengthwise. Drop the bundle into a water-bath at the constant temperature of 37° C. (blood temperature). At the end of one, two, three, four, and five minutes withdraw a tube and determine whether the blood has coagulated within it by attempting to blow through it. The average normal coagulation time by this method is 3.5 to four minutes. In certain physiological states, like hunger, hemorrhage, transfusion, etc., the clotting time is diminished. In pathological cases of "bleeders" (hemophilia), ordinary obstructive jaundice, asphyxia, snake-bite, and in certain hepatic disorders the clotting time is increased; the blood of the congenital<sup>4</sup> hemophilic coagulates only after fifteen minutes.

**Methods of Precipitating Protid from Solution.**—These may be divided into the following groups: (1) Methods involving the use of salts of the heavy metals—lead, mercury, iron, etc.; and (2) those involving the use of "alkaloidal reagents."

(1) *Methods Involving Use of the Salts of the Heavy Metals:*

EXERCISE 8.—Lead acetate,  $\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_3\text{COO} \\ \text{ } \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COO} \end{matrix} \text{Pb}$ , and a mixture of lead

<sup>1</sup> Page 313.

<sup>2</sup> Howell, W. H., Director of the School of Hygiene and Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, formerly Professor of Physiology in the Medical School and author of the well-known text-book, *Text-book of Physiology*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1924, 9th ed.

<sup>3</sup> Wright, A. E., English physician and bacteriologist. See *Technic of the Blood-test and Capillary Glass Tube*, London, Constable, 1921.

<sup>4</sup> From birth.

acetates formed by boiling litharge,  $\text{PbO}$ , with lead acetate<sup>1</sup> are used frequently to precipitate protid from solution. They give white precipitates of protids of the coagulable series, albumin and globulin.

Try the effect of adding a few drops of (1) Lead acetate and (2) "basic lead acetate" to test-tubes containing protid solutions. Filter. The filtrates should remain clear if there has not been added an excess of acetate. For the preparation of clear filtrates for polariscopic work<sup>2</sup> lead acetate is used to advantage, but basic lead acetate should not be used in this case.

EXERCISE 8a.—Mercuric chlorid,  $\text{HgCl}_2$ , precipitates protids in neutral, aqueous solutions. Repeat the foregoing Exercise, using a drop or two of a solution of mercuric chlorid. Before filtering add some saturated solution of sodium chlorid or some solid crystals of this salt. The precipitate dissolves because sodium is more active, chemically, than mercury.<sup>3</sup> Add dilute hydrochloric acid; the precipitate reappears. Precipitation with mercury proceeds best in a slightly alkaline reaction, when the protid is electronegative;  $\text{Hg}^{\equiv}$  then unites with the negatively charged protid-anion.

The antiseptic use of mercury ("corrosive sublimate") is due to the precipitating action of the salt upon the protids of bacteria. Its action is slow, and for this reason  $\text{HgCl}_2$  has given place to other antiseptics for certain purposes. In mercuric chlorid poisoning death ensues if the mercury compound is permitted to reach the kidney in sufficient amount to damage that organ severely. Anuria<sup>4</sup> and retention<sup>5</sup> ensue.

EXERCISE 9.—Add to a solution of albumin ferric chlorid solution (5 per cent.) drop by drop. Note the precipitate. Continue adding iron solution; note that the precipitate disappears. Protid is soluble in excess of ferric chlorid solution.

<sup>1</sup> This mixture is known as "basic lead acetate."

<sup>2</sup> Page 182.

<sup>3</sup> Mercury has a tendency to gain electrons and to become metallic mercury.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *a*, privative, meaning without, and *ouria*, urine. In a case in Jefferson Hospital only 4 mls. of urine were passed in seven days.

<sup>5</sup> This term signifies that substances like phosphates, chlorids, and nitrogenous substances do not pass through the kidney, but are retained in the blood-stream. In the case just mentioned the normal amount of nitrogen (25 mgs. per 100 mls. blood) rose to 200 mgs.

EXERCISE 10.—Cupric sulphate precipitates protid, the color of the precipitate being characteristic; it is bluish violet, which is the basis of the chief color reaction of all true protids.<sup>1</sup> The copper-protid compound dissolves in a 10 per cent. solution of NaOH, giving a violet color which is intensified on standing.

The toxicity of copper compounds obtained in cooking vegetables in copper vessels is due to the precipitating action of the copper substances upon the protids of the alimentary tract and perhaps also of the kidney.

Cupric sulphate is used to kill plants which grow in swimming-pools and reservoirs and it is efficacious in killing bacteria.

Aluminium, in the form of alums, exerts a double effect upon protids: The compounds are frequently in a colloidal state and precipitate protids. This property is utilized in water purification; the protids contained in the water are precipitated as the water comes into contact with lumps of alum and is deposited in precipitation tanks, the supernatant water being free from such contaminations. The second action of aluminium compounds is an astringent action, by virtue of chemical reactions between the aluminium and the protids. Certain baking powders contain aluminium carbonate, or substances capable of forming this compound, which is hydrolyzed to the hydroxid:



The  $\text{CO}_2$  causes the formation of gas spaces through the dough, thus "lightening" or leavening it. The hydroxid,  $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$ , is insoluble even in hot water and hence it is a source of danger to the body tissues. Alum is used in the "styptic sticks,"<sup>2</sup> employed by hair dressers to inhibit the bleeding of wounds.

(2) *Methods Involving the Use of "Alkaloidal Reagents."*—These substances (picric acid, etc.) have long been used for precipitating "alkaloids," basic substances like nicotine of the pyridin group; cocaine of the tropane group; quinine of the quinoline group, and morphine of the iso-quinoline group. These alkaloidal reagents give negative ions and precipitate the basic, positively charged alkaloids, as

<sup>1</sup> Page 281.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *stupho*, contract; compare the word "stop." The use of the styptic stick has been forbidden by law, since the antiseptic action of these preparations is not high enough to insure that infection is not transmitted from customer to customer.



well as protid in electro-positive condition, as in acid medium. The alkaloidal reagents are presented in practical form here:

EXERCISE 11.—Acidify a protid solution with a few drops of glacial acetic acid and add a drop or two of 5 per cent. solution of potassium ferrocyanid,  $K_4Fe(CN)_6$ . Hydroferrocyanide,  $H_3Fe(CN)_6$  is formed, which precipitates the positively charged protid as a whitish substance. A blue color may be imparted to this precipitate and to the solution by boiling the preparation, which causes the decomposition and oxidation of some of the ferrocyanid to form Turnbull's blue,  $Fe_3[Fe(CN)_6]_2$ .

EXERCISE 12.—Acidify 5 mls. of a protid solution with a drop of dilute acetic acid and then add a few drops of saturated picric acid (2 per cent.). The precipitate is yellow.

EXERCISE 13. *Esbach's<sup>1</sup> Reagent*.—This is a modification of the preceding reagent. Citric acid is added to a 1 per cent. solution of picric acid in the same amount (1 per cent.). To a protid solution add one-half its volume of Esbach's solution<sup>2</sup>; the precipitate is yellow as before.

Quantitative determination of protid by Esbach's method: Obtain an Esbach tube (Fig. 212) which resembles a test-tube, but has graduations in tenths of per cent. and also two marks, "U" and "R," signifying the level to which the protid solution<sup>3</sup> is filled and the "R," the level to which the reagent is added. Using a protid solution, fill to the mark "U" and add the reagent to the mark "R." Insert the rubber stopper accompanying the tube and invert it to permit mixing of the two solutions. Let the tube stand until the next period, or over night. Read the upper level of the precipitate as parts per liter or tenths of per cent. coagulated protid.

EXERCISE 14.—To a protid solution add tri-chlor-acetic acid,  $CCl_3COOH$ , 5 per cent. solution. The precipitate is whitish. This is a valuable method for causing the precipitation of protid.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Esbach, C. H., French physician, Paris, 1843. See Chapter XV.

<sup>2</sup> The composition of the reagent is given in Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> The tube was designed for urinary analysis and the "U" refers to urine.

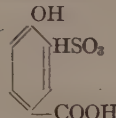
<sup>4</sup> The method of Quick (Chapter XV) utilizes this reagent.



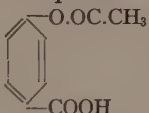
EXERCISE 15.—To a protid solution add a few drops of dilute HCl solution and then some tannic acid, best in the form of Almén's solution<sup>1</sup> an acid-alcohol preparation. Note the precipitate.

EXERCISE 16.—To a protid solution add a few drops of fresh 25 per cent. solution of meta-phosphoric<sup>2</sup> acid. White precipitate. An old solution of this reagent is composed chiefly of phosphoric acid that is incapable of precipitating protid.<sup>3</sup>

EXERCISE 17.—To a protid solution add a few drops of one-twelfth normal sulphuric acid solution and then of a 10 per cent. solution of sodium tungstate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Note the precipitate of white protid. For the application of this precipitant see Chap. XVI.

EXERCISE 18.—To a protid solution add some dry sulphosalicylic acid, ; the precipitate is white.

Other salicylates cause the precipitation of protid. Examples are salicyclic acid, used in preserving fruits and vegetables; aspirin,

acetyl-salicylic acid, , an analgesic<sup>4</sup> used in medicine

since 1899 for the purpose of lowering temperature in fever. Its first use was founded upon an error, for it was supposed that it acted as an antiseptic without the irritating effects of antiseptics of similar potency, like benzoic acid, etc. Hanzlik,<sup>5</sup> however, found

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

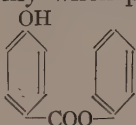
<sup>2</sup> The difference between the three kinds of phosphoric acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) is the degree of hydration. Metaphosphoric acid may be considered to be  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5 + \text{H}_2\text{O} = 2\text{HPO}_3$ ; the ion is  $\text{PO}_3^-$ . See p. 43.

<sup>3</sup> For an account of an intensive study of protid precipitants, see Van Slyke, D. D., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 53, p. 253, 1922.

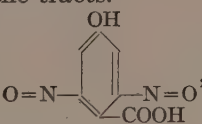
<sup>4</sup> Greek *ana*, against; *algos*, pain. Compounds like these were formerly known as antipyretics (Greek *anti*, against, *pyr*, fire). The function of such substances is to lower body temperature, but since the action is due to the effect upon the blood-vessels of the skin, which become dilated, thus bringing blood to the surface, and increasing perspiration, which cools the body, the former term is preferable, for analgesics do not affect the heat mechanism directly; the effect is on the heat-dissipating mechanism, evaporation.

<sup>5</sup> Hanzlik, P. J., Pharmacologist, Stanford University, San Francisco, California.

that its toxicity is distinct, while the antiseptic action is limited as used. It should be employed only when prescribed by a physician.

Salol, or phenyl-salicylate, , was introduced as an

intestinal antiseptic in diseases of the lower alimentary tract, it being supposed to pass through the stomach unchanged, but to be decomposed in the intestinal alkalinity into phenol, which gave the antiseptic action. However, the toxicity is high, owing to the ready absorption of the phenol by the walls of the intestine, leading to necrosis and extensive irritation of the tracts.

Di-nitro-salicylic acid, , is used by Sumner<sup>1</sup> to

precipitate protids in certain reactions.

### THE HYDROLYSIS OF PROTIDS

EXERCISE 19.—To 25 mls. of protid solution add 250 mls. of 4 : 1000 solution of hydrochloric acid. Stopper with cotton wool and leave for twenty-four hours or until the next period. Make another preparation, using 1 : 1000 solution of NaOH in place of the acid. Leave as in the case of the acid preparation. Proceed with the study of the metaprotids.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE 20.—Acid albuminate. Using 25 mls. of the HCl-treated solution, add 2 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  to neutralization with litmus and note the flocculent precipitate of acid albuminate. If one desire maximum yield, the iso-electric point<sup>3</sup> must be established ( $p\text{H}$  4.7–5.4). Filter through glass-wool. Suspend the residue in the wool in 25 mls. of distilled water and use this preparation for the following studies:

EXERCISE 21.—To 3 mls. of the suspension, add, drop by drop, 4 : 1000 HCl solution; note that the precipitate dissolves after the ad-

<sup>1</sup> Sumner, J. B., see pages 24 and Chapter XV.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *meta*, next after, that is, a change; hence changed protids (changed by acid, etc.).

<sup>3</sup> Page 105.

dition of a small amount of the acid solution. Now neutralize the fluid containing the dissolved precipitate of metaprotid, using 1 : 1000 solution of  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ . The precipitate reappears.

EXERCISE 22.—Prove that metaprotid is soluble in excess of acid solution by adding to 3 mls. of the metaprotid suspension, concentrated  $\text{HCl}$ , drop by drop. This is the basis of the caution necessary in the acid (Heller's) test for protid in urine.<sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE 23.—Prove that an acid solution of metaprotid does not undergo heat coagulation.

EXERCISE 24.—Prove that an acid solution of metaprotid may be neutralized and alkali albuminate precipitated, the precipitate being soluble in excess of alkali.

EXERCISE 25.—Boil 3 mls. of the protid solution; a coagulum appears which is insoluble in acid solution. Metaprotid may be coagulated when in the form of a suspension of neutralized acid or alkali albuminate.

EXERCISE 26.—Prove that an acid solution of metaprotid can be salted out<sup>2</sup> with half-saturated ammonium sulphate solution, but that metaprotid in suspension cannot be salted out. This is a test for distinguishing globulins from metaprotids.

EXERCISE 27.—“Lieberkuehn's jelly.”<sup>3</sup> Mix 5 mls. of undiluted egg-white with 2 mls. of twice normal solution of sodium hydroxid. Let stand and note the formation of a jelly, which is translucent and soluble in diluted salt solution. Prove that alkali albuminate (Lieberkuehn's jelly) cannot be converted into acid albuminate by adding acid to the jelly. The reason for this is that the protid molecule has been altered by the formation of the jelly; the sulphur of one of the amino-acids, cystin, is lost.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Chapter XVI. Nitric acid is used in this test, but the reaction is the same.

<sup>2</sup> Page 124.

<sup>3</sup> Lieberkuehn, J. N., a German anatomist of the 18th century.

<sup>4</sup> See Hammarsten, O., and Hedin, S. G. (Translated by J. H. Mandel, N. Y. University and Bellevue Medical School.) A Text-book of Physiological Chemistry, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1917, 7th ed.

In the above exercises we have studied the earlier changes which protids undergo when subjected to the influence of acids and alkalis. In all probability even water exerts an effect upon protid, and probably this effect is realized in the behavior of cells like leucocytes, or the freely living ameba. Apparently as the pseudopodia are formed, an alteration occurs in the protoplasm at the exposed portions of the ectoderm, as this part of the cell comes into contact with the water in which the cells are immersed. At least there is a change in the dispersion of the colloidal portions when protid comes into contact with water, or with a salt solution, in which osmotic effects are present.<sup>1</sup>

**Later Products of Hydrolysis.**—We shall now proceed to the study of the later products of hydrolysis which are formed when protid is treated for some time with acid or alkali, or when the temperature is elevated. These late products correspond to the dextrins in glucid hydrolysis and are known as the albumoses, peptones, peptids, and amino-acids, or, collectively as the protidtemns.<sup>2</sup>

**EXERCISE 28.**—Preparation of protidtemns by acid hydrolysis of Hamburger steak: Obtain, from the storeroom, one kilogram<sup>3</sup> of Hamburger steak and suspend it in a pan in sufficient tap-water to cause it to make a hash suitable for experimental work. Carefully bring the temperature of the suspension to exactly 47° C. Strain off the water through scrim, or cheese-cloth, saving both portions. Return the residue of meat to the vessel and transfer the filtrate to a large evaporating dish. Add to the residue tap-water as before and bring the temperature to 56° C. Repeat the straining procedure, combining the filtrates and saving the residue. The third time, bring the water to the boiling-point. You have now obtained two of the protids of muscle, namely, myosin (47° C.) and myogen (56° C.), the former a typical globulin and myogen of the nature of albumin. Cool the combined extract in a refrigerator<sup>4</sup> in order to congeal the fat, which is then lifted off mechanically. Now place one-half the residue from the first part of the experiment in a flask and add 4 : 1000 HCl so-


<sup>1</sup> Protid thus affected is called "denatured." See Wu, H., and Yen, D., Jour. Bioch. (Japan), vol. 4, p. 345, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Protid plus Greek *temno*, to cut; the conception is that these products are cut from the molecule of protid. Similarly, we have lipidtemns and glucidtemns.

<sup>3</sup> Equivalent to 2.2 pounds. In crowded classes this Exercise may be conducted by two students working together.

<sup>4</sup> Or, during the colder weather, out-of-doors.

lution which has been mixed previously with dried pepsin,<sup>1</sup> thus making an artificial digestion mixture similar to gastric juice. Add enough

toluene, , to make a thin layer over the surface of the fluid and

then mix all the contents together. Leave the preparation in a thermostat<sup>2</sup> at 37° C. for one week. In the meantime strain the superfluous liquid from the second half of the residual meat and suspend the residue in tap-water to which have been added 10 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid for each 100 mls. of fluid. Arrange a condenser, preferably of the Hopkin's type<sup>3</sup> of reflex condenser to fit the mouth of a small balloon-flask<sup>4</sup> in which the protid solution may be boiled. Permit the contents to boil as vigorously as possible for several hours.<sup>5</sup> Now prepare to make a study of the contents of the flask.

EXERCISE 29. *Scheme for Analysis of Hydrolyzed Protid.*—Filter. Then: (1) Remove 25 mls. of the acid solution and note carefully how many mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution are necessary to cause neutralization to blue litmus-paper. Measure the total filtrate and add the appropriate amount of 10 per cent. NaOH solution to the whole, less 5 mls. Any metaprotid will be precipitated at this reaction. Filter, using glass-wool if necessary. Residue: Prove that the residue contains metaprotid. Filtrate: Go to (2).

(2) To the filtrate add one volume of saturated ammonium sulphate solution. Filter. Residue: This consists of the protidtemns known as albumoses. Go to (A). Filtrate: This consists of peptones; go to (3).

<sup>1</sup> If pigs' stomachs are available, carefully remove the mucosa and pass it through the coarser grinder of a meat-grinder; cover with glycerol and leave in a cool place. The glycerol absorbs pepsin, which may be used as a glycerol solution.

<sup>2</sup> A thermostat for the purposes of such work may be made by securing two packing boxes, one somewhat larger than the second, into which the smaller box fits. Before placing the smaller box in the larger one make a layer of excelsior or, better, metal wool, upon which the smaller box rests. Then pack wool around the interspaces, leaving the top open to serve as a door. A small opening 20 cms. square may be cut in the top as a door. Then the rest of the top can be covered with the wool and the lid of the larger, outer box, nailed on. Heat may be furnished by a common incandescent lamp, a carbon filament giving more heat. One has the choice of several simple and inexpensive heat controls on the market.

<sup>3</sup> Page 290, Fig. 108.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> If it is necessary to interrupt the procedure, renew the boiling at the next opportunity, until the total number of hours of boiling time has been reached.



(A) Separation of albumoses: Suspend the residue from (2) in 2 volumes of 32 per cent. ethanol; use the proper strength of alcohol. A precipitate appears. Filter. Residue: Heteralbumose fraction. Test solubility in water, dilute acids, alkalis, and salt solutions ( $\text{NaCl}$ );  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ ; it is soluble in all of these. Try heat coagulation. Prove that it may be salted out with half-saturated  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ . Try the effect of adding nitric acid; warm the solution and note that the precipitate dissolves, but on cooling the test-tube under the cold water-tap it reappears. The same reaction is obtained by using potassium ferrocyanid in acetic acid solution.<sup>1</sup> Note that heteralbumoses are precipitated by 5 per cent. solution  $\text{CuSO}_4$ . Filtrate: Protalbumose fraction. Using not over 5 mls. of the filtrate, precipitate the protalbumoses by adding 95 per cent. ethanol. The characteristics of the protalbumoses resemble those of the heteralbumoses, with the exception of their solubility in different strengths of ethanol.

(B) Proceed to the study of the pepton fraction: Go to (3). (3) To the filtrate from (2) add half its volume of saturated solution of ammonium sulphate. Any precipitate is filtered off, dissolved in water and treated with twice its volume of 80 per cent. ethanol. Residue: Thioalbumose. Filtrate: Saturate this fraction with crystals of  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ ; a precipitate appears which contains syn-albumose; this may be obtained in precipitated form and purified by the use of ethanol. The filtrate contains peptons. These substances may be separated by concentrating the filtrate over a free flame to small bulk and then continuing the evaporation to dryness on a boiling water-bath. Take care that the preparation does not char. To the residue add small quantities of 95 per cent. ethanol and rub the mass with the end of a glass rod. Note the odor and color of meat extract. Prove that some of the precipitants of protid cause the precipitation of pepton: Distribute 5 ml. portions of a hot-water solution of pepton to each of several tubes, and to one add a few drops of tannic acid solution, to a second a few drops of lead acetate solution, to a third some Esbach solution. A precipitate is obtained in the first and second cases, but not in the third.<sup>2</sup>

The above exercises may be performed using commercial preparations of albumoses and peptons. In the United States the pro-

<sup>1</sup> Page 226.

<sup>2</sup> A small amount of albumose may have come through the filters, in which case some precipitation may occur.

prietary<sup>1</sup> commodities are quite free from albumoses, having been standardized for bacteriological and other special work. The German preparation known as Witte's Pepton<sup>2</sup> contains albumoses. The "Bacto-Pepton" of the Digestive Ferments Company and the British Savory and Moore preparation contain only traces of albumoses. If Witte's Pepton be used, the separation should begin with (2) above, the pepton being dissolved in half-saturated ammonium sulphate solution. If the other brands are used, a concentrated solution of the pepton in hot water is made, the solution is then cooled, and the study begun at (3).

*Clinical Applications.*—The above study is somewhat time consuming, but it is desirable that the medical student have a first-hand acquaintance with the hydrolysis products of protids. It is certain that native protids are not capable of being digested by the alimentary juices, nor are they affected by autolytic processes, that is, digestion by the tissue enzymes; for in either case there must be a chemical union of protid and enzyme to conform to the modern understanding of enzyme action.<sup>3</sup> In gastric analyses it is desirable to determine whether or not meat-fibers are digested; if they are recovered by the gastric tube<sup>4</sup> unchanged, that is, native protids rather than metaprotids, the hydrochloric acid of the stomach of the subject is not being secreted properly. Again, the introduction of albumoses into the organism leads to several characteristic conditions, such as toxemia involving fever and, locally, the formation of tissue. If large doses are given, the blood-pressure falls. It is possible that the toxemia of constipation may be due to the accumulation and absorption of albumoses.

Concerning the peptons, it may be said that the farther protid products are removed from protid, and the nearer their chemical composition approaches that of amino-acids, the lower the toxicity.

#### THE AMINO-ACIDS TYROSIN AND LEUCIN

The end-products of protid hydrolysis are the amino-acids. Unless the hydrolysis is carried on for some time, they do not appear and, therefore, it is impracticable to make a study of these substances directly from protid by gastric digestion. Instead, two typical amino-

<sup>1</sup> Preparations furnished by commercial houses.

<sup>2</sup> The word is pronounced "vitteh," if the German pronunciation is to be used. This pepton is said to be made from blood-fibrin.

<sup>3</sup> Page 108.

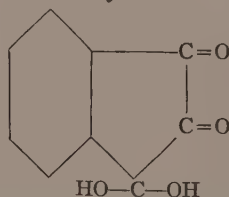
<sup>4</sup> Page 435.

acids have been selected and these will be studied from preparations already made.<sup>1</sup>

**Tyrosin** (Fig. 102, page 263).—Take 50 mls. of the filtrate from the digest and concentrate them on the water-bath to about 10 mls. If care is exercised this process of concentration may be done over a free flame. If possible it is best to let the preparation cool and stand over night, but if time is a factor, cool the substance under the tap or in the ice-box. Next add 5 volumes of water and 5 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid. Boil. Tyrosin goes into solution, while other protid materials remain insoluble. Filter through folded paper, re-filtering until a clear solution is obtained. Save the filtrate for the following Exercise; the filtrate contains leucin. Transfer the solution containing tyrosin to the water-bath, add 10 mls. concentrated ammonium hydroxid, slowly, to neutrality to litmus and let the preparation cool; crystals of tyrosin<sup>2</sup> appear. These may be purified by recrystallization from hot water. Transfer some to a microscope slide, cover, and examine.

There are several tests for tyrosin:

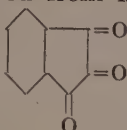
(A) *Abderhalden Ninhydrin Reaction for Amino-acids in General.*—The reagent comes in the commercial package in decigram phials. Make the contents of a phial up to 10 mls. with distilled water. The solution suspected of containing amino-acid is brought to a boil, then about 1 ml. of the ninhydrin solution is added, and the boiling continued. A positive reaction is indicated by the appearance of a bluish-violet color when the solution becomes cool. The reddish tint of the violet is intensified by acid; alkali inhibits the readiness with which the color is obtained, so that a neutral reaction of the fluid tested is desirable. The formula for ninhydrin is:



<sup>1</sup> They have been made from pancreatic digestion of casein (cheese). The pancreas was ground in a meat-chopper along with some of the mucous membrane of the intestine, which contains an activator of the protid-cleaving enzyme, trypsin. The material was suspended in a weak sodium carbonate solution and casein, precipitated from milk (page 405), was added; then the whole was left in a warm place for several weeks. The amino-acids, leucin and tyrosin, are readily found in this digest owing to their low solubility in cold water.

<sup>2</sup> Page 263, Fig. 102.

It is derived from inden, a coal-tar product; hydr-inden has a

ketone form . Through its hydrazone<sup>1</sup> it becomes hy-

drated to the form shown (page 234), the chemical name being triketohydr-inden-hydrate; the commercial name is "ninhydrin." While the reagent responds to alpha-amino-acids, the reaction is given, also, by other compounds in which there are one or more terminal carboxyls, COOH, and also one or more free  $\alpha$ -amino-groups. Protidtemns, like peptons and peptids,<sup>2</sup> give a positive reaction. Substances containing amine radicles sometimes exhibit the test. On the other hand, alpha-amino-acids like prolin and oxyprolin,<sup>3</sup> the nitrogen of which is in an imino (NH) form, give a negative reaction.

*The Abderhalden<sup>4</sup> Reaction.*—This is a seriological reaction, based upon the assumption that specific enzymes are produced in body fluids when foreign protids are introduced. Abderhalden applied it first to the detection of pregnancy. The blood-serum of a woman suspected of being pregnant is kept with some placenta taken from the after-birth of another subject; this placenta has been washed free from blood and purified by dialysis from substances (amino-acids, peptons, etc.) which would give a positive reaction with ninhydrin. If the woman is pregnant, the theory is that her serum contains a protective enzyme capable of hydrolyzing the placental material, and substances like those just mentioned will arise during the digestion, which, if dialyzed from the residue of undigested placenta, boiled with ninhydrin and cooled, will give a positive test.

The Abderhalden reaction has been applied to other physiological and pathological states, like cancer, dementia precox, etc. While many practitioners consider it pathognomonic in such cases, critical work has demonstrated beyond doubt that although enzymes do appear in the blood when foreign protid is introduced, there is no evidence that these enzymes are specific<sup>5</sup>; and unless they are, there is no basis for a differentiation between the production of blood enzymes

<sup>1</sup> Page 158.

<sup>2</sup> Page 232.

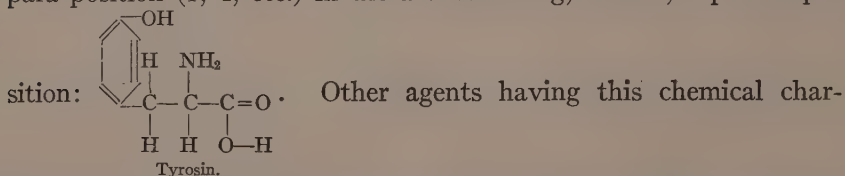
<sup>3</sup> Page 272.

<sup>4</sup> Abderhalden, E., Professor of Biochemistry, University of Halle a. S., Germany; editor of several important biochemical books and compendia.

<sup>5</sup> See Van Slyke, D. D., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 23, p. 377, 1915.

by different types of tissue since any foreign protid will call forth enzymes of non-specific nature. The Abderhalden reaction has been applied to fluids other than blood; the urine has been used by Kiutsi<sup>1</sup> and by Malone,<sup>2</sup> but it has been shown that the method fails in critical work.

(B) *Folin and Denis' Method for the Detection of Tyrosin.*—Place about 2 mls. of the suspected fluid in a test-tube and add one volume of the reagent.<sup>3</sup> Add an equal volume of saturated sodium carbonate solution. The immediate appearance of a blue color is positive for tyrosin. This test depends upon the presence of an hydroxyl in the para position (1, 4, etc.) in the aromatic ring, that is, a phenol po-



acteristic give a positive test with Folin's tyrosin reagent: Phenol, tannic acid, thymol, orcinol, resorcinol, vanillin, and phloroglucinol.

(C) *Hoffmann's<sup>4</sup> Application of Millon's<sup>5</sup> Test.*—Add a few drops of Millon's reagent<sup>6</sup> to not over 5 mls. of the suspected fluid in a test-tube and bring almost to the boiling-point; the appearance of a brick-red color indicates a positive reaction. For further application of the Millon test, see page 236. Folin's procedure is a much more delicate method than that of Millon.

(D) *Piria's<sup>7</sup> Test.*—A concentrated solution of tyrosin is required. To a small amount of such solution, or to the crystals of tyrosin, add a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid. It is best to perform the test in an evaporating dish or watch-glass, which is left on a water-bath at 100° C. for half an hour and then neutralize with calcium carbonate (barium or magnesium carbonate). Filter off the sulphate, saving the filtrate, which is treated with a few drops of ferric chlorid solution. If the reaction is positive, a violet color appears. Where

<sup>1</sup> Japanese medical chemist; Malone, R. H., Canadian internist. See Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 64, p. 1631, 1915.

<sup>2</sup> Cutter, I. S., and Morse, M. W., Jour. Amer. Med. Sci., vol. 66, p. 599, 1916 (Cutter, I. S., Dean, College of Medicine, University of Nebraska, Omaha).

<sup>3</sup> Page 234.

<sup>4</sup> Hoffmann, R., German chemist of the 19th century.

<sup>5</sup> Millon, A. N. E., French chemist of the early 19th century.

<sup>6</sup> Appendix.

<sup>7</sup> Piria, R., French chemist, 1852.



small amounts of tyrosin are involved, care should be exercised that an excess amount of ferric chlorid is not used, since it masks the reaction.

(E) *Moerner's*<sup>1</sup> *Test*; *Denigès's*<sup>2</sup> *Test*.—These tests are practically the same, Denigès' test being conducted as follows: Place 5 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid in a test-tube, add 3 drops of commercial formalin<sup>3</sup> and some of the suspected material. Boil and dilute with one volume of glacial acetic acid. If the test is positive, a green color develops.

Moerner's test is similar, but the reagent is made up beforehand and added to the suspected material when the test is to be performed. When the preparation is boiled a green color appears without the addition of acetic acid.

**Leucin.**—EXERCISE 30.—Separation of the amino-acid leucin: Using the combined filtrates from the previous Exercise on tyrosin,<sup>4</sup> isolate leucin as follows: Add ammonium hydroxid to neutralization<sup>5</sup> and filter, using a Buchner funnel if necessary. Now carefully acidulate the filtrate with dilute sulphuric acid, concentrate on the water-bath at 100° C., then make slightly alkaline and heat until a surface of flaky material is formed. When this concentrated filtrate is cooled over night the crystalline incrustation extends throughout the liquid. Dry the mass of crystals between filter-paper and recrystallize from 70 per cent. ethanol by heating the alcoholic solution on the water-bath; only small amounts of alcohol should be used at first, additions being made slowly. The crystals may be decolorized by means of charcoal which is added to the solution of crystals in alcohol. The solution is then heated on the water-bath, filtered while hot, and permitted to cool. Compare with the picture of leucin crystals (Fig. 93). The whiteness of these crystals prompted the discoverer, Braconnot,<sup>6</sup> to name them from the Greek *leuchos*, white.

<sup>1</sup> Moerner, K. A. H., German chemist, first to separate tyrosin chemically. Tyrosin was discovered in cheese by Liebig, who named the amino-acid "tyrosin" from the Greek *tyros*, cheese.

<sup>2</sup> Denigès, G., French chemist, 18th century.

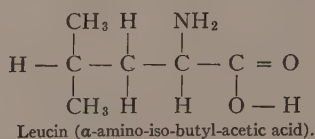
<sup>3</sup> Page 112, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> Page 234.

<sup>5</sup> Barium hydroxid or carbonate may be used in place of ammonium hydroxid.

<sup>6</sup> Braconnot, H., French chemist, 1820.

Apply the tests given for tyrosin and state which are positive. The structural formula for leucin is as follows:



On account of the absence of the para-hydroxy-phenyl group, the tests (B) and (C) for tyrosin are negative. The absence of the aromatic ring prohibits condensation necessary for a positive test with formalin. Piria's test is negative. The ninhydrin reaction is positive.

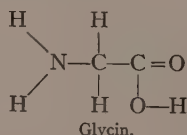
#### CLASSIFICATION OF THE OTHER AMINO-ACIDS.

Having considered the two chief amino-acids, tyrosin and leucin, we shall discuss the chemical characteristics and reactions of the other amino-acids found in protid. These are all more or less soluble in water, and may be classified as follows:

**Group I. Mon-amino-monocarboxylic  $\alpha$ -amino-acids**, having one amino-group,  $\text{NH}_2$ , and one carboxyl radicle,  $\text{COOH}$ , to the molecule.<sup>1</sup> Besides an unbranched aliphatic chain, there may be various incorporations of elements and radicles, but in no case is there a departure from the general arrangement of amino- and carboxyl-radicles, as in tyrosin and in leucin. The general formula is  $\text{R}.\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ , where R may be a hydrogen atom, or a group containing an aromatic nucleus, etc.

##### A. Derivatives of Acetic Acid:

1. *Glycin*, glycocoll, or alpha-amino-acetic acid:



Glycin is the simplest of the amino-acids entering into the formation of protoplasm. It is bound into the molecule of protid in most instances, but occasionally, as in voluntary muscle of some organisms and in human urine, it occurs in a free state. It is absent in albumin,

<sup>1</sup> Some amino-acids belonging here contain two amino-groups, as in cystin (page 247), but this amino-acid is virtually a condensed molecule of two separate mon-amino-acids, cystein.

but present in globulin,<sup>1</sup> and thus affords a chemical means of distinguishing the two. In the "perfect food," milk, it is present in casein, but is absent in the lact-albumin; hence casein, in which the important amino-acids are represented, is a complete food. Glycin plays a major protective rôle in the body, for it unites with certain compounds, like those bearing the aromatic nucleus, benzoic acid, etc., detoxicating them and permitting their excretion from the body in a harmless state. Further reference will be made to this function of glycin.<sup>2</sup> Glycin is the only amino-acid which indisputably is known to be synthesized in the body from other amino-acids, like alanin.<sup>3</sup> Glycin is found abundantly in tegumentary structures, derived from the ectoderm of the embryo. It was first isolated from gelatin<sup>4</sup> and bears the name

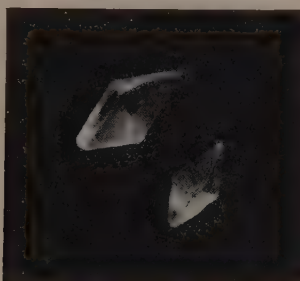


Fig. 92.—Glycin. The photograph is of crystals synthesized from non-protid substances. Magnified 4 times. (After George L. Keenan in *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 62, p. 165, 1924.)

"sweet-glue."<sup>5</sup> Combined with another substance, cholic acid,<sup>6</sup> glycin occurs in bile as glycocholic acid, one of the bile-acids. In this form, glycin serves in the digestion of fats by causing the lowering of surface tension and the consequent emulsification of the fat preparatory to digestion.<sup>7</sup> Glycin may be synthesized from formaldehyde and since Baly<sup>8</sup> has synthesized formaldehyde from  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  artificially, it is possible to construct glycin from inorganic sub-

<sup>1</sup> By treating globulin with ultraviolet light in quartz containers, globulin may be converted into albumin, but it is not known whether the glycin disappears or not.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter XV.

<sup>3</sup> Page 242.

<sup>4</sup> Gelatin is obtained from the cartilages of hoofs, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *glykys*, sweet, *kolla*, glue. Compare colloid.

<sup>6</sup> Page 465.

<sup>7</sup> Page 462.

<sup>8</sup> Page 138.

stances. Figure 92 shows the shape of glycine crystals. Glycine is optically inactive, since no carbon atom is linked with different atoms and radicles in all valencies. Glycine occurs in the urine in certain diseases, such as the toxemias of pregnancy.

2. *l*-Leucin, *Alpha-amino-iso-butylacetic Acid*; *Alpha-amino-caproic Acid*.—Leucin is mentioned again here simply for the purposes of classification. Its chief characteristics have been discussed.<sup>1</sup> It normally may exist in a free state in the human body, but in certain wasting diseases, such as acute yellow atrophy of the liver, phosphorous poisoning, typhoid, infantile paralysis,<sup>2</sup> etc., it also appears in the urine. It is of interest to the student of aviation that this amino-acid

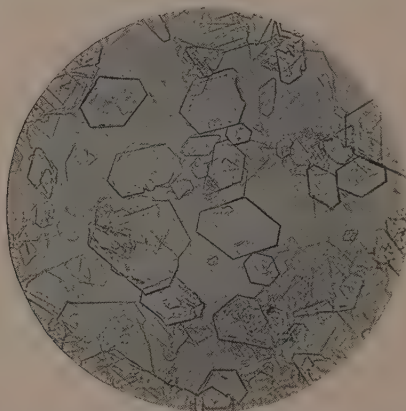


Fig. 93.—Leucin. Colorless, thin, six-sided plates and narrow, rod-like plates. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

appears in the urine of persons at high altitudes. With the exception of one other amino-acid, glutamic acid,<sup>3</sup> leucin occurs in greatest amount by weight (10 per cent.) in casein. This shows the importance of leucin in metabolism. Leucin may be partly responsible for the acids of incomplete combustion in cases of acidosis,<sup>4</sup> for when it is fed to a person having diabetes mellitus, beta-hydroxy-butyric acid is considerably increased in the urine. It is probable that leucin does not contribute much to the glucose of the body, since feeding it to a dog does not result in an increase in glucose in the body. This is de-

<sup>1</sup> Page 237.

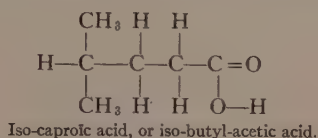
<sup>2</sup> Poliomyelitis.

<sup>3</sup> Page 252.

<sup>4</sup> Page 75.

terminated by making the dog diabetic by means of phlorhizin (Chapter XVII). This contrasts markedly with glycine, which is wholly converted into glucose under similar circumstances.<sup>1</sup>

The structural formula for leucin has already been given<sup>2</sup> as alpha-amino-iso-butyl-acetic acid. Caproic acid, like all acids above propionic acid, may have one more hydrogen of the methyl group replaced by a methyl radicle, and thus an iso-form is produced as follows:



Leucin may, therefore, be considered as  $\alpha$ -amino-iso-caproic acid, but it is included here as a derivative of acetic acid. The closely allied iso-leucin<sup>3</sup> is a propionic acid derivative.

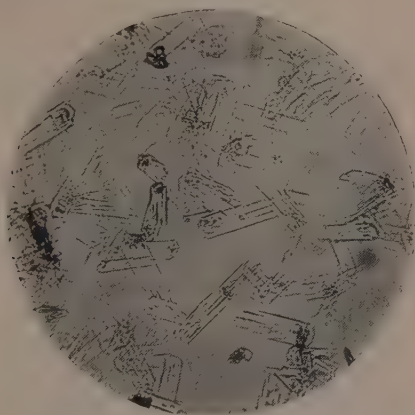


Fig. 94.—Valin. Thin, narrow, rod-shaped plates, with jagged ends and long longitudinal slits. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

An amino-acid derived from normal caproic acid, and called nor-leucin, has been described.

3. *Valin*,  $\alpha$ -amino-iso-valerianic acid, or iso-propyl-alpha-amino-acetic acid:—

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & \text{CH}_3 & \text{NH}_2 & & & & \\
 & | & | & & & & \\
 \text{H} & -\text{C} & -\text{C} & -\text{C} & =\text{O} & & \\
 & | & | & | & | & & \\
 & \text{CH}_3 & \text{H} & \text{H} & \text{O}-\text{H} & & 
 \end{array}$$

Although a knowledge of the rôle

<sup>1</sup> Page 496.

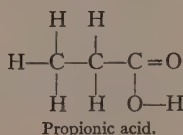
<sup>2</sup> Page 238.

<sup>3</sup> Page 245.

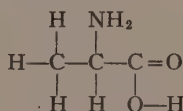


of this amino-acid in the organism is meager, it is significant that valin occurs in casein, ranking third in percentage by weight. It also occurs in protids found in the nucleus of the cell in conspicuous quantity. Valin crystallizes with leucin and its separation is difficult. The crystals are very minute leaves.

**B. Derivatives of Propionic Acid.**—Of the twenty amino-acids found in protids, six are constructed on the aliphatic acid, propionic acid:



4. *d-Alanin, α-amino-propionic acid:*



Next to glycine, alanine is the simplest of the α-amino-acids in general structure. The organic chemist had synthesized alanine be-

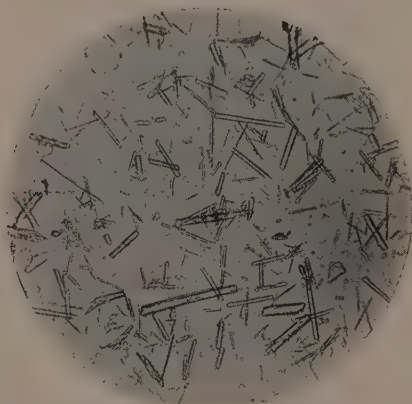
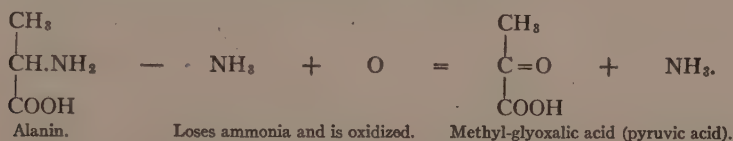


Fig. 95.—Alanine. Rods and needles as seen with microscope 10 mm. ocular and 4 mm. objective. (After Keenan in *Journal Biological Chemistry*.)

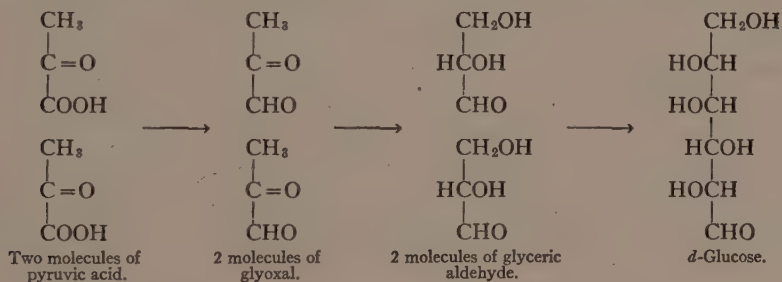
fore it was found in the organism. It is convertible to glucose in the body by separation of the ammonia radicle through chemical processes of deamination by oxidation<sup>1</sup>; however, there is a change in the

<sup>1</sup> Page 276.

optical relations of the molecule. Alanin obtained in ordinary acid hydrolysis is dextrorotatory, but most naturally occurring amino-acids are levorotatory when obtained by the action of enzymes in a medium of low alkalinity, like trypsin solution used in these experiments. Glucose is dextrorotatory; hence when alanin is converted to glucose there must be some fundamental change in the molecule to cause this change in optical relation. This is accomplished by two chemical processes: (1) Deaminization by oxidation to form a ketone acid, pyruvic acid (methyl-glyoxalic acid) as follows:



(2) Conversion of pyruvic acid to glucose, whereby two molecules of the acid are formed into the six-carbon hexose, glucose. This may be accomplished, practically, by feeding the acid to an experimental animal. The conversion was given in a reversed manner in the discussion of glucid metabolism<sup>1</sup> and may be represented as follows:



Hence, *l*-alanin is converted into *d*-glucose by the loss of optical symmetry when alanin is converted into the optically inactive keton-form in which the central, or alpha-carbon atom, being bound to two

similar groups,  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{C=O} \\ | \\ \text{C=O} \\ | \\ \text{O-H} \end{array}$ , is symmetrical.<sup>2</sup> This conversion is of great

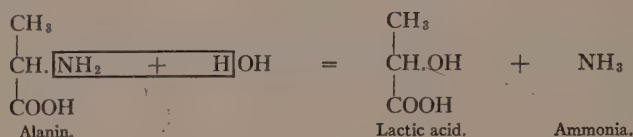
importance in studies of metabolism in cases in which protid is converted into glucose, as in diabetes mellitus. Consequently, in

<sup>1</sup> Page 168.

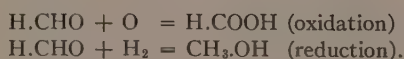
<sup>2</sup> Page 172.

prescribing diets for diabetics it is necessary to take into consideration that such a transformation of food materials may occur. Conversely, alanin may be derived from glycogen when that substance is passed through a mammalian liver by perfusion<sup>1</sup> with ammonium chlorid to afford the amino-portion.

Another important relation of alanin is its conversion to lactic acid as follows:



The process is that of hydrolysis. In considering the participation of alanin in sugar metabolism<sup>2</sup> we have shown that lactic acid can be converted into methyl-glyoxal and vice versa. Hence, the reactions given for the conversion of alanin into glucose, via keto-acid (methyl-glyoxalic acid), may be made to represent the conversion of alanin into glucose via lactic acid, by substituting the hydroxy-acid, lactic acid, for the keto-acid, pyruvic. In the body<sup>3</sup> this conversion is made by means of the catalyzing power of certain enzymes called *glyoxalases*, which cause a double reaction: (1) Oxidation of the hydroxy-radicle to form the keto-radicle, and (2) reduction of the carboxyl to form the aldehyde radicle. This is an application of a well-known principle in organic chemistry, the Cannizzaro reaction, represented for the simple aldehyde, formaldehyde:



In the case we are considering the process is reversed (reversed Cannizzaro reaction), the carboxyl being first reduced and then the hydroxyl oxidized to the carbonyl group.<sup>4</sup> Two molecules of lactic acid are converted by the reversed Cannizzaro reaction to methyl-

<sup>1</sup> Perfusion is accomplished by conducting a stream of fluid through the organ in a manner to resemble the normal course of blood. The perfusing fluid, however, contains a known concentration of some substance, the action of which in the liver is observed.

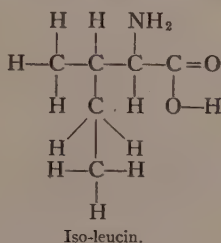
<sup>2</sup> Page 243.

<sup>3</sup> Also *in vitro* (test-tube).

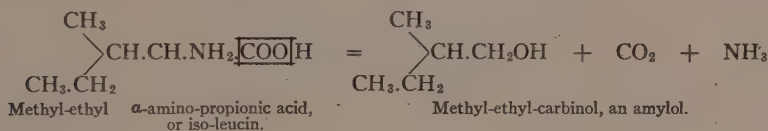
<sup>4</sup> In our case the carbonyl is a keton and not an aldehyde as in formaldehyde.

glyoxal. From this point the conversion of alanin via lactic acid to glucose may be followed in the reactions given earlier in this section.<sup>1</sup>

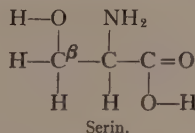
5. *d-Iso-leucin, Ethyl-methyl- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic Acid*.—This amino-acid is contained in most typical protids and has properties similar to those of leucin. Of the three possible isomers similar to iso-leucin, only the one indicated by the following formula has been found:



Iso-leucin, like leucin, is easily cleaved from the protid molecule both by acid hydrolysis and by the action of enzymes. It is converted by de-carboxylation and deaminization by yeast into amyl-alcohol, a representative of "fusel oils." The reaction is as follows:



6. *l-Serin, Beta-hydroxy- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic Acid*.—The relation of this acid to alanin is expressed in the structural formula; the methyl group of the  $\beta$ -carbon atom has one hydrogen replaced by an hydroxy-radicle<sup>2</sup>:



No other hydroxy-acid<sup>3</sup> has been identified among the hydrolysis products of protids. Serin, on reduction, becomes alanin. It crystallizes in thin leaves which, by overlapping, form an encrustation on

<sup>1</sup> Compare also the reversed action in (1) fermentation and in (2) sugar metabolism, page 170.

<sup>2</sup> Compare also the structural formulæ of cystin and cystein, page 247.

<sup>3</sup> See page 270 concerning Sørensen's  $\beta$ -hydroxy-valerianic acid.

the surface of the mass of crystals in a preparation. As a contributor to glucose serin is important since experimentally it is converted quantitatively into sugar. However, it does not usually occur in large quantities in protid; the nuclear protid and silk, the original source of the amino-acid, are exceptions.

7. *Cystein*,<sup>1</sup> *Beta-thio-alpha-amino-propionic Acid*.—This amino-acid plays a very important part in the economy of the body. It aids in destroying toxic substances<sup>2</sup> and it functions in oxidations.<sup>3</sup> Although cystein was discovered after cystin,<sup>4</sup> the latter is more complex, being virtually di-cystein, consisting of two molecules of the

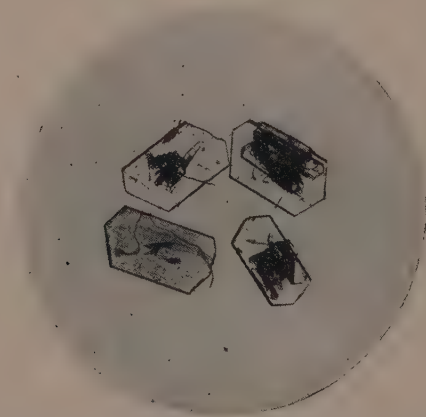


Fig. 96.—Serin. Powdered crystals of indefinite form. Magnification about 8. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

simpler amino-acid linked together. Nearly a century elapsed after the discovery of cystin before it was found that on being reduced it became a different sulphur-bearing compound of the nature of a mercaptan,<sup>5</sup> or organic hydrosulphid, of which ethyl-hydrosulphid (mercaptan) is an example:  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{SH}$ . We have here an instance of the interchangeability of oxygen and sulphur,<sup>6</sup> for ethyl

<sup>1</sup> Note the diacritical marks indicating the pronunciation as "sis-te-eene."

<sup>2</sup> The sulphur becomes oxidized and, as sulphuric acid, conjugates with toxic matter.

<sup>3</sup> See page 94 for the participation of cystein in the "enzyme" glutathione.

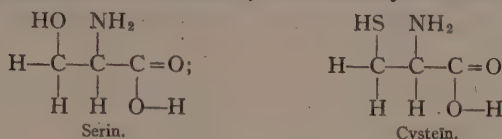
<sup>4</sup> Page 247 under amino-acid Number 8.

<sup>5</sup> See general formula for mercaptans, Appendix. From the Latin *mercurium captans*, "captor of mercury," on account of the ready action upon that element.

<sup>6</sup> Interchangeability is seen in such cases as:  $2(\text{As})(\text{OH})_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{S} = 6\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{As}_2\text{S}_3$ .



hydroxid (ethanol),  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , has oxygen in place of the sulphur atom. This suggests the similarity between cystein and serin:



Cystein has been found in juices expressed from organs and has also been identified in the exoskeleton (hair), but the readiness with which it becomes oxidized to the di-thio compound, cystin, makes it

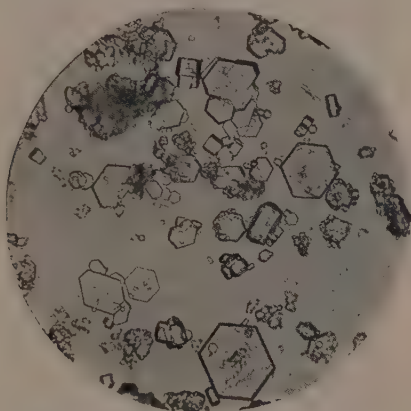
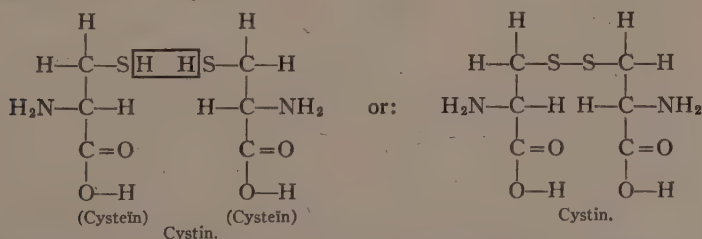


Fig. 97.—Cystin. Colorless hexagonal plates and prisms. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

difficult to determine the former from the latter. Recently, Sullivan<sup>1</sup> has described methods for distinguishing the two amino-acids.<sup>2</sup>

8. *l-Cystin, di-Cystein, Beta-dithio-alpha-amino-propionic Acid*.—This amino-acid is oxidized cystein, the hydrogen belonging to the sulphhydryl group,  $-\text{HS}$  being removed. The formula is given to show its relation to cystein:



<sup>1</sup> Sullivan, M. X., Chemist, U. S. Public Health Service, Washington, D. C.

<sup>2</sup> Page 249.

The linkage binding the two moieties is via sulphur atoms.<sup>1</sup>

Cystin is found in small quantities in normal urine. Pathologically, it is present in cystinuria, which may involve the excretion of a relatively large amount of the amino-acid, or even the formation of calculi of solid cystin. In cystinuria<sup>2</sup> there is not marked pathological manifestation, other than the appearance of unusual amounts of the amino-acid, and for this reason Garrod<sup>3</sup> classes it with other "inborn errors of metabolism."<sup>4</sup> Fed by mouth cystin does not appear as such in



Fig. 98.—Howard B. Lewis, Professor of Biochemistry, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor. Investigations concerning amino-acids and their rôle in the economy of the body in normal and pathological states.

the urine, but is deaminized and then burned in the body in a normal manner to inorganic sulphate,  $H_2O$  and  $CO_2$ . If fed to a person with cystinuria, a small part is eliminated in the urine,<sup>5</sup> but the larger portion is oxidized as described. Cystin seems to be metabolized in the

<sup>1</sup> Sulphur resembles oxygen and carbon in being able to bind similar atoms into chains, as in ozone,  $O-O-O$ , carbon compounds of the type  $C-C-C \dots$



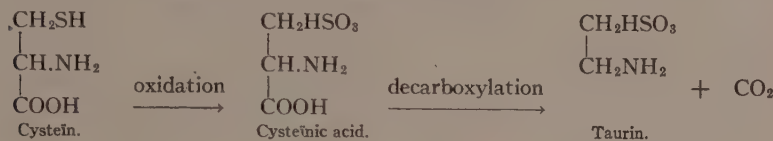
<sup>2</sup> Like many other physiological and pathological conditions, cystinuria bears a relation to sex, being much more common in males than in females.

<sup>3</sup> Garrod, A. B., Professor of Medicine, Oxford, England. See his book, *Inborn Errors of Metabolism*, citation, page 191.

<sup>4</sup> See page 265 for further examples of this group of metabolic phenomena.

<sup>5</sup> Other instances of substances escaping action in the body and being eliminated unchanged will be encountered, as, for example, some of the pigments (see *Graphic Summary of Pigments*, Chapter XV).

body in definite ways, and if cystinuria occurs, it is probably congenital. Cystin contributes to the formation of glucose. It likewise contributes to the formation of one of the constituents of the bile, *taurin*, according to the following reactions (using cystein):



Cystin is absent from some protids, of which gelatin is one; these protids are incapable of maintaining the proper supply of nitrogen when fed as foods. It is impossible to feed enough of these protids to replace the nitrogen lost in the urine.<sup>1</sup> Joined with the amino-acid glutamic acid<sup>2</sup> to form glutathione, cystin plays a most important rôle in animal functions.

*Qualitative Test for Cystein* (Sullivan<sup>3</sup>).—Principle: An hydrochinon compound is formed between cystein and naphthoquinon monosulphonate. The color is red or orange and does not disappear when sodium hydrosulphite,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ , is added.

Procedure: Pipette enough amino-acid solution suspected of containing cystein into a test-tube to give about 7 mgs. per cent. nitrogen.<sup>4</sup> Add 1 drop of 0.5 per cent. solution of 1.2-naphthoquinon-4-sodium sulphonate and then 5 mls. of a 20 per cent. sodium sulphite solution made up in 0.25 normal  $\text{NaOH}$ . If cystein is present, a brilliant red persists. The test may be modified for detecting the presence of cystin by previously reducing the substances of the amino-acid solution; if the test is negative before reduction and positive afterward, cystin is indicated.

*Quantitative Method of Folin and Looney*.<sup>5</sup>—Principle: Cystin, alone, of all amino-acids, reacts with the uric acid reagent of Folin.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The animal cannot be brought into "nitrogenous equilibrium," which means that to replace the nitrogen lost through the urine nitrogen enough cannot be fed when administered, as, for instance, gelatin.

<sup>2</sup> Page 252.

<sup>3</sup> Sullivan; M. X., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. 1, 1924.

<sup>4</sup> A preliminary nitrogen determination may be made by the Folin method, Chapter XV.

<sup>5</sup> Looney, J. M., Chemist to the Sheppard and Enoch Pratt Hospital, Towson, Md.

<sup>6</sup> It is actually cystein that reacts with the uric acid reagent, but cystin is reduced in the process.

Procedure: To 5 mls. of an amino-acid mixture suspected of containing cystin (cystein), in a 100-ml. volumetric flask, add 20 mls. of saturated sodium carbonate and an equal amount of freshly prepared sodium sulphite<sup>1</sup> solution. Wait five minutes and then add 2 mls. of the Folin uric acid reagent. Dilute to the mark with distilled water. Compare in a colorimeter with a standard containing 3 mgs. of cystin per 100 mls. of solution in water; or, one may use a standard uric acid or glucose solution, the depth of color of which has been previously determined by colorimetric comparison with a standard cystin solution as described.

Other mon-amino-monocarboxylic acids have been described as constituents of protid, for example, a sulphur-bearing amino-acid besides cystin.<sup>2</sup> No acid corresponding to the butyric acid with two possible isomeres, or a pentane homologue has been described, and it is improbable that such acids will be discovered in protid, since extensive and very exact work has already been done in the analysis of animal and plant tissues, and in many instances the analyses do not permit the presence of more amino-acids judged by the total nitrogen of the protid. This completeness of our knowledge is principally due to the method of analysis devised by Dakin.<sup>3</sup>

**Group II. Mon-amino-di-carboxylic Acids.**—Alpha-amino-acids having two carboxyl groups. Two of many possible compounds of this series are present in the hydrolysis products of protids:

Succinic acid derivative: Succinic acid is a member of the di-basic acid series which begins with oxalic,  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{H}$ , then malonic,  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{H}$ , then succinic,  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{H}$ , then glutaric,  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{O})-\text{H}$ , etc. Glutaric is the second compound of this series which contributes to the formation of amino-acids found in protids.

<sup>1</sup>  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$  saturated solution, 30 gs. per 100 mls. solution in water.

<sup>2</sup>  $\text{CH}_2\text{SH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CHNH}_2\text{COOH}$ . See Mueller, J. H., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 58, p. 373, 1923. This substance has been identified by Eddy (page 566) as "bios," but the point remains unsettled. See Tanner, F. W. (Illinois), Chem. Revs., vol. 1, 397, 1925.

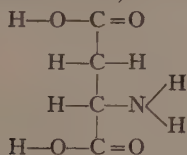
<sup>3</sup> Dakin, H. D., see page 182.

9. *l*-Aspartic Acid,  $\alpha$ -amino-succinic Acid.—The name of this amino-acid suggests asparagus, and such an association does exist. Aspartic acid is present in many plant substances<sup>1</sup> in fairly generous amounts, and hence its presence in asparagus is not conspicuous. However, the mon-amid, asparagin, which was the first source and still is the chief source of aspartic acid, forms a large part of the dry substance of asparagus; this accounts for the derivation of the term. Asparagin<sup>2</sup> was first derived from asparagus at the beginning of the nineteenth century in France. Fifty years later aspartic acid was recognized as a constituent of most protids, those occurring in the nucleus

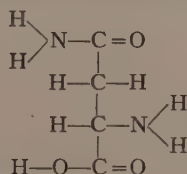


Fig. 99.—Aspartic acid. Irregular fragments of crystals of high refractive indices. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

of the cell being exceptions. Aspartic acid is the  $\alpha$ -amino compound of succinic acid, while asparagin is the acid amid<sup>3</sup> of that acid:



Aspartic acid ( $\alpha$ -amino-succinic acid.)



Asparagin ( $\alpha$ -amino-succinic-acid-amid).

<sup>1</sup> For example, in legumes it may make up about 5 per cent. of the total amino-acid content.

<sup>2</sup> This mon-amid is also present in the seedlings of plants, sometimes to the extent of 5 per cent.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix for general structure of acid amids. An acid amid is an organic acid which has its hydroxyl of the carboxyl replaced by an amino-radicle,  $\text{NH}_2$ , represented as follows:  $\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O}$  (carboxyl);  $\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O}$  (amid).





Aspartic acid enters the formation of glucose with but three of its carbon atoms, which probably means that it is converted into glucose in a manner similar to that already described for alanin<sup>1</sup>; in fact, alanin has been obtained from the acid hydrolysis of aspartic acid. Aspartic acid, by decarboxylation, becomes a beta-amino-acid:



10. *d-Glutamic Acid, Alpha-amino-glutaric Acid*.—This amino-acid is one of the most widely distributed of the series and occurs in large amounts in many protids. In wheat, for example, it forms nearly half the total amino-acid content, and in the casein of cheese, nearly one-quarter. The wide-spread use of wheat as human and animal

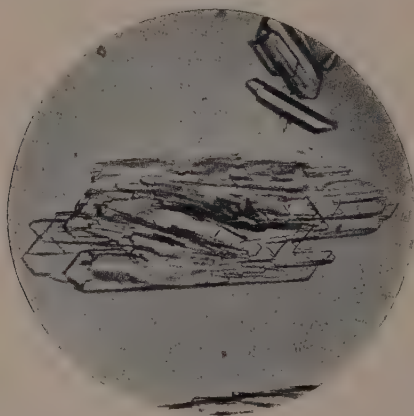


Fig. 100.—Glutamic acid. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in *Journal of Biological Chemistry*.)

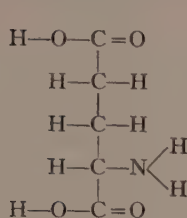
food has stimulated interest in the metabolism of glutamic acid to such an extent that we now know many of its characteristics.<sup>2</sup> A compound of glutamic acid and cystin, glutathione, has been mentioned and will be considered in detail later.<sup>3</sup> It is interesting in this connection that Abel (page 651) has found sulphur associated with insulin; sulphur occurs in glutathione, as a part of cystin.

Glutamic acid, chemically, is a derivative of glutaric acid, the amino-group of this diamino-acid being attached to the gamma carbon atom. A lactam may occur analogous to a lactone and glutamic acid exhibits such a formation:

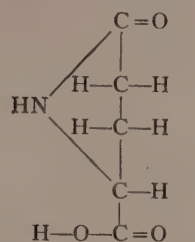
<sup>1</sup> Page 243.

<sup>2</sup> Page 311.

<sup>3</sup> Pages 339 and 340.



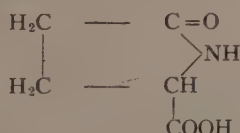
Glutamic acid.



Lactam of glutamic acid.

In burns, in liver atrophy, and in other conditions in which there is extensive alteration of protids, the associated toxicity has been attributed to the end-products of protid metabolism, but amino-acids are not in themselves toxic. However, since lactams are toxic, it may be the formation of such compounds during pathological states that is responsible for the toxicity, for compounds bearing the aromatic ring are generally incompatible with the usual form of metabolism of the animal body. The ring is split only rarely; ordinarily it is conjugated with some other substance<sup>1</sup> to render it non-toxic. The toxicity in such cases must arise from glutamic acid, for it is the only amino-acid in protids capable of forming lactams. The amin of glutamic acid, glutamin, corresponding to asparagin appears in the urine of man after it has been conjugated with phenyl-acetic acid, an aromatic acid. It also appears to be synthesized in man living on a plentiful glucid, but low protid diet.

Examination of the formula for the lactam of glutamic acid reveals its relation to a ring formation which is characteristic of the red coloring-matter of the blood, hemoglobin, and of the green coloring-matter of leaves, chlorophyl. These substances have similar respiratory functions:

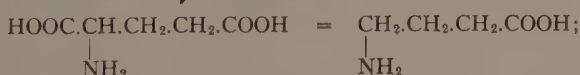


Lactam of glutamic acid (pyrrolidin carboxylic acid).



Pyrrolidin.

Both chlorophyl and hemoglobin have four of these rings and glutamic acid may be a source of hemoglobin. Glutamic acid by decarboxylation becomes a  $\gamma$ -amino-acid:

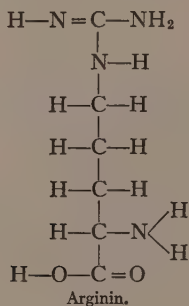


<sup>1</sup> Compare glycine and cystine, page 239; Fig. 50.

compare aspartic acid, which is converted similarly into a  $\beta$ -amino-acid.

**Group III. Di-amino-mono-carboxylic Acids.**—These  $\alpha$ -amino-acids bear two amino-groups and a single carboxyl radicle. They form with histidin<sup>1</sup> a small group of amino-acids sharply set off from all others by their basic character. Histidin has a heterocyclic ring. It contains two amino-groups. All three of these amino-acids can be separated from the other protid cleavage products by precipitating the diamino-acids with phosphotungstic acid. The two diamino-acids of the aliphatic series are as follows:

11. *d-Arginin,  $\alpha$ -amino- $\delta$ -guanidin-valerianic Acid.*—The formula is as follows:



The strong basic property is due to the presence of the two amino-groups. This property is noted in certain protids in which diamino-acids form a large part of the molecule. This is the case in the nuclear protids of the spermatozoa. Arginin forms nearly 90 per cent. of the total amino-acid content of the protid salmin from the spermatozoa of the salmon. Strongly acid or basic substances do not exist freely in the body, and we should expect to find the basicity neutralized by an acid substance. This is true for salmin in which the nucleic acid of the nucleoprotid is linked with the strongly basic protid.<sup>2</sup> Arginin is quantitatively precipitated by the organic acid 2-4-dinitro-7-naphtholsulphonic acid. Arginin is not amphoteric in the sense that the acidic and basic portions (carboxyl and amino groups, respectively) are balanced, for there is a preponderance of the basic amino-part. Hopkins<sup>3</sup> finds that arginin is responsible for one portion of the uric acid excretion in the urine.

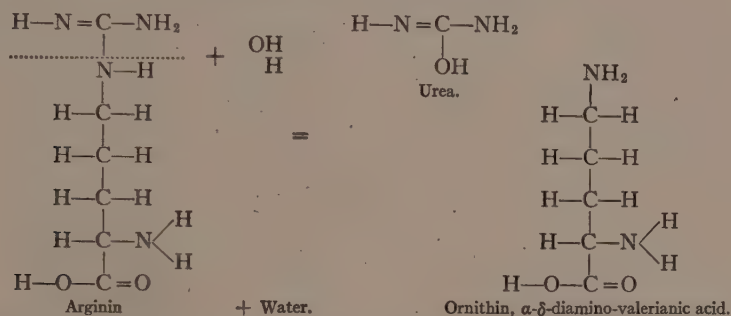
<sup>1</sup> See amino-acid number 15, page 268.

<sup>2</sup> Page 301.

<sup>3</sup> Page 216.

The epsilon carbon of arginin is linked with three nitrogenous groups, two of which are in an imino,  $\text{NH}$ , form. This configuration resembles closely that for guanidin:  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{H}$ . This radicle may

be cleaved from the molecule of arginin by hydrolysis, but the guanidin residue ceases to be guanidin and becomes urea:



Urea and ornithin result. Ornithin is alpha-delta-diamino-valerianic acid; valerianic acid is  $\text{CH}_3.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{COOH}$ . Guanidin is encountered in a methylated<sup>1</sup> condition linked with acetic acid as creatin,<sup>2</sup> but no association has ever been discovered between arginin and creatinin adequate to explain the facts. Guanidin has been reported from the blood of children suffering from tetany<sup>3</sup> and in the urine of experimental animals from which the parathyroid glands had been removed.<sup>4</sup> When guanidin or its salts are introduced into the blood-stream of an animal, hypoglycemia,<sup>5</sup> loss of calcium from 5 to as low as 2 mgs. per 100 mls. of blood, and acidosis ensue. When the parathyroids are removed, guanidin disappears from the muscle. Parathyroids seem to control the metabolism of guanidin, and since

<sup>1</sup> The methyl group,  $\text{CH}_3$ , is added to the molecule.

<sup>2</sup> Page 361.

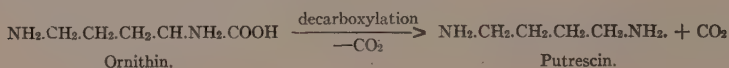
<sup>3</sup> A disease due to parathyroid deficiency. See page 648. (Not tetanus or lock-jaw, the cause of which is the toxin secreted by the bacterium *Clostridium tetani*.) For the nomenclature of bacteria and for frequent courtesies in the course of the preparation of this book the author's thanks are due Professor Rosenberger, Head of the Department of Hygiene and Preventive Medicine, Jefferson Medical College.

<sup>4</sup> Page 648. This condition is known as tetany thyreopriva, a designation belonging to an earlier stage of medical history, when the thyroid and parathyroid were not distinguished.

<sup>5</sup> Lowered blood-sugar concentration.

it occurs in only one known amino-acid, it is quite probable that the metabolism of this amino-acid is under the control of the parathyroids. There is also some connection between the metabolism of calcium and the presence of guanidin. Deprivation of the parathyroids results in a change in calcium metabolism. Apparently an intimate relation exists between these different factors. It has been suggested by Paton<sup>1</sup> that the parathyroids regulate the concentration of guanidin and in turn the muscle tonus. It is known that administration of guanidin causes hypertonicity of muscle (page 359).

Ornithin is affiliated with poisonous substances of similar chemical composition, such as the so-called "ptomaines."<sup>2</sup> One of these, putrescin, is derivable from ornithin as follows:



This is a type of decarboxylation, which is a property of bacteria, but is seldom encountered in human or animal biochemistry.<sup>3</sup> The feces of patients with certain diseases like cholera contain putrescin and cadaverin and other decarboxylated substances; also in cystinuria these substances have been discovered in the excretions, and it has been shown by Berlin biochemists that decarboxylations occur in some tissues. Cadaverin is derived from the amino-acid about to be discussed, lysin.

Arginin is the only amino-acid capable of producing urea directly. However, all amino-acids are capable of being de-aminized, the ammonia becoming condensed with cyanic acid to form urea.<sup>4</sup>

We have previously called attention to the occurrence of arginin in nucleo-protids, which occur as "chromatin" in the nucleus. Albumin and globulin of the blood show a variation in the content of amino-acids, the figures given by Abderhalden for the percentage weights of the various amino-acids in serum albumin and serum globulin being as follows:

<sup>1</sup> D. Noël Paton, British biochemist and physiologist.

<sup>2</sup> The rôle of such toxins as the cause of death in "ptomain poisoning" is slight. Death from eating spoiled meat, etc., is due to infection from certain strains of bacteria, like *Clostridium botulinum*, producing "botulism" (Latin, *botulis*, sausage).

<sup>3</sup> It will be recalled that Leathes utilized this principle of decarboxylation in explaining the change of an odd-carbon fat to an even one, which is capable of being metabolized (page 199).

<sup>4</sup> Chapter XV.



	Grams, per cent., in albumin.	Grams, per cent., in globulin.
Glycin.....	0.0	3.5
Alanin.....	2.7	2.2
Valin.....	0.0	Slight
Leucin.....	20.0	18.7
Isoleucin.....	0.0	0.0
Phenylalanin.....	3.1	3.8
Tyrosin.....	2.1	2.5
Serin.....	0.6	0.0
Cystin.....	2.5	0.7
Prolin.....	1.0	2.8
Oxyprolin.....	0.0	0.0
Aspartic acid.....	3.1	2.5
Glutamic acid.....	7.7	8.5
Tryptophan.....	Slight	Slight
Arginin.....	4.6	4.5
Lysin.....	11.8	6.7
Histidin.....	3.4	1.5

The average for the amino-acids of the diamino group (arginin, lysin, and histidin), compared with that for the remainder of the amino-acids, is given:

Average of the concentration percentage of diamino-acids:

	Grams, per cent.
Albumin.....	6.6
Globulin.....	4.2

Average of all the other amino-acids:

	Grams, per cent.
Albumin.....	3.5
Globulin.....	3.1

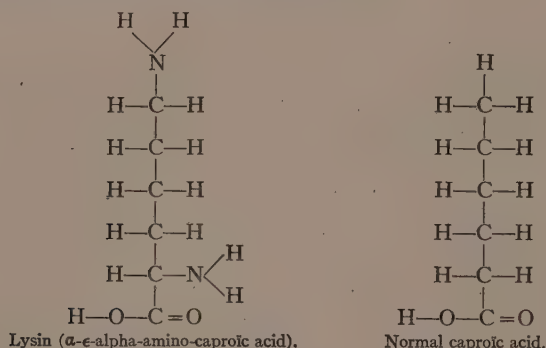
In other words, there is a preponderance of diamino-acids in serum protid; the concentration of diamino-acids is greater in albumins than in globulins.<sup>1</sup> These figures are to be compared to the amino-acid content of simple protids which occur in the nucleus (page 301).

12. "*Active*" *Lysin*, *Alpha-epsilon-diamino-caproic Acid*.—This, like arginin, is widely distributed. Nevertheless, its absence from certain common protids like the zein of corn (maize) is conspicuous, and has been responsible for some of the most important studies concerning the metabolism of foods. These studies have shown that the conception, initiated by von Liebig in the earlier days of biochemistry, that the whole of the protid molecule is used as such as food, is incorrect,

<sup>1</sup> Page 218.

and that the unit is the amino-acid of which the protid is made rather than the molecule of the protid. Zein is incapable of furnishing enough nitrogen to bring the organism to which it is fed into nitrogenous equilibrium, not because there is insufficient nitrogen in the molecule of the protid, zein, but because the nitrogen of one unit, lysin, does not occur in the molecule. It is as if an archway were being built and there were various sorts of stones available, but no keystone; the stones as a whole (the molecule) are inadequate to form the arch, for the keystone (lysin) is not among them.

The body can be maintained for a time, at least, on a diet lacking in lysin, but growth is impossible on such a diet. Later we shall discuss the rôle of amino-acids in maintenance and growth.<sup>1</sup> The formula for lysin is as follows; it is derived from normal caproic acid,<sup>2</sup> leucin being derived from an iso-caproic acid<sup>3</sup>:



Reference may be made to the previous discussion of the conversion of arginin into the amin, putrescin, by decarboxylation. In separating the three amino-acids known as "hexone bases"<sup>4</sup> (arginin, lysin, and histidin) from one another, arginin and histidin are pre-

<sup>1</sup> Page 580.

<sup>2</sup> See page 241 concerning another amino-acid derived from caproic acid.

<sup>3</sup> Page 241.

<sup>4</sup> The term "hexone bases" was applied by the German biochemist Kossel to these three amino-acids, but since the exact chemical constitution of histidin has been discovered together with the capacity of the acids to enter into the formation of glucose, the term has become meaningless. The term "hexone" referred to the fact that there are 6 carbon atoms in each of the acids and it was supposed that they contributed to the formation of glucose (a hexose). The 6 carbons occur as follows:

C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>14</sub> N <sub>4</sub> O <sub>2</sub> .....	arginin
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>14</sub> N <sub>2</sub> O <sub>2</sub> .....	lysin
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>9</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O <sub>2</sub> .....	histidin

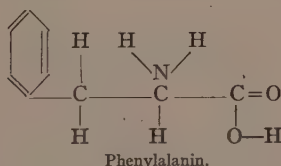
precipitated by adding silver sulphate solution to their solution, thus forming silver arginin and silver histidin. These, in turn, are separated into histidin hydrochlorid,  $C_6H_9N_3O_2 \cdot 2HCl$ , and arginin nitrate,  $C_6H_{14}N_4O_2 \cdot HNO_3 \cdot \frac{1}{2}H_2O$ . Lysin is precipitated by means of phosphotungstic acid after the silver compounds have been removed and is converted into the picrate  $C_6H_{14}N_2O_2 \cdot C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$ . The pure compound of amino-acid may then be obtained by removing the  $HCl$ ,  $HNO_3$ , or picric acid from these substances. Recently Kossel has invented a precipitant for these acids which is known as Acid Naphthol Yellow-S.

Lysin differs from all other amino-acids in that it does not participate in the formation of glucose. This is because lysin becomes oxidized to the dicarboxylic acid, glutaric acid,<sup>1</sup> which, being a 5-carbon chain, does not form a hexose, either directly or indirectly. Lysin does not form acids of incomplete combustion, like  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid, which occur in the blood and urine during acidosis.<sup>2</sup> By correlating these facts with those given in the discussion of histidin it will be evident why the term "hexone bases" is undesirable.

**Group IV.—Homocyclic Amino-acids.**—This group consists of two acids, each having an aromatic nucleus conjugated with propionic acid.

*Benzene derivative:*

13. *l*-Phenylalanin, *Beta-phenyl-alpha-amino-propionic Acid*.—The formula is:



The place of attachment of the propionic acid radicle is not fixed, since the ring is symmetrical. Compare the next amino-acid, tyrosin, where the point of attachment is fixed, because there is an hydroxy-radicle in para position. Phenylalanin is present in most protids except perhaps casein of milk. Nevertheless milk is practically a perfect food-protid, since lactalbumin does contain phenylalanin.

The metabolism of the acids of this series involves an additional factor: the aromatic nucleus. All alpha-amino-acids become oxi-

<sup>1</sup> Page 250.

<sup>2</sup> Page 75.

dized on their alpha carbon atom, the atom bearing the amino-group, whether metabolism is normal or not. Oxidation leads to deaminiza-

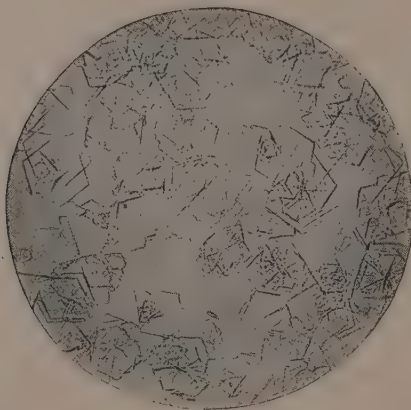
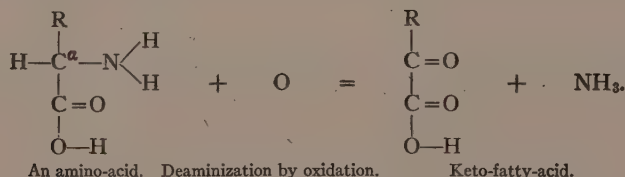
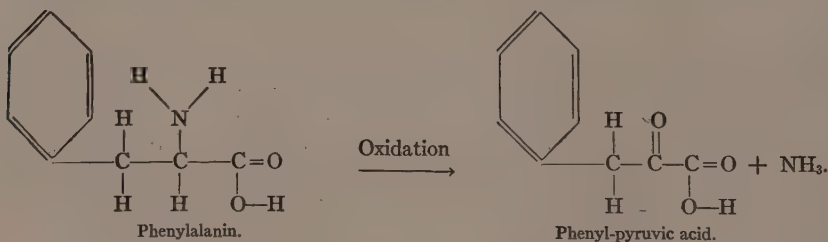


Fig. 101.—Phenylalanin. Hexagonal plates. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in *Journal of Biological Chemistry*.)

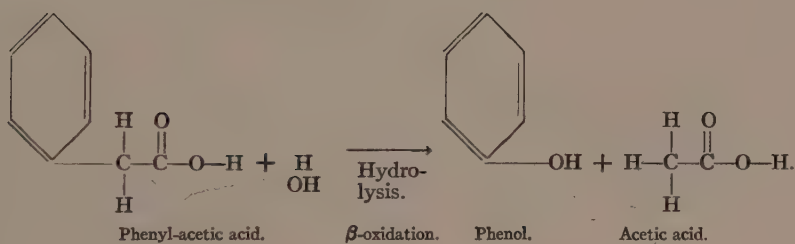
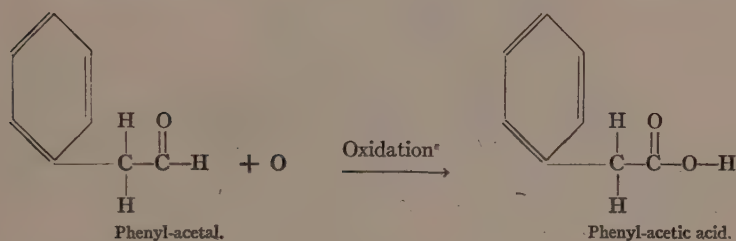
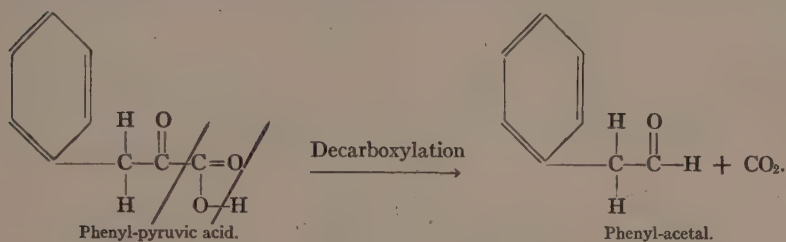
tion of the amino-acid according to the following scheme, in which R is any radicle like methyl, etc.:



An alpha-keton acid arises and ammonia is split off. It will be observed that since R may represent an aromatic nucleus, it remains attached to the compound after the ammonia has been cleaved from the molecule. Therefore the deaminization of phenylalanin by oxidation leads to the formation of the keton acid, phenyl-pyruvic acid:



Thenceforward oxidation occurs as beta-oxidation<sup>1</sup>; that is, in the case of phenylalanin, which has been converted into phenyl-pyruvic acid, the following reactions occur:



Phenol is excreted, when conjugated with sulphuric acid, as phenyl-sulphuric acid, one of the "etheral sulphates" in normal human urine.<sup>2</sup> It is clear that the benzene ring remains attached to the fatty acid as the chain of carbon atoms becomes reduced. This is similar to the method whereby the fats are metabolized, that is, by beta-oxidation.<sup>3</sup> Lactic acid may arise from phenylalanin in a manner similar to that by which alanin is converted into ordinary aliphatic lactic acid.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Compare the oxidation of fats, page 199.

<sup>2</sup> Page 578.

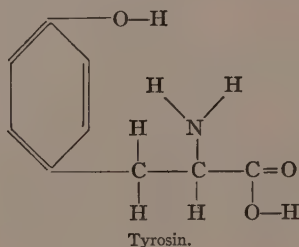
<sup>3</sup> The process is shown above as one of hydrolysis, for the reason that it is easier to present the matter in this manner; the process is actually one of oxidation.

<sup>4</sup> Page 244.



*Phenol derivative:*

14. *l*-Tyrosin, *Para*-hydroxy-phenyl- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic Acid.—The formula for this acid differs from that of phenylalanin in that an hydroxyl is incorporated in the position para to the aliphatic radicle:



In tyrosin<sup>1</sup> we have a very important amino-acid and one which is worthy of detailed study. It occurs in many protids, but is absent from gelatin derived from hoofs, etc. It is not alone the presence of the aromatic nucleus which is important, for, as has already been pointed out, animals fed gelatin cannot be brought into nitrogenous equilibrium, although the benzene ring, which is contributed by phenylalanin, is present. If a protid is to be used by the body, it must contain a definite radicle. As an example of this, we may cite the fact that one cannot cause iodine to enter the molecule of phenylalanin directly, but tyrosin, having a definite radicle, may be iodized, as in the artificial formation of one of the constituents of the thyroid gland; the iodized tyrosin is known chemically as gorgoic acid, 3-5 di-iodo-tyrosin. Here the difference involves simply the addition of an hydroxyl. The structure of tyrosin was determined during studies of the chemistry of the thyroid gland.

Tyrosin is closely concerned with the production of certain pigments. If an insect be kept in an atmosphere of hydrogen or nitrogen as it emerges from its chrysalis, pigment does not form, but on exposing it to the oxygen of the air color appears. Detailed studies of the phenomena of pigment formation have been made by Gortner<sup>2</sup> and others, and it has been shown that an enzyme, *tyrosinase*, is present to catalyze the reaction. In certain forms of cancer, like melanotic

<sup>1</sup> See also page 234.

<sup>2</sup> Gortner, R. A., chemist, Chief of Chemical Division, Minnesota Agricultural Experiment Station, St. Paul, Minnesota.

sarcomas,<sup>1</sup> tyrosinase occurs, which oxidizes the tyrosin to the "melanins," a group name for condensation products not only of tyrosin, but of others of the aromatic amino-acids.<sup>2</sup> Tyrosin plays another rôle in that it acts as a mother-substance of an important chemical regulator of the body—epinephrin or adrenalin<sup>3</sup>—secreted by the glands lying over the kidney in man. It is a substance which, when injected into the body causes a constriction of the blood-vessels and hence a rise in the pressure of the blood. Although as yet we have been unable to

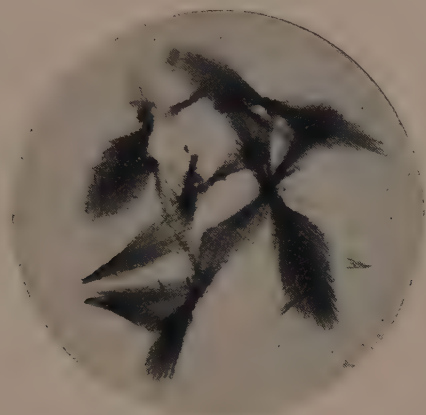
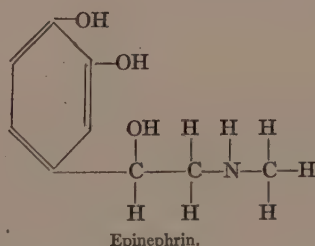
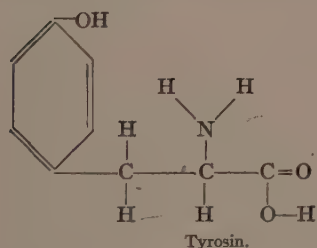


Fig. 102.—Tyrosin. Needles and rods are colorless. Magnification 80. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

derive epinephrin from tyrosin, the similarity in their constitution is shown by their formulæ:

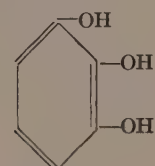


<sup>1</sup> Greek *melas*, dark, and *sarx*, flesh; tumors composed of embryonic cells and pigmented with black or brown.

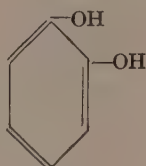
<sup>2</sup> There is probably an adaptive mechanism whereby melanin appears in structures exposed to light, for the aromatic amino-acids protect the underlying structures from the harmful effects of short wave-length light.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *epi*, upon, and *nephros*, kidney; Latin *ad*, toward, and *ren*, kidney.

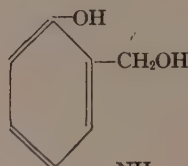
The chemical relationships of epinephrin are with the catechols, the group to which some of the developing reagents of photography belong:



"Pyro," pyrogallol.

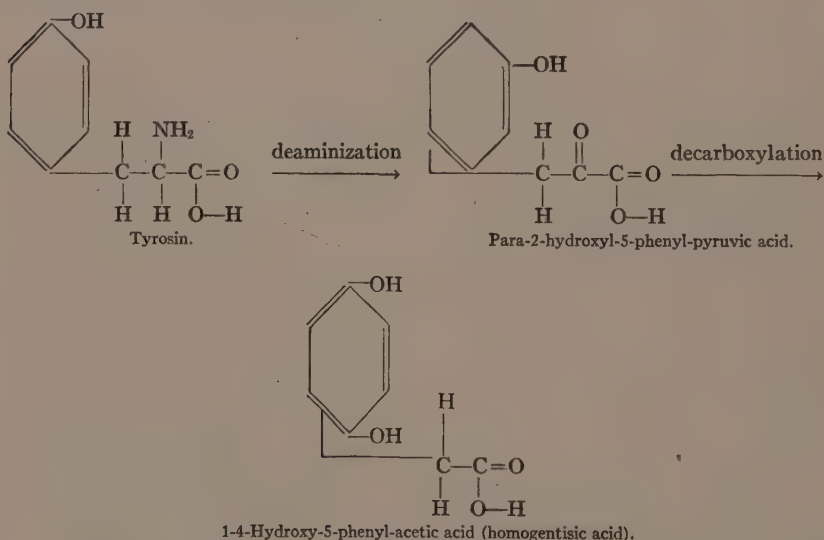


Catechol.



Edinol.

These substances share with epinephrin the characteristics of turning dark when exposed to oxygen. The same property is encountered in urine in cases of alkaptonuria,<sup>1</sup> the tyrosin derivative, alkapton, or homogentisic<sup>2</sup> acid, being present. This is a second instance of what has been termed an "inborn error of metabolism,"<sup>3</sup> that is, an altered metabolism without special pathological symptoms involving detrimental conditions. Homogentisic acid is theoretically derived from tyrosin as follows:



<sup>1</sup> From alkali and the Greek '*apto*, to fasten; signifying the necessity of alkaline state.

<sup>2</sup> From the Greek '*omos* (homos), like, and *gentisic*, the acid akin to homogentisic acid; gentisic acid is  $C_6H_3(OH)_2COOH$ , so named from its source in the gentian, a plant.

<sup>3</sup> Page 248.

It is evident that the attachment of the hydroxyls of homogentisic acid to the aromatic nucleus is different from that of tyrosin, but shifts like these are encountered in chemical changes; from analogies with other shifts we know that the aliphatic (acetic acid) group has shifted, and not the hydroxyls.

Alkaptonuria is a rare condition, apparently hereditary. It probably belongs with such irregularities as albinism. The condition is known to be present even when some of the tyrosin or other aromatic amino-acid is metabolized in a normal manner, and the older idea that bacterial decomposition is the cause of the appearance of the acid is no longer held. Homogentisic acid probably is not an intermediate product in normal tyrosin metabolism. If it is brought into contact with the serum of a non-alkaptonuric subject it is destroyed. Pathological changes do not occur to any extent in alkaptonuria, but there may be accessory difficulties, like the deposition of homogentisic acid in the joints, giving rise to an arthritis.<sup>1</sup>

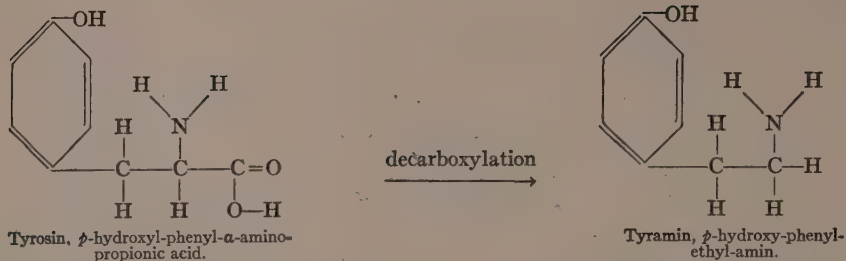
Tyrosin appears in the urine of subjects with atrophy of the liver, either acute yellow atrophy due to the self-digestion of the liver tissue by the liver-enzymes, or a similar condition due to phosphorus poisoning. Over 1.5 gms. of tyrosin per twenty-four hours may be recovered in some cases of acute yellow atrophy, but it does not appear in any such quantities in cases induced experimentally by feeding poisonous phosphorus.<sup>2</sup>

Tyrosin is acted upon by bacteria<sup>3</sup> in the intestine and become converted by decarboxylation into substances of poisonous nature; thus it becomes an amin, *tyramin*, having the characteristics of causing a rise in blood-pressure. This may be the agent which induces the increased blood-pressure in intestinal obstruction, like chronic constipation, appendicitis, adhesions, etc.:

<sup>1</sup> Greek *arthron*, joint, and *itis*, a disease of (the word for disease is *nosos* and *-itis* is the feminine plural, to agree with the noun denoting what part of the body the disease affects; the word *nosos* is now left unwritten, but understood).

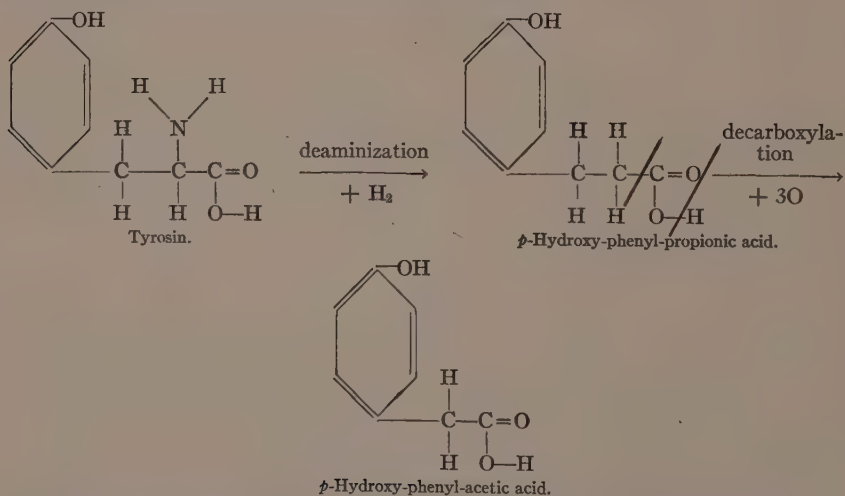
<sup>2</sup> This condition arose and still arises in countries in which matches are made of yellow phosphorus. As a consequence of its high toxicity, yellow phosphorus is prohibited in the manufacture of matches in most countries. Red, non-poisonous phosphorus is used in coating the boxes of "safety" matches.

<sup>3</sup> Certain strains affect this amino-acid, while others produce an amin from histon. The reason why bacteria form amins is given by Hanke and Koessler (University of Chicago), who find that it is a protective mechanism resorted to when the medium in which they live is unusually acid. These basic substances, like tyramin, histamin, etc., act as buffers (page 66). See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. 855, 1924.



This amin is a natural constituent of the pharmacological substance, ergot,<sup>1</sup> which has a counterpart in histamin, derived from histidin. The use of ergot in obstetrics does not involve the presence of tyramin, but histamin enters actively into the physiological use of ergot. It<sup>2</sup> causes a reversal of the action of tyramin on blood-pressure, that is, it lowers blood-pressure. It also exerts a strong action on the musculature of the uterus, causing it to contract.<sup>3</sup> Like the amins of the other amino-acids having an aromatic nucleus, tyramin affects the body in a manner similar to that of the sympathetic system, and the amins are called the sympathetico-mimetic substances.

Finally, if tyrosin be deaminized, it becomes first *p*-hydroxy-phenyl-propionic acid, which, in its turn, is converted into the acetic acid form by decarboxylation and oxidation.



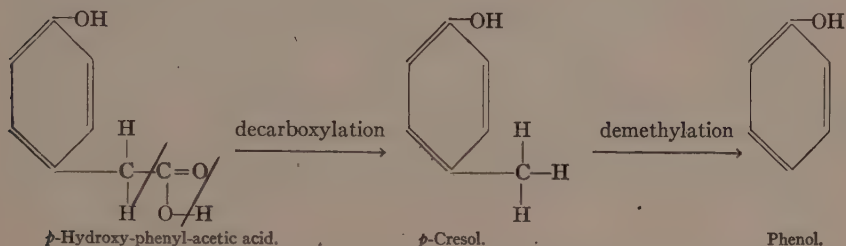
<sup>1</sup> Ergot is a fungus parasite of grains, especially of rye, from which ergot is obtained for commercial purposes. The resting stage of the reproductive organs affords the maximum amount of the drug. It is used in obstetrics to cause stoppage of the flow of blood after the child is born. The action is upon the smooth musculature of the uterus, which is caused to contract.

<sup>2</sup> For the comparative action of epinephrin, tyramin, and histamin see page 270.

<sup>3</sup> Page 647.



From the acetic form it is converted by decarboxylation into methyl-phenol, or cresol (para-cresol), and by oxidation into phenol, being excreted as such in the urine, or as a conjugated sulphuric acid, phenyl-sulphuric acid<sup>1</sup>; or conjugated as a glucuronate with glucuronic acid<sup>2</sup>:



The liver has been considered the chief organ for detoxications, but it is possible that the intestinal epithelium plays its part in the process.

*Folin and Looney's Quantitative Method for Tyrosin.*—Principle: Tryptophan, if present, is separated<sup>3</sup> from tyrosin. This is accomplished by mercuric sulphate which precipitates tryptophan. The compound is centrifuged and the supernatant liquid is used for tyrosin analyses.

Procedure: Using a Folin sugar-burette<sup>4</sup> transfer a given amount of the amino-acid mixture known to contain tyrosin into a 15-ml. centrifuge tube. Add 2 mls. of the Hopkins-Cole mercuric sulphate-sulphuric acid reagent.<sup>5</sup> Add enough 5 per cent. H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> solution to make a total volume of 10 mls. in the tube. Stopper and invert the tube, then shake it vigorously in order that the contents are thoroughly mixed. Let stand two hours. Centrifuge two minutes at about 1800 R. P. M. Decant the clear supernatant liquid into a test-tube. Tyrosin determination: Pipette 5 mls. of the supernatant liquid into a 100-ml. volumetric flask. To a second, similar flask, add 1 ml. of a standard tyrosin solution made up in 5 per cent. H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, each ml. of which contains 1 mg. of tyrosin. Add also to this flask 1 ml. of the

<sup>1</sup> Page 276. These substances make up the so-called "etheral sulphates" of the urine.

<sup>2</sup> Page 278.

<sup>3</sup> And may be determined later; the method is given under tryptophan.

<sup>4</sup> Chapter XVI.

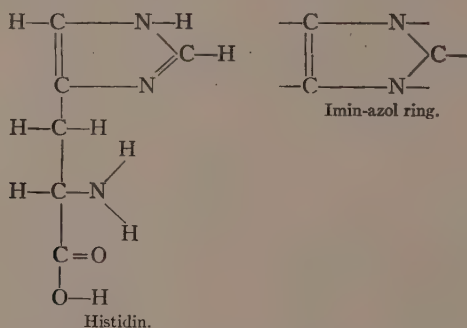
<sup>5</sup> Appendix. See Cole's Practical Physiological Chemistry, p. 89, C (i), edition 1919.

mercuric sulphate— $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  solution and 3 mls. of 5 per cent. sulphuric acid. To both flasks add 30 mls. of distilled water, 20 mls. of 5 per cent. sodium cyanid solution, and, finally, to each flask add 2 mls. of the special phenol reagent.<sup>1</sup> Mix, let stand half an hour, make up to the mark and compare in a colorimeter, standard at 20 mms.

Calculation:  $20 \times \frac{2}{\text{reading of unknown}} = \text{mgs. of tyrosin in the amount of amino-acid solution taken for the analysis.}$

**Group V. Heterocyclic Compounds.**—This group embraces the most complex and many of the most important  $\alpha$ -amino-acids. The complexity consists principally in the incorporation of a heterocyclic ring, such, as the imin-azol and the pyrrolidin rings into the molecule.

15. *Histidin, Beta-iminazole- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic Acid.*—The formula for histidin is given below. We have incorporated, also, a structural formula for the iminazol ring, which is very important for biochemistry, since it appears in some of the most characteristic substances of protid nature:



Histidin, then, is propionic acid ammoniated in the alpha position, with an iminazol ring attached to the beta-carbon atom. The relations of the iminazol ring to other configurations will be described during the course of the following pages. Histidin fed to a dog, causes increased excretion of urea in the urine. If we write the for-

mula for urea thus<sup>2</sup>:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C}-\text{OH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ , and incorporate a carbon chain, thus:

$\begin{array}{c} -\text{C}-\text{NH} \\ \parallel \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C} \quad \text{N}=\text{C}-\text{OH} \\ \parallel \quad \diagup \\ -\text{C}-\text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ , we may explain this phenomenon; the carbon chain

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

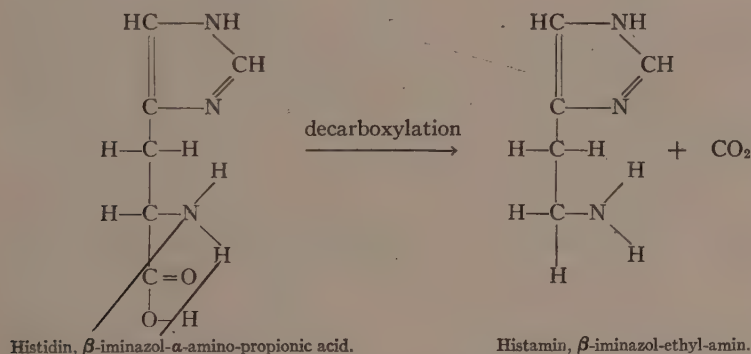
<sup>2</sup> Compare Chapter XV.

may be derived from many sources. We shall encounter this ring again when considering the important protids which make up the nucleus of the cell.<sup>1</sup>

Histidin is probably the basis of the so-called Ehrlich<sup>2</sup> di-azo reaction, which is clinically used for the detection of urochromogen in the urine, a means of diagnosing certain diseases like tuberculosis.<sup>3</sup>

The percentage weight of histidin varies in different tissues. The average weight is 2.0 gs. per cent. in animal protids, but it may be much higher (11.0 per cent. in the globin in hemoglobin). On the other hand, it is absent in some protids, as in the protamin of the salmon spermatozoön. Hanke and Koessler found none in normal human liver.

**Histamin.**—We have learned<sup>4</sup> how tyrosin became converted into a substance with powerful pharmacological effects, tyramin. Another substance belonging to the same general group occurs in ergot; this is histamin, of which we have spoken. The method of conversion of histidin to histamin is the same as that of tryosin into tyramin. Decarboxylation:



Histamin has been called a "poison to the capillaries." It is the most potent of the amins. Given by mouth, it is toxic to herbivores,

<sup>1</sup> Page 328.

<sup>2</sup> Ehrlich, Paul, German chemist, who described many substances used in treating parasitic diseases like syphilis. The reagent of the "Ehrlich Di-azo reaction" is di-azo-benzene-sulphonic acid. See Chapter XV.

<sup>3</sup> The test for urochromogen is also made by causing it to become oxidized to urochrome by means of potassium permanganate, as in the Moriz-Weisz clinical test for the presence of tuberculosis. However, a positive test of either kind is not universally accepted as certain indication of the presence of the disease.

<sup>4</sup> Page 266.

but not to carnivores. It is rendered non-toxic in the intestinal epithelium. Before stringent measures were enacted to prevent the distribution of the plant parasite, ergot, mentioned above, the host of which was rye and other cereals, many cases of gangrene appeared which were due to the histamin in the ergot accompanying the grains. When terminal gangrene occurs following the ingestion of ergot, it is due to the prolonged dilatation of the capillaries with associated constriction of the arterioles. The dilatation of the capillaries is due to the paralysis of the muscle whose function it is to diminish the diameter of the blood-vessels. The following table shows the characteristics and differences in the action of the three substances, epinephrin, tyramin, and histamin:

Substance.	Effect on uterus.	On blood-pressure.
Epinephrin.....	none	rise
Tyramin.....	none	rise
Histamin.....	contraction	fall

Confusion formerly existed in cases in which effects similar to those exhibited by histamin had been found, as following the administration of Witte's pepton.<sup>1</sup> It is now known that histamin is not necessarily present when such effects are found, for they may be caused by other agents, such as the secretion of the pituitary gland (pituitarin), pepton, etc. Amins are deaminized in the liver and in other tissues and hence become detoxicated. They are excreted in the same manner as the amino-acids tyrosin and histidin.

*The Putrefaction of Histidin.*—This process is due to bacteria of certain strains. It is comparable to similar changes of other amino-acids. The reactions are as shown at (1) on p. 271. Such substances are excreted in the urine to the extent of about 120–220 mgs. in twenty-four hours,<sup>2</sup> but some of the iminazole compounds are changed by disruption of the ring, shown at (2) on p. 271.

*Acids Containing a Pyrrolidin Ring:*

16. *l-Prolin,  $\alpha$ -pyrrolidin-carboxylic Acid.*—The formula for this amino-acid varies in many respects from that of others; its chemical relationships are evidently with the  $\alpha$ -amino-acids. Sørensen synthesized it artificially from an aliphatic acid known as  $\beta$ -hydroxy-valerianic acid. The latter has not yet been proved to be an hydrolysis product of the protids, yet this is quite possible. The formula is shown at (3) on 271.

<sup>1</sup> Page 233.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter XV.

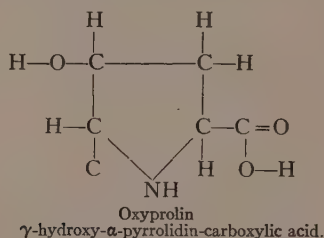




Prolin is distinguished from all other  $\alpha$ -amino-acids<sup>1</sup> by its ready solubility in strong ethanol. It is easily converted to a copper salt (blue). and, purified, white prolin may be obtained from the blue salt. Prolin is present in almost all protids. The casein of cow's and goat's milk has prolin in the molecule, but it has not been found in the casein of human milk. It is present in gelatin and closely allied substances in fairly large amounts. By conversion into lactic or to keto acids, prolin contributes to the formation of glucose. It resembles glutamic acid in some respects which have been discussed under lactam formation.<sup>2</sup> Since prolin contains the pyrrolidin ring it may contribute to the formation of hemoglobin.

The vapors of boiling prolin solutions give bright red color when brought into contact with a match-stick wetted with hydrochloric acid.

17. *l*-Oxyprolin,<sup>3</sup> *Gamma-hydroxy- $\alpha$ -pyrrolidin-carboxylic Acid*.—If oxyprolin be treated with a reducing agent, like hydriodic acid, it is converted into prolin. Theoretically, the hydroxyl, distinctive of oxyprolin, may occur on either the beta or gamma carbon atom, but is customary to consider the compound found in the hydrolysis products of protids as a gamma compound:



Oxyprolin is separated with difficulty from accompanying amino-acids. For this purpose all other amino-acids must be removed by crystallization or other means. Oxyprolin, like prolin, contains the pyrrolidin ring which is also characteristic of hemoglobin. Although little is known regarding the manner of synthesis of hemoglobin in the hemopoietic<sup>4</sup> part of bone (the marrow), it is probable that this ring is not synthesized in the marrow, but is brought there. The food,

<sup>1</sup> Except oxyprolin, a relation of prolin; see page 273.

<sup>2</sup> Page 253.

<sup>3</sup> It is better to call this compound "hydroxyprolin."

<sup>4</sup> Greek *'aima* (haima), blood, and *poieo*, to make; the blood-forming organs.

therefore probably furnishes this part of the coloring-matter of the blood. Of the pigments in the plant series from which our food is derived, chlorophyl, or green coloring-matter, is most similar to hemoglobin. Two sources, then, are available for the pyrrolidin ring in our food: (1) The amino-acids and (2) plant pigments.

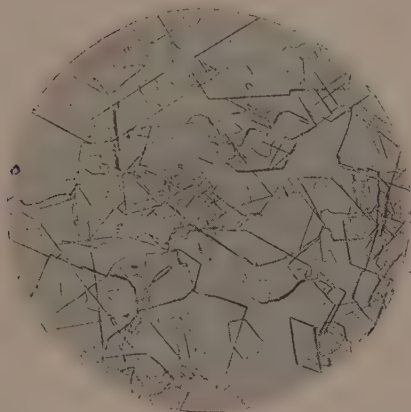
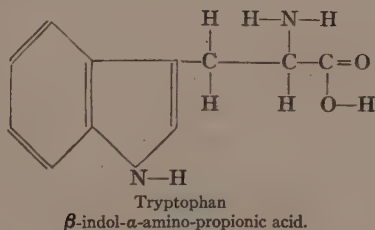


Fig. 103.—Tryptophan. Thin rhombic plates and hexagonal crystals. Magnification as in Fig. 92. (After Keenan in Journal of Biological Chemistry.)

Like prolin, oxyprolin differs from other amino-acids in being soluble in strong alcohol.

*Acids in which the Indol Ring is a Part of the Molecule:*

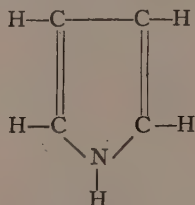
18. *l-Tryptophan, Beta-indol- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic Acid.*—The formula of this important acid is:



The molecule consists of:

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| (1) A homocyclic ring (benzene)              | } Indol ring. |
| (2) A heterocyclic ring (pyrrol)             |               |
| (3) An aliphatic amino-acid, propionic acid. |               |

The pyrrol ring attached to the benzene ring is an unsaturated pyrrolidin ring:



Pyrrol ring.

Tryptophan is responsible for many of the reactions used in the detection of protid.<sup>1</sup> It is probably a precursor of thyroxin (page 136). It is also responsible for certain putrefactive products of bacterial action. Since the presence of such products in urine indicates the degree of putrefaction in the alimentary tract to a certain extent, the indican test, devised to detect their presence in urine, is important. The process of putrefaction here is similar to what we have encountered before, namely, decarboxylation, etc.

Tryptophan is never present in conspicuous amounts in protids of any kind, but nevertheless it is of signal importance in metabolism. It is present minutely in the corn protid, zein, and for that reason this protid has been utilized to study the effects of feeding protids which lack certain amino-acids. Gelatin is poor in tryptophan. An animal fed upon gelatin as the source of protid cannot be brought into nitrogenous equilibrium, as has already been stated,<sup>2</sup> but if tryptophan is added in minute quantities to the diet, this equilibrium is established at least for short periods.<sup>3</sup> Similar statements may be made concerning zein.

We know that acid hydrolysis products of protid, when purified, cannot be made to take the place of the original protid, whereas enzyme-digested protid products can. This is explained by the fact that in acid hydrolysis tryptophan is changed (deaminized, oxidized, or racemized), and hence is no longer available.

<sup>1</sup> Page 306.

<sup>2</sup> Page 249.

<sup>3</sup> The reason for this modifying clause to the statement that restoration of nitrogenous equilibrium may be made is that the experiments upon which the statement is based involved the restoration only of tryptophan, and two other factors were left out of account, namely: (1) Other amino-acids absent from gelatin (cystin, isoleucin, and tyrosin) and (2) vitamins.<sup>4</sup> Tyrosin was added in certain experiments, but in these no attention was directed to other amino-acids nor to vitamins.

<sup>4</sup> Page 133.

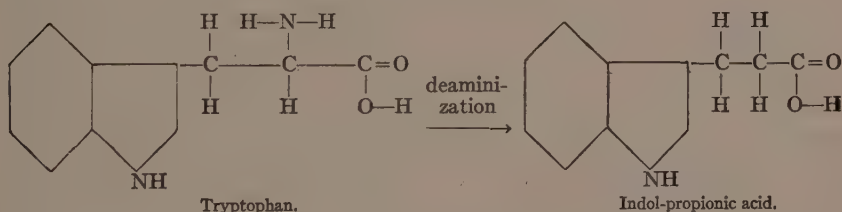
*Folin and Looney's Quantitative Method for Tryptophan.*—Principle: The residue left from the separation of tyrosin<sup>1</sup> is treated similarly to the manner in which tyrosin is determined. The difference in method concerns the treatment of the standard.

Procedure: Dilute the residue in the centrifuge tube which is left after the supernatant liquid carrying the tyrosin has been removed with 5 per cent. sulphuric acid solution to make 10 mls. volume. Stopper, invert, shake, and centrifuge. Decant it, retaining the residue. Add to the precipitate and to the precipitate obtained by similar treatment of a standard tryptophan solution containing 1 mg. tryptophan, 10 mls. of distilled water, then stopper both tubes and shake them vigorously. Immediately add 4 mls. of 5 per cent. NaCN solution, stopper the tubes again, and mix. Transfer the contents of the tubes separately to one of two 100-ml. volumetric flasks to make a volume of about 50 mls. in each flask. Add to each flask 20 mls. of saturated Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution and, while agitating the contents, add 2 mls. of the phenol reagent.<sup>2</sup> Let stand half an hour, make up to the mark, and compare in a colorimeter, using the standard at 20° C.

Calculation:  $\frac{20}{\text{Reading of the unknown}} = \text{mgs. of tryptophan in the sample of amino-acid mixture taken.}$

Tryptophan undergoes change in two ways:

(1) In the body it may become deaminized, forming indol-propionic acid as shown in the following equations:



Then the indol-propionic acid undergoes  $\beta$ -oxidation.<sup>3</sup> Acetic acid is split off and the residual indol compound is then conjugated with some substance like glucuronic acid<sup>4</sup> and excreted in this detoxicated form. The acetic acid is used for further oxidation, being

<sup>1</sup> Page 267.

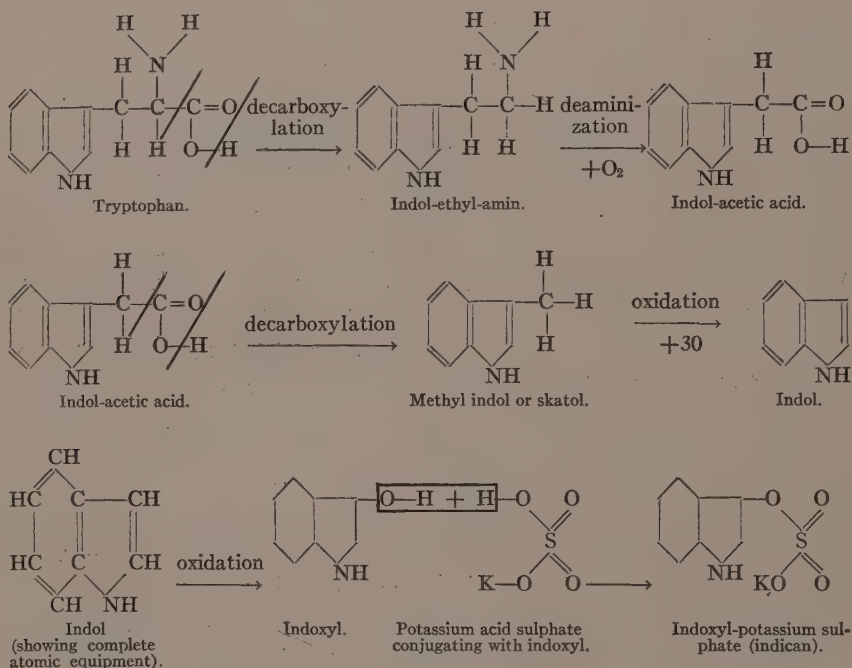
<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Page 261.

<sup>4</sup> The acid is derived from glucose and belongs in the same series as galacturonic acid (pages 152 and 278).

burned ultimately to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . While the liver is concerned in such disruptions of molecules, all tissues share these properties to some extent.

(2) In the intestine it is subject to bacterial action. Here the process leading to simpler compounds is chiefly that of decarboxylation:



Indican, or the potassium salt of indoxyl-sulphuric acid, is excreted in the urine as one of the "ethereal sulphates." The indican test involves an oxidation of the indican to make the colored substance indigo, which is formed by the removal of two molecules of potassium acid sulphate one from each of two conjugated molecules of indican, as follows (indican reaction):



In the test which is given in the section on Urinalysis<sup>1</sup> the oxidizing agent is some substance like bleaching-powder,  $\text{CaCl}(\text{O.Cl})$ , ferric chlorid in  $\text{HCl}$  solution,<sup>2</sup> cupric sulphate in  $\text{HCl}$  solution, potassium persulphate  $(\text{KSO}_4)_2$ , or perchlorate,  $\text{KClO}_4$ . The usefulness of the test as an index of the degree of putrefaction in the intestine and therefore to the activity of that organ has already been commented on. If feces accumulate for any length of time in the intestine, tryptophan undergoes changes due to the action of bacteria.<sup>3</sup> Indol results and is absorbed into the blood through the intestinal wall, is conjugated with sulphuric acid or its salt, and is then excreted as indican through the kidneys. If there is only a slight retention of the feces in the intestine, skatol is formed, which imparts to the feces an extremely disagreeable and characteristic odor. Skatol may even appear in the breath during fecal retention. Retention of the feces in the lower portion of the large intestine does not contribute to the indican of the urine to a marked degree, but obstruction in the region of the ileocecal valve and especially in the small intestine above it, causes indicanuria. In cases of gangrene or of purulent masses like cancer indican appears in the urine. These facts lead to the assumption that tissue enzymes rather than bacteria cause the various chemical processes just described which produce indican from tryptophan. Although indol is not highly toxic, it has been held responsible for many ills affecting mankind; and there is convincing evidence that its continued administration will result in certain lesions (renal changes, affections of the adrenal glands, etc.). Lee<sup>4</sup> has found that indol produces typical fatigue effects in muscles. Experimentally, it induces accelerated cell division, leading to rapid proliferation of epithelial tissue. Skatol<sup>5</sup> also has the property of inducing or accelerating cell growth in experimental conditions. Skatol, like indol, becomes conjugated with sulphuric acid salts to form skatoxyl-sulphuric acid after previous oxidation to skatoxyl, which is analogous with indoxyl. Skatol is formed in smaller quantities than indol; it is not in the chain of chemical changes giving rise to indol. If the sulphuric acid salt in the liver and other organs where conjugation takes place is insuffi-

<sup>1</sup> Chapter XV.

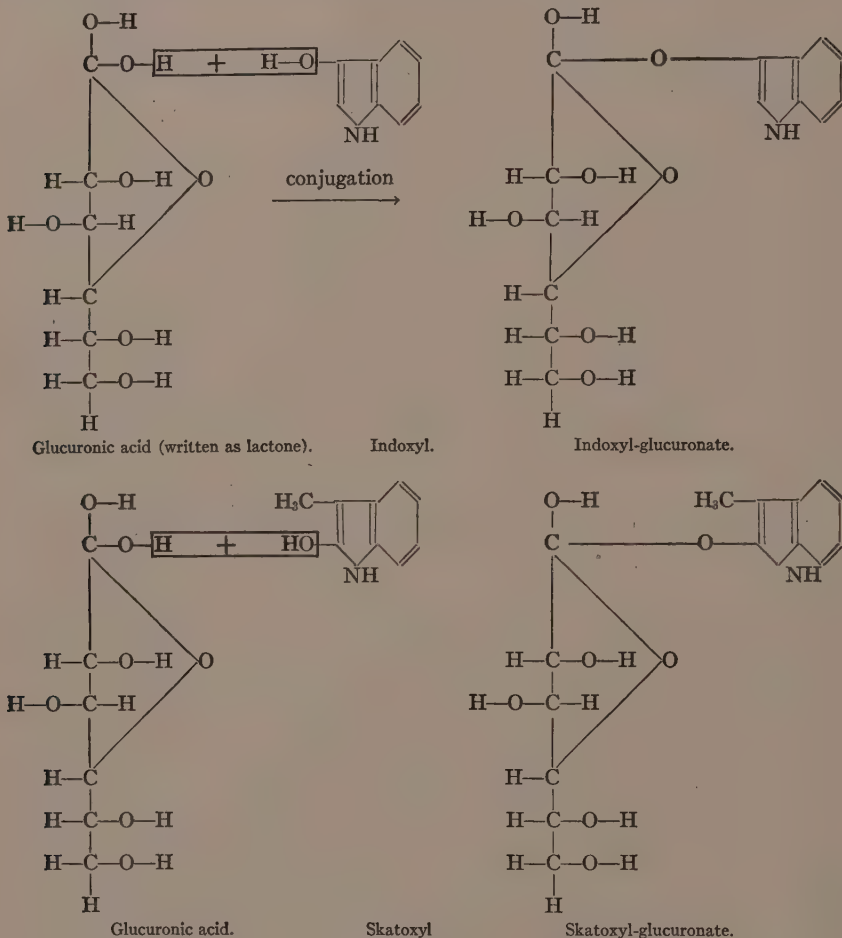
<sup>2</sup> This is used in the method of Obermayer (Fr. Obermayer, a Vienna physician and biochemist), Chapter XV.

<sup>3</sup> Page 276.

<sup>4</sup> Lee, F. S., see page 11.

<sup>5</sup> Other substances, like cholesterol, have been found to be associated with increased proliferation of certain cells.

cient, both indol and skatol conjugate with one of the acids of glucose oxidation, glucuronic acid,<sup>1</sup> as follows:



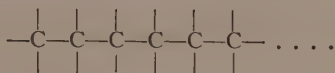
These conjugations are very important, since (1) they represent the way in which the unopened aromatic ring leaves the body, and (2) they show how exceedingly necessary protective processes of detoxication by conjugation occur in typical cases.

#### THE MANNER OF LINKING AMINO-ACIDS INTO PROTIDS

Amino-acids are ammoniated fatty acids, and therefore consist of a chain of carbon atoms. When these acids are formed into protid,

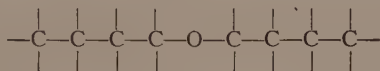
<sup>1</sup> Page 162. See note, page 275.

how are they combined? Is one acid linked with another through carbon atoms to make a long chain of carbon atoms as follows?



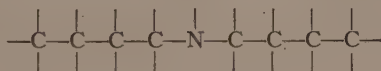
The difficulty with such a scheme is that it would make protid a very long branched chain with side-chains of carbons of about the same value as the carbon atoms in the main chain. There would be, therefore, no reason chemically why the chain should break up into separate amino-acids when protid is acted upon by acid or enzymes.

Another possibility is that the linkage is through an oxygen atom as follows:

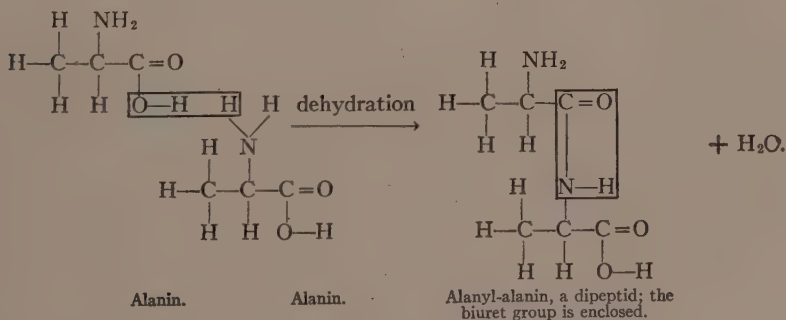


This ether-like linkage would require free hydroxyls such as occur in glucids and in glycerol in the case of the fats. However, serin, oxyprolin, and tyrosin are the only amino-acids which bear such radicles and, therefore, this theory would not explain the linkage of many other forms of amino-acids into protid. The bonding could not be by way of carboxyl radicles to carboxyl radicles, for such combinations are impossible.

A third possibility is linkage by way of a nitrogen atom:



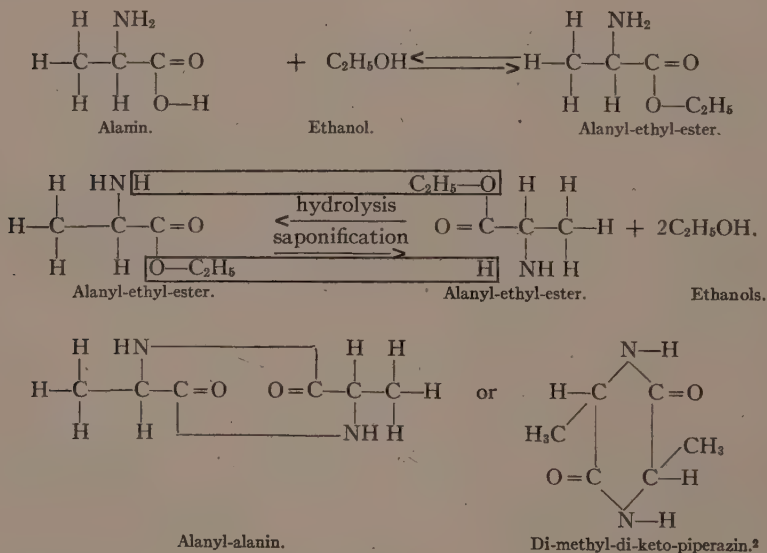
We may take as an example the linkage of a simple amino-acid like alanin with another molecule of the same kind of amino-acid:



We have indicated by solid lines the nitrogen atom and its adjacent carbon atoms linking the two amino-acids, alanin and alanin, into the di-peptid, alanyl-alanin. The process is one of hydrosynthesis, a molecule of water being eliminated for each amino-acid added.

Abderhalden<sup>1</sup> believes that a simple linkage like that just described is unlikely since dissociation of the protid molecule requires such vigorous chemical means.

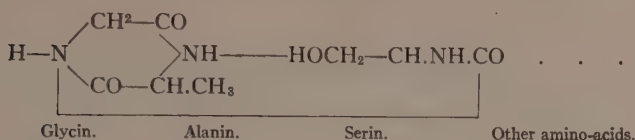
It is probable that the amino-acids are linked in a cyclic form. We may call this method the *anhydrid linkage*. Such cyclic anhydrids have been known for many years, but it was assumed that ordinary amino-acids became transformed into these compounds on standing, especially at higher temperatures. An example of such a transformation is given, the union between two adjacent amino-acids being effected by converting them into esters:



All of the reactions are reversible. The reader will observe that in these substances the linkage is the same as in the preceding scheme, namely, by way of the biuret bond, HNC=O. The following example shows how other amino-acids may become a part of the protid, through the diketopiperazin linkage:

<sup>1</sup> Page 235.

<sup>2</sup> The "keto" radicles are the  $\text{—C=O}$  groups in positions 2 and 5.



**Proof of the Nitrogen Linkage in Protids.**—We shall present two reasons for believing in this form of linkage. These reasons are capable of practical demonstration by the student, and each method involves a fundamental laboratory procedure.

(1) *The Biuret Reaction:*

**EXERCISE 31.**—Place 5 mls. of egg-white (1 per cent.) in a test-tube and add half its volume of 10 per cent. sodium hydroxid solution. Mix. Now add 1 drop of 0.5 per cent. cupric sulphate solution while agitating the contents of the tube and note the appearance of a violet color in the protid—NaOH—CuSO<sub>4</sub> solution. This is known as the biuret color and the test is the most characteristic one for the presence of protid.

*Gies*<sup>1</sup> *Modification of the Biuret Test.*—The reagent is made up in stock solution.<sup>2</sup> The test is performed simply by adding carefully to form a layer by means of a pipette one volume of the reagent to one of the unknown solution. At the zone of contact a violet color appears if there is protid in solution. The densities of the unknown and of Gies' reagent are similar, and zoning occurs only when care is taken.

The principle of the biuret test may be illustrated, practically, as follows:

**EXERCISE 32.**—Repeat the foregoing Exercise, using, in place of the protid solution, a few dry crystals of urea. Drop them into a dry test-tube. Heat the tube gently in the flame until whitish vapors appear in the tube; then dilute the residue with 5 mls. of the alkali as before and add cupric sulphate.<sup>3</sup> A biuret color develops in the solution.

The name "biuret" is given to the substance which is formed on

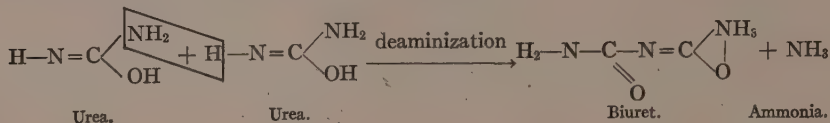
<sup>1</sup> Gies, William J., Professor of Biochemistry, College of Physicians, Columbia University, New York (see Fig. 127; also page 22).

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Or use Gies' biuret reagent as described.



heating urea in the test-tube; two molecules of urea condense to form the substance biuret (bi-urea) as follows:



In the formula given above for biuret there are two configurations similar to that linking two alanyl radicles in the di-peptid, alanyl-alanin, described on page 280. Alanyl-alanin does not give the biuret reaction, while biuret does. It is the presence of *two* groups equivalent to  $\text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{O}$  that is responsible for the reaction of biuret. Other configurations of a similar sort give the reaction:



Therefore, the configuration which we have used above<sup>1</sup> when present twice in a molecule is responsible for the test, and although in the di-peptids but one such radicle appears (as in alanyl-alanin) and the biuret reaction is negative, one may make it positive by adding a third amino-acid to make a tri-peptid.

Logically, we must assume that the linkage in the di-peptid is the same as in the tri-peptid, since the same chemical procedure is passed through in making both kinds of acids.

(2) *The Comparison of Amino-nitrogen and Total Nitrogen in Protid.*—If we are correct in believing that the natural linkage of amino-acids into protids involves the configuration  $\text{HNCO}$ , then we should expect only a small amount of nitrogen such as is present in isolated amino-acids to be given off from the protid. This would be in the form of amino-nitrogen,  $\text{NH}_2$ . However, it is probable that the protid nitrogen is largely in the form of imino-nitrogen,  $\text{NH}$ . We shall proceed to demonstrate this fact by making two quantitative determinations as follows:

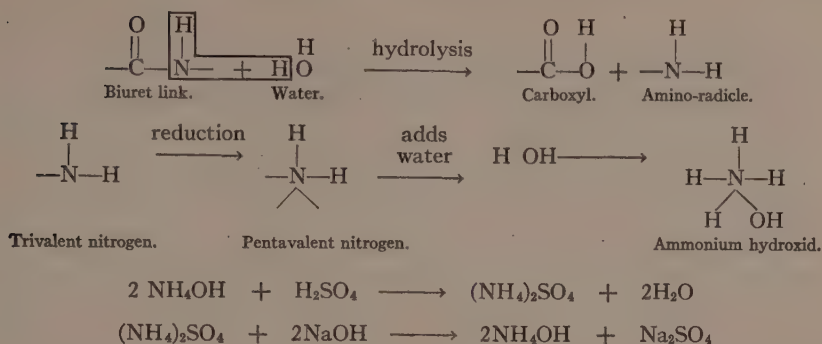
(a) Determination of the total nitrogen by the Kjeldahl method.

(b) Determination of the amino-nitrogen,  $\text{NH}_2$ , by the nitrous acid method of Van Slyke.

(a) *The Kjeldahl Method<sup>2</sup> for Total Nitrogen.*—The reactions as far as protid is concerned are as follows:

<sup>1</sup> Page 280.

<sup>2</sup> For the complete reactions of the Kjeldahl method see Chapter XV.



EXERCISE 33.—Obtain from the stock-room a weighed sample of pure casein containing about 1 g. of the substance, the exact weight of which is known. Transfer it quantitatively<sup>1</sup> to the mouth of a 700-ml. Kjeldahl flask<sup>2</sup> and wash down with about 5 mls. of a 1 per

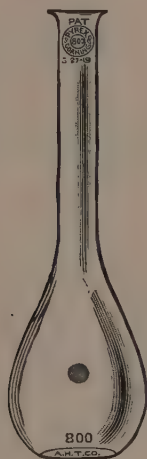


Fig. 104.—The Kjeldahl type flask. The long neck is to prevent too great concentration of the contents during boiling and to serve as a condenser.

cent. sodium or lithium carbonate solution, which is capable of dissolving the casein. Now add to the flask about 25 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid and a crystal of cupric sulphate. Place the flask on the digestion shelf (Fig. 105), the neck of the flask being inserted into

<sup>1</sup> By this term is meant that absolutely all of a sample is transferred without error.

<sup>2</sup> Page 284 and Fig. 104. The long neck of the flask is to prevent too great concentration of the contents of the flask by evaporation.

one of the round apertures in the lead pipe designed to carry away the fumes which escape from the flask. Light the burner beneath the flask and with an average flame heat the flask until the contents begin to boil; then add 5 gs. crystalline potassium sulphate, and continue heating as actively as possible until the contents have passed through a brownish-black stage, a yellow stage, and finally a clear blue. Remove the flask with an asbestos glove and wash the contents around the interior of the flask until all carbonaceous material and extra sulphate adhering to the neck and sides of the flask are added to the liquid contents at the bottom of the flask. Replace the flask on the digestion shelf and let the contents boil for one hour or longer. Then allow the flask to cool until the hands will tolerate the temperature of the glass.



Fig. 105.—Folin's apparatus for digestion of substances in the determination of total nitrogen by the Kjeldahl method.

Cool further under a stream of cold water from the tap, allowing small amounts of tap-water to enter the mouth of the flask until the contents are diluted to about 400 mls. Now add some pebbles to prevent bumping during the latter part of the next stage of distillation.<sup>1</sup>

Add about 5 mls. of an indicator,<sup>2</sup> which should show that acid is present in the flask. Set the flask aside until the contents settle and give your attention to the preparation of the standard solution which is to receive the ammonia distilled from the flask. Take a clean pint milk-bottle and place in it exactly 125 mls. of decinormal

<sup>1</sup> The following treatment may be delayed at this point, but if the next step is taken, the process cannot be interrupted until the end of the distillation, which requires about one and one-half hours. Bits of broken glass, small lumps of pumice, or glass beads may be used in place of pebbles.

<sup>2</sup> Congo red is desirable, but sodium-alizarin sulphonate, methyl red, or methyl orange may be used.

acid<sup>1</sup> by means of a pipette or burette. Adjust the bottle so that the glass tube from the lower portion of one of the condensers of the condensing apparatus dips below the surface of the acid in the bottle (Fig. 107, M), add about 2 mls. of congo red, or whatever indicator was used above, to the acid. Now carefully and without agitating the contents incline the Kjeldahl flask slightly and pour down the inside of the neck about 125 mls. of concentrated NaOH solution (50 per cent.) so that the alkali goes to the bottom of the flask. The acid should float upon this whitish alkali layer and may be distinguished by the



Fig. 106.—Principle of Kjeldahl distillation. The Kjeldahl flask (right) contains the nitrogen in the form of ammonia, which is distilled into the Erlenmeyer flask (left) which contains known quantity of acid of known normality.

characteristic color reaction of the indicator. You may now place the flask upon the condenser. Fit the neck of the flask with the rubber stopper containing the glass tube of the Reitmeyer bulb<sup>2</sup> attached to the blocked tin tube of the condenser. After the stopper is firmly in place, slowly rotate the contents of the flask until the reaction is alkaline as shown by the indicator present. This is due to the neutral-

<sup>1</sup> It is immaterial what kind of acid is used, save that it must be a strong acid like  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,  $\text{HCl}$ , etc. (See page 43.)

<sup>2</sup> Figure 107. Reitmeyer, a German chemist. The purpose of the bulb is to catch any of the contents of the flask which happen to boil up through the neck of the flask; the caustic alkali from such source would partly or completely neutralize the acid in the milk bottle and destroy the accuracy of the determination.

ization of the acid by the alkali.<sup>1</sup> Immediately after this the Bunsen burner beneath the flask must be lighted and the flame adjusted so that the contents will come to a boil in about five minutes. At this step strict attention must be given to the apparatus so that the contents do not boil up suddenly and overflow. The contents should come to a boil gently and the boiling continued until the milk bottle is three-quarters full.<sup>2</sup> To stop the process of distillation, *first remove the milk bottle*, permitting the glass tube dipping into it to rest in an

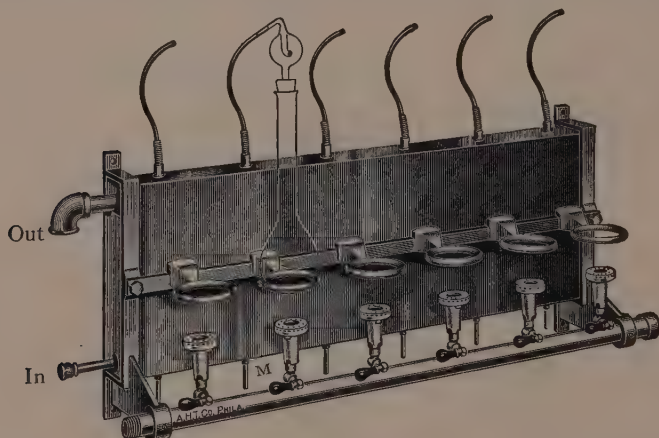


Fig. 107.—Folin type distilling shelf for total nitrogen determinations by means of the Kjeldahl method. A Kjeldahl flask is shown in place. Cold water must pass through the condenser reservoir from the inlet, In, to the outlet, Out.

inclined position upon the mouth of the bottle; then, and then only, extinguish the flame of the burner beneath the flask.

Now, using the total contents of the milk bottle, titrate with standard alkali and determine how much of the acid has been neutralized by the ammonia distilled from the flask. Calculation: Multiply the *volume* of nitrogen solution ( $0.1\text{ n. acid} \approx 0.1\text{ n. N}$ ) by the *mass* of N in 1 ml.  $0.1\text{ n. N}$  solution; this is  $0.0014\text{ g.}$  The result is grams of nitrogen in the amount of substance taken (page 289).

<sup>1</sup> Care must be taken that this is done, for if the flame is applied to the flask before the acid and alkali have mixed, the contents will be forced through the neck of the flask or the flask will be shattered, which is an element of danger to the manipulator, besides spoiling the determination.

<sup>2</sup> If at any time the contents of the milk-bottle begin to turn alkaline, another 25-ml. portion of decinormal acid must be added as quickly as possible, for the appearance of an alkaline color indicates that there is not enough acid in the bottle to neutralize the ammonia distilling over.



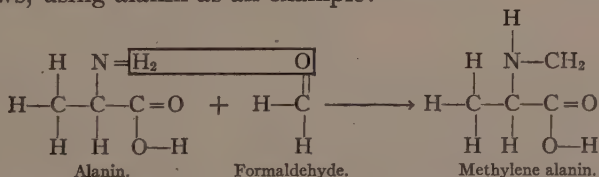
The average amount of nitrogen in protid is about 16 gs. for 100 gs. of protid, or, expressed in decimal fractions,

$$\frac{100}{16} = 6.25$$

If the amount of nitrogen in a given sample of protid is known and is multiplied by the average percentage of nitrogen determined in protid, that is, 6.25, an approximation of the number of grams of protid corresponding to that number of grams of nitrogen will be obtained. The factor 6.25 is a convenient figure whereby one may tell approximately how much protid corresponds to a given amount of nitrogen.<sup>1</sup> Having determined the total amount of nitrogen in the sample of casein, let us proceed to estimate the amount of amino-nitrogen in a sample of the same preparation of casein.

(b) *The Determination of the Amino-nitrogen by the Nitrous Acid Method.*—There are several excellent methods for estimating, quantitatively the amount of  $-\text{NH}_2$  nitrogen in solutions. For the purpose of proving the small amount of this form of nitrogen existing freely in protids, we shall use the following method first as preliminary to the Van Slyke procedure following.

*Preliminary Determination by the Formol-titration Method of Sørensen.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: Amino-acids unite with either acids or bases. They are amphoteric<sup>3</sup> to a certain degree, that is, they do not show pronounced alkalinity or acidity, for the amino-portion (basic) is balanced against the carboxylic (acid). Therefore, if either portion is neutralized, or altered so that it no longer counteracts the effect of the other portion, it is possible to titrate the acidity or basicity of the latter. In the method of Sørensen this is accomplished by methylating the amino-radicle by means of formaldehyde. The reaction is as follows, using alanin as an example:



<sup>1</sup> This factor is constantly used in studies on metabolism. The nitrogen appears in the urine chiefly as urea, uric acid, ammonia, creatinin, and creatin. These result from the breaking down of the tissues or from foods. The nitrogen determined multiplied by the factor 6.25 gives approximately the number of grams of protids, and this serves as an index of body tissue catabolism.

<sup>2</sup> Page 37.

<sup>3</sup> Page 103.

The methylene compound, by way of its carboxyl, is capable of neutralizing a base, like decinormal NaOH. There is in the majority of amino-acids<sup>1</sup> but one carboxyl radicle; hence the number of amino-acids which may have free carboxyls is determined by finding how many equivalents of OH must be added to neutralize the hydrogen of the carboxyls. The calculation is the same as in the Kjeldahl method for total nitrogen.

**EXERCISE 34. Preparation of Neutral Formalin.**—Commercial formalin contains formic and other acids as impurities; therefore, in this method, it is necessary to neutralize a supply of formalin. To 50 mls. of commercial formalin solution add 3 drops of phenolphthalein solution as indicator and titrate with decinormal sodium hydroxid solution until a faint pink color appears. Then add 1 drop of the alkali. Before titrating, place 10 mls. of this solution in a beaker or test-tube and have it near the vessel which contains the unknown, to serve as a color control to which titration should be carried. *Procedure:* Obtain a sample of casein, weigh carefully, and record the exact weight. Then suspend in 20 mls. of distilled water in a beaker. Add 3 drops of phenolphthalein solution as indicator and titrate with decinormal NaOH solution to the color of the sample prepared above. You have neutralized any acid which may be present.<sup>2</sup> Next add 10 mls. of the neutralized formalin by means of a volumetric cylinder; the pink color is discharged. Titrate with 0.1 normal NaOH, drop by drop, until the solution is neutralized, as indicated by the reappearance of the pink color of the phenolphthalein. Note the number of mls. of 0.1 normal alkali used. Calculation: Here, as in the Kjeldahl method, 0.1 normal NaOH is equivalent to 0.1 normal  $H^+$  and each  $H^+$  corresponds to one carboxyl; there is one carboxyl to each atom of nitrogen in the monamino radicle  $NH_2$ .<sup>3</sup> A decinormal ni-

<sup>1</sup> The exceptions are the dicarboxylic acids, which may be called the acid compounds, while the di-amino-acids and histidin compose the basic forms; the remaining amino-acids (mon-amino-mono-carboxylic acids), including those with one amino and one carboxylic radicle, and also tyrosin and tryptophan, may be termed the neutral acids (amphoteric). Cystin, although it has two carboxyls, has also two amino radicles to balance them. No amino-acid is strictly amphoteric, as there is a predominance of acidity or basicity in all when delicate pH measurements are made.

<sup>2</sup> The instructor should insure that the sample is neutral.

<sup>3</sup> This must be modified when other forms of amino-acids are being analyzed; the method does not distinguish acids qualitatively.

trogen solution contains, per ml. of solution, 0.0014 g.<sup>1</sup> If  $w$  mls. of decinormal alkali are used in the titration, there will be  $w \times 0.0014$  gs. of nitrogen in the sample of casein taken.

The average amount of free amino-nitrogen in protid is 6.8 gs.<sup>2</sup> per 100 gs. of protid. For our purpose this demonstrates that the amino-acids are so linked up with each other that there are few amino-groups and carboxyls. It does not show the exact number of such radicles in protid, because there is reason to believe that protid is linked with other substances such as glucose, lecithin, etc. Such linkage probably occurs between the carboxyl-radicles, although there are other possibilities, and it is not positively known how extensive such association is. However, it is evident from the following exercise that whatever the form of linkage of the separate amino-acids in the protid molecule, it may be possible by hydrolysis to separate them completely from each other. Comparison will be made in the following Exercise between the data derived in Exercise 34 and those obtained when the amino-nitrogen is derived from separate amino-acids after hydrolysis:

EXERCISE 35. *Preparation of the Hydrolysis Products.*—To 10 gs. of dry, purified casein<sup>3</sup> in a 100-ml. Florence flask fitted with a condenser (Fig. 108) add 25 mls. distilled water, mix well, and then add 3 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid. Place on a wire gauze over a Bunsen burner, and boil gently for a period of three hours, interrupting the hydrolysis when necessary, but resuming it at the beginning of the following period. It is necessary to add a small amount of water occasionally to keep the solution at its original volume, so that it will not become too concentrated. At the end of the boiling make the digest up to 100 mls. by means of distilled water and filter off the black or brown residue from the liquid part of the digest, saving both portions.

Filtrate: Neutralize the  $H_2SO_4$  by means of barium carbonate solution (litmus). Filter. Use this filtrate for the determination of amino-nitrogen by the Van Slyke procedure given below.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Page 286.

<sup>2</sup> Not to be confused with the percentage of nitrogen in protid, which is 16 per cent. or, stated in decimal fraction, 6.25. The corresponding factor for free amino-nitrogen is  $\frac{100}{6.8} = 1.48$ .

<sup>3</sup> The casein should be of the same sample as that used in the previous Exercise.

<sup>4</sup> Page 291.

Residue: For the purpose of comparison, which cannot be made quantitatively exact in class work, this fraction should be subjected to further hydrolysis, which may be accomplished by noting the volume of the material and adding 5 mls. of concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , then placing the digest in an autoclave for two hours, after which the above neutralization is repeated. Van Slyke or Sørensen determination may now be made as before. After the determination has been made by either method, it is evident that amino-nitrogen has greatly increased during hydrolysis, which indicates that the molecule of water,

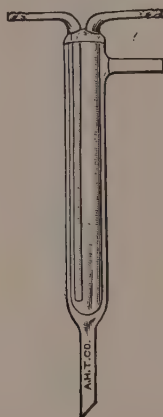
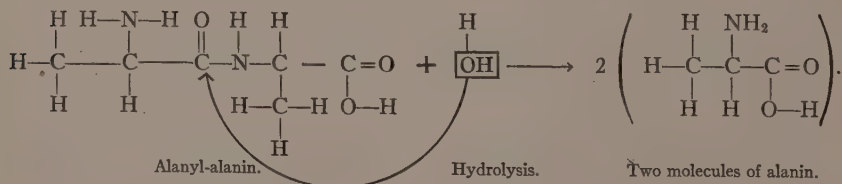


Fig. 108.—The Hopkins reflux condenser. Cold water from the tap enters the left-hand tube at the top and leaves by the upper right-hand tube. The larger side-tube is to relieve the pressure within the condenser.

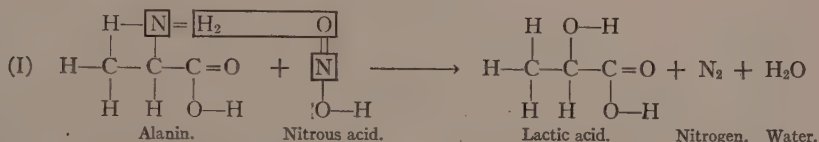
which was abstracted from the amino-acids during their synthesis into protid, has been restored to them, so that the imid,  $\text{NH}$ , nitrogen becomes converted into amino-nitrogen,  $\text{NH}_2$  and the carboxyl is completed by the addition of the rest of the molecule of water, the hydroxyl. This is the process of digestion (alanin):



Each separated molecule of non-amino-acid has a free carboxyl. When the formaldehyde methylates the amino-group, destroying its

alkalinity, the titration gives the number of amino-acids, by giving the number of carboxyls.

**EXERCISE 36.** *The Van Slyke Method for Gasometric Determination of Aliphatic Amino-acids.*—This exercise may be done by the student himself, if apparatus is available, or it may be demonstrated by instructors to small groups of students. Principle: Nitrous acid<sup>1</sup> deaminizes the amino-acid and adds its own nitrogen to make a molecule of nitrogen,  $\text{N}\equiv\text{N}$ , or  $\text{N}_2$  (alanin):



The nitrous acid is readily and conveniently obtained by treating the solid sticks of potassium or sodium nitrite,  $\text{NaNO}_2$ , with acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ :



Besides these products, carbon dioxide and other gases, especially nitric acid,  $\text{NO}$ , are produced, and inasmuch as the procedure is one of gas analysis, gases besides nitrogen must be absorbed. This is accomplished by means of a solution of potassium permanganate, a strongly oxidizing reagent, and alkali, like  $\text{NaOH}$ . Carbon dioxide is removed by the alkali, to form sodium carbonate, while the colorless  $\text{NO}$  undergoes reaction with the permanganate:



Some  $\text{NO}$  takes on, during the early stages of the process, atmospheric oxygen and becomes the yellow-brownish peroxid,  $\text{NO}_2$ ; this is converted to nitrous acid in the Hempel pipette.<sup>2</sup>

*Determination.*—The apparatus<sup>3</sup>: Note that there are three

<sup>1</sup>  $\text{HNO}_2$  or  $\text{H}-\text{O}-\text{N}=\text{O}$ .

<sup>2</sup> Figure 109, J.

<sup>3</sup> The "micro" form is described, but the description applies with slight changes to the larger form.



principal parts to the apparatus: (1) The deaminizing bulb (Fig. 111, B), with its attendant burettes for filling it (A for the unknown, C for the reagents, and L for caprylic alcohol, phenyl ether, etc., which are capable of lowering surface tension and preventing foam). (2)

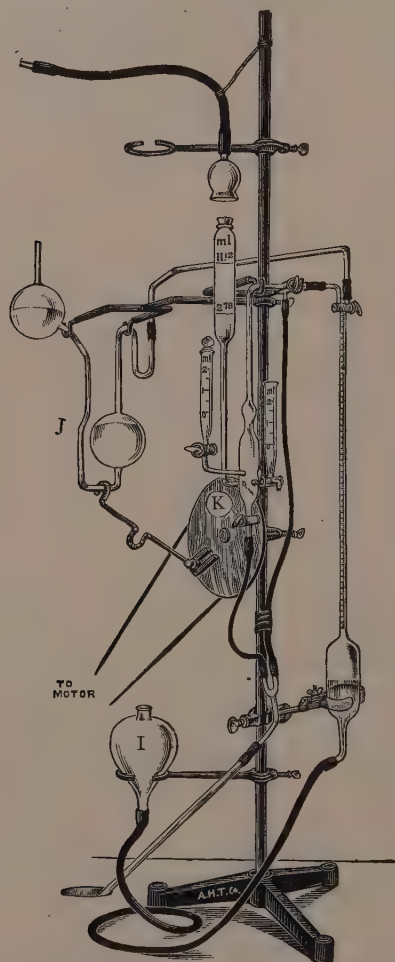


Fig. 109.—Van Slyke gasometric amino-nitrogen apparatus.

A nitrometer (Fig. 112), resembling an inverted burette. (3) Absorption apparatus, a Hempel<sup>1</sup> pipette (Fig. 109, J and Fig. 110) containing two intercommunicating bulbs which are filled with an alkaline permanganate solution.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hempel, German chemist, especially known for his work in gas analysis.

<sup>2</sup> For reagents see Appendix.

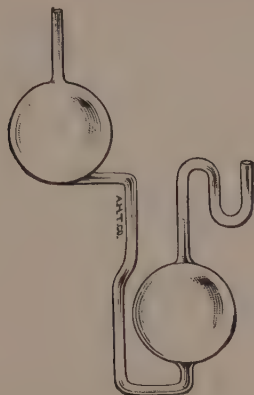


Fig. 110.—Hempel gas pipette for use with the Van Slyke gasometric method for amino-acids. The left-hand bulb serves as a reservoir for the alkaline permanganate which comes into contact with the gas from the deaminization in the bulb to the right.

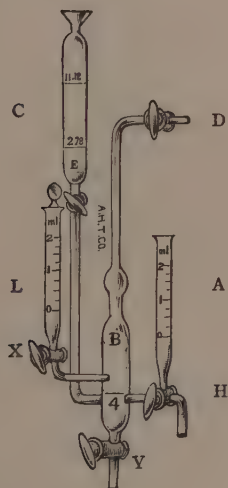


Fig. 111.—Details of the Van Slyke gasometric apparatus for amino-acids. The parts from left to right are: Burette for holding anti-foaming mixture; burette for holding reagents ( $\text{HNO}_2$  and  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ ); deaminization bulb; burette for holding unknown being analyzed. (See Figs. 109, 110, 112.)

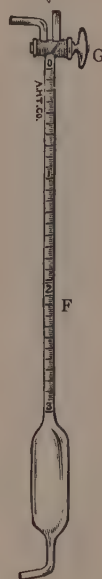


Fig. 112.—The gas burette of the Van Slyke gasometric method for amino-acids.

Procedure: (1) Generation of the nitrous acid: Close cocks *x* and *y*; open *d* to the drain. Into burette *c* introduce about 10 mls.<sup>1</sup> of sodium nitrite solution and then open *e* so that the nitrite solution flows into the deaminizing bulb *b*. Close *e* again and place about 3 mls. of glacial acetic acid in *c*. Now open *e*, whereupon the acid and nitrite solution mix, with accompanying evolution of gas.<sup>2</sup> Close *d*, *e* being open; the gas forces the liquid into *c*. If the solution is warm, the reaction progresses very rapidly, but it is usual to accelerate it by means of a motor working through an eccentric *k*. When the liquid accumulating in *c* reaches the upper line etched on the burette *c*, stop the motor, open *d*, and let the liquid in *c* force the mixture of gases<sup>3</sup> into the sink through *d*. Close *d* and repeat once again. At the last discharge of the gases, close *d* and allow the liquid to rise in *c* until about 4 mls. of liquid are left in *b*.<sup>4</sup> Close *e*, arrange *d* so that communication is made to the nitrometer *f*, and open *g* accordingly. Place the level *i* below the bottom of *f*. You have now obtained a supply of nitrous acid in *b* and are ready to add the unknown solution. Deaminization of the amino-acids: This is done by filling the burette *a* with the casein solution and adjusting the meniscus of the liquid to read at 2 mls. by means of the two-way cock *h*, draining the excess fluid into the sink. Now turn *h* so that you may deliver 2 mls. of the casein solution to the deaminizing bulb, *b*. Add a drop or two of anti-foaming solution from *l* and note the time and the room temperature. Start the motor and let run according to the following time limits:

	Minutes.
Temperature 15° to 20° C.....	5
Temperature 20° to 25° C.....	3
Temperature 25° to 30° C.....	2.5

At the end of the allotted time stop the motor, open *e* cautiously, and let the fluid run into *b*<sup>5</sup> and into the communication tubes as far as the cock *g* to insure that all the gas is obtained for analysis. Close

<sup>1</sup> Marks at 11.12 and 2.78 mls. are etched upon the sides of the burette in many cases, so that one may fill the burette to the 11.12 mark with nitrite solution and to the 2.78 mark with acetic acid. These amounts represent the stoichiological requirements for the interaction of the two reagents.

<sup>2</sup> Reaction II, page 291.

<sup>3</sup> Including the air which must be removed completely from the whole of the apparatus.

<sup>4</sup> Indicated by a horizontal line etched on the glass.

<sup>5</sup> Watch the amount of liquid in *c* to insure that it does not run out, thus admitting air. Supplement with freshly distilled water if necessary.

*g*, open *d* to the outside, and wash out the deaminizing bulb, *b*, through *c*; the final washings accumulated in *b* are removed by opening *y*. Now raise the level, *i*, and open the two-way cock *g* so that the gas flows into the Hempel pipette, *j*, allowing the water from the nitrom-



Fig. 113.—Barometer for use in determining the atmospheric pressure in gas analysis. Before reading, the ivory tip in the cistern (below) must be brought into immediate contact with the mercury by turning the milled head. Then the vernier (top) is moved into place by the milled head two-thirds up the tube on the right.



Fig. 114.—Barometer syphon-type. In reading the instrument subtract the reading made on the lower arm from that of the upper arm.

eter, *f*, to go as far as the opening into the first of the two bulbs of the Hempel pipette. (3) Absorption of the extra gases and the reading of the column of nitrogen gas: The wire passing from the eccentric wheel *k* is now attached to the Hempel apparatus and by slow<sup>1</sup> mo-

<sup>1</sup> Not over twice per second of time.

tion the gas and the liquids in this part of the apparatus are mixed. After running for about two minutes, stop the motor, lower *i*, open *g* for communication with *f*, and let the residual gas, which is pure nitrogen, pass into *f*, stopping the column of alkaline permanganate at *g*. Bring the level of the water in *i* in the plane of the meniscus of the water in *f*, take the reading, and enter it into your note-book. Clean the apparatus by raising *i* and washing out the gas through *d*. Then let water drive the alkaline permanganate out of the tube connecting with the pipette. You are now ready for another determination. Proceed with the calculation.

Calculation: Since the weight of 1 ml. of nitrogen gas under standard conditions<sup>1</sup> is 0.0012505 g., or 1.2505 mg., we could determine the weight of nitrogen in the number of mls. found in the above Exercise, if we had this volume expressed in standard pressure and temperature. The table of nitrogen over water<sup>2</sup> gives the weight of a ml. of amino-nitrogen<sup>3</sup> for various temperatures and pressures. To determine the weight of nitrogen in our sample, enter the table with the data (temperature and pressure) taken at the end of the experiment and locate the corresponding factor; multiply this factor by the nitrometer reading made above. The result is the weight of nitrogen gas derived from the volume of amino-acid solution taken for analysis at the beginning of the exercise.<sup>4</sup> If percentage is desired, multiply the result, converted to one ml.,<sup>5</sup> by 100.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 760 mm. mercury pressure (sea-level reading) and 0° C.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> The usual tables are for a molecule of nitrogen, N<sub>2</sub>; the figures in the amino-nitrogen table are half those of the usual table (as given, for example, in Gattermann's Practical Organic Chemistry, The Macmillan Co.), for only half the N comes from the amino-acid, the other half from the nitrous acid (see Equation I, page 291).

<sup>4</sup> Two mls. were used in this exercise, but other amounts (1, 5, 10, etc.) may be used.

<sup>5</sup> That is, divide by 2, if 2 mls. were used, as in the experiment; by 5, if 5 mls. were used, etc.

<sup>6</sup> The table in the Appendix is derived from the expression:

$$w = \frac{v \times b \times 1.2505}{760 (1 + 0.00367 \times t)}$$

where:

*w* = weight of nitrogen sought.

*v* = observed volume of gas read on the nitrometer.

*b* = barometer reading taken at end of determination.

1.2505 (mg.) = weight of 1 ml. of nitrogen gas at 760 mms. Hg and 0° C.

760 = standard sea-level pressure (one atmosphere).

0.00367 = the decimal of the fraction  $\frac{1}{273}$ , the increase in volume of a gas for each degree rise in temperature on the Centigrade scale.

*t* = observed temperature on the Centigrade scale.



The fundamental equation whence the above calculation is derived is based upon the two laws expressing the relation between changes of temperature and of pressure, namely, the Law of Charles and that of Boyle, respectively. Charles' Law predicts:  $\frac{V_1}{V_2} = \frac{T_1}{T_2}$ , that is, the volume of a gas varies directly with the temperature. The Law of Boyle predicts that  $\frac{V_1}{V_2} = \frac{P_2}{P_1}$ , or that the volume of a gas varies inversely with the pressure. Combining these we have:

$$\frac{V_1 P_1}{T_1} = \frac{V_2 P_2}{T_2}$$

and since density and volume are reciprocals, transposing, we have:

$$w = \frac{V_1 P_1}{P_2 T_2 T_1}$$

For additional methods of determining amino-nitrogen see Chapters XV and XVI.

#### PARTIAL SUMMARY FOR PROTIDS

1. Protids are nitrogenous substances which serve a double rôle in the economy of man: (a) To restore tissues, and (b) To contribute energy in the same manner that glucids furnish energy.

##### Physical Structure:

2. They are colloidal in nature and have the properties of substances in that state, *i. e.*, to be precipitated and coagulated, to undergo hydrostatic and electrical changes, etc.

3. They react with both acids and bases and are, therefore, typically amphoteric. Certain reagents capable of uniting with substances of either acid or basic nature are capable of causing the precipitation of protids.

##### Chemical Structure:

4. The chemical structure of protids is somewhat similar to that of glucids and fats, that is, protid is resolvable into certain units, condensed together by the elimination of a molecule of water; during digestion (hydrolysis) water is replaced in the molecule and the several units (amino-acids) are separated into individual molecules.

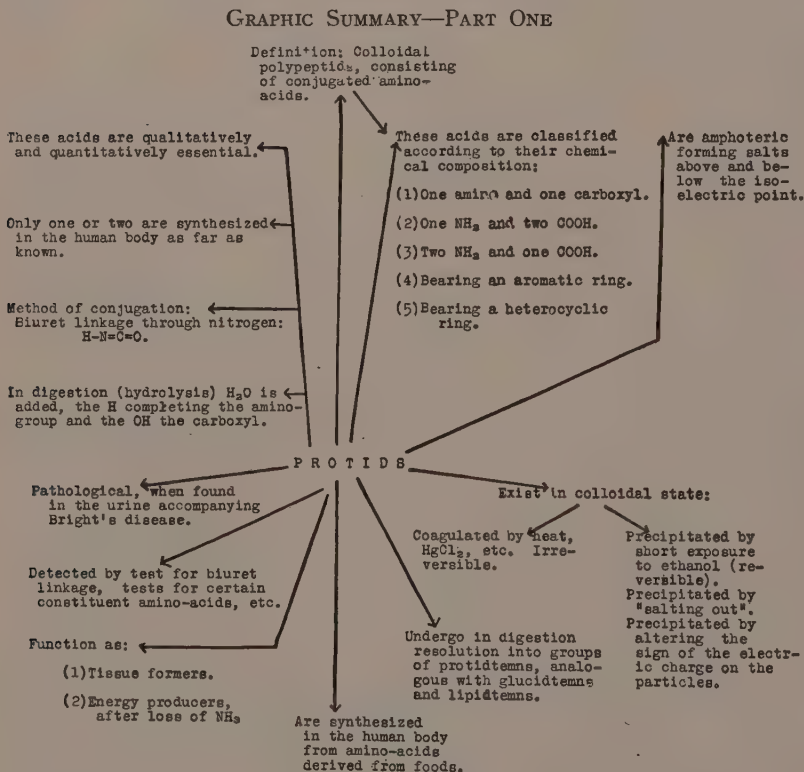
5. The difference in manner of linkage of the units in glucids and in protids is as follows: In the glucids, the linkage occurs at the oxygen radicle, whereas in the protids, the attachment is with the nitrogen radicle.

6. The criterion of a true protid is its ability to give the biuret reaction.<sup>1</sup> To give this reaction, three or more amino-acids must be linked together, so that there are at least two biuret groups (HNCO) or equivalent.

7. There are about 20 of the amino-acids in most protids, although certain ones contain much fewer.

8. Each amino-acid has definite characteristics and serves a given purpose. Except in rare instances one amino-acid cannot replace another in the work of the cell.

9. Destruction of amino-acids may take place in several different ways: (a) The acid may become deaminized, the ammonia passing off in the urine as ammonia or conjugated with cyanic acid as urea. If this occur, the residue will become a glucid and share the ability of such substances to become oxidized and to furnish energy. (b) It



<sup>1</sup> In addition to this criterion, the substance must be in a colloidal state, for otherwise a tripeptid could be called a protid, which it is not.

may become decarboxylated and form amines which are toxic. These in turn become detoxicated and excreted as conjugates with other substances, like derivatives of glucose, or salts of sulphuric acid.

10. Comparison of the total nitrogen with the amino-nitrogen of a given protid shows that there is but little of the latter in the protid. However, after hydrolysis, the amount of amino-nitrogen greatly increases, indicating that the amino-acids are linked together in such a way as to destroy the amino-radicle,  $\text{NH}_2$ . Amino-acids are, therefore, linked into the protid molecule by imino-radicles,  $\text{NH}$ . In this way great complex chains of amino-acids are formed, which are the protids. The difference in kind of protid depends upon the number and kinds of amino-acids condensed into the molecule of protid.

### THE CLASSIFICATION OF THE PROTIDS

No satisfactory scheme has been suggested for the chemical classification of protids. The method of classification in use at the present time is based largely upon the physical characteristics of the protids—solubility, etc.<sup>1</sup>

**I. Simple Protids.**—Hydrolysis of such protid does not produce another protid belonging to this group. On the contrary, the protid may be destroyed by hydrolyzing agents.

#### A. NOT COAGULATED BY HEAT IN ACID SOLUTION.

##### 1. *Soluble in Certain Reagents in the Cold.*—Animal protids.

(a) *Protamins.*—Soluble in ammonium hydroxid solution. The reaction is alkaline to red litmus paper.

(b) *Histons.*—Not soluble in ammonium hydroxid solution, but in water and in dilute mineral acids. While alkaline, red litmus is not turned blue.

##### 2. *Insoluble in Cold Water or in Any Cold Reagent.*—Animal and plant protids.

(a) *Scleroprotids.*—Insoluble in all reagents in the cold, but when boiled with strong mineral acids or alkali, they dissolve, being changed to other substances. Animal protids.

(b) *Prolamins.*—Insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol of 80 per cent. concentration. Plant protids.

<sup>1</sup> An extensive examination of protids from the standpoint of a physico-chemical method of classification has been conducted by Cohn (E. J. Department of Physiology, Harvard) included in reports to the American Society of Biological Chemists. See Jour. Biol. Chem. for the years 1918 ff.

**B. HEAT COAGULABLE.****1. Insoluble in water.**

(a) *Glutelins*.—Immediately soluble in dilute mineral acids and in dilute solutions of strong<sup>1</sup> alkali. Plant protids.

(b) *Globulins*.—Slowly soluble in dilute acids and only with the aid of heat. Animal protids.<sup>2</sup>

**2. Soluble in water.***Albumins.*

**II. Conjugated Protids.**—On hydrolysis, protid and also a “prosthetic group” consisting of a non-protid part are cleaved from the molecule; the protid is a simple one belonging to one of the groups under (I).

**A. ON STRONG HYDROLYSIS NO PHOSPHORIC ACID IS SPLIT FROM THE MOLECULE.**

1. *Glucoprotids*.—A reducing glucid is separated from the molecule on hydrolysis.

2. *Chromoprotids*.—No reducing substance is cleaved during hydrolysis. The prosthetic substance is a colored radicle or compound.

**B. ON HYDROLYSIS PHOSPHORIC ACID IS SET FREE FROM THE MOLECULE.**

1. *Nucleoprotids*.—An ammoniacal solution of the completely hydrolyzed substance will, when treated with silver nitrate solution, yield a brownish or whitish precipitate of purin silver nitrate.

2. *Phosphoprotids*.—No purins occur in the molecule.

**CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION OF PROTIDS****SIMPLE PROTIDS**

**The Protamins.**—The amino-acid content of some of the principal protamins is given in the table<sup>3</sup> shown on page 301. The table reveals the preponderance of diamino-acids, arginin, lysin, and histidin. It is this property which renders the protamins capable of uniting with acids, like the nucleic acid of the nucleus to form nucleoprotid. Protamins occur in all nuclei, but for the purpose of quantitative study spermatozoa have been used in which the nucleus is compacted into the “head” of the spermatozoön, the cytoplasmic

<sup>1</sup> That is, highly dissociating alkali, like NaOH, KOH, etc.

<sup>2</sup> The so-called plant “globulins” belong in another group, owing to their ready ability to become crystallized. In the present scheme they are included in the Globulins of animal origin in order not to complicate the scheme of classification.

<sup>3</sup> The table includes, also, histons, to conserve space.

	Protamins.			Histon.	
	Salmin (Salmon sperm).	Sturin (Sturgeon).	Clupein (Herring).	Globin (Dog's blood).	Thymus- Histone (beef).
Glycin.....					
Alanin.....	....	....	Present.	3.0	0.5
Valin.....	4.3	....	Present.	1.0	3.5
Leucin.....	....	....	....	17.5	
Isoleucin.....	....	....	....	....	11.8
Phenylalanin.....	....	....	....	5.0	
Tyrosin.....	....	....	....	....	2.2
Serin.....	7.8	....	Present.	....	5.2
Cystin.....					
Prolin.....	11.0	....	Present.	4.5	1.5
Oxyprolin.....					
Aspartic acid.....	....	....	....	2.5	
Glutamic acid.....	....	....	....	1.2	0.5
Tryptophan.....					
Arginin.....	87.4	58.2	82.2	....	15.5
Lysin.....	....	12.0	....	....	6.9
Histidin.....	....	12.9	....	....	1.5

"tail" being separated by mechanical means. Pure solutions of nucleoprotids have been obtained in this manner. Although protamins are usually found united with nucleic acid to form the salt, nucleoprotid, they also occur fixed to other protids. In the test-tube they are precipitated when brought into contact with other protids.<sup>1</sup> They are precipitated from their solutions by salts and by acids. Protamins will be discussed farther in connection with nucleoprotids (page 323).

**Histons** are likewise basic and some are more basic than others. They occur in nucleoprotid, like the protamins, but are also found in certain conjugated protids, as, for example, in the protid part of the chromoprotid, hemoglobin. Here the globin is an histon. In the nucleoprotid there is reason to believe that the histon becomes converted into protamin under certain conditions. Examination of the table<sup>2</sup> shows the considerable difference in the content of amino-acids in the various histons; this content varies with the degree of basicity.

**Scleroprotids.**—This is an extensive group which formerly bore the name "albuminoids," since it was believed that the substances

<sup>1</sup> And protid derivatives down to, but exclusive of, the secondary albumoses.

<sup>2</sup> Page 301.



were modified protids such as are found in egg-white and in blood-plasma. Scleroprotids occur in the exo-skeleton, or protective coverings of the body (hair, nails, cornea of the eye, etc.) as the keratins, and, being resistant to most reagents, are able to a certain extent to protect the underlying and more delicate parts from injury. Connective tissue also contains members of this group, as, for instance, the elastin of the ligamentum nuchæ<sup>1</sup>; collagen, the precursor of gelatin; the "albumoid" of the crystalline lens of the eye, that of cartilage and of bone, the last being known particularly as osseo-albumoid. Keratin contains sulphur; elastin, collagen and osseo-albumoid do not.

Three scleroprotids (keratin, elastin and collagen) exhibiting characteristic reactions of the group will be presented for practical study:

EXERCISE 37. *Keratin of Hair:*

(1) Prove that human hair<sup>2</sup> is insoluble in the following reagents:

- (a) Water.
- (b) Cold, concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .
- (c) Cold 40 per cent. NaOH solution.
- (d) Ethanol, 95 per cent.
- (e) Ethyl ether.

(2) Prove that keratin is soluble in:

- (a) Hot (boiling) 10 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  solution.
- (b) Hot (boiling) 10 per cent. NaOH solution.

(3) Place a small amount of dry hair in the bottom of a test-tube and heat gently over a free flame. Note the odor of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$ .<sup>3</sup> The cystin sulphur is known at times as "lead-blackening" sulphur. In the following experiment, which involves a test for the unoxidized, or cystin sulphur, note the blackening of the lead solution:

(4) Test for unoxidized, cystin, mercaptan, or loosely-combined sulphur<sup>4</sup>: Use the egg-white, making a mixture of one volume of the

<sup>1</sup> The common tendon of the trapezius muscle in the neck.

<sup>2</sup> Collected from barber-shops, previously subjected to extraction with alcohol and with ether to remove the fat and grease, then washed with water and dried.

<sup>3</sup> The amount of sulphur in human hair is 15 per cent., corresponding to the percentage of the amino-acid cystin which is present to about that amount, compared to the total amino-acid content.

<sup>4</sup> Compare the statement made on page 229 concerning the impossibility of passing from alkali albuminate, through neutrality, to acid albuminate and of having the same protid as before. Sulphur is split off as demonstrated by the foregoing Exercise. The Exercise also gives a simple test for the kind of sulphur cleaved from the molecule of protid.

egg-white with one volume of 10 per cent. KOH solution. Add 2 drops of lead acetate; boil. The solution turns brownish to black. A mercaptan odor is given off on neutralizing with a mineral acid. Repeat the above experiment using hair which has been boiled with 10 per cent. caustic alkali (NaOH or KOH).

EXERCISE 38. *Elastin from the Ligamentum Nuchæ*<sup>1</sup>:

- (1) Test as above with the different reagents.
- (2) Note its solubility as above.
- (3) Prove that cystin is lacking in the molecule of this protid by means of the heating test as in Number 3, above.<sup>2</sup>
- (4) Perform the unoxidized sulphur test. It should be negative.

EXERCISE 39. *Collagen from Cartilage*<sup>3</sup>:

- (1) Note the color of the material.
- (2) Prove that collagen swells when left in contact with water, dilute acids, or dilute alkali.
- (3) Prove that collagen dissolves in cold concentrated caustic alkalies such as NaOH or KOH; that it does not do so in strong solutions of  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ .
- (4) Place a small piece in water and bring to 70° C. Keep at this temperature for one-half hour and then cool. Transfer to a tryptic digest (see above). Note that the collagen dissolves. Compare with the statement in the footnote<sup>3</sup> regarding the method of preparation for class-work. Collagen does not digest as such in trypsin solution

<sup>1</sup> Previous treatment of the ligament: Cut the material into small blocks of about 1 c.c. This will save time in the laboratory. Wash the pieces. Transfer to a beaker containing half-saturated lime-water; this serves to remove glucoprotid. Wash and place in a beaker with three times its volume of 10 per cent. acetic acid. Boil. Wash with cold water and place in 5 per cent. HCl solution, leaving it one hour. Dry by washing with ethanol and then with ether and dry in a desiccator, or in the open air if protected from dust. The tests are best made on pulverized material.

<sup>2</sup> Page 302.

<sup>3</sup> Collagen should be obtained from the tendo achillis. The tendon is cut into small pieces and placed in a trypsin solution to remove protids. The trypsin solution may be made from a weak sodium carbonate solution into which some commercial pancreatin is placed. It is preferable to grind a piece of the duodenum with the pancreatic tissue. Care must be taken to obtain pancreas, as thymus gland is often sold as sweetbread at the market. "Belly-sweetbread" is the language used by the butcher to designate pancreas. The cartilage must be washed with cold water before use in the experiments.

unless collagen has been previously kept at 70° C. for some time, when it becomes converted into gelatin. Note the odor of ammonia during the process of conversion.

(5) Treat collagen with tannic acid solution. A solid leather is produced.

(6) Gelatin. This is the first hydrolysis product of collagen. Using the commercial material, perform the following tests:

(a) Prove the absence of cystin in the protid by the test given on page 302.

(b) Note the hydrophilous character of the gelatin (page 122). Is the condition reversible? Frequent solution, especially involving heat, destroys gelatin.

(c) Prove that it is slightly soluble in dilute alkali.

(d) Prove its insolubility in 95 per cent. ethanol.

(e) Prove that it is not precipitated by strong solutions of highly dissociating ("strong") acids like concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , in the cold.

(f) The following tests, while not specific, serve to aid in the detection of gelatin solutions (page 104):

(1) Tannic acid precipitates gelatin, the precipitate being massive.

(2) Gelatin is precipitated by mercuric chlorid in the presence of hydrochloric acid.

(3) Gelatin is precipitated by saturating its solution with magnesium sulphate and by adding one volume of saturated solution of ammonium sulphate to one volume of the gelatin solution. It is likewise precipitated by saturating the solution with sodium chlorid and then acidulating with a few drops of a mineral acid.

(4) To distinguish gelatin from its hydrolysis products: Add one volume of Esbach's picric-citric acid solution<sup>1</sup>: Gelatin is precipitated while the products, like pepton, are not.

The amino-acid content of gelatin: Gelatin is usually considered an incomplete protid, *i. e.*, it does not contain a complement of amino-acids.<sup>2</sup> Those lacking are very important ones. By virtue of this fact, gelatin cannot be used to restore the nitrogen loss in the urine. Hence an animal fed exclusively on gelatin as its protid food does not develop normally and, after a while, succumbs. The reason for this is

<sup>1</sup> Page 226.

<sup>2</sup> Or perhaps further work will show that it is not the entire lack of amino-acids, but insufficient quantity of these substances; compare the statement below for tryptophan.

made evident by an examination of the amino-acid content of gelatin which is given in the following table. By the butyl-alcohol method of analysis of Dakin, 91.3 per cent. of the total amino-acid nitrogen content of gelatin is accounted for:

	Gelatin.	Silk gelatin.	Elastin.	Keratin (hair).
Glycin.....	16.5	0.2	25.8	4.7
Alanin.....	0.8	5.0	6.6	1.5
Valin.....	1.0	...	1.0	0.9
Leucin.....	2.1	...	21.4	7.1
Isoleucin.....	0.0			
Phenylalanin.....	0.4	...	3.9	0.0
Tyrosin.....	0.0	5.0	0.4	3.2
Serin.....	0.4	6.6	....	0.6
Cystin.....	0.0	...	....	15.0
Prolin.....	5.2	...	1.7	3.4
Oxyprolin.....	3.0			
Aspartic acid.....	0.6	...	Present	0.3
Glutamic acid.....	0.9	...	0.8	3.7
Tryptophan.....	Identified	Identified		
Arginin.....	7.6	Present	0.3	
Lysin.....	2.8			
Histidin.....	0.4	4.0		

The following amino-acids are either absent from the molecule of gelatin, or present in such minute amounts that they are inadequate:

- (1) Isoleucin.
- (2) Tyrosin.
- (3) Cystin.

Tryptophan is usually said to be absent, but Kraus<sup>1</sup> has been able to identify it by means of the bromin reaction. Of the three, the last two are especially important. We have found that gelatin gives a negative reaction to the test for cystin.<sup>2</sup> Millon's and Folin's tyrosin tests<sup>3</sup> are also negative, proving that tyrosin is absent. The process of gelatin production from collagen may be responsible for the negative reaction given by gelatin to tests which depend upon the presence of the indol ring<sup>4</sup>; for it is known that hydrolyses and other chemical reactions in some unknown manner render tryptophan refractory to the tests. The principle of these various "tryptophan" tests is the

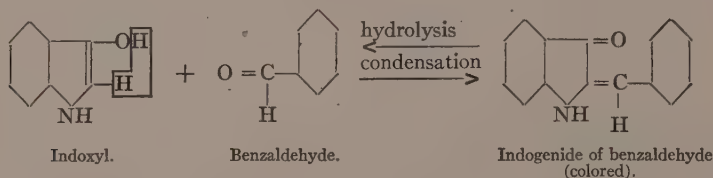
<sup>1</sup> Kraus, Ida (University of Chicago). See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. 178, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Page 304.

<sup>3</sup> Page 236.

<sup>4</sup> Page 273. Tryptophan bears the indol ring (page 276).

same as that encountered in the test for indican,<sup>1</sup> in which indigo is produced by the conjugation of two molecules of substances containing the indol ring. Many other colored compounds of indol occur and are used commercially. In the various tests which have been devised for tryptophan, an aldehyde, like formaldehyde or glyoxaldehyde, is caused to condense with tryptophan to form one of the group of condensation products known to the organic chemist as indogenides.<sup>2</sup> As an example of such condensations the following reaction between indoxyl and benzaldehyde, as given by an early student of the pure chemistry of these groups, is cited:



The substance produced is first yellow, but on standing it becomes blue by oxidation. If, however, it is left standing for some time, it becomes hydrolyzed to the colorless indoxyl compound again. We shall apply the principal tests to egg-white which gives a positive reaction, and then we shall determine the absence or presence of a very minute amount of tryptophan in gelatin.

EXERCISE 40.—On a 1 per cent. solution of egg-white apply the following tests:

(1) *Adamkiewick's Reaction*.<sup>3</sup>—To 1 volume of egg-white solution add 2 volumes of glacial acetic acid<sup>4</sup> and mix; then layer with one volume of concentrated, pure, colorless sulphuric acid by letting the acid run down the inner sides of the inclined test-tube. At the junction of the concentrated acid and the mixture of protid and acetic acid, note the reddish-violet zone, which may be accentuated by letting

<sup>1</sup> Page 276.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounced "in-dog'en-ides."

<sup>3</sup> Adamkiewick, A., Vienna pathologist, 1850–1921.

<sup>4</sup> The reaction is not by way of the acid, acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ , but by the impurity, glyoxylic acid, which is contained in all but the better commercial preparations of glacial acetic acid. Glyoxylic acid is  $\text{CHO}$ ; the aldehyde group is con-



cerned in the condensation.



the preparation stand for a short time, or by gently rotating the tube between the palms of the hands. The zone of color gradually spreads throughout the preparation.

(2) *Hopkins-Cole Reaction*.<sup>1</sup>—Use the reagent known as “reduced oxalic acid”<sup>2</sup> which is a solution of glyoxalic acid itself: To one volume of the protid solution add 1 volume of the reagent. Mix. Layer as in (1) with concentrated sulphuric acid. In this reaction, as in other similar methods, chlorids, nitrates, and chlorates, especially when present in large amounts, interfere with the reaction. The color is similar to that obtained in the preceding method (1).

(3) *Rosenheim's Test, Modified by Acree*.<sup>3</sup>—Formaldehyde in very dilute solution (1 : 250, aqueous) is used as the aldehyde: To 1 volume of the protid solution, add, while shaking the test-tube, 1 drop of the reagent. Dilute with 1 volume of water and layer as before with sulphuric acid. The addition of a drop of ferric chlorid solution will accentuate the color and increase the rapidity of its appearance. A solution of formaldehyde 1 : 10,000 will give the reaction if a protid containing more than a mere trace of tryptophan is used.

(4) *Liebermann's*<sup>4</sup> *Reaction*.—This reaction likewise depends upon the condensing action of an aldehyde or other carbonyl<sup>5</sup> group, which is furnished in the form of alcohol containing an aldehyde or anhydrid<sup>6</sup>; or the aldehyde may be furnished by a glucid containing an available carbonyl group, cane-sugar generally being used. Reaction by alcohol: To 1 volume of ethanol add 1 volume of egg-white and heat. Filter. Wash the residue with ether, scrape off the protid from the filter-paper, suspend it in water, and treat with 1 ml. of concentrated HCl. Heat. The characteristic color appears.

Reaction by Sucrose: To 5 mls. of egg-white preparation add half a ml. of 1 per cent. cane-sugar solution. Mix. Then layer with concentrated sulphuric acid as before. The color is reddish. Since

<sup>1</sup> Hopkins, F. G., Professor, Cambridge University, England; Cole, S. W., Lecturer in the same institution. Both contemporary.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

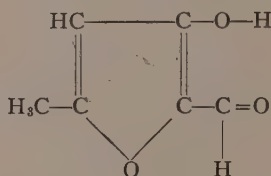
<sup>3</sup> Rosenheim, Th. (contemporary), German physician; Acree, S. F. (contemporary), chemist, formerly of the U. S. Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, Wisconsin, and of Syracuse University.

<sup>4</sup> Liebermann, L. von S. (contemporary), Hungarian physician and biochemist, 1852.

<sup>5</sup> Page 140.

<sup>6</sup> Compare the Liebermann-Burchard test for cholesterol, page 211, in which acetic anhydrid is used similarly as the reagents in the present set of reactions.

sucrose itself contains no free carbonyl groups, the reaction is explained by the production of an aldehyde, hydroxymethylfurfuraldehyde:



(5) *Qualitative Test for Tryptophan in a Mixture of Amino-acids, Indol, and Skatol: The Bromin-water Reaction.*—A water solution of tryptophan absorbs bromin readily, developing a pink to a violet color which is soluble in amylol. This color is easily discharged when a slight excess of bromin-water is added. Indol and skatol also absorb bromin under similar conditions; when bromin water is added to a mixture of indol, skatol, and tryptophan there is danger of adding too much bromin and obscuring the test; also, the color extracted by amylol from such a mixture is brownish-red instead of pinkish-violet. This can be overcome by shaking the mixture with toluene and removing indol and skatol.

*Procedure.*—Shake a neutral solution of amino-acids in which indol and skatol are suspected first with half or an equal volume of toluene; then take 2 mls. of the aqueous solution, add to it 1 ml. of amylol, then very gradually, while shaking drop by drop, freshly prepared bromin water. A pink to a violet color will appear in the amylol layer if tryptophan is present.<sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE 41.—Using a 2 per cent. gelatin solution, made by dissolving gelatin in boiling water and then cooling, repeat the above tests.

*Quantitative Method of Tryptophan Determination in a Mixture of Amino-acids, Indol, and Skatol.*<sup>2</sup>—*Principle.*—Indol and skatol are soluble in toluene and may be removed from a water solution by toluene extraction. Tryptophan is then separated by mercury precipitation under proper conditions. Chlorides inhibit this precipitation. The optimum color of the tryptophan vanillin-HCl is

<sup>1</sup> Levene, P. A., and Rouiller, C. A. (Rockefeller Institute), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 2, p. 481, 1906. Homer, A., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 22, p. 374, 1915.

<sup>2</sup> Kraus' method; see page 305.

best developed in the presence of excess mercuric ion; an additional amount of  $\text{HgSO}_4$  is added to the isolated tryptophan mercury precipitate. Since mercury is a factor in the color development the standard must be treated in the same way as the solution to be tested, *i. e.*, mercury precipitation and further addition of  $\text{HgSO}_4$  solution is essential. (For reagents see Appendix.)

*Procedure.*—A. Shake the mixture containing indol, skatol, tryptophan, and other amino-acids in a separatory funnel several times with toluene.

The final toluene phase should give no color with vanillin-HCl.

1. The combined toluene extracts contain the indol and skatol.

2. The aqueous phase contains all of the amino-acids.

B. Determination of tryptophan in the aqueous phase.

1. Take a portion of the aqueous solution and make proper dilution so that a volume of 5 mls. or less shall contain at least 0.25 and not more than 1 mg. of tryptophan and place it in a 15-ml. centrifuge tube.

2. Add thereto 1 ml. of the 50 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and 3 mls. of the  $\text{HgSO}_4$  reagent. Stopper tightly and shake well. Rinse stopper with 5 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and make up to 10 or 12 mls. volume.

Let stand for two or more hours, then centrifuge for ten minutes. The tryptophan-mercury precipitate will settle, the clear supernatant liquid is poured off, and the tube allowed to drain for a few minutes.

The precipitate is then washed with 5 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . It is centrifuged again, decanted, and drained.

3. To the centrifuge tube containing the tryptophan-mercury precipitate add 0.4 ml. of the vanillin solution, 1 ml. of the 2 per cent.  $\text{HgSO}_4$  solution, and 0.5 to 1 ml. of the concentrated HCl to dissolve the precipitate. This solution is then rinsed into a 50-ml. volumetric flask by using small portions of the concentrated HCl at a time until 15 mls. are used, which is the minimum amount necessary for the reaction.

Set aside for twenty-four hours, then dilute to 50 mls. with water, and compare with standard prepared in the same way in a colorimeter within several hours.

**Prolamins.**—If wheat flour is manipulated with a small amount of water,<sup>1</sup> as in the preparation of bread dough, a spongy mass is

<sup>1</sup> The amount of water must be small, or a pasty mass incapable of being worked will be formed.

obtained. If the dough thus obtained is kneaded under running water the starch will be washed out, leaving protid, more or less free from starch. Now if this protid mass is covered with ethanol and left for twenty-four hours, then filtered, a protid may be detected in the alcoholic filtrate. This is the protid, gliadin, a member of the prolamins, which are alcohol soluble. Using a preparation made as described above,<sup>1</sup> perform the following Exercises:

EXERCISE 42.—Remove any alcohol which is present by placing the gliadin in an evaporating dish on a water-bath for ten minutes; then transfer the dried gliadin to a mortar and pulverize it. With this pulverized material:

- (1) Determine the insolubility of gliadin in water.
- (2) Determine its solubility in dilute solutions of weak and strong acids and alkali; also that it is soluble in dilute solutions of salts like NaCl, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, etc.
- (3) Determine its solubility in ethanol of different strength—25, 50, 70, 95 per cent., and “absolute.”<sup>2</sup>
- (4) Prove that gliadin is not coagulated by heat.

Other prolamins, such as zein of corn, hordein of barley, etc., exist. Gliadin occurs not only in wheat but also in rye. However, in making bread from any grain except wheat, wheat flour is used to supplement the protid, since the physical factor of sponginess possessed by gliadin is not shared by other prolamins to a sufficient extent. Even in rye the gliadin is not present in the amounts required for making good bread from rye flour alone. The amino-acid content of plant protids is given in the table shown on page 311.

It is evident that all the prolamins listed in the table above are deficient in some of the important amino-acids, like cystin, and that the amount of tryptophan is small. Attention should be directed to the large content of glutamic acid. Since the average amount of this amino-acid in animal tissues is about one-third of that occurring in these plant protids, the human body must dispose of a large excess of nitrogen when the food contains such materials to any extent.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The residue from this preparation should be saved for the study of the glutelins, page 312.

<sup>2</sup> For tables of alcohol dilution see Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Refer to page 533 for a discussion of the “physiological economy of nutrition” studied in former years by Chittenden, McCollum, and others.

	Gliadin (wh.)	Gliadin (rye).	Hordein.	Zein.	Gluten.
Glycin.....	0.7	0.13	0.0	0.0	0.4
Alanin.....	2.7	1.33	0.43	2.23	0.3
Valin.....	0.4	0.0	0.13	0.29	0.0
Leucin.....	6.0	6.3	5.67	18.60	4.1
Isoleucin.....	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Phenylalanin.....	2.6	2.7	5.03	4.87	1.0
Tyrosin.....	2.4	1.19	1.67	3.55	1.9
Serin.....	0.2	0.06	0.0	0.57	0.0
Cystin.....	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Prolin.....	2.4	9.82	13.73	6.53	4.0
Oxyprolin.....	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Aspartic acid.....	1.3	0.25	0.0	1.41	0.7
Glutamic acid.....	31.5	33.81	36.35	18.28	24.0
Tryptophan.....	1.0	Present	Present	Present	Present
Arginin.....	2.8	2.2	2.16	1.16	4.4
Lysin.....	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	2.2
Histidin.....	1.2	0.39	1.28	0.43 <sup>1</sup>	1.2

The name "prolamin" is significant of the relatively large amount of prolin.

The amino-acid lysin is absent from these protids.<sup>2</sup> Consequently much experimentation has been done with them to determine whether this amino-acid is essential to growth and maintenance in animals.<sup>3</sup> The effect of feeding an experimental animal with food deficient in lysin is shown in Fig. 158a, page 538. The normal individual is protected against deficiency diseases due to the absence of certain amino-acids by his general diet. Substances which contain these important constituents of the protids lacking in certain food-stuffs enter the body on an omnivorous diet. The diet of corn bread and milk common among many races illustrates this point. The lysin deficiency of corn protid is counterbalanced by the relatively large percentage of lysin in casein (5.8 per cent.). Moreover, corn itself has another protid which contains lysin (3 per cent.). This protid is a member of the glutelins.

Osborne has found an alcohol-soluble protid in milk. This departs from the usual characteristics of animal protids which are insoluble in alcohol.

<sup>1</sup> Dakin's butyl-alcohol method gives 101.5 per cent. amino-acids in zein. Therefore the total number and amount of these amino-acids are known.

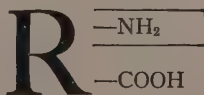
<sup>2</sup> It is said to occur in very small amounts in wheat gliadin.

<sup>3</sup> This is the work of Osborne and Mendel at New Haven. For an account of this work see the volumes of the Journal of Biological Chemistry from 1910 to 1916. The matter is discussed in more detail on pages 537 of this book.



**Glutelins.**—If the biuret test is applied to the residue of wheat flour left after the alcohol-soluble protid, gliadin, has been extracted, it will be found that protid is still present. This protid is glutenin, a member of the glutelins. The group includes the glutenin of wheat, legumin of the pea and bean, phaseolin of the white kidney-bean, amandin of the almond glycinin of the soy-bean, conglutin of the European lupine seeds, avenin of the oat, etc. The glutelins are heat coagulable, thus differing from the prolamins. They are insoluble in water, but are soluble in 0.2 per cent. diluted acids and alkali. With the exception of the so-called "plant globulins," discussed below, they are insoluble in dilute salt solutions. They contain qualitatively and quantitatively amino-acids adequate for human use as food, but cystin is not present, as a rule.<sup>1</sup> Since certain glutelins like legumin exhibit characters somewhat similar to those of the following group, globulins, they are classified as Plant Globulins, which are soluble in dilute salt solutions (legumin soluble in 0.01 per cent. of a saturated  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  solution).

The distinctions between the plant protids concern mainly their iso-electric points.<sup>2</sup> The globulins, while practically amphoteric,<sup>3</sup> are more soluble in alkaline and weak acid solutions because their iso-electric point lies on the acid side of the neutral point ( $\text{pH } 5.0 \pm$ ). Alkali suppresses the activity of the basic radicle,  $\text{NH}_2$ , of the protid, leaving the carboxyl, as we have described earlier in the book<sup>4</sup> free to unite with the alkali to form a salt. This is conventionally represented by Loeb<sup>5</sup> as follows:



Protid molecule in alkaline medium.

where R is a protid having the free amino- and carboxyl groups, but the former,  $\text{NH}_2$ , being suppressed in the alkaline medium<sup>6</sup> leaves the

<sup>1</sup> Cystin is present to the extent of 0.3 per cent. in the protid belonging to this series derived from the pine-needle. This food material has been used for supplying deficiency of vitamins likewise.

<sup>2</sup> Page 104.

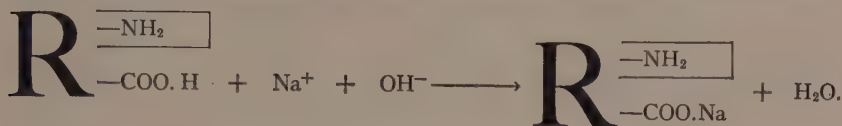
<sup>3</sup> Page 103.

<sup>4</sup> Page 108.

<sup>5</sup> Page 103.

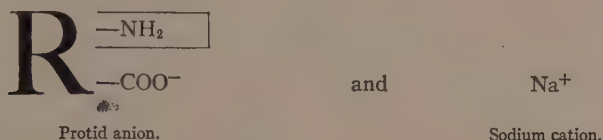
<sup>6</sup> This is an extension of the great Law of Le Chatelier stated by Deming as: "Systems in equilibrium change only with changing external conditions and then only in a way which tends to restore original conditions." When ions of the same kind are introduced into a solution the mass action is altered and there is a tendency toward less dissociation of the ion involved.

carboxyl free to unite with cations in the medium; if the medium is a dilute solution of NaOH, then the salt, sodium protidate, is formed:



Protid in alkaline medium; the protid acts as an anion.

The compound ionizes as



The ions remain in solution in the alkaline medium, but if acid is added to bring the *pH* to 5.5, precipitation occurs. This is the iso-electric point at which the activity of the NH<sub>2</sub> group manifests itself, neutralizing the effect of the carboxyl. The iso-electric points of the plant globulins have not been determined fully, and hence no scientific classification can be given for this group. It is therefore included among the Glutelins.

Glutelins contain proportionately more nitrogen than animal protids, the average being about 21 per cent. The factor used for conversion of nitrogen into protid when dealing with plant protids is 4.78.<sup>1</sup>

**Globulins.**—These protids, together with the following group of albumins, comprise the “native protids.” They occur conspicuously in substances used largely in experimentation and in class demonstrations, such as egg-white and blood-serum. Since in both cases the protids are extracellular substances<sup>2</sup> of the nature of secretions,

<sup>1</sup> That is,  $\frac{100}{20.9} = 4.78$ , expressed as a decimal in place of a common fraction. The corresponding figure for animal protids is 6.25, where the nitrogen occupies 16 per cent. of the protid.

<sup>2</sup> That is, lying outside the cell proper. The blood has been known as a “liquid tissue,” the form elements (erythrocytes and leucocytes) being cells suspended in what is virtually intercellular material, the plasma. This intercellular material is comparable with the substances secreted by cells of other tissues and which surround the cells proper, like the cartilage surrounding the hyaline cartilage cells, the bone matrix surrounding the bone-cells, etc. In a similar way, the egg-white is a secretion of the cells of the oviduct.

the question may arise as to whether the native protids are true protoplasm, such as that which exists in the cytoplasm of the cell. The meager studies which have been made upon cells, as such, show without doubt that egg-white and blood-serum or plasma are not typical cellular protids, although they do occur in the cytoplasm of the cell.<sup>1</sup>

The principle of heat coagulation of protids has already been discussed (page 222). Pure crystalline globulin from egg-white can be kept in clear solution for months if the temperature be kept low (2° C.)<sup>2</sup>; indeed, the temperature may be raised to 60° C. without causing change; but if the acidity of the solution is now raised to pH 4.8 (the iso-electric point) coagulation will occur at once owing to the loss of power on the part of the protid molecule to attract water. If more acid is added, thus increasing the pH, heat coagulation will occur at a higher temperature,<sup>3</sup> while on acid the side of maximum, pH 4.25, heat coagulation will not occur, even if the temperature is raised to 95° C. This point, pH 4.25, is the critical pH for heat coagulation of egg-white.<sup>4</sup> An alkalinity greater than 4.25 causes, progressively, diminishing coagulation. The effect of a neutral salt, like NaCl, is to inhibit precipitation on coagulation; hence neutral salts cause water to dissolve globulins, the protid salt formed with them is more soluble than "iso-electric" protid. Globulins are insoluble in distilled water, but are soluble in dilute salt solutions. On the other hand, they are precipitated by saturating their solutions with NaCl,<sup>5</sup> or with magnesium sulphate, or half-saturating the solution with ammonium sulphate.<sup>6</sup> These concentrated salts precipitate by absorbing water from the globulin.

We have already studied albumin, one of the typical protids mentioned above in the earlier part of the division on protids.<sup>7</sup> This

<sup>1</sup> See Oppenheimer, C., *Handbuch der Biochemie*, 1st ed., vol. i, Jena, Gustav Fischer. Also Leathes, J. B. Croonian Lecture, 1923, Laucet (London).

<sup>2</sup> The average ice-box or refrigerator seldom is at a lower temperature than 8° C.

<sup>3</sup> Coagulation occurs with pH 4.39 at 80° C.

<sup>4</sup> Compare "critical temperature" and "critical pressure" of solutions (Mellor, vol. i); see citation, page 92.

<sup>5</sup> NaCl is monovalent; (NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> is divalent; hence twice as much, roughly, of the NaCl must be used. See page 222.

<sup>6</sup> (NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> in 40 per cent. solution at room temperature (20° C.).

<sup>7</sup> Page 211.

will suffice for practical experience with the coagulable "native" protids.

**Albumins.**—The albumins differ from the globulins in that, as a group, their iso-electric points are farther on the acid side of neutrality.<sup>1</sup> Salts tend to diminish ionization and hence to cause precipitation in such solutions. In pure water albumins are soluble and also in low concentrations of salts, a point which is sometimes overlooked in considering the differences between the two. The globulins are precipitated by much lower concentration of salts than albumins. The increase of acidity of an albumin solution permits the use of smaller amounts of salt to cause precipitation,<sup>2</sup> a fact well known to the housewife, who adds a drop of vinegar to the egg she is poaching to cause better coagulation.

*The chief chemical differences between albumins and globulins are:*

(1) The absence of glycine from the molecule of albumin and (2) the greater content of sulphur in albumin. The cystine content of globulin and albumin should be compared in the following table (blood-serum):

	Globulin of blood.	Albumin of blood.
Glycine.....	3.5	0.0
Alanine.....	2.2	2.7
Valine.....	Present	?
Leucine.....	18.7	20.0
Isoleucine.....	?	?
Phenylalanine.....	3.8	3.1
Tyrosine.....	2.5	2.1
Serine.....	?	0.6
Cystine.....	0.7	2.5
Proline.....	2.8	1.0
Oxyproline.....	?	?
Aspartic acid.....	2.5	3.1
Glutamic acid.....	8.5	7.7
Tryptophan.....	Present	Present
Arginine.....	+	+
Lysine.....	+	+
Histidine.....	+	+

The character + indicates that this data is incomplete, but that these amino-acids may be present.

<sup>1</sup> pH 5.4 to 4.7.

<sup>2</sup> For example, at pH 2.0 a half-molecular solution (3 per cent.) of NaCl will cause precipitation, while at pH more alkaline than 2.0, even a saturated solution of this salt (36 per cent.) will not cause precipitation.

## CONJUGATED PROTIDS

**The Glucoprotids.**<sup>1</sup>—An example of the members of this group is mucin, which occurs in saliva, connective tissue, intestinal secretions, bile, etc.

**EXERCISE 43.**—Mucin of saliva. Wash the mouth with water. Chew paraffin wax and collect the saliva by expectorating upon the filter-paper fitted to a 250-ml. funnel. Use the filtered saliva for the following Exercise: Place 10 mls. of the filtrate in a beaker and add, drop by drop, glacial acetic acid. The stringy precipitate is mucin. Collect it by means of a small glass stirring-rod. Save the fluid. Divide the mass into two portions and to one add drop by drop 1 per cent. solution sodium carbonate until the mucin is dissolved. Use this material for the tests:

(1) Apply the biuret test to 2 mls. in a test-tube; the reaction is positive and typical, which proves that mucin is a true protid.

(2) Hydrolyze the conjugated protid, mucin, by boiling the remainder of the alkaline solution with 1 drop of concentrated HCl, neutralize to litmus paper with one or more drops of 10 per cent. NaOH solution and make Benedict's qualitative test<sup>2</sup> for reducing substance. Glucose is present and may be identified by means of the osazone.<sup>3</sup>

(3) Make Millon's test<sup>4</sup> and Folin's tyrosin test<sup>5</sup> on the fluid saved after the mucin had been removed (at the beginning of this Exercise). A slightly positive reaction may be obtained, but the Exercise indicates that mucin is the principal protid of saliva.

(4) Using the remainder of the mucin from the beginning of the Exercise, add, drop by drop, 1 : 1000 solution HCl; note that the mucin dissolves. Mucin is soluble in dilute solutions of alkali and acid.

**EXERCISE 44.**—Mucin from connective tissue: Secure a piece of tendo achillis from the store-room and cut it into small pieces. Soak these in 0.9 per cent. NaCl solution over night or until the next period and then wash with water in a beaker. Cover the pieces with

<sup>1</sup> Called also glycoprotids.

<sup>2</sup> Page 156.

<sup>3</sup> Page 158.

<sup>4</sup> Page 236.

<sup>5</sup> Page 236. These tests are for the purpose of demonstrating that mucin is a protid.



lime-water and leave again over night, or until the next period. Then add, drop by drop, glacial acetic acid to precipitate mucin as before. Purify the preparation by dissolving the precipitate of mucin in lime-water<sup>1</sup> and leave again over night or until the next period. Wash with cold water, then with alcohol, and use the preparation for the tests given under:

EXERCISE 45.—Try its solubility in 0.1 per cent. HCl and in 0.2 per cent. HCl solutions. Compare page 303, in which mucin from tendon is shown to contain a sulphuric acid derivative.

Other linkages of glucid and nitrogenous substances occur in the human body. For instance in the nucleoprotid about to be discussed,<sup>2</sup> a hexose<sup>3</sup> or pentose is present in the molecule. Glucose occurs in "pure" protids, such as egg-white, the composition of which is as follows<sup>4</sup>:

IN ONE HUNDRED PARTS OF EGG-WHITE ARE

Solid matter, 13.3 grams.

Water, 96.7 grams.

Of the solid matter, protid, 12.2 grams per 100 grams solid.

Of the solid matter, glucose, 0.5 grams per 100 grams solid.

Of the solid matter, ash, 0.66 grams per 100 grams solid.

Of the solid matter, fats, etc., trace.

Of the protid, globulin, 6.7 grams per 100 grams solid.

Of the protid, albumin, 83.3 grams per 100 grams solid.

Of the protid, glucoprotid makes up 6.7 grams per 100 grams solid.

Two types of glucose occur in egg-white: (1) Glucose more or less free, or loosely bound, perhaps as a labile glucoside<sup>5</sup> and (2) bound as glucoprotid, called ovomucin. Glucose may be utilized in man in the synthesis of nucleoprotid or even of the amino-acid histidin and other compounds which contain the iminazol ring.<sup>6</sup> It was shown on page 168 that in both fermentation and glucid metabolism, methylglyoxal arises from glucose which is cleaved in the middle of the six-carbon chain to make two three-carbon chains. Methyl-

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Page 321.

<sup>3</sup> In animals, a pentose in plants.

<sup>4</sup> Plimmer, R. H. A., *Practical Organic and Biochemistry*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1915, p. 434. Later editions of this valuable book have been issued.

<sup>5</sup> Page 183.

<sup>6</sup> This configuration was discussed on page 268 in connection with histidin.



plasma (upper) layer. To the corpuscles (lower layer) add enough distilled water to replace the total volume of whole blood before the plasma was removed. Centrifuge the blood-corpuscle suspension. Decant the supernatant clear, red solution of hemoglobin from the residue (stroma of corpuscles, leucocytes, etc.) and add to it one volume of toluene. Mix well and leave in a cold place over night or until the next period. Long crystals of hemoglobin should be found. Decant the fluid, filtering if necessary, and washing with a very dilute 0.1 per cent. HCl solution.

(2) Preparation of pure hemoglobin by the Heidelberg<sup>1</sup> method: Horse blood<sup>2</sup> is preferable, but dog blood may be used. Defibrinated blood is employed. Secure 30 mls. of the defibrinated blood from the store-room and fill two 15-ml. centrifuge tubes with it. Place the tubes upon the balance and bring them to equilibrium<sup>3</sup> by adding a drop or two of the blood as required. Centrifuge at half speed for two minutes. Open the contact and let the centrifuge come to a stop; then lift the tubes carefully from the cups and by means of a 5-ml. pipette remove the supernatant serum and also the narrow whitish zone of leucocytes and platelets at the junction of the serum and the red corpuscular layer. Discard the serum and white-cell decantation and restore the original volume in the centrifuge tube by adding ice-cold 0.85 per cent. sodium chlorid solution.<sup>4</sup> Centrifuge and again decant; test the decanted portion for protid by boiling a small quantity of it with a drop of acetic acid. If there is still cloudiness, repeat the washing of the corpuscles until only a faint haze is seen. By means of a small amount of distilled water transfer the corpuscles after the last decantation to a small Florence flask embedded in chipped ice and pass a stream of carbon dioxid<sup>5</sup> gas from the generator. After the gas has passed for a short time, add 3 mls. of ether, still continuing

<sup>1</sup> Heidelberg, M. (Rockefeller Institute, New York, N. Y.). See *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 53, p. 31, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> It is easy to obtain sufficient horse blood for class work by inserting a fairly strong needle (spinal-fluid needle) into a superficial vein of a horse. The operation involves scarcely as much pain as the bite of a fly, and from 100 to 200 mls. of blood may be withdrawn without difficulty without the use of a syringe. No anticoagulant is used, but the fibrin is removed by whipping the blood collected in a beaker with a test-tube brush. The fibrin should be preserved for Exercise 3, page 429.

<sup>3</sup> In order that the two sides of the centrifuge head be of the same weight and that no eccentric action harm the instrument.

<sup>4</sup> Compare page 115.

<sup>5</sup> For the method of generating CO<sub>2</sub> for laboratory purposes see Appendix.

the passage of the gas. Stir to make a paste and then stopper tightly. Leave until the next period in the ice-box. It is advantageous to shake the corpuscles with air in order to oxygenate the hemoglobin. Centrifuge for two minutes and collect the crystals of hemoglobin resting in the bottom of the centrifuge tube by decanting the two supernatant zones (1) the top layer of cells and (2) a middle layer of clear solution. The crystals may be dried by transferring them with a small amount of ice-water to a Buchner funnel and filtering off the water with suction, using hardened filters to receive the crystals. Transfer some of the crystals to a microscope slide and cover with a cover-glass. Examine and sketch their shape. Save the excess crystals for Exercise 48, page 320.

This procedure may be shortened by treating defibrinated blood with toluene in the proportion given above for ether, bubbling CO<sub>2</sub> gas through the solution, shaking with air, and leaving in the ice-box until the following period. The resulting crystals will not be typical, but will serve for the study of the globin content. These impure crystals cannot, however, be used for later study of the chemistry of hemoglobin.

**EXERCISE 48. *Decomposition of Hemoglobin.***—Take 2 mls. of the washed crystals and dilute with one volume of distilled water. Add 1 ml. of concentrated HCl and boil for five minutes. Decant one-half of the solution from the test-tube into another tube and neutralize with a few drops of 10 per cent. NaOH solution, using litmus-paper as indicator. Make Millon's test upon this material; the reaction should be positive.<sup>1</sup> Protid is present. Upon the remainder of the material left in the first test-tube perform the biuret, xanthoproteic, and Heller's tests. The last test is negative because globin is not heat coagulable.

The hematin portion of the hemoglobin will be discussed later.

***Antibodies and Antigens.***—When certain substances are introduced into the body, and especially into the body fluids, blood and lymph, they cause the production in the body of antibodies,<sup>2</sup> which are more or less specific for the substance calling them into being, namely, the antigen. As a rule these antigens are protids, but other

<sup>1</sup> The test may be obscured somewhat by the yellow color of the hemoglobin. The use of Folin's phenol reagent obviates this difficulty.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the discussion of the Abderhalden Reaction, page 235.



substances, such as glucosides, lecithins, and others, may also serve as antigens. The antibodies seem to protect the body by rendering it capable of hydrolyzing substances. We know that the simple protids, like protamins and histons, as well as the hydrolytic products of the higher protids, such as the peptons and amino-acids, are incapable of producing antibodies. A certain number of amino-acids must be present in the molecule of a protid before it can serve as antigen. The antibodies may be enzymes. Globin, a histon, does not produce antibodies by itself, but when compounded with another



Fig. 115.—Walter Jones, Professor of Physiological Chemistry, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md. Investigations of nuclear chemistry (nucleoprotids, purins, etc.).

protid, like casein, which has a large number of amino-acids in the molecule, produces an antigen. The physiological reaction known as anaphylaxis<sup>1</sup> or allergy<sup>2</sup> is due to artificial hypersensitization, the term "atopy"<sup>3</sup> referring to natural hypersensitivity.

**Nucleoprotids.**—These substances are termed "chromatin" by the histologist. They are of exceeding interest from many points of view.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *ana*, down, and *phylaché*, a guard; that is, breaking down the guard against infection.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *allos*, different, and *ergo*, work, that is, behaving in a different manner.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *a*, privitive, meaning without, and *topos*, place.



They give rise to the uric acid of the urine. This is an excellent index of renal efficiency, since it occurs with but slight variation<sup>1</sup> in the normal urine, whereas in nephritis it is retained in the blood, mounting to as high as 20 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood. This condition is known, technically, as "retention," which involves also other constituents of the blood, such as urea.

It has been shown by histologists that the nucleoprotids, in the form of "chromosomes" of the cell-nuclei, play an important rôle in heredity and also in the determination of sex (Fig. 116); for there seems to be a quantitative difference between the nucleo-

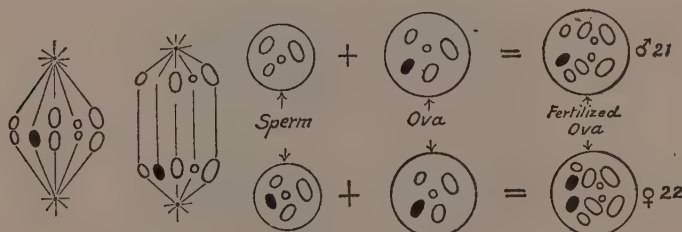


Fig. 116.—Accessory or  $x$ -chromosome in *Anasa*. E. B. Wilson, Recent Researches on the Determination and Heredity of Sex. Science, January 8, 1909. Sex determined by the  $x$ -element. Equally paired chromosome = ♀. Unequally, = ♂.  $x$ -chromosome black. (From McFarland's Biology, W. B. Saunders Co.)

protid of the male and of the female. In certain respects nucleoprotid is one of the most important things in the world, for it involves linking one generation to another. Certain constituents of the nucleoprotids containing nitrogen show a chemical resemblance to "vitamins" which are necessary for growth and for maintenance.<sup>2</sup>

Nucleoprotid is a salt. Its base is a simple protid, composed of strongly alkaline substances, protamins<sup>3</sup> or histons; and the acid is nucleic acid. If a protamin like salmin be brought into contact with other protids<sup>4</sup> precipitation occurs; and this likewise takes place when protamins and nucleic acid or histon and nucleic acid are brought together. When nucleoprotid is slightly hydrolyzed by boil-

<sup>1</sup> Average normal excretion of uric acid in the urine, 0.7 g. per twenty-four hours. Average normal blood uric acid concentration, 2.25 milligrams per 100 mls. blood.

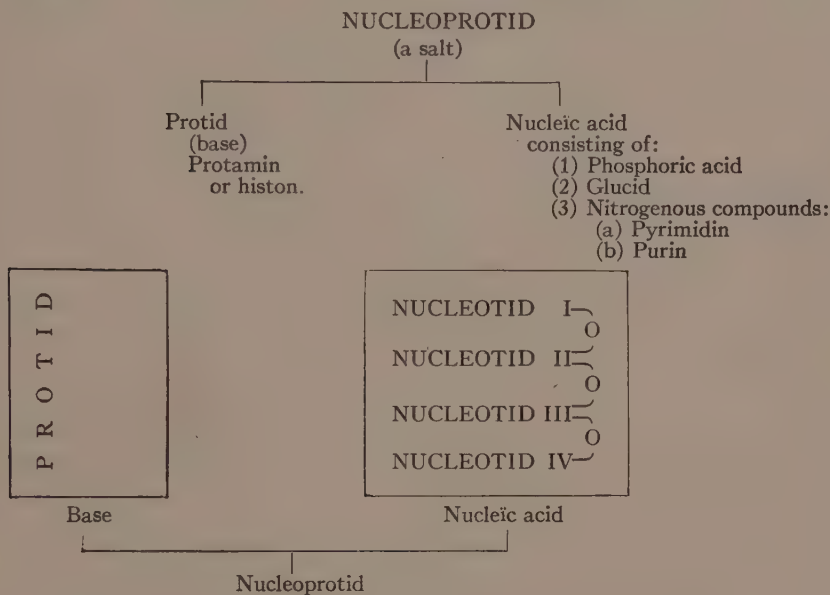
<sup>2</sup> Page 540.

<sup>3</sup> The basicity is so pronounced in protamins that their solution turns red litmus-paper blue.

<sup>4</sup> Page 301.

ing with acid, protid is cleaved from the molecule, and a substance rich in phosphoric acid is found.

A graphic representation of the composition of nucleoprotid is given below:



The nucleotids consist of the following components:

$H_3PO_4$	Glucid	Purin
-----------	--------	-------

Mononucleotid I

$H_3PO_4$	Glucid	Pyrimidin
-----------	--------	-----------

Mononucleotid II

$H_3PO_4$	Glucid	Pyrimidin
-----------	--------	-----------

Mononucleotid III

$H_3PO_4$	Glucid	Purin
-----------	--------	-------

Mononucleotid IV

The nucleotids may have their phosphoric acid separated from the remainder, leaving nucleosides in which a hexose sugar has as side-chain or prosthetic group a nitrogenous substance which is either a purin or a pyrimidin, thus:

Glucid	Purin
--------	-------

Purin nucleoside

Glucid	Pyrimidin
--------	-----------

Pyrimidin nucleoside

Glucid	Pyrimidin
--------	-----------

Pyrimidin nucleoside

Glucid	Purin
--------	-------

Purin nucleoside

**What substance or substances give rise to nucleic acid in the body?** There is convincing evidence that nucleoprotid is synthesized in the animal body: (1) At every division of the cell there is a restoration of one-half of the chromosomes. Moreover, chemical analysis of eggs, etc., shows that there is a progressive increase in nuclear material as the egg grows.<sup>1</sup> We have stated<sup>2</sup> that the phospholipid, lecithin, is found in rapidly growing and actively metabolizing tissues and if the structure of the two compounds is compared with that of nucleic acid, the similarity in constitution of the two compounds is revealed:

*Lecithin contains:*

- (1) Phosphoric acid,  $H_3PO_4$ .
- (2) Organic substances:
  - (a) Glucid derivative, glycerol and fatty acids.
  - (b) Nitrogenous substance: Cholin (substituted  $NH_4OH$ ).

*Nucleic acid contains:*

- (1) Phosphoric acid,  $H_3PO_4$ .
- (2) Organic substances:
  - (a) Glucid derivative or the glucid itself: hexose (glucose).
  - (b) Nitrogenous substance: Purins and pyrimidins.

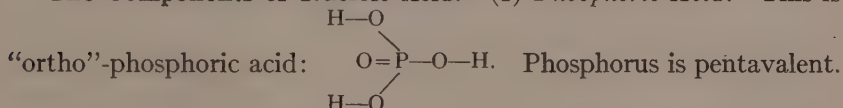
<sup>1</sup> In the case of the mammal since the developing fetus is supplied with food from the mother, this proof would not be clear, but in eggs, isolated from the parent, like those of the common fowl, fish, etc., the matter is easily decided.

<sup>2</sup> Page 204.

The chemical composition of nucleic acid is simple,<sup>1</sup> consisting as it does of four parts known as nucleotids.<sup>2</sup> Hence it is called a tetra-nucleotid,<sup>3</sup> and each nucleotid is a mononucleotid.<sup>4</sup> Each mononucleotid consists of three parts: Phosphoric acid, glucid and nitrogenous portion, purin or pyrimidin, but not the two in the same mononucleotid. On short hydrolysis, the phosphoric acid is split from the mononucleotid and there remains a glucid-nitrogenous portion known as a nucleoside.<sup>5</sup>

The mononucleotids are linked together by means of an ester- or anhydrid bond. The glucid and nitrogenous portions of the nucleosides are joined by substitution, as in the case of glucose and fructose in the molecule of ordinary table-sugar, sucrose.

**The Components of Nucleic Acid.**—(1) *Phosphoric Acid*.—This is



(2) *Glucid*.—It is not known certainly what hexose is present in animal nucleic acid. In fact, the presence of a hexose is assumed only because its derivatives (levulinic<sup>6</sup> acid, formic acid, etc.) are found in the hydrolysis products of nucleic acid. In the plant, a pentose, ribose, represents the hexose of the animal nucleic acid.

The glucid is united with phosphoric acid on one hand and with the nitrogenous substance, pyrimidin or purin, on the other. The phosphoric acid association is an ester linkage, as we have stated:



The bond between the hexose and the nitrogenous part is that of a glucoside and is graphically represented as follows:  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ -\text{C}-\text{C}- \\ | \quad | \end{array}$ . The link is through the carbon of the primary alcohol of the hexose,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , that is the epsilon atom.

(3) *The Nitrogenous Portion*.—Two mononucleotids bear pyrimidins and two carry purins. Since the pyrimidins are simpler than the purins and since the purins are virtually pyrimidin conjugated with

<sup>1</sup> Diagram, page 323.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *nucleo* and *tid*, diminutive, meaning little.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *tetra*, four.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *monos*, one, or single.

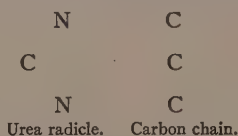
<sup>5</sup> Review the glucosides, etc., especially the structure of the diglucid, page 184.

<sup>6</sup> Page 165.

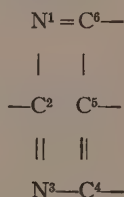
a radicle like urea, we shall discuss the pyrimidins first. The two substances are shown structurally:



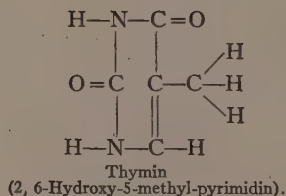
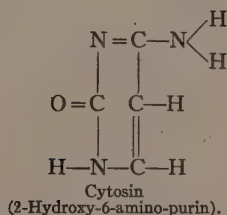
(a) *Pyrimidin*.—For reference we may speak of the parts of the pyrimidin as the urea radicle and the carbon chain:



The pyrimidin nucleus is as follows:



The atoms of carbon and of nitrogen are indicated by numerals. Unsatisfied bonds occur on all of the carbons in the 2, 4, 5, and 6 positions. Different kinds of pyrimidins are formed depending upon whether these bonds are satisfied by an oxygen, an amino- or a methyl group. Two and two only occur in the nucleus of the animal cell<sup>1</sup>:



*Properties of the Pyrimidins*.—Both of the pyrimidins occurring in the animal cell have been synthesized. They are separated with some

<sup>1</sup> In the plant cell one of the pyrimidins is the same as one that occurs in the animal cell (cytosin), but the second one is different from that which occurs in the animal nucleus (uracil, 2-6-hydroxy-pyrimidin, which replaces thymin of the animal cell).



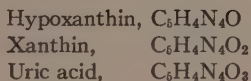
difficulty from the molecule of nucleic acid by acid hydrolysis with increased pressure and after the addition of silver nitrate are obtained as pyrimidin-silver compounds. Cytosin forms plates of crystals not readily soluble in water. It forms single salts with picric acid and double salts with platinic chlorid. It is precipitated by phosphotungstic acid. Treated with nitrous acid, it is deaminized by oxidation and converted into uracil, a plant pyrimidin, fundamental for the other pyrimidins:



Thymin is not precipitated by phosphotungstic acid, crystallizes in the form of fine needles or platelets, and does not form salts with acids. The silver salt is soluble in ammonium hydroxid solution.

We have called attention<sup>1</sup> to the fact that the vitamin water-soluble B bears a chemical resemblance to the pyrimidins, and as Williams<sup>2</sup> says: "The chemical reactions and natural occurrence of vitamin B so far as known agree very closely with the pyrimidin bases."

(b) *Purin*.—Purins occur not only in the nuclei of cells, but in the tissues, especially in muscle, where hydroxy-purins, the forerunners of uric acid and the end-product of purin metabolism are found in such compounds as hypoxanthin and xanthin. The relationships to uric acid are as follows:



Purins also occur in methylated condition in plants which are used in the making of beverages, such as caffein in coffee and tea and theobromin in chocolate and cocoa. The formulæ are given below in connection with other purins.

Purins are widely used in medicine to stimulate the higher centers, such as the psychic areas of the cerebrum; the medullary centers controlling breathing and vasomotor action; and in larger doses, the reflexes of the lower portions of the central nervous system. They

<sup>1</sup> Page 322.

<sup>2</sup> Williams, R. R., formerly of the U. S. Government service in the Philippines, where he conducted studies in the chemical composition of the vitamins. For a list of publications see Jour. Industr. and Engineering Chemistry, vol. 13, p. 1107, 1921.

cause quickening of the heart-rate. One of their most characteristic effects is diuretic.<sup>1</sup> Caffeïn occurs in the ordinary cup of coffee to the extent of 0.1 g., the toxic dose of pure caffeïn being about 1 g., although this differs with individuals. Usually 0.5 g. is the maximal therapeutic dose, the ordinary dose being 0.15 g. Caffeïn is taken largely from tea leaves, for commercial purposes. Many races use some alkaloid<sup>2</sup> like caffeïn in beverages. Thus tea is largely used by the Far Eastern peoples, Japanese, Chinese, Siberians, and Russians. Coffee is used universally, but particularly in Europe and Central and South America. The Dutch use large quantities of cocoa containing theobromin, obtained from the cacao-plant, the fat of which is used in the making of cocoa-butter. Some of the theobromin is retained in this butter, which has caused its use as a butter substitute to be prohibited by law. The people of South America, especially of Paraguay, make maté containing caffeïn.

In uric acid we have a most important substance, which will be discussed in detail under the heading Urinary Constituents and Urinalysis.<sup>3</sup>

*The Chemistry of the Purins.*—Let us start with a plant pyrimidin, uracyl, chosen because of its simplicity of structure. We may convert it by a series of reactions into a purin, like uric acid. To accomplish this, another urea radicle must be introduced by means of nitric or cyanic<sup>4</sup> acid. The structural formula for the purin nucleus is comparable to that for the pyrimidin nucleus:



The group consisting of atoms 7, 8, and 9 represents the added urea radicle. By introducing this radicle we have made an iminazol ring<sup>5</sup> consisting of atoms 4, 5, 7, 8, and 9. This configuration occurs in histidin. The substance, purin, which is made by satisfying the

<sup>1</sup> Greek *dia*, through, and Latin *ren*, kidney, that is, accelerating the passage of liquids and dissolved and suspended substances through the kidneys.

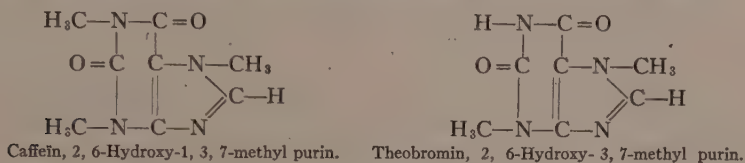
<sup>2</sup> The term "alkaloid" referred to such substances as caffeïn, but other, dissimilar substances were included. They are basic (hence "alkali-like"; Greek *alk* + *eidos*, like).

<sup>3</sup> Chapter XV.

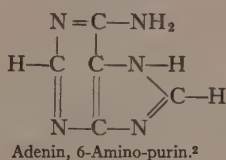
<sup>4</sup> Page 528.

<sup>5</sup> Page 268.

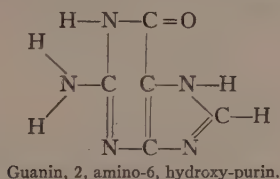
bonds on the carbon atoms with hydrogen atoms does not exist in nature, but it has been synthesized by Emil Fischer.<sup>1</sup> All other purins have, in addition to the hydrogen atoms, other atoms or radicles, such as oxygen, amino-, methyl, etc. The two plant purins, caffein and theobromin, are methyl-purins, the structure being:



Two purins, adenin and guanin, occur in animal cells. These are amino-purins which are made from the purin nucleus by adding either an amino-radicle to the sixth atom (6), the remaining bonds being satisfied by hydrogen, as in purin:



Or, as in the second nuclear purin guanin,<sup>3</sup> 2-amino-6-hydroxy-purin, the amino-radicle occurs on the atom (2) and oxygen replaces the hydrogen of the (6) of purin. Since oxygen is bivalent, it takes one of the bonds from the nitrogen (1), leaving nitrogen (1) with but two satisfied bonds. The third bond must be filled with an atom of hydrogen:



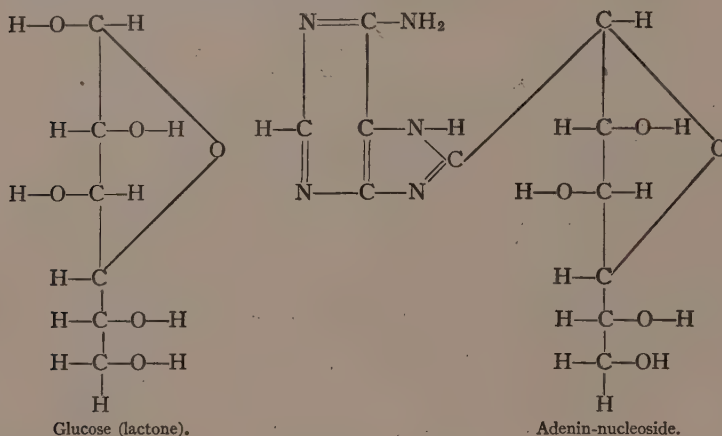
<sup>1</sup> Page 172.

<sup>2</sup> Adenin, so called from the Greek *aden*, gland; it was first isolated from glandular structures.

<sup>3</sup> From the term "guano," the Chilean and Peruvian term for the fossil excrement of sea-birds of the species cormorant, whence guano is obtained. Guano is an extremely important chemical and economic substance. Guanin is the chief form of nitrogenous excretion in the Arthropods (spiders, etc.). For an excellent account of the guano industry, see National Geographic Magazine, vol. 46, p. 279, 1824, article entitled, The Most Valuable Bird in the World, by R. C. Murphy; also article by Coker, June, 1920.

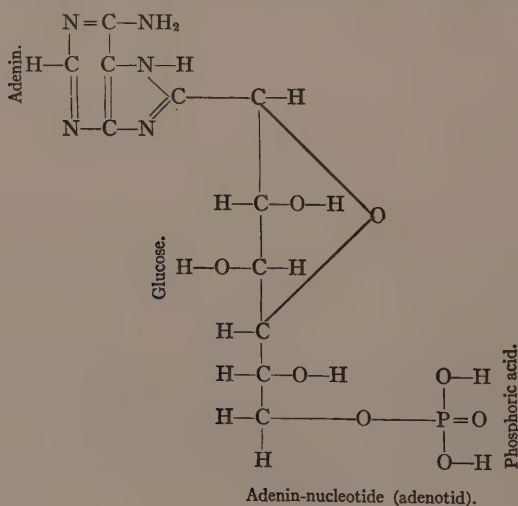
*The Linkage of the Components into Nucleic Acid.*—Having now considered the several constituents of nucleic acid, we shall show the manner in which they are united into the molecule (page 331).

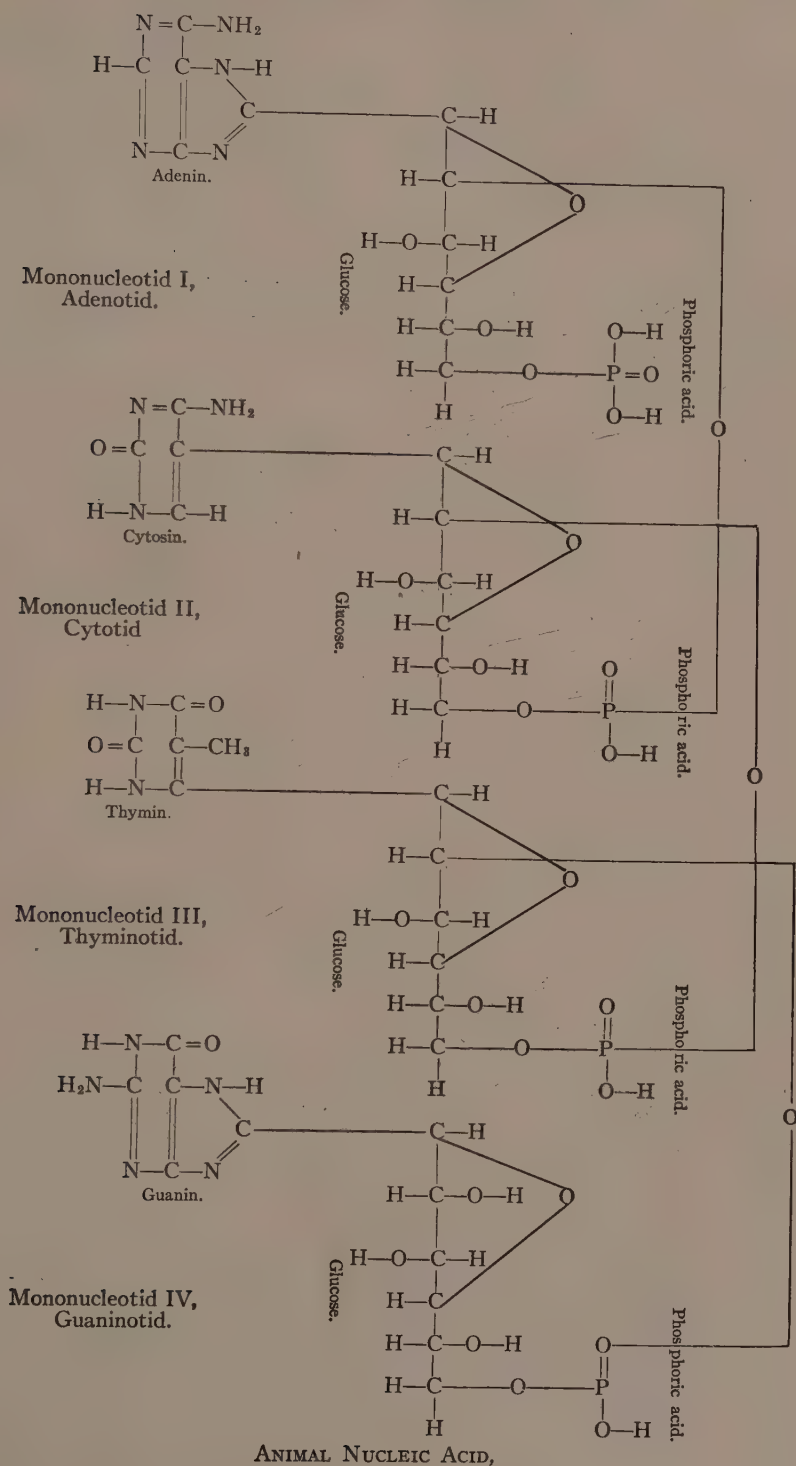
*Composition of the nucleosides:*



The above formula represents the synthesis of a nucleoside (adenoside) from adenine and glucose. All four nucleosides are synthesized in this manner.

*Composition of the Nucleotids.*—Phosphoric acid is incorporated into the nucleoside, the primary alcohol, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, being attached to the phosphoric acid molecule:



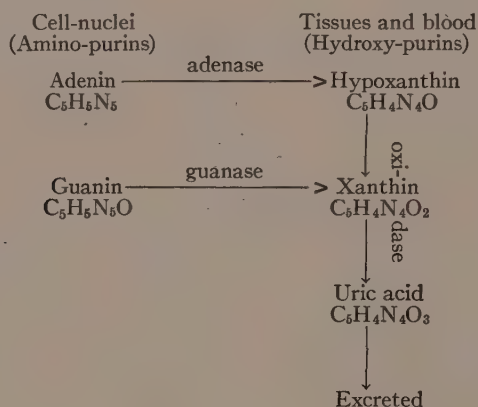




The synthesis of adenotid is accomplished by subtracting water, the hydrogen from the acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ), and the hydroxyl from the glucose primary alcohol radicle,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .

*Composition of the Whole Molecule of Nucleic Acid.*—The diagram shown on page 331 is modified from Levene's<sup>1</sup> formula for thymus nucleic acid.

*The Decomposition of Nucleic Acid.*—The purins, occurring in the nuclei of the cells, undergo changes preparatory to their discharge from the body.<sup>2</sup> The process is that of successive deaminizations and oxidations and is accelerated by specific enzymes. The following illustrates the process:



The oxidase, xanthinase, which oxidizes hypoxanthin to xanthin, and xanthin to uric acid, works in a manner that may be imitated by milk in the presence of methylene-blue. The methylene-blue removes hydrogen (hydrogen acceptor) from water, leaving oxygen to unite with another substance.

The purinases, or purin-deaminizing enzymes, are present in all tissues, but the oxidases affecting purins occur only in the liver. Besides uric acid, methyl purins (caffein, theobromin, theophyllin, etc., of the beverages), derived from the foods are excreted in the urine. They do not arise from the body tissues and escape in some manner the oxidizing action in the liver. Nearly all of the food purins, especially the amino-purins, are oxidized to uric acid. Of the total purin excretion in twenty-four hours (0.72 gm.), only from 0.15 to 0.045 g. represents purins escaping oxidation.

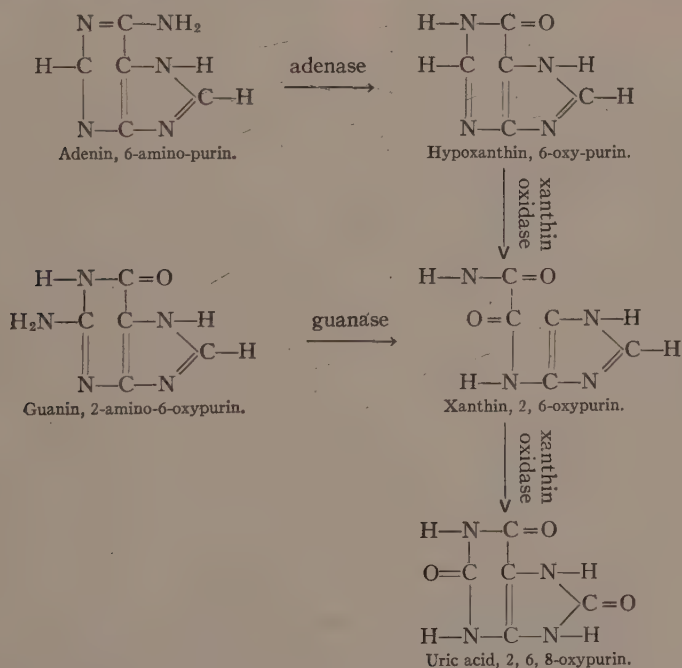
<sup>1</sup> Page 206. Wherever possible the amino, rather than the amin-nitrogen, is used, as in adenin.

<sup>2</sup> Page 334.

*Action of Digestive Juices on Nucleoprotids.*—The action may be summarized as follows:

*Alimentary Enzymes.*—In the stomach the basic protid is hydrolyzed from the molecule of nucleoprotid, leaving nucleic acid. Nucleic acid is not affected in the alimentary tract by enzymes from the human body, but may be affected by bacterial enzymes. Pancreatic trypsin causes the digestion of the protid portion of the nucleoprotid more readily than stomach pepsin.

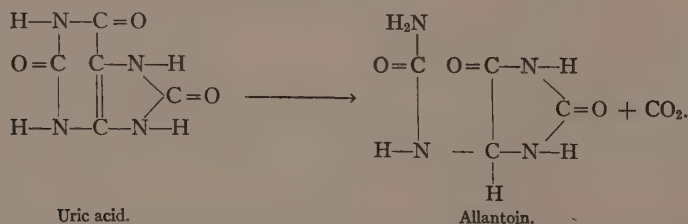
*Tissue Enzymes.*—All tissues, without exception, contain enzymes capable of hydrolyzing protids under definite conditions of reaction. Consequently, they are capable of cleaving the protamin or histon from the nucleoprotid, and they also contain nucleotidases and nucleosidases, capable of splitting the nucleotides and then the nucleosides. They are further capable of deaminizing adenin and guanin to make the oxypurins, hypoxanthin and xanthin, but the liver is alone capable of converting hypoxanthin to xanthin and xanthin to uric acid according to modern workers, although recent work<sup>1</sup> indicates that other tissues may participate in this function.



<sup>1</sup> Page 334, note 2.

The above set of reactions are extensions of the scheme shown on page 332 for the metabolism of the purins.

*Is Uric Acid Destroyed in the Body?*—The deaminizing enzymes, adenase and guanase, are quite widely distributed through the various tissues of the body, but the oxidases (grouped as xanthin-oxidase) have a more limited distribution, as we have stated before. The liver in man seems to be the sole seat of purin oxidases. In the lower animals the spleen contains a certain amount of this form of enzyme. The food-purins must pass through the liver in the portal circulation and most of these substances become converted to uric acid in this organ. A small amount of food purin escapes oxidation and becomes eliminated from the body through the urine.<sup>1</sup> All the remaining food and tissue purins become oxidized to uric acid. The question is, What becomes of this uric acid? Does the 0.7 g. eliminated each twenty-four hours represent all of the purin oxidized to uric acid, or is some destroyed in the body? Folin<sup>2</sup> has shown that the blood must destroy a relatively large amount, and some destruction of this acid may occur in the kidneys, which are capable of absorbing much uric acid under normal conditions. When a known amount of the acid is injected into the blood of a dog, 70 per cent. is destroyed in ten minutes. What agent destroys uric acid in the blood and in the kidney is not known. Folin does not believe that it is an enzyme because blood mixed with uric acid and withdrawn from the body does not cause the destruction of the uric acid. The oxidizing agent, apparently, is furnished to the blood by some other tissue and only as required. Under normal conditions all organs except the kidney are practically impermeable to uric acid. This is particularly true of the muscles. The fate of oxidized uric acid is not known. It may become allantoin. The procedure is one of oxidation and hydration, a carbon dioxid molecule being removed:



<sup>1</sup> Chapter XV. Compare this escape of purins with the escape of some of the cystin sulphur which is excreted as the "neutral" sulphur in the urine (page 248).

<sup>2</sup> Folin, O., Berglund, H., and Derick, C., The Uric Acid Problem, Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 361, 1924.

The allantoin nitrogen of the urine is increased in certain pathological states, involving degenerative changes in tissues (diabetes insipidus; muscular changes, as in tetanic conditions). The feeding of purins to man does not increase the excretion of allantoin, but in the lower animals, like the dog, such an increase does occur. A small amount of uric acid appears in the saliva and in the perspiration, but these amounts are insignificant.

*Extranuclear Nucleotides.*—It has already been stated that in animals the glucid of nuclear nucleoprotids is a hexose, but two kinds of mononucleotids have been discovered in muscle and other tissues in which the pentose, ribose, is the glucid. These two nucleotids are inosinic acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4 + \text{ribose} + \text{hypoxanthin}$ ) and guanylic acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4 + \text{ribose} + \text{guanine}$ ). The key to the structure of the nuclear nucleoprotids was given by these nucleotids, representing as they do one of the four mononucleotids of the tetranucleotid, nucleic acid of the nuclei. These nucleotids occurring outside the nucleus are derived from the foods. The fate of the pentose is not known. However, see Chapter XV concerning pentose excretion.

#### PRACTICAL STUDIES ON NUCLEOPROTIDS

**EXERCISE 49.**—Place 200 gs. of finely chopped gland material<sup>1</sup> in a liter flask and dilute with 600 mls. of “physiological normal”<sup>2</sup> saline solution; then add 5 mls. of toluene to inhibit the action of bacteria. Shake the contents thoroughly and leave in your desk until the next period. If the temperature of the desk is above 20° C., the material should be transferred to an ice-box or other cool place. Then filter first through glass wool<sup>3</sup> and then through paper. Save

<sup>1</sup> For these experiments almost any gland material, such as pancreas, thymus, spleen, lymph-glands, liver, or kidney, may be used, but organs which contain colored substances, like liver, are less satisfactory. Thymus is classic material, which has been used by Levene and others who have studied nucleic acids. It is obtainable in all markets and especially in metropolitan shops. The chemistry of nucleoprotid may be studied by using yeast, and we include as an alternative study a method for analysis of yeast nucleoprotid.

<sup>2</sup> Page 115.

<sup>3</sup> Glass wool should be handled with the very tips of the fingers if the skin is delicate, for the small glass bristles penetrate the skin and give rise to a mild dermatitis. The proper manner of handling glass wool is to lift a pinch of the long fibers from the container, place it in the palm of one hand and gently roll the mass while the two palms are held about 2 cms. apart, the edges of the palms being in contact. This makes a loose ball, which does not pack tightly in the funnel.

the filtrate, which is milky in appearance. Dilute the glacial acetic acid reagent on your desk 1 : 100 and add, drop by drop this diluted acid until the nucleoprotid is entirely precipitated. Too much acid causes a re-resolution of the precipitate, which may usually be counteracted by the addition of a drop or two of 10 per cent. NaOH. Place a hardened filter<sup>1</sup> in the Büchner funnel and suck dry. Wash with a small amount of water (25 mls.) to which 5 drops of the 1 : 100 acetic acid solution have been added; then repeat with 85 per cent. ethanol and with 25 mls. ether (avoiding flames!!), sucking dry each time. Transfer the residue of nucleoprotid to a small beaker or evaporating dish and leave until the following period in a desiccator over sulphuric acid.<sup>2</sup> Weigh the amount of dry nucleoprotid to determine the yield obtained from the 200 gs. of wet gland material. Determine the properties of the nucleoprotid as follows:

(a) *Test for Phosphorus*.—Transfer a small amount (1 g.) of the dry nucleoprotid to a small porcelain crucible, place upon a pipstem triangle resting on a tripod; use a micro-burner in place of the usual Bunsen burner. Cover the dry material with as much "fusion mixture"<sup>3</sup> as will lie on a quarter, and by means of a small glass stirring-rod mix the two materials thoroughly. Cover the crucible, but leave an opening of about 1 cm. Heat gently. Fumes will come off and later the mass will turn black. After that the color will disappear, leaving a white mass. Permit this to cool spontaneously with the cover removed, add a small amount of water,<sup>4</sup> and, by means of a stirring-rod, dissolve the mixture. To the solution add a drop of concentrated nitric acid, warm, and then add reagent ammonium molybdate solution,<sup>5</sup> whereupon the yellow precipitate consisting of the double salt (page 355) is obtained.

(b) *Test for Glucid*.—Hydrolyze the nucleoprotid by adding 4 volumes of 10 per cent.  $H_2SO_4$  solution to 1 volume of the dry nucleoprotid in a 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube. Clamp the tube upon a ring-stand in a vertical position and cover with an inverted crucible cover. Apply the flame of a micro-burner to the bottom of the tube

<sup>1</sup> A hardened filter is one which is stiff and tough so that a precipitate can be scraped from it without destroying the surface of the paper. A Büchner funnel is a porcelain funnel with perforated bottom (Fig. 246). The manner of arranging the apparatus for suction filtering is shown in Chapter XVII.

<sup>2</sup> For the best manner of making a desiccator see page 89.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Hot water facilitates the dissolution.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.



and let the contents boil for an hour or more.<sup>1</sup> The color of the solution will change to light brown, then to dark brown, then black, and finally the shade may become lighter as the "melanin" or condensation products undergo further hydrolysis. If hydrolysis is carried still farther, the glucid may be changed and fail to give the reaction described below. Pour off one-half of the solution into a test-tube and dilute with 1 volume of distilled water. Filter. Use one-half of the solution for the detection of glucid by means of the Benedict qualitative method, reserving the remainder for (c).

(c) *Test for Protid*.—Apply the following tests:

- (1) Biuret.
- (2) Folin's phenol test (tyrosin).
- (3) Millon's reaction.
- (4) Xanthoproteic reaction.

(d) *Test for Nitrogenous Constituents; Purins*.—Pour the filtrate left from the hydrolysis in (b) into a beaker and add drop by drop concentrated ammonium hydroxid until the neutral point by litmus has been reached. Then make alkaline with a few more drops of  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ . Filter; to the filtrate add 4 volumes of 5 per cent. ammoniacal silver nitrate solution.<sup>2</sup> The precipitate, white or brownish in color, according to the exposure to strong light, is purin silver nitrate. The precipitate is meager at first, but increases with time.

There are several other purins besides the nuclear amino-purins. Hypoxanthin and xanthin will be discussed under the subject "muscle,"<sup>3</sup> and uric acid under the subject "urine."<sup>4</sup> The chemistry of the pyrimidins is not well adapted to the presentation in elementary biochemistry. For methods see Jones.

**Phosphoprotids.**—Two of the phosphoprotids occur in human biochemistry: Both are concerned with infant food, both secreted by the female; they are also important foods for adults. The first is the ovotellin of the egg of the fowl and the second is the casein<sup>5</sup> of milk. Phosphoprotids contain phosphorus and it is a common error to confuse them with nucleoprotids. The manner of linkage of phosphorus in the molecule of the phosphoprotid is unknown at present, but it is

<sup>1</sup> Care should be taken that the solution does not concentrate; add, from time to time, a few drops (1 ml.) of distilled water to maintain the original volume of the solution.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix. The procedure should be made in subdued light, owing to the reduction of silver.

<sup>3</sup> Page 364.

<sup>4</sup> Chapter XV.

<sup>5</sup> Page 234.

evidently different from that in the nucleoprotids. No glucid occurs in the phosphoprotid and there is no nitrogenous part other than protid. The phospholipid, lecithin, likewise contains phosphorus, but in the phosphoprotid, there is no fatty acid or glycerol. The percentage of phosphorus in nucleoprotid and in the phosphoprotid is similar:

	Gs. per cent.
Phosphorus estimated as $P_2O_5$ from nucleoprotid . . . . .	1.05
Phosphorus estimated as $P_2O_5$ from phosphoprotid . . . . .	0.85

The amino-acid content of these protids is quite complete, as would be surmised from the rôle they play in the nutrition of the growing animal. They contain amino-acids qualitatively and quantitatively necessary for the development of offspring.

**EXERCISE 50.**—Prove that phosphorus occurs in the molecule of the sample of purified casein given you<sup>1</sup> and also that it occurs in the lipid-free ovovitellin sample submitted. Likewise demonstrate the protid nature of these compounds.

#### THE HYDROLYSIS PRODUCTS OF THE PROTIDS—PROTIDTEMNS

Frequently protidtemns are called "derived protids." We have already discussed these products briefly in connection with the hydrolysis of meat,<sup>2</sup> but will go into more detail here. The following classification serves to bring out their chief characteristics:

**I. Heat-coagulable Products.**—First hydrolysis products produced by catalyzers like water, dilute acids, or alkalis and enzymes. Changes typically colloidal in nature but of hydrolytic origin.

A. *Alloprotids*.<sup>3</sup>—Insoluble in excess of the reagent. Sulphur is not removed. Examples: Alledestin; allomyosin; alloglobulin.

B. *Metaprotids*.—Soluble in excess of the reagent, but insoluble at the iso-electric point. Sulphur is removed, especially in strongly alkaline medium. Examples: Acid albuminate; alkali albuminate.

**II. Products Not Heat Coagulable.**—Later products of hydrolysis.

A. *Albumoses*.—Biuret typical, violet predominating. Precipi-

<sup>1</sup> For the method see pages 209 and 355. Pure casein can be obtained from the Harris Laboratories, Tuckahoe, N. Y.

<sup>2</sup> Page 230.

<sup>3</sup> Frequently called proteans, but the suffix *-an* has long been used to designate the polyglucids (page 149). The author proposes to use the prefix "*allo*" for the first products of protid hydrolysis, from the Greek *allos*, others.

tated by ammonium sulphate solution. Examples: Albumose; globulose.

1. Primary albumoses. Precipitated by half-saturated  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  solution.

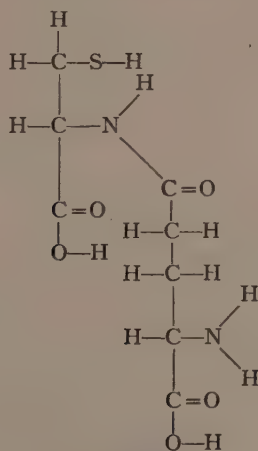
(a) Heteralbumoses. Precipitated by adding 1 volume of 95 per cent. ethanol; precipitated by 32 per cent. ethanol. Insoluble in water.

(b) Protalbumoses. Precipitated by alcohol more than 80 per cent. concentration. Soluble in water.

2. Precipitated by complete saturation of  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ . No precipitate is formed with concentrated nitric acid added drop by drop, nor by potassium ferrocyanid in dilute acid solution.

B. *Peptones*.—Not precipitated by ammonium sulphate in any concentration. Biuret atypical, pink predominating.

**Final Products of Protid Hydrolysis.**—These comprise (1) the *polypeptids*, or lower aggregates of amino-acids, peptons and albumoses being higher or more complex linkages; and (2) *amino-acids*. Theoretically, all polypeptids consisting of more than two amino-acids (tri-peptids, tetra-peptids, etc.) are protids, since they respond to the biuret test, which is given by substances having two or more biuret groups. However, we have already defined protids as colloidal polypeptids.<sup>1</sup> Of this we shall speak later. One of the most important polypeptids is glutathion<sup>2</sup> which is a condensation product of two amino-acids, glutamic acid and cystin. The formula is:



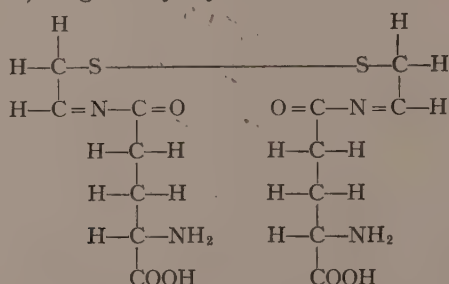
Glutathion.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Page 298.

<sup>2</sup> Page 94.

<sup>3</sup> Formula of Quastel, J. H., Stewart, C. P., and Tunnicliffe, H. E., 1923, Biochem. Jour., vol. 17, p. 586, 1923. See also same Journal, vol. 19, pp. 194, 199. Also p. 207.

On being oxidized, glutathion, which chemically is the di-peptid glutamylcystein, becomes condensed as two molecules to form di-glutamyl-cystein, or glutamyl-cystin:



**The Physical Condition of the Protid Hydrolysis Products.**—The protidtemns including and above the albumoses are colloidal and do not diffuse through a membrane; those below and including the peptons are crystalloidal and pass through membranes. Absorption of the protid products begins with the peptons and includes polypeptids and amino-acids. Typical absorption of protid food takes place in the form of amino-acids, but the lower peptids are absorbed to some extent. Albumoses are toxic and retard coagulation of the blood. In small amounts they increase the blood-pressure and in larger quantities decrease it. It is improbable from such considerations that albumoses are absorbed to any extent. When injected into an experimental animal, albumoses cause local reactions, fever and lesions of the organs, such as cirrhosis of the liver, etc. Albumoses do not act as antigens.<sup>1</sup> Pathologically, they occur in the blood and in the urine, producing "albumosuria," as in the absorptive stages of pneumonia, following the crisis, in which extensive autolysis<sup>2</sup> is believed to occur.

#### SUMMARY FOR PROTIDS<sup>3</sup>

1. The classification of protids presented here is based chiefly on physicochemical factors.

2. There are three principal groups: Simple, conjugated, and derived protids. The first comprises single protids, or those which, on hydrolysis, do not produce protid and an additional product other than protid. The second group consists of protids capable of being hydrolyzed to protid and to an additional "prosthetic" group. The derived protids are modified protids on their way to complete hydrolysis (amino-acids).

<sup>1</sup> Page 182.

<sup>2</sup> Page 456.

<sup>3</sup> Page 341.

3. Special physiological or pharmacological properties are found in the different hydrolysis products of protids, toxicity being inversely proportional to the degree of hydrolysis; that is, the higher aggregates of amino-acids are more toxic than the lower ones.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY—PART TWO



## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Abderhalden, E. *Biochemische Handlexikon*, vol. 4, Berlin, Julius Springer, 1912.  
Obtainable from A. Bruddehausen, 1309 Webster Avenue, New York, N. Y.
- Cathcart, E. P. *Physiology of Protein Metabolism*, 2d ed., New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1923.
- Fischer, E. *Aminosäuren*, usw. Berlin, Julius Springer, 1908. Obtainable from Bruddehausen (see Abderhalden).
- Jones, W. *The Nucleic Acids*, 2d ed., Longmans, Green & Co., 1924.
- Osborne, T. B. *Vegetable Proteins*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1909. A second edition has been published.
- Plimmer, R. H. A. *Chemical Constitution of the Proteins*, Part I, Analysis; Part II, Synthesis, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 3d ed., 1914.
- Robertson, T. B. *The Physical Chemistry of the Proteins*, New York, 1918.
- Rose, W. C. *Purin Metabolism*, *Physiological Reviews*, vol. 3, p. 544, 1923.
- Schryver, S. B. *General Characteristics of the Proteins*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1921.
- Wells, H. G. *Chemical Pathology*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 5th ed., 1925.



## CHAPTER VII

### THE SPECIAL CHEMISTRY OF THE TISSUES

"So poor is nature with all her craft that from the beginning to the end of the universe she has but one stuff to serve up all her dream-like variety."—*Emerson*, "Nature."

**Specialization.**—The organism is a great composite of individual units, the cells, and there is a specialization of chemical constitution comparable to the morphological specialization. Probably it would be more exact to say that comparable to the fundamental chemical specialization there is a morphological one, for it is the chemical distribution which defines structural characteristics. Each chemical element and compound exerts characteristic effects, and these effects are expressed in a vast variety of the structure and function of living things. Yet, as Emerson has said, there is a monotony in the composition of the organism, comparatively few chemical "stuffs" composing the great multiplicity of form and function.

**The Chemistry of the Tissues and the Germ-layers.**—The embryo is composed, fundamentally, of three germ-layers: Ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm. The organs arising from these layers have certain characteristic chemical features and it is possible to trace both chemical and morphological relationships. Thus, the ectoderm consists of two typical parts: Secretory cells and protective structures. In man an extreme specialization has occurred whereby the typical secretory cells have become limited in distribution and the protective portions modified. The mucous glands which occur in the skin of the lower forms of life have been limited in man principally to regions where they are protected, as in the invaginated buccal and proctodeal regions, buccal cavity, rectum, vagina, etc. The protective portions mentioned above accompany the invaginations of the glandular portion; characteristic of this protective layer is keratin, and in the central nervous system, which is derived by invagination from the ectoderm, we find neuro-keratin. Ovokeratin occurs in the mucous secretions of the oviduct of the fowl; this form of keratin is passed into

the hen's egg before the shell is deposited and we encounter the keratin in the white of egg.

Again, the structures derived from the mesoderm are typically supporting in function; examples are connective tissues, cartilage, and bone. The secretory portions of the salivary glands are derived from the mesoderm. It is of interest that the secretion of these glands contains chemical compounds which are also characteristic of such structures as cartilage. These compounds are the glucoprotid mucin<sup>1</sup> and chondroitin-sulphuric acid.<sup>2</sup>

### STRUCTURES DERIVED FROM THE ECTODERM

**The Integumentary System.**—The chief function of this system is protective. We should, therefore, expect to find chemical compounds refractory to water and to harmful reagents likely to come into contact with the skin. The skin has two portions: (1) Epidermis, derived from the ectoderm and (2) dermis,<sup>3</sup> from the mesoderm. The function of the dermis is to subserve the epidermis, which is concerned with the making of protective substances composing the cuticle, hair, nails, etc. There is a sex-difference in the content of the characteristic inorganic substance, sulphur, the female having less than the male. Calcium metabolism is on a high plane in the epidermis, and as age advances the calcium content of keratin increases. This is probably a part of the excretory function of the hair, for arsenic, chlorids, and other inorganic substances and organic materials, like cholesterol, are also found in the hair. Formerly this may have been purely for excretion, but later it gave the body the hair.<sup>4</sup> What has been said of the hair applies largely to the nails, since their embryonic origin is similar.<sup>5</sup>

**The Pigments of Hair.**—Two distinct pigments occur in the epidermal structures of man, namely, black and brown. The variety of color found in the hair of different individuals and races depends upon the distribution of these pigments. Red hair is a diluted black. Gray hair is devoid of pigment and the whiteness is augmented by the inorganic content, principally by the calcium phosphate and carbonate, which are found in larger quantities as age progresses. Through the

<sup>1</sup> Page 165.

<sup>2</sup> Page 349.

<sup>3</sup> Also called corium.

<sup>4</sup> The erectile function of hair is performed by means of small muscles attached to the base of the hair, but without the stiffening of the ramus of the hair these muscles cannot perform their duty.

<sup>5</sup> It is believed by many biologists that hair, nail, and horn are practically the same structure, the hair in time becoming matted and forming nail and horn.

work of Bertrand,<sup>1</sup> von Fürth, Gortner, and others it has been shown that hair pigments are due to oxidation of a chromogen, or substance capable of being converted into a color-bearing portion. The aromatic amino-acids like tyrosin form the basis of such conversions. Tyrosin is converted on oxidation into melanin substances. Of these there are two classes, one soluble and the other insoluble, in dilute acids. The acid-soluble substances resemble acid albuminates and are dissolved or included in the keratin of the hair. The insoluble melanins are of a different kind and probably have a different origin, for they are not protids.<sup>2</sup> The pigments of the skin and of the iris of the eye are chemically the same as the hair pigments. In certain pathological states there is a deposition of pigment, as in the melanotic sarcomas and in retinitis pigmentosa.<sup>3</sup> In others the power of making melanin is lost, as in albinism, healed tissue after severe lesions, bacterial and mould infections, and in syphilis. Melanin becomes clumped into small areas as in freckles during exposure to actinic rays—either those of the sun or of the mercury-vapor quartz lamp. There is probably some nuclear derangement in such cases and the accumulation of pigment is a protective measure. The function of the epidermis to secrete pigment persists when the ectoderm becomes incorporated into interior structures like the nervous system. Pigmentation also occurs in the retina of the eye and in the “substantia nigra” of the neuron, both of which are derived from the ectoderm. In Addison’s disease<sup>4</sup> the adrenal glands are affected, and substances which would otherwise contribute to the formation of epinephrin pass into the blood and are excreted into the skin where they take on the bronze color characteristic of the disease. Care should be exercised, however, in assigning all pigmentation to these melanins, for the pigmentation in malaria, in ochronosis,<sup>5</sup> and in other conditions is of entirely different origin, being obtained from blood-pigment.

It is of interest that pigmentation is inherited. Thus the brown of

<sup>1</sup> Bertrand, Gabriel, contemporary Parisian biochemist; Otto von Fürth, contemporary German biochemist; Ross A. Gortner, see page 262.

<sup>2</sup> There is no contradiction in this statement from that made above where melanins are said to be derived from tyrosin; phenols other than tyrosin occur in the human body.

<sup>3</sup> A disease due in many cases to consanguineous marriages; the retinal cells become pigmented.

<sup>4</sup> Addison, Thomas, English physician of the 19th century (page 646).

<sup>5</sup> Greek *ochros*, yellow. The pigmentation affects the scleroprotids and also pigments become excreted into the urine.

the Mediterranean races is dominant<sup>1</sup> over the recessive<sup>1</sup> light hair and blue eyes of the northern races.

**The Dermis.**—The glands which penetrate the dermis are of ectodermal origin. They secrete the oily substances occurring on the surface of the skin, known as sebum.<sup>2</sup> This consists of a mixture of various organic substances, such as a phosphoprotid resembling vitellin; a heat-coaguable protid of the character of an albumin and lipids other than neutral fat. Cholesterol and lipids of unsaturated nature occur. In pathological states sebaceous cysts become filled with esters of fatty acids and higher alcohols, like cetyl alcohol. The skin of the newborn child is lubricated with a fatty substance called vernix caseosa<sup>3</sup> consisting largely of cholesterol and its esters. Lanolin<sup>4</sup> used in pharmacy for making ointments, consists of cholesterol-esters derived from the skin of the lamb. The hair and, to a greater extent, the nails take up cholesterol from the skin probably mechanically. In the ear, a brownish wax known as cerumen<sup>5</sup> is chemically similar to sebum, although it is mixed with the secretions of the sudoriferous glands.<sup>6</sup> Like the secretions of the sebaceous glands, cerumen contains lipids and derivatives, esters, and soaps. The characteristic pigment is responsible for the peculiar bitter taste. Finally, the vaginal and penal secretions are simply products of glands similar to those of the skin. Chemically, they do not depart from the secretion of the skin glands, although there are admixtures of other substances derived from the accessory glands of the genital and urinary system.

**The Perspiration.**—The skin in the past has been considered chiefly an organ of excretion. Its excretory function is artificially augmented in certain diseases in which the work of the kidneys must

<sup>1</sup> The terms "dominant" and "recessive" are used by genetists to designate the condition in which a structure or color becomes active, or evident (dominant), or suppressed (recessive) when two animals having different characteristics are interbred. Thus, in the case of pigmentation, if a true Saxon marry a Spanish Castilian of pure descent, most of the children will be largely of dark complexion in the theoretical ratio of 3 : 1; the Saxon color is transmitted to one child in four, statistically. The dark of the Mediterranean races is dominant over the fair complexion of the northern race in such matings.

<sup>2</sup> Latin *sebum*, animal fat or suet.

<sup>3</sup> Latin *vernix*, varnish and casein; that is, a cheesy varnish.

<sup>4</sup> Page 210.

<sup>5</sup> Latin, meaning ear-wax.

<sup>6</sup> Latin *sudor*, sweat, and *fero*, to carry.



be lightened, as in uremia and excessive retention.<sup>1</sup> In such cases sweating is produced by means of sudorific drugs like pilocarpin,<sup>2</sup> or by hot baths. In either case the peripheral regions are stimulated and increased metabolism of the skin results. The rôle of the perspiration in water excretion may be seen from the following table<sup>3</sup>:

#### WATER BALANCE (TWENTY-FOUR HOURS)

##### Intake:

Drinking water.....	600 gs.
Beverages like tea, coffee, milk.....	580
In solid food.....	720
In 100 gs. of protid.....	50
In 100 gs. fat.....	118
In 224 gs. glucid.....	135
Total intake.....	2203 gs. water

##### Outgo:

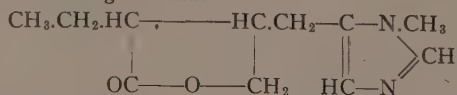
Urine.....	800 gs.
Skin.....	680 <sup>4</sup>
Respiratory tract.....	600
Feces.....	200
Total loss.....	2280 gs.

The perspiration consists of 98 per cent. water and 2 per cent. solids, sodium chlorid predominating (1 per cent.). Organic substances like cholesterol, uric acid, urea and other ones characteristic of the urine have been found. As the amount of perspiration increases, the inorganic radicles, chlorids, phosphates, and sulphates, increase, while the organic compounds decrease.

The acidity of the perspiration is due to the fatty acids which are hydrolyzed and oxidized from the lipids during the process of excretion. The accumulation of urea and other nitrogenous substances

<sup>1</sup> Retention, see page 224. Uremia, Chapters XV and XVI. For the more recent conception of the function of the skin see Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 82, p. 968, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Pilocarpin, derived from the plant called by the botanist *Pilocarpus* and by the natives of Central America, *jaborandi*. Chemically, pilocarpin is an iminazol- ing compound of the following formula:



<sup>3</sup> From Rowntree: The Water Balance of the Body, *Physiol. Reviews*, vol. 2, p. 122, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Figure of Gephart and DuBois, *Archives Internal Medicine*, vol. 17, p. 902, 1916.



when the skin is not bathed and the ammonia and ammonium compounds resulting from deamination by bacteria of the urea, etc., may render the perspiration alkaline.<sup>1</sup> However, at times an actual alkaline perspiration, fresh from the glands, occurs. Gases like carbon dioxid normally pass from the skin; the average amount given off in this way is 1.5 per cent. of that exhaled through the lungs.

One of the chief functions of the perspiration is that of cooling the body by evaporation; this will be discussed later.

**The Mammary Glands.**—These are functionally sex-linked<sup>2</sup> integumentary organs; but structurally they occur in both sexes, although functioning has rarely been observed in the male. At puberty the male glands cease to grow, the female persisting.<sup>3</sup> The gland arises in the embryo from the milk-ridge, an epidermal thickening, which later contains both sudoriferous and sebaceous glands; consequently, the secretion partakes of the chemical characters of the two types of secretion. The chemistry of the glands themselves resembles that of the integument as a whole, although the epidermal portions are of less importance. Being a gland, nucleoprotid occurs in conspicuous amounts. There are two types of nucleoprotid: (1) Mononucleotids which occur outside the nuclei of the cells<sup>4</sup> and (2) the true nuclear nucleoprotid,<sup>5</sup> the tetranucleotids, described previously. Besides these sources of phosphorus, milk contains the phosphoprotid casein which adds to the phosphorus content of this fluid.<sup>6</sup> It is not definitely known how casein is made in the mammary gland, but it is evident that the elements necessary for its synthesis are present in the gland.

The chemistry of milk is discussed on page 405.

**The Teeth.**—An inspection of the mouth of a shark is instructive as to the origin of the teeth and their relation to the integumentary system. The protective "shagreen" of the skin of the shark passes with imperceptible changes to the oral cavity, where spines borne on

<sup>1</sup> This may be a factor in the readiness with which unclean skin becomes infected, for an alkaline reaction is favorable to bacteria, some moulds, and wild yeasts.

<sup>2</sup> That is, confined to one sex.

<sup>3</sup> Starling (British physiologist of the latter part of the 19th century) has demonstrated the direct relation between sex organs and these glands.

<sup>4</sup> These are the "beta-nucleotids" of the English student; they are free mononucleotids (see page 335).

<sup>5</sup> "Alpha-nucleoprotids"; page 323.

<sup>6</sup> Compare muscle phosphorus, 0.04 g. per cent. dried muscle; mammary gland phosphorus, 0.27 g. per cent.

the plates of this system become enlarged to form the teeth. Hence we include the teeth in the integumentary system for the purpose of chemical discussion. Embryologically, both ectoderm and mesoderm are concerned in the formation of the teeth. From the former arises the enamel, the densest material of the body; from the latter the dentine and the pulp.

Chemically, the tooth resembles bone.<sup>1</sup> The cement is true bone. Dentine is similar to bone, but contains less water. Both contain a gelatin-producing substance, collagen, discussed on page 348. Enamel in the older tooth contains no demonstrable water, but in the young tooth from 1 to 2 per cent. of water occurs. The enamel is covered with a thin cuticle, called Nasmyth's membrane,<sup>2</sup> corresponding to the cuticle of the skin. Fluorin occurs in the enamel in small amounts (0.1 per cent.)<sup>3</sup> The principal difference between teeth and bone is the water content. Magnesium seems to occur in larger quantities in teeth than in bone. Under the heading of "deficiency diseases" will be discussed the modification of the teeth with different kinds of foods (page 642).

#### THE MESODERMAL STRUCTURES

The mesodermal structures comprise such substances as bone, cartilage, connective tissues, etc., and are largely concerned with supporting the organs and tissues of the body.

**Cartilage.**—In cartilage and allied substances the intercellular material is of especial importance. This is a secretion of the cells in which they are embedded. The characteristic chemical substance of this intercellular material is collagen,<sup>4</sup> which affords the gelatin of commerce. The collagen is laid down in fibers, or fibrils, the interstitial substance between them containing, principally, a glucoprotid known as tendomucoid. According to the investigations of Gies, tendomucoid is a mixture of glucoprotids with an inorganic radicle,

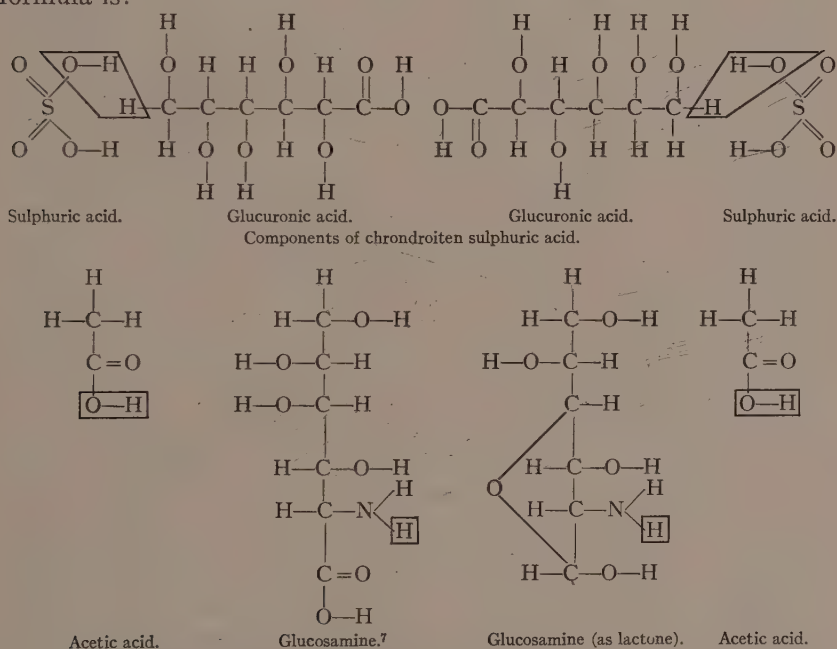
<sup>1</sup> Just as bone has an organic matrix, teeth have likewise. Gies and collaborators (page 281) have been able to dissolve the inorganic substances, leaving the organic substratum.

<sup>2</sup> Scotch physician, died 1847.

<sup>3</sup> McCollum (page 536) has shown that increased amount of fluorin in the diet of experimental animals tends to cause soft teeth, especially incisors. The use of fluorin (in the form of sodium fluorid and the like) as preservative for foods is perhaps hygienically improper.

<sup>4</sup> Page 356. Collagen is shipped from Russia and other countries in the form of hoofs, etc., and made into gelatin in the United States. This gelatin is now of the highest purity, and when placed on the market is of very low bacterial content.

sulphuric acid, in the molecule—the so-called chondroitin sulphuric acid.<sup>1</sup> The composition of this substance is analogous to that of other conjugated protids, *e. g.*, nucleoprotids, in which protid is linked with a prosthetic group. In the case of cartilage, chondroitin acid<sup>2</sup> is linked with protid. The exact relationship is unknown, but through the investigations of Levene<sup>3</sup> a tentative structural formula has been derived. This indicates: (1) That a conjugation of two molecules of glucuronic acid with a molecule each of the amino-sugar called *glucosamin*<sup>4</sup> occurs; (2) that the amino-radicles of the glucosamin become acetylated by the addition to each one of a molecule of acetic acid, and (3) that an ester is formed with the last<sup>5</sup> carbon atom, the primary alcohol radicle,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , with sulphuric acid. The Levene-LaForge<sup>6</sup> formula is:



<sup>1</sup> Greek *chondros*, gristle, and *eidōs*, like.

<sup>2</sup> The structure of this acid is not thoroughly known, but the empirical formula is  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{27}\text{SNO}_{17}$ .

<sup>3</sup> Page 206.

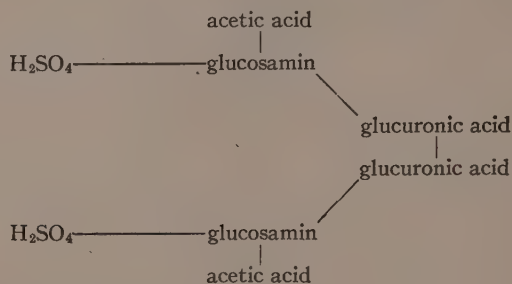
<sup>4</sup> Glucosamin occurs as *chitin* in the coverings of crustacea (lobster).

<sup>5</sup> The epsilon carbon atom, the counting being made from the aldehyde radicle.

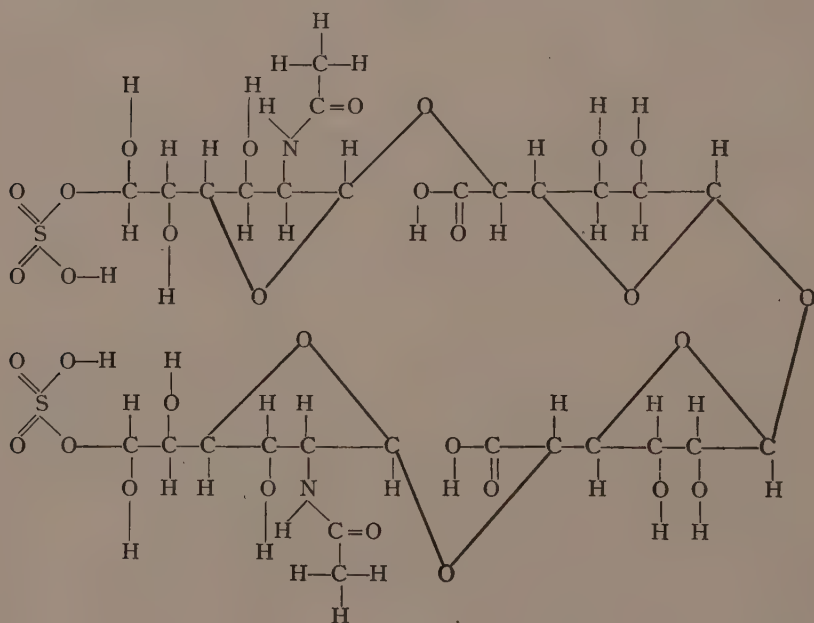
<sup>6</sup> LaForge, B., 1882-. With the Bureau of Chemistry of the U. S. Department of Agriculture.

<sup>7</sup> The formula is inverted from that used in previous pages, owing to easier rendering of the completed formula for chondroitin sulphuric acid.

The molecule may be shown, diagrammatically, as follows:



The completed formula is as follows:



The tendomucoid is slightly acid in properties. It is insoluble in water, but soluble in dilute alkali solution, such as lime-water. From such a solution tendomucoid is precipitated by the addition of a few drops of 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid or by the following reagents in aqueous solutions: Lead acetate; "basic" lead acetate<sup>1</sup>; potassium aluminium sulphate, and ferric chlorid. It is not precipitated with

<sup>1</sup> Page 224.

tannic acid or potassium ferrocyanid. Chondroitin sulphuric acid is likewise acid in reaction in aqueous solution. Prepared in the laboratory, it assumes a high viscosity as it becomes concentrated. Unlike tendomucoid, it is not precipitated from solution by dilute "strong" acids nor by concentrated solutions of weak acids (organic acids). It resembles tendomucoid in not being precipitated by the substances mentioned above (lead acetate, etc.). As cartilage becomes older, a substance known as "albumoid" of protid nature appears. This may be obtained by heat coagulation of a cartilage solution in dilute alkali. The collagen is soluble, whereas the albumoid is insoluble and may be filtered off after the alkali has been partially neutralized.

The water content of "green" bone, that is, extracted with ether and then dried in an oven after removal of the marrow, is about 8.5 per cent. for subjects from twenty to sixty years and 8.9 per cent. for those whose age is from sixty-one to ninety-one.<sup>1</sup> Here, as in cartilage, the intercellular matrix is characteristic. It consists of inorganic substances, known as "bone earths" infiltrated into an organic, cartilage-like material called "ossein." The latter, like cartilage proper, contains mucoid and albumoid, with properties similar in every respect to those of cartilage itself. The proportion of ossein, according to Radasch, averages as follows: From twenty to sixty years, 40.7 per cent.; from sixty-one to ninety years, 42.32 per cent. of green bone. For study one may remove the bone-earths from bone by soaking the latter in 5 per cent. hydrochloric acid solution. The bone becomes pliable and the inorganic materials may be recovered from the solvent. There seems to be little doubt that ossein, mucoid, and albumoid are identical with the corresponding substances of cartilage; in fact, bone may be thought of as cartilage matrix with a deposition of inorganic substances replacing portions of the matrix.<sup>2</sup>

The following statements summarize the findings of Hammett in a study of bone metabolism in experimental animals: The degree of ossification of bone is greater in the female than in the male, the calcium content being greater in the female than in the male. The water content of bone decreases proportionately with age, due to

<sup>1</sup> Radasch, H. E. (page 432), *Anatomical Record*, vol. 21, p. 153, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> The osteoblasts are especial cells the function of which seems to be (1) to remove cartilage and (2) to deposit by active metabolism inorganic substances. Similar cells are found in the deposition of calcareous and silicious skeletons in the lower animals. (See Fig. 49.)



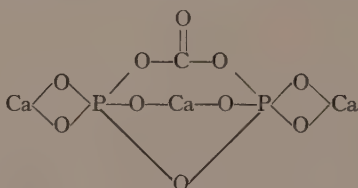
ossification. An increase in Ca and decrease in Mg. and P occur up to the end of puberty.



Fig. 116a.—F. S. Hammett, Chemist to Wistar Institute. (Photograph by Science Service.)

The “bone-earths” are given in the following summary of bone chemistry:

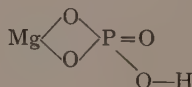
- (1) Tri-calcium phosphate: 88 gs. per 100 gs. bone-ash.



Tri-calcium phosphate (with CO<sub>2</sub> attached).

- (2) Carbon dioxid, as carbonate attached to the phosphate (shown above).

- (3) Magnesium phosphate, 2 per cent.



- (4) Calcium fluorid, 0.3 per cent.



- (5) Calcium chlorid, 0.4 per cent.

- (6) Iron, Fe<sup>+++</sup>, 0.1 per cent.

The manner in which these various inorganic constituents are combined in bone whether chemically or physically is not known, but it is probable that the carbonate and calcium phosphate are united and perhaps the magnesium compound is linked with them to form a large molecule. The phosphate is probably linked with hexose (glucose) as a hexosephosphate which is hydrolyzed by a special enzyme abundant in ossifying cartilage, but much less in non-ossifying tissue.<sup>1</sup> It is interesting in this connection that after phosphorus poisoning a patient craves sugar.

Iron and coloring-matters are probably of exotic nature; that is, they do not belong to bone, but are brought in blood, or incorporated with fat, which constitutes about 2 per cent. of bone, occurring principally in the marrow. The amount of inorganic substance deposited varies according to age, sex, and other conditions. Thus one of the injuries suffered by a child delivered with instruments is fracture of the cervical vertebræ, owing to the fact that these bones are more highly ossified than those in other parts of the body at birth. As growth continues, ossification of the long bones rapidly takes place, there being a general increase in solids and a decrease in water. In certain diseases involving bones, such as rickets,<sup>2</sup> craniotabes, etc., there is a loss of inorganic portions of the bone. There are two causes for rickets in children<sup>3</sup>: (1) Disproportion of calcium and phosphorus in the diet; (2) lack of an agent causing utilization of these inorganic substances, chiefly calcium. There are three means of administering curative effects derived from (2); these are (1) direct sunlight; (2) artificial light, and (3) foods that seem to carry or to be especially affected by such light. The light must bear rays of fairly definite wavelength, the optimal effect being obtained by light of 2900 Å.<sup>4</sup>

Lesions of certain organs cause modifications of the inorganic content of bone and of other parts of the body, such as blood. Thus an increase in the deposit of bone-earths occurs in the disease known as acromegaly,<sup>5</sup> when the gland in the base of the skull known as the

<sup>1</sup> Page 171.

<sup>2</sup> Rickets is also known as rachitis (Greek *rhachis*, the boll of a tree, and hence applied to the spinal column, originally supposed to be the seat of the chief lesion in rickets). Tabes (Greek *teko*, to melt; hence applied to the disappearance of bone, nerve, etc.). For Rickets see page 632.

<sup>3</sup> While rickets may affect the adult, it is seldom encountered.

<sup>4</sup> Page 127. See also page 632 for a more complete treatment of rickets.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *akros*, top, and *megas*, great; signifying the enlargement of the extremities. See page 655.

pituitary<sup>1</sup> becomes diseased, due to some functional disturbance or to pressure.

*Bone-marrow* is a vascular, fatty<sup>2</sup> substance containing hemato-poietic<sup>3</sup> organs in which the erythrocytes, or red blood-corpuscles, are made. The substances found in blood are also to be found in the marrow and there is nothing especially characteristic about this substance from the chemical standpoint. The "bone oil" which attracted attention among some of the older chemists, like Glauber, contains complex aromatic substances, like pyrrols; these substances are derived from amino-acids in bone.

**EXERCISE 1.**—A sheep rib has been soaked in dilute acid solution for a week. Secure 25 mls. of the solution and about 3 cms. of the residual bone. Free<sup>4</sup> it from inorganic materials. Follow the directions (page 354ff.) for the study of the solution, using 25 mls. of fluid for the detection of inorganic cations and anions:

**Inorganic Constituents<sup>5</sup>:**

*Anions:* (1) *Chlorion*,  $-\text{Cl}^-$ .—Place 2 mls. of the fluid in a test-tube and add 1 drop concentrated nitric acid,  $\text{HNO}_3$ , and 1 ml. 2 per cent. silver nitrate,  $\text{AgNO}_3$ , solution.<sup>6</sup> A positive test is obtained if there is a precipitate of whitish silver chlorid. Small amounts of silver chlorid cause only a cloudiness in the solution. Confirm the test by scraping a piece of dried bone until you have accumulated as much as a 5-cent piece will hold. Transfer the scrapings to a mortar containing 1 volume of quicklime,  $\text{CaO}$ , and grind the substances until thoroughly mixed. Transfer the substance to a small porcelain crucible and place on a pipe-stem triangle over a Bunsen burner. Cover with a porcelain crucible cover and leave a small opening for the escape of steam and fumes. Heat gently at first and then strongly

<sup>1</sup> In acromegaly the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland is affected. See page 655.

<sup>2</sup> In necrotic conditions, such as senescence, or old age, there is a chondroid marrow which is not fat-like in constitution.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *'aima*, blood, and *poiein*, to make.

<sup>4</sup> Not all of the inorganic substances are removed by the acid treatment.

<sup>5</sup> The study is to be made without chemical separation, such as the analytical chemist usually uses. If time permit, it is better to proceed as in qualitative analysis, using the usual procedures found in any good qualitative analysis, such as Treadwell-Hall.

<sup>6</sup> This is practically a decinormal solution, which contains 1.7 per cent.  $\text{AgNO}_3$ ; the decinormal solution made for chlorid analysis may be used.

to fusion. Remove the flame, permit to cool in the air, add distilled water and a drop or two of concentrated nitric acid. Then add silver nitrate solution as before as long as there is a precipitate. The whitish precipitate indicates the presence of a halogen.

(2) *Phosphion*,  $-\text{PO}_4^-$ .—(a) The solution: To 5 mls. of the solution add NaOH solution until neutral to litmus. Then add 1 volume concentrated sulphuric acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , and 1 volume nitric acid,  $\text{HNO}_3$ . Clamp the tube in a slightly inclined position in the hood and heat gently with a Bunsen burner until color has been lost. If the color is not lost, cool under the tap and add an additional 1 ml. of concentrated  $\text{HNO}_3$ ; heat again, as before. Now permit to cool and continue cooling under the cold-water tap. Add 2 mls. solution of ammonium nitrate,<sup>1</sup> dilute with 2 mls. distilled water, and heat again in the open air. Add drop by drop 10 per cent. solution of ammonium molybdate. If the reaction is positive, the solution will turn yellow; or there may be a precipitate, likewise yellow in color, due to the formation of the mixed salt, ammonium phosphomolybdate,  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot 12\text{MoO}_3$ .

(b) Scraped bone: Place about 2 gs. of the scrapings in a porcelain crucible and mix thoroughly with 3 volumes of "fusion mixture"<sup>2</sup> by means of a stirring-rod. Place the crucible on a pipe-stem triangle resting on a tripod over a Bunsen burner. Fuse as described for chlorion above<sup>3</sup> and extract the mass with cold water. To the solution add an excess of concentrated ammonium hydroxid and then drop-by-drop "magnesia mixture."<sup>4</sup> Phosphates are precipitated as

ammonio-magnesium phosphate,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ \text{H} \\ \text{H} \\ \text{H} \end{array} \text{N} - \text{P} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array} \text{Mg}.$

(3) *Carbonate ion*,  $-\text{CO}_3^-$ .—Add a drop of concentrated HCl to dry bone substance; effervescence of  $\text{CO}_2$  occurs, indicating the presence of the radicle  $-\text{CO}_3^-$ .

**Cations:** (1) *Sodion*,  $\text{Na}^+$ .—Sodium imparts a yellow color to the flame of a Bunsen burner. Demonstrate the presence of sodion in the solution by igniting a small shred of long-fibre asbestos until a yellow flame no longer appears; then dip the cooled asbestos in the solution to be tested and heat again in the flame; a yellow color appears.

<sup>1</sup> Eighty-five per cent. aqueous solution.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix. The mixing should be done by grinding the ingredients in a mortar.

<sup>3</sup> Page 354.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

(2) *Potassion*,  $K^+$ .—To 5 mls. of the solution add 10 per cent. NaOH solution to neutrality to litmus paper. Acidulate with 2 mls. glacial acetic acid and boil to remove the ammonia. Cool. Then add 2 mls. sodium cobalti-nitrite solution<sup>1</sup> and let stand for fifteen minutes or longer. A positive test is indicated by the appearance of a yellow precipitate of potassium-sodium-cobalti-nitrite,  $K_2NaCo(NO_2)_6$ . There must be more than 0.3 mgs. potassium present to give a distinct test.

(3) *Calcion*,  $Ca^{++}$ .—Since other alkaline earth elements, like barium and strontium, are not present in bone, one may proceed directly to the detection of calcium in bone: Add to 1 volume of the solution to be tested 1 volume of ammonium oxalate<sup>2</sup> solution,  $\begin{array}{c} COO.NH_4 \\ | \\ COO.NH_4 \end{array}$ ; in the presence of calcion insoluble calcium oxalate<sup>3</sup> appears as a white precipitate,  $\begin{array}{c} COO \\ \diagup \\ \diagdown \\ COO \end{array} Ca$ .

(4) *Magnesion*,  $Mg^{++}$ .—It is necessary to remove all heavy and alkaline earth cations before testing for magnesium: To 5 mls. of the solution add 1 volume of concentrated ammonium hydroxid; filter. Save the filtrate and to it add half its volume of 5 per cent. ammonium carbonate solution; filter again. Then to the filtrate add a few drops of concentrated ammonium hydroxid and a few drops of 5 per cent. di-sodium monohydrogen phosphate,  $Na_2HPO_4$ , solution. A positive test is indicated when a white, crystalline precipitate of ammonio-magnesium phosphate appears, according to the following reaction:  $Mg^{++} + Na_2HPO_4 + NH_4OH \longrightarrow MgNH_4PO_4 \downarrow^4 + 2Na^+ + H_2O$ .

**The Organic Part.**—The chemistry of "ossein" is similar to that of collagen. The specimen of bone given you contains mucoid and albumoid, in addition to collagen. Leave the demineralized piece of bone in lime-water<sup>5</sup> until the following period to extract the mucoid and albumoid. Then remove it and test by the following methods for protid:

(1) Using 5 mls. of the solution, which is alkaline, acidulate with glacial acetic acid to neutrality to litmus paper and then add 1 drop

<sup>1</sup> Appendix. The substance is  $Na_3Co(NO_2)_6$ .

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Solubility of calcium oxalate in  $H_2O$  at room temperature is 0.000,056 g. per 100 mls.  $H_2O$ .

<sup>4</sup> The inverted arrow indicates that the substance is precipitated.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.



more to give acid reaction. Perform the heat-coagulation test<sup>1</sup> and note that coagulation occurs. Save the filtrate from this coagulated mass. Try Millon's test and the biuret reaction.

(2) Using the filtrate from (1), perform the biuret reaction upon a portion of it and, upon a second part, determine whether the Hopkins-Cole reaction (page 307) is positive or negative; a positive test indicates the presence of the so-called "albumoid."

(3) Using the collagen left in the bone after removal of these two organic substances, repeat the tests given on page 356.

**Muscle.**—The chief function of muscle is to shorten (contract). How this is accomplished can be considered to better advantage after the chemistry of muscle has been discussed.<sup>2</sup> Of the two kinds of muscles, voluntary and involuntary, or smooth muscle, the latter is less specialized. It is composed of simple elongated cells, each containing a single nucleus. On the other hand, striated muscle consists of syncytia<sup>3</sup> or pseudo-cells having one cell-wall in common and several nuclei. The sarcolemma,<sup>4</sup> which seems to be the seat of the actual contracting of the muscle, lies peripherally to the nuclei, and it is probable that this sarcolemma is a thickened and specialized portion of the cytoplasm. It is this substance which gives rise to the appearance of cross and longitudinal striations. While there has been much discussion concerning the intimate structure, it is more than probable that the horizontal striations of the cell are due to alternate zones of contracting and lax substances. As micro-dissections have shown when the sarcolemma is pulled about by means of a needle, these striations disappear. The striations are, therefore, to be likened to waves in the continuous plasma of the cells; the more dense portions form the crests and the less dense ones the troughs of the waves. The polariscope shows that these portions affect light, which has been polarized,<sup>5</sup> differently: The denser portions appear light and hence are anisotropic,<sup>6</sup> while the lighter portions are isotropic, that is, emitting

<sup>1</sup> Page 219.

<sup>2</sup> Page 140.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *syn*, together, and *kytos*, a cell.

<sup>4</sup> Greek, *sarx*, flesh, and *lemma*, covering or husk.

<sup>5</sup> Page 178.

<sup>6</sup> Greek *an*, privitive, meaning without, *isos*, same, and *tropos*, turning, that is, "not turning the same way"; the substance is "doubly refractive," that is, there is an ordinary and extraordinary ray sent out by the denser portion, which corresponds to a crystal of iceland spar (page 179), and the reason the denser portion looks lighter in the polariscope is because one or the other ray passes through the instrument whatever the position of the polariscope prisms with respect to one another. On the other hand, the isotropic less dense portion of the muscle protoplasm is dark when viewed by the polariscope when the prisms are "crossed," that is, the plane of polarized light is 90 degrees from the plane of the analyzer.

only one ray. Since double refraction may be caused artificially by stress or strain in the substances exhibiting double refraction, it is probable that the denser portion is under stress (contraction), while the less dense substance is in equilibrium. Such are the observational features of muscle contraction.

EXERCISE 2.—Using the extract from the hydrolysis experiment of page 230, or commercial meat extract, like Steero, or Bovril, perform the following separation of the “extractives” of muscle:

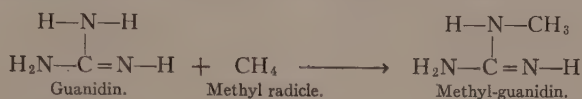
(A) Dilute 20 mls. of the solution from the earlier experiment with 100 mls. of distilled water, or dissolve 10 gs. of commercial extract in 100 mls. of hot water. Add, in small portions, as the precipitation of inorganic substances takes place, lead acetate solution (9 per cent.) as long as a distinct precipitate occurs, avoiding an excess of the reagent, which has to be removed. Permit the precipitate to settle and then decant the supernatant fluid into a test-tube; pass a current of hydrogen sulphide<sup>1</sup> through it for two minutes. To be certain that all of the lead has been removed, filter off the lead sulphide, return the test-tube to the generator, and pass the gas through again; if it has not, let the current of gas run through for two minutes longer and filter again. Transfer the clear filtrate to a small evaporating dish and, carefully, by means of the micro-burner, evaporate off the excess liquid, leaving a syrup. Let this stand protected by a piece of filter-paper until the following period. Crystals of creatin will appear and they should be examined under a microscope with low and high power. Dilute the desk reagent of ethanol (95 per cent.) to make 50 mls. of 88 per cent. ethanol solution<sup>2</sup> and transfer the crystals to this solution. Stir to insure complete mixture and solution of irrelevant substances, which are removed by filtration, the crystals of creatin being insoluble in this strength alcohol. They may be purified by washing them while on the paper with 88 per cent. alcohol and then dissolving them in hot water. Add a small amount of good charcoal, mix, and filter while hot. The filtrate should be colorless. Transfer the filtrate to a boiling water-bath and concentrate to about 25 mls. solution. Let cool; white crystals of creatin appear.

*The Chemistry of Creatin.*—The reader should refer to page 255 where the formula for guanidin is given in connection with the di-

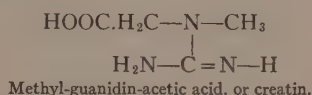
<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Table in Appendix.

amino-acid arginin. Guanidin is  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\overset{\text{NH}_2}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}=\text{N}-\text{H}$ . Creatin is alpha-methyl-guanidin-acetic acid. Methyl guanidin is derived from guanidin by the replacement of a hydrogen belonging to one of the two amino-radicles,  $\text{NH}_2$ , by a methyl group,  $\text{CH}_3$ , as follows:



Creatin is produced when the second hydrogen of the same nitrogen is replaced by acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COOH}$ . The process is identical with the first one of methylation, for the methyl group of the acetic acid replaces the hydrogen from the nitrogen radicle:



*Methyl-guanidin and Pathological States.*—(1) In anaphylaxis: Methyl-guanidin is toxic; it must be detoxicated in some manner in the body. Its introduction into the blood-stream during certain pathological states, or experimentally, results in a fall in blood-pressure,<sup>1</sup> spasms of the bronchioles ("asthma"), and other manifestations of hypersensitization occur, a toxic condition realized in the introduction of foreign protids containing compounds capable of yielding methyl-guanidin. Such conditions occur in extensive burns. (2) Following parathyroidectomy,<sup>2</sup> both guanidin and methyl-guanidin occur in the urine. (3) In tetany<sup>3</sup> these substances likewise occur in the urine. When fed to an experimental animal conditions found also in tetany, such as loss of calcium, appear. The metabolism of guanidin and of methyl-guanidin is controlled by the parathyroid glands<sup>4</sup>; feeding of guanidin causes conditions similar to those appearing after parathyroidectomy.

<sup>1</sup> Normal human blood-pressure varies with the age and the individual. The pressure is taken as systolic (due to the contraction of the heart), with an average pressure of 135 mms. Hg. for a man of thirty-five years of age; or as diastolic (due to the relaxation after the contraction of the heart), with an average pressure of 90 mms. Hg. In the female both pressures average 10 mms. lower.

<sup>2</sup> Page 648.

<sup>3</sup> Page 255.

<sup>4</sup> Collip (page 20) has secured a parathyroid extract capable of reducing the tetany and other symptoms of parathyroid disease. See page 648.

*Creatin, Normal and Pathological.*—Normal: Creatin occurs in various organs of the body in varying amounts. The following table from Andrew Hunter<sup>1</sup> gives the distribution in some tissues of man and other animals:

	Mgs. per 100 mls. substance.
Human striated muscle (adult).....	393
Human striated muscle (child, 1.75 year).....	331
Human striated muscle (at birth).....	190
Cardiac muscle of beef.....	240
Smooth muscle (human uterus).....	52
Smooth muscle (human uterus) at delivery.....	89
Smooth muscle (human uterus) after delivery.....	51
Brain of dog.....	108
Testis of dog.....	181
Liver of dog.....	25
Pancreas of beef.....	15
Kidney of beef.....	18
Spleen of dog.....	20
Blood of dog.....	20
Blood of man.....	2.1-4.9
Milk (human).....	3.0

Ninety-eight per cent. of the total body creatin occurs in muscles, and especially in voluntary muscles. Of the remaining 2 per cent., three-quarters are found in the brain. In the young, creatin occurs in small quantities and the amount increases with age. However, the proportion of content of creatin to volume of musculature is greater in the child than in the adult. The uterus shows varying amounts of creatin which are correlated with the activity of that organ. In general, one may conclude that creatin is an index of the degree of activity of the muscle.

Creatin appears normally in the urine of children of both sexes, owing to the larger content of this substance in the child in proportion of the volume of musculature. Its excretion appears longer in the female child than in the male. After puberty creatin is abnormal in the urine of the male, but is normal for the female during the menstrual periods, the menopause,<sup>2</sup> pregnancy, and especially immediately after parturition.<sup>3</sup> Pathologically, creatin is increased in the urine or appears in the urine during starvation, febrile<sup>4</sup> conditions,

<sup>1</sup> Hunter, Andrew (contemporary), Professor of Biochemistry, University of Toronto, Canada. See *Physiol. Reviews*, vol. 2, p. 590, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Greek, *men*, lunar month, and *pauo*, to restrain; the cessation of the monthly or menstrual periods occurring at about forty-five years in the American woman.

<sup>3</sup> Latin *pario*, to bear children; child-birth.

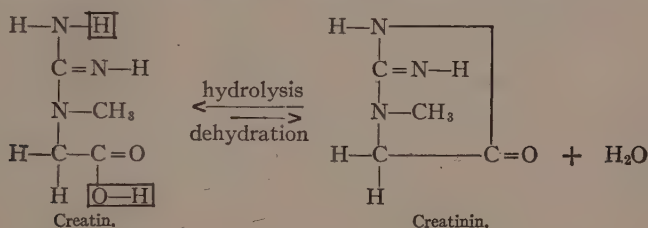
<sup>4</sup> Fever.



diabetes mellitus, high protid diet, and attendant states, such as low glucid diet,<sup>1</sup> exophthalmic goiter,<sup>1</sup> etc.

*The Origin of Creatin.*—We have called attention to the fact that the guanidin radicle appears in the amino-acid, arginin, but on feeding this substance, under ordinary circumstances, creatin is not increased in the urine. However, if the feeding is made while muscles are actively exercising, arginin is utilized and creatin appears in the urine. The Jaffé-Paton<sup>2</sup> detoxication theory for the origin of creatin holds that since methyl-guanidin and guanidin are toxic, they may be converted into methyl-guanidin-acetic acid (creatin) and thus become detoxicated. Other possible sources of creatin have been suggested, but at present no theory bears the scrutiny of experiment.

*The Anhydrid, Creatinin.*—If creatin be dehydrated by being boiled with alkali or acid, the following reaction occurs:



Note the sign of reversibility in the above reaction; equilibrium is reached farther on the creatin side of this equation during acid hydrolysis and this is the usual procedure.<sup>3</sup>

**EXERCISE 3.**—Using purified creatin, obtained from Exercise 2 above, apply the picric acid reaction of Jaffé to a solution of a few crystals as follows: Place about 5 mls. of the creatin solution in a test-tube and add one volume of alkaline picrate solution.<sup>4</sup> Mix. Set

<sup>1</sup> Low glucid diet means excessive metabolism of protid, since glucid is a protid sparer (page 555). In exophthalmic goiter metabolism is increased; this is used as a means of detecting the presence of the disease (page 645).

<sup>2</sup> Jaffé, Max, German biochemist, died 1911, responsible for the chief qualitative test for creatin (pages 361–362), by way of the anhydrid, creatinin. D. Noël Paton (page 256).

<sup>3</sup> Hunter gives the following relations of the conversion of creatin into creatinin: In decinormal alkali at 20° C., after two days, only 0.1 per cent. creatinin occurs, 0.9 per cent. being creatin. Hence, in alkaline hydrolysis, less creatinin is obtained, since the equilibrium is reached farther on the left side of the equation, that is, the creatin side.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.



the test-tube aside in your rack and proceed with the following reaction: Into a second test-tube place 5 mls. of the creatinin solution and add 1 volume of 10 per cent. HCl solution, or an equivalent amount of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Boil in a boiling water-bath for ten minutes or longer. Neutralize to litmus by adding 10 per cent. NaOH solution and add in addition about 1 ml. of the alkali.<sup>1</sup> Now add one volume of the alkaline picrate solution used in the first tube; compare the colors in the two tubes. The reaction is explained by the equation on page 157 and by the one on page 361. In the presence of creatinin picric acid becomes picramic by reduction.

EXERCISE 4. *Weyl's<sup>2</sup> Test with Nitro-ferro-cyanid Solution.*—Grind upon a piece of paper or upon your desk-top by means of your thumb-nail two small crystals of sodium nitroferrocyanid (sodium nitroprussid,  $\text{Na}_2\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_5\text{NO}\cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and transfer the powder to a test-tube. Acidulate with a few drops of acetic acid, or add 5 mls. of distilled water to the crystal and then add 1 drop of glacial acetic acid. Then add 1 volume of the creatin-creatinin solution after hydrolyzing as described in Exercise 3. Neutralize with 10 per cent. NaOH, then layer with  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  or with 10 per cent. KOH or NaOH. A color somewhat similar to that of the crystals of nitroferrocynaid is obtained at the zone of contact of the two points.

*Creatinin in the Urine.*—While we shall study the urine in detail later (Chapter XV), it is well to call attention to the fact that such a substance as the anhydrid of creatin of muscle and blood appears normally in the urine. This is demonstrated as follows:

EXERCISE 5.—Obtain a specimen of your urine. Place 5 mls. of it in a test-tube. Acidify with a drop of glacial acetic acid and add some powder from a crystal of sodium nitroferrocyanid as in the above test of Weyl. Mix well and overlay with concentrated ammonium hydroxid. A ruby ring indicates the presence of creatinin.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In place of using NaOH one may use only enough NaOH to neutralize, then add the solution to be tested, and layer carefully with the  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ ; color appears at the contact.

<sup>2</sup> Weyl, T., German chemist, died 1913.

<sup>3</sup> This same reaction is given by the Legal test for acetone and indol, but in the case of acetone the addition of glacial acetic acid accentuates the ruby-red color and, if there is no acetone, a straw yellow color develops. For indol, the addition of the acid causes the appearance of a bluish color, the depth being determined by the concentration of the indol. (Legal, see his test for acetone in Chapter XV.)

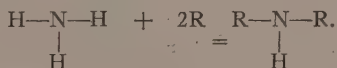
The reaction is similar to that of secondary amines<sup>1</sup> treated with nitrous acid, where a nitroso-compound results.<sup>2</sup> These are yellowish compounds, and in all of the above reactions involving sodium nitroferrocyanid the yellow appears after standing.

EXERCISE 6.—Using your urine as in the previous Exercise, repeat Jaffé's test given above in Exercise 3, page 361. This test is the basis of the Folin quantitative method for creatin and creatinin.<sup>3</sup>

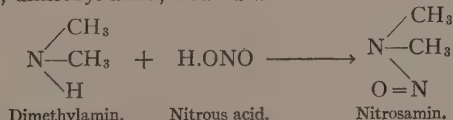
*The Physiology and Pathology of Creatinin.*—Although we do not know the relations of creatin and creatinin in the human body, the simple chemical relation suggests that somewhere creatin gives rise to creatinin. No really satisfactory method for the quantitative study of creatin in small amounts exists. For larger amounts the Folin method, by way of creatinin, is excellent. Benedict<sup>4</sup> has pointed out that there is abundant chance for error where small quantities of either creatin or creatinin are involved. Hence determinations of creatin and creatinin in blood and tissues must not be accepted as final. Creatinin has been reported from muscle tissue in amounts of from 1.6 to 134 mgs. per 100 gs. of muscle tissue; in sheep testis, from 209–215 mgs. per cent. and from 0.1 to 3 mgs. per cent. in human blood.<sup>5</sup> Caution must be exercised in generalizing concerning these substances.

Regarding the grosser amounts of creatinin, however, certain information has been acquired. The question may be asked, What rôle does it play in the body? It is excreted into the urine in definite amounts varying with different persons, but, as Folin<sup>6</sup> has shown, constant for each individual. It must, therefore, possess an important

<sup>1</sup> A secondary amine is one in which two of the hydrogens of ammonia are replaced by another element or radicle:



<sup>2</sup> For example, dimethyl-amine, treated with nitrous acid:



<sup>3</sup> Chapter XV.

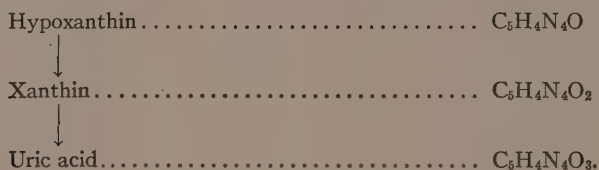
<sup>4</sup> Behre, J. A., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 52, p. 11, 1912.

<sup>5</sup> Chapter XVI. From Benedict's work it appears that only a part of the "creatinin" ordinarily considered as creatinin in blood can be true creatinin.

<sup>6</sup> Folin, O. (page 19), Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 13, p. 66, 1905.

function. Folin described it as an "endogenous substance" which is one that concerns the metabolism of the body proper as contrasted with the metabolism of the food materials; that is, it represents an end-product of some process of body transformation. The main reasons for believing this to be its function are: (1) that it is excreted almost quantitatively when fed<sup>1</sup>; (2) that it is not excreted in larger quantities when protid or other food is increased in the diet; and (3) that it is excreted uniformly not only per day, as Folin has shown, but hourly, as Shaffer<sup>2</sup> found. The fairly constant relation between the creatin content of muscle and the excretion of creatinin suggests that creatinin represents an index of muscle metabolism. Further discussion of creatin and creatinin will be made.<sup>3</sup>

*The Purins of Muscle.*—The chemistry of the purins of muscle extract has already been discussed.<sup>4</sup> These substances are derived from the purins of the nucleus, the amino-purins adenin and guanin, by oxidation; from adenin hypoxanthin is obtained, and from guanin, xanthin; lastly, uric acid comes from the oxidation of xanthin:



The reason why the oxypurins are found in muscle extract in amounts of about 0.1 g. per 100 gs. of substance is because no enzyme exists in muscle capable of oxidizing them farther. Such an enzyme does occur in liver<sup>5</sup> where these oxypurins are farther oxidized to uric acid. In muscle no demonstration, free from criticism, has been made of muscle purin metabolism which results in an increase in purin excretion after muscular exercise; but experimentally it has been shown that there is an increase in purins when a muscle is exercised after

<sup>1</sup> About 10 to 20 per cent. of creatinin fed is retained for a time in the body, probably because the reaction  $\text{creatin} \rightleftharpoons \text{creatinin}$  is reversible, and in alkaline media, like the body fluids, over twice as much creatin remains in solution after twenty-four hours as creatinin, since the equilibrium constant,  $K$ , in the above reaction is 2.12 (Hunter, p. 588).

<sup>2</sup> Shaffer, P. A. (Washington University, St. Louis, Missouri). Fig. 156. See Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 23, p. 1, 1908. The range varies from day to day to the extent of 10 per cent.

<sup>3</sup> Chapters XV and XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Page 333.

<sup>5</sup> Page 333.

being removed from the body and suspended in isotonic saline,<sup>1</sup> the fluid surrounding the muscle being analyzed for purins. A small amount of uric acid has been found in such cases, but this may have been derived from included blood, which maintains a constant level of uric acid of about 0.002 g. for 100 mls. of human blood.

*Pathological States and Purin Metabolism of Muscles.*—There is a general increase in nitrogenous substances derived from muscle in those diseases involving excess activity of muscles. Mere increased muscular action does not lead to an increase in muscle purins, but fever is accompanied by excessive excretion of all nitrogenous substances, or their products, derived from muscle.<sup>2</sup> Muscular atrophy likewise is accompanied by heightening purin excretion, as it is by the excretion of “extractives” in general.

EXERCISE 7.—Heat to boiling in a 500-ml. beaker 250 mls. of distilled water, and in this dissolve 25 gs. of meat extract. Repeat the precipitation of protid, etc., as given for creatin<sup>3</sup> previously, by adding lead acetate solution until no further precipitation occurs. Leave ten minutes or longer. Filter, first through cotton or glass-wool, then through paper, while hot, saving only the filtrate. Pass hydrogen sulphide<sup>4</sup> through it from a generator to precipitate the lead as lead sulphide. Filter again. Place the filtrate in an evaporating dish on the steam-bath in the hood and leave until evaporation has been completed. Dissolve the residue in 150 mls. of 88 per cent. ethanol<sup>5</sup> and filter. Discard the residue and transfer the filtrate to an evaporating dish. Leave the dish on the bath until all odor of alcohol has been removed; the volume now should be about 100 mls. To it add 2 mls. concentrated  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , and then, carefully, drop by drop, ammoniacal silver nitrate solution<sup>6</sup> as long as precipitation of hypoxanthin- $\text{AgNO}_3$  and xanthin- $\text{AgNO}_3$  occurs, avoiding excess. Filter, wash once with cold distilled water, and save the residue. Carefully remove the filter-paper containing the hypoxanthin and xanthin silver salts and place it in an evaporating dish. Convert the silver compounds into nitrates by adding enough nitric acid solution<sup>7</sup> to cover

<sup>1</sup> Page 115.

<sup>2</sup> Note the relation of creatin and creatinin excretion to febrile conditions mentioned previously on page 360.

<sup>3</sup> Page 358.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.

<sup>6</sup> Appendix.

<sup>7</sup> Concentrated  $\text{HNO}_3$ , 2 volumes; distilled water, 3 volumes. Boil the solution to remove any nitrous acid that may be present; it is capable of deaminizing the purins (page 291).



the paper, boil for about one minute, and filter while hot. Wash with a small amount of the diluted nitric acid solution. Permit the filtrate to cool, whereupon crystals of hypoxanthin-silver nitrate appear. Let stand until the following period; then filter,<sup>1</sup> wash with 50 mls. of distilled water, and save both filtrate and residue.

**Residue:** Transfer the residue by means of a spatula or knife to a small beaker. Add 25 mls. distilled water and pass a current of hydrogen sulphide from a generator through the liquid. Filter off the silver sulphide which is formed, leaving in the filtrate hypoxanthin nitrate. Study the crystals. Hypoxanthin may be obtained from the nitrate as follows: Bring the solution to 110° C. to drive off the excess H<sub>2</sub>S; make ammoniacal with a few drops of concentrated NH<sub>4</sub>OH; filter; concentrate the filtrate on the water-bath until one-fourth of the liquid has evaporated and then let stand. The crystals of hypoxanthin which separate with some difficulty are small and the higher power of the microscope must be used in their identification.

**Filtrate:** To the filtrate obtained from the residue just studied add 5 mls. concentrated ammonium hydroxid. Filter, saving the residue. Wash this residue into a small beaker with about 20 mls. distilled water and pass a current of H<sub>2</sub>S through the cold solution for not over one minute. Bring to about 80° C., filter, and permit to stand in a cool place until crystals of xanthin-nitrate appear. From the nitrate crystals of xanthin may be secured by adding a few drops of ammonium hydroxid and permitting the solution to concentrate slowly on the water-bath at not over 50° C.

*Qualitative Tests for Oxypurins:* (1) *Hypoxanthin.*—Make slightly alkaline with a drop of 10 per cent. NaOH solution a suspension of crystals of hypoxanthin (or as salt), and then add a drop or two of a solution of the reagent di-azo-benzene-sulphonic acid<sup>2</sup>; a red color develops unless there has been too much alkali added. This reaction is given also by xanthin. Hypoxanthin may be distinguished from xanthin by the failure to give the reaction as follows: Add to the hypoxanthin suspension 1 volume of concentrated HNO<sub>3</sub> and evaporate to dryness on a water-bath at 100° C. If xanthin is present a yellow residue results which turns reddish when cold 10 per cent. NaOH solution is added and purple when heat is applied. With hypoxanthin no colors, save a yellowish tinge due to some nitrous oxid, will appear.

<sup>1</sup> It may be necessary to use two of the ordinary filter-papers to hold the precipitation.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes called diazotized sulphanilic acid: C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>N=NOSO<sub>2</sub>OH.



(2) *Xanthin*.—Repeat the two reactions given above, using suspensions of xanthin or the nitrate. In addition to these two, perform the following reaction: To a few crystals suspended in water in an evaporating dish add one volume of freshly made chlorin water,<sup>1</sup> and boil to dryness first over a free flame and then on a boiling water-bath. To the whitish or yellowish residue bring the wetted stopper of the reagent bottle containing concentrated  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ ; a reddish color results, due to the formation of alloxantine-ammonia, or murexid.<sup>2</sup>

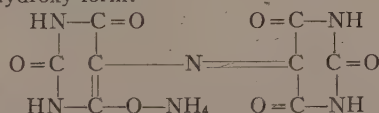
The *mononucleotid*, *inosinic acid*,<sup>3</sup> has been mentioned before. It occurs in muscle and was formerly known as carnine. Several other substances affiliated with inosinic acid have been isolated from meat extract, such as carnitin, phosphocarnic acid, etc. Carnosin, probably derived from the amino-acid histidin, likewise occurs. It is of theoretical interest in that it gives, on acid hydrolysis, a beta-amino-acid, beta-alanin, making therefore an exception to the statement that all amino-acids occurring in the organism are alpha-compounds, but it has never been shown that carnosin is an integral part of muscle. A betaïn, carnitin,<sup>4</sup> occurs, but its significance is unknown. It

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> So named from the sea-shell Murex, from which the ancients, particularly the Romans, secured this compound and called it "Tyrrhean Purple." The reaction consists in the oxidation of xanthin into uric acid, and this to alloxan,  $\text{O}=\text{C}-\text{NH}$ ,

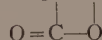
which, in turn, becomes condensed to alloxantin,  $\text{HN}-\text{C}=\text{O}$   $\begin{array}{c} \text{O}=\text{C} \quad \text{C}=\text{O} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O}=\text{C}-\text{NH} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O}=\text{C}-\text{NH} \end{array}$   $\begin{array}{c} \text{O}=\text{C} \quad \text{C}=\text{O} \\ | \quad | \\ \text{O}=\text{C}-\text{NH} \end{array}$ . On

adding the ammonium hydroxid, alloxantin becomes nitrated to form the imino-compound in place of the hydroxy-form:

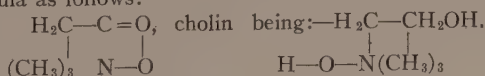


Hypoxanthin does not give this reaction because it cannot be oxidized to xanthin under the conditions of the experiment. <sup>3</sup> Page 142.

<sup>4</sup> The betaïns are typical plant products, so-called because of the extraction of this compound from the juice of the sugar-beet, *Beta vulgaris*, which is the source of much of our sugar. The structure of betaïn is:  $\text{H}_2\text{C}-\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ , and the resem-

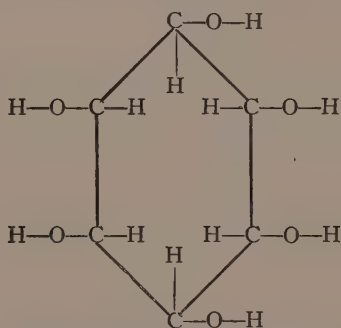


blance to cholin which occurs in lecithin (page 205) may be brought out by rearranging the formula as follows:



belongs to the group of natural bases, which include such compounds as cholin, neurin, muscarin, etc. It is possible that it is derived from, or else is a precursor of, cholin. However, we have several muscle substances like inosinic acid which are more or less immediately derived from plant food material.<sup>1</sup> Carnosin responds to the diazo-reaction given above for xanthin bases (page 366), and this reaction has been made the basis of a quantitative method for carnosin by George Hunter.<sup>2</sup>

*Inositol* ("muscle sugar") is not a sugar, although it has the empirical formula of the hexoses— $C_6H_{12}O_6$ . Its real structure is rather that of a saturated benzene ring,<sup>3</sup> the structural formula being:



(Hex-hydroxy-hydro-benzene, or inositol).

Here again we seem to find a substance which is derived from the plant foods, for a close chemical relationship holds between inositol of muscle and phytin of the plant. Phytin is the calcium-magnesium

<sup>1</sup> Inosinic acid contains a pentose, ribose, which is not found in any animal nuclear material derived from the chromatin of the cell. Since pentoses are characteristic of plants, it is supposed that these are the source of inosinic acid, that is, a plant mononucleotid. Similarly, carnitin is more typical of plant substances than animal material.

<sup>2</sup> Hunter, G. (English biochemist). See *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 15, p. 689, 1921. Compare the colorimetric method for iminazoles by Koessler and Hanke, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 39, p. 497, 1919.

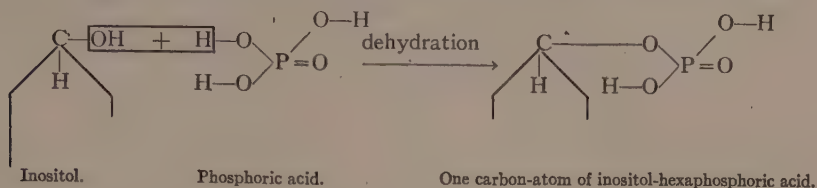
<sup>3</sup> The benzene ring, as conceived by Kekulé, the German chemist who first used the configuration, is unsaturated and is usually written thus:



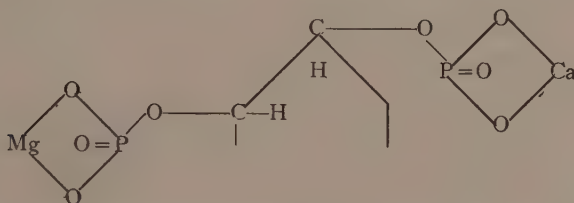
, so that each carbon atom will have its full number of bonds (four). In

benzene each carbon carries one hydrogen atom.

salt of inositol-hexaphosphoric acid; each carbon atom in inositol is united in ester formation with phosphoric acid,  $H_3PO_4$ , as follows:



Calcium and magnesium are attached, each replacing two hydrogens, thus:



Two carbons of inositol-hexaphosphoric acid with magnesium and calcium to form phytin.

In the above scheme only two of the six carbon atoms of the aromatic ring are shown, carbons 1 and 6. Since inositol is not easily obtained from muscle extract,<sup>1</sup> it is assumed that it is in chemical union with some substance in the muscle. The structure of phytin may give the key to its condition in the muscle, but if inositol has any special function in the tissue, we are ignorant of its nature. While its empiral formula might suggest a relationship to sugar, it is quite certain that no such relation exists.<sup>2</sup>

*Glycogen* (animal starch<sup>3</sup>) occurs in muscle to varying extents, the average being about 0.4 g. per 100 gs. of human muscle. It is readily converted into glucose and hence muscle must be treated by some method in order to kill the enzyme responsible for the conversion of glycogen into glucose. This may be done by the method used in a

<sup>1</sup> A small amount of inositol is undoubtedly free in muscle.

<sup>2</sup> Two reasons have been given for believing that inositol has some relationship with the glucids, namely, (1) furfural may be obtained from it (page 162) and (2) lactic acid appears in the urine of animals that have been fed inositol. Furfural is a typical product of 5 and not of 6 carbon chains; moreover, since inositol produces profound effects when fed experimentally, such as diarrhea, it may interfere with the normal oxidation of either the fats or glucids, thus causing the excretion of lactic acid.

<sup>3</sup> Page 186.

former Exercise, in which glycogen was obtained from the liver,<sup>1</sup> that is, by plunging the muscle into boiling water immediately after removal from the body. Glycogen may be removed quantitatively from the muscle by feeding an experimental animal phlorhizin,<sup>2</sup> an agent which prevents the kidney from reabsorbing<sup>3</sup> sugar and hence imitating diabetes mellitus. Or it may be removed by the piqué operation of Claude Bernard,<sup>4</sup> which consists in passing an instrument something like a hat-pin through the occiput of an experimental animal, directing it downward and somewhat forward through the medulla of the brain, near the floor of the fourth ventricle, where it strikes the so-called "sugar center." This, when irritated,<sup>5</sup> causes a mobilization of all glycogen; there is a sudden hyperglycemia and glycosuria. It must be observed that this is not a true diabetes mellitus,<sup>6</sup> for there seems to be no effect upon the hormon of the pancreas. Similarly, phlorhizin glycosuria is not a true diabetes mellitus, for, as Benedict<sup>7</sup> and co-workers have shown, the effect of phlorhizin is on the kidney and not on the pancreas; it is of the nature of "renal" glycosuria.<sup>8</sup> In either case the glucose is drained into the urine and glycogen is called upon to restore the loss. Immediately after the cessation of flow of blood through the muscle glycogen is hydrolyzed to glucose, probably owing to a change of reaction of the tissues and blood from the normal alkalinity to slight acidity.

*Lactic acid* in the form of "sarco-lactic acid,"<sup>9</sup> chemically designated as *D*- $\alpha$ -hydroxypropionic acid, occurs in muscle, especially after cessation of blood flow. It increases to a maximum in fatigue

<sup>1</sup> Page 185.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter XVII.

<sup>3</sup> Benedict believes that phlorhizin prevents the kidney tubules from reabsorbing glucose which is excreted through the glomerulus. See Nash, T. P., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 55 p. 757, 1923.

<sup>4</sup> Discoverer of glycogen and one of the greatest physiologists of all time, 1813-1878; professor in the Collège de France, Paris.

<sup>5</sup> Irritation and pressure of other portions of the brain cause hyperglycemia and glycosuria. See page 658.

<sup>6</sup> Diabetes mellitus is a group of conditions due to deficient production of insulin in the pancreas (see page 657).

<sup>7</sup> See papers by Benedict and Nash in the Jour. Biol. Chem., volumes since 1922, and especially Nash, T. P., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 423, 1924. See also Cori, G. T. (Institution for Malignant Diseases, Buffalo), Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 71, p. 708, 1925.

<sup>8</sup> Chapter XV.

<sup>9</sup> Greek *sarx*, flesh. Paralactic, from the Greek *para*, near to, referring to the similarity to fermentation lactic acid of commerce, which is *D*-*l*-lactic acid (optically inactive), whereas sarcolactic acid is *D*-lactic acid.

of muscle and bears a definite relation to that state. Moreover, through the researches of Fletcher and Hopkins,<sup>1</sup> of Hill,<sup>2</sup> and of Meyerhof<sup>3</sup> it has been found that lactic acid bears an important place in the explanation of muscle contraction. When muscle acts, lactic acid is produced, as it is in the resting muscle; but during contraction, in case of any injury, in fatigue, or especially in heat-rigor,<sup>4</sup> lactic acid increases in the muscle from an average normal amount of about 0.02 g. per 100 gs. of muscle to 0.2 per cent. or higher.<sup>5</sup> The presence of lactic acid in fatigued muscle may be demonstrated as follows<sup>6</sup>: Flex the head of a frog on its body by holding the animal as one would a pistol, the head placed toward the direction of the outstretched index-finger. By means of a scalpel make a superficial, transverse cut through the skin; then "pith" the frog by passing a probe of stiff wire between the vertebræ beneath the cut and directed backward through the spinal canal, thus destroying the spinal cord. Reverse the direction of the instrument and destroy the brain. Place the body directly upon ice and leave for fifteen minutes or longer. Sever one of the hind legs at the junction of the femur and pelvis and return the body to the ice. Then proceed to stimulate the muscles of the other leg electrically by way of the exposed sciatic nerve. This is accomplished by laying the frog on its back, making a longitudinal incision through the skin from the symphysis pubis<sup>7</sup> toward the head for about 3 cms., parting the muscles along the linea alba,<sup>8</sup> and exposing the lumbar plexus where the sciatic nerve takes its origin. Apply a battery current to this plexus of nerves, regulating the current by means of an inductorium, so that the leg performs flexing movements. Cause the leg to contract for ten minutes or longer, then sever the leg

<sup>1</sup> English physiologists publishing in the (British) Journal of Physiology. See résumé of their work in Bayliss (reference page 138 of this book).

<sup>2</sup> Hill, A. V. Professor of Physiology, University College, London. See page 140.

<sup>3</sup> Meyerhof, O. University of Kiel, Germany. The Nobel Prize in Medicine for 1923 was divided between Hill and Meyerhof for researches on muscle.

<sup>4</sup> By rigor is meant a rigid condition of the muscle; immediately after death rigor mortis, or death-stiffening, occurs.

<sup>5</sup> Foster, D. L., and Moyle, D. M., Biochem. Jour., vol. 15, p. 334, 1921.

<sup>6</sup> Through the co-operation of the physiological laboratory and the biochemical department it is possible to offer this demonstration as a class exercise, and its importance warrants the interest of both departments.

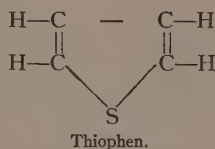
<sup>7</sup> The junction in the midline of the two bones known as the pubes, the front bones of the pelvis.

<sup>8</sup> Latin *linea*, line, and *alba*, white. The central tendon of the rectus abdominalis muscles.



from the body as in the first, or control leg and remove the skin. Repeat the skinning process with the first leg on ice, and then place each leg in a cold mortar containing a small amount of cold sand and ice-cold 95 per cent. ethanol. Grind the contents of each mortar to a pulp and pour this and a small amount of alcohol into a beaker. Repeat with the second mortar, pouring the contents into another beaker. Place the beakers in water at about 50° C. for a short time, then filter. Evaporate the filtrate to dryness below 80° C.,<sup>1</sup> then take up the residue with a small amount of distilled water, aiding solution with a rubber-tipped stirring-rod ("policeman"). Filter and again evaporate the filtrate to dryness. To the residue, which contains lactic acid, add 3 mls. concentrated sulphuric acid, and with 2 mls. more wash the solution into a test-tube. To the contents of the tube add 3 drops of a 50 per cent. cupric sulphate solution and mix by rotating the tube between the palms of the hands. Leave the tube in boiling water-bath for five minutes; then cool under the cold water-tap and add a few drops of Hopkins' lactic acid reagent,<sup>2</sup> agitating the contents of the tube as additions are made. Replace the tube in the boiling water-bath and note the differences in color in the two tubes, (1) control and (2) fatigued.<sup>3</sup>

**EXERCISE 8. *The Hopkins Reaction for Lactic Acid.***—The procedure has just been given. The reddish color is produced by aldehyde condensation produced by the action of sulphuric acid on lactic acid and the reagent thiophen,



The reaction is similar to the Selivanoff test for ketoses.<sup>4</sup> The test is satisfactory only when the lactic acid is present in concentrated form. This is done by extracting with ether and concentrating; the test is performed on the residue.

<sup>1</sup> Boiling-point of lactic acid 83° C.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> The instructor may make this Exercise a quantitative one by using a good method, like that described by MacLeod, J. J. R., Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 7, p. 1, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Page 164.

EXERCISE 9. *Uffelmann's Test*<sup>1</sup>: Place 5 mls. of the reagent<sup>2</sup> in a test-tube and add, by layering, the suspected fluid. At the line of junction of the two fluids a yellow zone appears if the test is positive. Agitate the contents and note that the color permeates throughout the fluid. The limit of sensitiveness of the test is about that of the lactic acid content of fatigued muscle (0.2 to 0.4 per cent.).

The reaction is used largely in the study of stomach contents, the presence of lactic acid indicating fermentation. The reaction is given by all acids, whether organic, like lactic, or mineral, like HCl, and the color produced varies with the hydrogen-ion concentration; in a strong solution ( $pH > 2$ ) the reagent is decolorized. The color changes are due to the ionization of iron derived from the ferric chlorid of the reagent.

*Lactic Acid and Muscle Contraction*.<sup>3</sup>—Lactic acid, as we have stated, is optically active; it is dextrorotatory. Lactic acid plays an important part in muscle contraction. We have shown that the metabolism of glucids is virtually the same as the chemistry of fermentation<sup>3</sup> and that lactic acid may be derived from glucose and, by reversibility, converted into glycogen. Meyerhof found that there are two periods in muscle contraction, (1) a period when muscle glycogen is converted into lactic acid. During this period contraction, accompanied by a small heat production, takes place. The acid is supposed to increase the permeability of the muscle-fibers to water, an experimentally demonstrable fact. (2) A period when lactic acid disappears from the muscle. During this period the membrane becomes impermeable to water and relaxation takes place.<sup>4</sup> At this time there is an oxidation of about one-third of the lactic acid, and this gives rise to heat, the heat of combustion, as determined by Hill. The remaining two-thirds of the acid is reconverted into glycogen.<sup>5</sup> It is to be observed that, contrary to older conceptions, the muscle is not

<sup>1</sup> Page 445. Uffelmann, Jules, German physician, died 1894.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Page 170.

<sup>4</sup> This action is similar to the increased turgescence of tissues (so-called "erectile tissues") in which the permeability for fluids is increased. The nipple of the mammary gland and the mucous membrane of the turbinated bones of the nasal cavities are examples. Under vasomotor, or other stimulus, blood or fluids flow into these structures, causing them to become distended. Now in the case of the muscle, distention means contraction, because two ends of the muscle are attached to solid tissue, bone. See Fig. 72, page 140.

<sup>5</sup> See Foster and Moyle (page 371), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 15, p. 672, 1921.

a combustion engine, but a chemical machine,<sup>1</sup> wherein the energy of motion (contraction) is not converted heat energy, but is derived directly from chemical energy.

*Lactic Acid in the Organism.*—Lactic acid plays a rôle in the following processes:

(1) In anoxemia,<sup>2</sup> either from the lack of oxygen or from some disturbance in the oxidative power of the tissues. When phosphorus is fed to an experimental animal, degeneration of the liver occurs and oxidation is interfered with; lactic acid appears not only in the liver but also in the urine. "Waxy degeneration" of the muscles is accompanied by the increase in lactic acid in these tissues. Lactic acid occurs in tumors, cancers,<sup>3</sup> and during the resolution of pulmonary exudates in pneumonia following the crisis. Wherever pus accumulates lactic acid is found, and in the so-called "fatty-degeneration" it occurs.

(2) In autolysis, or self-digestion of the tissues. Some of these conditions are included in the statements made in (1) above, for probably the resolution of the pulmonary exudate is of this nature. Perhaps in liver atrophy following phosphorus administration autolysis occurs. Glycogen and glucose, representing glucids and glycerol in the fats, yield lactic acid.

(3) An intermediate substance in glucid metabolism. We have mentioned the participation of lactic acid in the metabolism of these compounds.<sup>4</sup>

(4) Infection. Lactic acid is a deterrent to the action of leucocytes, inhibiting phagocytic action. Lactic acid lowers the resistance of the body to infection.

*The Water Content of Muscle.*—Great and sudden changes in the size

<sup>1</sup> Fletcher and Hopkins conceived the muscle to operate by the production of energy from the oxidation of glucose, but Hill has shown that the heat produced is far less than what this theory would demand, and, moreover, that the production of heat takes place after contraction; Meyerhof found that this small amount of heat corresponds to the oxidation of, roughly, one-third of the lactic acid, as explained above.

<sup>2</sup> Greek, *an*, privitive, *ox*, oxygen, and *'aima*, blood; that is, lack of oxygen in the blood.

<sup>3</sup> But in liver diseases of non-cancerous sort lactic acid occurs in as large if not larger amounts than in cancerous.

<sup>4</sup> Page 141. Recent work has shown that insulin does not affect the quantity of lactic acid in blood and tissues, and this would tend to indicate that lactic acid plays no major rôle in the metabolism of glucids.

of muscles occur which are attributed to changes in water content. Involution of the uterus following child-birth is principally a matter of loss of muscle water. Loss of muscle tone from disuse is accompanied by lowered water content of the muscle. There is an inverse proportion between the water and fat content of muscle. In weight reduction, as in obesity,<sup>1</sup> muscles lose fat, and water temporarily replaces the fat to maintain the original volume.<sup>2</sup>

*"Light" and "Dark" Meat.*—This is a matter of the functioning of the muscle. In the fowl, which is commonly used for food, locomotion by wing is of minor importance, the legs being the principal means of propulsion. Dark muscle is found upon the legs and white upon the breast and wings. In active muscle (dark) there is increased oxidation, more active blood-supply, greater production of extractives, like the purins, creatin, etc. These factors enter into questions concerning the utilization of light and dark meat in diets for invalids. Since there is a larger content of purins in dark muscle, the feeding of such meat to a nephritic, or, to a greater extent, to a subject suffering with gout, is contraindicated,<sup>3</sup> because, as Folin has shown, purins are absorbed by the gouty kidney and produce lesions; and the same results obtain in nephritis.

**The Circulatory System.**—The vascular system develops very early in the embryo. Blood-islands appear as groups of round cells closely applied to the endoderm, whence they obtain nourishment. Then a differentiation among the cells of the islands appears, wherein the cells lying on the outside or periphery of the island become flattened and surround the rounded cells within. The flattened cells become the endothelium, or wall of the blood-vessel, while the cells ly-

<sup>1</sup> Latin, *ob*, out, and *edo*, to eat, that is, eaten out; eaten all that one can. Overfatty.

<sup>2</sup> It is a general rule in living things that change in body proportions is inhibited as much as possible. When an angletworm is cut into halves, the first process is that of restoring the proportion of parts, and later the size is produced equivalent to the whole worm before being severed. The flabby skin of the person who has been obese and who has responded to some treatment (dietary; use of thyroid, etc.) is due to loss of subcutaneous fat, muscle fat being retained longer. Ultimately the muscle water replacing the fat disappears and reduction in volume takes place.

<sup>3</sup> The term "indicated" is used by physicians to mean that a method is favorable to the case in question, and "contraindicated" implies that the result would be unfavorable.



ing within form the liquid tissue, blood. These cells are the future corpuscles, white and red. At first both possess a nucleus, but later the erythrocytes cease to multiply and their nuclei leave the cell. The white blood-corpuscle, or leucocyte, retains its typical character of ameboid shape. Hemoglobin begins to form in the erythrocyte before it ceases to multiply and before the nucleus has been extruded. The hematopoietic<sup>1</sup> organs are confined to the marrow of the bones in the normal adult, but in the embryo these include the liver and possibly other organs.

*The Leucocytes.*<sup>2</sup>—There is much chemical differentiation between the various kinds of white blood-corpuscles, but little is known intimately of their chemistry. Some are capable of being stained with a basic dye (basophiles<sup>3</sup>), some with acid dye (acidophiles), while some are not affected by either (neutrophiles). Phagocytosis is confined to two groups of leucocytes, (1) the macrophage<sup>4</sup> and (2) the microphage, the latter having characteristic nuclei, frequently "sausage-shaped"; the longer the nucleus, the older the cell. There is a group of leucocytes known as eosinophiles, containing granules of hemoglobin derived from disintegrated erythrocytes and from other pigment-bearing cells. They are especially abundant during stages of infection and atrophy.

*Erythrocytes,*<sup>5</sup> or red blood-corpuscles, contain hemoglobin, the red blood-coloring matter. Hemoglobin has weak acid properties which are increased when it is oxidized to form oxyhemoglobin by about 0.02 pH (page 79). For convenience hemoglobin is designated HHB, and oxyhemoglobin, HHBO<sub>2</sub>. Chemically, hemoglobin, as we have found (page 301), is a conjugated protid, the histon, globin, being united with the colored radicle hematin. The protid fraction has already been discussed (page 320), and we shall now consider the colored, iron-bearing substance, hematin and its derivatives. Hematin may be separated from hemoglobin by acid hydrolysis. The detection

<sup>1</sup> Page 272.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *leuo*, to shine, that is, white, and *kyto*, cell.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *phileo*, to love. For the different kinds of leucocytes see Dorland's American Illustrated Medical Dictionary, 13th ed., Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925, p. 185.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *machros*, large, and *phago*, eat. Similarly, *micros*, small.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *erythros*, red. Frequently the word is spelled "hæmoglobin," but the Greek source is *'aima*, the *a* aspirated as if *haima*. There is no diphthong, *æ*, therefore in the original.



of blood is based upon this principle, the hydrochlorid, hemin, being produced (method of Teichmann<sup>1</sup>).

**EXERCISE 10. Detection of Blood.**—Place some shreds of cotton or other fabric stained with blood on a microscope slide and cover with cover-glass. Now introduce 1 or 2 drops of glacial acetic acid under the cover-glass, the acid flowing in by capillarity.<sup>2</sup> Warm until bubbles of gas appear. Replace the evaporated acid with another drop and let the slide rest in a cool place until crystallization has taken place. Examine the preparation under the microscope for small, garnet-colored crystals, rhomboidal in shape (Fig. 126).

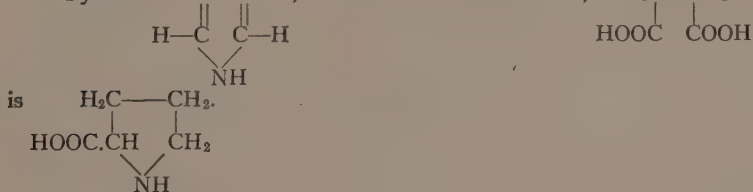
**Hemin.**<sup>3</sup>—This is the hydrochlorid of hematin. Chemically, it consists of four pyrrol rings,<sup>4</sup> the configuration which was noted in the amino-acids prolin and oxyprolin.<sup>5</sup> The detailed chemistry of hematin is not known, but that of derivatives has been analyzed. One of the most significant facts discovered is that chlorophyl, the green coloring-matter of plants, has chemical characteristics similar to those of hemoglobin. Hemin loses its iron and its two carboxyl groups are converted into hydroxyls. *Hematoporphyrin* results, a dicarboxylic acid containing also two hydroxyls; its empirical formula is  $C_{33}H_{38}O_6N_4$ . On reducing this compound, two molecules of water are lost, and *hemoporphyrin* is formed ( $C_{33}H_{36}O_4N_4$ ). These pigments occur in the urine in certain diseases, such as hepatic involvements and after administration of certain drugs, like di-ethyl compounds used to produce sleep (veronal, etc.). In certain individuals sunlight induces urinary excretion of these pigments. Severe skin reactions result from subcutaneous injection of hematoporphyrin. The similarity in function between chlorophyl and hemoglobin therefore corresponds

<sup>1</sup> Teichmann, Ludwig T. S., died 1895. German histologist.

<sup>2</sup> It may be necessary to add a crystal of NaCl or, better, KI if the stain is old, to afford the halogen.

<sup>3</sup>  $C_{33}H_{32}O_4N_4FeCl$ .

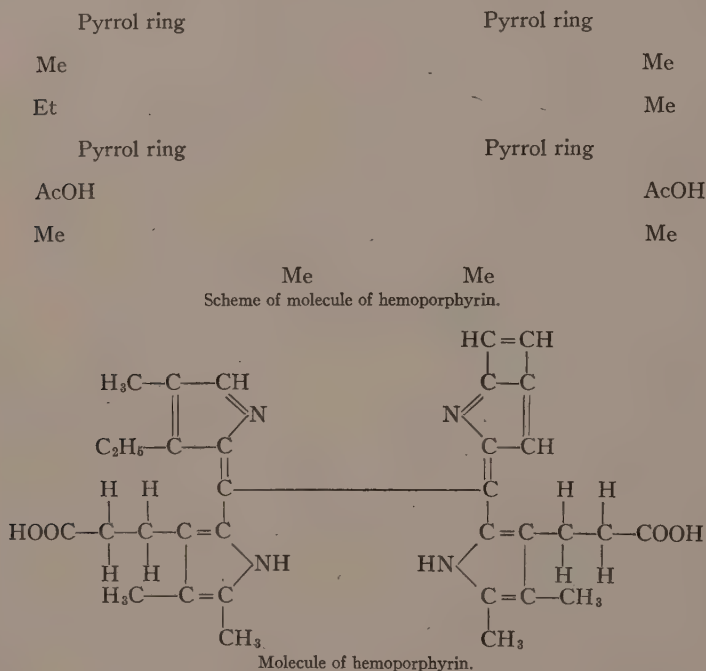
<sup>4</sup> Pyrrol is  $H-C-C-H$ , a derivative of succinic acid,  $H_2C-CH_2$ . Prolin



<sup>5</sup> Pages 270 and 272.

to the similarity in chemical composition, for chlorophyll is to sensitize the protoplasm of the leaves in their function of manufacturing glucose and starch which are the foods of the plant. Baly, in Liverpool, has imitated both hematoporphyrin and chlorophyll in the use of dyes derived from artificial sources.

The structural formula given by Willstaetter<sup>1</sup> for hemoporphyrin is as follows<sup>2</sup>:



The mode of attachment of the iron in the molecule of hemoporphyrin is not known, but it is probably in union with the imid radicle, NH.

*Crystals of hemoglobin* have been obtained in an earlier Exercise (page 319).

*Products of hemoglobin* occur in different parts of the body. The pigments of the bile and of the feces are examples.<sup>3</sup> In other cases, however, pigments are not derived from the hemoglobin alone. Thus,

<sup>1</sup> Willstaetter, R., German organic chemist. See Willstaetter and Stoll, *Untersuchungen ueber Chlorophyll*, Berlin, J. Springer, 1913.

<sup>2</sup> The abbreviations Me and Et refer to the radicles methyl and ethyl.

<sup>3</sup> Page 469.

urochrome, one of the urinary pigments, has been shown by Roaf<sup>1</sup> to come from chlorophyll of plants. This is readily understood since both hemoglobin and chlorophyll are derivable from a hemoporphyrin-like substance, *etioporphyrin*, a decarboxylated hemoporphyrin. Palmer<sup>2</sup> has shown that other plant pigments, carotein and xanthophyl, allied to chlorophyll, are responsible for certain pigments, such as the *lipochromes* absorbed by fats. These substances, for a time, were thought to be connected with the specific nutritive properties of the fats. The yellow of egg-fat, lutein, is xanthophyl, a closely allied substance, while butter-fat yellow is carotein. The yellow of human fat is due to two pigments: (1) Carotein and (2) xanthophyl. While fat is the main carrier of these pigments, protid acts in this capacity in the blood. The fact that these plant pigments are refractory to the action of digestive juices accounts for their presence in the human body. The pigment of bile will be considered later, but it may be said that carotein and xanthophyl are soluble in bile; and the former, at least, appears in this fluid, having been isolated from biliary calculi. The plant pigments are excreted in the urine as urochrome.<sup>3</sup>

*Hematoidin*<sup>4</sup> is similar to if not identical with the bile-pigment, bilirubin, which will be discussed under the heading "bile." Hematoidin is found in old extravasations<sup>5</sup> such as occur after a bruise. It is free from iron. The empirical formula is  $C_{16}H_{18}N_2O_3$ .

*Hemosiderin*<sup>6</sup> differs from hematoidin in several respects: (1) It contains iron; (2) it is quite insoluble; (3) it is retained in the tissues, where it occurs in certain forms of anemia<sup>7</sup> and in other diseases.

*Methemoglobin* is formed when overdoses are given of certain drugs, such as the "headache medicines," phenacetin<sup>8</sup> and acetanilid, and others like potassium chlorate, permanganates, amyl-nitrite ( $C_5H_{11}NO_2$ ), used in arteriosclerosis, hypertension,<sup>9</sup> etc. Nitrites may form

<sup>1</sup> Physiologist to the London Hospital Medical College, London, England. See Biochem. Jour., vol. 15, p. 687, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> Palmer, L. S., contemporary, biochemist to the Agricultural Department, University of Minnesota. See Jour. Biol. Chem., vols. 17 and 39, 1914 and 1919.

<sup>3</sup> Chapter XV.

<sup>4</sup> Greek 'aima, blood, and oidos, like.

<sup>5</sup> From the Latin *extra*, outside of, and *vas*, a vessel; that is, a blood-vessel.

<sup>6</sup> Greek 'aima, blood, and sideros, iron. Some believe the iron to be an inclusion, and that bilirubin, hematoidin, and hemosiderin are synonyms.

<sup>7</sup> At one time this pigment was supposed to occur in the organs in malaria, but this has been shown to be hematin instead.

<sup>8</sup> Same as acetphenetidin,  $C_6H_4.O.CH_3.CH_2.NH.CH_3.CO$ ; acetanilid (phenyl-acetamid),  $C_6H_5.NH.CH_3.CO$ .

<sup>9</sup> By hypertension is meant a heightened blood-pressure such as occurs in old age.

in the alimentary tract in fermentation and give rise to methemoglobinemia; during the process of intestinal decomposition of food residues "enterogenous cyanosis" may arise due to absorption of hydrogen sulphide from the alimentary tract. It is probable that  $\text{CO}_2$  of the blood tends to keep down excessive formation of methemoglobin from this source, for the acid  $\text{CO}_2$  is able to break up the molecule, giving hemoglobin.

### THE SPECTROSCOPIC<sup>1</sup> STUDY OF BLOOD-PIGMENTS

**EXERCISE 11.**—The fresh blood of a small mammal has been diluted, 1 volume of blood to 30 of distilled water. This serves (1) to hemolyze (page 115) the blood and thus set free hemoglobin; and (2) to dilute the blood, making clearer spectroscopic findings. Obtain 10 mls. of this blood solution and examine it. Do not agitate the solution. Place the tube between the end of the spectroscope con-



Fig. 117.—Direct-vision spectroscope. For interior arrangement see Fig. 118.



Fig. 118.—Direct vision spectroscope. The eye is applied to the left and the object to the right: *K*, Prism for comparing comparison spectrum with unknown; *A*, knurled head regulating slit.

taining the vertical slit and the source of light (daylight or artificial light with as continuous a spectrum as possible). A band of colors, red at one end and blue to violet at the other, will be observed through the spectroscope; this is the spectrum. Note that in the region of the yellow, between the yellow and the green, one or two dark bands,<sup>2</sup> running vertically, appear. Remove the tube containing the blood from the end of the spectroscope and note the continuous gradation of colors, without producing any dark bands. Strike a match and hold it carefully in the line of sight through the spectroscope, several inches from the slit; the "D" line, or sodium line is illuminated as a bright yellow band. Now return the tube of blood to the end of the spectro-

<sup>1</sup> A small direct-vision spectroscope is used (Fig. 117). ~

<sup>2</sup> These bands are collections of "Fraunhofer lines," images of the slit, or rather representing the absence of such images, for blood absorbs the colors that would fill the slit.

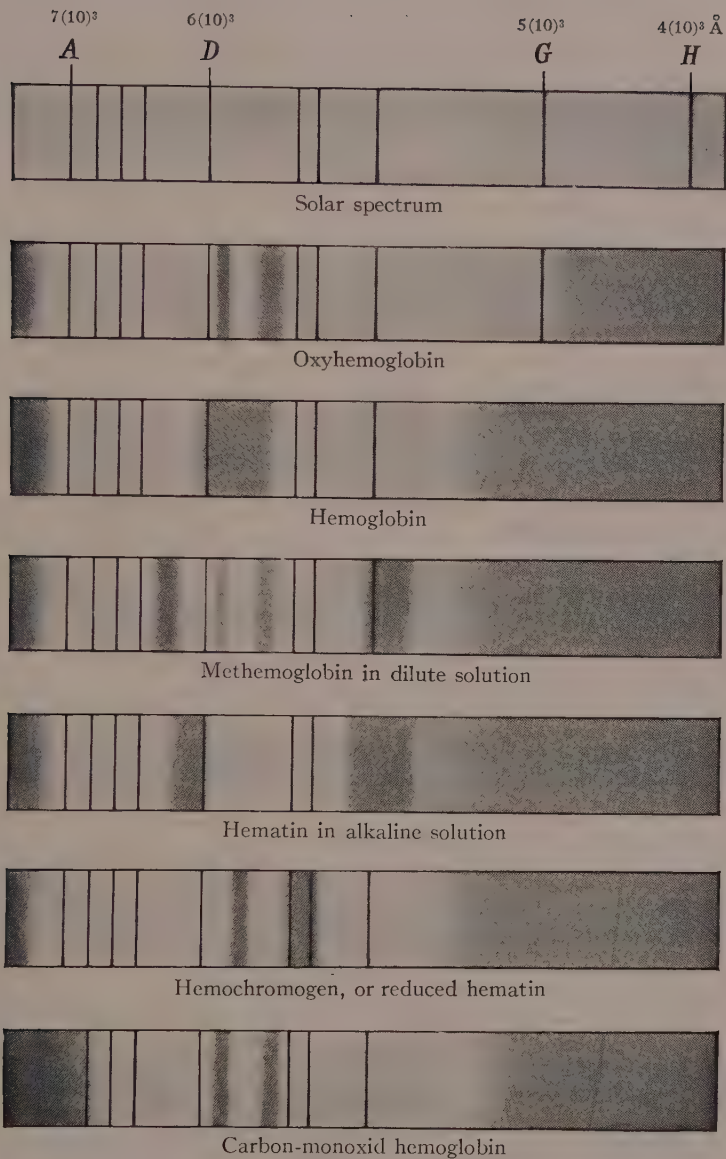


Fig. 119.—Blood spectra. (From Peterson, Haines, and Webster, Legal Medicine and Toxicology.)





scope and locate the position of the band or bands characteristic of blood. *If there is a single dark band*, the sample contains *hemoglobin*, HHbO. *If there are two bands*, the blood is *oxyhemoglobin*, HHbO<sub>2</sub> or CO<sub>2</sub>-hemoglobin; these will be distinguished later.

(1) *Hemoglobin*.—If the sample does not show the characteristic single block of dark absorption bands of hemoglobin<sup>1</sup> add a few drops of ammonium sulphide solution,<sup>2</sup> (NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>S, mix, and place in a water-bath not over 50° C. When the color has reached its maximum darkness, examine the contents of the tube by means of the spectroscope; the broad, single band should now be present. Shake the contents of the tube vigorously for one minute and re-examine; oxyhemoglobin has been formed.

Stokes' Solution<sup>3</sup>: This may be used in place of the ammonium sulphide reagent, being more rapid and certain in its action. Heating is unnecessary.

(2) *Oxyhemoglobin*.—Two bands are characteristic of this blood-pigment, the clearness of demarcation and relative size of the blocks being dependent upon the concentration of the blood.

(3) *Carbon Monoxid Hemoglobin*.—The physician is frequently called upon to decide whether death has been due to carbon monoxid, accidental or intentional, as in breathing fumes from a stove or in a closed garage. With the apparatus usually available, that is, a small spectroscope, such as the one used in these Exercises, it is impossible to distinguish between the spectra of oxyhemoglobin and of carbon monoxid hemoglobin. However, according to the following method, this can be accomplished by means of the apparatus mentioned: Place a sample of carbon monoxid blood diluted with water in a test-tube and shake it as before. Examine the spectrum; the spectrum of oxyhemoglobin is given.<sup>4</sup> Now add a few drops of Stokes' solution, mix, and examine the spectrum again. The following conditions hold:

(1) The spectrum is that of oxyhemoglobin; positive for carbon monoxid hemoglobin.

(2) The spectrum is that of hemoglobin; negative test.

The principle of the test is that if carbon monoxid is present, Stokes' solution cannot reduce it to hemoglobin, and it will retain the spectrum similar to that of oxyhemoglobin; if, however, the sample contains no carbon monoxid, the oxyhemoglobin formed on shaking

<sup>1</sup> Figure 119.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Unless some other source of poisoning was employed.

the specimen during the exposure to the air may be reduced to hemoglobin by Stokes' solution.

Apply the test to the samples of blood given you and determine which of the two is carbon monoxid hemoglobin.<sup>1</sup>

(4) *Methemoglobin*.—Prepare the sample of methemoglobin blood as follows: To 10 mls. of the original blood solution used in (1), add 5 drops of 5 per cent. potassium ferricyanid solution. Mix and note the change in color to a mahogany-brown. Examine with the spectroscope; there is a single band in the red-yellow portion. Prove that methemoglobin may be converted into hemoglobin by Stokes' solu-

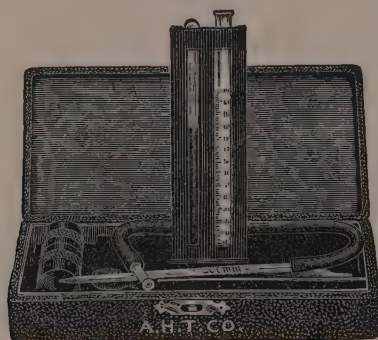


Fig. 120.—Simple hemoglobinometer, Sahli type. The standard is placed in the left-hand tube and the unknown in the right. The unknown is diluted until it matches the color of the standard. The percentage hemoglobin is then read from the scale. Accuracy about 10 per cent.

tion and into oxyhemoglobin by shaking the blood while exposing it to air.

(5) *Urochrome of the Urine*.—Examine a specimen of your own urine with the spectroscope. Note that there are no characteristic bands.<sup>2</sup>

*Methods for Quantitative Determination of Hemoglobin*.—The fact that the color of hemoglobin is an index of its concentration permits colorimetric determinations of the content of a given sample of blood to be made. The color is compared with that of a standard solution of hemoglobin or with a substance of similar color.

<sup>1</sup> It is well in presenting this Exercise to a class to disguise the odor of the gas used to make CO hemoglobin by the use of a drop of clove oil in each tube.

<sup>2</sup> In concentrated specimens it is observed that the violet end of the spectrum is indistinct.

EXERCISE 12. *The Tallqvist Method*<sup>1</sup> (Fig. 121).—For clinical work where special apparatus is limited this method may be used for

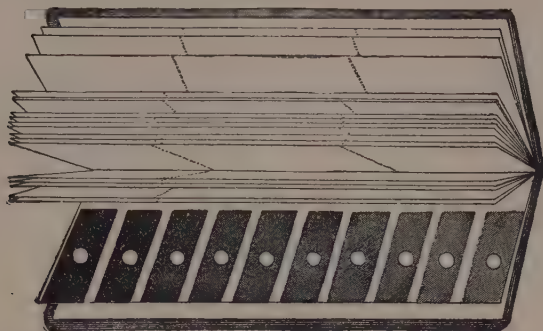


Fig. 121.—The Tallqvist hemoglobinometer. The book contains a chart in colors of different dilutions of hemoglobin, representing blood of health, anemia, etc. The remaining sheets of the book are of absorbing paper designed to receive a drop of blood, which is then compared with the color chart, and the percentage of hemoglobin is read from the matched color.

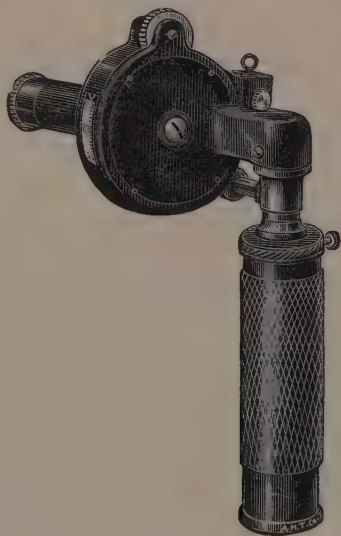


Fig. 122.—The Dare hemoglobinometer. The instrument is held in the hand by means of the handle (right). The eye, applied to the telescope (left), sees the colored scale (the indicator of which is seen on the cylinder to the left) and also the blood, placed in the holder beneath the ring, above, right.

uncritical results. Its limits of error are about 10 per cent. Secure a

<sup>1</sup> Tallqvist, Theo. W., contemporary, Finnish physician living in Helsingfors, Finland.

sheet of the special absorbent paper<sup>1</sup> and have it ready to absorb a drop of blood taken from the finger-tip by the following method: Break one of the wings from a new pen-point, sterilize it in a flame or in an 80 per cent. ethanol solution and use it for puncturing the skin. Scrub the skin of the finger-tip with a cotton pledget moistened with 80 per cent. ethanol and plunge the point into the fleshy portion of the finger-tip. Discard the first 2 or 3 drops and take the fourth upon the paper. Scrub the wound with the cotton moistened with the alcohol. Let the stain dry for one minute, but no longer, and then compare with the colors in the booklet. These colors are arranged in tenths of per cent. The normal is 80 to 100 per cent. Anemia is in-



Fig. 123.—Blood glasses for use with the Dare hemoglobinometer (Fig. 122). The blood is held between the two glass plates and these are inserted into the small holder as shown in Fig. 122.

dicated with a percentage of about 50 to 70 per cent.; it may run as low as 30 per cent. even in ambulatory patients.

**EXERCISE 13. *Quantitative Hemoglobin Determination by the Method of Van Slyke.***—Principle: Haldane<sup>2</sup> has found that for the average normal oxyhemoglobin taken as 100 per cent., there are 18.5 per cent. O<sub>2</sub> in each 100 mls. of blood. Hence by observing the amount of oxygen obtained from hemoglobin, the amount of hemoglobin may be calculated. The oxygen is determined in this method by mechanically removing it in a vacuum over mercury. A special apparatus is used which is virtually a mercury pump. This apparatus was used in an earlier chapter for obtaining the carbon dioxid in the blood

<sup>1</sup> Booklets containing sheets of this paper and a color chart used in this method are obtainable from the American concessionary, E. Pennock, 36th and Woodland Avenue, Philadelphia.

<sup>2</sup> Haldane, J. S., Oxford University, England, contemporary physiologist, known for his researches on blood and blood gases. For the method of his colleague, Barcroft, see Jour. Physiol. (English), volumes 42 and 45. Since the Van Slyke apparatus is used commonly in laboratories for a variety of purposes, the descriptions here are limited to methods utilizing this apparatus.



(page 71). Refer to Fig. 34, page 71. A modification permitting more exact results is shown in Figs. 124 and 125.

Preparation: By means of the mercury leveling bulb attached to *j*, Fig. 34, fill the whole apparatus with mercury and close the two-way cocks. Leave a small amount of mercury in the exit tube *d*; close cocks *b* and *f*, placing their handles transversely. Now introduce into a 500-ml. separatory funnel about 3 mls. of blood<sup>1</sup> and spread it over the interior of the funnel so that the maximal surface

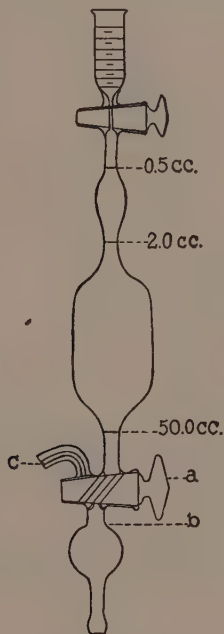


Fig. 124.—Extraction chamber for use with the apparatus figured on page 386, Fig. 125, when CO is to be determined by absorption and O<sub>2</sub> by permanganate-H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> method. For details see Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 575, 1924.

of the corpuscles is exposed to the air, thus insuring saturation with oxygen. Five minutes' exposure of the blood to the air is sufficient to insure complete saturation. Stopper the funnel and turn your attention to the mercury apparatus. Introduce into the burette *a* of the apparatus 3 drops of caprylic alcohol<sup>2</sup> to prevent foaming and 6 mls. of 0.4 per cent. ammonium hydroxid solution. Lower the

<sup>1</sup> See page 63 for method of drawing blood.

<sup>2</sup> C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>16</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. Other substances have been mentioned on page 292.

mercury reservoir until the neck is level with the stop-cock *f*, and then cautiously open *b* so that the ammonia solution passes into the graduated tube *c* and thence into the chamber below *c*, admitting no air. Even with the greatest precaution some air enters the appa-

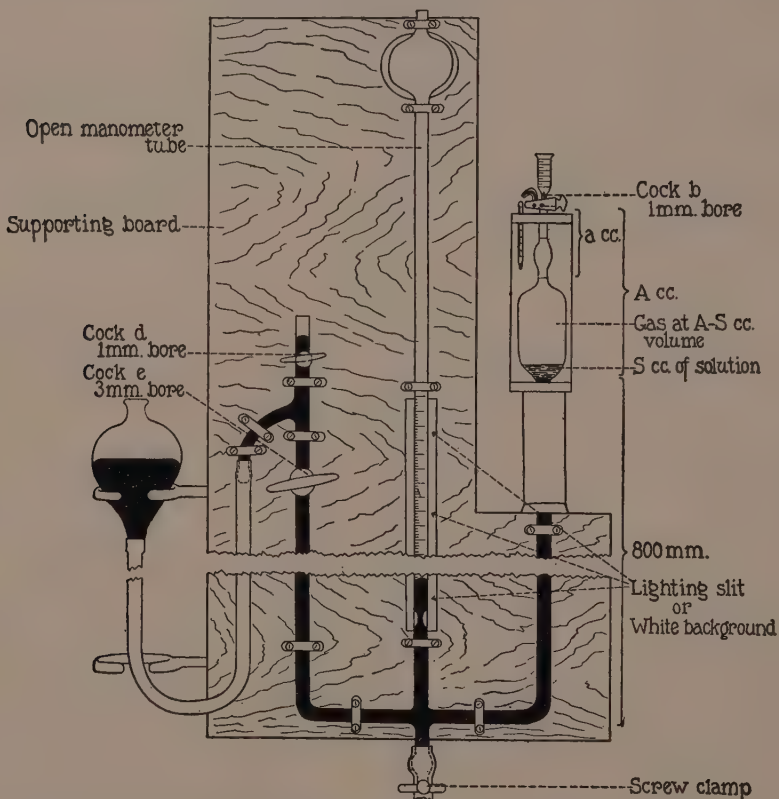


Fig. 125.—Van Slyke's precision vacuum and manometric method for determining blood gases. The method differs from that in which the apparatus ("volumetric type") of Fig. 34, page 71, is used, in that in the present method the volume of a definite size, arbitrarily chosen, is obtained, and the pressure that this volume of gas exerts on a manometer is determined. The apparatus is about 25 cms. longer than the apparatus figured on page 71. For details, tables, etc., see Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 523, 1924.

ratus dissolved in the fluids, but this is extracted by the vacuum existing in the apparatus. In order to collect this air close cock *f*, remove the apparatus from the stand<sup>1</sup> with great care and only in

<sup>1</sup> If the apparatus is mounted on a hinged board, it may be swung without removal.

the presence of an instructor, and shake the solution around in the chamber for five minutes or longer. Then raise the reservoir above the top of the apparatus and permit the mercury bearing the column of gas and ammonium hydroxid solution to rise in the graduated tube by opening the cocks *f* and *b*, so that communication is made with the exit tube *d*. Let the column of gas pass out through the exit tube, but withhold the ammonium hydroxid solution. Close cock *b*, and then lower the reservoir to its former position level with *f*; raise it again immediately and permit about half the column of ammonia solution to pass up into the burette *a*. Introduce by means of an Ostwald-Folin pipette exactly 2 mls. of the blood well stirred beneath the surface of the ammonia solution in *a*.<sup>1</sup> Then permit the fluid to flow into the graduated tube and into the chamber by proper adjustments of the reservoir and of the stop-cocks. Then a drop or two of mercury should be placed in the burette *d* to seal its openings against the introduction of air. Let the apparatus stand for about five minutes. The next step requires great care. Place about 0.5 ml. of saturated potassium ferricyanid<sup>2</sup> solution in the burette and draw it into the apparatus through *b*. Remove the apparatus, or agitate it while on its stand until the blood is spread upon the walls of the chamber for half a minute; then bring the reservoir below the level of the two chambers *c* and *g*, turn *f* so that they are in communication and the mercury and liquid drain into *g*, leaving the gas in *c*. Then close *f* and raise the mercury reservoir above *b*. Open *f* so that *h* is in communication with the chamber and permit the mercury in *c* to rise, carrying with it the column of pure oxygen gas. Adjust the level of the mercury so that the level in *c* is the same as in the reservoir<sup>3</sup> and make the reading. Enter the result in your note-book.

Calculation: You have determined the volume of oxygen at the temperature of the room and at the air pressure that exists at this time and place. To standardize the results convert them into standard temperature and pressure readings (760 mms. Hg and 0° C.). This is done by multiplying the observed reading by 50 to convert to

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix for the method for emptying this form of pipette.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> This is to establish the same pressure within the apparatus as that of the air outside; differences in altitude between the observatory and the laboratory must be compensated for. The atmospheric pressure is determined by means of a barometer, or from the Weather Bureau for purposes of calculation.

percentage (2 mls. being taken) and by the ratio  $(1 - 0.0046t) \frac{B}{760}$ ,<sup>1</sup> B being the barometric reading taken at the time of the determination, and t the degrees C. observed at the same time. Finally, the hemoglobin figure is obtained by dividing the standardized reading by 18.5, the ratio of the amount of oxygen in 100 mls. of blood. The following table expedites the calculation (Van Slyke, D. D., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 33, p. 127, 1918):

° C.	Correction for dissolved air. Subtract from burette reading.	Multiply result obtained below by corrected reading. Gives mls. O <sub>2</sub> per cent. blood.	Multiply result obtained below by corrected reading. Gives mgs. HHbO <sub>2</sub> per cent. blood.
15.....	0.037 ml. <sup>1</sup>	46.5 $\frac{B}{760}$	251 $\frac{B}{760}$
16.....	0.036	46.3 <sup>2</sup>	250 <sup>2</sup>
17.....	0.036	46.0	249
18.....	0.035	45.8	247
19.....	0.035	45.6	246
20.....	0.034	45.4	245
21.....	0.033	45.1	244
22.....	0.033	44.9	242
23.....	0.032	44.7	241
24.....	0.032	44.4	240
25.....	0.031	44.2	239
26.....	0.030	44.0	237
27.....	0.030	43.7	236
28.....	0.029	43.5	235
29.....	0.029	43.3	234
30.....	0.028	43.1	233

Quantitative methods for carbon-monoxid and for methemoglobin have been devised, both involving the use of the gasometric method just described. The method for methemoglobin uses also the colorimetric comparison of the unknown with a standard. For the theory of the colorimeter see page 164.

*Quantitative Method for Determining the CO Hemoglobin Content of Blood. Method of Van Slyke and Salvesen.*—Principle: The method is the same as that given in the previous Exercise in which the oxygen content of the blood is determined, but in the present method both O<sub>2</sub> and CO are removed from the blood, and it is necessary to cause the O<sub>2</sub> to be absorbed. This is accomplished by means of a solution of pyrogallol<sup>3</sup> and alkali.

<sup>1</sup> See Deming, General Chemistry, citation, page 92.

<sup>2</sup> These figures are to be multiplied by the fraction given above,  $\frac{B}{760}$ , in each case throughout the table.

<sup>3</sup> Page 264.

Procedure: Repeat Exercise 13, using CO-blood up to the point where the reading is taken at the end of the manipulations, when, in place of discarding the gas and cleaning the apparatus for a new determination, the following procedure is followed:

EXERCISE 14.—Introduce into the burette, *a*, 5 mls. of the pyrogallol solution and about 1 ml. of paraffin oil. Place the reservoir slightly below cock *b*, slowly and carefully turn this cock so as to permit the solution, without the oil, to flow into the graduated tube, and note the shrinking of the gas column due to the absorption of the oxygen by the pyrogallol solution. Now make a reading as before<sup>1</sup>; this reading gives the volume of CO gas.

Calculation: This is done by means of the gas formula:  $1.0 - 0.0046t \frac{B}{760}$ , *t* being the temperature at the end of the determination and *B* the barometric reading in millimeters. This multiplied by 50<sup>2</sup> gives the number of mls. of CO held by 100 mls. of whole blood.

EXERCISE 15. *Quantitative Determination of Methemoglobin by the Method of Stadie.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle: A distinct red color is imparted to a solution of hemoglobin and of methemoglobin when a cyanid like KCN is added, cyanhemoglobin being formed. The color is proportionate to the concentration of cyanhemoglobin; hence the concentration of cyanhemoglobin may be determined by comparing this color with that of a standard solution of known hemoglobin, or methemoglobin content.

Procedure: Place 2 mls. of blood which has been treated with an anticoagulant<sup>4</sup> to prevent clotting in a 100-ml. volumetric flask and dilute with 50 mls. of distilled water to cause hemolysis; then add 0.5 ml. of a 3 per cent. potassium ferricyanid solution. Let stand fifteen minutes or longer and then add 1 ml. or more of a 0.1 per cent. KCN solution. The color changes to a brilliant orange red due to the formation of cyanhemoglobin. Dilute the solution to the 100 ml. mark, mix well, and compare with the standard solution of ferricyanid-methemoglobin.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Owing to the very dark color of the pyrogallol solution, a drop or two of water may be permitted to flow down the graduated tube, when a clear meniscus is obtained, suitable for reading.

<sup>2</sup> Page 387.

<sup>3</sup> Stadie, W. C. (University of Pennsylvania, Research Medicine). See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 41, p. 23, 1920.

<sup>4</sup> Page 65.

<sup>5</sup> Page 382.



Calculation. This is as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of standard in mm.}}{\text{Reading of unknown in mm.}} = \frac{\text{concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{concentration of standard.}^1}$$

The result is the number of milligrams of hemoglobin plus methemoglobin in the volume of blood taken, namely, 2 mls. Determination of the hemoglobin: This is done upon about 5 mls. of the original methemoglobin blood by the method given on page 384.

Calculation of final result:

Concentration of hemoglobin + methemoglobin.....	n mgs.
Concentration of hemoglobin.....	N mgs.
Subtracting, giving methemoglobin.....	y mgs.

The calculations are for 2 mls. of blood; multiply by 50; this gives the final result in terms of milligrams of methemoglobin per 100 mls. of whole blood.

*The Detection of Blood.*—We have already given one method for this purpose, the hemin test (page 377). This method has been slightly modified by the use of anions other than chlorin:



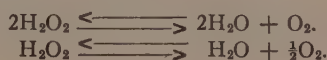
Fig. 126.—Hemin crystals obtained in two tests for blood by Teichmann's method. Note the great difference in size of crystals formed under slightly different conditions (photographs,  $\times 250$ ). (From Todd, *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods*.)

EXERCISE 16.—Tease apart the cloth fibers upon which there is a blood-stain. Place a small crystal of KCl, one of KI, and one of KBr

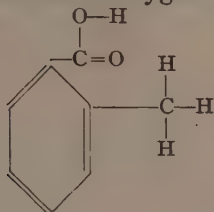
<sup>1</sup>The value of the standard is known by the method given for hemoglobin, p. 384.

upon the suspected fibers and cover with cover-glass. Run under one edge of the cover-glass a drop or two of distilled water and heat the slide, gently, with a low Bunsen flame. When the liquid has been evaporated somewhat, add 2 drops of glacial acetic acid as you did in the case of the water, and heat again. Let cool, examine under the microscope for hemin crystals, and compare them with those formed by the Teichmann method (page 377).

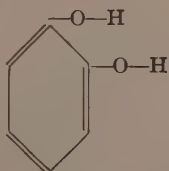
*Detection of Blood by Methods Depending Upon the "Peroxidase" Property of Hemoglobin.*—*Principle of the Methods.*—The hemoglobin decomposes the reagent, hydrogen peroxid<sup>1</sup>:



The active oxygen then oxidizes certain receptors, like guaiaconic acid,

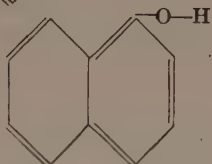


catechin),<sup>2</sup>

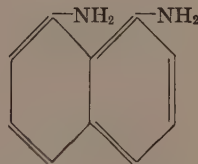


and various aromatic substances like

$\alpha$ -naphthol,



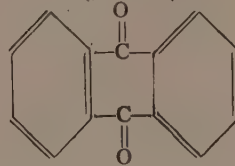
benzidin,



para-phenyldiamin,<sup>3</sup>



anthraquinon,<sup>4</sup>



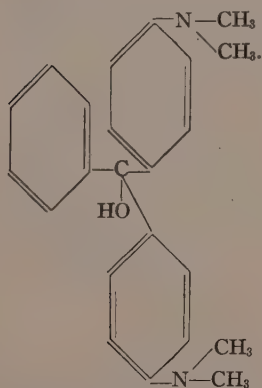
<sup>1</sup> Pages 96 and 113.

<sup>2</sup> Obtained by reduction of guaiacol.

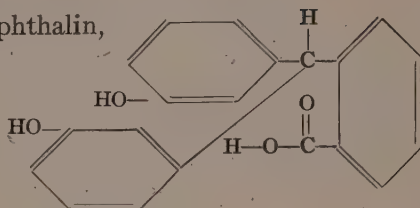
<sup>3</sup> This substance is encountered in toxicology. It is used in commerce in the preparation of furs and often causes a skin rash on persons wearing such furs.

<sup>4</sup> This is the substance which is the basis of the test employing aloes, or aloin.

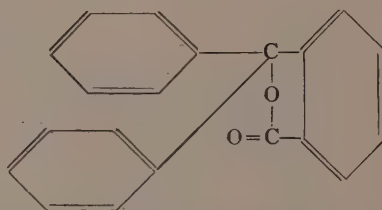
and even as complex a substance as malachite green,



Phenolphthalin,



becomes oxidized to phenolphthaleïn,



The following Exercises are designed to give methods for the practical detection of blood and also to show that one is not dependent upon the usual guaiac or benzidin reaction:

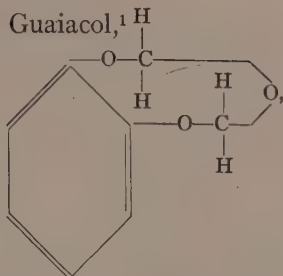
**EXERCISE 17.** *van Deen's<sup>1</sup> Method for Detecting Blood by Guaiacum.*—Place a dilute solution of blood<sup>2</sup> in a test-tube. Add one-half volume of the special hydrogen peroxid<sup>3</sup> and mix. Then, using a pipette, layer 1 volume of a solution of guaiaconic acid, 1 per cent., upon the solution in the tube. A whitish line of resinous material accumulates at the junction of the two liquids, and immediately above this a blue color develops, which gradually spreads upward.

<sup>1</sup> van Deen, Isaac, Holland physician, who died 1869. For reagents see the Appendix.

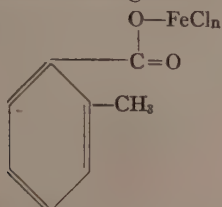
<sup>2</sup> If the stain is an old one, rub a portion of the stained material in 1 per cent. NaCl solution. Use only a small amount of liquid and keep the solution concentrated.

<sup>3</sup> Made by diluting Merck's "Superoxyl" (30 per cent.  $H_2O_2$ ) with water to make a 20 per cent. solution. In place of this solution one should obtain a freshly opened bottle of peroxid (3 per cent.) and use 2 volumes of the  $H_2O_2$  to 1 of the solution of blood. The small bottles of  $H_2O_2$  sold at drug-stores and 10-cent stores are preferable to a higher grade of peroxid from a supply that has been exposed to the air and left in a half-filled bottle for some time.

The chemistry of the reaction is as follows: Guaiacol,<sup>1</sup>



becomes oxidized by the nascent oxygen,  $\frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2$ , referred to above<sup>2</sup> and guaiaconic acid (page 391) is formed. Guaiaconic acid acts with the iron of the hemoglobin in the presence of chlorin, to make the compound



**EXERCISE 18.** *Adler's<sup>3</sup> Method for the Detection of Blood by Means of Benzidin.*—Place about 2 mls. of glacial acetic acid in a test-tube and warm on a water-bath or cautiously over a low flame. Add as much crystalline benzidin-hydrochlorid as will lie upon the tip of a knife-blade. Mix. Transfer about 0.5 ml.<sup>4</sup> of this solution to a second test-tube and add 10 mls. of 20 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  or equivalent of 3 per cent. peroxid. The appearance of a blue color growing in intensity is positive. Sensitivity: 1 : (10) (page 113). If color appear before the addition of the blood, the preparation must be discarded and the tube thoroughly cleaned with warm cleaning fluid before a new solution is prepared.

*Alternative Method.*—If several specimens are to be studied within three days, the benzidine may be used in a solution in acetic acid (Appendix) or in ethanol. The procedure is the same as that given above.

The chemistry of the reaction is not thoroughly understood, but it is probable that the *p*-diamino-diphenyl benzidin becomes oxidized

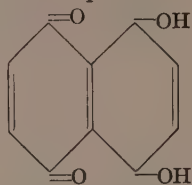
<sup>1</sup> Guaiacol is the methyl ether of pyrocatechin; it is not an alcohol.

<sup>2</sup> Page 113.

<sup>3</sup> Adler, O. and R., *Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chem.*, vol. 41, p. 59, 1904. Wagner (*Arch. f. Verdauungskrankheit*, vol. 20, p. 552) modified the test as it is at present.

<sup>4</sup> About 8 drops.

to a blue color belonging to the group of "Wurster-red" compounds—substances similar to quinon, quin-hydrone being:



which is green. Wurster-red compounds are partially oxidized *p*-phenylendiamin, and hence the similarity in the use of benzidin and of *p*-phenylendiamin in these blood-tests.

**EXERCISE 19.** *Detection of Blood by Means of p-Phenylendiamin.*<sup>1</sup>—Place 0.5 ml. of 20 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  or 5 mls. of 3 per cent. peroxid in a test-tube and add 2 drops of 0.5 per cent. aqueous solution of *p*-phenylendiamin-HCl. Mix. Slowly add one volume of the dilute solution of blood. A green color develops. Acetic acid should not be used in this experiment, at least not until after the green color has been obtained; then, if acetic acid is added, the green color changes to a sepia.

**EXERCISE 20.** *Kastle-Shedd<sup>2</sup> Method of Detection of Blood by Means of Phenolphthalin.*<sup>3</sup>—Place 2 mls. of the reagent in a test-tube and add 2 drops of 20 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$  or 0.5 ml. of 3 per cent. peroxid. Wash this solution into about 100 mls. of distilled water and of this place 10 mls. in a test-tube. Add to the contents of this tube 15 mls. of the blood solution and watch for the development of the usual pink color given by an alkaline solution of phenolphthalein. The test is positive with as little as 0.00000004 g. of whole blood.

**The Nervous System.**—The nervous system is one of the two correlative means of the body, the other being chemical integration.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This substance is on the photographic market. As a developer it gives an unusually finely grained negative. The substance is also on the market for the treatment of furs, referred to on page 391.

<sup>2</sup> Kastle, J. H., deceased, 1916, formerly Professor of Chemistry, University of Kentucky. Well known for his researches on enzymes. Shedd, O. M., Commercial chemist, Lexington, Ky.

<sup>3</sup> Note that this substance is not the ordinary indicator phenolphthalein. The formula is given on page 392, together with that of phenolphthalin. The reaction is given also. Phenolphthalin is listed by Coleman and Bell, Norwood, Ohio, as "Phenolphthalin Myers for occult blood." Occult means obscure, that is, blood that is not present in visible amounts. (Latin *ob*, against, and *celo*, sky.)

<sup>4</sup> The hormon system; see page 135.



Unless all parts of the body are in intercommunication, disorganization occurs similar to that which takes place when the intercommunicating telephone and telegraph systems are interrupted. Comparable with the telephone, the nervous system has (1) The central offices, the brain and ganglia, and (2) the connecting wires, the nerves. The nerve grows as a pseudopodial outpushing from the cell. Such outpushings may become very long, as, for example, some of the nerve-fibres passing from the sacral region to the foot. The nerves<sup>1</sup> are specialized for the transmission of nerve impulses, while the cells are the trophic (nutritive) portions, containing nuclei. The different cells with their nerves are separate entities, not fused together. The terminals of the nerves are, however, in intimate physical contact, and whatever the nervous energy is, it is enabled to pass from cell to cell through the "dendrites,"<sup>2</sup> or highly branched terminations of the axons. During sleep, it is possible that this physical contact is interrupted by a withdrawal of the tips of the dendrites of one cell from those with which it has been in contact; this withdrawal interrupts the passage of the nerve impulse. Certain drugs, like those of the curare<sup>3</sup> group destroy the "synapse" or junction of the dendrites of two adjacent nerve-cells. The nervous system is derived from the ectoderm and hence we find remnants of chemical substances which are typical of the ectoderm, such as neuro-keratin, referred to on page 27. Embryologically, the nerve-cell is, as stated above, an ameboid cell, the pseudopodia of which are the axons. Cells derived from the mesoderm wrap themselves around the nerve-axons and fuse to form a succession of cylinders known as myelin<sup>4</sup> sheaths. A space known as the node of Ranvier<sup>5</sup> lies between two adjacent myelin cylinders. Outside the sheath is the neurolemma, which is derived from the ectoderm and forms an investment for the sheath. Nuclei are easily seen in the

<sup>1</sup> Or *axons*.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *dendron*, tree.

<sup>3</sup> This group is not a natural one of chemically similar substances, but many drugs exhibit the power of paralyzing the terminals of the dendritic branches of nerves. Thus, curare, the arrow-poison of the South American Indian; amins, like cholin; guanidin; nicotin; morphin and its allies; strychnin, cocain and its congeners all show the "curare effect." One of the symptoms of the "toxemias of pregnancy" is of this character.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *muelos*, narrow, referring to the narrow "tubes," the nerves. The belief was prevalent at one time that the nerves were hollow.

<sup>5</sup> Ranvier, A., French pathologist, died 1922.

neurolemma.<sup>1</sup> At the nodes the neurolemma is contracted upon the axon fiber, the latter being the true nervous part of the "nerve."

*The General Chemistry of the Nervous System.*—If there is any one chemical entity characteristic of the nervous system it is the lipid content which makes up 66 per cent. of the solids. The nervous system possesses insignificant amounts of neutral fats, while the lipids such



Fig. 127.—W. J. Gies, Professor of Biochemistry, Columbia University, New York, N. Y. Contributor to the chemistry of the lipids, teeth, etc.

as phospholipids, galactolipids, along with the sterols, make up over 18 per cent. of the wet weight of the brain.<sup>2</sup> We have already studied one of the typical lipids of the brain, lecithin.<sup>3</sup> We shall proceed with the study of the other constituents.

EXERCISE 21.—Refer to Exercise 7, page 208. Kephalin was saved after removal of lecithin from the brain material. Make appropriate tests for detecting the presence of phosphoric acid, of an

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes this sheath is called after its discoverer, the "nucleated sheath of Schwann" (Theodor Schwann, Holland histologist, who, with the botanist, Schleiden, enunciated the cell doctrine; died 1882).

<sup>2</sup> The water content of the brain averages about 70 per cent., but it varies with age, greater in the young and becoming less up to the age of fifty, then again increasing to the time of death.

<sup>3</sup> Page 204.

unsaturated fatty acid, and of glycerol. After hydrolysis by means of acid, neutralize and make Benedict's qualitative test for reducing sugar.

*Neurokeratin* forms a framework which remains after the extraction of the lipids. Using some of the shreds of ether-extracted nerve material, make appropriate tests for the detection of glucids.

*Galactolipids* require special laboratory procedures, and hence they are not studied in these Exercises.

**Cerebrospinal Fluid.**—The brain and central nervous system do not possess a lymphatic system, such as occurs throughout other portions of the body. The duties of such a system are taken over by the cerebrospinal fluid, which is virtually Locke's solution<sup>1</sup> with some corpuscles, secreted by the choroid plexus. The latter is a tassellated folding of the pia mater coat of the brain, lying innermost of the different membranes and coming into immediate contact with the nervous material proper. This layer is abundantly provided with blood-vessels. The fluid is secreted by the epithelial lining of the villus or tassel which contains small blood-vessels. In the early embryonic condition this layer is simply the roof of the fourth ventricle, the cavity of the hind-brain. As growth proceeds in the mammal the layer is thrown into folds and tucked into the cavity. It is not confined to the fourth ventricle, but grows forward through the aqueduct of Sylvius, the third ventricle (of the midbrain), the foramina of Monro, and into each of the two lateral ventricles, I and II, of the cerebrum. The fluid is secreted constantly and passes from the ventricles backward, that is, toward the spinal cord, to the region of outgrowth of the plexus in the roof of the fourth ventricle, where it escapes into the subarachnoid<sup>2</sup> space by way of the foramen of Magendie.<sup>3</sup> There is

<sup>1</sup> Locke's solution is a modified Ringer's solution (Sydney Ringer, English physiologist, died 1910), which was made to resemble the salt solution of the blood. Ringer's solution consists of various salts (see page 133), and Locke, experimenting with the heart, varied the content by adding 0.1 per cent. glucose. The original fluid of Ringer was further modified by Tyrode (French physiologist), who added magnesium chlorid and bicarbonate. Macallum (portrait, page 566) suggests that, since the osmotic pressure and relation to sodium of these solutions is about the same as that of sea-water, blood plasma may at one time in the history of the race have been sea-water incorporated into the body to serve as a circulatory system.

<sup>2</sup> The arachnoid membrane, lying between the pia mater and the dura, or inner periosteum. The subarachnoid space is that which lies between the pia and the arachnoid membrane.

<sup>3</sup> Magendie, F., died 1855, Professor at the Collège de France, Paris, predecessor of Claude Bernard (page 370) and discoverer of the cerebrospinal fluid.

a definite pressure, averaging about 100 mms. of water which is lower than the average blood-pressure (100 mms. of mercury), but higher than that of the blood in the superior longitudinal sinus. The nature and origin of this pressure is still in doubt. The fluid is lost in the sinuses of the dura, probably by a process similar to that of the secretion of the urine in the kidney. Chemically, the cerebrospinal fluid is normally a comparatively cell-free liquid<sup>1</sup> of low total solids



Fig. 128.—Technic of spinal puncture. The patient sits on the edge of a chair and bends forward; the crests of the ilia are indicated by black lines, and are on a level with the spinous process of the fourth lumbar vertebra; the "soft spot" is found just above. (From Kolmer, *Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy*.)

(specific gravity 1.004–6 compared to that of the blood, 1.055; lymph-1.035; urine, 1.016). The saline content consists mainly of chlorions and the cations sodium and potassium with their molecules, NaCl and KCl, occurring in the ratio 17.3 : 1.0.<sup>2</sup> Cerebrospinal fluid has an

<sup>1</sup> Compare the aqueous humor of the eye, page 400.

<sup>2</sup> Potassium is typical for the cells, which may account for this ratio, since the cell content is low.



higher alkalinity than blood ( $pH$  7.35), the average being 7.75; figures as high as  $pH$  8 have been reported, but have been shown by Taschiro (Cincinnati) and Levinson (Chicago) to be due to faulty technique. Levinson<sup>1</sup> has shown that spinal fluids on standing unstoppered save for a plug of cotton, lose  $CO_2$  and become more alkaline in reaction. While the fluids of normal and pathological cases show little initial difference in chemical reaction, a characteristic difference develops after they stand. In tubercular meningitis there is more rapid fall of  $pH$  due to more rapid loss of carbon dioxide. In epidemic meningitis the fluid undergoes autolysis and lactic acid is produced; this leads to an increase in acidity.

The protids of the spinal fluid vary with the location from which the specimen is taken. In the spinal cord the total protid content of the fluid is greater than it is in the ventricles of the brain. The protids resemble in physical and chemical characteristics those of the blood; they consist of albumin and globulin. In certain diseases, like syphilis of the nervous system, the globulin content increases,<sup>2</sup> and this variation is utilized in diagnosis.

In normal fluids:

	G. per 100 mls. fluid.
Total protid.....	0.075
Globulin.....	0.008
Albumin, about.....	0.050

The so-called "sugar" of the cerebrospinal fluid is undoubtedly glucose in part. On injecting insulin, both blood-sugar and spinal fluid sugar fall, but the fluid sugar does not fall as low, proportionately, as that of the blood. It is preferable to speak of the "reducing substances"<sup>3</sup> than of glucose. The reducing substance in the spinal fluid is less than that in the ventricles. The average total reducing substance of 100 mls. of fluid is normally about 0.0525 g.<sup>4</sup> In certain diseases there are characteristic variations in reducing substances, as shown by the following protocol of observations made upon 43 normal subjects and approximately the same number of diseased patients:

<sup>1</sup> Levinson, A., Jour. Infect. Dis., vol. 21, p. 556, 1917.

<sup>2</sup> Page 220.

<sup>3</sup> That is, substances affecting Benedict's and Folin's sugar reagents.

<sup>4</sup> This and the following table are taken from unpublished investigations of B. L. Crawford (Pathologist, Jefferson Hospital), to whom the author expresses his thanks for courtesies.



Condition.	Appearance.	Cells, 1 cubic millimeter.	Globulin.	Reduction.	Folin's blood method, mgs. per cent.
Normal (43) .....	Clear	3	—	+	52.5
Luetic (19) .....	Clear	14	++	+	61.0
Encephalitis (2) .....	Clear	71	+	+	71.0
	Clear	12	+	+	83.8
	Clear	1	+	+	91.0
Epidemic meningitis....	Cloudy	480	+++	+	
Epidemic after serum....	Cloudy	...	+++	+	37.0
Brain tumor .....	Clear	6	+++	+	110.0
	Clear	3	+++	+	83.0
	Clear	4	+++	+	100.0
	Clear	3	+	+	77.0
	Clear	...	+	+	80.0
Tuberculous meningitis..	Clear	154	+++	+	24.1
	Clear	5	+	+	34.0
	Clear	20	+	+	21.0
	Clear	21	+	+	20.0
	Clear	...	+	0	18.0
Cerebral abscess <sup>1</sup> .....	Clear	22	+	+	63.0

The reducing substance of cerebrospinal fluid varies to a certain extent with that of the blood. The following table gives the nitrogenous composition of the blood-serum and corresponding ones for fluid (amounts per 100 mls. fluid):

	Amino-acids, g.	Urea.	Creatinin.	Uric acid.	N. P. N.	Undetermined N.
Blood (normal) .....	0.007	0.013	0.0015	0.0020	0.030	0.003
Fluid (normal) .....	0.002	0.011	0.0009	0.0008	0.017	0.051
Blood in uremia .....	0.0075	0.214	0.0145	0.0180	0.285	0.051
Fluid in uremia .....	0.0280	0.218	0.0061	0.0045	0.222	

**The Humors of the Eye.**—The aqueous humor, lying in front of the lens, is chemically similar to the cerebrospinal fluid. It has a specific gravity close to that of the fluid. The total solids are about the same in the two cases, qualitatively and quantitatively.

The vitreous humor lies behind the lens. It is of entirely different composition; being very loose and gelatinous, it is virtually a semi-liquid tissue. Hyalomucoid, a mucoid belonging to the glucoprotids and characteristic of all such tissues, is present in the vitreous humor.

<sup>1</sup> Diagnosed in the dispensary as tubercular meningitis, but autopsy revealed cerebral abscess.

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF THE VITREOUS HUMOR<sup>1</sup>

	Ox eye	Pig	Horse
Specific gravity.....	1.004	..	1.003
Total nitrogen.....	21.5	19.9	17.8-35.7
Non-protid nitrogen.....	15.7	13.6	14.2-32.3
Urea nitrogen.....	9.9	8.8	8-20
Amino-acid nitrogen.....	1.8	2.8	2-3
Uric acid.....	2.8	0.45	1-2
Creatinin.....	1.1		
Creatin.....	1.6		
Glucose.....	39	30	71
NaCl.....	678	705	656
Total sulphur.....	4	4.5	2
Total phosphorus.....	2	3.3	

## SUMMARY FOR THE TISSUES

(1) The tissues are differentiated chemically as well as morphologically.

(2) Characteristic chemical substances occur in the various tissues, and these frequently persist when a given tissue becomes altered in its location in the body, as, for example, when the nervous system is invaginated from the ectoderm.

(3) The ectodermal structures are characterized by substances refractory to reagents, giving them their protective properties.

(4) The muscular system is characterized, chemically, by the metabolism of glucids which take part in the functioning of this system; for example, in the metabolism of glycogen and the consequent formation of lactic acid which increases the permeability of the fibers for water, causing them to swell, an essential to contraction phenomena.

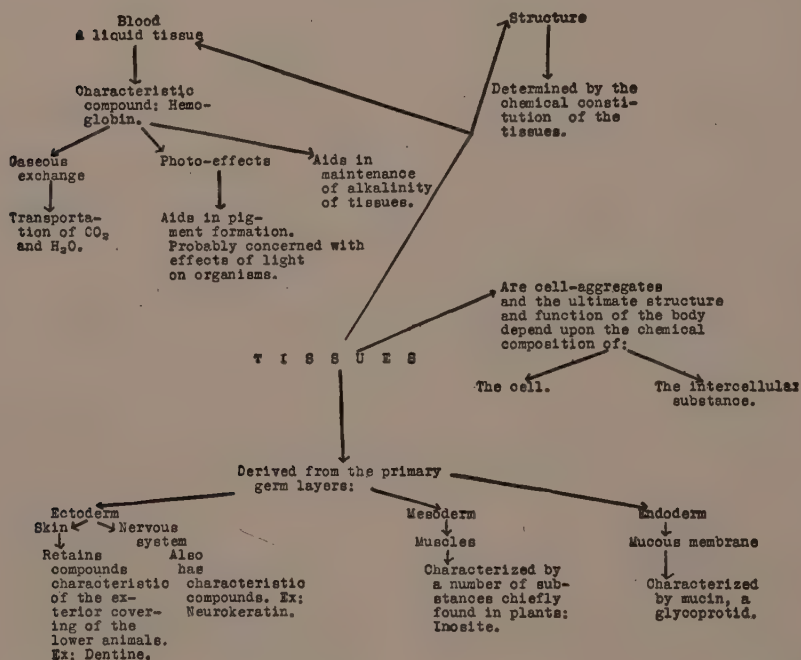
(5) The blood is virtually a liquid tissue and possesses certain characteristic chemical substances which aid it in its performance as a carrier of respiratory gases. Cellular changes occur, involving chemical substances, such as the hemoglobin found in the eosinophiles. Methods of detection of blood are based upon the behavior of the iron of hemoglobin, which acts somewhat like an enzyme.

(6) The nervous system is characterized chemically by the content of lipids: Lipids bearing phosphorus (phospholipids), those free from phosphorus (galactolipids), along with the sterol, cholesterol. These compounds are found liberally in the myelin sheath of the nerves.

<sup>1</sup> After Cohen, M., Killian, J. A., and Metzger, N., Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., vol. 22, page 445, 1925.

They are all dissolved by the so-called "fat solvents" such as ether. In narcosis, since so many narcotics are fat solvents, it is probable that the essential action is that of entering the myelin sheaths and coming into contact with the nervous tissue proper. However, since all the fat solvents are methyl compounds, their pharmacological function is probably due not alone to their ability to enter the sheath, but also to certain fundamental properties causing a cessation of passage of the nerve impulse.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bunting, C. H. Leukocytes, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 505, 1922.  
 Hammarsten, O. *Physiological Chemistry*, New York, J. Wiley & Son, 1914.  
 Hill, A. V. Mechanics of Muscular Contraction, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 310, 1922.  
 Hunter, A. Physiology of Creatin and Creatinin, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 586, 1922.  
 Levene, P. A. Structure and Significance of the Phosphatides, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 327, 1921.  
 Levinson, A. *Cerebrospinal Fluid*, St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Co., 1923.

- Maclean, H. Lecithin and Allied Substances, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1918.
- Mathews, A. P. Physiological Chemistry, 4th ed., New York, William Wood & Co., 1925.
- Rose, W. C. Purin Metabolism, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 544, 1923.
- Thudicum, J. L. Chemical Constitution of the Brain, etc., London, Ballière, 1884. There is also a German translation.
- Weed, L. H. Cerebrospinal Fluid, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 171, 1922.
- Whipple, G. H. Origin and Significance of the Constituents of the Bile, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 440, 1922.

## CHAPTER VIII

### THE CHEMISTRY OF COMMON FOODS

"By the mistakes and misconceptions of the past we are guided into more fruitful paths."—*Lafayette B. Mendel.*<sup>1</sup>

In this chapter we shall consider the chemistry of some of the common food substances with a view to acquainting the prospective practitioner with the characteristic composition of a few selected foods as a basis for the scientific compounding of diets. Methods for determining the content of protid, glucid, etc., in foods are also presented.



Fig. 129.—Lafayette B. Mendel, Professor of Physiological Chemistry, Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. Investigator of many phases of biochemistry, but especially, in connection with T. B. Osborne, of nutritional factors.

**Definition of a Food.**—A food is a substance satisfying in whole or in part the demand of the body for maintenance of form and energy. Accordingly, water, oxygen, cheese, potatoes, etc., are foods. Cheese is capable of temporarily maintaining both the form and the energy of the body; it supplies the demand in part. However, as we shall see later (page 539), the mere supply of the same chemical materials which make up the body in amounts sufficient to maintain energy is not the only consideration. Other substances of unknown composition, designated vitamins, seem to be essential to the proper utilization

of food-stuffs. Finally, light of certain wave length seems to be quite necessary for the economy of the body.

<sup>1</sup> Page 24.



**Characteristic Composition.**—Most foods have a higher content of certain chemical constituents than of others, and are accordingly classified as “fatty foods,” “starchy foods,” etc. The content of the three principal organic chemical components is proportioned as follows in bacon, eggs, and bread (in gms. per 100 gms. of substance):

Substance.	Nitrogenous.	Fats.	Starches.
Bacon.....	9.6	64.0	
Eggs.....	13.0	10.0	
Bread (white).....	7.1	1.2	52.3 <sup>1</sup>

It is evident that bacon is typically a fat substance, while eggs are chiefly nitrogenous, and bread, starchy. Certain foods contribute other substances, such as water, or inorganic salts. Thus milk is 87 per cent. water. It contains only 0.02 per cent. iron as contrasted with 0.2 per cent. in eggs.<sup>2</sup> On the other hand, the calcium content is 12 per cent. in milk and only 6.7 per cent. in eggs. A knowledge of the chemical composition, especially of the more common foods, is of the greatest importance to the physician, both in studying the etiology of disease and in prescribing treatment. The following Exercises have been prepared with a view to familiarizing the student with the determination of food content.

**EXERCISE 1. *The Chemistry of Milk.***<sup>3</sup>—Take 25 mls. of skimmed or separator milk in a small beaker and place it in a water-bath at 50° C. Add, drop by drop, acetic acid 1: 10, stirring constantly, until a curd appears. Collect the curd and lift it from the whey; see the second part of this Exercise for continuation of the work with the liquid portion, the whey. Place the curd in a large beaker and wash it with distilled water, saving the washings, and adding them to the whey. Dry the curd between filter-papers, weigh the mass, and enter the figure in your note-book.

(I) *The curd:* By appropriate tests detect the presence of protid and of phosphorus. Test its solubility in dilute mineral acid (1 per cent. HCl) and dilute alkali (1 per cent. NaOH). Test the solubility of some of the curd in lime-water. What would be the effect of drinking an alkaline solution like bicarbonate before taking a glass of milk? What value would lime-water have in adjusting cow's milk to consumption by the human infant? Knowing that the curd was obtained

<sup>1</sup> This table is after Lusk.

<sup>2</sup> Sherman gives 0.003 g. for 100 gs. of whole egg material.

<sup>3</sup> A scheme for practical quantitative analysis of milk is given in Appendix.

by bringing the milk to 55° C., what would be the effect upon curd formation of drinking cold milk? Determine quantitatively the content of protid in the curd you have obtained by making a Kjeldahl determination upon a carefully weighed amount (not to exceed 2 gs.) and multiplying the nitrogen figure thus obtained by 6.24. How does this figure compare with the weighed amount of the first of this Exercise? Determine whether fat is present in the curd by shaking a solution of about 5 mls. of curd dissolved in 1 per cent. alkali solution with one volume of ether, letting the mixture settle and then decanting the ether layer into a small beaker (100 mls.), repeating once. Unite the decanted fluids in the beaker and evaporate the ether carefully on the water-bath. Test the residue for (1) fat by the acrolein test and (2) phosphorus. Is the substance fat? If so, is it a phospholipid?

(II) *The whey*: Transfer 10 mls. of the whey to a test-tube and bring to a boil. Prove that a heat-coaguable protid is present in the whey after removal of the curd. Make tests for inorganic constituents in the whey: Phosphion, chlorion, iron, and calcium. Prove that a glucid is present. Using a protid-free filtrate from 10 mls. of whey, make the osazone test. Can you identify the substance giving the crystals?

**EXERCISE 2.** *The Babcock<sup>1</sup> Method for Total Fat Content of Milk, Cream, etc.*—(1) Secure two of the Babcock bottles having the narrow stem<sup>2</sup> (Fig. 130), and by means of a special pipette delivering exactly 17.6 mls.<sup>3</sup> of fluid, pipette from a well-mixed sample of milk, 17.6 mls. of the milk into each of the bottles.<sup>4</sup> Now, holding one bottle in an inclined position, carefully add an equal volume of concentrated sulphuric acid, permitting the acid to flow down the inside of the neck of the bottle and to underlie the milk. At the junction a brownish color will appear, owing to the charring and condensing of the milk by the strong acid. This color, however, must be limited to a narrow zone. Repeat with the second bottle. Then, holding the bottles under the cold water-tap, slowly rotate the contents so that they

<sup>1</sup> Babcock, S. M., Professor Emeritus of Agricultural Chemistry, University of Wisconsin, Madison. See the Appendix for the Leffmann-Bean method which was proposed before the Babcock method.

<sup>2</sup> The wider stemmed bottles are for cream (Fig. 131).

<sup>3</sup> In the absence of these special pipettes, the measurements may be made by means of several measurements of ordinary transfer pipettes of say 5 mls. and 1 ml. (in tenths) capacity.

<sup>4</sup> The purpose of two bottles is that one may be lost in centrifuging and also that one serves as control over the other.



Fig. 130.—Narrow form of Babcock milk bottle for determinations of fat in milk. The readings are in grams of fat per 100 gs. of milk. For percentages of fat above 8, use the wider bottle (Fig. 131).



Fig. 131.—The Babcock milk bottle for estimating the percentage of butter fat in milk, cream, etc. This wide tube is designed for analyses of cream.



Fig. 132.—Milk tube suitable for estimating, by the Babcock method, butter fat in human milk, or in 5-ml. amounts of cow's milk. The graduations read in percentages of fat.



Fig. 133.—Apparatus for extracting fat and other substances in biochemical processes. The Soxhlet extraction apparatus, shown in outline, rests upon the water-bath.

become mixed. The final color should be a light chocolate brown; if the contents of the tube become black, the process must be repeated, using a new preparation. Balance the two tubes on the rough balance near the centrifuge and then place them on opposite sides of the arm or head of the centrifuge, having marked the tubes for identification. Close the lid of the centrifuge box and also the contact. Then run up the rheostat until it is half-way to the fastest speed.<sup>1</sup> Leave about five minutes. In the meantime prepare a flask or beaker of boiling water and have it ready for use when the centrifuge stops. Remove the flasks one at a time and to each add enough boiling water<sup>2</sup> to bring

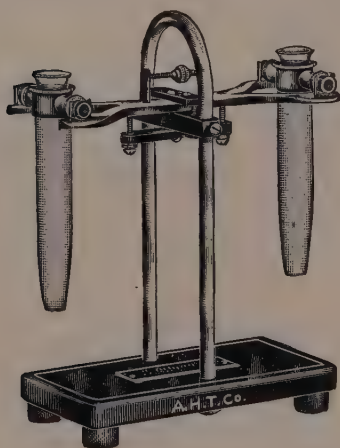


Fig. 134.—Centrifuge tube balance. Centrifuging must be done with the tubes in pairs, one tube balanced against the other.

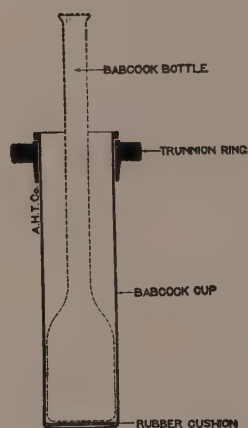


Fig. 135.—Babcock milk bottle in place in the centrifuge cup.

the layer of fat (recognized by its brown or caramel color) up on the scale on the neck of the flask. After both flasks are removed, return them to the centrifuge and rotate for one minute longer. Remove and read the column of fat from the scale.<sup>3</sup> This gives the grams of fat per 100 mls. of whole milk, *i. e.*, the percentage of butter fat.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A speed about half the capacity of the ordinary centrifuge (1000 to 1800 R. P. M.); that is, 900 is adequate.

<sup>2</sup> Or amylol solution; see Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> It is seldom that the column comes exactly on the markings on the scale. One must read, therefore, the column of fat between the ends of the column as they fall upon the scale.

<sup>4</sup> It is important to empty the bottles as soon as the determination is completed and while the contents are warm. Invert the bottle over the sink and shake vigorously to start the flow; rinse with warm water.

(2) *Clinical Method for Determining the Contents of Human Milk.*—For the tubes used in this method see Fig. 132. Place exactly 5 mls.<sup>1</sup> of mixed milk in a tube and then pipette as before concentrated  $H_2SO_4$ , causing it to layer until the bulb is nearly full. From this

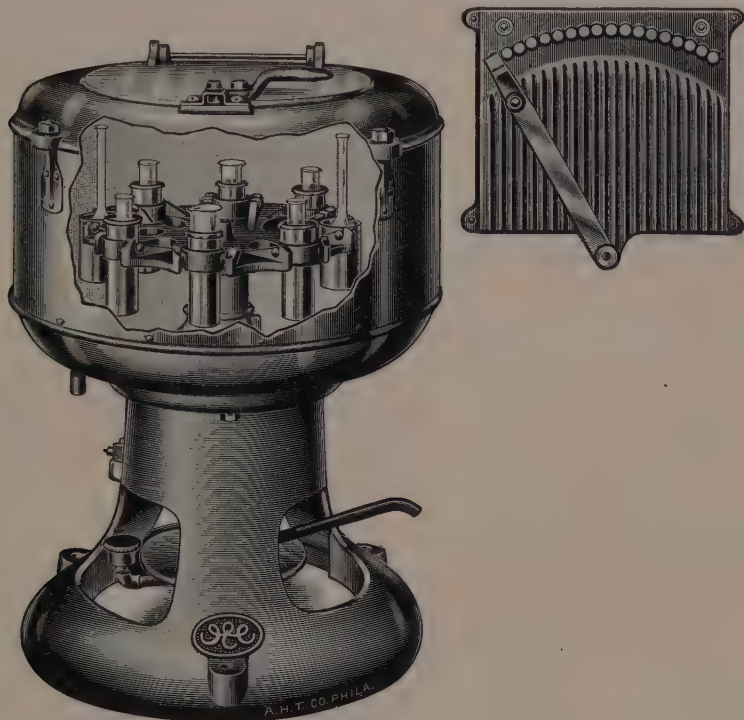


Fig. 136.—Type of electric centrifuge in common use in biochemical laboratories. The centrifuge proper is encased in a steel cover to prevent accidents. The electric control is done through the wall rheostat. Usually the speed should not exceed that represented by the movement of the rheostat to middle position. The drawing shows Babcock bottles, 50-ml. and 15-ml. centrifuge tubes. In starting, the rheostat must be on the lowest speed and the increase in strength of current made slowly.

point the determination is made according to the description given in (1) above. The readings are, as before, in per cent. of butter fat.

(3) *Exact Method by the Soxhlet<sup>2</sup> Extraction Apparatus.*—The

<sup>1</sup> A mark indicating 5 mls. volume is usually etched upon the tube about half-way up the bulb.

<sup>2</sup> Soxhlet, Frans, German chemist, 1848, Professor Emeritus, University of Munich, Agricultural Department, Munich, Bavaria, Germany.



apparatus: This consists of three parts: (a) a vessel, generally a Florence or Erlenmeyer<sup>1</sup> flask into which is inserted the lower end of the extraction tube (b), virtually a large test-tube with two siphon tubes on the sides, to permit the extraction fluid (ether, etc.) boiled from the flask to reach the material undergoing extraction. It also permits this liquid to siphon over into the flask below when it reaches the proper level in the extraction tube. The third part is a condenser (c), the least complicated being the Hopkins condenser of the reflux type.<sup>2</sup> Water is passed through this condenser, the right-hand tube being for intake and the left for outlet. Procedure for extraction: Place 150 mls. extraction fluid<sup>3</sup> in the flask and connect this flask with the extraction tube. To prepare the specimen of milk for extraction lay on the balance an alundum extraction thimble.<sup>4</sup> Now tare<sup>5</sup> the thimble against weights, then place a 5-gram weight on the pan of the scale opposite to that holding the thimble. Add milk by means of a pipette until the instrument is balanced, removing any excess by means of a roll of filter-paper dipped into the thimble. Then transfer the thimble to the electric hot-plate where it is left until it becomes dry. The temperature should be about 50° C. Lower the thimble into the top of the extraction tube. Close the opening by inserting the condenser. Start the flow of water through it and turn on the electricity to heat the solvent in the flask. The solvent vaporizes

<sup>1</sup> There are on the market special flasks designed to afford easy and safe connection with the rest of the apparatus. One of the most satisfactory is the Sy flask (Sy, Professor A. P., head of the Department of Chemistry, University of Buffalo, N. Y.), shown in Fig. 137, modified by Knorr, which has a trough for holding mercury. The end of the extraction tube is slipped beneath the level of the mercury, thus effectually preventing the vapors of ether or other solvent from escaping.

<sup>2</sup> Literally the "flow-back" type; the Liebig type of condenser is usually used for condensing vapors, and the condensed fluid flows down the inclined tube, being caught in a flask and hence not returned to the vaporizing vessel. The reflux type is used in a vertical position, the vapor being condensed and returned to the vaporizing vessel, below, to be revaporized.

<sup>3</sup> Ether is used, as a rule, in milk determinations. It boils at 35° C. Carbon tetrachlorid is non-inflammable, boiling at about the same temperature as ethanol (CCl<sub>4</sub>, 77° C.; C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH, 78° C.).

<sup>4</sup> Made by the Norton Company, Worcester, Mass., and procurable at chemical supply houses. Alundum is an aluminum composition which is baked hard and withstands great heat, permitting a thorough cleansing of the extraction thimble after use by igniting it in a strong Bunsen flame.

<sup>5</sup> From the Arabic *taraha*, to reject. Balance the paper and the thimble against weights placed on the other pan of the balance.

and the vapors rise through the larger of the two siphon tubes on the extraction tube and enter this tube where they come into contact with the condensing action of the condenser. The liquid thus arising accumulates in the extraction tube and absorbs the fat from the dried milk in the alundum thimble. The condensed vapor rises to the top of the smaller siphon tube, and suddenly the fluid siphons, carrying the dissolved fat into the flask below. After this has continued for



Fig. 137.—Modified Soxhlet apparatus for extracting fat, etc., from organic mixtures. The substance undergoing extraction is placed in the compartment *b*. The flask at the bottom is filled with the extracting fluid (ether, for example). The volatile ether rises through the larger tube to the left of *b* and enters *b*. There it is condensed and fills *b* as a liquid up to the level of the upper bend of the siphon tube on the right of *b*; then the liquid siphons into the flask below, carrying with it any extracted substance. A Hopkins condenser completes the apparatus, above.

some time, generally about two hours, the ether is caught in the extraction tube immediately before it siphons and is removed by disconnecting the flask and the condenser from the extraction tube. Pour the ether into a vessel. Reconnect the apparatus and collect any remaining ether in the extraction tube. Let the flask cool while stoppered and weigh. Bring the temperature of the flask to  $50^{\circ}$  C. for one minute, cool, and weigh again. When the weights become constant, enter the amount in your note-book. The figure obtained

is the weight of fat per 5 gs. of milk; hence the per cent. of butter fat is obtained by multiplying by 20.

A practical apparatus is that of Dunbar<sup>1</sup> (Fig. 138). The small Hopkins condenser is removed from large cylinder and the funnel<sup>2</sup> is also withdrawn. The small test-tube resting at the bottom of the cylinder is removed by means of wires attached to the two small openings at the top of the test-tube. A known volume or weight of

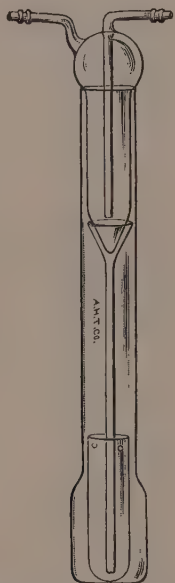


Fig. 138.—The Dunbar extraction apparatus, used in many biochemical procedures, such as determination of lactic acid, etc.

milk (say 50 gs.) is placed in the test-tube and the water is removed as in the Soxhlet method. Then the cylinder is weighed,<sup>3</sup> the test-tube lowered into the cylinder which rests in a boiling water-bath, or on an electric heater, protected by asbestos. The funnel is lowered into the test-tube. Finally, enough ether is placed in the cylinder to rise to the bend in the sides and the condenser is placed in position. Extraction continues for two hours, at the end of which period the ether is distilled into the test-tube. The latter is then removed,

<sup>1</sup> Dunbar, C. O., U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D. C., contemporary.

<sup>2</sup> A pinch of glass wool should be fastened to the lower end of the funnel to prevent too rapid passage of the solvent.

<sup>3</sup> The clean test-tube may be used also as a check.

emptied, and returned to catch the remainder of the ether. The final traces of ether are removed by placing the cylinder in a boiling water-bath. The cylinder is then cooled and weighed. The results are exactly as in the case of the Soxhlet method.

For methods dealing with the adulteration, preservation, and modification of milk see Appendix.

For the effect of chymosins (the rennins) occurring in the stomach and intestinal juices, which cause curdling and slight hydrolysis, see the chapter on Alimentary Processes, page 448.

**EXERCISE 3. *Quantitative Determination of Lactose; Method of Folin and W. Denis.***—Principle: This is an adaptation of the method for determination of sugar content devised by Folin and McEllroy,<sup>1</sup> and permits the determination to be made in the presence of inorganic salts and protids. Procedure: Dilute the milk with 3 volumes of distilled water,<sup>2</sup> and place about 12 mls. in an ordinary 50-ml. burette having a well-drawn-out tip, so that drops may be delivered accurately.<sup>3</sup> Adjust the meniscus after raising the end of the tip to make certain that the latter is filled with the diluted milk. Clamp the burette on a burette stand and proceed to the preparation of the copper solution to be reduced: Into a 200 x 20 mm. pyrex test-tube place about 5 gs. of the phosphate mixture<sup>4</sup> and 5 mls. of the special 6 per cent. cupric sulphate solution. Clamp the tube over a micro-burner, or hold it in the hand while permitting a small amount (4 mls.) of the diluted milk to flow into the tube. Bring the contents of the tube to a boil and continue for three to four minutes. Then continue the addition with care and continue boiling, bringing the determination to a close within six to eight minutes. The end-point is reached when the copper is reduced, and cupric thiocyanate, white in color, is formed. Calculation: The cupric sulphate used (5 mls. of a 6 per cent. solution of  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is exactly reduced by 0.0404 g. of lactose. The  $n$  mls. of diluted milk solution necessary to give the appearance of the white color in the copper solution contain exactly 0.0404 g. of lactose. One milliliter therefore contains  $\frac{1}{n}$  of 0.0404 g. If percentage is desired, this result multiplied by 100 gives the per

<sup>1</sup> Chapters XV and XVI.

<sup>2</sup> For human milk the dilution may be 1 : 5.

<sup>3</sup> A special sugar burette is suggested by Folin and McEllroy, Chapter XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

cent. of lactose in the diluted milk. If the milk were diluted in the proportion 1:4, the per cent. found multiplied by 4 will give the per cent. of lactose per 100 mls. whole milk. Briefly, then:

$$\text{Per cent. lactose} = \frac{4.04 \times \text{dilution factor.}}{n}$$

**System for Quantitative Analysis of Human Milk.**—In the Appendix will be found a scheme for analysis of small amounts of human milk. The procedures may be employed in analyses of small quantities of milk of animals.

**Significance for Clinical Purposes of Variations in Milk Constituents.**—Human milk varies from the time it begins to flow until the child is weaned; in fact, it may vary from feeding to feeding. As a rule it grows richer as time progresses, although its total volume per feeding decreases. The solids of milk<sup>1</sup> increase after the third week and continue to do so throughout lactation. Among western peoples lactation seldom continues much longer than one year, but in the East (Japan) lactation may continue two or three years. During this time there is a progressive increase in total solids and in fat content. In the University of Minnesota it has been found that even in the American milk-flow may be stimulated after several days of inability on the part of the mother to nurse the child; also that the time of lactation may be extended apparently indefinitely by keeping the child on the breast. In general, tests of fat content, etc., mean little because the composition of human milk varies in slight degree and a small output of milk at one time is generally compensated for by richer milk later. Lactagogues or galactagogues, that is, substances which increase the flow of milk, as a rule do so by increasing (1) the water content or (2) the fat content of the foods. The drinking of milk or fatty foods, like chocolate, tends to increase the total amount of milk and consequently its total fat content. The milk of domestic animals, like the cow, goat, ass, etc., differs in composition from human milk. The following table compares the composition of human milk with that of the cow and the goat (from Heineman<sup>2</sup>):

Grams per cent. of substances occurring in milk of man and animals:

<sup>1</sup> For method of determining total solids in milk see Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Heineman, P. G., Director of the Cook Laboratories Inc., Chicago, Ill.



Substances.	Human.	Cow.	Goat.
Fat.....	3.3	3.9	3.8
Lactose.....	6.5	4.9	4.5
Protid (casein + lactalbumin).....	1.5	3.2	3.1
Total salts.....	0.3	0.9	0.9
Phosphates.....	0.19	0.58	0.31
Calcium chlorid.....	0.059	0.119	0.115
Calcium phosphate.....	0.000	0.175	0.154

Human milk is poorer in fat, richer in lactose, lower in protid, lower in total salts, poorer in phosphates and in chlorids than is the milk of the cow or goat. That of the ass is lower in fat (1 per cent.), but resembles human milk in other respects and is well tolerated by infants. If cow's milk or goat's milk is to be fed to children, it is usually modified by diluting in order to lower the fat content, adding lactose, and sometimes lime-water or  $Mg(OH)_2$ . This prevents the curd from lumping. In Europe, however, unmodified milk is given to infants taken from the mother's breast. The milk of the Holstein cow is more like human milk than is that of the Jersey. The use of dried milk preparations, etc., will be discussed later.<sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE 4. *The Chemistry of the Egg of the Fowl.*—Strike the equator of an egg with a sharp instrument. Into the crack thus formed insert a thumb on each side and carefully open the egg. By transferring the yolk from one half-shell to the other let the white drain into a receptacle. The whitish stringy material adhering to each end of the egg is the chalaza.<sup>2</sup> The chemistry of egg-white resembles that of serum which has already been discussed on page 218. The egg-white will be used in a later exercise in digestion (page 446). Put the yolk into a pint milk bottle and add 1 volume of ether. Stopper the mouth of the bottle and shake for about two minutes, then decant off the ether, saving it. Add another volume of ether to the residue and shake for five minutes. Decant as before and unite the decanted fluids. Save these and the residue. Add enough 10 per cent. NaCl

<sup>1</sup> Page 642.

<sup>2</sup> Greek, meaning hail-stone, which the chalaza resembles. The formation of the egg in the fowl is as follows: The ovum is produced in the ovary and laid down around it is the nutritive yolk. The egg passes into the oviduct, where it receives a cylinder of egg-white. As it passes down the tube it receives a rotary motion and by this means the ends of the cylinder become closed. This produces the chalaza. Then one membrane is formed around the egg-white and another outside it, leaving a space between the two at the larger end of the egg, the so-called respiratory space. The shell is formed outside this second layer. In the egg of commerce the ovum has generally been fertilized and rests in the blastula stage.

solution to the residue to dissolve it and then precipitate lecitho-vitellin, the lipo-protid, by (1) filtering the solution on a Buchner funnel, washing the precipitate formed with abundant tap-water; or (2) by dialyzing the solution; or (3) by pouring it in small amounts into a casserole containing tap-water and straining off the precipitate through gauze or filtering it through glass-wool in a large funnel. Save some of the strainings, and to 5 mls. in a test-tube add a drop of glacial acetic acid and boil; note the coagulation of "livetin," a heat-coagulable, phosphorus-poor substance. Now place a small portion of the residue of lecitho-vitellin in a test-tube and add 1 volume of ethanol. Heat the mixture in a boiling water-bath; lecithin goes into solution and the phosphoprotid, vitellin, being insoluble, remains in suspension. Filter, saving the filtrate and residue. Note that the characteristics of vitellin are solubility in reagents and the presence of phosphorus.

Now, returning to the filtrate, add 1 volume of acetone to it and note the precipitate of lecithin. Using the filtrate obtained early in the present Exercise, filter off about 10 mls. of the ether, concentrate on a water-bath in a watch-crystal or small beaker, and examine the residue for crystals of cholesterol.

**Eggs as Food.**—The fact that the chick develops within the shell into a being capable of leading an independent existence proves that the egg contains all the necessary nutriment. Chemically and functionally, vitellin is to the young chick what casein of milk is to the nursling of the mammal. Attention has been directed to the similarity in chemical composition of lecithin and nucleic acid (page 324) and it is probable that the phospholipid is used in the construction of the nucleus. For man eggs make a condensed food, for, whereas the chick requires several weeks to digest the yolk, man requires only two hours. Eggs contain 75 per cent. water, or about the same amount as fat-free steak. However, they contain five times as much lipid material as does beef. The ash content, by weight, is approximately that of beef, but there is a larger amount of phosphorus in eggs. Since the caloric<sup>1</sup> value of a pound of eggs is about 600, and since the average man needs about 3000 Calories, he would require for maintenance about 5 pounds of eggs<sup>2</sup> in twenty-four hours. If eggs are eaten

<sup>1</sup> Page 192.

<sup>2</sup> Equivalent to 45 eggs of the larger kind, like Plymouth Rock eggs. This is equivalent to 5 quarts of milk per twenty-four hours.

with plenty of "roughage," that is, indigestible substances which increase the bulk of the feces, there is less danger toward accumulation of gases, such as  $H_2S$ , in the digestive tract. The iron content of eggs is conspicuously different from that of milk, as the following table from Sherman shows:

## IRON CONTENT OF EGGS AND MILK

	Fresh.	Dried.	Per 3000 calories.
Eggs.....	0.003 g. per cent.	0.0114 g. per cent.	0.057 g.
Milk.....	0.024      "	0.0017      "	0.010 g.

Eggs are valuable in supplying iron, but this is much better supplied by green vegetables.<sup>1</sup> The phosphorus content of eggs which aver-



Fig. 139.—H. C. Sherman, Professor of Food Chemistry, Columbia University, New York, N. Y. Contributor to the chemistry and economics of dietaries, mineral metabolism, etc.

ages 0.370 g. per 100 gs. dried material (white and yolk) is greater than that of milk (0.215 g. per cent.). Considering the phosphorus content of the yolk alone, it is five times higher than that of milk and twice as high as that of lean steak.<sup>2</sup> It is to be remembered in any

<sup>1</sup> Spinach, 0.037 g. iron per 100 gs. dried substance.

<sup>2</sup> The figures given are stated as  $P_2O_5$ .

discussion of eggs as food that this high content of phosphorus means a liberal contribution of phosphoric acid to the system. It is expressed as 9 mls. normal acid compared with 2 mls. in wheat, 0.1 ml. in corn, —10<sup>1</sup> for potatoes, and —40 for celery. These considerations are of great significance in prescribing diets for nephritics in whom a highly acid urine means low solubility for uric acid.

Eggs contain cholesterol, and in certain diseases, such as cholecystitis and cancer, are contraindicated since cholesterol forms biliary calculi or gall-stones. Experimentally, at least, excessive feeding of cholesterol to the rabbit has been definitely correlated with increased growth of the malignancy present. The paucity of knowledge concerning these matters and their importance should inspire further investigations.

**EXERCISE 5. *Diabetic Foods.***—Soy-bean meal: Grind 1 g. of meal in a mortar with enough water to form a paste; then stir this paste into a beaker containing about 50 mls. of water. Using 5 mls. of this suspension, perform Benedict's qualitative test for reducing sugar. To another 5-ml. portion add a solution of iodine, drop by drop. Is starch present? To a third 5-ml. portion add about 0.5 volume of filtered saliva, place the preparation in a water-bath at 50° C., and leave five minutes. Perform Benedict's qualitative test. Is a reducing sugar present now? Try Millon's reaction for protids.

Repeat the above tests upon shreds of bran sold on the market for the use of diabetics.

Repeat the above Experiment, using Uneeda biscuit.

Repeat, using toasted cracker or bread.

**The Principle of Diabetic Foods.**—Soy bean contains no starch capable of producing a blue color with iodine. The bean has a large protid content. There is therefore no immediate contribution to glucose or to glucose-forming substances in the body.

**EXERCISE 6. *Sugar Content of Candy.***—Dissolve by means of heat a piece of candy the weight of which has been recorded by the instructor in 50 mls. of distilled water. Filter off about 10 mls. into a burette and use this liquid to determine by means of Benedict's quantitative method (page 157) the content of the reducing substance.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the base-forming properties of potatoes are 10 mls. normal alkali, on the same basis.

Enter the result of the calculation as the per cent. glucose in the whole piece of candy taken. Now, to another 10 mls. of the filtrate add 2 mls. concentrated HCl and leave for ten minutes in a boiling water-bath. Neutralize to litmus, add 1 ml. 10 per cent. NaOH for alkalinity, and repeat the determination for the reducing substance. Enter the result as grams of glucose per 100 gs. of the candy.<sup>1</sup> Compare the figures obtained.

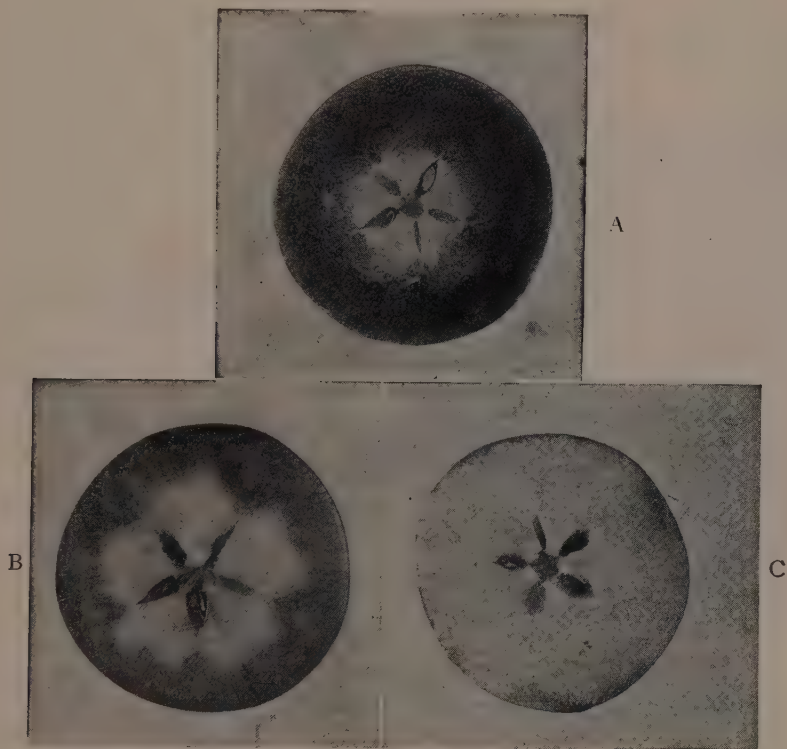


Fig. 140.—Action of amylase in ripening of fruit. A, Apple cut in halves and stained with iodine (black) to show the distribution of starch. B, Apple showing less starch. C, Starch nearly all converted into sugar. For the market fruit is picked in the condition of A and B and left to ripen later. Frequently rotting occurs before the ripening has taken place. (From Sherman's Nutrition, The Macmillan Co.)

**EXERCISE 7. Estimation of Edible Portions.**—Weigh an apple. Peel it, taking care to remove as little of the white meat as possible.

<sup>1</sup> The weight of the candy is either given you or you will be directed to ascertain its weight.



Save the peelings and weigh them. Divide the apple into quarters as accurately as possible, saving all parts. Slice one-quarter and place on a pan provided for this purpose. Label with your name, leave in a drier until the following period. Weigh the residue. From these data compute the percentage of edible portion of the whole apple.

**EXERCISE 8.**—Divide one-quarter of the apple used in Exercise 7 at right angles to the axis of the core. Dip one of the cut faces into a beaker containing a small amount of iodine solution (page 142). Leave the apple in contact with the iodine for five minutes. Then wash off the solution with tap-water. Examine the cut face for the amount of starch as indicated by the blue color. Make a drawing in your notebook and compare with Fig. 26 in Sherman, page 342 reproduced in Fig. 140, page 419. Is the apple young, partially ripe, or fully ripened?

**EXERCISE 9.**—The butter-fat of ice-cream. Melt a tablespoonful of ice-cream in a beaker, measure, by means of a cylinder, 5 mls. of the liquid and dilute with water to make 18 mls. Place this in a Babcock tube and estimate the amount of butter-fat by the method given on page 406 for milk, using tube shown in Fig. 131.

**EXERCISE 10.**—Determine the glucose in 2 mls. of the melted ice-cream by diluting this amount to 10 mls. with distilled water, and making a Benedict quantitative determination for sugar. Express the result in per cent. glucose.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Gephart, F. C. (Introduction by Graham Lusk). *Analysis and Cost of Ready-to-serve Foods. A Study in Food Economics*, Chicago, Press of the Amer. Med. Assoc., 1915.
- Heineman, P. G. *Chemistry and Biology of Milk*. In Abt, I. A., *Pediatrics*, vol. 2, p. 524, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1923.
- Heineman, P. G. *Milk*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1919.
- Lusk, G. *Elements of the Science of Nutrition*, 3d ed., Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1919, new edition during 1925-26.
- Sedgwick, J. P., and Cole, C. C. *Breast Feeding and Nutrition*. In Abt, I. A., *Pediatrics*, vol. 2, p. 583, 1923.
- Sherman, H. C. *Chemistry of Food and Nutrition*, new edition, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1923.
- Sherman, H. C. *Food Products*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1923.
- Van Slyke, L. L. *The Science and Practice of Cheese Making*, New York, Orange Judd Co., 1910.

## CHAPTER IX

### THE DIGESTION OF FOODS

"Oh, can it be that my life depends upon the smallest vibration of the smallest of those bits of metal!"—*Hugo*, "Notre Dame."

NORMALLY foods find their way into the body of man wholly by way of the mouth.<sup>1</sup> Thence the foods pass through the esophagus to the stomach. Thus far no absorption<sup>2</sup> of the foods from the alimentary tract has occurred. In the stomach the starches capable of being digested are hydrolyzed by means of the salivary enzyme, ptyalin, which accompanies the food into the alkaline portions of the stomach (Fig. 142). Protids are digested by pepsin to the crystalloidal pepton stage in the lower portions of the stomach, where the reaction is acid. Fats are emulsified and to a limited extent hydrolyzed in the stomach by the combined action of bile, regurgitated from the duodenum through the pylorus into the stomach, and the gastric lipase. A certain but unknown amount of fat hydrolysis is due to the  $H^+$  of the gastric juice. Milk is coagulated by the gastric enzyme, rennin or chymosin, and the cheese arising from this process is hydrolyzed along with the other protids. The combined products of gastric



Fig. 141.—C. L. Alsberg, formerly Chief Chemist U. S. Department of Agriculture, now Member of the Food Research Institute, Palo Alto, California. Investigations bearing upon food chemistry, rôle of toxins, etc.

<sup>1</sup> The oxygen, of course, is admitted through the nostrils, but these communicate through the posterior nares with the mouth. In diseased conditions nourishment is sometimes given by rectum, or, in rare instances, by injections into the bloodstream.

<sup>2</sup> Omitting the relatively unimportant absorption from the stomach recently reported.

digestion, called chyme,<sup>1</sup> pass through the pyloric gate into the intestine, first entering the duodenum where they encounter the pancreatic juice. Here the starches, still capable of being digested, are hydrolyzed by the amylase, amyllopsin; the dextrins arising in salivary digestion are further hydrolyzed to maltase, and the presence of maltase in the duodenal juice insures that the glucid, maltose, arising from the action of ptyalin, is hydrolyzed further to glucose; sucrose is hydrolyzed to glucose and levulose by an invertase, sucrase, and another diglucid-inverting enzyme, acting on lactose (hence called lactase), converts that diglucid into glucose and galactose. Fats are emulsified by the bile and by the  $\text{OH}^-$  of the intestinal juice, producing some fatty acids and soaps. These soaps aid in the process of emulsification. Most of the fat is hydrolyzed to glycerol and fatty acids by the steapsin<sup>2</sup> of the duodenum. Protids which have been converted into lower aggregates of amino-acids—albumoses and peptones—are hydrolyzed further to peptids and to amino-acids by the trypsin.

After the digestion of the food-stuffs their products are absorbed into the circulatory system. Chapter X will be devoted to this process.

#### ORAL DIGESTION

**The Action of Saliva on Glucids.**—The typical action of saliva is to hydrolyze starch to dextrins and maltose. *Ptyalin* is the catalyzer of this reaction. If the enzyme is absent, high temperature and increased pressure are necessary for hydrolysis, unless some other catalyzer, such as hydrion,  $\text{H}^+$ , is in contact with the starch.<sup>3</sup> In Exercise 2, page 43 the catalytic effect of hydrion is demonstrated. In the following Exercise that of ptyalin is studied:

**EXERCISE 1.**—Select a small piece of paraffin wax and chew it in order to increase the flow of saliva.<sup>4</sup> Collect, filter, and use the filtrate for study. Set up the following four test-tubes, each containing 5 mls. of 1 per cent. solution of soluble starch.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Greek *chymos*, juice, from *cheo*, to pour out.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *stear*, same as lipon, meaning fat.

<sup>3</sup> Loevenhart, A. S., Professor of Pharmacology, University of Wisconsin, Madison, suggested the term "zymolyte" from the Greek *zyme*, yeast, and *lysis*, to loosen, meaning the material upon which the enzyme works, to replace the awkward expression "substrate." Starch in the above instance would be the zymolyte.

<sup>4</sup> The addition of a small amount of very weak acetic acid will accomplish the increased secretion of saliva.

<sup>5</sup> Page 146.

To tube (1) Add 1 volume of filtered saliva.

(2) Add 1 volume of filtered saliva and 1 ml. of 0.4 per cent. HCl solution.<sup>1</sup>

(3) Add 1 volume of filtered saliva and 1 ml. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Determine the hydron concentration by the colorimetric method (page 66).

(4) Add nothing to this solution; control.

Place these tubes in a water-bath at 50° C. At one-minute intervals remove from each tube separately a few drops of the solution and test on a spot-plate as in Exercise 8, page 144, for the reaction to iodine. When the iodine reaction is given no longer, test 0.5 ml. with Benedict's qualitative solution for reducing substances. Make an osazone test and determine whether maltose or glucose is present after five minutes of total time after setting the tubes in the water-bath. The products of salivary digestion average about 20 per cent. of dextrins and 80 per cent. maltose in test-tube experiments; in the body these relations do not hold.

**The Oral Enzymes.**—Three enzymes have been described as making the composite enzyme "ptyalin"<sup>2</sup>: (1) Amylase, capable of hydrolyzing amylose<sup>3</sup> to the dextrins. (2) Dextrinase, an enzyme capable of hydrolyzing dextrins to maltose and glucose. (3) Maltase, an enzyme capable of hydrolyzing maltose to glucose. Amylase unquestionably is present, as is evident from following the procedure in Exercise 8, page 144. Whether a dextrinase separate from amylase is present has not been satisfactorily demonstrated. Regarding maltase, it is probable that the slight maltose-hydrolyzing action of saliva is due either to bacterial action or to maltase derived from the blood. The fact remains that whether there are three enzymes present or not, glucose, maltose, and dextrins may be obtained from the action of saliva, and existing data indicate that the case is similar to that of pepsin: If pepsin is left in contact with protids long enough, complete digestion products, to and including amino-acids, are produced; if a shorter exposure is made, then intermediate products are formed. Similarly, if starch is left in contact with saliva for a short time, dextrins are formed; if for a longer time, maltose, and finally,

<sup>1</sup> This approximates the concentration of HCl in the gastric juice.

<sup>2</sup> The word ptyalin is derived from the Greek *ptyalon*, saliva.

<sup>3</sup> Page 146.



a prolonged exposure produces glucose. The products of oral digestion depend upon the time factor.

**The Place of Action of Saliva.**—Saliva is produced by all the salivary glands, and its action comes into play first in the mouth.



Fig. 142.—Roentgen picture of a clinically normal stomach of human adult. Attention is called to the fundus, above, and to the pylorus, preceded by the antrum.

However, with the present rapid manner of eating, starchy food is subjected to but slight action of saliva in the mouth. The food is swallowed quickly, is frequently washed down with liquid in the form of water or beverages, and consequently remains in the mouth but a limited time. If saliva is to affect the starchy food to any extent it will be in the stomach. The skiagraph of a "normal" resting stomach shown in Fig. 142<sup>1</sup> shows a characteristic position. It is true that

<sup>1</sup> For this illustration the author is indebted to Dr. Willis F. Manges, Clinical Professor and Attending Roentgenologist, Jefferson Medical College and Hospital, and to his colleague, Dr. J. T. Farrel. Likewise, to the subject, A. H. S., the thanks of the author are due.



the shape of the stomach is ever changing, but the salient features of the position of the normal stomach are shown in this picture: The axis of the stomach is obliquely from above downward, inclining from the upper left-hand portion, the fundus,<sup>1</sup> to the lower right-hand portion, the pylorus. The esophagus enters the stomach at the cardia. The starch in contact with the saliva leaves the esophagus and is passed to the cardiac portion, where it halts for a brief time,<sup>2</sup> and then is swept by peristalsis<sup>3</sup> into the fundus. The media at this point may be slightly alkaline, acid, or neutral. The stomach is to be thought of as divisible into compartments by movable partitions of tissue, and usually the lower acid portion is more or less definitely set off from the upper alkaline part, but the relations are constantly changing. In the fundus the salivary enzyme or enzymes can exert their effects and hydrolysis of starch takes place. For about half an hour after taking food the fundus remains very slightly acid, neutral, or alkaline. Buffer substances in the food retard free acidity. The movements of the stomach cause a mixture of the gastric juice and all parts become acid. This terminates the action of the oral enzymes.

**The Effect of Drinking Fluids During Salivary Digestion.**—If water or other liquid containing some salt opaque to the Roentgen rays (“*x-rays*”) is administered to a subject and the process of swallowing is watched by means of the fluoroscope,<sup>4</sup> it is found that the liquid does not enter the fundus proper, but passes directly through the shorter axis of the stomach to the pylorus. Unless solid food or other stimulus causes the pylorus to close, the water is passed immediately into the duodenum. If, however, the pylorus is closed,<sup>5</sup> the water follows the food in its movements through the stomach. Water taken with starchy food does not necessarily dilute the fluids of the fundus, where starch digestion takes place. Moreover, if the fluid in which the glucid is digested is diluted with water in moderate amounts the process of hydrolysis is aided. Increased relative ionization produces a dilution effect which we have described on page 38.

<sup>1</sup> Latin *fundo*, to pour out, *fundus*, a dish. The description is for the stomach *in situ* in the body.

<sup>2</sup> About six seconds in the so-called “Kronecker-reflex,” after the Swiss physiologist H. Kronecker, Director of the Physiological Institute, University of Bern.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *peri*, around, and *stalsis*, squeezing.

<sup>4</sup> A screen impregnated with crystals of calcium fluorid.

<sup>5</sup> The stomach is held by Wheelon and Thomas to be regulated largely by the nerves. See *Modern Med.*, vol. 2, p. 283, 1920. (H. Wheelon, Seattle, Washington; J. E. Thomas, St. Louis University, St. Louis, Mo.)

Larger amounts of dilution retard digestion; by diluting the digestion solution with twice its volume of water at the same temperature the action is slowed one-half.

**The Optimum Reaction for Ptyalin.**—This enzyme differs from others in the response it makes not only to the hydron, but to other ions, even in minute amounts. A certain concentration of electrolytes is necessary for the enzyme to function at all, and one ion affects the reaction of ptyalin to other ions. The optimum hydron concentration for ptyalin activity varies according to the cation present, the optimum hydron concentration being lower in the presence of the cation  $\text{Na}^+$  and higher with  $\text{K}^+$ . It is necessary, therefore, when speaking of the optimum reaction for ptyalin to determine what other ions are present. With  $\text{Na}^+$  present in optional amounts (0.02 per cent to 2.0 per cent., expressed as  $\text{NaCl}$ ), the optimal hydron concentration is slightly on the acid side of neutrality, namely,  $\text{pH}$  6.7. While the cation has a marked effect, the anion likewise is of importance because the enzyme forms combinations with certain anions, like  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{Br}^-$ ,  $\text{NO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$ ,  $\text{OOC.CH}_3^-$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{\equiv}$ . Starch is digested more quickly in the presence of  $\text{Cl}^-$  than of  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$  or  $\text{PO}_4^{\equiv}$ . The following table gives the optimal hydron concentration where certain anions are present:

TABLE (AFTER MICHAELIS) SHOWING THE EFFECT OF CERTAIN ANIONS ON PTYALIN ACTION

Anion.	Optimal $\text{pH}$ .
$\text{NO}_3^-$ .....	6.90
$\text{Cl}^-$ .....	6.70
$\text{PO}_4^{\equiv}$ .....	6.15
$\text{SO}_4^{=}$ .....	6.15
$\text{OOC.CH}_3^-$ .....	6.15

If it is true that the reaction of the tissues<sup>1</sup> is slightly acid ( $\text{pH}$  6.7 to 6.92) as compared to that of the blood ( $\text{pH}$  7.35), then it may be said that the *reaction of saliva resembles that of the tissues* rather than that of the blood. This is the average reaction of the mouth of a healthy adult.

**Is There a Co-enzyme for Ptyalin?**—Ptyalin resembles other enzymes in that it consists in the working condition of two portions: A fundamental heat-stable part and a heat-labile portion of unknown

<sup>1</sup>The author has shown that the reaction of the tissues (especially liver) is slightly acid. This conclusion has been reached also by Michaelis (see page 124) and recently by Peyton Rous, who employed the method of vital staining; see Jour. Exp. Med., vol. 41, pages 389, 399, 451, 1925.

composition. Blood carries this unknown substance, and if saliva be inactivated by exposure to a temperature of above 50° C., it may be reactivated by adding a small amount of blood.

*Quantitative Determination of Salivary Efficiency.*—Cole suggests that the unit of ptyalin should be that amount which converts 10 mls. of a 2 per cent. solution of soluble starch into the products obtained after ten minutes' digestion. Suppose that saliva is collected and its dilution is 0.4, that is, 2 parts of water to 5 of saliva. By the method of Experiment 2 it is found that in 9.5 minutes, 2 mls. of this saliva convert 10 mls. of 2 per cent. starch into products obtained in a control working for ten minutes. Then:

$$\frac{10}{9.5} \times \frac{1}{0.4} = 2.63 \text{ units of enzyme.}$$

**EXERCISE 2.** *Quantitative Method of Cole.*—Principle: The activity of ptyalin is measured by determining the time required for the iodine-starch color to change after the addition of saliva. Determination: Making the digest: Pipette 10 mls. of 2 per cent. soluble starch solution into a test-tube. Add 2 mls. of a buffer solution<sup>1</sup> consisting of phosphate—NaOH solution with a pH of 6.7. To insure a proper NaCl content add 2 mls. of 0.5 per cent. NaCl solution. Place a beaker within another beaker, making a thermostat. Maintain the temperature within the smaller beaker at 40° C.<sup>2</sup> Place the tube in this bath. In about two minutes, when the contents of the tube will have reached the temperature of the bath, add exactly 2 mls. of the enzyme solution obtained as described on page 187. Note the time. In the meantime place exactly 3 mls. distilled water in each of 6 clean test-tubes and add 1 drop of 0.01 normal iodine solution. The reading: One minute after adding the enzyme to the tube in the water-bath, and at intervals of one minute thereafter, add just 1 drop of the contents of this tube to one of the test-tubes containing iodine. Continue so doing until the color imparted to the contents of the tube last used is violet. Then examine the set of iodine tubes carefully to detect the first change. Determine the time of this change by the location of the tube in the set. Repeat the determination with diluted specimens

<sup>1</sup> Page 60. The buffer is used to insure that the hydron concentration does not change during the course of the determination and thereby introduce an unknown factor.

<sup>2</sup> This procedure is dispensable if the laboratory provides water-baths or ovens maintained at this temperature.

of saliva until you have obtained a specimen of unknown dilution giving the first change in exactly ten minutes. Calculation: This is given on page 427. Express the results in percentage.<sup>1</sup>

### GASTRIC DIGESTION

**The Gastric Enzymes.**—The following enzymes occur in the stomach:

#### *Protidoclastic Enzymes:*

Pepsin, capable of digesting certain protids, such as albumin, to pepton.

Chymosin (rennin). The function of this enzyme is to coagulate milk. It is still uncertain whether rennin is an enzyme distinct from pepsin.

Urease, deaminizing urea.<sup>2</sup>

#### *Lipidoclastic Enzyme:*

Gastric lipase, capable of hydrolyzing neutral fats and phospholipids.

**The Rôle of Hydrochloric Acid in Protid Digestion.**—The stomach secretes a strong mineral acid, hydrochloric acid, to the average normal amount of 0.2 per cent. This corresponds to a  $pH$  of 2.8. The optimum reaction for pepsin is somewhat higher,  $pH$  1.77, or nearly decinormal,  $pH$  1.01. In critical studies of gastric fistulæ in man Carlson<sup>3</sup> reported a range of free<sup>4</sup> hydrochloric acid content of from 0.08 to 0.40 per cent., with an average of 0.20 per cent. HCl. Total acidity<sup>5</sup> was found to be from 0.13 to 0.45 per cent., with an average of 0.25 per cent. As in all other cases of body fluids the reaction as determined by hydrion concentration is the only valuable criterion.

**The Origin of Hydrochloric Acid.**—This has best been explained by the theory of Maly<sup>6</sup>: In the blood the salts  $NaH_2PO_4$ ,  $Na_2HPO_4$ ,  $NaHCO_3$ , along with  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  ( $H_2CO_3$ ) occur as we have said on

<sup>1</sup> In the above example, where 2.63 units of ptyalin gave the "first change" in ten minutes, since this result is for 2 mls. of saliva, 1 ml. gives 1.36 unit and 100 mls. give  $100 \times 1.36$  or 136 units, which is the percentage.

<sup>2</sup> Although urease is not a protid-cleaving enzyme, it is placed among these enzymes for convenience.

<sup>3</sup> Carlson, A. J., Professor of Physiology, University of Chicago (contemporary).

<sup>4</sup> See page 83. That is, ionic and that molecular HCl not bound to protid, etc. Total acidity is titratable acidity (see page 82).

<sup>5</sup> For complete discussion see Collip, J. B. See also Carlson, A. J.

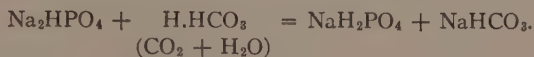
<sup>6</sup> Maly, R. L., Austrian chemist, died 1894. Professor in the University of Graz and founder of the great German biochemical journal, Maly's Jahresbericht.



a previous page<sup>1</sup>; the following equation expresses the theory of Maly:



That is, the acid phosphate which figures in the alkali reserve reacts with the sodium chlorid present in the blood and hydrochloric acid is formed. The phosphate then becomes basic and may act in the maintenance of the reaction of the blood as a phosphate buffer substance. This substance is carried to the tissues by the blood, taking on  $\text{CO}_2$  as follows:



One of the reasons for believing that this is the way in which the hydrochloric acid is formed is that during the time when there is the greatest secretion of HCl in the stomach the urine becomes alkaline<sup>2</sup> owing to the utilization of the chlorion in the manufacture of HCl in the stomach. The function of the parietal cells found in the mid-gastric mucous membrane is to divert the products of this reaction properly, the acid toward the lumen<sup>3</sup> of the stomach and the salts toward the blood-stream. Exactly where the acid appears as acid is unknown, but it comes to the surface of the gastric mucous membrane and bathes these cells. There is no reason why the acid may not be present in the secreting cells as well. The old question why the stomach does not digest itself is answered in terms of the protective action of the buffers, which, as long as the cell is alive, are properly directed, but when the cell dies are without a directive agent.

The function of the hydrochloric acid is shown by the following Exercise:

EXERCISE 3.—Arrange three test-tubes as follows:

- (1) Containing 5 mls. distilled water.
- (2) Containing 5 mls. 0.4 per cent. HCl solution.
- (3) Containing 5 mls. artificial gastric juice.

Into each tube place a few shreds of fibrin, which have been washed free from blood and preserved in ethanol. Place the tubes in a water-bath at  $40^\circ \text{C}$ . Note the time, the appearance of the fibrin at the

<sup>1</sup> Page 80, where the equilibria and their participation in keeping the blood at given hydrion concentration were discussed.

<sup>2</sup> This is the so-called period of "alkaline tide," discussed further on page 675.

<sup>3</sup> Latin *lumen*, a streak of light, referring to the light which appears in the cavity of the stomach, or other organ when it is studied in sections.



beginning of the Exercise, after five minutes, and after fifteen minutes. It will be found that the fibrin in Tube 1 has not changed its appearance to any extent; that the fibrin in Tube 2 has become translucent and evidently has absorbed water, while Tube 3 shows the fibrin partially or wholly dissolved, owing to the combined action of the HCl and the enzyme, pepsin, both of which are present in the artificial gastric juice.

**The Function of Hydrochloric Acid as an Antiseptic Agent in the Stomach.**—Many types of bacteria are incapable of existence in an acid medium such as is found in the normal stomach. The acid acts as a deterrent to their activity. When disease affects the stomach its first effect is generally recognized in lowering the concentration of hydrion in the gastric juice. In pernicious anemia<sup>1</sup> the hydrion concentration is lowered and secretion of acid lessened even to the extent of achlorhydria,<sup>2</sup> and gas and other indications of fermentation of food materials appear. This condition is sometimes relieved by the administration of dilute HCl into the stomach directly by means of capsules or by stomach-tube.

The *cause of the absorption of fluid by protid under the influence of acid* is explained by the theory of colloids<sup>3</sup> as a matter of osmotic pressure. Protid being a colloid, does not diffuse, while HCl, H<sub>2</sub>O, etc., of gastric juice, being electrolytes, diffuse. The acid forms a protid salt, a protid chlorid, and while the H<sup>+</sup> and the Cl<sup>-</sup> may diffuse freely, the protid does not, and hinders the free diffusion of the electrolyte ions; consequently there tends to be a retention of the ions in the protid. An osmotic pressure is set up which is relieved by the inflow of water. By this means the protid swells.

*Hydrochloric acid causes a maximal swelling because* (1) it is a monovalent acid and there will be the largest number of ions participating in the action, namely, 50 per cent. cations (H<sup>+</sup>) and 50 per cent. anions (Cl<sup>-</sup>); if a bivalent acid like H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> be used, only one-third of the number of ions are anions, for there are H<sup>+</sup>, H<sup>+</sup>, and SO<sub>4</sub><sup>=</sup>, and it is the anion which forms the salt. (2) The degree of dissociation of HCl is high.

<sup>1</sup> Other conditions affecting the hydrion concentration are discussed below, page 431. Concerning recent studies pertaining to the antiseptic action of gastric juice see Amer. Jour. Med. Sci., vol. 169, p. 373, 1925, in which juice having an acid content below 0.470 is shown to be of no germicidal value.<sup>s</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Greek *a*, privitive, meaning without, and *chlorhydria*, meaning HCl; that is, without hydrochloric acid.

<sup>3</sup> See page 117. See the discussion of Donnan's theory, page 103.

**The Normal Secretion of Hydrochloric Acid.**—The human stomach when deprived of food for more than four hours contains on the average about 50 mls. of fluid ("residual fluid" or "residuum"). This is composed of the secretion of the gastric glands and oral fluids, the saliva, and the regurgitated intestinal liquids (intestinal juice and bile). Of this amount (50 mls.), hydrochloric acid makes up a portion varying with different individuals, the average being equivalent to 0.30 gs. desk reagent concentrated hydrochloric acid,<sup>1</sup> or about 8 drops.<sup>2</sup> The limits of normal amounts of gastric juice vary from 5 mls. to 120 mls. in a resting stomach. There is a continuous secretion of gastric juice varying from 10 mls. to 60 mls. per hour, which continues even after several days of starvation.

**Factors Accelerating the Secretion of Gastric Juice.**—We shall omit from discussion the nervous factors, for they form a part of physical physiology, but we may say, briefly, that in a state of hunger the sight or thought of food (psychic stimulus<sup>3</sup>) causes a reflex stimulation of gastric secretion. The tenth cranial, or vagus nerve is the path over which these stimuli pass. Hypnotic suggestion has been found as an inciting agent; indeed, the hypnotic state alone without suggestion is thought to be excitatory. Appetite and reflex excitation are acquired, for infants up to a certain age show no such reaction. As to chemical factors, we find that water is a potent stimulus. Extractives from meat likewise stimulate secretion, but not promptly; a latent period exists of about half an hour between the introduction of extractives into the intestine and the extra secretion of gastric juice.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the average total acidity of the resting stomach is expressed as 30 mls. of decinormal alkali, and since this is the same volume as 30 mls. of decinormal HCl, we may convert volume to mass by multiplying 30 by the weight of pure HCl in 1 ml. of decinormal solution; since there are 36.4 gs. HCl in a liter of normal solution of HCl, and 3.64 gs. HCl in a decinormal solution, each ml. of the decinormal solution will contain 0.00365 g. dry HCl gas. This multiplied by 30 gives 0.109 g. of dry HCl. The desk reagent is approximately a third concentration of HCl, and multiplying by 3 we have 0.327 g. desk reagent concentrated HCl.

<sup>2</sup> Therapeutically, about 15 drops of dilute HCl are administered in hyp acidity. United States Pharmacopeia IX (9th edition of the U. S. Pharmacopeia) dilute hydrochloric acid is 10 per cent. strength; hence 15 drops are equivalent to 1.5 drops concentrated HCl. Since 8 drops of concentrated HCl occur in the residuum of the stomach, this dose is 18.8 per cent., or less than one-fifth of the normal amount.

<sup>3</sup> The psychic stimulus causes secretion of the juice for thirty minutes. It has been computed to represent about 20 per cent. of the total secretion stimulated by a meal.

However, protidtemns, meat extracts, digested meat, etc., are without effect when introduced into the intestine without HCl. Alcohol, strong solutions of sodium chlorid (10 per cent.), lipidtemns, and other substances excite secretion when introduced into the duodenum. Alkali, like  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , depress secretion. Beverages such as tea and coffee may cause secretion, but the pure alkaloids (caffein, etc.) do not. Pepper and mustard do not affect the secretion. It has been shown that experimentally, at least, bitter substances, such as gentian and strychnin, used in medicine to improve the appetite, do not do so by stimulating the secretion of gastric juice. The presence of solid material, such as unmasterated food and casein clots, does not increase gastric secretion. This is of interest in the trauma theory of cancer.

**The Gastrins.**—Certain substances, chemically resembling amins derived from the amino-acids (*e. g.*, histamin from histidin<sup>1</sup>), distinct from them but bearing the iminazol ring,<sup>2</sup> are capable, when injected hypodermically, of exciting the secretion of gastric juice. These substances are known as gastrins. They cannot be caused to act through oral administration, and when injected directly into the blood-stream they are less effective than when injected hypodermically or intramuscularly. Whatever these substances are, they are known only by their experimental manifestations, and Carlson believes them to be of no significance physiologically. Later we shall refer to other substances, known as secretins, also supposedly connected with the inciting of the gastric glands to secretion.

**The Location of the Hydrochloric-acid-forming Cells.**—This has been studied by Radasch.<sup>3</sup> who finds the relations expressed by the following diagram of the human stomach (Fig. 143). If a line be drawn from the entrance of the esophagus into the cardiac end of the stomach along the lesser curvature to the pylorus, and this be divided into one hundred parts, hydrochloric acid secreting cells are found between the fifth and sixtieth division. Along the greater curvature the glands occupy 78.2 per cent. of the distance from the esophagus to the pylorus; along the dorsal aspect of the stomach they extend 83.5 per cent., and along the ventral surface, 76 per cent. Through the areas thus marked out on the mucosa of the stomach hydrochloric-acid-secreting cells, the so-called oxyntic cells,<sup>4</sup> are distributed fairly

<sup>1</sup> Page 269.

<sup>2</sup> Page 268.

<sup>3</sup> Radasch, H. E., Professor of Histology and Embryology, Jefferson Medical College (contemporary).

<sup>4</sup> Greek *oxys*, sour; that is, acid.

evenly. *The fundus of the stomach and the constriction immediately preceding the pyloric vestibule are the acid-secreting regions of the stomach.*<sup>1</sup>

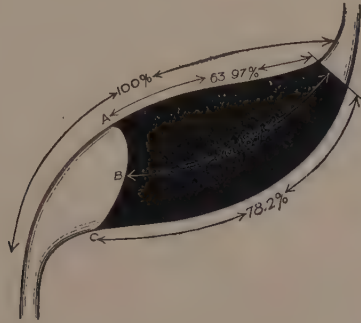


Fig. 143.—Distribution of HCl-producing cells in the stomach. The distance from the cardiac to the pyloric end of the stomach is considered 100 per cent. and the figures give the distances along the different aspects of the stomach which the cells occupy. (After Radasch.) Salivary digestion occurs in the cardiac end of the stomach for about half an hour after ingestion of a meal, although acid cells are located there, because of the buffering action of the foods.

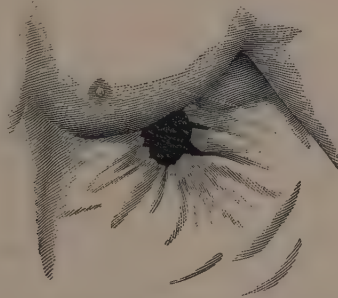


Fig. 144.—Left breast and side (erect position), showing perforation of the walls of the stomach of Alexis St. Martin. (Raymond's Human Physiology.)

### Methods of Determining Gastric Factors:

(1) **The Collection of Samples.**—Rarely the biochemist is permitted to study gastric juice which is obtained directly from the stomach, due to some lesion which has formed a fistula.<sup>2</sup> The first

<sup>1</sup> It is of interest to note that gastric ulcers occur to the extent of 75 to 80 per cent. within the pyloric end of the stomach, which is the portion free from acid-secreting cells. Moreover, the small area surrounding the esophageal-cardiac end of the stomach is a seat of occasional ulcers.

<sup>2</sup> Latin, *fistula*, a shepherd's pipe; the term is used because a small tube is placed in the opening through which the fluid is secured from the stomach, first used experimentally by de Graafe in 1677.



study made on human gastric juice derived directly from the stomach is the celebrated case of the French-Canadian, Alexis Saint Martin, studied by the great surgeon and investigator William Beaumont.<sup>1</sup> Previous to Beaumont's work gastric digestion was supposed to be a matter of "putrefaction, trituration, fermentation, and maceration." Beaumont's description of the fluid now obtained in a different manner needs no alteration to represent our modern views. "Pure gastric juice, when taken directly out of the stomach of a healthy adult, unmixed with any other fluid, save a portion of the mucus of the stomach with which it is most commonly and perhaps always combined, is a clear, transparent fluid; inodorous; a little saltish and very perceptibly acid. . . . It possesses the property of coagulating albumin in an eminent degree; it is powerfully antiseptic, checking the putrefaction of meat."<sup>2</sup>

Experimental fistulae have definite disadvantages, and in 1890 Pavlov<sup>3</sup> proposed making a "small stomach" out of a portion of the stomach of an experimental animal, an operation known as Pavlov's

<sup>1</sup> The merest sketch of this instance can be given here. For further particulars see Garrison's *History of Medicine*, Philadelphia, and W. B. Saunders Co., 1921. St. Marti was accidentally shot in the abdomen, and the stomach lacerated so that "a perforation was made directly into the cavity of the stomach through which the food was escaping when first seen." While every effort was made by the surgeon attending St. Martin to close the wound, it never healed, and a permanent fistula remained through which Beaumont obtained gastric juice and noted the effects of foods, etc. This study was made while Beaumont was post surgeon on Mackinac Island, Michigan in 1822. When it is considered how primitive were the conditions far in the wilderness, no library within hundreds of miles and out of contact with men of similar interests; when it is realized that nearly a century passed before any fundamental addition to the knowledge of gastric action was made to that determined by Beaumont, the magnitude of the work is evident. The picture presented here is offered as a stimulus to the rising generation of physicians to add as they can to medical knowledge wherever they may be and under whatever conditions they may find themselves. For full description of the work of Beaumont see Osler, W., William Beaumont, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 39, p. 1223, 1902. Beaumont published the first description of his work in the *Philadelphia Medical Recorder*, vol. 8, No. 1, January, 1825 (the year of the founding of Jefferson Medical College); by editorial oversight Beaumont's name did not appear in the article.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted from Osler's article mentioned above, footnote 1.

<sup>3</sup> Ivan Petrovich Pavlov (spelled in Germany and frequently here Pawlow), Director of the Physiological Institute, Petrograd (Leningrad). Professor Pavlov visited the United States in 1923, but, being robbed by a highwayman on his way to New Haven, he returned without participating in the scientific-life of the country, a matter of the deepest regret to many American physiologists. Heidenhain, a German physiologist and preceptor of Pavlov, had suggested and used such a method as that usually known by his pupil's name, but Pavlov improved the procedure.



pouch,<sup>1</sup> which permits the isolation of this sac from the common lumen of the stomach. Gastric juice may be obtained from the opening of the pouch upon the external wall of the abdomen, and food and liquids may be inserted and their fate determined. The most recent important gastric studies are those of Carlson<sup>2</sup> and his colleagues Luckhardt and others, in the Hull Physiological Laboratories of the University of Chicago, where studies were made upon subjects with esophageal strictures<sup>3</sup> to whom food was administered through an operative gastric fistula, which was never permitted to close.

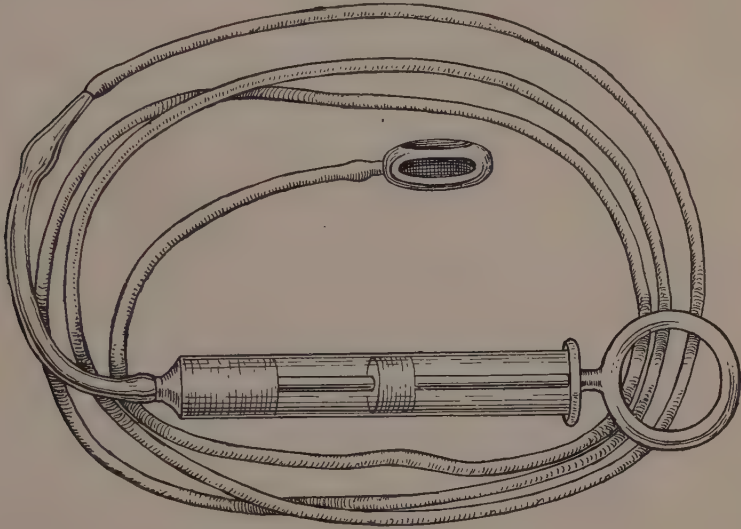


Fig. 145.—The Einhorn-Rehfuss tube for fractional gastric analysis. (From Morrow, *Diagnostic and Therapeutic Technic*.)

The *stomach-tube method* is the outgrowth of the earlier use of a catheter first used for feeding and for washing out the stomach, but Leube<sup>4</sup> adapted it to the recovery of his "extract" and for obtaining

<sup>1</sup> This pouch is figured in Mathews' *Physiological Chemistry*, 3d ed., p. 344, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> Carlson, A. J. (page 428), and Luckhardt, A. B., Chicago.

<sup>3</sup> The walls become hardened and the lumen obliterated, or narrowed, so that food cannot pass. The perfection of methods of treatment by Chevalier Jackson in the bronchoscopic clinic of Jefferson Hospital, Philadelphia, whereby bougies are drawn through the esophagus from a gastric fistula, upward and outward through the mouth, makes possible permanent fistulae very remote.

<sup>4</sup> Leube, W. D. (pronounced "loyba"), German physician, died 1922. He experimented with predigested meat and invented "Leube's Extract."

gastric secretion in 1867.<sup>1</sup> The small bore tube now in use in gastric studies is a modification of the Einhorn "bucket,"<sup>2</sup> which was used to obtain duodenal fluid, and it is a form of the apparatus of Gross.<sup>3</sup> The principal modification is the attachment of a tip weighing 6 gs., while the Einhorn tip weighed only 2.8 gs. and the enlargement of the small round holes of the Einhorn tip to the slots introduced by Reh-fuss.<sup>4</sup> Lyon<sup>5</sup> has suggested a pear-shaped tip and a terminal as well as slotted holes, with a view to making the withdrawal of the tube more easily done.

EXERCISE 4. *Method of Intubation*.—Preparation of the subject:  
(1) For residual<sup>6</sup> gastric secretion: The day before the test is made the subject is given the following evening meal:

Meat sandwich . . . . .	1
Raisins . . . . .	20
Water, glass . . . . .	1

On the following morning the subject does not eat or drink and presents himself for intubation.

*Intubation*.—Preparation of the tube: The tube is boiled in water for fifteen minutes or longer in order to sterilize it. It is then lifted out of the water with crucible tongs or forceps and laid upon a folded paper towel which in turn is placed upon chopped ice. The tube is ready for use after the tip has cooled to about 5° C. The subject: Wash out the subject's mouth with tap-water to free the cavity from sputum, food residue, etc. Coil the tube loosely in the left hand and drop the tip into the fauces,<sup>7</sup> aiding the motion with the tip of the index-

<sup>1</sup> Kussmaul, A., German physician, demonstrated the value of the tube in clinical work in 1867.

<sup>2</sup> Einhorn, M., contemporary, Professor of Medicine, New York Post-Graduate Medical School, New York City.

<sup>3</sup> Gross, M., Roosevelt Hospital, New York, published his description January 8, 1910. Einhorn anteceded him, publishing October 9, 1909, but these two workers had used their tubes simultaneously for similar purposes, and both should receive the credit.

<sup>4</sup> Reh-fuss, M. E., Associate in Medicine, Jefferson Hospital. The tube known as the "Reh-fuss tube" was described in the New York Medical Journal, August 22, 1914.

<sup>5</sup> Lyon, B. B. V., Head of the Gastro-intestinal clinic, Jefferson Hospital. See Lyon.

<sup>6</sup> See page 431 for the meaning of the term.

<sup>7</sup> Latin, *fauces*, plural, meaning the narrowing of the rear of the mouth cavity.

finger.<sup>1</sup> Have the subject make swallowing movements and the tip will be carried over the glottis and into the esophagus. Gaggling to a



Fig. 146.—Students taking the Einhorn-Rehfuß stomach-tube. The student to the left is taking the "olive." The students in the middle of the picture have swallowed the tube and are awaiting the withdrawal of the residuum, as shown to the right, where an instructor is aspirating the residuum from the seated subject. Note the beakers held by the students; saliva is collected in order to prevent admixture with the stomach contents.

greater or less extent frequently occurs, but the use of the tube is free

<sup>1</sup> See Fig. 146. This plate was made as a part of the regular exercise in the Sophomore Class course in biochemistry, Jefferson Medical College. In this course nearly every student of the 135 enrolled from year to year takes the tube and performs the various tests outlined in this book.

from danger of any kind, and the student who expects to become a successful operator in this technic should master the method of taking the tube himself. Have the subject maintain the tube, after the tip passes into the stomach, back of the molars on one side of the mouth, and keep the free end above the level of the stomach; it is well to fasten the loops of the tube over the ear. A clamp may be placed on the tube before taking the first sample.<sup>1</sup>

*Withdrawal of the Residuum.*—This may be done either by gravity or by aspirating with a glass syringe. Collect the fluid in a 250-ml. beaker. When no more can be obtained by either method, clamp the free end and remove the syringe.

Measure the residuum and enter the figure in your note-book. Save the fluid.

(2) *For Fractionating Meal.*<sup>2</sup>—With the tube to one side of the fauces slowly eat the modified Ewald meal.<sup>3</sup> Note the time. Avoid swallowing the saliva, which is alkaline and a buffer, and modifies the hydron concentration of the gastric juice. At intervals of fifteen minutes, for two hours, remove 10 mls. of gastric secretion by syringe and place in a separate test-tube, labeled accordingly. At the last withdrawal the total contents of the stomach are withdrawn. The examination of the contents from each withdrawal must be made by the student, or his "doctor,"<sup>4</sup> following each aspiration, according to the methods given below. Following the withdrawal of the last portion at the end of the period, drink 225 mls. of tap-water, the aver-

<sup>1</sup> During this period saliva collects, and the subject should be provided with a small beaker for holding the expectorated material.

<sup>2</sup> Introduced in modern form by Rehfuess after the older work of Schuele in 1895. The older methods consisted in feeding a test meal and withdrawing it entirely after one hour by means of the large stomach-tube. The advantage of the fractionating method is that a much more accurate study of gastric acidity, formation of fermentation products, gastric mobility, etc., can be made than in the static condition of the single withdrawal.

<sup>3</sup> Ewald, K. A., died 1915. German physician, Berlin. The meal consists of toast and tea, the toast being made from the ordinary pound loaf of white bread (2 slices) 15 mms. thick, with the crust and about 1 cm. of the bread beneath the crust cut away, leaving a piece of toast about 8 x 8 cm. square. Liquid in the form of water or, better, tea (350 mls.) is used. The tea may be sweetened with one "domino" of sucrose, or a small amount of lemon or orange juice may be mixed with the liquid. Saccharin may be used for sweetening. Avoid the use of milk or any food containing milk or cream after taking the tea, owing to the formation of an almost indigestible casein tannate.

<sup>4</sup> The class may be divided, one-half being subjects and the remainder serving as doctors making the various examinations.



age amount of water in a tumbler, and remove this washing by means of the tube; then remove the tube.

(3) *Motility*.—This may be studied by introducing the following meal about twelve hours previous to intubation:

Meat sandwich.....	1
Prunes, stewed.....	6

In the morning the procedure under (1) is employed.

**Methods of Analysis of Gastric Contents.**—The gastric contents obtained by the above methods are analyzed as follows:

EXERCISE 5.—Tabulate the following factors of the gastric contents obtained in the previous exercise (Exercise 4):

1. Total volume of gastric contents; this is discussed below.

2. Qualitative statement as to relative amounts of:

(a) Chyme, that is, undigested residue of food: Indicate by + a small amount, ++ for larger amount, etc., comparing your result with that of others of the class.

(b) Mucus, indicated by +'s as in (a): The purpose of this determination is to give advice concerning the emotional state of the person, for in excitement, due to the taking of the tube, etc., this portion is increased and hence the concentration of acid may be diminished.

(c) Bile: This refers to readily observed bile imparting a greenish tinge to the contents. It does not refer to bile for which a test has to be made. Enter the relative amount of this macroscopic bile as +, ++, etc. The significance is that bile has regurgitated from the duodenum through the pylorus, due to:

(1) Normal factors like gagging in intubation, coughing, etc.

(2) Pathological factors: Abnormal stimulation of the mucous membrane of the duodenum, or gastric hyperacidity. Operations on the gall tract, ulcer of the duodenum, etc., are causes,<sup>1</sup> while

<sup>1</sup> "I believe that frank macroscopic regurgitation of bile into either the fasting or digesting stomach is, with certain exceptions, an abnormal finding and points to the disturbed physiology of the pylorus and the duodenobiliary apparatus or to pathology within the latter zone." Lyon, p. 257.



gastric hyperacidity calls upon the alkaline intestinal secretion as a neutralizing agent, thus causing the regurgitation of the bile along with other intestinal juices.

- (d) Occult blood: This is detected by the benzidin test given above on page 113. It is indicative of a lesion in the stomach, in the mouth (bleeding teeth, etc.), or of regurgitation from the intestine if a pathological state exists there. Macroscopic blood, that is, red blood, occurring in evident quantities is indicative of an active bleeding in the stomach.
- (e) Acidity: (1) *Total Titratable Acidity*.—Strain off the suspended matter and filter the strained fluid through a funnel. Use this filtrate for the following tests involving determinations of acidity. Place 10 mls. of

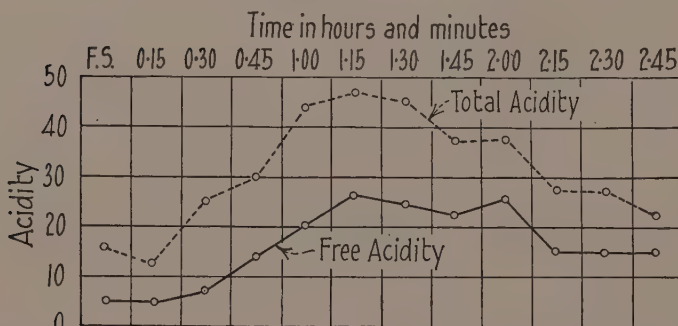


Fig. 147.—Diagram showing the average acidity of stomach fluid of 24 healthy persons studied by Talbot by the fractional method: F. S., Fasting stomach. (From Todd, *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods*.)

the filtrate in a small Erlenmeyer flask and add about 5 drops of the indicator, phenolphthalein. Titrate, using 0.1 normal NaOH solution until the first appearance of a pink color; then add, with great care, drop by drop, the decinormal alkali until a definite pink has been obtained. Express the result in mls. decinormal alkali necessary to neutralize 100 mls. of gastric secretion.<sup>1</sup> Protids, peptons, etc., act

<sup>1</sup> In some hospitals it is customary to convert this reading into grams of HCl, multiplying by the decimal 0.00365 (1 ml. 0.1 normal alkali  $\approx$  1 ml. 0.1 normal HCl; a normal solution contains 36.4 gs. of HCl per liter and each ml. contains a

as buffers and lower the concentration of total titratable acidity. We shall discuss the meaning of variations in total acidity later (page 443).

- (2) *Free Acidity: Method of Günzburg.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: In the presence of a low concentration of HCl ( $4(10)^{-4}$  normal HCl or greater  $\approx$  pH 3.39), the two indicators which make up Günzburg's reagent,<sup>2</sup> vanillin and phloroglucinol, condense together.

Two molecules of vanillin condense, with the elimination of a molecule of water. The color of the resulting compound is red. If HCl be absent, a brown color is developed, due to the oxidation of the vanillin to form a pyrocatechin acid, protocatechuic acid,  $C_6H_3.CHO(OH)_2$ . This color is likewise obtained if the preparation is overheated in making the test. There are two methods of making the test, the first being preferable:

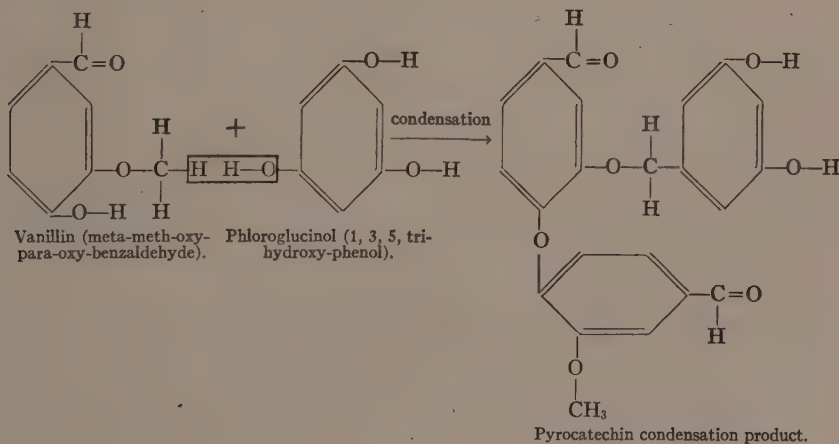
Method 1: Fill a burette with 0.1 normal NaOH solution. Arrange to titrate this solution against 10 mls. of the filtrate from the

---

thousandth of that, or 0.0365 g., and a decinormal solution 0.00365 g. per ml.) Total acidity expressed in grams HCl per 100 mls. of gastric secretion varies normally between 0.14 to 0.26 g. HCl. However, the total titratable acidity involves more than HCl.

<sup>1</sup> Günzburg, A., German physician, died during the 19th century.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix. The chemistry of the reaction is as follows: The reagent consists of 2 per cent. vanillin and 4 per cent. phloroglucinol, alcoholic solution. Catalyzed by HCl in a concentration  $>0.0014$  per cent. ( $\approx$  pH 3.4) these two compounds condense to form a pyrocatechin substance, the formula of which is (the whole reaction is given):



intubation specimen as follows: Have ready a small porcelain evaporating dish and place in it 1 drop of Günzburg's reagent; lay the dish on a boiling water-bath. Now add, 1 ml. at a time, 0.1 normal NaOH from the burette to the 10 mls. of gastric filtrate in the beaker; mix and add 1 drop to the evaporating dish. Continue until you no longer obtain the carmin color of the drops in the dish. Take the reading of the burette. This gives the number of mls. of 0.1 normal alkali necessary to neutralize the free acidity of the specimen. Record as for total acidity.

Method 2: Dilution method. Proceed as in Method 1 above with the evaporating dish, but add, directly, a drop of the gastric secretion to the drop of reagent in the dish on the water-bath. If HCl is present in amounts greater than 0.0014 per cent., the red color develops. Now make a known dilution of one volume of gastric juice and repeat the test with 1 drop of this preparation. Continue, recording the amount of dilution until the red color is hardly perceptible and beyond which it is not observed; this is the end-point.

Calculation: Suppose you diluted the filtrate of gastric juice five times before the red color disappeared; then one-fifth of the total volume of the sample contains 0.0014 per cent. or 0.0004 normal HCl. Five times that amount gives the concentration in the sample taken. Express the results in mls. 0.1 normal HCl per 100 mls. of the juice.

**Hydrogen-ion Method for Free Acidity.**<sup>1</sup>—Since gastric acidity is usually determined for persons in whom a pathological condition is suspected, and since, as we have stated on page 430 above, such conditions commonly involve a lowering of the gastric acidity, the methods just given are inaccurate. However, in many cases, they give reliable results if the acidity is high or normal. The only exact method is that of the determination of hydrogen-ion concentration, either by the electrometric method<sup>2</sup> or by the colorimetric procedure; this last we shall give here:

*Sorensen Colorimetric Method for Determination of Free Acidity.*—Principle: A preliminary test to determine the general reaction of the sample is made; then an appropriate indicator is added. The particular hydrion concentration is indicated by the color acquired by the solution when the indicator is added. Procedure: Exploratory test: Using litmus paper as an indicator, determine the general re-

<sup>1</sup> For the difference between titratable acidity and hydrion concentration see page 82.

<sup>2</sup> Pages 54 and 55.

action. If the paper is neutral or alkaline, the determination of free acidity is, of course, useless. If the reaction is given (blue to red), indicating acidity, then add to about 2 mls. of the gastric secretion in a test-tube one or more drops of thymol-blue-acid-indicator ( $pH$  1.2 to 2.8). If a yellow color is given, with no orange tinge, the  $pH$  lies in a lower acid range; if the color is red to orange, the range is within that just given for thymol-blue-acid-range (about  $pH$  2). Then, using 10 mls. in a test-tube with 2 or 3 drops of indicator, compare the color developed with that of the standard phthalate-HCl mixtures obtained from the side desk. If the range falls below that of this indicator, then repeat the above procedure using 2 mls. of the gastric juice in a test-tube and add 1 drop of the indicator brom-phenol-blue ( $pH$  range 3 to 4.6). Here the color must be either tan or purple. If within this range, make the appropriate comparison of the color developed in 10 mls. of gastric secretion treated with one or more drops of the brom-phenol-blue, with that of the standard solution on the side desk. Continue in this manner until you have located the appropriate indicator and determined the proper hydrion concentration, using, if necessary, the indicators methyl-red, brom-cresol-purple and brom-thymol-blue. The average normal hydrion concentration of human gastric juice under the conditions of intubation given above is  $pH$  1.7.<sup>1</sup>

*The Electrometric Method.*—This method is preferable, since protid and salt errors are obviated; the hydrion concentration given by the potentiometer method is accepted as the standard. The manipulation for gastric juice is the same as for the blood.<sup>2</sup>

**Acidity Curves.**—If the acid concentration determined for stomach contents as above be plotted with ordinates representing acidity and abscissæ, time, it is possible to make an accurate study of normal and pathological conditions. Although such studies on the normal stomach show all gradations from achylia to “hyperacidity,”<sup>3</sup> curves of

<sup>1</sup> If it is necessary to convert  $pH$  into  $CH$ , see page 41. This is easily accomplished by a slide-rule, such as the MacLean rule with slide reversed (Chapter XVI), or, better, by means of a duplex rule (Fig. 13).

<sup>2</sup> Page 54.

<sup>3</sup> “The clinician must henceforth take cognizance of the fact that hypersecretion and clinical hyperacidity as well as hypo- and anacidity are not only compatible with health, but are found in considerable percentage of normal individuals,” Carlson, A. J., p. 29. “Studies of healthy men indicate that there is no acidity in disease which cannot be encountered in health,” Reh fuss, M. A., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 71, p. 1534, 1918.

acidity, when considered with other factors (blood, bile, lactic acid, etc.), are of value clinically. The following *types of curves*, however, are recognized:

(1) *Normal curve*: This is an isometric curve, the peak occurring during the fourth period of intubation, IV.<sup>1</sup>

(2) *Achylia gastrica*: This curve is flat, parallel with the abscissa line.

(3) *Hyperacidity curve*: This curve rises throughout the eight periods, due to a stimulus of nervous origin (vagotonia, or abnormal sensitivity of the vagus nerve), duodenal ulcer, appendicitis, etc.

(4) *Plateau Curve*: This curve resembles (2), but a certain degree of acidity is developed and secretion takes place continuously; this curve is known as the plateau curve. It is due to an interference with the escape of the gastric secretion from the stomach, as in pyloric stenosis, or hardening of the pyloric sphincter.

(5) *Trauma Curve*: This curve resembles (1), but the apex is much higher and is reached within the second period, II. This is the curve of trauma, produced by the hyperesthesia of the subject during the intubation. A condition of achylia is presented toward the end of the period due to the same cause.

**Detection of Lactic Acid as an Index of Fermentation of Glucids by Bacteria<sup>2</sup> Due to Decreased Secretion of Hydrochloric Acid.**—*Hopkins' reaction*: Place 5 mls. of filtered gastric secretion in a test-tube and add 1 volume of ether. Shake the contents of the tube and then wait until the zones separate. By means of a pipette siphon off the lower layer, leaving the ether layer, which contains the lactic acid. Place the tube in a boiling water-bath to remove a large portion of the ether. Cool the tube and add 5 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid and 3 drops of a 40 per cent. cupric sulphate solution. Agitate the contents and leave in the bath for several minutes. Cool and add about 2 drops of 0.2 per cent. alcoholic thiophen<sup>3</sup> solution. Mix and

<sup>1</sup> The periods of withdrawal (fifteen-minute intervals) are designated by Roman numerals; thus at the end of the first hour, when the normal acidity curve reaches its peak, we have Period IV.

<sup>2</sup> Such as *Sarcina ventriculi* and *S. fuscenscens*.

<sup>3</sup> Page 372. The reaction is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ | \\ \text{CHO} \\ | \\ \text{COOH} \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}} & \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ | \\ \text{CHO} \\ | \\ \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{COOH} \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

(acetaldehyde)

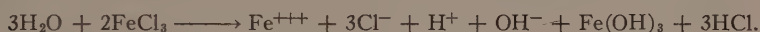
(formic acid).

Acetaldehyde and formic acid are formed in the presence of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and  $\text{CuSO}_4$  (acting as catalyzer). The formic acid becomes reduced to formaldehyde, and the two aldehydes, acetaldehyde and formaldehyde, then react with thiophen to form condensation products. See page 112 and also page 307.



leave to warm in the bath. The reaction is positive if a cherry-red color appears.

*Detection of Lactic Acid by Uffelmann's Ferric Chlorid Test, Folin's Modification.*—Refer to page 373. Place 5 mls. of the filtered gastric secretion in a test-tube and add 3 drops of a diluted (1:20) HCl solution; then add 1 volume of ether and stopper the tube with your thumb. Invert the tube slowly and right it again, permitting the ether fumes to escape by the withdrawal of the thumb. Remove the lower aqueous layer as in Hopkins' test, and add drop by drop a special dilute solution of ferric chlorid,<sup>1</sup> agitating the contents until a clear yellow color has developed, if the test is positive. A concentration of water retards the reaction. The test is more specific than the older Uffelmann test, which responds to other organic hydroxy-acids, like oxalic, tartaric, etc. The reaction resembles Fehling's reaction in that a metal hydroxid, the brown ferric hydroxid ( $\text{Fe}(\text{OH})_3$ ) in Uffelmann's reaction, becomes reduced to ionic condition by increased ionization during the hydrolysis of the chlorid:



The ferric ion,  $\text{Fe}^{+++}$ , is almost colorless, while the hydroxid in contact with the chlorid is brown to yellow, depending upon the degree of ionization.<sup>2</sup>

*Quantitative Methods for Determining the Peptic Activity of the Stomach.*

*The Method of Roaf.*—Blood fibrin has been stained with Congo-red<sup>3</sup> solution, washed, etc. Place a small amount (about 0.5 g.) of this dried, stained fibrin in contact with 15 mls. filtered gastric secretion and 5 mls. of 0.3 per cent. HCl solution. Note the time. Leave at 50° C. until digestion has occurred; this stage is indicated when the solution becomes the color of the dye. The course of digestion may be followed by matching the color of the free dye against a standard solution of Congo-red, 0.01 g. per 100 mls. of water.

*The Method of Gross.*<sup>4</sup>—Secure 10 test-tubes and arrange them in a rack. To the first add 0.1 ml. of the filtered gastric secretion; to the second, 0.2 ml. and so on, increasing 0.1 ml. for each tube. Use the 1-ml. Mohr pipette which is graduated in tenths. Now add to each

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> For Uffelmann's reaction proper see page 373.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> See page 436.

tube 10 mls. of the special casein<sup>1</sup> solution. Place the tubes in a bath at 40° C. and leave exactly fifteen minutes. Then add to each tube 3 drops sodium acetate solution<sup>2</sup> to cause the precipitation of the undigested casein. The smallest quantity of pepsin solution necessary to digest the 10 mls. of casein is the figure used to designate the activity of the pepsin. One unit is defined as that amount of pepsin in 1 ml. of gastric secretion which will cause the digestion of 10 mls. of casein solution. If in the above Exercise it was found that the tube containing 0.5 ml. of pepsin solution showed the smallest amount of pepsin necessary to cause the digestion of the casein, then there are  $\frac{1.0}{0.5} = 2$  units of pepsin in the gastric secretion under examination.

*The Mette<sup>3</sup> Tube Method.*—Preparation of the tubes: The method is given in the Appendix. The determination: Place duplicate tubes in contact with 1 ml. of gastric juice, diluted with 10 mls. of 0.3 per cent. HCl solution. Place in a bath at 40° C. and leave over night or until the following period. Then wash the two tubes carefully with distilled water and dry by means of a piece of filter paper. Place one tube upon a glass slide under the low power of the microscope provided with a calibrated scale to read in millimeters and estimate the amount of egg-white digested. Estimation: This is done in terms of the suggestion of Schuetz,<sup>4</sup> that pepsin activity be expressed as the square of the amount of egg-white digested. Hence, if a Mette tube be found to have digested from it 1.2 mm. of egg-white by the pepsin, then the activity of the gastric secretion is  $(1.2)^2 = 1.44$  unit per ml. of secretion.

<sup>1</sup> Pure casein should be used. Page 105, note. The preparation is made under the direction of Dr. Harris, formerly of the Department of Physiological Chemistry, Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut. The special solution is described in the Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Twenty per cent. aqueous solution.

<sup>3</sup> Mette, E. L. P., German physician, died during the 19th century. The pronunciation, frequently incorrect, is "met'tah."

<sup>4</sup> Schuetz, E., University of Vienna, Austria (contemporary). See *Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chem.*, vol. 9, p. 577, 1885. Schuetz suggested that the unit of pepsin be taken as that amount which will give 1 gram of pepton, the pepton being estimated by the optical rotation of the solution. The equation is:

$$P = \left( \frac{m}{4 \times 39.18} \right)^2 \times \frac{1}{p}$$

where P is the unit, m the observed rotation, each quadrant of which is 39.18 degrees of arc, which corresponds, when all four quadrants are taken (4), to 1 gram of pepton; p the amount of gastric secretion used. Briefly, we may interpret this to mean that two pepsin solutions stand together as the squares of the amount of egg-white digested.

**The Significance of the Total Amount of Gastric Secretion.**—The total residuum of the stomach normally averages 50 mls.,<sup>1</sup> with variations from 30 to 180 mls. Pathological modifications of this average occur. Obstruction or factors delaying the emptying of the stomach increase the amount as well as the figures for total acidity. Disease, like carcinoma, affecting the body as a whole or parts of great importance cause a characteristic reduction in the amount of residuum as well as in total acidity. As a rule a residuum of more than 50 mls. coincident with high total acidity indicates the presence of gastric ulcer or of incipient carcinoma. However, nervous and functional disorders frequently give these high amounts. As an index of stomach motility gastric residuum is of importance, and the same may be said of gastric acidity figures. Indeed, as Carlson says: "The rôle of the gastric juice in the maintenance of health and in the etiology of disease has been exaggerated to the neglect of the importance of gastric mobility."<sup>2</sup>

**Pepsin and Its Work.**—In common with practically all enzymes there is but little accurate knowledge of the chemical nature of pepsin. We may summarize what knowledge we have as follows:

Physical state: Colloidal; salts out with  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ .

Chemical relations: Protid.

Known components: Glucid, probably glucose.

Elementary analysis:	C.....	50 per cent.
	H.....	7 "
	O.....	23 "
	N.....	14 "
	Fe.....	0.1 <sup>3</sup> "

Chemical properties: Extracted readily with acid.

Destroyed by alkali.

Heat stable to about 60° C.

Zymogen<sup>4</sup>: Pepsinogen.

Co-enzyme, or activator: Acid.

Products of action: Albumoses, peptons, and later peptides containing the biuret link; after prolonged action, amino-acids.

<sup>1</sup> This and other data concerning gastric digestion have emanated largely from the Laboratories of Physiological Chemistry of Jefferson Medical College under the direction of P. B. Hawk (now of 1440 Broadway, New York, N. Y.).

<sup>2</sup> Carlson, A. J., page 34.

<sup>3</sup> The phosphorus which is frequently included in an elementary composition of pepsin is due to the admixture of a phospholipid, like a lecithin. Ca and S are not affected by purification methods, showing their constant relations to pepsin.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *zyme*, yeast (refers to enzyme; see page 422), and *gemma*, produce.

The effect of pepsin upon different zymolytes varies with the different substances.

Thus, the optimum for pepsin working upon:

Casein.....	pH 1.4
Egg-albumin.....	pH 1.2-1.6
Gelatin.....	pH 3.2

Sørensen believes that the optimum pH for pepsin varies according to the length of time the enzyme acts, increased acidity being necessary as time progresses. *The optimum pH for pepsin is now believed to be the degree of acidity which most favors the union of enzyme with zymolyte.* This degree of acidity corresponds in cases studied critically, to the iso-electric point.<sup>1</sup>

**Rennin or Chymosin.**—We shall present some practical exercises on rennin and then discuss the relations of this enzyme to pepsin.

EXERCISE 6.—Place 10 test-tubes in a rack. Add 5 mls. of skimmed or separator milk to each tube. Then add to tube No.

- (1) Nothing (control).
- (2) Two mls. of the chymase solution.<sup>2</sup>
- (3) Two mls. boiled rennin.
- (4) Two mls. rennin and 2 drops of 1:10 acetic acid solution.
- (5) Two mls. rennin and 2 mls. 2 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution.
- (6) Two mls. rennin and 1 ml. potassium oxalate solution, 1 per cent.
- (7) Two mls. rennin and 1 ml. potassium oxalate solution as above. (Tube 6). Boil and cool. Add 1 ml. 1 per cent.  $\text{CaCl}_2$  solution.
- (8) Boil the contents of this tube. Cool. Add 2 mls. rennin solution.
- (9) Treat as Tube 8; then add 1 ml.  $\text{CaCl}_2$  solution.
- (10) Treat as Tube 8; then add 2 drops 1:10 acetic acid.

The tubes are placed in a thermostat at 40° C. and the time noted. The tubes are watched carefully, and in order to determine the coagulation time it is necessary to lift the tube from its support, for merely observing the appearance of the preparation as it stands seldom is accurate enough.

<sup>1</sup> Herzmann, A. B. (University of Michigan), and Bradley, H. C., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. 19, 1924. See page 107.

<sup>2</sup> Page 428.

From the above experiment it is evident that:

(1) Spontaneously fresh milk does not coagulate at body temperature.

(2) The addition of rennin accelerates coagulation.

(3) Rennin is heat labile and is destroyed by boiling.

(4) The addition of acid leads to accelerated coagulation, due to the solution of calcium salts necessary for the precipitation of the coagulated protid.

(5) The process of coagulation is inhibited by alkali.

(6) Reagents which render calcium insoluble, like oxalates, forming insoluble calcium oxalate, inhibit coagulation.

(7) The inhibitory power of the oxalate may be counteracted by adding an excess of calcium, as in  $\text{CaCl}_2$ , and also that rennin exerts its action in the absence of calcium, the clotting (precipitation) becoming evident when Ca is added.

(8) Boiling the milk before adding rennin causes the appearance of a very solid, tough curd, if any.

(9) The addition of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  to such a preparation as (8) induces coagulation.

(10) The addition of acid favors coagulation of boiled milk.

*Practical suggestions:* All enzymes work at the exposed surfaces.<sup>1</sup> The smaller the volume and the relatively larger the surface, the greater will be the enzyme activity. Similarly, in the case of rennin, the clot will digest more rapidly if it is not a large solid one. In children it is sometimes desirable to keep the curds small and flocculent by the addition of a little lime-water, as alkali. Again, in an opposite way, if an alkali, like sodium bicarbonate, be administered to a patient with gastric ulcer and then milk in some form, the milk remains uncoagulated and will not digest. The lactose will undergo fermentation and gas will accumulate, giving rise to discomfort, if not to a serious condition.<sup>2</sup> Since rennin, like other enzymes, works according to the "R. G. T." rule,<sup>3</sup> that is, that enzyme action increases about two to three times for every  $10^\circ \text{C}$ .

<sup>1</sup> Or within if the enzyme is soluble in the material upon which it is working. A lipase digests fat only if it is dissolved by the fat.

<sup>2</sup> By inflation the stomach is displaced and the coronary circulation in the heart is partly occluded.

<sup>3</sup> From the German "Reaktionsgeschwindigkeits-Temperatur," a thermochemical term due to van't Hoff (see page 171, note 4).



rise in temperature the drinking of cold milk tends to cause the production of smaller curds.

The production of rennin varies directly with that of pepsin. Whatever pathological factors affect pepsin, affect rennin also. Thus the possibility of their identity arises.

**Are Rennin and Pepsin Identical?**—In answering this question<sup>1</sup> we may say:

(1) Rennin and pepsin run parallel in quantities when estimated during the secretory period following a meal of protid. This has been shown both by the estimations of the content of pepsin and rennin in gastric mucosa and in the gastric secretions both of the normal stomach and the Pavlov<sup>2</sup> stomach in experimental animals.

(2) The deterioration of peptic and rennin activity in a piece of gastric tissue kept in an incubator for some time runs parallel in the two cases, as it does in a juice brought to 60° C.

(3) Rennin-like action is found universally in plants and animals where the action is correlated with the presence of a protidoclastic enzyme.

(4) The action of rennin resembles the initial action of any protidoclastic enzyme, namely, to cause the cleavage of the protid molecule.

(5) If the gastric secretion be dialyzed through a membrane, or through a Berkefeld filter,<sup>3</sup> rennin is affected in such a manner that it may neutralize an antirennin, but it does not cause milk coagulation. The antirennin is contained in blood-serum. Pepsin does not show these relations.

(6) Rennin requires the presence of calcium in order that it may coagulate milk. Pepsin, or the peptic reaction, works in the absence of Ca, although it is accelerated by Ca even to a greater extent than rennin.

(7) Gastric secretion when kept constantly at 40° C. loses its rennin action, but retains its protidoclastic properties.

(8) Gastric secretion treated with a precipitant, like lead acetate, loses its peptic action, but retains its rennin action.

(9) The optimum hydron concentration of pepsin is *pH* 1.7, and

<sup>1</sup> For a brief discussion of this question see Edie, E. S., *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 15, p. 507.

<sup>2</sup> Page 434.

<sup>3</sup> A cylinder composed of the fossil remains of shells of one-celled organisms called diatoms.

the lowest  $pH$  where the peptic function of gastric secretion is evident is  $pH$  5, whereas, the optimum for rennin action is  $pH$  6.8, but the latter action occurs even at  $pH$  7.6, that is, in an alkaline medium.

(10) A comparison of the rennin and peptic activity of young and adult mammalian gastric secretions shows the following results (rabbit):

	Average milk coagulation time.	Fibrin digests.
Young.....	Eighteen minutes	None after two hours
Adult.....	None after two hours	10.8 mls. 0.1 n. nitrogen

Of the foregoing data the first four points indicate the identity of rennin and pepsin, while the remaining six argue against such a possibility. It is probable that the following explanation is valid: (1) In the young rennin, a special milk-curdling, hydrolytic enzyme is present in greater amounts because milk is the sole or larger part of the diet. The average normal  $pH$  of the gastric secretion of the young mammal is  $pH$  3.5 to  $pH$  5, which is below or at the minimal reaction for peptic activity, but which is adequate for the action of rennin. (2) Pepsin resembling all protidoclastic enzymes has a milk-curdling action varying in degree with such factors as hydrion concentration, temperature, and zymolyte. Milk will undergo coagulation in an acid medium free from any enzyme.<sup>1</sup>

**The Manner of Action of Rennin.**—This may be summarized as follows:

- (1) Hydrolysis of casein occurs similarly as in protid hydrolysis in general.
- (2) The product of hydrolysis is a protidtemn, or group of such substances of the nature of albumoses and also a product which unites with calcium to form a calcium-caseinate, which is insoluble near its iso-electric point (about  $pH$  6.7).
- (3) The precipitation of calcium-caseinate incorporates the fat globules and this mixture is known as the "curd."
- (4) The protidtemns do not enter the curd, but remain in the watery solution left after precipitation, as a whey albumose.

**The Fate of the Curd.**—The curd undergoes hydrolysis into pro-

<sup>1</sup> The buffer effect of different milks is an important point. Thus, to bring 100 mls. of human milk to a  $pH$  5.0, 18 mls. of decinormal acid must be added, while in the case of cow's milk, 55 mls. must be added.

tidterms—albumose, pepton, peptids, and amino-acids. The process of gastric digestion is supplemented by tryptic and ereptic digestion in the intestine. Absorption of the products takes place in the intestine.

**The Fate of Fat in the Stomach.**—Fat in finely divided amounts (emulsified) undergoes some gastric hydrolysis, while fat in larger aggregates is not affected in the stomach. Emulsification of the fat takes place to a small extent by the combined action of the heat of the stomach (37° C.) and of the acid, HCl, but in addition to this rather insignificant action, emulsified<sup>1</sup> fat is hydrolyzed to glycerol and fatty acids which may become soaps. This hydrolysis is effected by a specific fat-cleaving enzyme, gastric lipase, which is secreted in the gastric mucosa. This process of fat digestion, however, is insignificant when compared to the digestion of fat in the intestine. The emulsification of fat in the stomach is largely a matter of the action of bile-salts which are regurgitated from the duodenum. Since this process is one dependent upon an unusual, rather than an ordinary function<sup>2</sup> of the pylorus, the emulsification of fat is of an exceptional and not usual procedure in the stomach. The presence of a gastric lipase is probably an adaptation of the organism to economy; regurgitation of the bile occurs mechanically with a consequent physical change in the fats which then undergo hydrolysis if a hydrolyzing agent be present. Such an agent is supplied by the gastric lipase.<sup>3</sup> Typically all tissues contain a lipase, and the gastric mucosa is no exception to the rule.<sup>4</sup>

**Digluuids**, like maltose, sucrose, and lactose, are not hydrolyzed in the stomach, for no enzymes are detectable in gastric secretion capable of catalyzing their hydrolysis. If these glucids are retained for any length of time, however, the increased acidity of the gastric secretion resulting from the continuous production of acid over the period causes some hydrolysis, but this is physiologically insignificant.

<sup>1</sup> The reason why emulsified fat is hydrolyzed is given on page 112, note 4.

<sup>2</sup> See page 439 concerning the presence of bile in the stomach.

<sup>3</sup> A parallel instance of the economic utilization of enzymes may be cited: Erepsin of the intestine acts supplementarily to the gastric and duodenal protid-cleaving enzymes, pepsin and trypsin. Protids which have escaped the action of these enzymes are hydrolyzed by the erepsin.

<sup>4</sup> For a consideration of the rôle of lipases in the organism see Bradley, H. C., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 8, p. 251, 1910, and also vol. 13, p. 407, 1913.

## INTESTINAL DIGESTION

**The Enzymes of the Intestine.**—In general it may be said that the intestine has a suite of enzymes adequate for the digestion of any food material. They are:

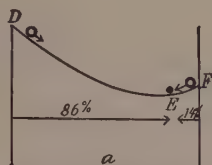


Fig. 148.—Law of mass action. Equilibrium of opposing reactions, the vigor is indicated by the height of the lines *D* and *F*, and the velocities by the arrows. The graph represents the equilibrium  $\text{maltose} \xrightarrow{\text{maltase}} \text{glucose}$ . (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

*Glucidases*, enzymes hydrolyzing the glucids' ("carbohydrates").

*Diglucidases*:

Maltase,  $\alpha$ -glucosidase hydrolyzing maltose to glucose and glucose.

Lactase, hydrolyzing lactose to glucose and galactose.

Sucrase, hydrolyzing sucrose to glucose and fructose.

Glucosidases (other than above):  $\beta$ -Glucosidases hydrolyzing glucosides, like amygdalin.<sup>1</sup>

*Polyglucidases*:

Amylase, hydrolyzing starch to maltose.<sup>2</sup>

*Lipidases*,<sup>3</sup> enzymes hydrolyzing neutral fats and substances resembling the neutral fats, phospholipids, esters, etc., to glycerol, fatty acids, nitrogenous constituents, phosphoric acid, etc., according to the kind of fat.

Lipase, hydrolyzing neutral fats to glycerol and fatty acids.

Phospholipidase, hydrolyzing lecithin and other phospholipids.

Esterase, hydrolyzing the lower esters to an alcohol and acids.

*Protidases*.—Enzymes hydrolyzing substances composed of  $\alpha$ -amino-acids to these units.

<sup>1</sup> The presence of an emulsin-like enzyme capable of hydrolyzing amygdalin, a glucoside containing the group CN, has not been demonstrated in intestinal secretions, but when pure amygdalin free from emulsin of plant origin is taken internally symptoms of HCN poisoning have been observed leading to the necessity of explaining how this glucoside is split up, freeing HCN.

<sup>2</sup> Also called amylopsin, from the Greek *amylon*, starch, and *opsis*, appearance.

<sup>3</sup> Called also "steapsin" from the Greek *stear*, fat.

Trypsin, hydrolyzing native protidtemns, or even the protids themselves to amino-acids.<sup>1</sup> The action of trypsin is supplemented by:

Erepsin, hydrolyzing protidtemns to amino-acids. Protids are not affected by this enzyme.<sup>2</sup> It is probable that this enzyme is not identical with the "autolyzing" enzyme of all tissues. The enzyme is produced in part in the pancreas and in part in the intestinal wall.

In addition to the enzymes concerned with glucids, lipids, and protids there are certain enzymes concerned with *oxidation*, *reduction*, and *deaminization*, functions which are common to all tissues. How far these may be considered alimentary enzymes cannot be said. We include them, however:

*Catalase* (Loew) decomposes hydrogen peroxid.<sup>3</sup> The nature of this enzyme if indeed it is a true enzyme, is not clear.

*Peroxidases* affecting organic peroxids. We have shown<sup>4</sup> that the "peroxidase" of the blood is, in reality, Fe. It is possible and even probable that a similar condition holds respecting the "peroxidase" of the intestine. Recent work has shown the dependence of oxidizing functions of the di-peptid glutathion<sup>5</sup> upon traces of iron.

*Aldehydase*, which is present probably only in cells contained in the intestinal juice. It has not been demonstrated in the pancreas.

*Tyrosinase*, oxidizing tyrosin, forming "melanins."<sup>6</sup> It is of the nature of a peroxidase.

*Deaminase*.—This is of doubtful occurrence, although intestinal secretion causes deaminization, which may be of bacterial origin.

The following exercises demonstrate the action of intestinal enzymes, Exercise 7 showing the necessity of a zymogen, enterokinase in tryptic digestion:

EXERCISE 7.—Obtain from the store-room 10 mls. each of the casein digests which have been prepared as follows:

(a) Casein + suspension of ground pancreas.

<sup>1</sup> When some protids are subjected to the action of trypsin, a few of the constituent amino-acids are split from the molecule. Thus, tyrosin and tryptophan leave the molecule readily; others, like leucin, alanin, glutamic and aspartic acids, are less readily cleaved, while phenyl-alanin is not split off from the molecule.

<sup>2</sup> See Cohnheim, O., Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chemie, vol. 33, p. 451, 1901; vol. 35, p. 134, 1902.

<sup>3</sup> Page 96.

<sup>4</sup> Page 113.

<sup>5</sup> Page 340. Insulin seems to depend upon the presence of sulphur.

<sup>6</sup> Page 263.



(b) Casein + suspension of ground pancreas + ground mucosa of the intestine.

Determine by formol titration<sup>1</sup> which case of digestion has proceeded to the greater extent.

EXERCISE 8. *The Rennin-like Action of Pancreatic Secretion.*—Method of Cole:

(1) Preparation of special calcified milk: Place 50 mls. of fresh whole milk in a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add 10 mls. of 5 per cent. calcium chlorid solution. Make up with distilled water to the 100-ml. mark, mix, and use for the following experiment:

(2) The Experiment: Place 3 clean test-tubes in a rack. A is control, B and C are experiments. To each add 5 mls of the special milk. To A add nothing; to B add 1 ml. of the pancreatic solution; to C add 1 ml. of the pancreatic solution which has been brought to the boiling-point and then cooled to room temperature. Place the tubes in a bath at 40° C. Examine at intervals, and if there is no clotting in tubes A or C, whereas clotting occurs in B, a positive rennin-like action is demonstrated for the pancreatic secretion. If, however, either or both controls are coagulated, the experiment must be discarded; moreover, the experiment must be followed carefully, the tubes being observed at frequent intervals, for in Tube B digestion of the clot may take place, making it appear that clotting has not taken place. This rennin-like action may be due to intestinal erepsin or to pancreatic trypsin.

EXERCISE 9. *The Claude Bernard Test for Distinguishing Gastric and Pancreatic Digestion.*—Filter into separate test-tubes each of the following solutions:

(1) A gastric digest<sup>2</sup> made as described in Exercise 28 (page 231).

(2) A tryptic digest (Tube B, if positive, may be used after being left in the bath for twenty-four hours or longer).

To Tube 2 add 2 drops of glacial acetic acid; to each tube, then, add, drop by drop, bromin water,<sup>3</sup> noting any change of color in the solutions. The color may be caused to disappear if an excess of bromin

<sup>1</sup> Page 287.

<sup>2</sup> The laboratory should maintain a gastric digest for this Exercise; or the student may set up in a test-tube such a digest and the Exercise completed in the following period.

<sup>3</sup> See Appendix.

water is added, but by adding half a volume of amylol and agitating the solutions, the tryptophan-bromin compound is absorbed and appears as a reddish or violet colored solution floating at the surface.

The principle of the test is that in tryptic digestion amino-acids are formed among which is tryptophan. This is why color appears when bromin is added.

**The Difference Between Erepsin of the Intestine and Tissue "Erepsin."**—Alimentary erepsin differs from trypsin in regard to the action on simple protids, for trypsin hydrolyzes casein, egg-albumen, etc., while erepsin acts only upon the products of gastric or duodenal digestion, that is, peptons and higher peptids. Each tissue has an enzyme which resembles, in a general way, erepsin, but which differs from it in two particulars: (1) Reaction at optimum and (2) substances acted upon:

	Optimum.	Zymolyte.
Alimentary erepsin.....	7.8	Protidtemns.
Tissue "erepsin".....	5.0	Simple protids, together with protidtemns.

It is probable that the autolyzing enzyme, called above "tissue erepsin," is not a single one, but a composite of two or perhaps more.

**EXERCISE 10. Autolysis of Liver.**—Secure from the store-room 20 gs. of liver which has been ground in a meat-grinder and then sieved through a fine-meshed sieve. Place the mass in your 100-ml. volumetric cylinder, add 5 mls. of toluene, and make up to 100 mls. with distilled water. Now mix thoroughly and divide into four parts, 25 mls. each to a large (200 mm. by 20 mm.) test-tube. Label A, B, C, and D. A is control; to B add 5 mls. of 1:10 HCl solution. To C add 5 mls. of 1 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution. To D add nothing until the following period; then add 5 mls. 1 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution. Leave the tubes at 37° C. in a thermostat until the following period and examine for amount of digestion. Filter 5 mls. and make formol titration on the filtrates.

**Autolysis and Atrophy.**—There are many phenomena in human physiology in which the tissues undergo shrinkage in size and alterations in chemical composition. This process is attributed in some instances to the work of tissue enzymes capable of hydrolyzing protids, the so-called "autolytic" enzymes. The normal process of involution of the uterus immediately after the birth of the child during

which the distended uterus shrinks to the size of the non-pregnant one is cited as an example of autolysis. A part of this process involves a loss of water and consequent reduction in size, but there is also a loss of substance. Again, in the disease of the liver known as acute yellow atrophy and in its artificial counterpart, phosphorus poisoning, there is a change involving the protids and fat. Chloroform when used in anesthesia causes lesions in the liver not unlike those produced by phosphorus. In all such instances the liver cells are poisoned to a greater or less extent and yet the tissue protidoclastic enzymes, especially in the acid medium, remain active. The acidity is produced by interference in oxidation (anoxemia), due either to lack of oxygen or to a loss of oxidizing powers of the tissues. Again, the resolution of exudates, like the pulmonary exudate following the crisis in that disease is considered a function of these enzymes.

*The "autolytic enzymes" are not derived from the alimentary trypsin or erepsin.* The autolytic enzymes are resident in the tissues, and although they resemble the alimentary enzymes, they are quite distinct in origin and action.

**The Fate of Trypsin; Its Utilization as a Functional Test for Pancreatic Efficiency.**—If the motility of the stomach and intestines is normal, the protid-cleaving enzymes, pepsin and trypsin, are not present in the feces. But in diarrhea and diseases in which increased motility of the digestive tract occurs, trypsin especially and sometimes pepsin may be demonstrated. If it is desirable to test the efficiency of the pancreas in producing trypsin, two methods are possible: (1) Aspiration of the duodenal contents through an Einhorn-Rehfuss tube, using any of the tips employed in gastric analysis, like the Lyon tip; (2) administering a mild cathartic, like cascara sagrada. The increased motility which results causes the propulsion of the contents of the intestine carrying with them the trypsin which has not had time to become destroyed by the action of the other enzymes. The procedure for administering the tube and analyzing the intestinal contents thus obtained is outlined herewith<sup>1</sup>:

**DEMONSTRATION: Intubation for Duodenal Secretion.**—Have the subject swallow the tube as for gastric analysis,<sup>2</sup> letting it descend to

<sup>1</sup> This Exercise should be presented as a demonstration to students, one of their number offering himself as subject, as shown in Fig. 149, page 458.

<sup>2</sup> Page 436.

the second mark on the tube. The passage of the tube into the duodenum is facilitated by pouring 120 mls. of warm distilled water into the funnel of the tube. After this the subject lies on a couch in a "right Sims' position,"<sup>1</sup> while the tube is swallowed to the mark. This takes about twenty minutes after the tube has reached the stomach. Slow swallowing movements aid in the passage of the tip of the tube through the pylorus.<sup>2</sup> The contents of the duodenum are aspirated by means of the glass syringe which accompanies the tube (Fig. 145).



Fig. 149.—Duodenal tube. Collection of bile, A, B, and C portions, as shown by the bottles. Microscopic examination is being made for cellular elements, evidences of concretions, etc.

Analysis of the contents for trypsin: Strain the secretion through glass-wool, muslin or cotton, and filter through filter-paper. The analysis is made according to the principle used in the Gross method for gastric analysis<sup>3</sup>: To 5 mls. of the filtrate add 15 mls. of 1:1000  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution; filter. Set up two Erlenmeyer flasks and introduce 10 mls. of the filtrate into each. Then add 100 mls. of the special

<sup>1</sup> See proper position in American Illustrated Medical Dictionary, 13th ed., Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925, p. 917. Also Fig. 149.

<sup>2</sup> With reasonable care as to the time limit, there should be no danger of the tube being thrown into loops in the stomach. If a fluoroscope is available, the tip may be located.

<sup>3</sup> Page 445.



pancreatic casein solution.<sup>1</sup> Leave in the thermostat at 37° C. until the following period and treat as follows: Add to each flask, drop by drop, a solution of 1 per cent. acetic acid. *If a precipitate occurs*, it is indicative of the *absence of trypsin*, since undigested casein is precipitated.<sup>2</sup> On the other hand, if digestion has occurred, due to trypsin, precipitation will not take place.

**Trypsinogen and Enterokinase.**—Trypsin is produced in the pancreas in an inactive form, known as trypsinogen. In Exercise 7 we have seen that the presence of intestinal mucosa is necessary for the functioning of the pancreatic secretion. Pepsin, we have seen,<sup>3</sup> must be activated by means of acid. The agent causing the activation of trypsin is known as enterokinase,<sup>4</sup> a substance of unknown chemical relations. It must be understood that trypsin will digest protid<sup>5</sup> and protidtemns without the addition of enterokinase, but the addition of enterokinase speeds up the reaction to such a degree that, comparatively, the digestion in the absence of enterokinase is negligible.<sup>6</sup> Enterokinase occurs not only in the mucosa of the intestine but also in leucocytes; and during autolysis in the pancreas (whether in the body or excised) kinase is formed capable of activating trypsinogen. Certain pathological states, pancreatitis and fat necrosis of the pancreas, have been attributed to the activation of trypsinogen while it is in the pancreas, owing (1) to the migration of enterokinase from the duodenum up through the bile-duct; (2) to the process of autolysis, or (3) to kinase secreted by leucocytes. However, the activating effect of the last is small.

**The Activator of Pancreatic Secretion.**—In order to avoid common misconceptions it may be well to introduce here a statement concerning secretin, which plays a rôle in the pancreas parallel to that performed in the stomach by the gastrins. Secretin accelerates the secretion of the total pancreatic product, but does not serve as an

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, noting that the gastric and pancreatic casein solutions are not the same.

<sup>2</sup> See page 405 for the method of precipitating casein from milk.

<sup>3</sup> Page 428.

<sup>4</sup> From the Greek *enteron*, intestine, and *kinesis*, motion. Enterokinase has nothing to do with the motility of the intestine, but with the activation of trypsin.

<sup>5</sup> Page 454.

<sup>6</sup> Trypsin retards the action of trypsin, a function which is present even after the inactivation of the enzyme as a protid-cleaving enzyme, for when the solution is cooled and brought into contact with a protidtemn-trypsin solution, like gelatin and trypsin, the action of the last is inhibited.



activator for any of the enzymes. Chemically, secretin has been identified with histamin,<sup>1</sup> a derivative of histidin, but pure preparations of the substance thought to be secretin, by the British pharmacologist Dale,<sup>2</sup> do not give the typical effects of secretin when introduced into the blood system. The fact remains, however, that there is some substance existing in the mucous membrane of the duodenum and jejunum which, when activated by hydrochloric acid, then neutralized and injected into the blood of an experimental animal, causes the very evident increase in pancreatic secretion. The name "prosecretin" has been applied to this substance. The acid which normally causes the conversion of prosecretin into secretin is the hydrochloric acid of the gastric secretion; the acid solution escapes through the pylorus and enters the duodenum. If hydrochloric acid is to activate prosecretin, it must be in excess of that which is necessary to neutralize the alkaline secretions of the intestine. In gastric carcinoma in which there may be hypochlorhydria pancreatic hyposecretion may occur as a consequence of the lowered amount of HCl. If, however, gastric carcinoma involves retention due to pyloric stricture there may be a hypersecretion of HCl; and when this is released into the duodenum prosecretin is activated into secretin in an apparently normal manner.

The **reaction of intestinal juice** has been determined by several investigators. The variations are from  $pH$  5.9 to 8.2. The average normal intestinal fluid is therefore slightly more acid than that of human blood, namely, 7.03, blood being 7.35.

The **amylolytic function of pancreatic secretion; pancreatic amylase, or "amylpsin."** This is demonstrated by the following Exercise:

**EXERCISE 11.**—A glycerol extract must be used, acid destroying the enzyme. Cole's method: Place three test-tubes in your rack and add 10 mls. of 1 per cent. starch solution<sup>3</sup> to each; add also 8 drops of a 5 per cent. NaCl solution. Tube A is control; to B add 1 ml. of the pancreatic extract in glycerol solution; to C add 1 ml. filtered saliva. Then to each tube add 5 drops toluene and leave in the thermostat at 37° C. until the following period. Glucose is formed in Tube B and

<sup>1</sup> Page 269.

<sup>2</sup> Dale, H. H., National Institute for Medical Research, Hamstead, England.

<sup>3</sup> Page 143.

may be identified by the osazone.<sup>1</sup> Saliva, however, having no maltase in it accompanying the amylase, carries digestion to maltose. Identify these products by means of the osazones.

**The Glucidases of the Pancreas.**—The pancreatic enzyme corresponding to salivary amylase contains no maltase, but it is accompanied by a maltose-cleaving agent, which is a tissue enzyme and not an alimentary one. In the glycerol extract both enzymes occur, and hence the production of glucosazone in Exercise 11. When, however, pancreatic juice, obtained by means of a cannula or fistula directly from the pancreatic duct, is acidulated, maltose is hydrolyzed to glucose and glucose molecules. This activation of maltase occurs in the acid condition of the duodenum much as secretin is produced from prosecretin. Amylase, apparently, does not have to be activated.

**Diglucidases of the Intestine:**

**EXERCISE 12.**—Prove the presence of lactase and sucrase or invertase as follows: Place separately in two small Erlenmeyer flasks 50 mls. of 2 per cent. solution of lactose and a similar amount of 2 per cent. solution of sucrose. As a control use other flasks containing 50 mls of each solution in separate flasks. To each flask add 10 mls. of the glycerol extract of the intestine of the pig. Bring the control flasks to the boiling-point of water on a bath and then cool under the tap. To each of the flasks add 5 mls. toluene to avoid bacterial action. Place the flasks in the thermostat at 37° C. until the following period. Then make osazone tests for the identification of the products of hydrolysis of lactose and of sucrose, namely, galactose and glucose.<sup>2</sup>

**Pancreatic Lipase.**—For this work a special preparation of pancreatic extract should be made, details of which are given in the Appendix. The principle is to keep the extract alkaline.

**EXERCISE 13.**—Prepare the following tubes: A, control; 5 mls. of pure olive oil and one volume of the extract brought to the boiling-point of water for one minute and then cooled. Cover with toluene. B, prepared in the same manner, but left unboiled. Leave in a thermostat at 37° C. until the following period. Then titrate against decinormal alkali, with phenolphthalein as indicator, to determine the increase in acidity due to hydrolysis of the fat into glycerol and

<sup>1</sup> Page 158.

<sup>2</sup> Fructose (levulose) does not give an osazone different from that of glucose. See page 159.

fatty acid. Calculate the amount of fat digested from the titration figure, supposing the oil to be composed wholly of trioleid.

**EXERCISE 14.** *The Favorable Effect of Bile-salts on Pancreatic Lipase Action.*—Litmus milk preparation: Mix in a 100-ml. Florence flask one volume of whole milk and 0.1 volume of litmus solution.<sup>1</sup> To each of three test-tubes add 10 mls. of the mixture. To each tube add also 5 mls. of the special preparation of pancreatic extract used in Exercise 13 just given. Bring the contents of Tube C (control) to the boiling-point. • Cool under the tap and cover with toluene. Let Tube B remain as it is. To Tube A add 1 ml. 1 per cent. bile-salt solution.<sup>2</sup> Place the three tubes in the thermostat at 37° C. and leave for fifteen minutes. Examine the tubes and determine whether any change in color of the solution has occurred. Leave until some change is evident. The accelerating effect of the bile-salts should be made manifest.

The *explanation of the favorable effect of bile-salts in lipase action* is probably to be made in terms of physical rather than purely chemical factors. We have seen<sup>3</sup> how bile-salts lower the surface tension of water. They exert the same effect upon oil; the oil becomes emulsified, and since enzymes must be dissolved by fat<sup>4</sup> they do not exert their action in the interior of the fat globule. The smaller the fat particles, the greater the surface in proportion to the volume. Consequently enzymatic action occurs at the periphery of the fat globule. It is this emulsifying effect exerted by the bile when regurgitated into the stomach which permits the gastric lipase to become effective.<sup>5</sup>

#### BILE AND ITS BIOCHEMISTRY

Besides the bile-salts mentioned in the previous paragraph, bile consists of other substances:

Pigments.

Glucoprotid, mucin.

Cholesterol.

Phospholipid, lecithin.

Inorganic constituents, water, salts, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Two mls. of a 10 per cent. solution of mammalian bile may be used. Commercial preparations of bile-salts (sodium taurocholate or glycocholate) are available.

<sup>3</sup> Page 112.

<sup>4</sup> Page 112, note 4.

<sup>5</sup> Page 112.

It is a secretion of the hepatic cells, both Kupfer and epithelial cells. These cells likewise form glycogen and other substances. They represent the "laboratory" of the liver. The highly viscid, yellowish, or greenish secretion is collected from the cells and passes into the intercellular spaces (sinuses) which in their turn deliver the bile into intralobular ducts. The latter unite to form the bile-duct of the lobe of the liver in which they occur. The left and right hepatic ducts unite to form the common duct which opens in connection with the pancreatic duct (duct or canal of Wirsung) into the duodenum. The common bile-duct receives at its junction with the hepatic duct the cystic duct, the interior of which bears a spiral valve. The cystic duct comes from the gall-bladder. The bile escapes into the intestine and in the lower portion of that organ it is absorbed to a greater or less extent into the blood. This makes up the so-called "enterohepatic circulation of bile." It is doubtful whether the bile pigments follow the circulation described, but it is probable that the bile-salts do.

**Secretin causes the increased secretion of the bile**, but according to Downs<sup>1</sup> no other hormone has this effect; in fact, the flow of bile is decreased by epinephrin, testicular substance, ovarian tissue, pancreatic substance, and extracts of the thymus, spleen, and thyroid. That the secretion of bile is not merely a mechanical filtration is evidenced by the fact that epinephrin while increasing blood-pressure, decreases the flow of bile, and that biliary pressure is normally slightly greater than blood-pressure. Likewise, the osmotic pressure of the bile is slightly higher than that of the blood:

Depression of the freezing-point of blood.....	0.60° C.
Depression of the freezing-point of bile.....	0.61° C.

There is a parallelism between the excretion of bile and the excretion of urine. In both cases obstruction causes cessation of secretion. A pressure of 350 mms. of water is sufficient to stop the flow of bile. This is about one-third the pressure required to cause the cessation of flow of the urine. Certain substances serve as cholagogues,<sup>2</sup> literally "drivers of the bile." Foremost among these substances are the intestinal purgatives, calomel ( $\text{Hg}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ), aloës, rhubarb; these affect the flow, not the secretion of the bile. Bile-salts are the only true cholagogues, exerting great effect. Protidtemns, like albumoses, peptones,

<sup>1</sup> Downs, A. W., Physiologist, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Canada.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *chole*, gall, and *agein*, from *ago*, to drive.



etc., also serve in this capacity. Fats cause marked secretion of the bile. Magnesium sulphate introduced into the duodenum causes relaxation of the sphincter<sup>1</sup> of the common bile-duct, and bile is forced from the bladder at the next contraction.<sup>2</sup> Glucids exert a somewhat similar but less pronounced effect; however, it is more lasting. In fasting, bile is secreted to a lesser extent. Exercise has no effect upon biliary secretion. The amount of bile is lessened when the body is exposed to high temperatures doubtless owing to an increased excretion of water from the skin, thus lessening the water in the urine and other fluids like bile. There is a concentration of bile following exposure to high temperatures corresponding to that in the urine during hot weather. In the case of the bile there is a relatively increased amount of pigment in hot weather.

The amount of bile secreted under normal conditions is about a liter per twenty-four hours. Since the chief function of the gall-bladder is to concentrate bile from the liver, it follows that the bile is more concentrated in the former. The bile cyst receives, say, a liter of bile from the secretory apparatus in the liver and this it concentrates to about 100 mls. The gall-bladder is, then, not merely a temporary storage organ, but may cause a change in the consistency of the bile. The walls are 1 mm. thick when at rest and consist of mucosa, muscular, fibrous, and peritoneal zones. The mucosa is thrown into folds in which lie glands, lymph follicles, and channels which become associated as the neck of the gall-bladder is approached. Through these channels the water derived from the liver bile is passed, thus concentrating the bile. The average composition of bile follows (Lyon):

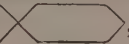
	Gall-bladder, per cent.	Common duct, per cent.
Water.....	86	97
Solids.....	14	3
Bile-salts.....	9	1
Mucin and pigments.....	3	0.5
Cholesterol.....	0.2	0.06-0.16
Lecithin and fat.....	1	0.9
Inorganic salts.....	0.8	0.7

**The Chemistry of Bile-salts.**—The salts are composed of sodium and organic acids of which there are two: (1) Glycocholic acid and (2) taurocholic acid. These occur in equal quantities in human bile.

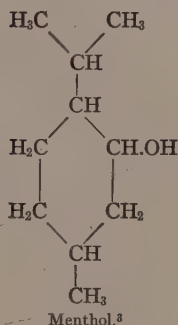
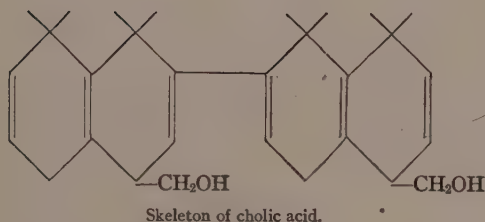
<sup>1</sup> Sphincter of Oddi on the papilla as the common duct enters the duodenum.

<sup>2</sup> See Matsuo, I., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 83, p. 1289, 1924.



Cholic acid<sup>1</sup> is chemically somewhat similar to cholesterol<sup>2</sup>; both have aromatic rings and alcohol radicles; but cholic acid lacks the terpene group of cholesterol, although it contains the characteristic aromatic groups represented by: , the skeleton of these compounds.

Diagrammatically cholic acid may be represented thus:



The structural formula of an aromatic terpene, *menthol*, widely used in medicine, is given for comparison. The exact formula for cholic acid has not been determined, nor do we know that of a similar compound, choleic acid, which is associated with cholic acid. The latter has a lower melting-point, greater solubility in ethanol, etc. Both acids conjugate with certain compounds like the amino-acid glycine (forming glycocholic acid and glycocholeic acid, respectively), and the cystin derivative (forming taurocholic acid). These acids are not provided with the carboxyl-radicle which usually accompanies and is responsible for acidic qualities in organic compounds, but the acid qualities of glycocholic and taurocholic acids are due to the same properties that are responsible for the acid qualities of phenol (carbolic acid),<sup>4</sup> that is, the lowering of the basicity of the hydroxyl group by the acidity of the benzene ring, which is the nucleus in these compounds. Cholic acid is found in the urine of jaundiced subjects and normally in the intestine where it is formed by hydrolysis from bile acids. The rôle of conjugation products of cholic acid with glycine and with taurin seems to be, primarily, that of detoxication, of which

<sup>1</sup> Also called cholalic acid. Greek *chole*, gall. No relation exists with cholin.

<sup>2</sup> There is, however, no physiological reason for this relation.

<sup>3</sup> This substance is given the termination *-ol* because of the secondary alcohol in position No. 2. Otherwise it should be called menthene.

<sup>4</sup> Runge, who discovered phenol, termed it "carbon-oil" acid, or carbolic acid.

we have encountered many examples; however, these products have other important secondary functions.

*Glycocholic acid*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{COOH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{49}\text{O}_4 \end{array}$ , occurs in the omnivorous or herbivorous human body, but in strictly carnivorous animals like dog, and man on a high protid diet, it is either present not at all or only in reduced amounts. It is distinguishable from taurocholic acid by being precipitated as the sodium salt by neutral lead acetate. It is highly toxic, slowing the heart by stimulating the vagus nerve and lowering blood-pressure. Glycocholic acid (or its salt) also causes lowering of the surface tension and consequently cytolysis, hemolysis, and other forms of cell destruction. The absorption of bile-salts is productive of hematogenous jaundice, the destruction of liver tissue being ascribed to this agent. At one time it was popular as an antiseptic for the urinary tract, but it was found that the effective dose incurred danger from cytolytic effects upon the cell and erythrocytes. Glycocholic acid is an effective cholagogue, causing increased secretion of the bile.

*Taurocholic acid*,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{HSO}_4 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{49}\text{O}_4 \end{array}$ , represents a similar conjugation to that of glycocholic acid. We have discussed the chemistry of taurin on page 249 as a derivative of cystin. It is distinguishable from glycocholic acid by being precipitated by "basic" lead acetate, but not by the normal acetate. Moreover, it is readily soluble in water, whereas glycocholic acid is refractory toward water. It is typically absent from the blood of some animals, and the low sulphur content of human bile<sup>1</sup> indicates that taurocholic acid is present in small amounts. The relative amounts of the two typical bile acids in human bile is a matter of diet. There is, apparently, a limit to the amount of taurin in the body available for making taurocholic acid, whereas glycine is available at all times; hence glycocholic acid may be present when taurocholic acid is either absent or present only in small amounts. The source of cholic acid is probably the sterols which include cholesterol of the bile and blood, and dietary sterols, like phytosterol. Consequently, herbivores have more bile acids than do carnivores. The relation between cystin, taurin and taurocholic acid is well shown by feeding experiments. Cystin,

<sup>1</sup> Sulphur content of human bile-salts, 0.1 per cent. dry weight; of steer bile-salts, 3.5 per cent.; of sheep bile-salts, 5.71 per cent. (Hammarsten).

when fed alone, appears in the urine as sulphuric acid,  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; if sodium cholate is administered at the same time the taurocholic acid of the bile is increased and the sulphuric acid of the urine is correspondingly decreased. Moreover, in cystinuria<sup>1</sup> there is a failure of the synthetic powers of the body to cause this conjugation. If sodium cholate is ingested, the maximal quantity of sulphuric acid will be found in the urine, but no increase in taurocholic acid in the bile.

**Bile-salts are Conjugated in the Liver.**—In cirrhosis of the liver there is acholia, or suppression of bile formation, and cystin appears in large amounts due to damage to the synthesizing apparatus in these cells. Although, as we have stated, food determines the relative proportion of the two acids, yet the fact that both are secreted during starvation shows that they are partly at least of endogenous nature.

**Summary of the Economy of Bile-salts.**—(1) They are conjugated cholesterol-like substances (cholic acid) with (a) the amino-acid, glycine, or glycocholic acid; or with (b) the amino-acid derivative, taurine (from cystine), forming taurocholic acid. There is no evidence, other than chemical similarity, that the bile-salts come from cholesterol.

(2) In the bile they exist as sodium salts of these acids.

(3) They are highly toxic, having (a) cytolytic action; (b) cardio-depressor action; (c) vaso-dilating action (small amount) or constricting action (larger amounts); (d) reduce nervous irritability, causing coma in larger amounts.

(4) They are of both endogenous and exogenous origin.

(5) They aid in the (a) digestion and (b) absorption of fats; they cause the emulsification of fats and they aid in the passage of the lipid-tenns through the intestinal membrane forming loose union with the fatty acids.

(6) They are cholagogues, the only substances known to cause much increased secretion of bile.

(7) They hold cholesterol in solution in the body fluids.

**Qualitative Tests for the Presence of Bile-salts.**—We have given elsewhere<sup>2</sup> Hay's test for bile-salts based upon the property of lowering surface tension. It is repeated here for completeness:

*Hay's Test for Bile-salts.*—Place some of the fluid suspected of

<sup>1</sup> Page 248.

<sup>2</sup> Page 111.

containing bile-salts in a test-tube and hold under cold water to reduce the temperature, which enhances the effect. Now sprinkle as much flowers-of-sulphur (resublimed) over the surface as will adhere to a knife-point. The test is positive for bile-salts if the sulphur passes through the surface and sifts to the bottom of the tube. Any fluid having a surface tension lower than 60 dynes per square centimeter of surface gives the test; consequently, alcohol, chloroform, etc., used in preserving urine, give a falsely positive test.

The above test is a physical chemical one, the explanation of which is given on page 110. The test must be used with caution, since substances other than bile-salts will cause the same reaction. Preservatives, substances used in treatment of respiratory diseases, etc., may exert this influence and give a falsely positive test.

The following test depends upon the same chemical reaction that we have noted in Molisch's Reaction and the Selivanoff Test for glucids, Hopkins' thiophen reaction for lactic acid, etc., namely, a condensation of an aldehyde with an aromatic substance. The aldehyde, furfural, in the present case is derived from sucrose by hydrolysis with  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; the aromatic substance is the bile-salt.

*Pettenkofer's<sup>1</sup> Test for Bile-salts.*—Place 5 mls. of the solution to be tested in a test-tube and add a few grains of common table sugar, sucrose. Shake the solution until the crystals are dissolved, warming if necessary. Cool under the cold-water tap. Then layer with concentrated sulphuric acid; the acid underlies the solution. Carefully mix the contents of the tube by inclining it one way, then the other. Note the appearance of color at the junction. Similar color reactions are given by glucoprotids, like mucin, and since the bile contains such substances care in reporting a positive must be observed. The urine, likewise, contains aromatic substances, pigments, which imitate bile in giving these reactions. Protid itself gives a positive bile-salt reaction; so do protidtemns like pepton.<sup>2</sup> The Pettenkofer Test works best with pure solutions, protid free.

**Bile Pigments.**—These are derivatives of the red coloring-matter

<sup>1</sup> Pettenkofer, M. von, died 1901. Chemist in the Physiological Institute, Munich, Bavaria, Germany.

<sup>2</sup> This property is taken advantage of in Oliver's (Thomas Oliver, contemporary English physician) Test for bile-salts, but in this test, in place of the color reaction depending upon the presence of an aldehyde-rendering substance, it depends upon a chemical union between bile-salts and protid, or pepton. For Oliver's Test see Dictionary (cited on page 458), page 1174.



of the blood, hemoglobin, which is cleaved into (1) an iron-bearing part, hematin, and (2) an iron-free part, globin.<sup>1</sup> Hematin becomes changed in the liver and elsewhere to a variety of pigments.<sup>2</sup> They resemble hemoglobin in being weak acids and they form salts like sodium, potassium, and calcium, the first and last being especially important from the physiological standpoint. In addition to the chemical changes which these hemoglobin derivatives undergo in the liver, other products are formed by bacteria in the intestine, and while these compounds are excreted via the feces, some are absorbed into the blood. Chlorophyl, closely allied to hemoglobin, shares a like fate, but from chlorophyl arises a special pigment, chlorhematin or bilipurpurin. The excretion of bile pigments is endogenous, being constant under ordinary conditions, averaging 7.5 mgs. per kilo of body weight.

The *origin of bile from extrahepatic sources* has been demonstrated by Rich,<sup>3</sup> who finds that phagocytic cells, the so-called "clasmatocytes,"<sup>4</sup> ingesting erythrocytes in living cultures, may be seen to form bile pigments. Moreover, there is evidence that reticulo-endothelium<sup>5</sup> can perform similar pigment syntheses. A third reason for believing that bile pigments can be formed outside the liver is that when the liver is entirely cut out of the circulation the pigment still forms.<sup>6</sup>

*Chemistry of Bile Pigments.*—Like hemoglobin, the bile pigments are pyrrol compounds. We have already discussed the chemistry of hemoglobin<sup>7</sup> and traced its reduction as far as the iron-free compound, hematoporphyrin. This in turn becomes reduced to hemoporphyrin, the structural formula of which is given on page 378. From hemoporphyrin is derived a pigment such as occurs in old blood-clots known as hemosiderin. This is identical with one of the bile pigments, bilirubin<sup>8</sup> and we shall use the latter name. The structural formula

<sup>1</sup> Page 318.

<sup>2</sup> Some bile pigment may arise in the body other than in the liver, and substances other than hemoglobin may give rise to these substances. However, see Rous, Peyton, Jour. Exp. Med., vol. 37, p. 421, 1923. Also Mann, F. C., Bollman, J. L., and Magath, T. B., Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 69, p. 393, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> Rich, A. R. (Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md.). See Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, vol. 35, p. 415, 1924. Also Phys. Revs., vol. 5, p. 182, 1925.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *klasma*, fragment, and *kytos*, cell.

<sup>5</sup> Page 110.

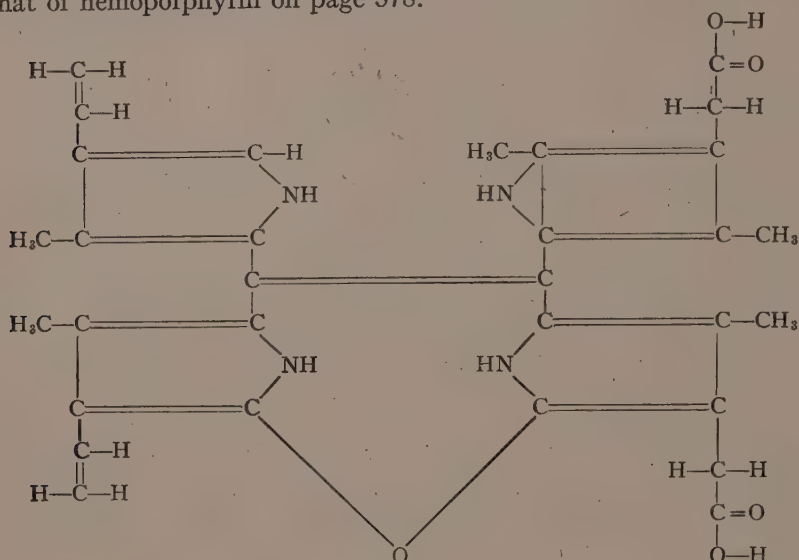
<sup>6</sup> Rich, A. R., Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., vol. 36, p. 233, 1925.

<sup>7</sup> Page 377.

<sup>8</sup> From the Latin, *bilis*, bile, and *ruber*, red; literally "red-bile." The color is actually brick red with much brown in it. See page 379.



of bilirubin as given by Hans Fischer<sup>1</sup> is as follows; compare it with that of hemoporphyrin on page 378.



*Bilirubin is characteristic of the bile of carnivores and of man on a high protid diet. It occurs in the hepatic duct in all vertebrated animals, but may become oxidized in the cyst to form biliverdin. It occurs in gall-stones as the calcium salt, calcium bilirubinate. It gives the stomach contents a yellowish tinge and may even color the blood-serum<sup>2</sup> by its presence. Similarly, the yellow color of the feces when distinctly golden yellow<sup>3</sup> is due to this pigment. This indicates that diarrheal condition where rapid movement of the intestinal contents carry bilirubin below the ascending colon. Normally, bilirubin is not found below this organ. In the transverse and descending colon and in the rectum, hydrobilirubin<sup>4</sup> is the normal pigment; this is due to the action of bacteria. Further action, involving loss of some of the nitrogen of the molecule, produces urobilin ("stercobilin"). It is probable that hydrobilirubin is not a single chemical compound, but consists of two parts, one being identical with the so-called uro-*

<sup>1</sup> Fischer, Hans, German physician, Professor of Internal Medicine, University of Munich, Bavaria, Germany.

<sup>2</sup> Such blood shows also a foam formation due to the presence of mucin (see Udranszky's Test, page 111).

<sup>3</sup> A bright lemon yellow is imparted by the substance santonin; see Chapter XVII.

<sup>4</sup> Responsible for the black color of the stools.

bilinogen<sup>1</sup> of the urine and the other yielding certain acids, like hematinic acid, an oxidation product of hematin.

The *oxidation of bilirubin* produces the second bile pigment of importance, biliverdin.<sup>2</sup> This property is utilized in several tests for bile-pigments, including that of Huppert,<sup>3</sup> Fouchet,<sup>4</sup> etc. Biliverdin is characteristic of the bile of herbivores and of man on a high vegetable diet.<sup>5</sup> Bile regurgitated into the stomach is typically green owing to the oxidation of the bilirubin to biliverdin. Likewise, vomitus is tinged green by biliverdin.

**Summary for Bile Pigments.**—(1) They are usually derived from hemoglobin in the liver, although they may be formed in other locations and from other substances.

(2) The chief pigment is bilirubin, which is converted into biliverdin after it leaves the liver. In herbivores, the preponderance of biliverdin is doubtless due to the retention of biliary secretions in the gall-bladder and in the intestines, which are especially long and involved in such animals.

(3) Bacteria affect the bile pigments, converting them into other substances which are absorbed into the blood, and these are excreted through the urine.

(4) Our present knowledge of bile, and especially of the pigments, gives us no reason to believe that the excretion of bile pigments is a process concerned with anything other than excretion; that is, bile is not excreted for any purpose other than to rid the body of this material.

(5) Clinically, the bile gives evidence of lesions of the liver, retention, etc. Thus, the white stools of the child may be due to (a) diarrhea, in which case bilirubin gives the diluted yellow or clay color<sup>6</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> Since this was found by Hans Fischer to form about one-half the whole substance, hydrobilirubin, it was called "hemibirubin," but it was then found to be identical with the pigment of the urine, urobilinogen, the mother substance of the urobilin of the urine and feces, which increases in certain liver involvements like cirrhosis, infections, lead-poisoning, in disease of the adrenals, etc. For the test of this urinary pigment see Chapter XV.

<sup>2</sup> From the Latin *bilis*, gall, and *viridis*, growing; that is green; literally, green bile.

<sup>3</sup> Huppert, H., Bohemian physician, died 1904. See page 472.

<sup>4</sup> Fouchet, H., French clinician; see *Comptes rendus*, vol. 80, p. 826, 1917.

<sup>5</sup> However, a glucid diet causes increased excretion of the bile and this may cause a rapid removal of liver bile through the common duct. Liver bile is preponderantly colored with bilirubin.

<sup>6</sup> The clay color may be due also to a high fat content in the stool.

or (b) to retention of the feces, in which case bilirubin is changed, by bacteria, into colorless pigment, leucohydrobilirubin.

#### Qualitative Tests for Bile Pigments:

*Huppert's*<sup>1</sup> *Test*.—Principle: Bile pigments are precipitated as calcium salts and bilirubin is oxidized to biliverdin, which imparts a green color. Procedure: Boil a test-tube of the bile solution<sup>2</sup> and add 2 drops of a saturated solution of magnesium sulphate<sup>3</sup>; then add 10 per cent. solution of barium chlorid, drop by drop, as long as a precipitate forms, after the solution is brought to the boil. Let stand to permit the precipitate to settle; or centrifuge the solution. Pour off and discard the supernatant fluid. To the residue add 5 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol and acidulate with 2 drops of concentrated sulphuric acid and a similar amount of 5 per cent. solution potassium chlorate,  $\text{KClO}_3$ . Boil. Let cool and the precipitate settle. The alcoholic layer above will then turn green. The color may be intensified by shaking out the pigment in the decanted alcohol layer with chloroform, adding one volume of water, and then allowing the chloroform layer to separate. The resultant color will be bluer.

*Gmelin's*<sup>4</sup> *Test*.—Principle: The usual bile pigment, bilirubin, is oxidized to a variety of substances, each having a characteristic color. Among these are biliverdin, etc. Procedure: Filter the solution suspected of containing bile through ordinary filter-paper in a funnel and then bring the paper, unfolded, into the fumes of a bottle of fuming nitric acid<sup>5</sup>; note the play of colors.

Confirming Method: Place 2 or 3 drops of the solution being analyzed on a porcelain plate or in an evaporating dish. Let the solution concentrate, or warm it carefully. Add a drop of fuming nitric acid to the spot, and note the play of colors.

Confirming Method: Overlay 5 mls. of fuming nitric acid with one volume of the solution being tested. Incline the tube so that the two liquids become slightly mixed. Note the colors.

<sup>1</sup> Page 471.

<sup>2</sup> If pure bile is used, dilute it with 10 volumes of distilled water before making the test.

<sup>3</sup> Equal parts by weight of  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  mixed at room temperature. During the mixing the temperature of the solution will fall to about  $10^\circ \text{C}$ . or lower, at which temperature the solution will be saturated; if the solution is used at  $20^\circ \text{C}$ ., then add 75 grams more to the solution, mix, and apply to the test as directed in the text.

<sup>4</sup> Gmelin, L., German physiologist, died 1853.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.

**Biliary Mucin**—This substance is a glucoprotid which adds to the viscosity of the bile. It may be precipitated by a method similar to that used for saliva<sup>1</sup>; that is, by adding acetic acid. Such a precipitate will contain not only mucin but also nucleo-albumin,<sup>2</sup> a phosphoprotid resembling ovovitellin and casein. The true mucin is probably secreted by the mucosa of the gall-bladder and the ducts. Its function may be that of lubricating the bladder bile, which may become very thick and tenacious, or indeed it may serve to aid in the passage of biliary concretions (gall-stones). The viscosity of mucin is responsible for Udranszky's test (page 111).

**Phospholipids** occur in the bile, but definite members of the group have not been identified. It is probable that lecithin is one of them. The function and origin of these phospholipids is still unknown.

**Inorganic Substances.**—Nearly 90 per cent. of gall-bladder bile and 97 per cent. of liver bile is water. We have called attention to the function of the gall-bladder of disposing of the water of liver bile, which concentrates the bladder bile. There is a wide-spread misconception of the reaction of bile as being highly alkaline. Bile is normally neutral or alkaline, and it may become slightly acid. Titration of bile to determine its reaction gives erroneous results, for it determines the total hydrogen-ion concentration possible, and not that which exists at the time and under the conditions prevailing when the determination is made.<sup>3</sup> Moreover, like all body fluids, bile is highly buffered<sup>4</sup> and, consequently, changes in hydrion concentration occur only when a considerable addition of acid or base is made. The statement is frequently made that the bile is alkaline and that its alkalinity serves to neutralize the acid in the stomach by regurgitation; or the neutralization may occur when the acid contents pass into the duodenum. The alkalinity of the bile alone is seldom adequate to do this. It is possible that buffers of the bile (due to alkali united to the bile-salts<sup>5</sup>) may be adequate to take care of much acid. Iron is present in bile to a small extent, 0.01 per cent. Traces of copper and of zinc have been found, the origin of which is unknown.

<sup>1</sup> Page 316.

<sup>2</sup> Not nucleoprotid, as books frequently state, for there is no glucid in its hydrolysis products as there is in the case of the nucleoprotids.

<sup>3</sup> See momentary acidity, page 82.

<sup>4</sup> Page 67.

<sup>5</sup> Sodions and phosphions united into the substances NaCl, KCl, CaCl<sub>2</sub>, etc. Protids, like phosphoprotid and mucin, also serve as buffers.



**Cholesterol and the Formation of Biliary Calculi (Gall-stones).—**

Cholesterol was first found in gall-stones and given the name "solid bile."<sup>1</sup> It forms about 0.1 per cent. of the bile in the liver and about 0.2 per cent. of that in the gall-bladder. The latter is approximately the concentration of cholesterol in the blood.

The *origin of cholesterol* of bile is not known, but there are indications that it may be derived from the cholesterol of the blood and of the foods. In the first place, there is little evidence that cholesterol is synthesized in the human body<sup>2</sup> and, therefore, we should expect phytosterol and other sterols admitted as food to supply the cholesterol of the blood. This expectation has been substantiated by Gardner,<sup>3</sup> who finds that of the total phytosterol taken in with the foods, only a part is absorbed, the remainder being reduced by bacterial action in the intestine to koprosterol and  $\beta$ -cholestanol, a derivative of phytosterol.<sup>4</sup> Second, cholesterol is found in the periphery of the erythrocytes and also free and in the form of cholesterol esters in the blood. Since many substances occurring in the bile are derived from blood (pigments, etc.), it is fair to assume that cholesterol is derived in a similar manner.

The *function of cholesterol* in the bile has not yet been determined. However, the close chemical relationship existing between cholesterol and the cholic acid of bile salts would suggest that these salts have their origin in cholesterol. The fact that the cholesterol of the gall-bladder is more concentrated than any other ingredient of the bile in the bladder has led to two assumptions: (1) Cholesterol is secreted by the walls of the gall-bladder, and (2) the greater concentration is due to a reversal of reaction, leading to the formation of cholesterol from bile-salts. Studies of cholesterol in the intestine require differentiation between this substance and other sterols, such as phytosterols.

<sup>1</sup> Page 210.

<sup>2</sup> Gardner, J. A. (University of London), and Fox, F. W. (St. George's Hospital Medical School, London), have reported that there is about 0.3 g. of cholesterol which must be accounted for in the average subject, per day, by synthesis in the body. See Proc. Roy. Soc. London, Series B, vol. 92, p. 358, 1921. Also see Thannhauser, S., Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med., vol. 141, p. 290, 1923, who finds no evidence of cholesterol synthesis. Lastly, Channon (H. J. University College, London) finds evidence of cholesterol synthesis in experimental animals (Biochem. Jour., vol. 19, p. 424, 1925).

<sup>3</sup> Gardner, J. A., Biochem. Jour., vol. 15, p. 244, 1921.

<sup>4</sup> Beta-cholestanol is obtained by artificial reduction in the test-tube with hydrogen in the presence of a catalyzer.



This is so difficult to accomplish that the fate of cholesterol in the body still remains unknown. Certainly, much of it is lost in the stool as koprosterol, the characteristic sterol of the feces.

*Cholesterol is found in many organs in pathological states.* Wherever absorption of products of metabolism is interfered with, cholesterol is found, as, for instance, in atheromatous<sup>1</sup> arteries, hydrocele<sup>2</sup> fluid, etc. It does not undergo autolysis and so persists when other substances are destroyed. Therefore, cholesterol may possibly be a by-product, excreted by way of the bile. Bloor has shown that some of the fat of the blood is transported as cholesterol esters of the fatty acids and the alcohol, cholesterol. It may be that when this purpose is accomplished, cholesterol becomes a waste-product.

**Gall-stones** (biliary calculi) are formed in the gall-bladder under conditions not completely understood. Various theories regarding their origin have been presented. In this connection, certain facts should be reviewed: (1) Cholesterol has so low a solubility in water that it may be considered partially insoluble. (2) The principal agents maintaining the cholesterol in solution in the body fluids are the bile-salts, which vary in concentration in different persons. (3) Additional agents holding cholesterol in solution are the lipids, neutral fats, phospholipids, etc. (4) Bile in the gall-bladder is in a static condition, which, in other foods, is conducive to the deposition of cholesterol. The bile is formed under low pressure and its viscid nature accentuates the slowness with which it passes from the liver, gall-bladder, and common duct. (5) Cholesterol is precipitated by colloids of electropositive nature, as are all other biliary components (pigments, etc.) added to the bile during a catarrhal affection of the ducts or bladder mucosa (mucin and phosphoprotid). All of these facts and principles point to the possible origin of gall-stones from some lesion or pathological condition of the biliary apparatus. On the other hand, cholesterol is increased in the blood in certain diseases, notably infections of the biliary tract due to the migration of intestinal bacteria (typhoid, influenza, coli, etc.) into the biliary apparatus. In pregnancy there is an increase of cholesterol in the blood.<sup>3</sup> Certain races are more subject to gall-stones than others and in such instances, hypercholesteremia, or increased cholesterol in the blood, is present. In such races there is usually a

<sup>1</sup> Greek *athere*, oatmeal porridge; hence softening of the walls of the vessels.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *hydor*, water, and *kele*, a lump (tumor).

<sup>3</sup> Chapter XVI.

higher cholesterol content in the food. We cannot here go into the various theories regarding the origin of gall-stones, but the following statements are based upon recent researches in this field<sup>1</sup>:

**Types of Gall-stones.**—Gall-stones are of two kinds (Fig. 150): (1) Of *non-inflammatory origin*, and (2) of *inflammatory origin*. There are two characteristic forms of stones belonging to the first group: pure cholesterol stones, the planes of crystalline cleavage being



Fig. 150.—Different types of gall-stones: Above, faceted cholesterol-pigment-calcium stones. Below: Left, cylindrical cholesterol pigment stone; right, true cholesterol stone, *i. e.*, combination stone with cholesterol nucleus.

radial; and pigmented calcium stones. The former have the following characteristics:

(1) Composed of nearly pure cholesterol, intermixed with small amounts of protid and calcium.

(2) When the stone is sectioned, or broken, the structure is coarsely crystalline; there are no lamellæ or plates which are characteristic of other forms of stones.

<sup>1</sup> For an account of modern theories of gall-stone formation see the following: Aschoff, L., *Lectures on Pathology* (delivered in the United States, 1924). New York, Paul B. Hoeber Inc., 1924, Chapter IX, The Origin of Gall-stones.

(3) They have been called "cholesterol solitaires" because of their occurrence singly.

(4) They occur chiefly in persons who have never shown any indication of gall-stone trouble.

(5) They occur in persons of any age, even in children. They are found in women after pregnancy has begun.

The origin of this form of stone is attributable to increased cholesterol in the blood. This increase may be connected with fat metabolism in the manner suggested above.<sup>1</sup> These latter statements are not accepted by Naunyn,<sup>2</sup> but Aschoff believes that the pure cholesterol stones are responsible for about one-third of all the varieties of gall-stones. They are either pure cholesterol stones as such, or pure cholesterol stones combined with other substances to form the so-called "combination stones," which are the second kind (2) of gall-stones referred to on page 476.

The *origin* of this second group of stones is explained by Aschoff as follows: Hypercholesteremia leads to the formation of pure cholesterol stones. These fill the lumen of the gall-bladder and lead to inflammation of the neck of this organ. Protid and bile pigment (bilirubin) from the bile are intermingled with the pus and débris from the inflammation. Calcium is one of the important constituents, especially of the cortex of the stone; the calcium is derived from the mucous membrane of the gall-bladder. Such combination stones occur in numbers, but there is only one true cholesterol stone in the group, the others, always smaller, and lacking the radiating crystalline nucleus, but consisting of the same material that makes up the cortex of the true stones. These "false" stones are always faceted as shown in Fig. 150. On sectioning, one finds that the layers are not arranged radially, but in lamellæ, or plates.

A stone, characteristic of the gall-bladder, but found also in the hepatic duct and in the smaller bile-ducts, is the *pure pigment stone*. It occurs in large numbers in sizes from that of a grain of rice to that of a pea. They are called frequently "mulberry stones" owing to the resemblance to that form of fruit. In consistency they are firm, brittle, and difficult to cut with a knife. Sometimes they are found in the form of a disintegrated mass, or coarse black sand. They are formed as small concretions, having no nucleus or cortex.

<sup>1</sup> Page 475.

<sup>2</sup> Naunyn, F. (German clinician, formerly of Strasbourg), see the book, *Die Entstehung und die Aufbau des Gallenstein*, Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1923.

The *pure cholesterol stones* are formed in a medium poor in protid, while the cholesterol-pigment-calcium stone arises in a medium rich in protid.

These two types are supplemented by a third group of stones arising through the stasis of the contents of the bile bladder. They are the "*earthy*" stones, consisting of calcium and bilirubin. They are lamellated, less dense than other stones, and are laid down around some nucleus, chiefly a pure cholesterol stone. They make a combination stone of the second order.

**The Analysis of Biliary Calculi.**—For clinical purposes it is frequently desirable to know the chemical and physical composition of gall-stones. We have just discussed the various kinds. They are presented here in four groups:

(1) *Pure Cholesterol Stones.*—By means of a small hammer fracture the stone and observe the layers of cholesterol in the form of "interwoven tree-trunks," not in plates. Test for protid is not pronounced and may be negative. Test for calcium is generally positive, but not pronounced. They show no facets, because they are formed singly.

(2) *Combination Stones.*—These stones may be "true" or "false." The true stones have a cholesterol nucleus, with bilirubin and calcium in the cortex. The false stones are found in the same group as the true stone (of which there is only one in the group), but they lack the cholesterol nucleus. They are faceted, owing to being packed into small space. Scrapings from the external surface, treated with concentrated HCl, will demonstrate the presence of calcium carbonate by the evolution of CO<sub>2</sub>. These stones are lighter than water and therefore float when thrown upon the surface of water in a beaker.

(3) *Pure Pigment Stones.*—Of small size and usually of "mulberry" shape and appearance. They are not easily crushed. The fractured stone shows no zones of nucleus, cortex, etc. There is no effervescence when HCl is applied to the external surface. Qualitative tests for iron and for copper are positive. Test for copper: Crush a stone and treat it with 1 drop of concentrated hydrochlorid acid. Dilute with distilled water to make about 2 mls. of solution. Add excess desk reagent concentrated ammonium hydroxid. A blue color of cupric hydroxid indicates a positive test. These stones sink in water.

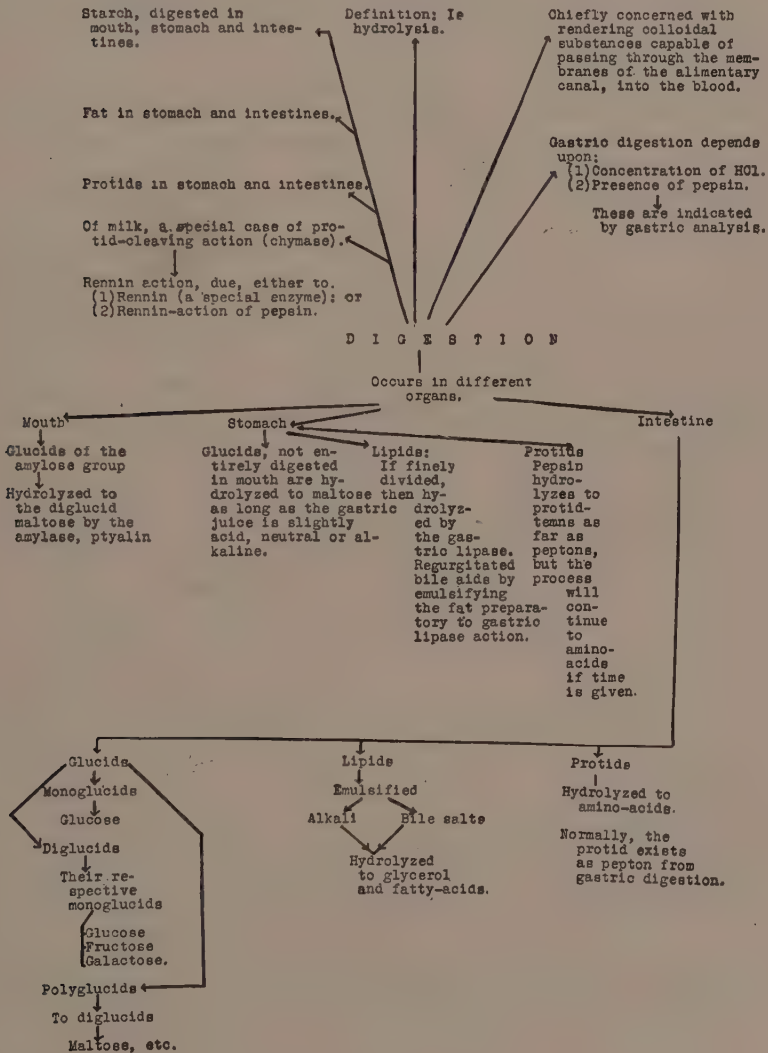
(4) *Lamellated Calcium and Bilirubin Stones.*—They are less dense than the mulberry stones (3). Test for phosphate<sup>1</sup> is strongly

<sup>1</sup> Page 355.



positive. Bile pigments may be identified in gall-stones by shaking up the ground stone with chloroform, and filtering. Bilirubin is demonstrated on the filtrate by adding one volume of distilled water, 2 drops of concentrated  $H_2SO_4$ , and 2 drops of 5 per cent. solution of potassium chlorate. Heat the solution. Let cool and note the green color of the chloroform layer.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY





## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bradley, H. C. Autolysis and Atrophy, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 415, 1922.
- Broun, G. C., McMaster, P. D., and Rous, P. Studies on Total Bile, *Jour. Exp. Med.*, vol. 37, p. 395, 1923; p. 421, 1923; p. 699, 1923, and p. 733, 1923.
- Carlson, A. J., Lebensohn, J. E., and Perlman, S. J. Secretin, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 66, p. 178, 1916.
- Carlson, A. J. The Secretion of the Gastric Juice in Health and Disease, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 1, 1923.
- Cathcart, E. P. The Physiology of Protein Metabolism, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 2d ed., 1921.
- Collip, J. B. On the Formation of Hydrochloric Acid in the Gastric Tubules of the Vertebrated Stomach. University of Toronto Studies, Physiological Series Number 35. Toronto, The University Library, 1920.
- Downs, A. W. The Influence of Internal Secretions on Blood-pressure and the Formation of Bile, *Amer. Jour. Physiol.*, vol. 52, p. 498, 1920.
- Hawk, P. B. Practical Physiological Chemistry, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1923, 8th ed.
- Lyon, B. B. V. Non-surgical Drainage of the Gall Tract, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1923.
- Osler, William Beaumont. *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, volume and page cited on page 434.
- Rehfuss, M. J., and Hawk, P. B. Gastric Analysis. A series of articles summarizing extensive work of Hawk, Rehfuss, and collaborators, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 76, pp. 377, 564, 1340; vol. 77, p. 2118. Also vol. 75, p. 449.
- Rehfuss, M. J., Bergeim, O., Hawk, P. B., Spencer, W. H., Meyer, G. P., et al. Gastro-intestinal Studies, *Amer. Jour. Physiol.*, vol. 45, p. 1; vol. 48, pp. 174, 411; vol. 49, pp. 204, 222, 254; vol. 51, p. 332; vol. 52, pp. 1, 28, 248; vol. 53, p. 65, 1915.
- Vernon, H. M. Intracellular Enzymes, London, John Murray, 1908.
- Whipple, G. H. The Origin and Significance of the Constituents of the Bile, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 440, 1922.

## CHAPTER X

### THE ABSORPTION OF FOODS

"The extreme assumption that the laws of physics and chemistry are inadequate to explain the causation of vital phenomena is, of course, not justifiable, for it postulates that we fully comprehend now all the laws of the physical world."—*Macallum*,<sup>1</sup> "Surface Tension and Vital Phenomena."

BIOLOGICALLY, the alimentary canal is an inclusion from the outside—an incorporation, as it were, of the environment. Functionally, it is much the same. Foods enter the canal through the mouth; yet these foods cannot be utilized unless they happen to be in a suitable physical or chemical state for absorption. Digestion constitutes the series of processes which so alter the foods ingested that they may be assimilated.

#### ABSORPTION

*The process whereby the foods (whether already in a state fitted for assimilation or rendered so by the process of digestion) are assimilated by the organism is called absorption.*<sup>2</sup> This involves a passage of the food substances through membranes which form the walls of the alimentary canal and through the circulatory system which carries them to the different parts of the body.

**In What Portions of the Canal Does Absorption Take Place?—**The food remains in the mouth for so short a time that we should scarcely expect this organ to be solely absorptive in function. The same may be said of the esophagus. The stomach is different, however, for the food remains there for a period varying from a few minutes, in the case of pure substances like glucose, to over four hours in the case of protids. Nevertheless, the structure of the walls of the stomach does not indicate an absorptive function. With regard to the absorption of water in the stomach, it has been known for many years that patients suffering from pyloric stenosis become very thirsty

<sup>1</sup> Page 27; also Fig. 164.

<sup>2</sup> The term "resorption" has been used; since the prefix *re-* means back or again, and since the foods never were in the body before, the term is hardly appropriate.

even when copious amounts of water are given by mouth; the water is not absorbed into the system. On the contrary, it passes through the pylorus into the intestine. Gases, like carbon dioxid, however, are absorbed. Alcohol, mono- and diglucids, like sucrose and maltose, and, in smaller quantities, dextrin, pepton, and neutral fats, are also absorbed by the stomach walls. However, this absorption is insignificant compared to that in the intestine.

*Absorption in the Duodenum.*—The duodenum<sup>1</sup> partakes of the dual function of digestion and absorption. It is the widest portion of the small intestine. The surface is highly specialized for absorption, the mucous membrane being thrown into folds known as valvulæ, which, in turn, have small finger-like villi on their surfaces. The folds are permanent and do not vary with expansion or contraction of the lumen of the duodenum. The villi, however, are reduced from 1 to 0.5 mm. as the duodenum becomes distended. The fact that the villi occur more abundantly in the duodenum than in the jejunum and ileum leads to the inference (for which there is abundant proof) that the function of absorption is primarily in the duodenum. The villus is supplied with two circulatory systems: (1) The blood system, whereby a small artery delivers blood to the base of the villus, whence smaller and smaller arterioles and capillaries distribute the arterial blood throughout the organ to its tip. After gaseous exchange in the villus the arterial blood is collected by a capillary network connected with the venous system. The vein leaves the villus at its base near the entrance of the artery. (2) The lymphatic system, represented by a lacteal, which usually consists of a single axial lymphatic vessel, the lacteal proper, communicating with a loose lymph-plexus lying just within the muscular coat of the villus. Special smooth muscle-fibres running lengthwise of the villus propel the fluids in the lacteal. The surface of the lacteal nearest the lumen of the intestine is composed of goblet and columnar cells through and between which the digested foods in the duodenum pass. This is the setting for the transfer of digested foods from the alimentary canal to the lymph and blood system.

*Absorption in the Jejunum and Ileum.*—The villi are longest and

<sup>1</sup> Latin, *duodeni*, "twelve-at-one-time." Pronounced "duo-dē'num." Ignorant persons sometimes pronounce the word "duod'enum," an etymological impossibility. The twelve refers to the average length of the duodenum—equal to the width of that number of fingers laid side by side.

most conspicuous in the duodenum and become progressively smaller and less significant in the jejunum and ileum, and finally disappear in the terminal ileum. The jejunum and ileum have many feet of absorptive surface, whereas the duodenum has only about 10 inches. The proportion of food absorbed by each of the three portions of the small intestine is not known. The numerous villi<sup>1</sup> in the duodenum indicate rapid absorption, but the greater part of total absorption must occur in the jejunum and ileum, since they have a much larger absorptive surface.

**What Substances are Absorbed?**—We have said that a small amount of fat is absorbed by the stomach and the same is true of the intestine. Other colloids, like albumin, are also absorbed as shown by filling an isolated loop of the intestine with serum of the blood from the same animal; both crystalloids, such as inorganic salts, and colloids (like serum albumin) are completely absorbed into the blood, which must be left undisturbed in making the ligation isolating the loop of the intestine. However, this is of no special importance, the substances usually absorbed being crystalloids of lower molecular size. The monoglucids such as glucose are absorbed more rapidly than the diglucids like cane-sugar, and under normal circumstances diglucids are not absorbed until they are hydrolyzed to monoglucids—glucose, fructose, and galactose. When taken into the alimentary tract in large amounts the diglucids act as inorganic salts and attract water, thus exhibiting a laxative effect. Similarly, inorganic substances exhibit differences in absorbability, sodium chlorid passing from the intestine into the blood more quickly than sodium sulphate. Chiefly, this is a matter of the valence of the substance, the higher the valence, the lower the absorption, as exhibited by the monovalent ion  $\text{Cl}^-$  as contrasted with the bivalent  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$  ion just mentioned. The low absorbability of the sulphion is utilized in laxatives, like magnesium with sulphion, Epsom salt,  $\text{MgSO}_4$ ; while Epsom salt has additional properties in purgation, the fact that the salt is absorbed but slowly insures that water will be extracted from the blood into the lumen of the intestine; this aids catharsis.

**How are Substances Absorbed from the Intestine into the Blood?**—This question has never been satisfactorily answered. We may briefly summarize the salient points which have been determined:

<sup>1</sup> The movement of food through the duodenum is rapid normally, as determined by fluoroscopy.



(1) Absorption is not simple diffusion; absorption must proceed sometimes from higher concentration to lower. Thus, the normal salinity of the blood is about that of a NaCl solution of 0.9 per cent. strength. If a loop of the intestine is filled with a NaCl solution in strengths not greater than 2 per cent., water will pass into the blood. However, from an NaCl solution greater than 2 per cent. water is not absorbed



Fig. 151.—A. P. Mathews, Professor of Biochemistry, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, Ohio. Author of the well-known *Physiological Chemistry*. Contributor to the dynamics of biochemistry, absorption, adsorption, and to certain phases of descriptive biochemistry, such as lecithin, etc.

into the blood, but passes into the intestine. Magnesium sulphate given along with drugs or after their oral administration causes retarded absorption of the drugs. (2) When substances are absorbed into the blood the tissues utilize more oxygen; that is, work is performed in absorption. (3) There is a selective action on the part of the membranes. Certain substances are absorbed much more quickly than others and in some cases absorption is almost suppressed. Thus NaCl passes from the intestine into the blood more quickly than compounds having the sulphion  $\text{SO}_4^-$ , as in  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , as we have mentioned above. Water is absorbed into the intestine from the blood, thus facilitating the passage of the feces. Again, glucose is absorbed much more quickly than sucrose, and it is easily possible to take so

large an amount of diglucids, such as sucrose, lactose, etc., that they act similarly to magnesium sulphate, causing the passage of water from the blood into the intestine. This selective action is lost when tissues are injured, as occurs by adding a small amount of sodium fluorid, which is a cell poison.

Certain characteristics of the process of absorption are noteworthy: (1) Absorption normally takes place from electrolytic solu-



tions such as the digested products, protidtemns, lipidtemns<sup>1</sup> and glucidtemns, along with inorganic substances. The colloidal, non-diffusible substances present in the intestine are insignificant. (2) Absorption products pass into a typically colloidal solution, the blood, or, at first, into the lymph which, while lacking the erythrocytes, yet contain a high percentage of protid. (3) Absorption is ordinarily an irreversible process, that is, absorption goes to completion if the substances are absorbed. (4) Complete absorption from the intestine is due to the blood constantly removing the absorbed materials. The case is similar to a chemical reaction in which the products are not permitted to retard its progress.

With these characteristics in mind, we may utilize a principle of modern physical chemistry which we have employed before<sup>2</sup> for similar purposes, namely, the Donnan equilibrium. This involves an unequal distribution of ions which are freely diffusible through a membrane when it has upon one side substances which do not diffuse, or do so reluctantly, like colloids. The blood contains non-diffusible serum globulin and albumin, and these prevent ions from diffusing into the intestine, while the ions are free to pass from the intestine into the blood. The movement of the blood carries these substances with it, making room for others.<sup>3</sup> Besides protids, other non-diffusible materials exist in the blood, and all act like colloids in preventing the passage of ions. The process is not, therefore, dependent upon the osmotic pressures, but upon selective diffusion, etc. Those substances which diffuse rapidly, such as NaCl, are quantitatively removed by the circulation, while those which diffuse more slowly, like MgSO<sub>4</sub>, serve to hinder the diffusion of ions of similar sort.

It must be recalled that the digested food materials are electrolytes. Examples of these are amino-acids, fatty acids, and monoglucids like glucose, which are known to assume different forms under different conditions as revealed by the polariscope. The glucids are not well understood as far as diffusion is concerned. In each case we have substances which ionize into a large anion and a cation like H<sup>+</sup>, Na<sup>+</sup>, etc. Thus the amino-acid glycin ionizes as CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>.COO<sup>-</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The fatty acids are insoluble in water, being diffusible by aid of their solubility in the lipids composing the animal membranes.

<sup>2</sup> Page 103.

<sup>3</sup> Macht, D. I. (Johns Hopkins Medical School, Baltimore, Md.), has shown that slowly moving currents favor absorption over rapidly moving fluids.

and  $H^+$ . In an alkaline medium all such substances bear negative charges which is proved by their wandering toward the positive pole in an electric stream, such as exists in the blood. Hence we can assume that there is a tendency toward the diffusion of anions into the blood. But what of the cations? As far as cation  $H^+$  is concerned, it has been shown by Loeb<sup>1</sup> that hydrions preponderate outside a membrane where anions within the membrane are non-diffusible, as in the case of the protids of the blood. Hence we are able to erect a plan for absorption based upon modern theories of physical chemistry. The simplicity of this explanation has appealed to some as inadequate to show how substances pass through several different membranes like the intestinal endothelium, the muscular and parenchymal layers of the villi, and the endothelium of the capillary of the latter. It must be remembered that in each case similar factors are involved, and the passage from the alimentary canal to blood is a series of events each identical with the whole phenomenon as far as mechanism is concerned.

**Where the Different Foods are Absorbed.**—*Glucids* are absorbed directly as monoglucids like glucose into the capillaries of the villi. While diglucids, like sucrose, are crystalloids, and therefore pass through membranes, yet the rate of absorption is low because of their molecular size, and they must be hydrolyzed to their component monoglucids to pass readily through the walls of the intestine into the blood. This is a point of great importance in tolerance tests,<sup>2</sup> for normally 320 gs. of sucrose must be taken by mouth before glycosuria occurs, whereas the ordinary test with glucose injected into a vein shows that 100 gs. may cause the appearance of glucose in the urine.<sup>3</sup> It is easy for a normal person to take enough lactose to cause diarrhea by the same mechanism as in the case of saline cathartics. Maltase does not occur in human blood, and for this reason absorbed maltose exists in the human blood for some time. Of the monoglucids, glucose is absorbed most quickly, then galactose, and finally fructose.<sup>4</sup> Just before death fructose is demonstrable in human blood; it disappears about the time of birth. Pentoses are absorbed by the alimentary

<sup>1</sup> Page 103.

<sup>2</sup> This means the amount of sugar which is just insufficient to cause glycosuresis (see page 504).

<sup>3</sup> Page 755.

<sup>4</sup> Hewitt, J. A. (King's College, London). See *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 18, p. 161, 1924.

tract. Nagano<sup>1</sup> has studied the regions of the alimentary tract where absorption of glucids takes place.

*Lipids* differ from the glucids (and protids) in that their products are absorbed into the lymphatic system by the lacteals. The lymphatic system pours its fluids into the subclavian vein near the heart, thus obviating passage through the liver. Other substances, like glucidtemns and protidtemns, enter the portal system and go to the liver. Some fat passes into the portal system, but the greater amount by far is taken up by the lacteals and carried to the blood by the thoracic duct. Unlike other substances, fat is resynthesized in the epithelium of the intestine from the products glycerol and fatty acids which are formed during digestion. Again, there is evidence that some unaltered fat is transported into the lymphatic system either by the activity of the epithelial cells of the villus, or by leucocytes which pass (diapedesis<sup>2</sup>) into the lacteal spaces in the villi. How much fat in the form of "fat dust" or minute globules of fat pass into the lacteal spaces is not known. The lacteal lies as an irregular space in the middle of the villus and fat globules temporarily accumulate in the epithelial cells of the intestine, in the subepithelial spaces, and in the cells surrounding the lacteal; but there is a constant flow of these fat globules into the collecting spaces which are in communication with the cisterna chyli and thence into the thoracic duct which flows into the subclavian vein.

Fats are transported in the blood as:

(1) Neutral fat.

(2) Hydrolyzed fat:

(a) Glycerol esters of two fatty acids, phosphoric acid and cholin (lecithins).

(b) Cholesterol esters of fatty acids.

Some soap is formed by the alkali of the intestinal juice and the fatty acids from digested fat. They aid in the emulsification of the fat by lowering the surface tension, permitting the particles to become finely divided. Unsaturated fatty acids are more rapidly absorbed than the saturated ones and the same is true of the fats themselves.

*Protids*.—Thanks to the researches of American investigators and

<sup>1</sup> Nagano, J. (Breslau), Pflüger's Arch. fuer die gesammte Physiol., vol. 90, p. 389, 1902.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *dia*, through, and *pede*, a shackle; hence a boot, from which the meaning to progress.

especially of Folin,<sup>1</sup> we know the manner in which protidtemns are absorbed. Typically these are amino-acids, but probably there is absorption of some of the lower peptids. Albumoses are toxic and, moreover, they are colloidal in nature and are not absorbed. Pepton possesses harmful effects<sup>2</sup> when introduced into the blood, for the coagulation time is prolonged, a fall of blood-pressure occurs, and other pharmacological effects are manifest. Moreover, pepton injected into the blood is excreted nearly quantitatively. We should not expect pepton to be absorbed in any quantity. In fact, pepton is not found in the blood. Amino-acids pass readily through the membranes and are carried to the liver by the portal system. Unlike the lipids, no synthesis occurs until the amino-acids reach the tissues. Absorption takes place through the blood capillaries in the lacteals, similarly as in the case of the glucidtemns.

The manner of absorption of the products of digestion may be summarized as follows:

- (1) Glucids and protids into the blood directly.
- (2) Lipids into the lymphatic system and then into the blood.

The reason for this difference in manner of absorption probably depends upon the formation of fat emboli<sup>3</sup> in the blood-stream under certain conditions. These masses of fat find their way into the smaller vessels of the coronary circulation of the heart, the capillaries of the lungs, or into smaller vessels of the brain in which they may occlude the blood-vessels and cause death. To obviate any sudden addition of fat to the circulation, especially where the movement of the blood-stream is not rapid, the fat is sprayed into the rapidly moving stream near the heart.

### DEMONSTRATIONS

The following Demonstrations concerning absorption are made in order that some of the chief factors in this process may be visualized:

1. **Experimental Lipemia.**—Feed a cat or a white rat for a day or more previous to the demonstration a high fat diet (steak with suet

<sup>1</sup> Page 19. See the series of papers Protein Metabolism from the Standpoint of Blood and Tissue Analysis, Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 11, p. 87; vol. 12, pp. 141, 253, 1912. Non-protein Nitrogen of the Blood in Health and Disease, Physiol. Revs., vol. 2, p. 460, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Pepton "shock" of the pharmacodynamic laboratory is due to albumoses found in the so-called Witte's "pepton" which is largely albumose. See page 489.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *embolos*, a plug.



ground up with it and the whole fried). Place the cat under a bell-jar and by means of a rubber tube pass a current of illuminating gas into the jar. After death, stretch the animal upon a board and perform laparotomy. The lymphatic system is readily traced owing to the engorgement of the vessels with white chyle. Expose the thoracic duct and its termination in the precava. Remove some of the blood before it has clotted and add a small amount of potassium oxalate to prevent clotting. Place the blood in a 15-ml. centrifuge tube (Fig. 208) and centrifuge at moderate speed. Note the collection of creamy material on top of the various zones in the tube; this zone is fat. The Demonstration may also be made as follows: Feed the cat butter stained with a fat-staining dye like scarlet-red,<sup>1</sup> and repeat the operation as before. The presence of the stained oil through the body is indicated by the pinkish tinge imparted to the tissues. The oxalate may be omitted in the centrifuge experiment, the blood being defibrinated by beating it with a small bundle of wires or small "pipe-cleaning brush" sold in the tobacco shops; the clot is removed and the serum centrifuged. The reddish or pinkish layer of stained fat is then readily detected. This condition is clinically known as lipemia. It appears in diabetes mellitus (Chapters XV and XVI).

**2. Retention of Diglucids in the Intestine.**—Select two white rats of similar weight and appearance. Paint the back of one with a dye or otherwise distinguish it from the second rat. Feed the marked rat a bolus of 2 gs. lactose in a piece of steak or gelatin capsule. Feed both rats plentifully of bran mixed with boiled white of egg. After fifteen minutes place the rats in different cages and note the character of the feces in each case. The marked rat should exhibit stools of loose consistency, due to the cathartic action of the non-absorbed lactose. Since both rats have been subjected to the same conditions other than the feeding of lactose, this sugar is the cause of the diarrhea.

The laxative effect of lactose may also be readily demonstrated upon the human subject.

**3. Albumose Shock.**—This Demonstration may be made by either the physiology or the biochemistry department. Appoint (*a*) surgeon, (*b*) assistant surgeon, (*c*) anesthetist, and (*d*) technician from the members of the class.<sup>2</sup> Select a rabbit and anesthetize it as

<sup>1</sup> Page 194, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> In the case of large classes several groups may be selected each to perform this Demonstration.



follows: Lay the animal on its back in your lap and force between its jaws a thin flat stick with a hole in the middle large enough to admit a small "male" catheter to serve as stomach-tube. Measure the length of the tube from the rabbit's teeth to the middle of the stomach and mark the distance with ink upon the tube. Lubricate the tube with vaselene and pass it carefully up to the mark which will indicate that the tip of the tube is in the rabbit's stomach.<sup>1</sup> Now insert a small "physiological" funnel holding about 10 mls. of liquid into the free end of the stomach-tube and slowly pour into it a solution of urethan.<sup>2</sup> After half an hour apply to the rabbit's nose an anesthetizing ether cone. Let the animal inhale as long as there is an eye-reflex, which is determined by passing your finger over the cornea; blinking is continued until very deep narcosis occurs. Tie the animal upon an operating board. With scissors clip away the fur from the ventral surface of the neck and make a longitudinal incision along the median line. Expose the trachea by means of a blunt instrument like the handle of a scalpel; locate upon one side of the neck the carotid artery by means of its pulsations and clear the tissues from a part of it, avoiding injuring the nerve which passes in the same sheath. Pass silk ligatures beneath it, but without including the nerve, at either end of the cut. Now ligate distally, that is, farthest from the heart, and then place a hemostat as far proximally (toward the heart) as possible, in order to isolate a segment of the artery. By means of round-pointed scissors make a V-shaped cut across the artery in the swollen portion and hold the angular tab of the cut wall by means of forceps while your assistant introduces a cannula and ties it in place by means of a second ligature, previously laid under the vessel. Fill the cannula with physiologically normal saline<sup>3</sup> and attach to the tube coming from a manometer which contains magnesium sulphate solution and which records its movements upon smoked paper fixed to a slowly rotating kymograph<sup>4</sup>. Now remove the hemostat from the carotid

<sup>1</sup> Inadvertently the stomach-tube may enter one of the bronchi, in which case froth will appear at the open end of the tube and the froth will pulsate with the breaths. Lung edema will almost certainly follow and the rabbit should be abandoned. In order to insure against the tube entering the trachea proceed as follows: Lay the tube on the table and note which way it curves; then pass the tube so that the arc it forms is concave to the animal; this will insure that the tip is directed in its passage toward the dorsum and runs little chance of entering the trachea.

<sup>2</sup> For dosage see Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Page 115.

<sup>4</sup> For illustration see Fig. 178, page 599, where the kymograph is used in connection with another form of apparatus.

and the pressure of the blood will cause the manometer record to rise to a certain height. Permit the drum to revolve until a short tracing has been made; this is the level of normal blood-pressure. Inject, slowly, by means of a hypodermic syringe either into the femoral vein or into the jugular vein of the opposite side of the neck 2 mls. of 10 per cent. Witte's pepton<sup>1</sup> per kilogram of rabbit's weight. Note the fall of blood-pressure. Injection of more of the "pepton" causes a still further lowering of the blood-pressure.

*Treatment.*—The fact that the animal responds but slowly to agents used to raise the blood-pressure indicates the severity of the trouble and that it is most improbable that protidtemns are absorbed into the blood in any quantity in the form of substances higher than the amino-acids. (1) Inject into the vein 1 or 2 drops of 1:1000 epinephrin solution<sup>2</sup> which normally should cause a rise of blood-pressure; note the slight effect. (2) Repeat, using 5 drops of epinephrin.

**4. Absorption of Inorganic Substances.**—Using the same animal while continuing anesthesia, expose about a decimeter of small intestine and throw ligatures around each end, thus making an isolated loop, but leaving the blood-supply intact. Inject into the loop 10 mls. of 1 per cent. potassium ferricyanid solution. Then after five minutes draw 2 mls. of blood from the jugular or femoral vein and permit the blood to clot. Centrifuge at low speed and then decant the supernatant serum. Dilute the serum with 1 volume of water and add to it, drop by drop, ferric chlorid 0.1 per cent. solution. In the presence of ferric iron like ferric chlorid, Prussian blue<sup>3</sup> is formed, recognizable by its color.

**Absorption from the Large Intestine.**—Man is intermediate between herbivorous and carnivorous animals in regard to the length of the large intestine and its accessories, cecum and appendix. Herbivores are characterized by the great length of the intestine, carnivores, by the shortness. The intestine of the sheep, as a typical herbivore, is twenty-seven times the length of the body, while in man it is only about one-fourth that, or seven times the body length. On the average omnivorous diet of man the large intestine has little to do,

<sup>1</sup> This form of reagent must be used. American pepton contains an extremely small amount of albumose.

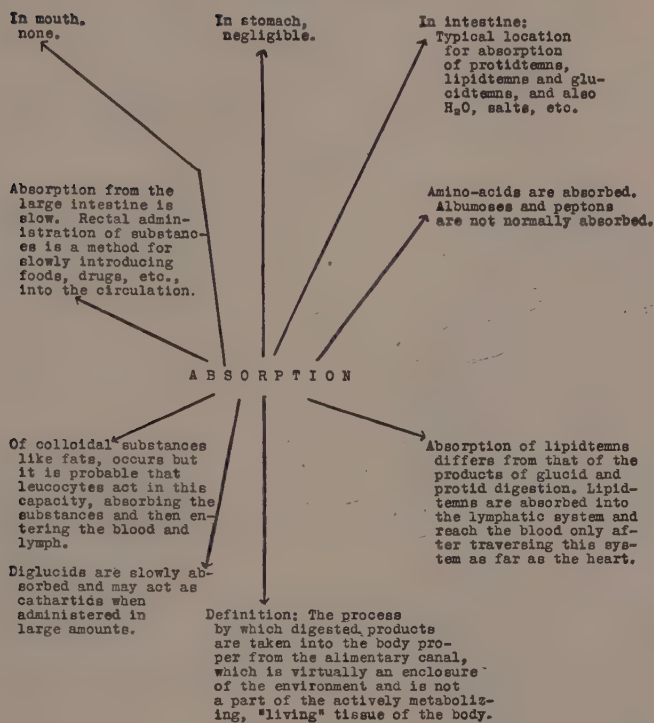
<sup>2</sup> Page 270.

<sup>3</sup> The reaction is:  $K_4Fe(CN)_6 + 4FeCl_3 = Fe_4[Fe(CN)_6]_3 + 4KCl + 4Cl_2$ .

the cellulose content of the foods being relatively low as compared to that of the herbivore, and the digested foods are absorbed in the ileum or higher in the small intestine. If, however, the diet contains much cellulose (as one consisting of spinach, lettuce, cabbage, bran, etc.), the undigested residue enters the large intestine and will not behave as in a typical herbivore where the cellulose becomes hydrolyzed by cytase, a cellulose-splitting enzyme, and the products become absorbed into the blood from the walls of the large intestine. Such an enzyme does not occur in man. Bacteria, however, cause hydrolysis and other changes in the foods in the large intestine and the products are absorbed. Rectal feeding is resorted to in cases of stricture of the esophagus or pylorospasm, or in other conditions in which food cannot be taken through the usual channels; but absorption is a much slower process in the large intestine than in the small. Whereas almost unlimited quantities of glucose are absorbed by the small intestine, the large intestine absorbs only 6 gs. per hour. Water, likewise, is absorbed slowly, and this is a protective measure, for water must be left in the large intestine for the normal removal of the feces. In fact, one of the great problems of mankind, especially in civilized life, is to furnish enough water and undigested food residues to the large intestine to cause it to function properly. The low power of absorption from the large intestine is utilized in therapeutics when it is desirable to administer a certain medicine which is absorbed slowly. On the other hand, absorption of decomposed products from the large intestine leads to more or less severe illness, which may be relieved by enemas or by purgation.<sup>1</sup> Suppositories containing astringent medicines are frequently used in counteracting hemorrhoids and the absorption of such substances sometimes is undesirable. The excretory function of the large intestine is of great importance. Substances like bismuth taken to counteract diarrhea are excreted through the walls. In case of mercury poisoning, colonic irrigation serves to remove some of the mercury that has been excreted into the large intestine.

<sup>1</sup> However, not all of the alleged ills attributable to absorbed intestinal products are justifiably assigned to these substances. Impaction of sterile gauze into the rectum will cause similar effects, such as headaches.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bayliss, W. M. Principles of General Physiology, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1918.
- Bloor, W. R. Fat Transportation in the Animal Body, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 92, 1922.
- Burns, D. An Introduction to Biophysics, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1921.
- Cathcart, E. P. The Physiology of Protein Metabolism. Monographs on Biochemistry, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 2d ed., 1921.
- Goldschmidt, S. On the Mechanism of the Absorption from the Intestine, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 421, 1921.
- Loeb, J. Proteins and the Theory of Colloidal Behavior, New York, McGraw-Hill Co., 1922.
- Macht, D. I., and van der Lingen, A. A Contribution to the Biophysics of Intestinal Absorption, *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 20, p. 453, 1923. Other papers by Macht in the journal just mentioned and in the *Jour. Pharm. and Exp. Therapeutics*, concerning the absorption of foods may be read.
- Starling, E. H. Principles of Human Physiology, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 3d ed., 1920.



## CHAPTER XI

### THE FATE OF THE ABSORBED MATERIALS; INTERMEDIATE METABOLISM

"After long and tiresome wandering, this pass is attained; from which we may hope to advance some little way perchance into the broad mysterious domain of metabolism."—*Von Fuerth*.<sup>1</sup>

THE digested and absorbed food substances, the glucidtemns, lipidtemns, and protidtemns, have a common fate—oxidation and excretion. Some of the substances may become incorporated into the structure of the body and their oxidation and excretion temporarily delayed, but sooner or later they suffer the common fate of all: Excretion as  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and ammonia, or their products. The term "assimilation" signifies to make similar, but we know little concerning the manner in which the amino-acids, glucose, glycerol, and the fatty acids enter into the living protoplasm, or, indeed whether there is any configuration which may be termed "alive" other than the sum total of the various substances.<sup>2</sup> Speculation concerning "living molecules" may serve to while away an idle hour, but can scarcely clarify the understanding of the workings of the organism, normal functioning of which it is the duty of the physician to maintain in health. Let us turn to a more practical consideration—the manner in which the various substances absorbed from the alimentary tract into the blood are utilized. It must be borne in mind that there is still much to be explained regarding their ultimate disposition.

#### THE UTILIZATION OF GLUCIDS

**Glycogen Synthesis.**—The liver contains about 300 gs. or 15 per cent.<sup>3</sup> of its weight and the muscles about 2 per cent. of the polyglucid, glycogen. All organs except the brain contain a certain amount. When glucidtemns, like glucose, fructose and galactose, and certain

<sup>1</sup> Von Fuerth, Otto, Austrian Biochemist, Vienna, Chemistry of Metabolism. (Translated by Smith, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1916.)

<sup>2</sup> For a discussion see Verworn, M., *Die Biogenhypothese*, Jena, Gustav Fischer, 1903. Also Moore, B., *Biochemistry*, London, 1919. See also page 215.

<sup>3</sup> This is about the percentage of starch in the legumes, like peas.



substances derived from them—glycerol, etc.—are absorbed, they are carried by the portal system to the liver, where some are converted into glycogen. When glycogen is called upon to furnish glucids for use in the body by reversed chemical process, only glucose is furnished. There is some evidence that glycogen may be utilized directly. It would give more heat per gram (4.2 Cals.) than glucose (3.74 Cals.). In fasting as much as 232 gs. of glycogen can be used, but it is not known whether glycogen is used as such in any case, or whether glucose is the intermediate product. Normally the glucose circulating in the blood amounts to about 5 gs. for the whole amount of blood in the body. The lactose of milk in the mammary gland is derived from glucose, but a high diet of galactose is more fully utilized by the female than by the male.<sup>1</sup> Berglund has shown that while galactose shows great individual variations in its behavior in different people, the tolerance<sup>2</sup> for a given individual is nearly constant. Above the limit of tolerance increase in amount of galactose fed is followed by increased excretion through the kidneys. None of these studies answers the question whether galactose is utilized as such, or only through glycogen and glucose as intermediaries. Besides the substances already mentioned as giving rise to glycogen, protids are capable of producing it. Sixty grams out of 100 gs. of protid may become glycogen. The



Fig. 152.—Carl P. Sherwin, Professor of Chemistry, Fordham University, New York, N. Y. Investigator of the intermediate metabolism of substances, their behavior in the body, and their fate.

<sup>1</sup> Rowe, A. W., Biochemist; Evans Memorial Hospital, Boston, and Professor, Boston University, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 55, p. vi (Proceedings), 1923. Also Berglund, H., and Ni, Tsang G. (Harvard Medical School), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. xxxviii (Proc.), 1925.

<sup>2</sup> By this term is meant the amount beyond which the substance is not utilized. The tolerance for galactose (Rowe) for males is 40 gs. and for females 30 gs. by mouth.

amino-acids are deaminized and the resulting fatty acids are converted into glycogen. Under the discussion of amino-acids<sup>1</sup> we have indicated which ones can enter into the formation of glycogen. We may summarize these statements by Lusk's<sup>2</sup> figures:

From 100 grams of protid:

	Gs. amino-acid.	Gs. glucose.
Glycin.....	4.0	3.2
Alanin.....	8.1	8.2
Aspartic acid.....	10.6	7.2
Glutamic acid.....	22.3	13.6
Prolin.....	8.0	6.3
Arginin.....	11.5	5.9
Cystin.....		(undetermined)
Serin.....		
Total.....	64.5	44.4

About 60 gs. of amino-acids are convertible into approximately 45 gs. of glucose. The total nitrogen in 100 gs. of protid (beefsteak) is on the average 16.18 gs.<sup>3</sup> The ratio, therefore, of the amount of glucose to nitrogen:

$$\frac{\text{Grams of glucose from 100 gs. protid}}{\text{Grams of nitrogen from 100 gs. protid}} = \frac{44.4}{16.8} = 2.64.$$

This ratio, known as the D/N ratio (D standing for dextrose, equivalent to glucose) is very important. It represents the theoretical ratio, but actually, when no glucose is utilized in the organism, as in diabetes mellitus, 59 gs. of glucose are obtained from feeding 100 gs. of protid, giving a ratio of 3.65. The additional amount of glucose is derived from some unknown source. The ratio 3.65 is a fatal ratio, since at this point the body has lost all its power to utilize glucids (and fats as well), and protid is furnishing the glucose which the diseased body calls from any source possible, only to waste it into the urine. In other words, the body substance itself is being wasted, similar to the loss in a furnace not only of all the fuel, but of the structure of the furnace itself.

Lipids to the extent of 10 per cent. of their weight, which represents their glycerol,<sup>4</sup> may be capable of forming glycogen in man. The point is still in doubt. Of the glucids, other than those mentioned,

<sup>1</sup> Page 238.

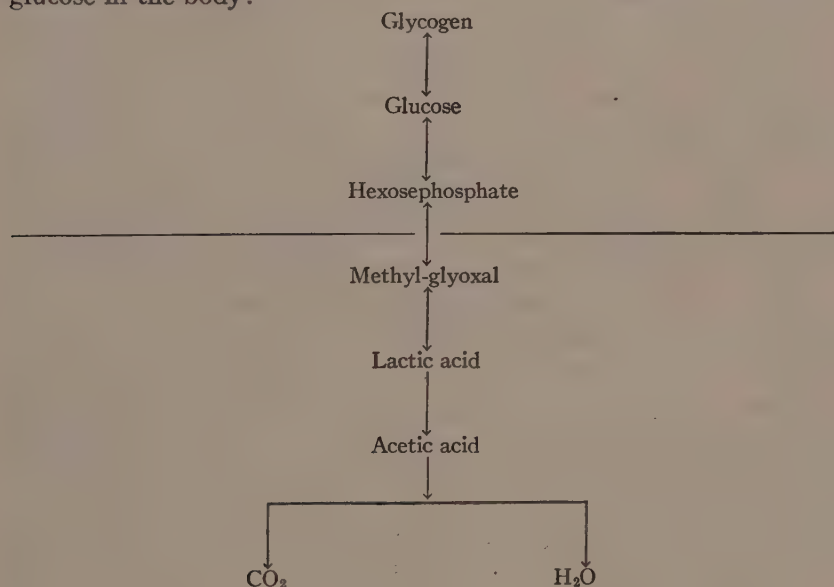
<sup>2</sup> Lusk, Graham, page 23.

<sup>3</sup> Per cent. nitrogen in blood fibrin, 17.0; egg-albumin, 15.5; serum globulin, 16.0.

<sup>4</sup> Taking stearid as an example. Mol. wt. 891.1. The glycerol contained in the molecule is 92. The percentage of glycerol is, therefore,  $891.1 : 92 = 100 : x = 10.3$ , or nearly 10 per cent.

which form portions of the food of man, there are substances with fewer than six carbons, such as the pentoses. These are not digested by the secretions of the alimentary tract, but are released from their compounds, the pentosans or polypentids (the form in which the pentoses largely occur in plants), by the action of bacteria in the large intestine and are absorbed as pentoses and products capable of being synthesized, at least in part, into glycogen. The "normal glucid" content of the urine is chiefly pentose, so that it is improbable that much pentose is utilized by the human body. It is certain that pentoses are not utilized as such in the body, for when xylose or arabinose is injected into the blood-stream it is excreted quantitatively in the urine. It is only the products of pentose fermentation by bacteria that form glycogen.

The statement was made on page 170 that, roughly, those products of yeast fermentation of glucose which stand in the direct line from glucose to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  are also found in the normal metabolism of glucose in the body:



The chief difference between yeast fermentation and the normal utilization of glucid in the body concerns lactic acid, which, according to Buchner and others,<sup>1</sup> does not occur in alcoholic fermentative proc-

<sup>1</sup> Page 170.

esses. Methyl-glyoxal may be the starting-point for the synthesis of fat from glucids.<sup>1</sup> Nearly all tissues are glycogenic, but the nervous system is an exception. A glycogenolytic (glycogen-destroying) enzyme, however, is present. Of the two chief glycogenic tissues, liver and muscle, liver can utilize the substances below the horizontal line in the table on page 497, but muscle cannot. Muscle requires glucose for the formation of glycogen.

**Glycogenesis Depends Upon the Normal Function of Other Organs, Especially the Pancreas, Thyroid, and the Adrenals.**—*Insulin*<sup>2</sup> probably has two factors: (1) One influencing the utilization of glucose in the body and (2) one depressing the process of glycogenolysis. When insulin is administered by mouth the former is inhibited, but the latter is left intact. The action (1) is probably that of increasing the permeability of the tissues for glycogen; glucose leaves the blood, or else becomes masked in some manner so that it does not give glucose reactions. It becomes inactivated when taken by mouth, probably through the reaction of the intestinal fluids; one Toronto unit<sup>3</sup> of insulin is inactivated by 0.003 mg. of trypsin. The insulin may be reactivated by adding acid to change the reaction from that of the intestine<sup>4</sup> to an acidity of at least pH 4.6. The factors inhibiting glycogenolysis (2) are unknown. What becomes of the glucose after leaving the blood is not known. As stated above, it may not leave the blood, but becomes masked in some manner so that its reducing properties, which generally characterize it, are lost. It may form a union with phosphoric acid, producing hexosephosphate. Insulin injected into a normal animal produces glycogenolysis and disappearance of glucose from the blood. Injected into a depancreatized animal it produces glycogenesis when glucose is fed at the same time that the insulin is administered by hypodermic injection. The internal secretion of the parathyroid causes a reduction in glycogenolysis in an alkaline medium and thus produces deposition of glycogen. Insulin acts similarly when glycogenase of the liver is extracted and brought into contact with the glycogen of the blood, but the reaction must be acid or neutral.

*Thyroid substance*, under similar conditions, acts as a stimulant for

<sup>1</sup> Page 514.

<sup>2</sup> Page 20.

<sup>3</sup> Page 502.

<sup>4</sup> Hume, H. V., and Denis, W. (Tulane University, New Orleans, La.), report the maximum reaction of the human duodenum as pH 8.23, minimum pH 5.9; average pH 7.02. See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 633, 1924.



glycogenase and glycogen is hydrolyzed to glucose; this occurs at the normal hydron concentration of the blood,  $pH$  7.3. There seems to be a synergy<sup>1</sup> between the parathyroid and pancreas respecting glycogenolysis. Insulin alone has no effect upon glycogen metabolism, but insulin plus parathyroid induces an "insulin" action, that is, causes the lowering of blood sugar in the normal animal and the deposition of glycogen in a depancreatized animal. It is possible that the chief function of insulin is to inhibit the action of the glycogen-cleaving enzyme, glycogenase of the liver, and muscles.

*Pituitary substance*<sup>2</sup> seems to antagonize this action of insulin and to aid glycogenolysis even in the presence of parathyroid substance. Cammidge<sup>3</sup> believes that the function of insulin in the normal body is to depress the glycogenase of the liver and other tissues, as we have already stated. True diabetes mellitus, then, may be defined as glycogenolysis unrestrained by insulin, which is not present in adequate quantities owing to damage to the pancreas. Such disease is typical of that type of diabetes mellitus which appears fairly suddenly in the young, as contrasted with a slowly developing type characteristic of older subjects, which is probably due to sclerotic conditions, or perhaps to an irregular interplay of endocrines, like the parathyroid (inhibiting hydrolysis of glycogen) and the adrenals (accelerating glycogenolysis). Of the two theories concerning the etiology of diabetes mellitus, (1) that it is due to lack of power of oxidizing substances like glucose, fats, etc., and (2) that it is due to overproduction of glucose by excessive hydrolysis of glycogen, unrestrained by insulin, the latter seems probable. One reason for believing that (2) is the actual factor, or at least a potent one, is that when insulin is injected the liver gives off less glucose, and at the same time, there is no loss of glycogen. This phenomenon occurs, however, only in the case of a damaged pancreas. Concerning (1) it may be said that insulin does not prevent the acidosis which occurs in diabetes by either mobilizing glucose or causing greater utilization of it. One gram of glucose per kilo of body weight administered to an animal increases the consumption of oxygen 20 per cent. Ten units of insulin<sup>4</sup> decrease oxygen consumption 15 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *syn*, together, and *ergon*, work.

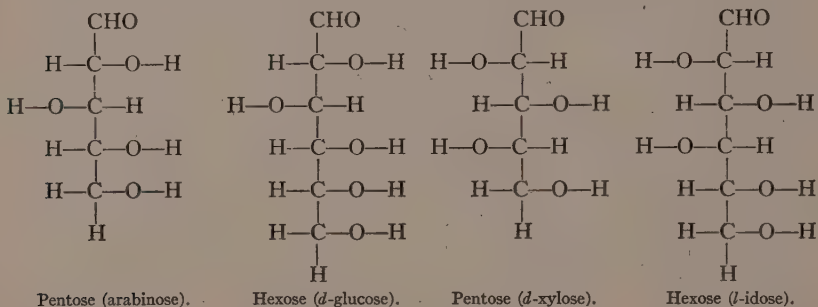
<sup>2</sup> Posterior lobe substance; see page 651.

<sup>3</sup> Cammidge, P. J. (Physician, 32, Nottingham Place, London, W. I., England), widely known for his functional test for pancreatic efficiency, the "Cammidge Reaction."

<sup>4</sup> Toronto units, not per kilo, but for the whole body.



*Diabetes mellitus* is not concerned alone with glucose. Arabinosuria, galactosuria, and maltosuria respond to insulin administration. One should expect this to be true for the pentoses because of similar structure, which is evident from the following formulæ:



Hexoses are interchangeable in rather low alkalinity. Glucose and fructose are converted to a common unsaturated form known as the enol<sup>1</sup>; the complete reaction of such interconversion is given on page 166.

**The Chemical Nature of Insulin.**—It is probable that insulin is a polypeptid, a group of substances already definitely known to participate in important ways in the metabolism of the body.<sup>2</sup> However, unlike some of the polypeptids known to possess pharmacological activity, insulin gives the biuret test, indicating that at least three amino-acids must be present in the molecule.<sup>3</sup> The glyoxalic and Millon tests<sup>4</sup> are negative, showing that tryptophan and tyrosin are absent. Insulin is not digested by pepsin nor by trypsin, but in an alkaline medium in which trypsin is present, insulin becomes inactivated. It may be reactivated, however, showing that it is not destroyed.

Insulin is not responsible for all of the pancreatic hormonal function. If the pancreas is removed from a dog, it may be kept alive for some weeks by insulin injections, accompanied by feeding glucids yielding glucose, but sooner or later, according to the condition of the animal, it begins to lose weight and hepatic difficulties arise. If such

<sup>1</sup> Pages 151 and 154.

<sup>2</sup> Compare glutathion, page 340. Abel has shown recently that insulin contains sulphur similarly as glutathion does.

<sup>3</sup> Page 282.

<sup>4</sup> Pages 307 and 236 respectively.

an experimental animal be fed raw pancreas,<sup>1</sup> very beneficial results are obtained. It is not known what substances are responsible for this amelioration. If the treatment is discontinued, three conspicuous changes occur: Increase in blood-sugar, appearance of acetone and hydroxy and keto-acids in the urine, and third, increase of phosphoric acid in the blood.

**Glycogenolysis.**—We have spoken of the belief of some biochemists<sup>2</sup> that glycogenolysis tends to occur at all times and that some agent, or agents, or combination of factors inhibits this action. The excessive hunger or fatigue and malaise experienced by some persons during short periods of fasting may be due to excessive glycogenolysis caused by "hypo-insulinism," or underproduction of insulin in the body due perhaps, as Sevringhaus<sup>3</sup> suggests, to a fasting ketosis, which inhibits the production or action of insulin. The lack of glycogen in the nervous system, previously mentioned, is explained by the fact that an active glycogenase is present, which causes the hydrolysis of any glycogen entering that system. Certain factors related to the nervous system cause glycogenolysis. Epinephrin, which is influenced by the autonomic system, causes hydrolysis of glycogen. The piqûre<sup>4</sup> is another reaction related to the nervous system. A relation between blood phosphates and glycogenolysis has been established. When the piqûre is done, or epinephrin is injected, there is a sudden glycogenolysis and hyperglycemia, together with a fall in blood phosphates. Pituitrin, on the other hand, causes an antagonistic action to these two agents, and glycogen synthesis occurs along with a conspicuous increase in blood phosphates.

**DEMONSTRATION. *Glycogenolysis with Insulin.***—Inject into a normal rabbit<sup>5</sup> 5 clinical units of insulin. Catheterize the bladder and note the appearance of glucose in the urine. Withdraw a sample of blood from the marginal vein by snipping it with a pair of scissors. The instructor will determine the blood-sugar content.<sup>6</sup> Note the

<sup>1</sup> See Chaikoff, I. L., Macleod, J. J. R., and Markowitz, J. (Toronto), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. lx (Proceedings), 1925. These workers find that if 50 gs. of raw pancreas, 200 to 400 gs. meat, and 50 gs. of sucrose be fed and at the same time two daily injections of 16 clinical units of insulin be given, an 8- to 10-kilo dog remains in good condition although the pancreas has been wholly removed.

<sup>2</sup> Page 499.

<sup>3</sup> Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. xlviii (Proc.), 1925.

<sup>4</sup> Chapter XVII.

<sup>5</sup> A female specimen is best in this instance, on account of ease of catheterization.

<sup>6</sup> By the method given in Chapter XVI.

appearance of convulsions. Inject the femoral vein by means of a hypodermic needle and syringe with a small amount of glucose. Recovery from convulsions may or may not occur, according to the state of the rabbit.<sup>1</sup>

DEMONSTRATION. *Glycogenolysis Following Pancreatectomy.*—Anesthetize a rabbit as directed on page 185 and lay on an operating table

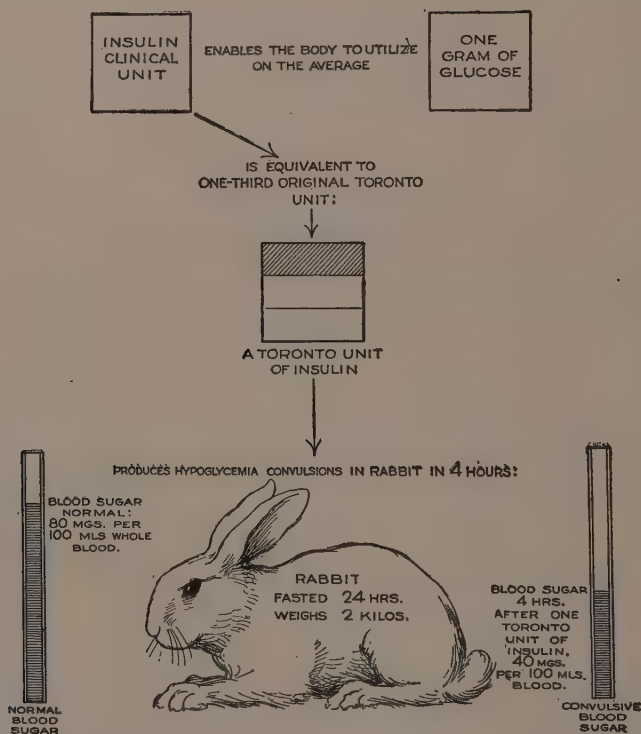


Fig. 153.—Scheme to show quantitative relations of the insulin unit.

as in Exercise 26. Perform laparotomy and locate the duodenum and pancreas, a yellowish diffuse gland lying against the former and lower portion of the stomach. Completely remove the pancreas, being certain that none is left. Ligate any bleeding vessels. Lay large hemostats parallel with the incision, clamp the lips together, main-

<sup>1</sup> In order to avoid convulsions from too great lowering of the blood-sugar in clinical cases a small amount of glucose (see Fig. 153) is administered by mouth or by vein to a human subject.

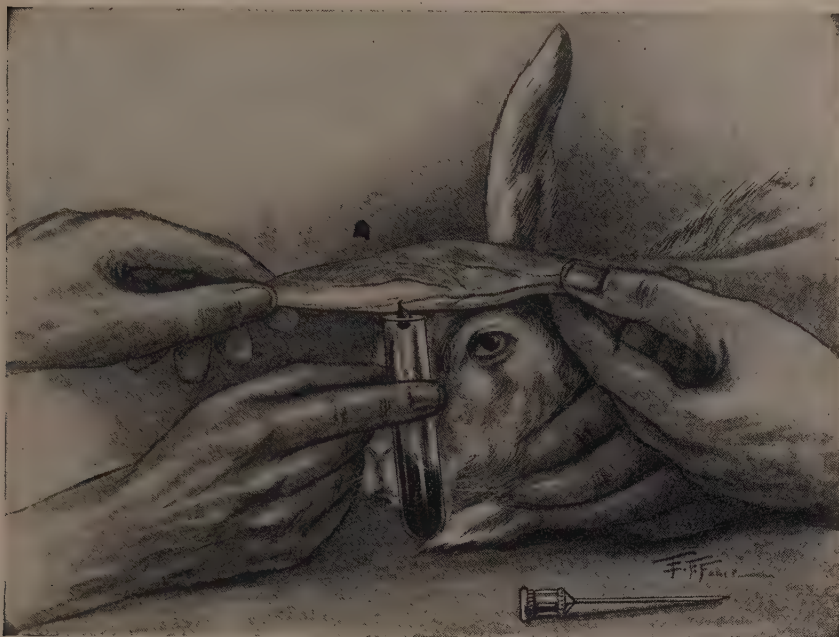


Fig. 154.—Method of bleeding a rabbit from the ear. A slit is made in the marginal vein. (From Kolmer, Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy.)



Fig. 155.—Insulin shock in rabbit. The rabbit had been given the equivalent of two Toronto insulin units and went into hypoglycemic shock at the end of 2.5 hours. Recovery was made by administering glucose solution by stomach-tube.

taining anesthesia throughout. Catheterize the bladder and determine by Benedict's qualitative method<sup>1</sup> the presence of glucose in the urine.

<sup>1</sup> Page 156.

After glucose begins to appear, inject 5 units of insulin into the femoral vein and continue the sampling of the urine; the glucose will be eliminated after a time. However, if urinalysis is made at intervals for several days it will be found, as Macleod has demonstrated, that insulin does not prevent glycosuria indefinitely when all of the pancreas has been removed.<sup>1</sup>

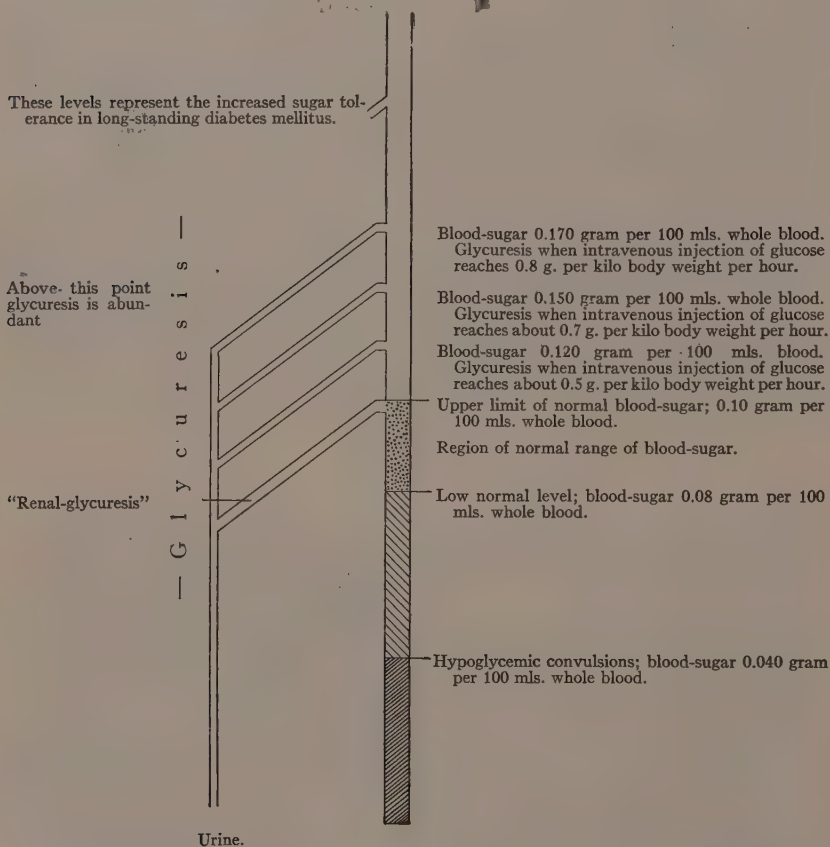


Chart showing the variations in blood-sugar. The chart is for glucose, but applies likewise to levulose. For galactose, or lactose, galactosuria or lactosuria varies as the square of the intake by mouth.

Man may be made glycogen free by causing him to shiver; indeed, Carlson has shown that glycogenolysis following injection of insulin is total only when the stage of convulsive contraction of muscle, re-

<sup>1</sup> Page 501.



sembling shivering, is reached. Liver glycogen is removed without shivering, but muscle action is necessary to cause the removal of muscle glycogen. Experimentally in animals glycogen may be entirely removed from both liver and muscle by injecting 50 mgs. per kilo body weight of hydrazine sulphate,  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{NH}_2\cdot\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The cause of the reduction is increased utilization of glucids by the body.

*Glycogenase, the Liver Amylase Hydrolyzing Glycogen.*—This enzyme causes the conversion of glycogen into glucose immediately after the cessation of blood flow through the organs. This may be shown for the liver as follows:

**DEMONSTRATION. Liver Glycogenase.**—This Exercise was performed earlier<sup>1</sup> and is now repeated in a modified way: Have ready a Florence flask of water boiling over a Bunsen burner. Strike the animal a blow on the head behind the ears and lay the body ventral side uppermost on an operating board. Perform laparotomy rapidly and expose the liver. Excise the latter and lay it on the table. By means of a large cork-borer remove from the liver two cylinders as nearly alike as possible and transfer each to the bottom of a 100-ml. beaker. Half fill one beaker with boiling water and the other with distilled water, 45° C. After thirty minutes remove both cylinders, grind in separate mortars with a little sand, and wash the residue, sand, and tissue by means of the water belonging to each preparation into a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Dilute to the mark with distilled water and cool the flask containing the boiled specimen to room temperature by holding it under the cold tap. Again adjust the meniscus. Mix well and make quantitative Benedict tests for reducing sugar, as follows: Remove 25 mls. of each preparation and add lead acetate solution<sup>2</sup> to precipitate the protid. Filter. Make Benedict quantitative determination on the filtrate in each preparation.

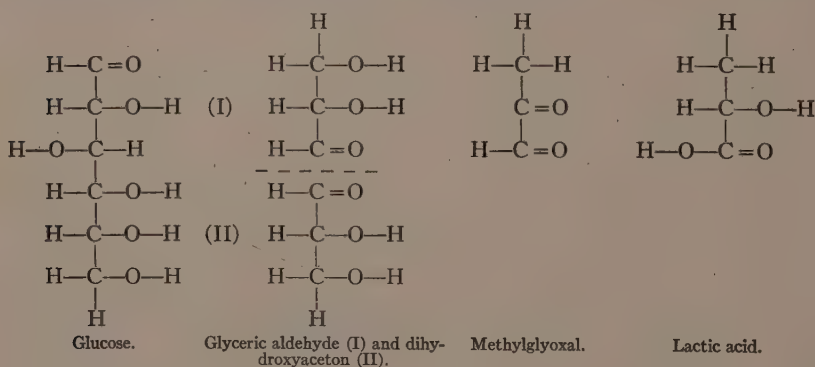
*Glycogenase is especially active in the heart muscle*, all of the muscle glycogen being hydrolyzed into maltose and glucose within twenty-four hours after death, as contrasted with the much slower action of the enzyme in skeletal muscle, in which only about 10 per cent. of

<sup>1</sup> Page 185.

<sup>2</sup> Page 224. The use of trichloroacetic acid,  $\text{CCl}_3\text{COOH}$ , is to be avoided in cases where glucose is to be determined on the filtrate. See Stiven, D. (English biochemist), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 18, p. 19, 1924.

glycogen is hydrolyzed in that time. After death the disappearance of glycogen from these tissues runs parallel with the loss experimentally. In fact, if antiseptics like chloroform be used on recently dead muscle tissue, there is little or no hydrolysis of glycogen; such reagents injure the enzyme. Glycogenase follows other enzymes in being developed as growth occurs. In the embryo the rate of glycogenolysis is much slower than in later life. It seems, however, that organs especially characteristic of immaturity, like the thymus, develop glycogenolytic functions earlier than adult tissues. This is not true, however, of the brain.

**The Fate of Glucose.**—After the formation of glucose from the stored glycogen, or after it has been ingested directly, it is utilized by the tissues, especially muscle tissue, where it participates in the production of heat and muscle energy. We have spoken of the rôle glucose plays in muscle contraction, and here we may add that glucose pursues one of two different courses: (1) Anaërobic metabolism; glucose is converted into lactic acid without the aid of oxygen admitted from without, according to the following reactions:



(2) Aërobic metabolism, during which glucose is oxidized. It is oxidized as a hexose and not as lactic acid, or any other product of glucose, as far as can be determined. Insulin is necessary for the oxidation of the sugar. There is no infallible evidence that a special reactive form of glucose is essential to the combination. We know that artificially prepared solutions of glucose, like that in Locke's solution<sup>1</sup> are utilized to a greater extent by tissues such as the beating heart when in the presence of insulin, perfused through the isolated

<sup>1</sup> Page 397.

heart along with the glucose solution, than when insulin is absent. Consequently, we know that we are dealing with but two factors, glucose and insulin.<sup>1</sup> How does insulin affect glucose to render it utilizable? Ordinary glucose is stable and its formula shows that its reactive radicle, the aldehyde radicle, is bound up in a ring, whereas if glucose is active, we must assume that the aldehyde group is free or easily made free. The stable sugars are known as oxidic sugars, and the labile ones, aldehydic, the former term referring to the oxygen linkage.<sup>2</sup> A possible form of glucose available for oxidation is shown in model form in the photograph, Fig. 84, page 174. Its aldehydic character is seen in the carbon-atom numbered 1, at the extreme right of the group. The oxygen ring is attached to carbons 2 and 5. Whenever the oxygen ring does not include carbon 5, the substance is called a "gamma sugar." It is one in which the oxygen linkage is other than a butylene ring. There is no indisputable evidence that glucose metabolizes as a gamma sugar, but all evidence points to the fact that it is burned by virtue of its aldehydic properties. That insulin does something to render glucose more readily utilizable suggests that it may cause the conversion of a stable sugar (oxidic) to a labile one (aldehydic), but no proof exists. Winter and Smith<sup>3</sup> have reported observations supporting this theory, but other investigators<sup>4</sup> have failed to corroborate their findings in this regard.

To the question *What becomes of glucose when it is oxidized?* we may say that the oxidation of any aldehyde produces an acid. In the case of glucose there are three possibilities, according to the amount of oxygen or of oxidizing power: Gluconic, glucuronic, and saccharic acids. Gluconic acid is the only one of the three incapable of forming an oxidic acid (lactone) and it is probable that the first product of the

<sup>1</sup> The possibility that a phosphate-glucid compound is necessary for sugar utilization has been suggested, and it is interesting to observe the correlations between phosphates in the blood, glucose, and insulin mentioned on page 353. Evidence, however, is lacking that the phosphate is necessary in the utilization of glucose.

<sup>2</sup> Page 176.

<sup>3</sup> Winter, L. B., and Smith, W. (Cambridge, England), *Jour. Physiology*, vol. 58, p. 100, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Hewitt, J. A., and Pryde, J. (Kings College, London), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 14, p. 395, 1920. Van Creveld, S. (Groningen, Holland), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 17, p. 860, 1923. Visscher, M. B. (University of Minnesota), *Amer. Jour. Physiol.*, vol. 68, p. 135, 1924. Denis, W., and Hume, H. V., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 60, p. 603, 1924. Also *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 59, p. 457, 1924.

oxidation is this acid. Further than this we are ignorant at the present time. Insulin causes the disappearance of glucose from the blood, but there is not a corresponding elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$  and utilization of oxygen in the normal animal. Glycogen is not stored. Glucose is not converted into fat.<sup>1</sup> Glucose may be polymerized to form sugars of the nature of caramel. The diabetic can utilize, to some extent, scorched sugars, caramel, etc.

*After excessive muscle exercise*, as during convulsions, glucose disappears from the blood and lactic acid accumulates. However, insulin does not affect the concentration of lactic acid. Epinephrin does increase the lactic acid in the blood.<sup>2</sup> It would appear that the lactic acid is a part of some reaction not immediately related to glucose utilization. Nor does this acid arise from a cleaving of a lactic acid-phosphoric compound, which has been assumed by Embden<sup>3</sup> to play a rôle in glucid metabolism.<sup>4</sup>

**Utilization of Glucose in Other Ways.**—Besides the utilization of glucose in energy transformations, such as we have discussed above, it participates in structural matters. Glucose forms a part of the nucleoprotid of the nucleus of the cells; it enters into the formation of scleroprotids, like mucin, and it may be a factor in many other structures the chemistry of which is not fully understood.

**The Utilization of Sugars Other than Glucose.**—On page 166 we have discussed the special chemistry of fructose, which is being used to greater extent in human dietaries. Fructose does not form a part of the body as glucose and galactose do. Fructose, however, as we have said, is convertible into glucose, and through glucose to galactose. Galactose is used by the young of both sexes in the structure of the nervous system, in which we find galactose as galactoside. In the male galactose does not appear in any other tissue, but in the female it is also found in the mammary gland. Galactose is formed from glucose and becomes united into a diglucid, the galactoside, lactose:

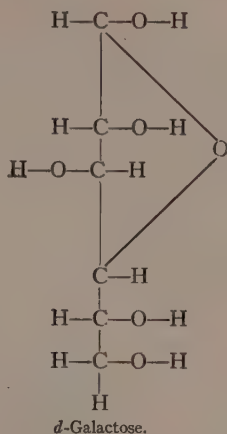
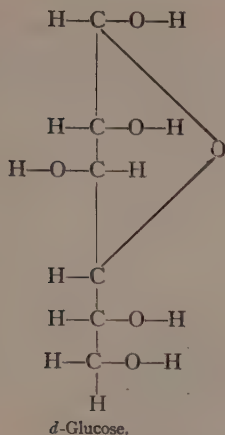
<sup>1</sup> Dudley, H. W., and Marrian, G. F. (National Institute for Medical Research, Hamsted, England), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 17, p. 435, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Cori, C. F. (Institute for Malignant Diseases, Buffalo, N. Y.), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. lii (Proceedings), 1925. This author has recently reported a temporary storage of glycogen when insulin is administered.

<sup>3</sup> Embden, G., German physiologist.

<sup>4</sup> Morgulis, S., and Barkus, O. (University of Nebraska College of Medicine, Omaha), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. lxxviii (Proc.), 1925.





The mechanism of the transformation is not known. When the mammary glands are lactating, the feeding of glucose leads to galactosuria or to lactosuria.

The utilization of the sugars is not a matter of their relative reducing powers. Arranged in the order of reducing power, the common sugars are<sup>1</sup>:

	Units as standard.			
Glucose	amount reduced in six minutes	=	100	
Levulose	" " " "	=	90	
Galactose	" " " "	=	77	
Mannose	" " " "	=	55	
Lactose	" " " "	=	45	
Maltose	" " " "	=	40	

This is not the order of these sugars in metabolism.

The pentose, ribose, forms a part of the free mononucleotids, guanylic and inosinic acids.<sup>2</sup> It does not occur in the cell nuclei. This pentose is the one found in the urine in pentosuria,<sup>3</sup> although some identify it as the inactive *d*-*l*-arabinose and others as *l*-xylose. Lactose derived from the food is probably not directly transformed into the lactose of the mammary gland on account of its low absorbability and consequent hydrolysis. Lactose is of such low absorb-

<sup>1</sup> The table is from Rowe, A. W., and Wiener, B. S. (Evans Memorial Hospital, Boston, U. S. A.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. lxxiii (Proceedings), 1925. The figures are for the Folin-Wu method (Chapter XVI); Lewis-Benedict analyses run higher as a rule.

<sup>2</sup> Page 335.

<sup>3</sup> Chapter XV. Berglund (cited on page 495) finds that the amount of pentose in the urine is independent of the amount injected into the veins in an experimental animal.



ability that it has the cathartic action mentioned earlier in this book.<sup>1</sup> Galactose is not recognizable in the circulation except in the portal system after a considerable ingestion of lactose or galactose.

**Summary.**—1. All glucids are utilized as glucose.

2. Glucose may be converted into other glucids, like galactose, and utilized as such.

3. Glucids taken into the alimentary canal are absorbed; or hydrolyzed and then absorbed.

4. They are carried as monoglucids to the liver, in which organ they are converted into glucose before they enter the general circulation.

5. Glucids other than glucose are converted into it before entering the general circulation.

6. Muscle glycogen is formed from glucose.

7. Other glucids, like galactose, are formed from glucose.

8. The steps in glucid oxidation are not known.

9. Glucose is used in a dual manner in muscle action: (a) Some of the molecules of glucose are converted into lactic acid which increases the permeability of the muscle for water, etc. This acid is burned to produce the heat necessary for the reaction. (b) The remaining molecules of lactic acid are reconverted into glycogen.

10. Glucose may be converted into a hexosephosphate before utilization.

11. Insulin causes glucose to disappear from the blood of a normal subject.

12. The fate of this glucose is unknown.

13. Insulin causes the utilization of glucose and storage of glycogen in a diabetic animal.

14. The glucids are utilized not only in the production of mechanical and heat energy, but also enter into the structure of the organism (brain, mucus, etc.).

### THE UTILIZATION OF THE LIPIDS

The finely dispersed fat delivered to the blood-stream from the thoracic duct exists in spheres about 0.001 mm. in diameter (Fig. 157). About 50 per cent. of these droplets is taken into the red and white corpuscles, probably by a process similar to the hydrolysis which permits the passage of fats through the walls of the alimentary canal; but, unlike that process, the corpuscle fat is resynthesized, not as neutral fat,

<sup>1</sup> Pages 486 and 489.

but as phosphorized fat, or prospholipid, like lecithin; or some is made into a cholesterol ester. Lecithins occur to a negligible extent in the plasma of the blood. If there is an increase of blood lipids beyond the usual amounts (0.6 g. per 100 mls. whole blood), then cholesterol begins to increase (from a normal of 0.16 g. per cent.) in order to compensate for the increase of neutral and phosphorized fat; for cholesterol and lecithins act antagonistically in the body, cholesterol holding water, while lecithin tends to cause dehydration of the tissue



Fig. 156.—P. A. Shaffer, Professor of Biochemistry, Washington University, Saint Louis, Missouri. Contributor to the biochemistry of sugar, ketogenesis, etc., with methods for determination of various substances of biochemical importance.

elements. Cholesterol protects the erythrocytes from such action. Moreover, when the fat content of blood is high, cholesterol increases because the cholesterol esters have been saponified, freeing fatty acids, which become synthesized into neutral fats, and the cholesterol, being in like manner free, accumulates in the blood. A small content of free fatty acids accompanies the blood lipids. Some of these may become soaps, which cannot exist to any great degree in blood, owing to their toxicity. Others, as we have said, become cholesterol esters which

normally comprise about one-third of the total cholesterol content of the blood. Bloor has recently determined that cholesterol esters play a more important part in fat transportation than we have hitherto believed. The unsaturated fatty acids are practically all carried as such esters.<sup>1</sup> This, then, is the condition of the lipids as they are distributed throughout the body.

**The Character of Tissue Fat.**—The fat of tissues may be subdivided into two great classes: (1) *Dépot fat*, characterized by the high content of saturated fats (tripalmitid and tristearid); such fat occurs

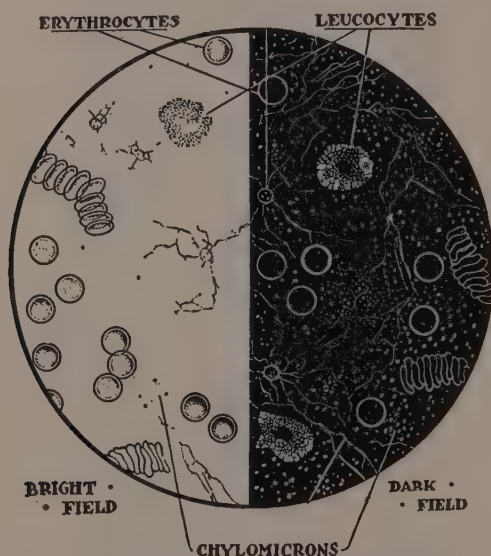


Fig. 157.—Fat "dust" as seen by the ultramicroscope (see Fig. 55). (After Gage, *Amer. Jour. Anat.*, vol. 34, No. 1, September 15, 1924.)

in the omentum, in the "suet" of the kidney and heart, and in other storage regions. (2) *Tissue fat*, characterized by its high content of unsaturated lipids, like lecithin; such fat occurs in the liver especially, but also in the tissues of the kidney, heart, etc.

**Liver Fat.**—It is well known that liver contains fluid fat (like cod-liver oil). Such lipid is characterized by its high iodine number<sup>2</sup> and its ability to give up unsaturated fatty acids on hydrolysis. These acids are capable of hydrogenation by the addition of hydrogen in the

<sup>1</sup> In dog plasma unsaturated acids are present to the extent of 70 per cent., nearly all of which is cholesterol ester.

<sup>2</sup> Page 196.

presence of a catalyzer. They are more soluble in water if the unsaturated carbon atoms are satisfied by hydroxyls during hydrogenation. The content of phospholipids having unsaturated acids, like oleïc, is high in the liver; this is indicated by the iodine absorption value:

	Iodine number.
Human adipose fat.....	65
Human liver fat.....	110

When there is an abnormal acquisition of fat by the liver, storage fat is laid down either by fatty "degeneration"<sup>1</sup> or by infiltration. There is a progressive decrease in iodine absorption, indicating that such fat is not the fat of normal metabolism of the liver:

	Higher fatty acids.	Iodine number.
Normal liver.....	12.1	116
Early toxic jaundice.....	15.6	109
Bronchopneumonia.....	54.6	71
Trauma.....	66.3	63

*One of the functions of the liver seems to be that of desaturating the fats and of transforming them into phosphorized fats*, the lecithins and other phospholipids, which are more labile than neutral fats of saturated fatty acids, such as are found in the dépôts. The reason for this desaturating is probably that the unsaturated fats pass through membranes more readily than the saturated forms; it may have something to do with the melting-point, which is lowered by desaturation. These phospholipids, once formed in the liver, may be stored for a period, but we know that the total lipid content of the liver does not change to any great extent and doubtless it acts as a manufacturing plant where fatty acids are rendered more labile, preparatory for use in the body elsewhere and that there is a constant influx of lipids and outflow of phospholipids, while the total content of the liver remains fairly constant. Since not only the liver, but other organs, like the kidney, have a high content of unsaturated acids in the form of phospholipids, it is probable that this desaturating function is shared by various, if not all, tissues.

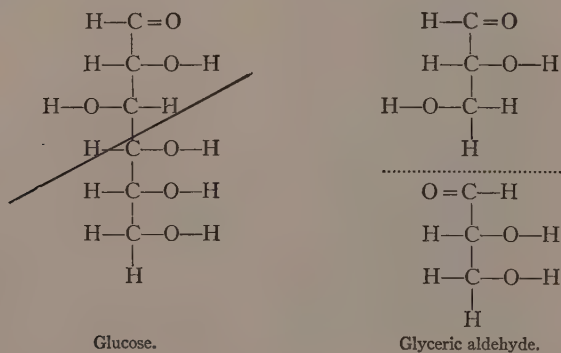
**Fat from Glucids.**—Since 1883 we have known definitely that 19.5 per cent. of glucids may be converted into fat, whereas only half that amount of fat can be converted into glucid. In such a process (fat to glucid) about 4.7 per cent. of the heat value is lost. Such a

<sup>1</sup> Page 374. The origin of fat from other kinds of substances is still in dispute.

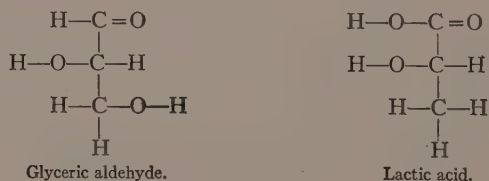
conversion would involve a loss of oxygen from the molecule of the glucid,<sup>1</sup> and when this occurs in the organism the Respiratory Quotient,<sup>2</sup>  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2}$ , may be above that for a glucid diet in which the ratio is unity. This is due obviously to the reduction of the glucid and a relatively greater amount of exhaled  $\text{CO}_2$  compared with the oxygen consumed. This reduction must be accompanied by condensation, because the smallest of the fatty acids found in any of the fats contains 16 carbons, while glucose contains but 6.

Fat is derived from glucose by the same process as that employed by butyric acid bacteria in solutions of sugar, when fat, like stearid, is formed:

(1) The gamma carbon of glucose has a hydrogen shifted to the beta-carbon.



(2) Shift of the oxygen from the terminal primary alcohol,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , to the aldehyde, making an hydroxy acid, lactic acid:



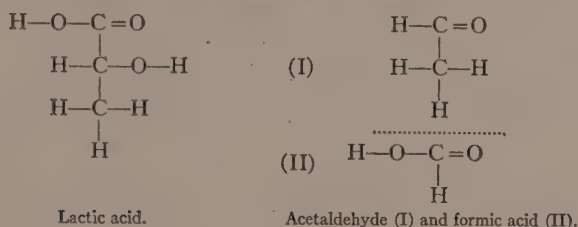
(3) Lactic acid, like all hydroxy acids, surrenders the oxygen from the  $\alpha$ -hydroxy radicle. The oxygen is replaced by one of the hydrogens from the  $\beta$ -carbon atom, and after oxidation of this atom by

<sup>1</sup> Compare the oxygen content of glucose ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ ) with that of a fatty acid ( $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{32}\text{O}_2$ ).

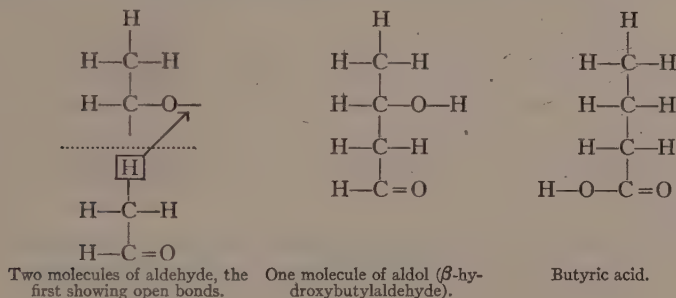
<sup>2</sup> Page 603.



means of the oxygen of the carboxyl, formic acid is produced, leaving the other portion of the original lactic acid as an aldehyde:



(4) The aldehyde thus produced is condensed in aldol condensation to butyric acid; two aldehydes are involved:



Butyric acid or any other 4-carbon acid cannot be burned by a diabetic, especially when the beta-carbon atom bears an hydroxyl, as in the case of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butylaldehyde, or an oxygen in the carbonyl form, as in aceto-acetic acid. However, the normal animal is capable of causing the  $\beta$ -carbon to become oxidized, thus giving rise to two molecules of acetic acid.<sup>1</sup> This is the normal course of oxidation of the fats and is known as beta-oxidation. The fatty acid portion of the amino-acids is metabolized in the same way.

If, now, there is a synthesis of lactic acid into a fatty acid of the higher series, like stearic, palmitic, or oleic, a larger number of carbons must be involved, which means that more than two aldehyde molecules are condensed. Thus, if four were condensed, an octylic acid, like caprylic acid having 8 carbons, is formed. Eight molecules of acetal-

<sup>1</sup> Shaffer, P. A., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 585, 1924, believes that the reason why the diabetic animal does not oxidize such substances is that they occur in larger amounts than there is "ketolytic" substance (page 522) present to cause their further oxidation to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

dehyde condense into a 16-carbon chain, to which stearic acid belongs. In some such manner the fatty acids of the fats are formed from glucid. We shall see later<sup>1</sup> that such conversions do not involve much change in energy, whereas the oxidation of the fats leads to the greatest proportional production of energy in the body.

**Fat from Protids.**—No direct proof exists of the origin of fat from protid. Kumagawa<sup>2</sup> made a direct experiment upon dogs as follows: Two dogs from the same litter were selected and both were starved for twenty-four days. At the end of this time the control was killed and the whole body analyzed for fat. The second dog was fed plentifully with lean horse meat for forty-nine days, at the rate of about 1 kilo per day. This increased his weight 3.92 kilos. Analysis of the fat of this animal showed an increase of 968 gs. The food (49 kilos of horse meat) contained 1084 gs. of fat, an amount abundantly able to account for the increase in weight of the animal, even without calling in the 356 gs. of glycogen of the food, which might have contributed to the fat accumulating during the feeding period. There was no indication that protid from food had entered into the formation of the fat of the dog. Indirect determinations, however, by estimating the accrued fat in terms of the carbon retained after a period of feeding seem to indicate that 40 per cent. of the ingested protid capable of conversion to glucose was transformed into fat. Actual experimentation by Lusk<sup>3</sup> leaves 33 per cent. of glucose not accounted for after estimating the amount of glycogen stored.

The chief interest in the question concerning the origin of fats from protids, for the medical student, lies in its bearing upon degenerative changes of organs, or fatty degeneration, the liver, kidney, and other organs show. Under certain conditions, like phosphorus poisoning or acute yellow atrophy, these organs degenerate. Apparently, when examined microscopically, increased fat has occurred. It is definitely known that this is a process either of mobilization of minute fat "dust" normally present in the cells, into larger aggregates of fat, a process known as phanerosis<sup>4</sup>; or else of infiltration of fat outside the tissue in question. If analysis be made of the fat content of normal tissue in

<sup>1</sup> Page 559.

<sup>2</sup> Kumagawa, Muneo, University of Tokio, Japan.

<sup>3</sup> Atkinson, H. V., Rapport, D., and Lusk, G., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 53, p. 155, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *phaino*, to brighten, *phaneros*, evident or manifest; hence fat which becomes manifest or seen. Compare tryptophan.

which fat is evident macroscopically, and of similar but abnormal tissue exhibiting fat, in the majority of cases there is no actual increase in the total amount of fat in the second instance. In a few cases more fat is found in the abnormal tissue than in the normal control. This is explained by transfer of fat from without, or fatty infiltration. In making such studies, it is necessary to exercise great care in obtaining all of the fat in the tissue, for some of it is held in chemical union with other substances, as in associations of fatty acids and amino-acids; this must be freed by digesting the tissue with pepsin. As a rule, fatty degeneration involves less fat rather than more. By studying the chemical characteristics of the fat found in this condition, one can determine whether much or any fat has entered the tissue from without. We have already observed above<sup>1</sup> that as abnormal fat metabolism appears in a tissue the fat becomes more saturated, as indicated by the fall of iodine number. Somewhat similar infiltration of tissue by fat or fatty components is found in cadavers lying in moist places. Here the protid structure disappears and is replaced by adipocere,<sup>2</sup> but a considerable loss of weight accompanies this transformation. The adipocere is known to arise wholly from the lipids of the body, the protids undergoing autolysis and disappearing under the action of bacteria. It is possible that bacteria and other low forms of life are capable of synthesizing lipids from protids.

**Lipidtemns.**—Free fatty acids occur under certain conditions, especially in diseased tissues. They are frequently found as salts of calcium (calcium oleate, etc.) and the less fluid fatty acids, stearic and palmitic are sometimes found as “margarin,” or mechanical mixtures of these acids—the crystals being the resultant of the separate crystallization of these fatty acids and not a specific crystal of a chemical compound of these two acids. Cholesterol esters of these fatty acids in which cholesterol is the alcohol and palmitic, stearic, or oleic acid is the acid, occur in degenerative tissues such as tumors. Cholesterol itself is found in similar tissues and probably serves to protect the cells so far as possible from destruction while the degenerative changes are taking place. It is difficult to believe that it is simply present as a by-product of metabolism, for we know of its participation in protective processes in the body. Perhaps another

<sup>1</sup> Page 513.

<sup>2</sup> Latin *adeps*, lard, and *cera*, wax; pronounced “ad’i-po-sere.”

adaptation to the destructive changes in "amyloid degenerations"<sup>1</sup> is the development of the substance known by that name, amyloid, known to be related to, but not identical with, nucleoprotids. It has a low content of phosphorus which is not true of nucleoprotids and, besides, it contains a relatively high amount of sulphur, suggesting that it is related to chondroitin sulphuric acid<sup>2</sup>; furthermore, the suggestion has been made that amyloid is a conjugation product of this acid with a simple protid, like a histon,<sup>3</sup> in a manner similar to that in which nucleoprotid is conjugated as a salt of nucleic acid, with a protid, protamin, or histon. This is rendered likely by a study of the amino-acid content of amyloid. It will be recalled that the simple protids, like protamin or histon, consist largely of diamino-acids, arginin and lysin. Amyloid contains a large proportion of these diamino-acids, as shown by the following table; for comparison, the amino-acid content of a histon, thymus histon, is given (after Wells, H. G.):

	Amyloid, grams per 100	Thymus histon, grams substance.
Glycin.....	0.8	0.5
Leucin.....	22.8	11.8
Glutamic acid .....	3.8	5.2
Tyrosin.....	4.0	5.2
Prolin.....	3.1	1.5
Arginin.....	13.9	14.5
Lysin.....	11.6	7.7

Amyloid, then, is probably a conjugation product, the base being a simple protid as in nucleoprotid, but the acid, sulphuric acid and not nucleic acid. There are no fat relations, therefore, in amyloid.

**The Oxidation of Fats.**—Fat is a typical heat-producing substance. The fats contribute more heat units, or calories, than any other food. The principle of oxidation of the fats has been referred to<sup>4</sup> as consisting of the oxidation of the beta, or antepenultimate carbon atom of the chain. However, before this process begins, the fat is hydrolyzed to glycerol and fatty acids and oxidation involves the separate behavior of each of these substances. The glycerol behaves as a glucid,<sup>5</sup> while

<sup>1</sup> The term "amyloid" (Greek *amylon*, starch) was used by the father of pathology, Rudolph Virchow, to apply to a caseogenous or lard-like degeneration occurring in kidneys and other organs because he thought this substance was of glucid nature, belonging to the celluloses.

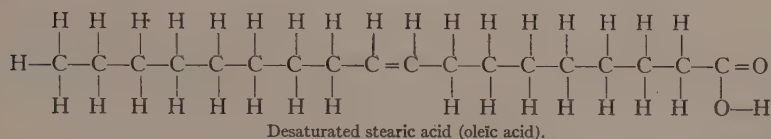
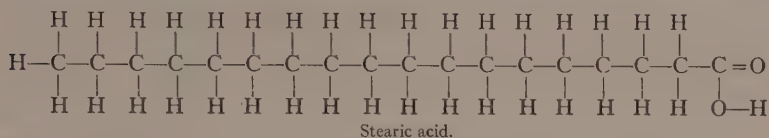
<sup>2</sup> Page 350.

<sup>3</sup> Page 301.

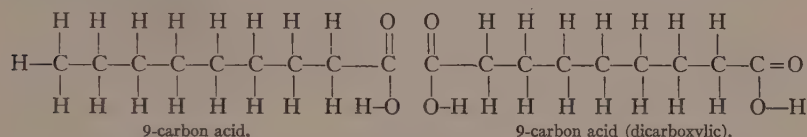
<sup>4</sup> Page 199.

<sup>5</sup> The method of oxidation of the sugars is given on pages 151 and 170.

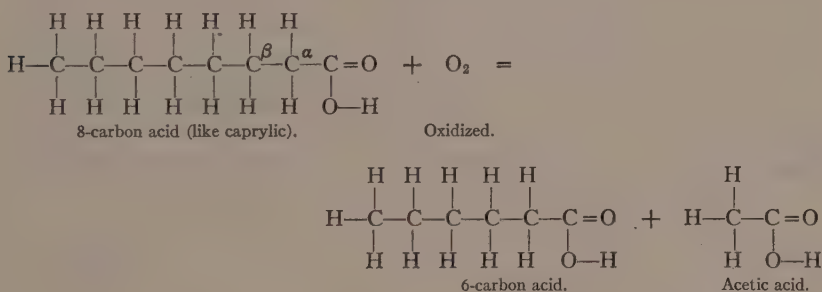
the fatty acid is desaturated in the liver; the chain is weakened in the middle by the withdrawal of two or more hydrogen atoms, thus:



Then there is an oxidation of the unsaturated carbon atoms and a rupture of the chain:



These odd-number carbon chains are then converted by decarboxylation to an even-number chain, after which there begins an oxidation of the  $\beta$ -carbon atoms in each case, giving rise to acetic acid and to an acid having two carbon atoms fewer than before.



In all cases this process of cleaving off a molecule of acetic acid, oxidizing the residue, then cleaving off another acetic molecule, etc., progresses until the last 4 carbons,  $\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{CH}_2.\text{COOH}$  are reached, which is equivalent to a butyric acid molecule. In the diabetic, oxidation may go no farther, but, normally, this group of butyric carbons in the form of  $\beta$ -keto-butyrac acid (commonly called aceto-acetic acid,

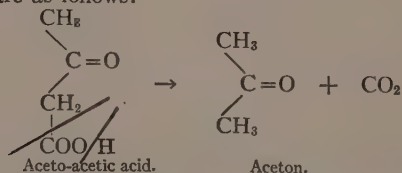


or diacetic acid) is metabolized ultimately to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Exactly how the 4-carbon aceto-acetic acid becomes oxidized is not known, but it is probable that it undergoes conversion to two compounds, acetic aldehyde,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CHO}$ , glyoxylic acid,  $\text{CHO}\cdot\text{COOH}$ , or formic acid,  $\text{H}\cdot\text{COOH}$ , whence it becomes by oxidation,  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

In acidosis, aceto-acetic acid is related to acetone,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , which is aceto-acetic acid minus  $\text{CO}_2$ .<sup>1</sup> This does not necessarily represent the relation in acidosis, but probably it is the procedure, since the reaction goes on spontaneously in alkaline medium, or more quickly with an oxidizing agent like  $\text{H}_2\text{O}_2$ . In some unknown way glucose reacts in such an equation as that representing the conversion of aceto-acetic acid into acetone, favoring the reaction; in this case, the function of glucose, or its derivative, is called ketolytic, since it causes the keton-acid, aceto-acetic acid, to break up. Ketolysis and related processes will be discussed in detail later (page 522).

Besides  $\beta$ -keto-butyric acid, another 4-carbon acid, built upon butyric acid occurs in acidosis; this acid is  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHOH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{COOH}$ . Insulin in the presence of glucose causes the 4-carbon acids to undergo normal metabolism, or what amounts to this.<sup>2</sup> Even in the test-tube, the reaction may be shown if the reaction is alkaline; glucose, on being oxidized,<sup>3</sup> causes the oxidation of aceto-acetic acid. What the substance is, produced by some unknown action upon glucose and which permits the burning of the ketoses<sup>4</sup> in an apparently normal manner, is not known, but in all probability, a 6-carbon compound is responsible for the reaction. Since caramel, roasted starch, and similar polymerized glucids are utilizable to some extent by the diabetic organism, causing either the

<sup>1</sup> The relations are as follows:



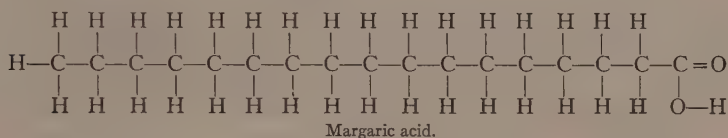
<sup>2</sup> See Killian, J. A. (New York Post-Graduate Medical School), Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., vol. 21, p. 22, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Or otherwise changed.

<sup>4</sup> Rosenfeld: "Fat burns in the fire of the carbohydrate." Ascher-Spiro, Ergebnisse, I, Biochemie, 1902.

suppression or disappearance of the keto-substances, it may be some polymere of glucose that acts as a ketolytic substance.<sup>1</sup> We have seen<sup>2</sup> that insulin cleaves hexosephosphate; the resulting glucose, split from the phosphoric acid, may be antiketogenic. We know that glucose forms hexosephosphate and that the hexosephosphate is cleaved in the blood.<sup>3</sup>

**Carbon Atom Number and Fat Utilization.**—It has already been observed that the normal animal is capable of utilizing 4-carbon compounds left after  $\beta$ -oxidation has progressed for some time, while the diabetic animal cannot. All natural fats are composed of even-numbered carbon atoms. However, the diabetic as well as the normal animal can utilize fats which have odd-carbon fatty-acids like margaric,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_{15}\text{COOH}$  or  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}_2$ :



Such acids do not occur in nature, but are made in the laboratory.<sup>4</sup> Ringer found that odd-carbon fats and fatty acids are utilized by the diabetic, owing to the fact that  $\beta$ -oxidation carries the last group to a 3-carbon and not to a 4-carbon chain, as in the case of the naturally occurring fats and acids. Thus, propionic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$  is formed and is capable of being converted into glucose. For this reason, glucose appears in the urine of a subject being fed one of the odd-carbon substances.

**The Antiketogenic Action of Odd-carbon Compounds.**—At the present time it is difficult to make definite statements regarding the

<sup>1</sup> A substance which prevents the formation of keto-acids and ketones is known as an antiketogenic substance.

<sup>2</sup> Page 171.

<sup>3</sup> Page 171; also consult the paper of Chaikoff, Macleod, and Markowitz, page 501.

<sup>4</sup> The commercial product is known by the trade name of "intarvin" and is made by the Intarvin Company, Long Island City, New York. It is a fat composed of glycerol and 3 molecules of margaric acid. One method of preparing it is to boil cetyl cyanid, obtained by heating cetyl alcohol with KCN, with KOH. The fact that odd-carbon fats and acids, like valeric,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_3\text{COOH}$ , and non-yllic acids,  $\text{CH}_3(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{COOH}$ , are capable of forming glucose was recognized by A. I. Ringer (then of the University of Pennsylvania, now of Montefiore Hospital, New York). See his papers in the Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 12, p. 511, 1918, and later.

utility of odd-carbon compounds in the organism, for while animal experimentation and observation on human subjects by some observers<sup>1</sup> show absorption of the fat (intarvin) to the extent of 95 per cent.; non-toxicity; ketolytic and antiketogenic properties; appeasing of hunger and prevention of loss of weight; on the other hand, other observers<sup>2</sup> fail to find ketolytic effects. Sevringhaus fed intarvin to two men up to 100 gs. per day without lessening the acidosis induced by fasting. Since glucose is not affected by these odd-carbon fats, so that this sugar exerts its ketolytic and antiketogenic action, any favorable effect from odd-carbon fats must be sought in the reduction of acidity of the body and to a utilization neither of the natural even-carbon fats nor of glucose. Glucose, indirectly, may be affected, since by lowering the acidity, glucose is more readily utilized.

**The Quantitative Relations between Ketogenic and Antiketogenic Substances.**—The hospital diet for diabetics is based in part upon the quantitative relation between those foods which do not produce keto-acids but rather inhibit their production, and foods that produce such acids. While aceto-acetic acid is usually formed from fats, we know that certain amino-acids, leucin, phenylalanin, and tyrosin can also form it. On the other hand, glucids are antiketogenic. Shaffer<sup>3</sup> has studied the problem in detail.

*Antiketogenesis.*<sup>4</sup>—Shaffer found that when the keto-acid, aceto-acetic acid, which appears in the urine of patients with acidosis, is boiled with glucose in an alkaline solution in the presence of hydrogen peroxid as an oxidizing agent, about one-half of the acid disappears. In the absence of glucose about one-third as much of the keto-acid is destroyed. Fructose and glycerol also act in the process of destruction of the keto-acid. Other substances, such as lactic acid, which are known to be products of glucose disintegration, do not act as ketolytic<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Heft, H. L., Kahn, M., and Gies, W. J. (Columbia University and Beth Israel Hospital, New York), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. lxxvii (Proceedings), 1925. Also Lundin, A., Jour. Metabol. Research, vol. 4, p. 151, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Sevringhaus, E. L. (Wisconsin), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. xlix (Proceedings), 1924.

<sup>3</sup> Shaffer, P. A. (Washington University, St. Louis, Mo.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 47, p. 433, 1921, and later papers in the same journal.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *anti*, against; *keto* refers to the keto-acid, aceto-acetic, and to the keton, acetone, and *gen*, to produce. A substance which prevents the formation of keto-substances.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *keto*, and *lysis*, to loosen. The term is applied to substances which destroy ketones.

substances. In this test-tube experiment of Shaffer glucose is burned at the same time that the keto-acid is destroyed.

It is known that when glucose is given to a person who excretes aceto-acetic acid, an antiketogenic or ketolytic action inhibits the further excretion of the acid if the glucose is utilized. By analogy with the test-tube experiment of Shaffer just described, glucose is burned and thereby the keto-acid is destroyed (ketolysis); moreover, the action may involve the oxidation of the substances which produce the keto-acid (fat, principally) before the acid is formed (antiketogenesis). Three hypotheses have been offered for this protective action of glucose against the formation of the keto-acid or for the destruction of the acid once formed:

(1) A keton-glucose compound necessary for the burning of these two substances does not form and therefore they accumulate.

(2) Certain products are formed when glucose is oxidized that cause the burning of the keto-substance.

(3) Glucose joins with the keto-substance having 4 carbon atoms to produce a compound that has such a configuration that a keto-substance does not form during oxidation. The compound of glucose and aceto-acetic acid has 10 carbon atoms (glucose 6 and the keto-acid 4, making 10). This 10-carbon compound is cleaved into two halves each, with 5 carbon atoms, from which a molecule of acetaldehyde (2 carbon atoms) and one of propylaldehyde (3 carbons) are produced. These compounds can be burned to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

None of these theories is adequate and it is not known at the present time what rôle glucose plays.

**Calculations of Keto-antiketogenic Ratios.**—It is possible, by carefully analyzing the factors, to place this relation upon a fairly definite, quantitative basis. Fats give rise to the larger amount of aceto-acetic acid: 1 g. fat produces 0.35 g. aceto-acetic acid.<sup>1</sup>

Some amino-acids give rise to keto-substances:

<sup>1</sup> This is based upon the theoretically possible amount of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid which can be obtained from mixed body fat; 36 gs. may be produced from 100 gs. of fat. The average molecular weight of the three fats found in body fat, stearid, palmitid, and oleid, is 874. Three molecules of aceto-acetic acid are derived from 1 gram of fat. Hence  $1/874$  gram-molecule of fat capable of producing aceto-acetic acid times 3 gives, in decimal fraction, 0.003432 gram-molecule, the amount of aceto-acetic acid 1 gram of fat will give. The molecular weight of aceto-acetic acid is 102. If we multiply this figure by the one just obtained, we have 0.35 g., the weight of aceto-acetic acid in grams from 1 gram of fat.

	G. mol. aceto-acetic acid.
1 g. leucin gives.....	0.109
1 g. phenylalanin.....	0.027
1 g. tyrosin.....	0.024
Total for 16.18 gs. nitrogen <sup>1</sup> .....	0.160
1 g. nitrogen, 1/16.18 of 0.160.....	0.100

The total ketogenic value of the foods, then, may be determined by estimating the amount of fat and of food-nitrogen administered.

Turning to the *antiketogenic substances*, we know that glucose is utilized as a whole to produce the antiketogenic substance and we may assume that each molecule of glucose produces one of the antiketogenic substances. The molecular weight of glucose is 180; 1 g. of glucose  $\approx$  1/180 g. mol. antiketogenic substance, that is, 0.00556 g. mol. Then:

1 g. glucose produces 0.00556 g. mol. antiketogenic substance.

Again, we have shown that certain amino-acids can produce glucose. Corresponding to 1 g. nitrogen, there are 3.6 gs. glucose. Therefore, 1/180 of 3.6 or 0.020 g. mol. of glucose corresponds to 1 g. nitrogen. By determining the total nitrogen of the urine, we are able to tell the amount of antiketogenic substance, expressed as glucose, produced in the body during the time the urine was collected.

1 g. urinary nitrogen  $\approx$  0.02 g. antiketogenic glucid.

The keto-antiketogenic ratio  $\left(\frac{K}{A}\right)$  is therefore:

$$\frac{\text{Sum of keto-substance from fat and that from protid (urine nitrogen)}}{\text{Sum of antiketogenic substance from glucose and from protid (urine n.)}^2}$$

**The K/A Ratio Derived from Food Calories.**—The physician generally thinks of diet in terms of units of heat energy, known as Calories.<sup>3</sup> Tables which give the Calories corresponding to a given amount of glucid, lipid, or protid foods have been prepared and may be found in different books.<sup>4</sup> Shaffer has calculated the necessary data for the three typical food groups for use in determining the K/A ratio:

<sup>1</sup> The amount of nitrogen in 100 gs. protid.

<sup>2</sup> A small and nearly negligible amount of antiketogenic substance may be derived from glycerol in fat. This is calculated as 0.00057 g. mol. of antiketogenic substance and this is not included in the above ratio.

<sup>3</sup> Page 192.

<sup>4</sup> Such a table suitable for the pocket is published in the form of a library card, 3 x 5 inches, by Thomas Groom & Co., Inc., 105 State Street, Boston, Mass.



1 g. urinary nitrogen $\approx$ 26.5 Calories.	
Ketogenic value.....	0.0010 g. mol.
Antiketogenic value.....	0.0020 "
One Cal. derived from protid $\approx$ :	
0.00037 g. mol. ketogenic substance.	
0.0075 g. antiketogenic substance.	
1 g. fatty acid $\approx$ 9.509 Calories.	
Ketogenic value.....	0.0036 g. mol.
Antiketogenic value.....	0.0000 "
One Calorie from fatty-acid $\approx$ 0.000378 g. mol. ketogenic substance.	
1 g. glucid (glucose) $\approx$ 3.76 Calories.	
Ketogenic value.....	0.0000 g. mol.
Antiketogenic value.....	0.0056 "
One Calorie from glucose $\approx$ 0.0000 ketogenic substance	
.001478 g. mol. antiketogenic substance.	

Then:

$$\frac{K}{A} = \frac{\text{Calories from 100 gs. of fatty acid} + \text{Calories from 100 gs. protid}}{\text{Calories from 100 gs. glucose}} \times \frac{\text{Ketogenic value of one fatty acid or one protid Calorie}}{\text{Antiketogenic value of one glucose Calorie}}$$

Since the right-hand members of the above equation have the values:

$$\frac{0.000377}{.00148} = 0.255,$$

we may give the following equation as the basis of the determination as to whether a subject on a given diet is protected from ketogenesis or not:

$$\frac{K}{A} = \frac{\text{Per cent. Calories from fatty acids} + \text{per cent. from protid}}{\text{Per cent. Calories from glucose}^1} \times 0.255.$$

The normal ratio involving no ketosis is  $\frac{K}{A} = 1.0$ .

**The Simplified K/A Ratio of Ladd and Palmer.**<sup>2</sup>—This ratio has been derived from the diet protid and glucid. It is as follows:

$$\frac{K}{A} = \frac{\text{Grams of fat in diet}}{0.58 \times \text{gs. protid} + \text{gs. glucid}}$$

A ratio of  $\frac{K}{A} = 4.1$  produces ketosis. Roughly, this means that the proportion of fat (K) to glucose (A) in a diet is as 4:1 if ketosis just fails to appear. The figure 0.58 means 58 per cent. of the total food protid is used in the calculation of the ratio. An example of the calculation is:

A male, aged twenty-five years, with evidence of acute diabetes, was treated for five months by dietary methods. As a sample of his

<sup>1</sup> Glucose as starch, sucrose, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Ladd, W. S., and Palmer, W. W. (Johns Hopkins University and Columbia University), Amer. Jour. Med. Sci., vol. 166, p. 157, 1923.

diet, March 22d he was given glucids (oranges, turnips, carrots, etc.), 53 gs.; lipids (cream, ham, and bacon), 247 gs., and protid (eggs, ham, etc.), 50 gs. Substituting in the formula,  $\frac{K}{A} = \frac{\text{Gs. fat}}{0.58 \text{ protid} + \text{glucid}}$  we have:  $\frac{K}{A} = \frac{247}{0.58(50) + 53} = 3.98$ . This is just within the ratio 4.0, which we have stated is safe. On this day the excretion of ketons estimated as aceton was 0.80 g. This is to be compared to ketone excretion of 4.29 gs. when the ratio  $\frac{K}{A}$ <sup>1</sup> is higher than 5.74.

**Summary for the Utilization of Lipids.**—(1) Fat, unlike starches and protids is not directly absorbed into the blood, but into the lymphatic system and thence into the blood in the region of the heart. This is probably an adaptation to avoid fat emboli.

(2) Fat differs according to its location in the body: (A) Dépôt fat, characterized by having a high content of saturated, neutral fats. (B) Tissue fat, of unsaturated nature and largely phosphorized.

(3) Fat may be formed from starches and sugars, but there is little or no evidence of its formation from nitrogenous substances.

(4) In pathological states, where there is an apparent transformation of protid into fat, it is known that there is either a mobilization of fat already present, or an immigration of fat from outside the tissue.

(5) Cholesterol, included among the fats for physical reasons, is probably a protective substance and performs this function in diseased tissues. It aids in the transportation of fat in the blood by acting with fatty acids to form esters.

(6) Fats are oxidized by beta-oxidation. The last 2 carbon atoms are cleaved from the remainder of the fatty acid to form a molecule of acetic acid, leaving an acid 2 carbons fewer than before. In the normal animal, the last 4 carbons become oxidized as a butyric acid molecule. In the diabetic this is impossible and these incompletely oxidized butyric acid substances, like aceto-acetic acid and  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid, accumulate and give rise to acidosis (depleted alkali reserve).

(7) Odd-carbon fats which do not resolve themselves into 4-carbon butyric acid, but rather 3-carbon propionic acid derivatives, are utilized by both normal and pathological animals. These odd-carbon fats do not compensate for acidosis in diabetes.

(8) Ketogenic substances are those which give rise to ketons, aceto-

<sup>1</sup> Ladd and Palmer use the expression  $\frac{F}{G}$  (fat to glucose) in place of K and A.

acetic acid, and acetone, which is  $\text{CO}_2$ -less di-acetic acid. The fats are an example.

(9) Antiketogenic substances are glucids (especially glucose) which are capable of undergoing some change, at present unknown, which permits the 4-carbon chain to be destroyed in the diabetic animal.

(10) In dietetics, it is necessary to know the ability of different foods to produce acid substances and it is possible to calculate the ratio of ketogenic to antiketogenic substances. In general, a diet in which not over 10 per cent. of the energy value of the glucids, 10 per cent. of that of the protids, and 80 per cent. of that of lipids are utilized, will not produce acidosis. A diet in which the amount of fat is not more than four times the amount of available glucose protects against acidosis.

#### THE UTILIZATION OF THE PROTIDS

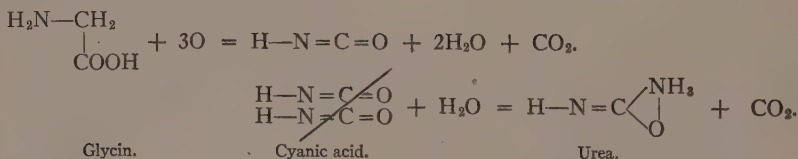
**Functions of the Protids.**—Protid is generally considered as the typical structure-former of the food-stuffs. It must be remembered, however, that other substances not of protid nature form some, at least, of the structure of the cell. Protid makes up about 20 per cent. of the body weight of man. The phospholipids are found in the wall of the animal cell and the characteristic constituents of the cell-nucleus, the chromosomes, are intimately associated with the phospholipids. In the nervous system the phospholipids are characteristic and must play a major rôle. Protids are so intimately associated with glucids that it is difficult in certain instances to say which is the more important.

**Characteristic Differences Between Protids and Other Food Substances.**—A reserve of glucids in the form of glycogen is found in the liver and muscles and a reserve of lipids in the great dépôts of the omentum and elsewhere; but there is no similar storage of protid. Each tissue absorbs a certain number and amount of amino-acids, but their sojourn is brief. After a meal rich in protids an extra amount called "circulating protid" or "deposit protid" (Lusk) is retained in the body, but it persists only as long as the diet is high in protid. It is true that the protids of the muscle and of other tissues can become utilizable under stress, but this involves a subtraction from the dynamic forces of the body, whereas the withdrawal of fat from the dépôts involves at most only a loss of reserve, which in no wise interferes with the activities of the organism. Indeed, the withdrawal of fat may tend to modify the shape of a portion of the body, or change

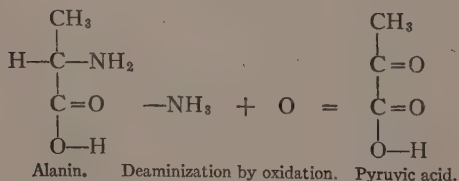
the relative volume, but this is generally compensated for by the introduction of water. The water is doubtless derived from the fat. When fat is oxidized more water is derived from a given amount of fat than is contained in a similar amount by weight. One hundred grams of fat (tripalmitid) gives rise to 109 grams of water when the fat is oxidized. The storage of amino-acids is insignificant compared with the storage of glucids and lipids.

**Storage of Amino-acids.**—Normally, the content of amino-acids in the blood may be expressed as 18 per cent. of the non-protid nitrogen, that is, about 4 mgs. per 100 mls. of blood. Tissues, especially liver and muscle, are capable of holding free amino-acids. Muscle absorbs these substances from the blood until about twenty times the blood concentration of amino-acids has been reached; that is, muscle absorbs about 80 mgs. of amino-acids per 100 gs. of tissue. The liver holds about twice as much, namely, 150 mgs. per cent. We do not know how these substances are held in the tissues. They are easily removed by water and this leads to the belief that they are not united to the protids or other cellular substances in a chemical manner, or, if so, very loosely. It is probable that the content of amino-acids in a tissue represents a balance between incoming and outgoing amino-acids and not a true storage, as in the case of glycogen and fat.

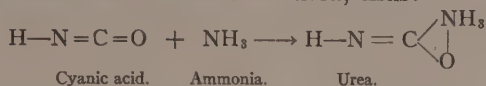
**The Fate of the Amino-acids.**—Following the digestion of protid, the amino-acids are passed into the portal system, whence they are carried to the liver. The liver removes relatively large amounts of these acids. Some are converted more or less directly into urea, according to the following scheme:



Others are deaminized. This leaves ammonia and a fatty acid, as follows:



The ammonia thus formed unites with a molecule of cyanic acid produced from other amino-acids to form urea, thus:

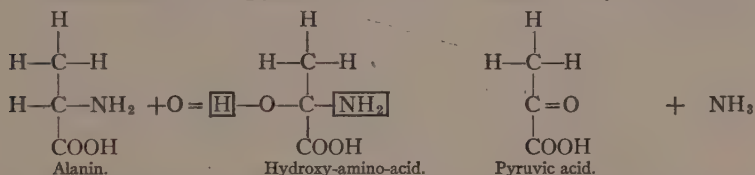


**The Stereo-chemical Relations in Amino-acid Utilization.**—

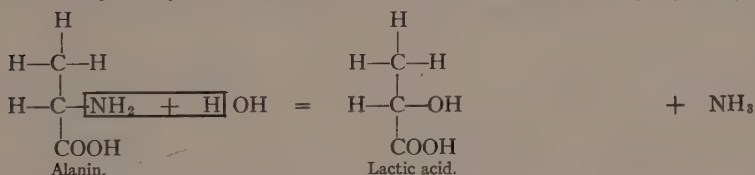
Natural amino-acids are characteristically levorotatory, but certain amino-acids, such as *d*-alanin and *d*-aspartic acid are dextrorotatory. If the antipode be given, namely, *l*-alanin, *l*-aspartic acid, or *d*-leucin, *d*-phenylalanin, the acid is not utilizable by the body, or only very slowly. If the racemic, or *d-l*-form be given, the body utilizes at first the naturally occurring amino-acid and only later, if at all, the artificial antipode. Generally, the antipode is excreted as such into the urine. Since artificially synthesized amino-acids are generally optically different from the natural ones, or else racemic, that is, inactive, the artificial synthesis of food-stuffs cannot as yet serve mankind as a means of sustenance to any extent.

**Deaminization.**—*Deaminization may lead to the formation of:*

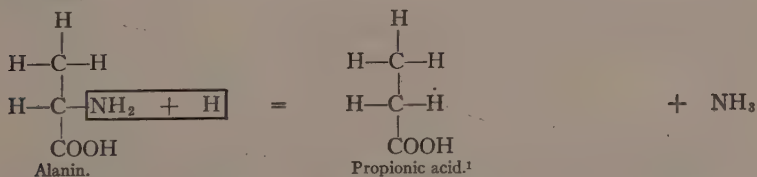
1. A keto-acid, like pyruvic acid (deaminization by oxidation):



2. An hydroxy-acid, like lactic acid (deaminization by hydrolysis):



3. A normal fatty acid, like propionic acid (deaminization by reduction):



<sup>1</sup> Reduction is accomplished as well by adding hydrogen as by withdrawing oxygen.



Probably all of these methods are utilized in the body.

Pyruvic, lactic, or propionic acid may then act as fatty acids, while the ammonia enters into the formation of urea, or of other compounds.

**Utilization of Amino-acids in the Tissues.**—The amino-acids which escape deamination in the liver pass into the general circulation and are distributed to the various tissues. The tissues which, for some reason, have a depleted supply of a certain amino-acid, characteristic of that tissue, retain their quota of this acid and other tissues remove theirs. Organs which, like the tendons, contain collagen demand a relatively large amount of the amino-acid glycine, but no cystine, whereas the tegumentary organs, like the scalp, bearing hair, utilize a large amount of this sulphur-bearing amino-acid. In this way protide is formed, which, we believe, becomes incorporated into the structure of the cell. The process of absorption of amino-acids from the blood, their introduction into the material structure of the cell, and the breaking down of the structure during which amino-acids are passed to the blood must be one which is occurring continually. The process involves the operation of the laws of mass-action and the physicochemical laws of diffusion and osmosis. These determine the balance between synthesis and catabolism, or the breaking down of the protoplasm. The fate of the amino-acids passed to the blood by the catabolizing tissues is unknown. We do not know whether these acids find their way to the liver or to the kidney,<sup>1</sup> and there become deaminized; or, as, recent evidence<sup>2</sup> indicates, this process of deamination occurs in the tissues. We do not know why amino-acids are lost from the tissues, while others, apparently of the same kind, replace them. The fact that increased metabolism of the muscles does not involve much increase in excretion of nitrogen signifies that there is little utilization of the amino-acids during muscle activity. The same may be said of glandular activity. Later<sup>3</sup> we shall discuss the stimulating action of protids on the metabolism of the body, the so-called "specific dynamic action"; this is caused by action of the amino-acids or their direct derivatives upon the cell. We shall also see<sup>4</sup> how glucids exert a sparing action upon the metabolism of the amino-acids illustrated by the action of insulin when the diet is

<sup>1</sup> Benedict's theory concerning ammonia (Chapter XV) demands some deamination in the kidney.

<sup>2</sup> Folin, O., and Berglund, H., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 51, p. 395, 1922.

<sup>3</sup> Page 553.

<sup>4</sup> Page 555.

restricted in glucids. The lowered destruction of protid is due to the increased utilization of glucose under the action of insulin.

**Utilization of Amino-acids in Abnormal Metabolism.**—In diabetes mellitus there is an accumulation of amino-acids in the blood and a corresponding increased excretion into the urine. This is not due to abnormal destruction of tissue, but rather to the failure of the body to make use of the amino-acids. Again, in nephritis, there is an accumulation of amino-acids in the blood; instead of the normal content of about 6 mgs. of amino-nitrogen per 100 mls. of whole blood, a concentration as high as 30 mgs. may develop in interstitial nephritis. This is due to the fact that the kidney is unable to excrete them normally (urinary amino-acid nitrogen, about 1 g. per twenty-four hours). In hepatic lesions, such as acute yellow atrophy and phosphorus poisoning, the concentration of amino-acids in the urine is abnormally high, owing to the great destruction of tissue in the liver and perhaps also owing to the loss of power of the liver to deaminate amino-acids.

In case of *cancer* in which an increased or unusual method of utilization of amino-acids might be expected, there is none. In the toxemias of pregnancy there is no increase in amino-acid content of the blood unless the kidney is affected, when the effects are those of nephritis occurring at the same time.

We have spoken<sup>1</sup> of the appearance of abnormal amounts of the sulphur-bearing amino-acid, cystin, in *cystinuria*. In addition to cystin, other amino-acids appear and also derivatives of amino-acids like the decarboxylated amino-acid products, putrescin<sup>2</sup> and cadaverin,<sup>3</sup> which impart the peculiar odor to the cystinuric urine. This indicates a more extensive involvement in cystinuria than the amino-acid cystin itself. Alkaptonuria<sup>4</sup> is a striking example of the abnormal disposition of the amino-acids, tyrosin and phenylalanin. These aromatic substances do not follow the usual course of metabolism which involves the utilization of the fatty acid portion and excretion of the aromatic ring, conjugated with sulphuric acid or other conjugant. Instead, the fatty acid portion remains attached to the aromatic nucleus and is excreted in this manner.

Somewhat akin to alkaptonuria is *albinism*; this is the condition in which pigmentation does not occur in the skin, in the hair, nor in the iris of the eye. In alkaptonuria there is the production of a

<sup>1</sup> Page 248.

<sup>2</sup> Page 256.

<sup>3</sup> Page 258.

<sup>4</sup> Page 264.

special derivative of the aromatic amino-acids, which, when oxidized, becomes the dark, melanotic substance resembling the oxidized photographic developer, hydrochinon. In the case of albinism the "chromogen," or substance capable of being changed into the pigment of the skin, etc., and derived from the same source as homogentisic acid of the alkaptonuric subject, is present, but the mechanism for its conversion to the pigment by oxidation is lacking. By treating the coat of an albino rat with formalin and alcohol and later by hydrogen peroxid, a brown pigment is produced. In albinism, then, the aromatic amino-acids are not utilized normally.

**Increased Utilization of Amino-acids Occurs When They Are Employed for Purposes of Detoxication.**—Hippuric acid is increased in the urine if glycine is fed,<sup>1</sup> and if there is sufficient benzoic acid in the body or administered by mouth or by intravenous injection. Substances which otherwise would form urea are used as the source of glycine. Again, arginine, when fed with benzoic acid appears in the urine as di-benzoyl-ornithin, the ornithin being produced from arginine by the loss of a urea radicle<sup>2</sup>; then the ornithin is conjugated with benzoic acid as in the case of hippuric acid. During fasting amino-acids are produced from tissues, and during hemorrhage such production takes place constantly. Concerning the utilization of these amino-acids, we know little, but in studies of lower animals it has been found that they are converted into other tissues, as in the famous case of the Rhine salmon studied by Miescher<sup>3</sup> and in the American counterpart by Greene.<sup>4</sup>

**The Fate of Body Protids.**—After the synthesis of protids from the amino-acids, obtained from the foods, or from disintegration of other tissues, sooner or later they undergo hydrolysis and become excreted. Some are destroyed more quickly than others. Thus in order of rapidity of destruction we have: Gelatin, casein, serum albumin, fibrin, globulin, hemoglobin, egg-albumen. Cystin seems

<sup>1</sup> Glycine conjugates with benzoic acid to form hippuric acid. See Lewis, H. B. (Michigan), articles in the *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, volumes 17 and later. Also *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 18, p. 225, 1924. A photograph of Professor Lewis is given on page 248. See also editorial in *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 84, p. 1185, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Page 255.

<sup>3</sup> Miescher, F., Professor at Bonn-am-Rhein, Germany, one of the founders of biological chemistry.

<sup>4</sup> Greene, C. W. (Professor of Physiology, University of Missouri), who worked upon the Pacific coast salmon.

to be metabolized more rapidly than other amino-acids, as judged by the ratio  $\frac{\text{cystin sulphur}}{\text{urinary nitrogen}}$ . In autolysis the globulins are utilized first and then the albumin and other digestible protids. Egg-white affords an interesting example of a lag in metabolism. Thus, the nitrogen from egg-white in an experiment with man was not completely eliminated after six days, whereas that from veal was recovered within half that time.

**Amino-acids and Growth.**—Certain amino-acids, like lysin, are essential for growth. Others are believed, on good evidence, to be necessary. Cystin, tryptophan, histidin, arginin, and prolin<sup>1</sup> are thought to be indispensable to growth. Definite data regarding the other amino-acids is lacking, but the absence of certain ones, such as lysin, exerts a profound effect in inhibiting growth, which is at once relieved when the missing amino-acid is given as food. Glycin apparently can be made from other amino-acids.<sup>2</sup> In the case of glycin used in the making hippuric acid, such glycin is not synthesized from other amino-acids when they are fed, unless it be phenylalanin; there is no increased elimination of hippuric acid when other amino-acids are fed. During growth glycin can be dispensed with and left out of account in feeding.

The inability of certain foods to maintain growth has to do in part with their deficiency in indispensable amino-acids and in part with the absence of vitamins, to be discussed later.<sup>3</sup> Gelatin will not afford sustenance beyond a certain time, after which the animal dies. This is because cystin and tyrosin are absent, and tryptophan<sup>4</sup> is present in too small amounts. An exclusive diet of corn protid, zein, is insufficient and reference to the table on page 311 shows that this protid is deficient in cystin, tryptophan, and lysin. We shall return to this problem in the next Chapter.

**The Fate of the Nuclear Components.**—The "chromatin" of the histologist is identified by the biochemist as the nucleoprotid of the cell. This conjugated protid we have described as a salt in which the base is a protid belonging to the simple protids, protamin and

<sup>1</sup> The question of the indispensability of prolin in growth which was proposed by Abderhalden seems answered by the findings of Barnett Sure (University of Arkansas, Fayetteville, Ark.), that prolin is necessary for growth. See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. xvi (Proc.), 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Glycin is synthesized on a glucid diet for detoxications. See page 239.

<sup>3</sup> Page 540.

<sup>4</sup> Kraus, I., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. 157, 1925. See also page 308.



histon; the acid, nucleic acid. In the metabolism of the cell the nucleoprotid is hydrolyzed and the nucleic acid freed. A cell protid-cleaving enzyme, "autolytic" enzyme, is largely responsible for this action. Next, the nucleic acid is disrupted by nucleinases which hydrolyze the tetranucleotid<sup>1</sup> into the four mononucleotids, another group of these enzymes being the nucleotidases. Finally, nucleosidases hydrolyze the nucleosides into the glucid portion (hexose), the purins and pyrimidins. The amino-purins of the cell are oxidized by specific enzymes; one, an adenase, oxidizing adenin to hypoxanthin; the other, xanthin oxidase occurring only in the liver, oxidizing hypoxanthin to xanthin and xanthin to uric acid, while guanase oxidizes guanin to xanthin.

In normal blood all of the purins save guanin<sup>2</sup> have been detected. In the urine, tissue purin, adenin and its products, hypoxanthin and xanthin are represented by uric acid, but the food purins, the methyl-purins from tea, coffee, and chocolate are present as such. Seventy-five per cent. of the total purins of the urine examined by two German workers, Krueger and Salomen, consisted of food purins; the remaining purins were adenin (3.5 per cent.), hypoxanthin (8.5 per cent.), and xanthin (10.1 per cent.). Later work has shown that food purins make up even a larger proportion of the urine purins. Of the urinary uric acid, present in the form of monosodium urate, about one-half is endogenous and the remainder is exogenous, derived from the foods. When glandular substances like pancreas are fed, in which the proportion of nuclei compared with other tissues is high, an increase in uric acid excretion results. Purin metabolism is a function of tissues in general, but of the liver especially. Disintegration of the ingested nucleoprotid takes place in the organs and it is not known whether the purins thus freed appear as uric acid in the urine or whether urinary uric acid is the result of the replacement of tissue purins by food purins which crowd out, as it were, the tissue purins. From the work of Mendel<sup>3</sup> and his associates, it is evident that the course of metabolism of ingested nucleoprotid and that of the nuclei of the cells is identical. Folin has shown that tissues vary remarkably in their power of absorbing uric acid. The kidney absorbs a greater amount than any other organ.

<sup>1</sup> Page 325.

<sup>2</sup> Due to the ever-present guanase oxidizing purin to xanthin.

<sup>3</sup> Mendel, L. B. See photograph, page 404.



## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Bloor, W. R. Fat Transportation in the Animal Body, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 92, 1922.
- Collip, J. B. The History of the Discovery of Insulin, *Northwest Medicine*, August, 1923. (Contains bibliography over insulin to that date.)
- DuBois, E. F. Basal Metabolism, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1924.
- Folin, O. Non-protein Nitrogen of the Blood in Health and Disease, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 460, 1922.
- Garrod, A. E. Inborn Errors of Metabolism, Oxford Medical Publications, 2d ed., London, Henry Frowde, 1923.
- Leathes, J. B. The Function of the Liver in Relation to the Metabolism of Fats, Harvey Society Lecture, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1910, p. 213.
- Leathes, J. B. The Fats, Monographs on Biochemistry, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1921.
- Levene, P. A. The Structure and Significance of the Phosphatids, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 327, 1921.
- Livon, B. Le Vivisection, Paris. In this volume methods for the Bernard piqure, etc., are given.
- Lusk, G. The Elements of the Science of Nutrition, Philadelphia. W. B. Saunders Co., 3d ed., 1919. (A new edition is in preparation.)
- Lusk, G. The Fundamental Basis of Nutrition, New Haven, Connecticut, Yale University Press, 1914.
- Macleod, H. Lecithin and Allied Substances, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1919.
- Macleod, J. J. R. Physiology and Biochemistry in Modern Medicine, St. Louis, Mo., C. V. Mosby Co., 4th ed., 1922.
- Macleod, J. J. R. The Sugar of the Blood, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 208, 1921.
- Macleod, J. J. R. Insulin, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 4, p. 21, 1924.
- Macleod, J. J. R. Insulin, *Medicine*, vol. 3, p. 195, 1924.
- Mathews, A. P. Physiological Chemistry, New York, William Wood & Co., 4th ed., 1925.
- Miescher, F. Histochemische und physiologische Arbeiten, Leipzig, Vogel, 1897.
- Myers, V. C. Practical Chemical Analysis of the Blood, St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Co., 2d ed., 1924.
- Robertson, T. B. The Chemical Basis of Growth and Senescence, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott, 1923.
- Rose, W. C. Purin Metabolism, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 544, 1923.
- Rosenfeld, G. Fettbildung. In Ascher und Spiro *Ergebnisse der Physiologie*, vol. 1, part 1 (Biochemie), p. 651. Wiesbaden, Bergmann, 1902.
- Shaffer, P. A. Intermediate Metabolism of the Carbohydrates, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 394, 1923.
- Shaffer, P. A. Antiketogenesis, *Medicine*, vol. 2, p. 375, 1923.
- Underhill, F. P. The Physiology of the Amino-acids, New Haven, Connecticut, Yale University Press, 1915.
- Von Fuerth, O. Chemistry of Metabolism, translated by Smith, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1916.
- Wells, H. G. Chemical Pathology, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925, 5th ed.

## CHAPTER XII

### NUTRITION FROM THE CHEMICAL STANDPOINT

"The science of nutrition gives promise of making possible the realization of the optimal condition of physical well-being, with all that this implies for the mental achievement, freedom from physical defects, and immunity to many of the ills which result from invasion of the tissues through breeches in the barriers of bodily defense."—*McCollum*.<sup>1</sup>

**Nutrition a Primary Function.**—Each living thing, plant, or animal exhibits two fundamental functions, self-preservation and perpetuation



Fig. 158.—E. V. McCollum, Professor of Chemistry, School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland. Contributor to the chemistry of substances like phosphorus in the organism and promoter of extensive and pioneer investigations of foods, with especial reference to vitamins.

of the race. Nutrition is essential to the former. The same general method of nutrition which is found in the bacterium is encountered

<sup>1</sup> McCollum, E. V. (Fig. 158), *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1922.

in man, and the differences in food have only to do with a differentiation in structure, due to environmental restrictions. The bacterium is conspicuously supplied with lipids; the tree is overwhelmingly composed of glucids, like cellulose. The complex organism of man requires a wide variety of nutritive substances of non-nitrogenous and of nitrogenous nature. Biologically, man is not synthetic, for he gains much of his food from organisms, either plants or animals, which have already synthesized the foods, the principal effect being partial oxidation. Man makes use of no foods for energy purposes which do not contain some oxygen. Further oxidation takes place within the body, but the foods are not completely oxidized before excretion, as will be pointed out in Chapter XV. Carbon dioxid and urea are two conspicuous examples of this fact, for both have bonds which are unsaturated, as shown by the formula  $O=C=O$ , for carbon dioxid and  $H-N=C \begin{array}{c} \nearrow NH_3 \\ \searrow O \end{array}$  for urea. Moreover, some have replaceable atoms, like hydrogen in urea, which burns to  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2O$ , and oxides of nitrogen. The foods which are utilized for the production of energy<sup>1</sup> stand intermediate in degree of oxidation, between substances having no oxygen and those which have been completely oxidized. It is not known why the body only utilizes partly oxidized foods or why it does not complete oxidation, thus deriving all the energy possible from the burning.

**General Considerations.**—Nutrition may be viewed from one of two aspects: (1) From that of the chemical materials composing the body, which replace the structures suffering wear and tear; and (2) from the standpoint of energy of which in man there are two principal types: The energy of heat and mechanical energy. It has already been noted that fats are chiefly concerned with the production of heat and with the production of mechanical energy.

**Growth and Maintenance.**—Man has a well-defined limit of stature, which is reached by the process of growth. This implies the acquisition of body substance at the expense of the foods. Hence, for the purpose of growth, food is necessary. Furthermore, in order to maintain the body within the limits of standard size, height, weight, etc., food must be consumed; this is known as maintenance. Substances which are indispensable in bringing the body to the stature of the adult

<sup>1</sup> By this is meant not substances like  $NaCl$  or  $H_2O$ , which do not contribute to the energy of the body.

are not always indispensable to maintenance of this stature, once attained, or for maintenance of the young when growth is temporarily suspended. Thus, wheat protid, gliadin,<sup>1</sup> serves for maintenance, but the percentage of lysin is too low compared with the total content of amino-acids to produce growth. Casein, which permits both maintenance and growth,<sup>2</sup> contains 7.68 gs. of lysin per 100 gs. of casein, whereas gliadin contains only 0.63 g. per cent. The corn<sup>3</sup> (maize) protid, zein, permits neither growth nor maintenance, there being no lysin and probably no tryptophan and a mere trace of cystin, if any.

The qualitative nature of the chemical relations are more important than the quantitative, as is demonstrated by feeding combinations

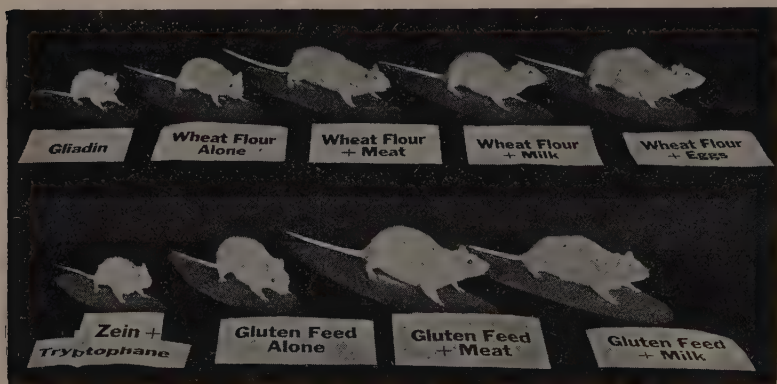


Fig. 158a.—Effect of feeding improper and proper combinations of food. (After Mendel, Nutrition, Yale Univ. Press.)

of amino-acids. Thus, if the two missing amino-acids, tryptophan and lysin, are fed along with zein, growth occurs, whereas, if zein is supplemented with tryptophan alone, maintenance but no growth is obtained. Maintenance may be continued for a long time with cessation of growth, when zein and tryptophan are fed, but on restoring the full complement of amino-acids by adding lysin, growth is at once resumed. Growth may occur to a certain extent on a purified diet of protid which has a fairly complete suite of amino-acids, but growth is accelerated remarkably when the full complement of amino-

<sup>1</sup> Page 310.

<sup>2</sup> For a period of time; after a certain time special accessories, the vitamins, must be provided, along with salts, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Wheat is called "corn" in certain countries.



acids in the proper quantitative proportions is given. Thus, the albumin of milk, lactalbumin, will cause growth, but if lactalbumin be supplemented by the imperfect protid, zein, growth is greatly accelerated.<sup>1</sup> Turning to inorganic substances, a diet deficient in minerals does not permit growth or maintenance; for unless the diet contain sufficient inorganic substance of a given kind, sooner or later there is a cessation of growth and, still later, a failure of maintenance. The qualitative necessity for definite mineral substances has been demonstrated by attempts to maintain vigor or growth on alkali earth metals, like magnesium and calcium, one being supplemented for the other. The experiments proved that calcium could not be replaced by magnesium.

**Purified Diets.**—Since the chemical composition of foods is quite definitely known and methods have been devised by which the fundamental units making up the various foods, the amino-acids, etc., may be synthesized from the elements, and since we know, by analysis, the mineral composition of the foods, it would seem possible to mix together glucose, glycerol, amino-acids, and inorganic substances in such proportions that maintenance and even growth would be secured. It has been found by such experimentation that maintenance may thereby be obtained for a time. If the amino-acids are obtained by acid hydrolysis, however, the food is less efficient, owing to the optical properties of the acid hydrolysis products,<sup>2</sup> than when they are obtained by the natural hydrolysis of products under the agency of enzymes, such as pepsin, followed by trypsin. The nutritive value of such artificial foods is limited, and the real value of the experiments in nutrition lies in the discovery of a hitherto unrealized group of food substances which are absolutely essential to maintenance and growth—the vitamins. It was while experimenting on purified foods that Hopkins<sup>3</sup> realized that some factors other than the purified organic and mineral constituents which he had been using was indispensable for both maintenance and growth.

**Effects of the Infinitely Small in Nutrition.**—Throughout the field of nutrition profound effects are exerted by extremely minute entities. A meager amount of enzyme accomplishes results of great magnitude. An infinitely small amount of certain inorganic substances,

<sup>1</sup> For complete description of this work see Mendel, L. B., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 64, p. 1539, 1915.

<sup>2</sup> Page 529.

<sup>3</sup> Hopkins, F. G., page 216.



like manganese, iron, or iodine, will result in changes in metabolism wholly out of proportion to these amounts. The addition of a minute amount of amino-acid like lysine to a diet deficient in this substance will start the maintenance or growth curve toward a different level. Similar effects of small amounts of material are found throughout pharmacology and therapeutics. Thus, an animal sensitized to egg-white may be killed by subsequent introduction of a minute amount of the egg-white substance. Ricin, obtained from the same source as ricin-oleic acid (castor oil), will cause the death of an experimental animal sensitized to it, even though the amount administered is so minute that it cannot be weighed on a delicate balance. Minute quantities of vitamins produce great effects. These are termed by Mendel the "Little Things in Nutrition."

### VITAMINS

**Definition.**—Vitamins<sup>1</sup> may be defined as substances of unknown chemical composition exerting a normalizing influence upon nutrition, maintenance, and growth. Like matter, in general, they are known only by their effects, or by the defects of diets in which they are insufficient or absent. They are probably not synthesized in the animal, but only in the plant. There are several categories and our knowledge of them is as yet very incomplete. Almost every year sees an addition to the list, or the subdivision of a given vitamin, previously considered as a single entity, into two or more vitamins, each exerting a specific function. The author believes that all the specialization of these minute substances, like vitamins, enzymes, antibodies, etc., will be resolved ultimately into simple phases of some single phenomenon; it is inconceivable that a minute cell should possess such profound differentiations as is necessary if we are to assume that it contains a suite of enzymes, many vitamins, a long list of minute determiners of heredity and of sex, and many other

<sup>1</sup> The term "vitamin" was originally spelled "vitamine" by Casimir Funk (Polish chemist, formerly in the United States, now in Warsaw, Poland), but since the term conveys the impression that these substances are amines, which they are known not to be, it has been suggested that the terminal "e" be dropped, which robs the word of any special significance. Since the term is derived from the Latin *vita* = life, which has a long "i," the word vitamin is pronounced "vyt'a-meen" in the United States. England is prone to follow the Continental method of pronouncing "i" by sounding it "ee," making, therefore, the term "veet'a-meen." In the present book the final e of amine is dropped, since it is from Ammon (the Egyptian Jupiter).

things. The chemist is unable to offer any physical basis for such complexity, nor is the histologist able to present evidence of such detail. As knowledge advances, this phantasmagoria of complexity undoubtedly will be explained on simple terms.

At the present time the following vitamins are recognized:

**Vitamin A**, known also as Fat-soluble A; Antixerophthalmic Vitamin; Antirachitic Vitamin; Growth-promoting, Fat-soluble Vitamin. The chief features concerning this vitamin are:

(1) *Its association (but not identity) with lipids*, chiefly those of the animal kingdom: "tissue" fats as distinguished from the depot fats. Examples: Fish oils, like shark-oil, dogfish-oil, and oils of other members of the selachians; cod, hake and other members of the teleost fishes; tissues of glandular nature and those in which metabolism is active, like liver, kidney, etc. Plants, leaves, and other parts containing chlorophyll also have this vitamin.<sup>1</sup>

(2) *In its absence, two well-defined phenomena arise: Cessation of growth and xerophthalmia.*

(a) Although growth ceases, maintenance may be continued, and birds living on a diet deficient in this vitamin will lay eggs from which apparently normal offspring develop. Mammals, however, exhibit lesions in the absence of vitamin A. On the other hand, if minute quantities of some substance containing the vitamin, are included in the diet, growth is resumed. Thus, the addition of one drop of melted butter to a deficiency diet for the albino rat will cause the growth curve to pass upward. The reproductive function requires adequate content of vitamin A. Length of life likewise is prolonged on adequate vitamin A diets in experimental animals.

(b) Xerophthalmia,<sup>2</sup> an eye condition involving at first lachrymation,<sup>3</sup> photophobia, endophthalmia, then infection and encrustation; finally, depilation of the region around the lids and exfoliation of the epithelium. If the condition is not treated by the addition of an adequate amount of vitamin A to the diet, the cornea will become opaque and the sight of the eye be permanently injured. The conditions just described are exactly those which arose in Scandinavian

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix, Tables of Food Vitamins.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *xersos*, dry land, and *ophthalmos*, eye; that is, encrustation about the eye.

<sup>3</sup> "Watering of the eyes." Photophobia, dread of light; endophthalmia, receding of the eyeball into the socket; depilation, loss of hair; exfoliation, development of "rawness."

countries during the Great War, when the inhabitants shipped their butter and cream abroad, leaving skimmed milk for their children. Keratomalacia<sup>1</sup> is found in both children and adults in all countries; this disease resembles the corneal condition of experimental xerophthalmia, due to deficiency of vitamin A.

(c) Less manifest disturbances develop in its absence. Calculi of phosphate substance appear in the urinary tract of animals fed



Fig. 159.—Xerophthalmia in a child due to malnutrition during war. It illustrates a baby from the practice of Dr. Bloch, which had suffered from an attack of ophthalmia of dietary origin, and was cured by administration of fat-soluble A, as butter and cod-liver oil. The disease had, however, progressed so far that the sight of the left eye was destroyed. The right eye was somewhat damaged (Bloch<sup>2</sup>).

a deficiency diet<sup>3</sup>; this condition has not, however, been correlated with deficiency in vitamin A in man. The relation of fats, calcium and phosphate metabolism, according to which calcium-phosphorus retention in animals is modified by oils like cod-liver oil,<sup>4</sup> known to

<sup>1</sup> Greek *keras*, horn, and *malakia*, softness.

<sup>2</sup> Copenhagen, Denmark.

<sup>3</sup> Osborne, T. B., and Mendel, L. B., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 69, p. 32, 1917.

<sup>4</sup> Recently it has been shown that oils which do not contain vitamin A, like olive oil, cause Ca fixation.

contain vitamin A, leads us to attribute the formation of calculi to inadequate vitamin A content of foods.

The possibility of vitamin A deficiency being an etiological factor in the development of rachitis,<sup>1</sup> or rickets, has been quite definitely disproved by modern research. Another factor must be sought and has undoubtedly been found in the effects of radiant energy of the sun or of the mercury-vapor lamp. This will be discussed later on page 634.

*Chemical Nature of Vitamin A.*—We have no certain knowledge regarding this. The chief physical and chemical properties of vitamin A are as follows:

- (1) It is heat-stable in the absence of free oxygen.
- (2) It is readily oxidized.
- (3) Substances containing it may be dried at low temperatures (40° C.) without destroying it to any great extent.
- (4) Fats containing it, by boiling with 20 per cent. KOH, may be saponified and the vitamin be recovered from the non-saponifiable fraction.

In *dietaries* vitamin A may be supplied by feeding the substances mentioned on page 541. The table shows that many preserved foods contain it in adequate quantities. Practically all canned milks, whether evaporated, condensed, or dried into a powder provide adequate amounts of the vitamin. This is probably the reason why there is so little xerophthalmia or inhibition of growth in the United States traceable to vitamin A deficiency.

**Vitamin B**, known also as Water-soluble B; Antineuritic Vitamin; Growth-promoting, Water-soluble Vitamin. This vitamin plays a most important rôle in human economy and has figured largely in dietaries all over the world. Of the various vitamins in the food materials used by man, it is the most widely distributed. Its *deficiency* in the diet of the young *produces certain definite effects*:

- (1) *Initial Loss of Appetite.*—This is due to some unknown factor, but simple absence of stimulation of the secretions of the gastric juice or of other direct effect is not the cause. As soon as the vitamin is fed a general improvement in metabolism, including appetite and

<sup>1</sup> Rickets may appear in children or adults, but is far more common in children. In Jefferson Hospital an average of 1 case of adult rickets appears per annum. The disease is manifested in the young by irregular arrangement of the cells normally concerned with the ossification of the epiphyses of the bones, hyperemia (abundant blood-supply), and delayed calcification. Other changes, like altered Ca-P ratio in the blood, intestinal and blood conditions, etc., occur.



digestion,<sup>1</sup> results. A quantitative relation between vitamin B and appetite holds, 30 gs. of yeast being necessary for the dog to retain normal appetite.

(2) *Failure of Continued Growth*.—Insufficient amounts of vitamin B cause suspension in increase of size, but in other respects development and differentiation continue. If an adequate amount of vitamin B is restored later, the normal size of the organs and of the body as a whole is attained.

(3) *Nervous lesions* (polyneuritis in animals; beri-beri in man) in both young and adult. In experimental animals, like the pigeon, dog, albino rat, etc., lack of vitamin B affects the adult after a varying period of time (two months in the dog) by a paralysis of the extensor muscles of the hind legs and later of the front legs. In the pigeon, muscles of the legs and wings are affected and also the cervical muscles, so that the bird loses control of the motions of its head. These effects are similar to the clonic<sup>2</sup> contractions induced by injection or feeding drugs of the strychnin group, especially when the animal is disturbed. Later<sup>3</sup> we shall discuss the human disease, beri-beri, and compare its symptoms with those of the experimentally induced polyneuritis.

(4) *Lowered Reproductive Function*.—Originally, the absence of vitamin B was correlated with lowered reproductive function, especially of the female, but more careful studies<sup>4</sup> have attributed this effect to another factor discussed on page 548.

The *physical and chemical nature of vitamin B* is better understood than that of A.

(1) Vitamin B is less affected by heat and reagents than is vitamin A. It may be subjected to weak acids at 100° C., without losing its power to counteract deficiency effects. However, alkali, even when quite dilute, affect it profoundly and cause it to lose potency.

(2) Chemically, more is known of its relations than of any other vitamin. Through the investigations of Williams,<sup>5</sup> particularly,

<sup>1</sup> Cowgill, G. R., et al. (Yale University), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. xi (Proceedings), 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *klonos*, turmoil.

<sup>3</sup> Page 624.

<sup>4</sup> Mattill, H. A., and Congdon, C. C. (Rochester School of Medicine, Rochester, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. xii (Proceedings), 1924.

<sup>5</sup> Williams, R. R., at present chemist, Roselle, N. J. His chief work was done in the Department of Agriculture, Washington.



following the earlier work of Funk, it has become evident that similarities exist between vitamin B and the pyrimidin, uracil,<sup>1</sup> a com-

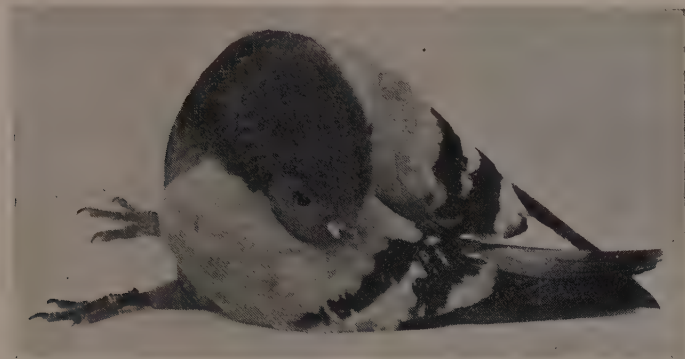


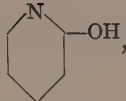
Fig. 160.—Characteristic attitude of pigeon with polyneuritis (avian beriberi) after three weeks' feeding with a diet of "polished" rice. The pigeon is used year after year as a class demonstration and the extreme effect passes off within a few hours after feeding vitamin B containing foods. The picture represented in Fig. 161 was taken three hours after Fig. 160 and after the pigeon had received a copious feeding of mixed whole cereals, yeast, etc.

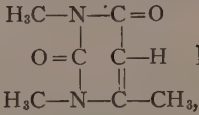


Fig. 161.—Pigeon shown in Fig. 160 three hours after feeding a vitamin B rich diet. Three weeks were required to produce the extreme symptoms shown in Fig. 160 and three hours to start the recovery as shown in the above picture. Twelve hours later it would have been impossible to pick this bird from other healthy birds.

ponent of nucleic acids. Polyneuritis is improved when  $\beta$ -hydroxy-

<sup>1</sup> Page 327.

pyridin, , is administered, a substance which responds to the

phenol test of Folin.<sup>1</sup> Likewise, tri-methyl-uracil,  has

been found to offset somewhat the deficiency of vitamin B. However, it must be borne in mind that no single observation concerning the chemical nature of vitamin B has not been challenged.

(3) Distribution of vitamin B among the commoner foods is revealed by reference to page 580. In general, it may be said that in increasing amounts it is found in milk, leafy vegetables such as lettuce, juice of citrus fruits (grape-fruit, orange, etc.), tomato, egg-yolk, glandular organs from animals, and especially in cereals and yeast.

(4) The amount of vitamin B required for protection against any of the above-mentioned deficiencies is extremely minute; "it is probably represented by a few parts per million of active body tissues" (Mendel).

**Vitamin C**, also known as Water-soluble C; Antiscorbutic Vitamin. The importance of this vitamin is recognized both for child and adult:

*Effects of Deficiency in Vitamin C.*—(1) *Infantile scorbutus* develops when insufficient amounts of the vitamin are supplied, owing to the use of cooked foods and especially of modified milk.

(2) *In the adult* conditions similar to those which occur in the child are found in individuals who live primarily on well-cooked foods or canned products, which do not contain sufficient vitamin C. The disease is known as scurvy and has also been called the "mariner's disease," owing to its prevalence among seamen of past generations. Some food containing this vitamin must be present to maintain normal states.

The *chief physical characteristics of vitamin C* are: (1) It is very susceptible to heat, especially in the presence of oxygen. This is the principal danger of vitamin C deficiency in our modern diet, for practically all processes of food preservation involve high temperatures and oxidation. Some foods, however, are richer in vitamin C than others, and therefore permit considerable loss in its concentration. An excellent example is the tomato; for in practically any form, whether dried, canned in hermetically sealed cans, served partially ripe or very ripe (after being cooked in an autoclave), from 5 to 15

<sup>1</sup> Page 236.

per cent. of the vitamin content is preserved. Potatoes inhibit scurvy, and were it not for the high diet in this form of food among the Irish and Germans<sup>1</sup> of the last century, scurvy would have claimed many lives.

(2) While fairly stable for short periods, it becomes destroyed after a time. This has led to scurvy among members of expeditions who had depended upon preserved foods, even though lime-juice and other food substances were especially provided to ward against scurvy. The latter suffered such loss of vitamin that they became ineffective as antiscorbutic agents.

The *chemical nature* of vitamin C has been studied by N. Bezssnoff (Paris), who has isolated a white, crystalline substance from cabbage with which he can both prevent and cure scurvy in experimental animals.

**Vitamin D**, also called "X" (McCollum), Antirachitic Vitamin. We have stated<sup>2</sup> that to vitamin A was at first attributed the property of obviating rickets, but that recent work has emphasized the necessity of distinguishing vitamin A from another factor, which accompanies it at times and which, for want of a better designation, is called vitamin X (or D).

*Characteristics.*—(1) It is heat-stable. It may be obtained by making a calcium soap from an oil, like cod-liver oil (which has long been known for its antirachitic properties) and dissolving out the vitamin by means of acetone. By this process it is possible to concentrate the vitamin many times.

(2) It shows no toxicity when fed in large amounts.

<sup>1</sup> This was especially true of the times of the industrial revolutions, depicted by Gerhard Hauptmann.

<sup>2</sup> Page 543.



Fig. 162.—Typical rachitic child. Large head. Pot belly. Knock-knees. Flat-foot. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. 2.)

(3) It works quantitatively, the dose per kilogram of body weight having fairly definite limits.

(4) Vitamin D may be replaced by light of wave-length about 2900 Å.<sup>1</sup> Such light is obtainable from the sun during the summer months, reaching an optimum in June; or from a source of ultraviolet light, like the mercury vapor lamp. While curative effects are obtained when such light is applied directly, the same effect may be obtained by feeding certain foods that have been exposed to such light. Of these, cholesterol seems to be the most significant as far as rickets is concerned. The discovery of such mode of treatment is due to two independent workers, Steenbock of Wisconsin and Hess of New York. Of this work, we shall have more to say later.<sup>2</sup>

(5) There is a fixation of calcium and an establishment of a normal ratio of calcium and phosphates in the blood of rachitic patients who have been treated by either cod-liver oil or by ultraviolet light.

(6) The symptoms of rickets other than incomplete calcification of the bones, are loss of appetite, loss of body weight, and alimentary disturbances. During recovery, when the vitamin is given, the appetite increases and well-being is manifest to an equal or greater extent than in the stages before the onset of the disease.

(7) There is evidence that deficiency of vitamin D is responsible for a part, at least, of the cessation of growth which has been assigned to vitamin A. These two vitamins are, as a matter of fact, frequently associated.

*Chemical Nature.*—Nothing is known definitely of the chemical nature of the principle we have called vitamin D. Certain foods, like cholesterol and substances that are not foods, can be treated with the light mentioned above and develop antirachitic properties, but it is not known whether these substances are able to simply act as absorbers of light of this wave-length, or whether they become chemically altered by the light into a true "vitamin."

**Vitamin E**, known also as Funk's Vitamin D, Reproductive Vitamin, Evans' Vitamin, Vitamin E of Barnett Sure, Substance X of Mattill.<sup>3</sup> Evans<sup>4</sup> found that by adding natural food-stuffs, like leafy

<sup>1</sup> Page 127.

<sup>2</sup> Page 635.

<sup>3</sup> Wildiers' "Bios" may be identical with this vitamin, but evidence is not convincing. Concerning *Bios*, see Bayliss, cited on page 21. Also see Eddy, W. H., p. 250. Wildiers E. (Louvain), *La Cellule*, vol. 18, p. 314, 1901. Funk's vitamin D is probably identical with Wildiers' Bios. See also page 250, note 2, for reference to article by Tanner. Vitamin E must not be confused with Doisy's ovarian hormone (p. 654).

<sup>4</sup> Evans, H. McL. (Professor of Anatomy, University of California, Berkeley), *Jour. Metabolic Research*, vol. 3, p. 233, 1923.



vegetables, etc., to standard diets, the sterility, which developed on the ordinary diets alone was obviated. Although this substance in the leafy vegetables, milk-fat, etc., which counteracts sterility, could not be identified with any of the vitamins, yet the similarity in physiologic manifestations suggested an identity with Wildier's Bios from yeast. Recently Eddy has obtained a purified crystalline substance which gives the characteristic effects of Bios. A charcoal adsorption product from yeast has been found by Mattill and Congdon<sup>1</sup> to improve the reproductive function of milk-fed female experimental animals; this substance has been identified with Evans' vitamin, referred to above. Finally, Heaton<sup>2</sup> has identified "Bios" with Funk's Vitamin D and has shown that it occurs in similar amounts in brain, liver, kidney, heart and striped muscle; and further that these tissues contain four-fifths of the usual yield of yeast "Bios." Bios occurs in two fractions, (1) not adsorbed to charcoal, and (2) adsorbed to charcoal.

Sure<sup>3</sup> divides the vegetable oils with respect to the presence or absence of a reproductive principle, as follows:

(1) No fertility produced by these substances: Commercial linseed oil, cocoanut oil, and sesame oil.

(2) Produce fertility, but not lactation: Commercial olive-oil, peach-kernel oil, soy-bean, and peanut oils. Commercial cottonseed oil permits fertility, but only imperfectly affects lactation.

(3) Efficient in producing both fertility and lactation: Wheat-germ oil, hemp-seed oil, yellow corn oil when extracted with ether, acetone, or benzene. It is possible that the principle concerned with fertility is different from that having to do with lactation.

*Physical and Chemical Characteristics.*—As to chemical characteristics of the reproductive vitamin, we have little knowledge other than that previously mentioned. If it is identified as Bios II, then we may give its chemical characteristics as soluble in acetone, not precipitated by baryta-water, but precipitated by lead acetate in neutral or acid solution. Funk<sup>4</sup> has already described the physical and chemical characteristics of the vitamin. It is rather refractory to alkali, may be subjected to autoclaving at 25 pounds pressure for

<sup>1</sup> Cited on page 544.

<sup>2</sup> Heaton, T. B. (Oxford, England), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 16, p. 800, 1922.

<sup>3</sup> Sure, B. (see p. 533), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. lxxiv (Proc.), 1925.

<sup>4</sup> Funk, C., and Paton, J. B., *Jour. Metab. Res.*, vol. 1, p. 737, 1922.



three hours (150° C.); is consumed by yeast, moulds, etc.; this last property differentiates it from vitamin B. Vitamin E seems<sup>1</sup> to be closely associated with protids, but not with any one type. More recently, Eddy<sup>2</sup> and collaborators have isolated a crystalline substance with high melting-point (223° C.), which is not a protid nor protid-temn, is soluble in cold water and in hot alcohol, and causes yeast to grow fifteen to twenty times more quickly than the control.

When white rats are kept on milk food the tendency to sterility can be counteracted by feeding substances containing vitamin E, or by lowering the amount of fat. The size of the ovary and testis is an index as to fertility. Out of:

Forty-one animals fed on high fat ration, 83 per cent. had gonads less than 80 per cent. normal weight.

Sixteen animals fed on low fat ration, 38 per cent. had gonads less than 80 per cent. normal weight.

Ten animals fed high fat + vitamin, 30 per cent. had gonads less than 80 per cent. normal weight.

When the feed contains low amounts of fat, the vitamin must be supplied if fertility is to occur. The vitamin must accompany high fat rations for animals during adolescence and the earlier part of maturity. After sexual maturity, it is not indispensable. The effect of the vitamin, then, is on the primary sex organs and not on fixation of ovum, or concerned with growth.

**Avitaminosis.**—This term signifies the physiological, or pathological conditions which arise from deficiency or complete absence of vitamins from the food. The importance of this subject is sufficient to warrant special discussion, and this will be undertaken later (Chapter XIV). We may summarize, however, as follows:

#### AVITAMINOSES

##### Vitamin A:

Absence: Cessation of growth.

Deficiency: Atrophic conditions.

Anemia.

Tendency to infection.

Keratomalacia and other eye diseases.

Respiratory diseases of upper passages (bronchitis, etc.).

<sup>1</sup> Stransky, I. E. (German pediatricist), *Jahrb. fuer Kinderheilk.*, vol. 49, p. 229, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Eddy, W. H., Kerr, R. W., and Williams, R. R. (Columbia University), *Proc. Soc. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 21, p. 307, 1924.

**Vitamin B:**

Absence: Beriberi or experimental polyneuritis, after six weeks to four months.

Deficiency: Loss of appetite (anorexia).

Weakness.

Anemia.

Edema.

Subnormal temperatures.

Constipation.

Colitis.

Cardiovascular depression.

Malnutrition of the nervous system.

**Vitamin C:**

Absence: Scurvy after four months.

Deficiency: Sallow complexion.

Loss of energy.

Joint pains ("rheumatism").

"Growing pains" of Barlow's disease (infantile scurvy).

Mental disorders.

**Vitamin D:**

Absence: Rickets.

Shortage: Rickets, degree varying with deficiency of *D*.

**Vitamin E:**

Absence: Lack of lactation. Offspring die.

Deficiency: Deficient lactation. Offspring lack normal growth.

***Vitamins are lost in the following ways:***

**Vitamin A:** By oxidation and by hydrogenation.

**Vitamin B:** By washing out (boiling in water), by fine milling. Amount of B must be correlated with the starch content of the food.

**Vitamin C:** Heating, drying, oxidation, twice-heating ("left-overs"), pasteurization of milk, cream, and butter, adding  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ .

**Vitamin D:** Over irradiation, loss on standing, etc.

***Quantity of vitamins necessary for protection:*****Vitamin A:**

Dose (for rat, cod-liver oil): Two drops per day adequate to maintain growth.

Chickens: 1 per cent. cod-liver oil for growth.

Relative value of certain foods (rat):

Beef-fat, four-fifths as good as fresh butter (summer).

Mutton-fat, one-fifth as good as fresh butter (summer).

Cod-liver oil, 250 times as good as fresh butter (summer).

Seasonal variation in vitamin content: Cow's milk greatest in summer.

**Vitamin B:**

To protect pigeon from polyneuritis:

Yeast, 1 gram per twenty-four hours.

Egg-yolk, 3 grams per twenty-four hours.

Organ fat, like liver, kidney, etc., 3 grams per twenty-four hours.

Peas, fresh, 5 grams per twenty-four hours.

Beef-heart, 5 grams per twenty-four hours.

Brain (beef), 6 grams per twenty-four hours.

Brain (sheep), 12 grams per twenty-four hours.

Beef-steak, 20 grams per twenty-four hours.

Milk (cow), 35 grams per twenty-four hours.

## Vitamin C:

To protect against scurvy in:	Guinea-pig, mls.	Monkey, mls.	Man, mls.
Lemon-juice.....	1.5	1.5	28.0
Cabbage (raw).....	1.0	...	0.6
Cabbage (cooked).....	5.0	...	10.9
Turnips ("Sweets").....	2.5	...	30.0

## Vitamin D:

To protect against rickets:

Dog needs 5 per cent. of food as cod-liver oil.

Rat (white) 3 per cent. of food as cod-liver oil.

## THE PROTID FACTOR IN NUTRITION

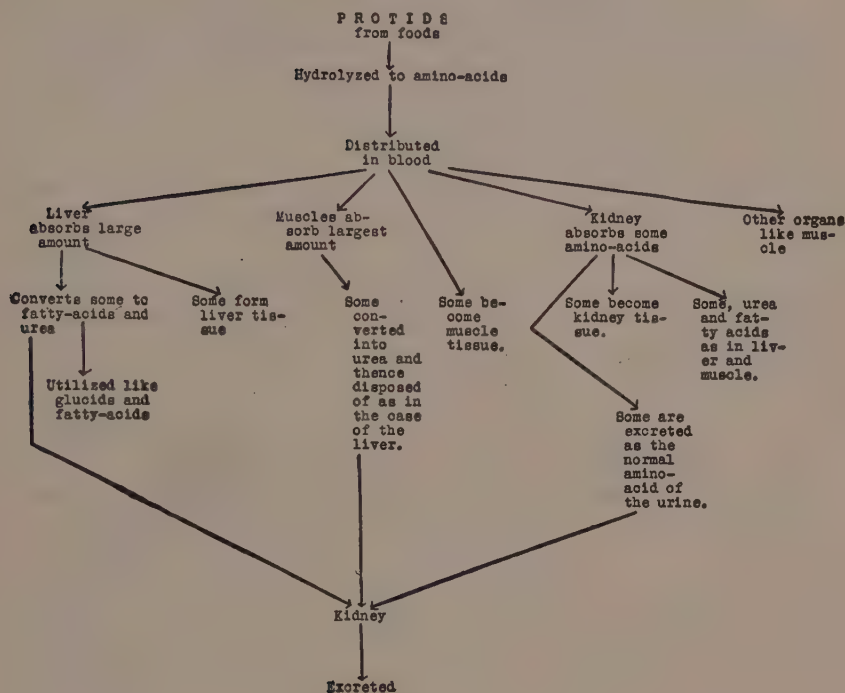
In the course of twenty-four hours the average normal human being loses, by way of the urine, about 12 gs. of nitrogen. Since about 16 parts of nitrogen are contained in every 100 parts of the average protid substance by weight, about 75 gs. of protid as such<sup>1</sup> are excreted every twenty-four hours. This loss must be restored. Furthermore, a small amount of nitrogen is also lost by the rubbing off of epithelium from the skin, by enzymatic secretions of the intestine, mucus, etc. How much protid must be eaten to restore that which is lost may therefore seem a simple question, since one can analyze the urine, feces, perspiration, etc., and determine the total loss of nitrogen within the twenty-four-hour period. However, there is one factor which complicates this simple method of calculation: Protid, when eaten, stimulates metabolism and causes the destruction of flesh that otherwise would not be affected. This is shown in the following table (Lusk):

Day.	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Protid fed.....	0	0	53	53	53	97	107	119	118	118
As nitrogen.....	...	...	8.6	8.6	8.6	15.5	17.2	18.3	18.4	18.3
Urinary nitrogen..	7.6	9.7	12.9	13.4	14.4	16.8	18.9	20.8	21.5	21.5

In this experiment with man the protid food was given every two hours, the total protid per twenty-four hours being over twice that which is excreted, estimated as nitrogen. In spite of this, *the nitrogen fed never balances that which is lost, for ingested protid causes more protid to be destroyed. This action is known as the Specific Dynamic Action of protid.* It may be considered as increasing the B. M. R. (page 553), 10 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> By this is not meant that protid is to be found in the urine in normal persons, for it is not; the flesh lost during twenty-four hours is 75 gs., but the excretion is in the form of urea, CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



**Specific Dynamic Action.**—The cause of this stimulating action by protid is held by Lusk<sup>1</sup> to be the amino-acids, especially glycine and alanine; 20 gs. of glycine given to a dog causes a proportionate increase in metabolism. It is not the oxidation of the glycine that produces increased metabolism; it is produced by the action of intermediate substances on the metabolic products of certain amino-acids<sup>2</sup> and not on the acids themselves. The action causes stimulation of metabolism and not oxidation of the amino-acids. (See also page 553.) The dependence of specific dynamic action on the thyroid has been shown recently by Baumann.<sup>3</sup> Thyroidectomy inhibits the action.

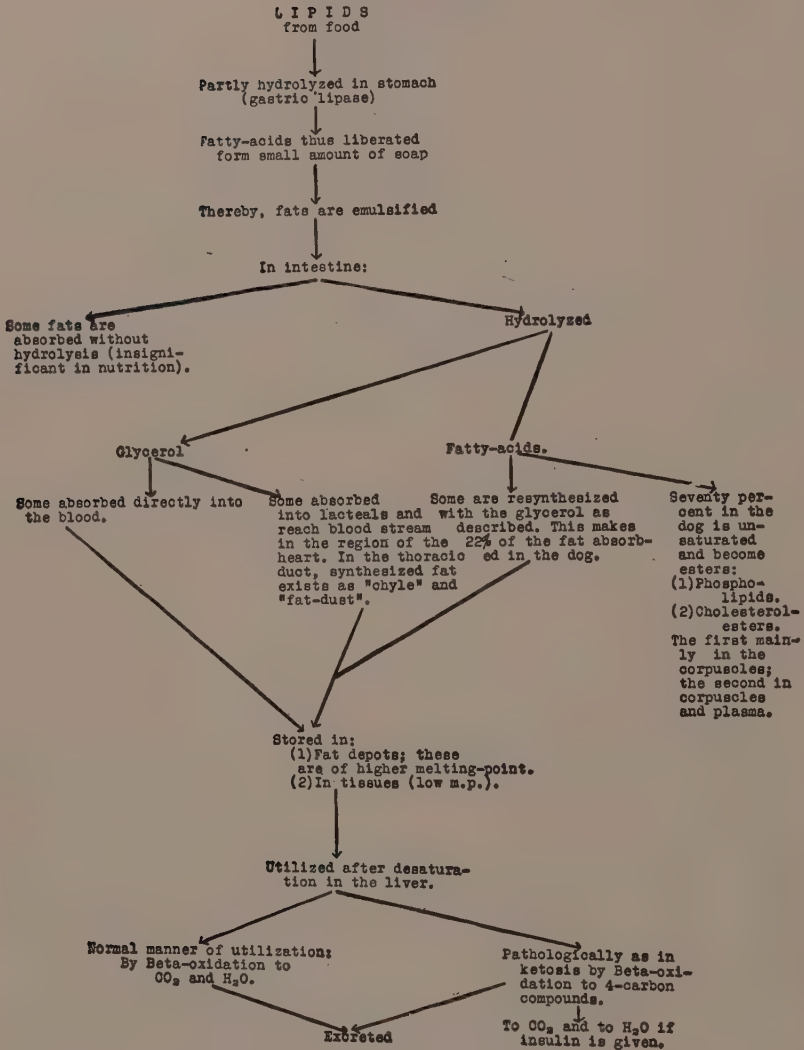
**Specific Dynamic Action of Glucids and Lipids.**—The glucids and fats under certain conditions cause increased metabolism. The

<sup>1</sup> Lusk, G., *Medicine*, vol. 1, p. 311, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> The dicarboxylic acids, aspartic and glutamic acids; leucine, tyrosine, and probably others do not stimulate metabolism.

<sup>3</sup> Baumann, E. J., and Hunt, L. (Montefiore Hospital, New York), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 64, page 709, 1925.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



question is whether the cause is similar to that assigned to the protids. The stimulatory effect of glucids and of lipids is realized only when an abundance of these substances is available—a plethora, as Lusk terms it. As in the case of protids, it is not a matter of the oxidation of these substances which produces increased metabolism; for it only occurs when there is an abundance of intermediate products which



are not being utilized in the course of work (glucids), or the production of heat (lipids). The nature of the metabolites is unknown. When glucose is converted into fat there is no increase in metabolism. When substances which are not intermediate products of glucose oxidation are given, no increase in metabolism occurs. It is only when there are many intermediate substances on their way to complete oxidation that metabolism is increased. Any factor which removes these substances, such as exercise, causing increased glucid utilization, deposition of glycogen from glucose, etc., inhibits this extra metabolism. Since the height of metabolism is reached about six hours after the ingestion of fat and since this is the time when there is the most blood-fat (Bloor), there is again a plethora.

*The specific dynamic action of foods, then, is due to excess of intermediate substances capable of increasing metabolism; in the case of the sugars, it is due to the stored but unused substances; in the fats, it is their abundance which gives rise to extra metabolism; and, finally, in the protids, it is the presence of substances capable of stimulating the cells to undergo metabolism.*

**The Protid-sparing Action of Glucids.**—In diseases of the liver a high diet of glucose-producing substances is indicated and the following discussion explains the principle upon which this is based. We have said<sup>1</sup> that in the case of man the excreted nitrogen can never be compensated for by food protid; that is, man, on a purely protid diet can never be brought into nitrogenous equilibrium.<sup>2</sup> If he could eat enough meat, it would be possible, but this would require the eating of at least 200 gs.<sup>3</sup> of meat in less than one minute. It is possible for a dog to be brought into nitrogenous equilibrium, because he can eat enough meat at one time to compensate for the loss of nitrogen. The following table illustrates this point (Lusk, after Voit):

- If a dog eat no meat, he loses 165 gs. body weight.
- If a dog eat 500 gs. meat, he loses 99 gs. body weight.
- If a dog eat 1000 gs. meat, he loses 79 gs. body weight.
- If a dog eat 1500 gs. meat, he loses 0 g. body weight.
- If a dog eat 1800 gs. meat, he gains 43 gs. body weight.

A dog can master 1000 gs. of meat in forty-five seconds, but it takes

<sup>1</sup> Page 552.

<sup>2</sup> Page 249.

<sup>3</sup> About 1 pound of steak as served. A pound is 455 gs., and allowance is made for water, etc.

a man twenty-five minutes to accomplish this. If glucids are given with the meat, it is possible to approach an equilibrium, as glucose indirectly replaces the protid destroyed. The following experiment illustrates this:

On the fourteenth day of starvation (man), 7.78 gs. nitrogen excreted.

On the fifteenth day of starvation: cream 300 gs., starch 400 gs. were fed; 7.43 gs. nitrogen excreted.

On the sixteenth day, same diet; 3.58 gs. nitrogen excreted.

On the seventeenth day, same diet; 2.84 gs. nitrogen excreted.

Hence, fat (cream) and glucid (starch) reduced the loss in nitrogen from 7.78 to 2.84 gs. The 5 gs. of nitrogen thus conserved constitutes about one-half the average excretion per day. In the above experiment, fat was fed as well as glucid; this also conserves protid. Certain protids likewise spare protid. Thus gelatin conserves protid to the extent of about 40 per cent. and zein 73 per cent. Both of these substances are incomplete protids, lacking certain amino-acids; when the full complement of amnio-acids is fed, especially glycine and alanine, the protid-sparing action disappears and the specific dynamic action results. This power of incomplete protids to conserve protid is of great practical importance. It is on this principle that gelatin is prescribed in diabetes and glucids in diseases of the liver.

#### EFFECT OF DIET ON WEIGHT

**Obesity Reduced by High Protid Diet.**—Banting<sup>1</sup> found that by restricting the amount of glucids and lipids in the diet, and allowing an abundance of protids, obesity becomes reduced. The explanation of this phenomenon is simple: Protid, when not conserved by the action of glucid or lipid, causes increased utilization of body tissue and, as a result, the fat is burned in larger quantities. Indeed, it is reduced more quickly than the glycogen of the muscles and other portions of the body.

**Increase in Body Weight by Diet.**—We shall avoid, here, a complete treatment of this topic, for it involves consideration of hereditary tendencies toward leanness, or obesity, and also of the influence of a nervous or phlegmatic temperament. However, generally speaking, flesh may be gained by a diet of protid and glucid, along with a fair

<sup>1</sup> Banting, William (English lay-experimenter, woodworker by trade, died 1878). Not to be confused with the discoverer of insulin, Dr. F. G. Banting (see page 20).

proportion of fat, owing to the protid-sparing action of both fat and sugar. Fat is useful in the body for certain purposes which vary with different individuals. It is a sex-limited character in certain races, like the Hottentots. The males select women for marriage according to weight and this selection has resulted in large, fat subjects. Fat is used therapeutically<sup>1</sup> in "floating kidney" to fix the kidney in place. A diet rich in glucids and lipids, with a minimal amount of protid, is prescribed and the patient is kept at rest in bed during the treatment. This favors the deposition of fat. Similarly, in tuberculosis, attention is directed to increase in fat as a safeguard against tissue destruction during the course of the disease. Fat acts as an insulator of heat, in the arctic regions,<sup>2</sup> thus causing its retention; in the tropics it serves to exclude heat; consequently, large amounts of fat in the form of ham, bacon, "side-meat," and sausage are shipped to the warmer countries by the great packers of the United States and South America.

In children, who are fed upon glucid preparations, known commercially as children's foods, there is frequently a mass of subcutaneous and other fat deposited, which, when the rich glucid diet is withdrawn, becomes infiltrated with connective tissue. This may be most undesirable, giving a "pasty" appearance to the skin. Pictures of such children are often displayed in advertisements as unusually healthy children, but they may be quite the opposite. As we have said before, water and fat may replace each other; whenever fat is withdrawn, there is a tendency for the accumulation of water. This helps the body to maintain its form and proportions. In such cases the plumpness which is frequently considered desirable gives way to a sallow, haggard condition as the water is gradually withdrawn from the tissues, following the change from a rich diet to a more simple one, or as age advances.

Fat is looked upon more and more as undesirable when it exists in excessive amounts and several diseases of the organs of internal secretion, like the pituitary and genital organs,<sup>3</sup> involve a deposition of fat which is pathological. A fat subject usually has more difficulty

<sup>1</sup> Greek *therapeyo*, to serve; hence to administer, or care for.

<sup>2</sup> The popular belief that the chief diet of the arctic is fat is erroneous; it is largely protid, fat serving to protect the protid from destruction. See the accounts given by Stefánsson of the habits of dwellers in the arctic regions in his *Life with the Esquimaux* and the *Friendly Arctic*, New York, The Macmillan Company, 1921 and later.

<sup>3</sup> Figs. 198 and 199.

at childbirth. Diabetes mellitus usually occurs in fat subjects and, as a rule, the fatter the subject the greater is the probability of acidosis, since the fat may give rise to acids like those of the butyric series.<sup>1</sup>

As we shall see later,<sup>2</sup> in estimating metabolism from the height and weight of the subject, excessive fat modifies the calculation, since, like water in edema following nephritis, it is a passive substance which does not contribute to the metabolism of the body in proportion to its mass. This matter of a passive substance which occupies much space and figures largely in weight must be considered in estimating creatinin in terms of body weight units.<sup>3</sup> Since the amount of creatinin in the urine varies proportionately to the mass of active muscle, a subject weighing 70 kilos who is fat, will theoretically excrete less creatinin than a lean person of the same weight. From the foregoing description of the rôle of fat in human economy, the importance of the lipid is evident.

#### THE GLUCID FACTOR IN NUTRITION

Carnivores live largely on flesh diets, but it is known that they obtain a certain amount of glucid from the glycogen in the muscles and other tissues; from the glucid portion of the glycoprotid, mucin, and from that of the nucleoprotid of the nucleus. It has been supposed that a certain content of glucid in foods is essential to the burning of the fats.<sup>4</sup> However, Osborne and Mendel<sup>5</sup> have shown that rats can furnish from their own tissues, supplemented by glucid-free lipid and protid foods, whatever glucid is necessary for growth and maintenance. It is not necessary, then, that the food contain preformed glucids; these can be obtained from endogenous sources such as protid. Analyses of the whole body of rats fed upon a practically glucid-free diet gave a total glycogen content of 0.09 g. per 100 gs. of body weight as compared to 0.12 g. per 100 gs. per cent. for rats on the usual diet of starches, fats, and protids. It might be supposed that the glycerol of fats, which is practically a glucid, replaces the preformed glucids, but Osborne and Mendel have found that this is not the case.

We have previously discussed the rôle of glucids in:

1. Structure formation, as glycoprotids, nucleic acid, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Page 75.

<sup>2</sup> Page 615.

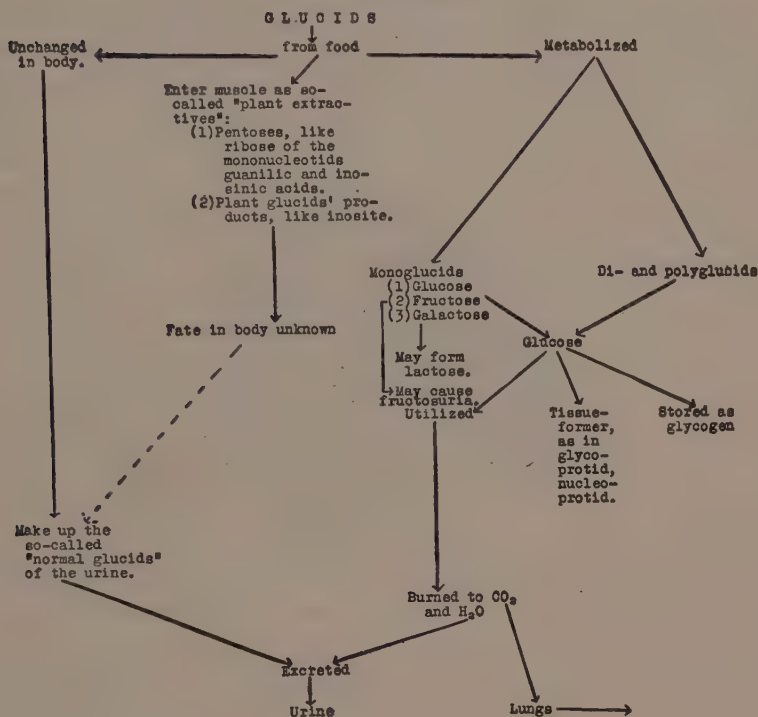
<sup>3</sup> Page 364.

<sup>4</sup> Page 520.

<sup>5</sup> Osborne, T. B., and Mendel, L. B., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 59, p. 13, 1924.



## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



2. In the metabolism of fat, where glucid is necessary for lipid metabolism.

3. In muscle contraction, through the agency of lactic acid.

4. In protecting protids from metabolism through "protid-sparing action."

5. In bone formation, by the transfer of phosphorus.

**Glucid and Lipid in Nutrition.**—It is not known what relation exists between the burning of fat and the metabolism of glucid. Perhaps neither is oxidized as glucid or lipid, but instead as a common glucidtemn or lipidtemn. This relation will be made more apparent in the next Chapter, when energy considerations will be discussed, but here it may be said, quoting Lusk: "There seems to be little difference in the efficacy of the body as a machine, whether fat or carbohydrates are used as fuel," and as we shall see it is not necessary to take into consideration the isodynamic value<sup>1</sup> of each sub-

<sup>1</sup> Page 590.



stance. On a diet high in fat, however, fatigue appears earlier than when the diet is largely composed of starches, probably, owing to the formation of acids. The K/A ratio<sup>1</sup> is abnormal, tending to the formation of ketogenic compounds. The diabetic, who cannot utilize glucose, fatigues early in muscle work. As a general rule, work done

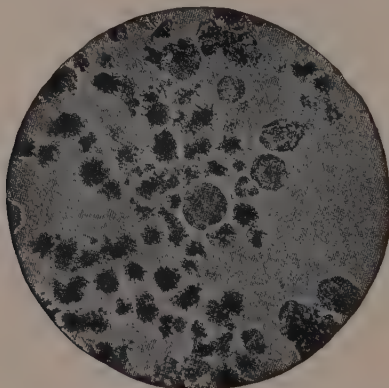


Fig. 163.—Butter, adulterated with 10 per cent. coconut oil. Crystals magnified 125 times. (From Woodman, *Food Analysis*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, N. Y.) Compare Fig. 89.

on a glucid diet is 10 per cent. more efficient than on a lipid diet; that is, it is done on an expenditure of 10 per cent. less energy.

#### INORGANIC SUBSTANCES IN NUTRITION

Modern biochemistry, with its new delicate methods for quantitative analysis of mineral substances, makes it possible to estimate the importance of such substances in nutrition more accurately than was formerly possible. It has been demonstrated that inorganic substances play as important a part in the economy of the human being as do the organic. We shall present in review examples of important mineral substances:

**Sodium Chlorid.**—Salt-free diets cause death if carried beyond a certain limit; a pigeon dies within a fortnight, while a dog may live nearly twice that long. Wild animals travel many miles to a “salt-lick” to obtain salt. On a normal diet about 15 gs. of NaCl are excreted by the kidney; a small amount is excreted through the skin and a smaller amount through the secretions of the alimentary canal,

<sup>1</sup> Page 524.

amounting in all to about 22 gs. We should expect this to represent the required intake of NaCl in the food, but it has been shown that man may live apparently normally on not less than 5 gs. per day or about one-fourth that usually taken. The average salt intake in the United States is less than that in Europe, but intake in NaCl does not vary widely in different countries as does the intake of other minerals.<sup>1</sup> Growth occurs in experimental animals on a low chlorin diet and, in general, it may be said that a sodium chlorid deficit is borne more easily than a deficit of other minerals. Attempts have been made to reduce the salt content of blood in cases of hypertension (increased blood-pressure), or in pyloric spasm or stenosis. Such a study has been made by Bernstein<sup>2</sup> using salt-free diets in hypertension, previously suggested by Ambard,<sup>3</sup> Allen,<sup>4</sup> and others. Blood-plasma chlorid does not vary in a characteristic manner in salt retention, owing to the compensatory functions of the blood which regulate its saline content. The urine is a more faithful index of the metabolism of salt in the body. The following table of salt content as NaCl serves to give the reader an idea of foods which can be used for purposes of reducing the salt of ingested substances:

Foods containing 1:1000 or less NaCl.	G. per 100 gs. substance.
Apple-sauce . . . . .	0.0
Beets . . . . .	0.1
Chicken broth . . . . .	0.07
Saltless butter . . . . .	0.0
Carrots . . . . .	0.10
Coffee . . . . .	0.06
Fruit . . . . .	0.01
Ice-cream . . . . .	0.17
Olive-oil . . . . .	0.0
Potatoes . . . . .	0.03
Rice . . . . .	0.0
Shredded wheat . . . . .	0.0
Sugar-cane . . . . .	0.0
Toast (salt-free bread) . . . . .	0.0

A typical protocol of salt-free diet treatment for hypertension is given (case of Mrs. Mary T., service of Drs. Hare and McCrae, Jefferson Hospital):

<sup>1</sup> See the discussion of phosphorus and calcium, page 566.

<sup>2</sup> Bernstein, M. (Jefferson Hospital, Philadelphia). *Therapeutic Gazette*, vol. 49, W. S., p. 241, 1925.

<sup>3</sup> Chapter XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Allen, F. M. (Physiatric Institute, Morristown, N. J.), *Jour. Metabol. Research*, vol. 2, p. 429, 1922.

Date.	NaCl in diet.	Urine, NaCl, g.	Blood-plasma, NaCl, mgs. per cent.	Blood- pressure, <sup>1</sup> A.M.
14.10.....	0	0.764	587	210/110
16.10.....	0	1.392	...	206/120
18.10.....	0	0.577	...	190/110
20.10.....	0	0.388	624	198/120
22.10.....	0	0.338	...	210/120
24.10.....	0	0.679	...	170/116
26.10.....	0	0.308	577	144/100

It is obvious that the blood-pressure falls after a saltless diet has been administered for a few days. The age of the subject was fifty-seven, and her expected blood-pressure would be about 160/100, so that 144/100 is well within the normal limits.

In such restrictions of intake of chlorid, the blood chlorid varies but little from the normal (0.50 g. NaCl per 100 mls. whole blood) to 0.36 g. per cent. The effect upon the secretion of gastric HCl is slight. In cases of diabetes mellitus the chlorid content of the blood falls to 0.46 g. per cent. In nephritis, especially in that form involving edema, it increases, owing to the decreased permeability of the kidney, the figure ranging from 0.50 g. per cent. to 0.61 g. per cent. whole blood.

We have spoken of the rôle that chlorids play in the production of alkali reserve<sup>2</sup> and have called attention to the importance of chlorids in balancing the osmotic relations of the various salts in the blood.<sup>3</sup> *The optimal concentration of the salts in the blood compared to the concentration of sodium is practically that of sea-water.* The loss of chlorin,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , from tissues causes paralysis; chlorin may be removed by giving sodium bromid or calcium chlorid, by administering low NaCl diets followed by diuretics, or by causing loss by exosmosis alone. Sodium chlorid causes relaxation of involuntary muscle. Again, in absorption, substances like glucose and amino-acids pass into the circulation from the intestine more quickly in the presence of NaCl than when alone. In starvation, NaCl is conserved.<sup>4</sup> In nutrition, these demands must be met.

**Calcium.**—The *minimal daily requirement* for human adults is given by Sherman<sup>5</sup> as 0.45 g., expressed as CaO, with a variation of about 0.06 g. for different subjects. Owing to the loss of calcium in

<sup>1</sup> The first figure is the systolic pressure and the second the diastolic.

<sup>2</sup> Page 79.

<sup>3</sup> Page 115.

<sup>4</sup> Page 576.

<sup>5</sup> Sherman, H. C., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 44, p. 21, 1920.

stools; the possible deficiency in vitamin D or parathyroid secretion which regulates the retention of calcium in the body; the lack of adequate magnesium which causes Ca retention; and for other reasons, adequate supply of calcium from food must be insured. This is not always the case. One of the "other reasons" is the protid factor; Sherman finds that at least 1 g. of calcium should be furnished for every 100 gs. of food protid. This is not realized in the ordinary diet in the United States, for he has shown that the average content of human food in CaO on an average diet<sup>1</sup> is only 0.92 g. This should be contrasted with the diet of Europeans in which milk is used more freely. The Finnish diet contains about four times the amount of CaO that our diet contains. The following table gives the distribution of calcium as CaO in various foods (after Lusk from Sherman and Gettler):

	G. CaO per 100 gs. substance.
Beef.....	0.0038
Eggs.....	0.0670
Milk.....	0.1200
Oatmeal.....	0.0930
Rice, white.....	0.0080
Flour, white.....	0.0260
Flour, whole-wheat.....	0.0440
Beans, lima.....	0.710
Cabbage.....	0.0490
Peas.....	0.1000
Potatoes, white.....	0.0110
Turnips.....	0.0640

*Milk furnishes the largest supply of calcium*, and the legumes afford an ample supply. For children a gram of calcium per twenty-four hours is requisite. Of this, about one one-hundredth is retained to build the bones. Food calcium obtained from sources other than milk is less readily utilized than milk calcium and on a diet of legumes and other foods, where the calcium supplied is about half that afforded by milk ingested at the same time, the amount of calcium retained and excreted varies more than when milk is the chief bearer of calcium. This point should be remembered when lime-water,  $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$  is advocated as an agent that brings in more calcium than milk, for Ca is less utilizable in this form. It is advisable to overshoot the mark in administration of calcium and in order to insure to children an adequate amount of Ca, a quart of milk should be given per twenty-

<sup>1</sup> The diet is estimated on a caloric basis of from 2500 to 3000 Cals. See page 586. Such diets are overbalanced with cereals (bread, breakfast foods, etc.) low in Ca.

four hours, and also vegetables, for calcium is not utilized unless vitamin D is present and the parathyroids intact. Unless the cow receives a diet of legumes (clover, alfalfa, etc.) and not one largely of grasses, cereals, etc., the milk may be deficient in Ca. If the food contain insufficient Ca, the cow, like man, draws upon its own supply of calcium in the bones.

Although calcium is more available in the form of milk calcium, the statement is not meant to lend support to the view once prevalent that calcium to be of use in the body must be administered in the form of some organic combination. *Inorganic calcium*, as in lime-water, is used, but less readily.

The *relations of calcium to disease is important*, but we shall defer such discussion until a later chapter.<sup>1</sup> Suffice it to say here that calcium enters into the phenomena of:

1. Hardness of the teeth.
2. Deficiency in rickets, osteomalacia, craniotabes, acromegaly, etc.
3. Calcification in the arteries in old age (arteriosclerosis).
4. Nervous disease, Ca acting as depressant.
5. Toxic conditions, like oxalic acid poisoning in which the calcium is depleted by being formed into calcium oxalate.
6. Blood coagulation, milk coagulation, rigor mortis, etc.
7. In tuberculosis, in which there is an increased excretion of Ca.
8. Physiologically, in the regulation of the heart by way of the vagus nerve, calcium being necessary for this action.
9. Parathyroid disease, these organs controlling calcium metabolism.
10. Acid-base equilibrium in the body.

Discussion of *the participation of calcium in metabolism* will be deferred until the end of the present Chapter, because other inorganic substances participate in this important process.

**Magnesium** is metabolized largely with calcium, in its retention and excretion. When fed, it causes retention. Increased excretion of either magnesium or calcium involves similar increase in the other. However, physiologically, the two stand antagonistically. Magnesium sulphate is an anesthetic<sup>2</sup> and paralyzing agent, the effects of which

<sup>1</sup> Page 648.

<sup>2</sup> The well-known studies of Meltzer (S. J. Meltzer, physiologist, Rockefeller Institute, New York, died 1920) and Auer (St. Louis University) showed that in the rabbit, 1.7 g. of  $MgSO_4$  for every kilo of body weight causes deep anesthesia and paralysis within half an hour, but the effect can be counteracted within five seconds by injecting intravenously 8 mls. of 3 per cent.  $CaCl_2$ . See Meltzer's Life in Memorial Number of Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med., vol. for 1921.



are counteracted by calcium. Magnesium occurs in the tissues, blood<sup>1</sup> and bones; the erythrocytes and voluntary muscle contain more Mg than Ca. The requirement in twenty-four hours is approximately 0.60 g. expressed as MgO. It is excreted through the kidneys in amounts of 0.2 g. daily. The loss through the kidneys is practically wholly that of the magnesium contained in the metabolized muscle plus a small amount from bone. The magnesium of the blood, like the other salts, serves to maintain the proper osmotic relations. It acts similarly to calcium in the regulation of the heart rate. Increased concentration of magnesium retards coagulation, whether in milk, blood, or rigor mortis. In tetanus or "lock-jaw," caused by *Claustidium tetani*, magnesium lessens the number of convulsions, probably because it is mobilized under these conditions from the tissues. This action is augmented by giving magnesium sulphate by mouth or intravenously.

**Potassium** plays an important rôle in antagonizing the sodium and calcium of the body; it exerts a paralyzing action, and in cases of potassium deficit the vagus nerve is incapable of exerting its regulatory effect upon the heart. Whenever there is a large destruction of tissue, as in starvation,<sup>2</sup> the excretion of potassium is increased because this substance is freed from the tissues. On the other hand, the sodium excretion is small, since sodium occurs normally in body fluids. Whenever potassium tends to accumulate, as in high vegetable diets, sodium is eliminated in the urine in increased amounts and potassium (standing above sodium in the electrochemical series) replaces it in the sodium compounds of the blood. Moreover, the ionic mobility<sup>3</sup> of potassium is higher than that of sodium; it is indeed greater than any cation except hydrogen. Potassium is transported more quickly than any other cation with the exception of  $H^+$  and this may account for the powerful pharmacological action of potassium. During recovery from wasting diseases, during mountain climbing which is attended by an increase not only in muscle tissue, but conspicuously in erythrocytes, and<sup>4</sup> in other physiologic states in which new tissue is being formed, potassium is retained.

<sup>1</sup> Average normal amount, 0.003 g. per 100 mls. of blood plasma.

<sup>2</sup> The urinary output of nitrogen is low in starvation until the "premortal rise" simply because there is little protid metabolism, the protid food not entering the body, but there is relatively much tissue destruction during these periods (page 615).

<sup>3</sup> Page 55, note 1.

<sup>4</sup> Schneider, E. C. (U. S. Aviation Service, New York, N. Y.), *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 631, 1921.

**Phosphorus** is an extremely important element in the economy of the body. It is characteristic of the cytoplasm, but is absent, except in organic form, from the nucleus. It occurs in the nucleoprotid. For maintenance in the adult, 0.88 g. as phosphorus is the minimum requirement, for an average of 0.78 g. is excreted in the urine and a small amount also in the perspiration and through the feces. We encounter the same condition found for other components, namely,

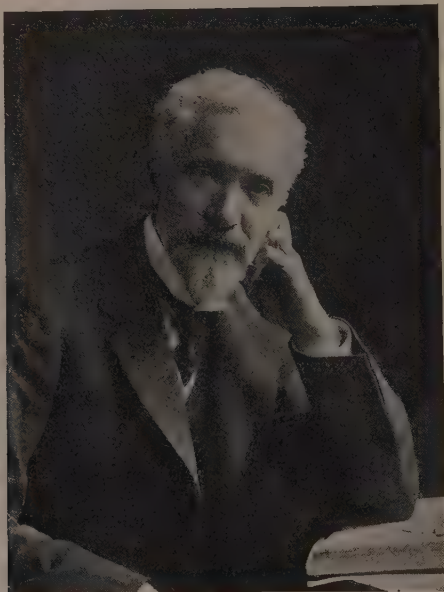


Fig. 164.—A. B. Macallum, Professor of Biochemistry, McGill University, Montreal, Canada. Contributor to mineral metabolism and methods for determination of inorganic substances.

a fairly uniform concentration under varied conditions. A safe daily intake is about 1.5 g. of phosphorus. In the blood<sup>1</sup> the normal amount for children is 0.005 g. per cent.<sup>2</sup> plasma and slightly less for adults. In bone lesions<sup>3</sup> and in repair processes in general<sup>4</sup> there is an increased mobilization of phosphorus in the blood, signifying the active par-

<sup>1</sup> Anderson, G. H. (Glasgow), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 17, p. 43, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> This is too high according to Eddy and Heft, who find 0.0029 g. See note 4, below.

<sup>3</sup> Tisdall, F. F., and Harris, R. I., *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 884, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Eddy, W. H., and Heft, H. L. (New York Hospital), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 55, p. 12 (Proceedings), 1923.

ticipation of this element in bone repair and tissue growth. On the other hand, in rickets, there is usually a lower amount of blood phosphorus, although there are exceptions. Foods determine the phosphorus metabolism. Fats and oils, such as butter-fat, cod-liver oil, olive-oil and linseed oil, cause retention. Neither vitamin A nor the associated antirachitic factor is responsible because olive-oil does not contain fat-soluble or antirachitic vitamins. Foods which are rich in phosphorus do not necessarily cause phosphorus retention in the body. The cereals are poor in calcium but rich in phosphorus, yet a diet of cereals does not cause a retention of this element, but rather a failure to retain it.<sup>1</sup> Regarding the form in which phosphorus is utilized, it is evident from investigations that it need not be organic. Growth occurs on a diet free from organic phosphorus. This means that such phosphorus compounds as lecithin, nucleic acid, etc., which form during growth must be made from inorganic phosphorus. When demanded, the blood can mobilize phosphorus from the bones. However, the phenomenon of phosphorus metabolism is complex and factors which are unsuspected may control its presence. Thus, in certain pathological conditions of the intestine, especially if fat digestion is interrupted, owing to the absence of bile, as in obstructive jaundice, the normal course of excretion of phosphorus in the form of fecal tri-calcium phosphate,  $\text{Ca} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{O} \diagup \end{array} \text{P}=\text{O} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{O} \diagup \end{array} \text{Ca} \begin{array}{c} \diagup \text{O} \diagdown \\ \diagdown \text{O} \diagup \end{array} \text{Ca}$ , is changed; the

phosphorus is freed from its association with calcium and is absorbed into the blood from which it is excreted into the urine. In this case 70 per cent. of the feces dry weight consists of fatty acids, or their derivatives, calcium soaps, the calcium having been separated from the phosphorus and combined with the fatty acids to form the soaps, while the phosphorus is left to become absorbed into the blood.<sup>2</sup> The calcium-phosphorus ratio in rickets and other forms of disease will be discussed later.

The *probable relation between phospholipids and the nucleic acids* has been mentioned; also the participation of phosphorus in the metabolism of the sugars (page 171); and the importance of the phosphorized fats in the formation of the chromatin of the cell (concerned with heredity; see page 324).

<sup>1</sup> Husband, A. D., Godden, W., and Richards, M. B. (Aberdeen), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 17, p. 707, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Tefler, S. V. (Glasgow), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 15, p. 347, 1921.

The *participation of phosphorus as phosphate* in the maintenance of the *neutrality of the blood*<sup>1</sup> has been mentioned. The reaction of the urine is largely related to the phosphate content. Acid-base relations will be considered later.<sup>2</sup> Concerning phosphorus in the foods, there is no danger of a deficit in the American diet.

**Iron.**—The primary use of iron in the body is in the composition of hemoglobin. In the fetus iron is supplied by the mother and stored in the liver, bone-marrow, and spleen from which it is withdrawn immediately after birth as long as the infant is on a milk diet.<sup>3</sup> More iron seems to be laid up in the organs of the fetus than is necessary, since the child, after birth, loses more iron than it takes in, the average loss being about 0.25 mg. per day. The chick derives iron from the yolk of the eggs which contains almost as much iron as steak. The average amount of iron derived from foods in the United States is about 0.025 g. per day, but in European diets the amount is larger. The following table gives the concentration of iron derived from the common foods:

#### CONTENT OF IRON IN COMMON FOODS

(Sherman and Gettler, with additions)

	G. per 100 gs. substance.
Steak.....	0.0038
Eggs.....	0.0030
Milk.....	0.0002
Oatmeal.....	0.0037
Rice.....	0.0007
Wheat flour.....	0.0015
Whole wheat.....	0.0052
Beans, lima.....	0.0072
Beans, green.....	0.0016
Cabbage.....	0.0009
Peas, dried.....	0.0056
Potatoes, white.....	0.0012
Lettuce.....	0.0021
Spinach.....	0.0038
Turnip.....	0.0006
Apples.....	0.0003
Raisins.....	0.0036

The *chief sources of iron* in the average diet are beef and muscle meats, eggs, whole cereals, legumes, and leafy vegetables. Whatever leads to the increase in red blood-corpuscles (hemorrhage, high

<sup>1</sup> Page 77.

<sup>2</sup> Page 574.

<sup>3</sup> See the low concentration of iron in milk given in the table above.



altitudes, etc.) causes a retention of iron. In the blood, iron occurs wholly in the hemoglobin in the corpuscles in an amount of 0.003 g. per 100 mls. blood. It probably is a catalytic agent<sup>1</sup> in oxidation. The dependence of glutathion upon iron has been mentioned before. The functions of the so-called "peroxidase" reactions with benzidine, guaiacum, etc., used to detect the presence of blood has been pointed out on page 391. It is for this reason that iron causes improvement in certain anemias, in which the hemoglobin of the blood is below normal. Its administration is only useful therapeutically to supply a deficiency in its content. Recently, favorable results have been reported in the ingestion of fresh blood in pernicious anemia, but it is not known whether the iron content is a factor or not.

Any *excess iron* is stored in the marrow, spleen, kidney, and liver and in other organs concerned with the metabolism of blood. Iron is always utilized, whether it is inorganic or organically bound. In milk, iron is wholly associated with organic substances.<sup>2</sup> In the animal body, iron is found in hemoglobin, but also in such protid combinations as hematogen<sup>3</sup> in the yolk of eggs and ferratin<sup>4</sup> in the liver, the latter being indigestible. Iron is retained in the body in larger quantities when vitamins are adequate in food, than when they are deficient, but some iron will be retained, even in the absence of these substances.

*Iron as a Therapeutic Agent.*—After *splenectomy* concentration of iron in the blood is diminished and iron is administered in order to supply the deficit. There is, however, a protective device by which iron is conserved; it must be used over and over again, as much as possible. Elimination of iron from the foods causes a definite lowering of iron in the body, beyond which, however, further loss does not occur, unless the deprivation of iron occurs over a long period. This minimal level of iron varies in different subjects and under different physiological and pathological conditions. In *pernicious anemia*, in which new erythrocytes fail to form, iron therapy is frequently without avail.<sup>5</sup> *Chlorosis*, a disease of the female about the time of puberty, involves a lowering content of blood iron, and with some cases

<sup>1</sup> Page 113.

<sup>2</sup> Kugelmass, I. N., Bull. Soc. chim. biol., vol. 4, p. 577, 1922.

<sup>3</sup> Hematogen of Bunge (professor at Basle, Switzerland, deceased).

<sup>4</sup> Ferratin by Schmiedeberg (professor at Strassbourg, France).

<sup>5</sup> See, however, Gibson, R. B., and Howard, C. P. (Iowa City, Ia.), Arch. Int. Med., vol. 32, p. 1, 1923.



improvement is found by giving iron, but there is no evidence that chlorosis is produced by iron deficit.<sup>1</sup> The so-called *wet beriberi* is a disease attributed to foods low in iron. Recovery from *hemorrhage* is apparently affected by the amount of iron in the food. Experimental animals fed upon white bread with its low content of iron recover from hemorrhage more slowly than control animals fed upon green plants. Iron may play a part in the characteristic symptoms of certain diseases. We know that there is a lowering of blood iron in hypothyroidism,<sup>2</sup> a disease in which the oxygen consumption and metabolic rate are likewise lowered.

*Excretion of Iron.*—Iron is excreted largely in the feces. In the urine iron is small in amount (0.00008 g. per 100 mls. urine).

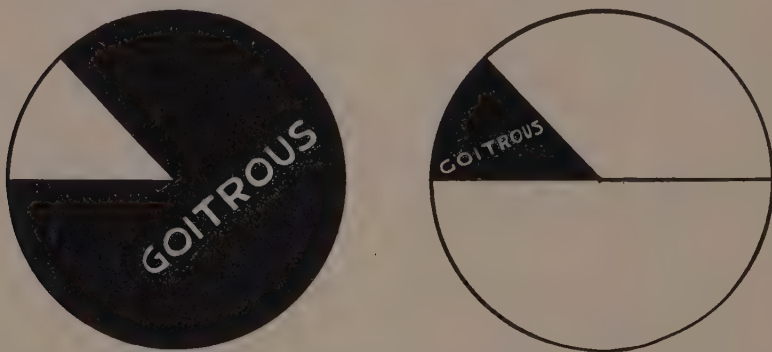


Fig. 164a.—Population before and after iodine treatment (after Mendel, Nutrition, Yale University Press).

**Iodin.**—The importance of iodine in the diet is emphasized by the high incidence of goiter in certain belts of our country and in Europe, in which there is a deficiency of iodine. In the United States the so-called goiter belt is about 200 miles wide and extends from “Old Smoky” in the southern Appalachian Mountains to the Canadian border in the Great Lakes region; it also includes part of the states of Washington, Oregon, Idaho, and Montana. In the great Alpine valleys of Switzerland, France and Italy, and in other mountainous and glaciated districts of the Continent goiter is also prevalent. Not only human beings are affected in these regions, but animals, especially the domesticated animals. In the Great Lake regions

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of iron in anemias, see Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 81, p. 1022, 1923. It is of interest that for an unknown reason chlorosis is less frequent than formerly.

<sup>2</sup> Page 643.

many dogs are goitrous. In the region south of the Great Lakes the disease affects women more often than men, but, as the map on page 572 shows, males are goitrous in larger numbers in the Great Lakes region and in the Northwest. We shall return to this question in another Chapter,<sup>1</sup> where the different forms of goiter will be discussed.

*Iodin and the Thyroid Gland.*—Iodin was discovered in the thyroid gland in 1895, although it had been known for forty years that iodine therapy benefited goitrous subjects.<sup>2</sup> The average gland, when normal, contains about 0.05 g. of iodine per 100 gs. wet weight of substance. The content is higher in some animals than in others; the pig's gland contains 0.047 g., the cow's 0.036, and the sheep's 0.025. These are merely average figures, for there is a distinct seasonal variation, the content being about three times greater in the summer than in the winter. These variations have not been correlated with temperature, estrual periods, or other states, but undoubtedly some such factor is operative. The iodine seems to be associated with a protid, known as thyroglobulin. As we have shown before,<sup>3</sup> a definite compound, *thyroxine*, isolated by Kendall probably represents the manner of association of the iodine in the gland. The molecule of thyroxine contains 65 per cent. iodine; whether the iodine or the nucleus is the effective agent has not been finally determined. Kendall believes that iodine simply intensifies the action of thyroxine, for the indole nucleus has a certain potency without iodine. The indole ring alternately opens and closes, thus delivering oxygen for the purposes of oxidation in the tissues. There is a point of saturation of the gland which varies with the season, the condition of the subject, etc. When iodine is administered saturation is complete; this amounts to about 0.005 g. of iodine per 100 gs. tissue, but it may be three times that figure. The action of thyroxine is probably catalytic, much as iron acts as a catalyzer-peroxidase in hemoglobin.<sup>4</sup>

*Iodin in Other Tissues.*—Concerning the distribution of iodine in other tissues little is definitely known except that it is present in extremely small quantities. Consequently, nothing is known of the

<sup>1</sup> Page 643.

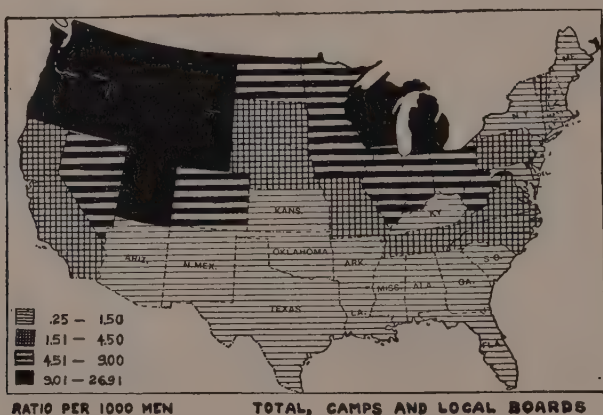
<sup>2</sup> For an account of the ravages of goiter in the Alps, and early attempts at treatment, see Whymper, E., *Scrambles in the Alps*, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott, 1873.

<sup>3</sup> Page 94.

<sup>4</sup> For an account of Kendall's work see *Ann. Clin. Med.*, vol. 1, p. 256, 1923. See also Fig. 50, p. 94, *Applied Biochemistry*.

part iodine plays in the economy of the body as a whole. Iodine is not admitted to the aromatic ring unless an hydroxyl or other radicle is

### GOITER, SIMPLE



### GOITER, EXOPHTHALMIC

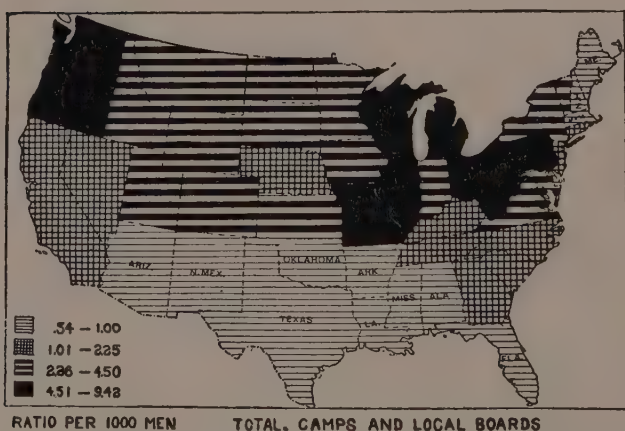


Fig. 165.—Comparative incidence of goiter, simple and exophthalmic, in the various regions of the United States. (Love, Albert G., and Davenport, Charles B., Defects Found in Drafted Men, 1920, p. 86. Reproduced by permission of the Surgeon-general.)

present. Thus, iodine forms 3,5-di-iodo-tyrosine (gorgoic acid) when tyrosine is treated with iodine under special conditions; but phenylalanine, which lacks the hydroxyl or other radicle, does not hold iodine

directly. The process of methylation is interfered with in thyroid-ectomized animals so that creatin is not formed,<sup>1</sup> but on feeding iodine, or thyroid substance, the power is restored.

The *utilization of iodine in the body* is modified by certain conditions. McCarrison<sup>2</sup> has found that experimental animals (pigeons) when subjected to filthy living conditions in soiled cages exhibit hyperplasia<sup>3</sup> of the thyroid gland, which is characteristic of iodine deficiency. The supply of iodine in the food was known to be adequate. The same animals, when fed on a diet excessive in oils and fats, exhibited similar hyperplasia. Therefore, McCarrison attributes the condition to an alimentary infection or to some other factor which inhibits the normal absorption of iodine. Somewhat similar conditions appeared during and at the close of the Great War in Europe, and in Asia among the human inhabitants of war-stricken localities. For some unknown reason the feeding of cod-liver oil to the animals living in foul cages prevents the hyperplasia mentioned above. The remedial effect may be due to absorption of iodine by the oil. Butter does not produce the same beneficial effect and the reason may be due to the fact that it has a lower iodine number and hence less power of carrying iodine than cod-liver oil.<sup>4</sup> It is possible that the vitamin content may have something to do with the increased utilization of inorganic substances in the body, for we know that calcium is utilized to better advantage when the body is treated with ultraviolet light or with irradiated foods.

To summarize: (1) Normally the largest quantities of iodine in the body are found in the thyroid gland. (2) The action of the iodine is probably that of an inorganic catalyzer. (3) It is associated in the gland with a protid. (4) Specifically, it is correlated with the normal or abnormal functioning of the thyroid gland.

For further considerations refer to the discussion of goiter, page 643.

*Iodine as a Therapeutic Agent.*—Iodides are administered in the treatment of various diseases, notably chorea (St. Vitus' Dance), arteriosclerosis, and other circulatory diseases and infections such as

<sup>1</sup> Page 359. The formation of creatin (methyl-guanidin-acetic acid) involves methylation.

<sup>2</sup> McCarrison, R. (Calcutta, India), Indian Jour. Med. Res., vol. 2, p. 1, 1923. See abstract in Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 81, p. 1725, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *hyper*, above, and *plasis*, formation; *i. e.*, excessive growth.

<sup>4</sup> Iodine number of butter, 32; iodine number of cod-liver oil, 145.



syphilis. An iodine rash frequently results from such treatment; the exact cause of this is unknown. We know, however, that iodine changes the nature of protid with which it is associated. When protid is iodized the body treats it as a foreign protid, and if the body has been sensitized<sup>1</sup> to such protid, reinjection causes marked specific response. It is possible, therefore, that the administration of iodine causes a change in the nature of protid and that the rash is due to the attempt of the body to deal with this foreign substance.

### ACID-BASE EQUILIBRIUM IN THE BODY

In any study of nutrition the value of foods as acid or base producers is important. For example, herbivores ordinarily excrete a



Fig. 166.—Potassium decomposing water. Potassium forms KOH, an alkali. This is readily determined by placing a strip of red litmus-paper in the water. Wood ashes and plant food ash in general contain K, and are basic. This is the basis of the dietary principle of increasing bases in the body by feeding vegetables. (From Holland, *Medical Chemistry and Toxicology*.)

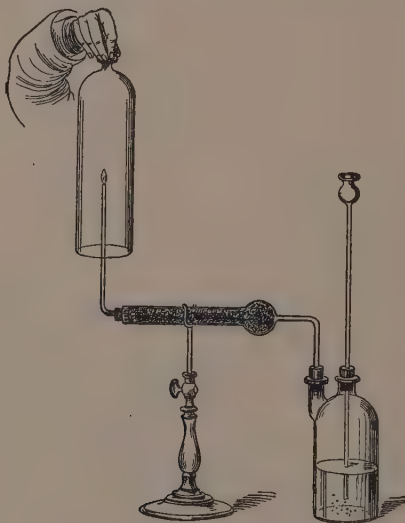


Fig. 167.—Water formed by burning hydrogen. All organic substances in the body contain hydrogen, which is converted into water during metabolism. The acidity of body fluids is due to ionic hydrogen. (From Holland, *Medical Chemistry and Toxicology*.)

preponderance of bases and carnivores of acids. Metabolism is not affected by acid-base balance in health,<sup>2</sup> but is changed in disease

<sup>1</sup> Page 321.

<sup>2</sup> Greenwald, I. (Roosevelt Hospital, New York), in *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1922;



where the balance is disturbed in many cases. Modern biochemistry considers the mineral substances of the food in two ways:

1. As specific factors in the economy of the body, *e. g.*, iron in gaseous exchange in the blood, salt in holding globulin in solution, etc.

2. As participating in the acid-base metabolism of the body. It is the latter aspect which we are about to consider.

The acid<sup>1</sup> value of food in general has to do with the concentration and behavior of *anions*, especially  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{PO}_4^-$ ,  $\text{SO}_4^-$ . The base value of food in general has to do with the concentration and behavior of the *cations*, especially  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{++}$ , and  $\text{Mg}^{++}$ . The balance of acid and base in the body is expressed wherever possible as base-balance. Thus:

Retention of base means positive (+) base-balance.

Retention of acid means negative (−) base-balance.

Acid excretion over intake means (+) base-balance.

Base excretion over intake means (−) base-balance.

The **base-balance** is expressed as the number of mls. of 0.1 normal base. Sherman has determined the mineral content of the average diet of the people of the United States in terms of the acid-base values per twenty-four hours.<sup>2</sup>

#### Mineral Content of the Average Diet

Acid.	Mls. 0.1 normal.	Base.	Mls. 0.1 normal.
Phosphorus.....	925	Calcium.....	365
Chlorin.....	810	Magnesium.....	283
Sulphur.....	813	Potassium.....	870
		Sodium.....	850
Total.....	2548	Total.....	2368
	2548 mls. decinormal acid		
	2368 " " base		
	180 " " acid <sup>3</sup>		

*The average person in the United States receives about 150 mls. of acid per day;* in terms of base, man has a daily negative base require-

<sup>1</sup> The "acid" is not that of moment acidity, that is, the *pH*, but the acid capacity of the substances concerned.

<sup>2</sup> Leaving out of account the mineral metabolism of iodine, manganese, arsenic, silicon, iron, etc., which exist in such small amounts that their acid-base value is negligible.

<sup>3</sup> Table from Shohl modified from Sherman. See *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 509, 1923.

ment of about 150 mls. decinormal. We must distinguish this requirement from the balance, which is regulated by the excretion, (a) through the urine and (b) through the feces. The urine is normally acid<sup>1</sup> and the acid-base balance in the body determines how much acid is to be excreted through the urine. In the winter the diet consists largely of meat and other acid-producing substances, while in the summer, with the higher proportion of vegetables (base formers), a tendency toward a lower intake of acid-forming foods occurs. The balance, however, winter and summer is maintained by regulating the excretion and it shifts even during short intervals. Thus the "alkaline tide" following meals is due to the utilization of gastric juice acid, HCl, in the process of digestion, leaving a positive base-balance. Alkalosis develops when breathing is stimulated, as in mountain climbing, during which there is an "Auspumpung," as German investigators call it, a "pumping out" of CO<sub>2</sub>, leaving a positive base balance in the body. All of these conditions are rapidly regulated by excess excretion of the appropriate materials. Thus, if CO<sub>2</sub> tends to increase in the body, the ventilating process of the lungs is increased by stimulation of the respiratory center, by the H<sup>+</sup> involved; (CO<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O = H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>; H<sup>+</sup> + HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). If alkali increases, there is an attendant increase in the excretion of alkaline substances in the urine, stimulated largely by the increase in osmotic pressure of the blood and tissues when alkali is retained. In addition to the regulatory power of the urine, the intestinal wall exhibits "selective permeability" upon mineral substances and, although this has not been definitely correlated with acid-base balance, there is an evident relation. As occasion demands, the intestinal wall permits mineral salts to leave the blood and to be excreted in the feces or to be absorbed from the intestine into the blood.<sup>2</sup> The mechanism of the alkali reserve, discussed earlier in the present volume,<sup>3</sup> is, of course, the immediate scene of equilibration of acid and base in the blood.

In **fasting** there is a greater excretion of acid substances (anions) than of base, due to tissue destruction freeing anions, like phosphates and sulphates<sup>4</sup> from the protids. A positive base-balance amounting

<sup>1</sup> Page 40.

<sup>2</sup> Goldschmidt, S. (University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia), *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 421, 1921.

<sup>3</sup> Page 76.

<sup>4</sup> Actually, phosphoric acid and sulphur in the form of SH sulphur are freed from the molecule and oxidized in the liver to sulphuric acid, etc. See page 578.

to about 428 mls. decinormal base each day is thereby produced. Recovery from fasting is hastened on a diet preponderantly protid (acid formers), owing to the fact that there is a positive base-balance per day of 428 mls. of decinormal base which must be compensated for.<sup>1</sup>

In **pregnancy** there is a negative balance of about 67 mls. of decinormal base each day and this must be supplied by the mother to the fetus; this is probably the cause of that acidosis<sup>2</sup> which occurs in pregnancy, especially in later stages. Consequently, the pregnant mother should receive at least 70 mls. of decinormal base and preferably a "luxury" amount up to 150 mls. 0.1 normal base per twenty-four hours. After birth, the child retains base up to one year to the extent of about 12 mls. per kilogram of body weight. It is used largely in making of bone, but also of protid.<sup>3</sup> Calculated out in terms of decinormal solution all the base retained by a growing child is distributed as follows:

TABLE SHOWING BASE RETAINED BY GROWING CHILD

	Mls.
Protid retained per day as decinormal base.....	2
Alkali reserve.....	4
Bone.....	50
Unaccounted for.....	2
Total base retained.....	58

The necessity, therefore, of supplying adequate amounts of base-forming substances to a mother with child or to the child itself during growth, is evident.

**The Regulation of Acid-base Equilibrium in the Body.**—This is largely a matter of the excretion of acid or of base substances in (a) the urine, or (b) feces.

The *urine*, as we have said, is normally acid, depending upon:

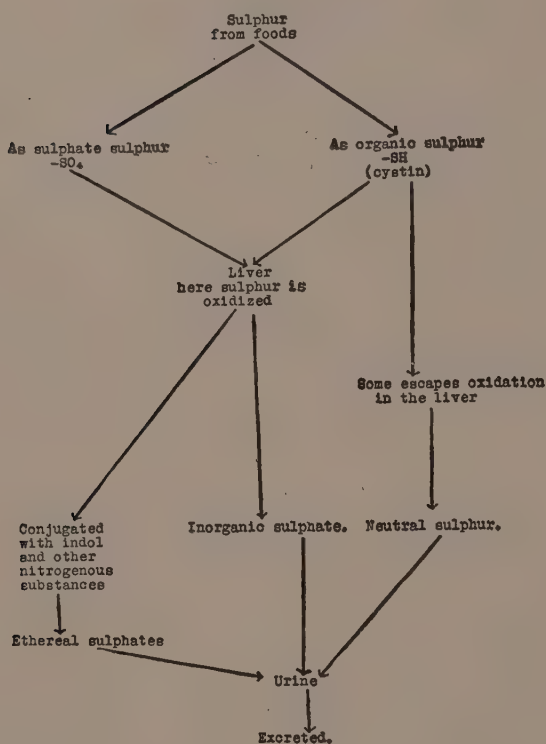
1. The phosphate  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ .
2. Urea, representing conjugated cyanic acid and ammonia.
3. Ethereal sulphates, etc., representing inorganic acids neutralized by conjugated radicles.
4. Organic acids, like oxalic.
5. Carbonic, as bicarbonate and carbonate,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ .

<sup>1</sup> Deprivation of glucids leads to acidosis. In fasting, this factor, which depends upon the degree of starvation, is encountered.

<sup>2</sup> Loss of base means that base must be supplied. The bases are retained in the body of the fetus and used for building the body in growth of the bones, etc.

<sup>3</sup> About 0.7 g. per twenty-four hours. Protid is made to the extent of about 3 gs. daily.

## GRAPHIC SUMMARY



The *feces* are usually alkaline by about 250 mls. of decinormal base. Some of this basicity is due to the mineral substances in the undigested foods, but some comes from the bases excreted from the blood into the intestine. The part played by the feces, therefore, is the opposite of that of the urine, and we may say that urine lowers the acid-producing substances, while feces lower the basic radicles.

Acids administered for any purpose, such as HCl to increase the concentration of gastric acidity in hypo-acidity, cause excretion of alkali in two general ways:

(1) Loss of alkali minerals partly by the kidney and in part by the feces.

(2) Loss of ammonia quite entirely through the urine. Alkali when given for hyperacidity of the gastric juice, in acidosis when sodium bicarbonate is given, and in other cases is retained to some extent, and if there is enough alkali retained, there is a consequent

absorption of water by the body. The effect of administering alkali is thus summed up by Shohl:

In the urine: (1) Urine acidity increases equivalent to 200 mls. 0.1 normal acid.

(2) Low ammonia in the urine, or none at all.

(3) Phosphates in the urine become alkaline phosphate,  $B_2HPO_4$ .

(4) Neutralization of organic acids.

(5) Increase in carbonate.

In the feces: (1) Increased excretion of alkali in the form of calcium soaps, calcium phosphate, and carbonate.

The following tables show the reaction of fluids used as food and occurring in the body (Clark):

TABLE SHOWING REACTION OF FLUIDS

	pH.		pH.
Blood.....	7.4	Aqueous humor.....	7.1
Urine (average).....	6.0	Vitreous humor.....	7.0
Saliva (37° C.).....	6.9	Cerebrospinal fluid.....	7.2
Gastric juice (ad.).....	0.9-1.6	Amniotic fluid.....	8.1
Gastric juice (juv.).....	5.0	Milk (human).....	7.0-7.2
Pancreatic juice (dog).....	8.3	Milk (cow).....	6.6-6.8
Intestinal (small) juice.....	8.3	Milk (goat).....	6.6
Same for infant.....	3.1	Milk (ass).....	7.6
Bile (liver).....	7.8	Sea-water.....	8.0
Bile (cyst).....	5.3-7.4	Mineral waters.....	6.5-7.0
Perspiration.....	4.5	Flour (extract).....	6.0-6.5
Tears.....	7.2	Maple syrup.....	6.8
Muscle, expressed.....	6.8	Vinegar.....	3.1
Pancreas, expressed.....	5.6	Vinegar, synthetic.....	2.6
Peritoneal fluid.....	7.4	Feces (adult).....	7.1-8.8
Pericardial fluid.....	7.4	Feces (juvenile).....	6.0-7.0

TABLE SHOWING THE TRUE REACTION OF FRUITS

	pH.		pH.
Lime juice.....	1.7	Grape-juice.....	4.5
Lemon.....	2.2	Prune juice heated.....	4.3
Cherry juice.....	2.5	Apple juice heated.....	3.8
Grapefruit.....	3.0	Banana juice heated.....	4.6
Orange.....	3.1	Bean (string).....	5.2
Rhubarb.....	3.1	Carrot juice heated.....	5.2
Strawberry.....	3.4	Cucumber juice heated.....	5.1
Pineapple.....	3.4	Beet juice heated.....	6.1
Tomato.....	4.2	Potato juice heated.....	6.1
Pear.....	4.2		



Summarizing we may say: (1) Acid causes a negative base-balance.  
 (2) Alkali cause positive base balance or an increase of a positive base-balance.

**Normal and Abnormal Diets.**—By means of Figs. 168 and 169 it is hoped that the reader may visualize a balanced ration and be able to appreciate an abnormal diet. It is supposed that the diet

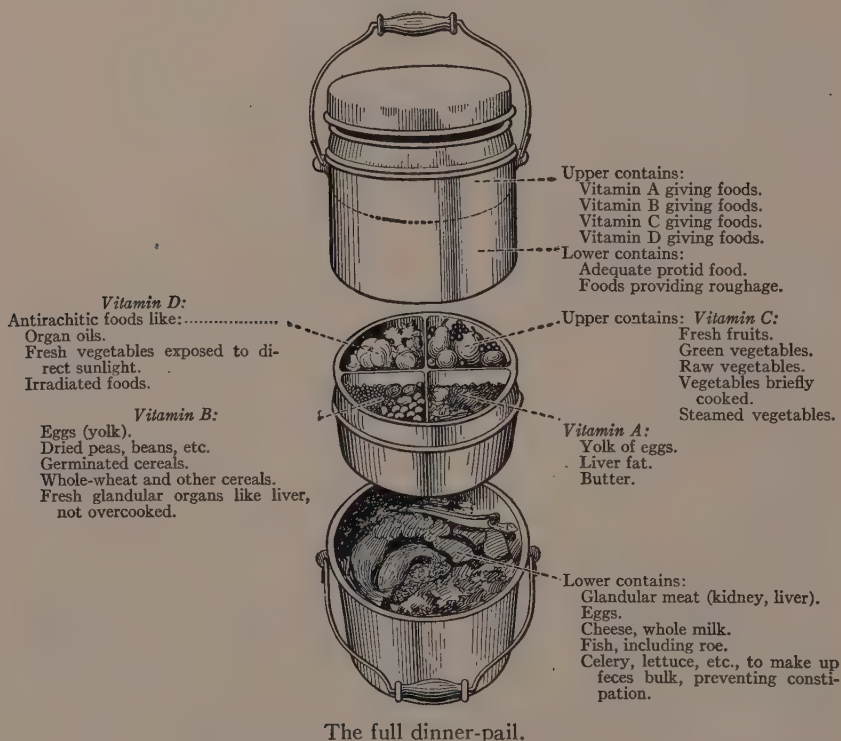
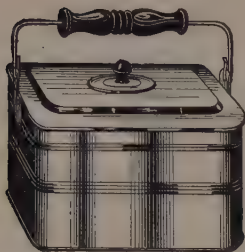


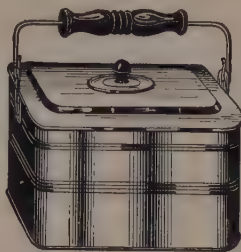
Fig. 168.—A normal diet.

has been devised for an average workman who demands about 3000 Cals. (see page 586). The problem is to afford sufficient nutriment for maintenance. In the nature of the case it is impossible to erect a single graphic representation applicable to growth, maintenance, etc. The series of diets represented in Fig. 169 are incomplete in certain regards, the deficiencies being either vitamin (first four) or incomplete nitrogenous or roughage substances.

*Diet A Lacks Vitamin A:*

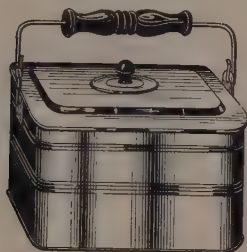
## Contains:

Vegetable oils ("vegetable lard," etc.).  
 Oleomargin and butter substitutes.  
 Animal lard.  
 Bacon fat.  
 Fat-of-pork ("salt pork").

*Diet B Lacks Vitamin B:*

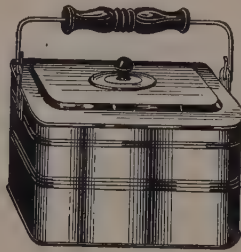
## Contains:

Rolled oats and other degerminated and decorticated grains.  
 Muscle meats.  
 Salted (brine) meats.  
 Overcooked vegetables, meats, etc.  
 Excess sugar.

*Diet C Lacks Vitamin C:*

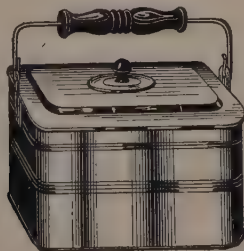
## Contains:

Boiled vegetables.  
 No fresh fruits.  
 Only muscle meats.  
 Autoclaved or overcooked vegetables and meats.  
 Devitaminized milk.  
 Fruit juices that have been heated in canning or bottling or have lost their vitamin on standing.  
 Sterilized foods.

*Diet D Rachitic:*

## Contains:

Highly milled cereals.  
 Foods grown in the absence of sunlight.  
 Overamount of starchy foods lacking protid, like white bread.

*Diet E Lacks Complete Protids and Roughage:*

## Contains:

Gelatin (as puddings, etc.).  
 Corn (maize), decorticated and highly milled.  
 Wheat and other cereal preparations of highly milled flours.  
 Readily digested substances leaving no residue.  
 Steak meats, both fish-steaks and meat, as steaks, chops, etc.

Fig. 169.—Abnormal diets.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

- Abderhalden, E. *Lehrbuch der physiologischen Chemie*, vol. 1 (new edition). Obtainable from A. Brudderhausen, New York, N. Y. (page 25).
- Eddy, W. H. *The Vitamin Manual*, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1921.
- Greenwald, I. In *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1921.
- Lusk, G. *Elements of the Science of Nutrition*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1919.
- Lusk, G. *Specific Dynamic Action of Various Food Factors*. In *Medicine*, vol. 1, p. 311, 1922.
- McCollum, E. V. *The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition*, New York, The Macmillan Co., 2d ed., 1922.
- Mattill, H. A., and Mattill, H. I. *Mineral Metabolism*. In *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1921.
- Medical Research Committee Report (England). Papers Nos. 38, 61, and 77.
- Mendel, L. B. *Nutrition, The Chemistry of Life*, New Haven, Conn., Yale University Press, 1923.
- Mitchell, P. H. *A Text-book of General Physiology*, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1923.
- Plimmer, R. H. A. *Some Practical Considerations of the Vitamin Problem in Nutrition*. *The Practitioner* (London), 1924. Obtainable from *The Practitioner*, Howard St., Strand, W. C. 2, London, England.
- Robertson, T. B. *The Chemical Basis of Growth and Senescence*, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1923.
- Sherman, H. C. *The Vitamins*, New York, Chemical Catalog Co., 1922.
- Sherman, H. C. *Vitamins*, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 1, p. 598, 1921.
- Shohl, A. T. *Mineral Metabolism*, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 509, 1923.
- Sollmann, T. *Pharmacology*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1923.
- Underhill, F. P. *Physiology of the Amino-acids*, New Haven, Conn., Yale University Press, 1915.

## CHAPTER XIII

### THE ENERGETICS OF NUTRITION

"By metabolism is meant the chemical changes of materials under the influence of living cells."—*Lusk*.

IN the preceding Chapter we have studied the chemical constituents which make up the body. The question arises, Why are these materials constantly undergoing change and being broken down to substances which are excreted from the body? The answer is that the body is not a static thing, but, as Herbert Spencer<sup>1</sup> said, "Life is a continual adjustment of internal to external conditions." Since external conditions change continually, there must be corresponding changes within the organism. For example, in the maintenance of temperature a continual adjustment of internal conditions to external is necessary. The promoters of chemical action, the enzymes, act at certain temperatures better than at others, and some means must be provided to maintain the optimal temperature. This is accomplished by introducing oxygen to cause combustion of substances in the body, sugars and protids. We breathe air for this reason.

**Forms of Energy in the Body.**—There are various forms of energy in the body. We have seen that movement is accomplished by specialized tissues, the muscles, and that the cause of the contraction of

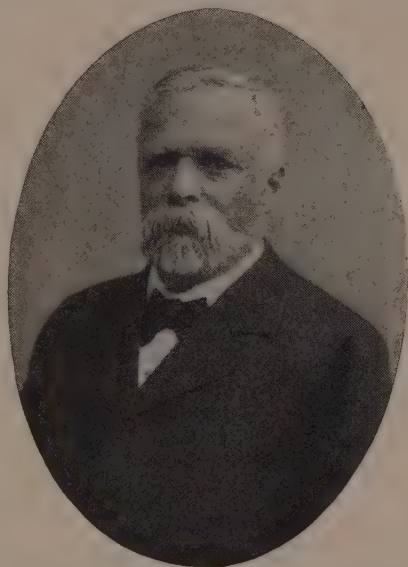


Fig. 170.—Carl Voit, Physiologist, Physiological Institute, University of Munich, Bavaria. Responsible for much of our knowledge of the energetics of metabolism and for the beginnings of American studies in that field, carried further by Atwater, Lusk, and their colleagues.

<sup>1</sup> Spencer, Herbert, English philosopher of the 19th century. See his *Principles of Biology*, vol. 1, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1898.

muscle is the swelling of the fibers due to the absorption of water during the time when their membranes are rendered more permeable to water by lactic acid formed from glucose. Likewise, there is a parallel or subsequent combustion of some of the sugar or acid which produces heat to maintain the proper temperature for the reaction. It is granted that a secreting gland does work; then the same may be said of the cells of the intestine where absorption of digested foods is taking place. Even a nerve performs work, as Tashiro<sup>1</sup> has shown, the exact nature of which, to be sure, we do not know.

**The Principle of Joule.**—The desirability of a single standard, whereby all types of energy changes within the body might be expressed quantitatively, is evident. Thanks to an English physicist, Joule,<sup>2</sup> this is possible.

Heat unit	≈ gravity units	≈ electrical units	≈ work unit	≈ gas-pressure unit
1 cal. <sup>3</sup>	42,600 g. cms.	116,200 watt-hours. <sup>4</sup>	41,860,000 ergs.	$\frac{1}{41,880}$ liter atmospheres.
≈ mechanical equivalent of heat				
4.186 joules.				

All forms of energy must be expressed in terms of heat units. In the human body all forms of energy seem to be eventually converted into heat, the lowest form of energy. The intake of energy expressed in units of heat calories balances the outgo of energy expressed in similar terms. The body energy is "degraded" into heat, a form of energy of low vibration and of long wave-length.

**Efficiency of the Human Machine.**—Measured in terms of heat evolved, the greatest amount of energy a man may produce in one hour is about 600 Cals.<sup>5</sup> This would mean 33 per cent. efficiency. However, only a portion of the whole energy of the body is derived from combustion and, therefore, it is not possible to compare the human mechanism with a combustion engine or to express the efficiency of the human organism definitely. Muscle, according to Hill,<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Tashiro, Shiro (University of Cincinnati), *A Clinical Sign of Life*, University of Chicago Press, 1919.

<sup>2</sup> Joule, J. P., British physicist of the middle of the 19th century.

<sup>3</sup> Small calorie, not the one used in the energetics of human metabolism, which is one thousand times this.

<sup>4</sup> One one-thousandth of the unit employed in estimating house-currents; the unit there is the kilowatt.

<sup>5</sup> Henderson (Henderson, Y., and Haggard, H. W., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. lxi, 1925) finds the maximal energy expenditure in man is from thirteen to twenty times the B. M. R., or about 1700 Cals. per hour.

<sup>6</sup> Page 140.



is about 20 per cent. efficient. Muscle energy is about half the total body energy, a relatively large amount being derived from other sources, such as osmosis, absorption, etc.

*Entropy and the Limitation of Efficiency.*—In all interconversions of energy, some becomes bound. This bound energy is known as entropy, which may be defined as non-productive energy. The physicist has shown that since all energy manifestations involve the formation of bound energy, the universe must be running down. He says that "entropy tends to a maximum." This statement is applied only to closed systems and nothing is said concerning the influence of one system on another. In the case of the human being, all energy transformations are made within the cell, which is virtually a closed system. However, there are interactions of the cells and it may be that one characteristic of life is the ability of one system to affect another favorably.

*The Entropy of Carbon.*—Carbon is the most characteristic element of the body. Undoubtedly, one reason for this is its unique ability to bind many atoms of the same kind. The entropy of carbon, moreover, is the lowest of the elements in the human body. The following table serves to compare the entropy of carbon with that of other elements:

ATOMIC ENTROPY OF SEVERAL ELEMENTS IN THE BODY<sup>1</sup>

Calcium.....	11.0	Magnesium.....	8.3
Carbon (diamond).....	0.6	Nitrogen.....	22.8
Carbon (graphite).....	1.3	Oxygen.....	24.1
Chlorin.....	25.7	Potassium.....	19.7
Hydrogen.....	15.9	Sodium.....	12.2
Iodin.....	15.7	Sulphur.....	7.6
Iron.....	6.6	Silicon.....	4.7 <sup>2</sup>

Carbon, with an entropy of 0.6, has energy efficiency greater than any element in the organism. How much this counts in estimating the efficiency of the organism is unknown, but it is certain that as a whole the efficiency of the body is enhanced by the use of such an element.

<sup>1</sup> Derived from the expression:  $S = \int \frac{d\theta}{T}$ , where S is the entropy,  $d\theta$  heat, which must be added to the system to maintain the temperature T (on the absolute scale);  $\int$  the sign of summation of the calculus. Less technically, entropy =  $\frac{\text{Heat units}}{\text{Absolute temperature}}$  units.

<sup>2</sup> It is interesting that silicon has a low entropy. It has been pointed out that the living world may have been built upon a silicon basis rather than a carbon one.

*What relation has "energy" to medicine?* The question may be asked, Of what especial value are such considerations to the physician? The question is answered as follows: Individuals differ in their expenditure of energy, and consequently, as to their food requirements. The physician must, therefore, have some means of designating the value of foods for given cases. Again, certain diseases cause an abnormal increase in the proportion and utilization of energy, while others cause a reduction. For example, exophthalmic goiter is characterized by increased energy production and expenditure, whereas myxedema involves an abnormal reduction.

### CALORIES

**The Calorie: The Unit of Energy in Biochemistry.**—Since heat is the standard for comparing energy relations in biochemistry, the unit of heat has been adopted to express energy in concrete terms. This is known as the Calorie, and is defined as the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1000 mls. of water from 15° C. to 16° C. This is the large Calorie, composed of 1000 small calories, which are defined as the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1 ml. of water from 3.5° to 4.5° C., the temperature at which water has the greatest volume. The average daily requirement of a man is 3000 Calories; for a woman, 2575, or six-sevenths of that figure. The average man must, therefore, consume food which contains at least 3000 Cals., and a woman about 2600, every twenty-four hours. A boy of fifteen years requires about as many Calories as an adult man. These questions will be considered later.

**Relations of Calories Outside the Body to Those Within.**—Have we reason to believe that if the heat evolved by the burning of a given amount of food outside the body is determined, it will indicate the value of this food when consumed? The question was answered at the close of the eighteenth century in England by Crawford and in France by Lavoisier,<sup>1</sup> who found that the same amount of heat is given off from a known amount of carbon *in vitro* as *in vivo*, that is, the same number of calories of heat are given off by carbon burned as a candle in the open air as carbon burned in the body. Moreover, the Law of Hess<sup>2</sup> assures us that it is immaterial how the burning is

<sup>1</sup> For a historical introduction see Atwater, W. O. Articles in the Century Magazine for 1887 and later.

<sup>2</sup> The same amount of heat is evolved whether the burning is direct and immediate or through intermediate stages.

effected, whether by explosion or through a series of intermediate stages, the same amount of heat is produced. Hence, we may burn a sample of food under control in the laboratory and derive the number of calories which it will give as a minimum when utilized in the body. We say "as a minimum," because of the specific dynamic action discussed earlier<sup>1</sup> and other factors not well understood. There is 10 per cent. more heat produced by glucose when burned in the body than when it is oxidized in the laboratory.<sup>2</sup> The same is true of fat and protid to a greater extent. Levulose gives greater discrepancies. The following table gives the percentage increase in heat production by different glucids expressed in terms of the rise in metabolism over basal metabolic rate.<sup>3</sup> These figures are proportional to the differences the sugars show when burned in the laboratory and when burned in the body:

TABLE SHOWING INCREASE IN HEAT PRODUCTION WHEN SUGARS ARE FED OVER BASAL METABOLIC RATE (LUSK)

	Gs.	Percentage increase two hours after ingestion.
Glucose.....	50	30
Glucose.....	70	35
Fructose.....	50	37
Sucrose.....	50	34
Galactose.....	50	22
Lactose.....	50	3

#### Determination of Calories Outside the Body; Food Calories.—

This is accomplished by burning a dried sample under controlled conditions in which the rise in temperature can be accurately determined and the Calories calculated from such data. One of the commonest methods is the use of a bomb calorimeter, a heavy, hollow metal sphere in which the substance to be burned is ignited electrically in an atmosphere of oxygen. The heat produced by the oxidation is transmitted through the walls of the bomb to the surrounding water which is kept at known temperature in a thermostat. The rise in temperature of the water is recorded on a delicate thermometer. Knowing that a Calorie is the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1000 mls. of water 1° C., the proportionate rise from

<sup>1</sup> Page 552. In addition, there is the fact that protid is not burned to products in which the greatest possible amount of oxygen is contained. See page 528.

<sup>2</sup> The extra heat is derived from substances other than glucose, glucose itself being able to produce only a certain amount of heat, indicated by the calories found when it is oxidized outside the body.

<sup>3</sup> For a definition of this term see page 606.

the burning of the substance may be readily determined. We give the details of the *Emerson bomb apparatus*; an excellent type is that of Lusk-Riche.<sup>1</sup>

*The Construction of the Emerson Bomb Apparatus.*—In order to isolate the heat produced by combustion, or other chemical change, from that of the surroundings, the combustion is done in a thermostat, or water-bath. This is simply a large metal vessel provided with a shiny exterior surface to reflect the heat rays from the outside and a layer of insulating material to avoid heat transfer from within, out, or vice versa. A cover is provided with holes for the thermometer, the wires going to the bomb and the thermoregulator. The bomb is made of steel and is composed of two hemispheres held together by heavy threaded screws. There are two connections for the wires, admitting the electric current used to explode the substances within the bomb. The bomb contains a platform for the small vessel designed to hold the material under examination. The lining of the bomb is platinum, palladium, or gold. The small vessel is also made of one of these materials. A side or top opening is arranged for admitting oxygen gas from a cylinder.

*The Determination.*—Obtain the constant for the particular calorimeter in use. The United States Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C., supplies naphthalin, a coal-tar product, which burns with the evolution of a given amount of heat per known weight. This amount of heat is written on the container. The small, accurately weighed amount of naphthalin is placed in the small vessel referred to above and it is inserted into the bomb. The hemispheres are screwed together and tightened with a long-handled wrench, 1 meter long. The electric wires are placed in position in the holes provided for this purpose. Then oxygen under about 25 atmospheres pressure is admitted from the cylinder and the small aperture for the gas is closed securely. The bomb is lowered into the water in the thermostat. After temperature equilibrium is reached the current switch is closed; a current is sent through the naphthalin resting within the bomb by means of a small iron wire which becomes heated or, better, a thread of fiber passing through the naphthalin joining the ends of the wires and completing the surface, becomes ignited. The high content of oxygen insures complete combustion; the heat liberated is transmitted to the water and the rise in temperature is noted upon a ther-

<sup>1</sup> Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 35, p. 1747, 1913.



mometer graduated in hundredths of a degree (Fig. 20). Such a thermometer as the Beckmann, used in freezing-point determinations,<sup>1</sup> serves for this purpose. This thermometer shows only about 6 degrees, so that the finer graduations of  $1/100^{\circ}$  C. are large enough to study with a magnifying glass, or even with the naked eye.

Having noted the change in temperature by this means, one may calculate the difference between the heat generated and the theoretical amount which may be calculated from the data on the bottle of the naphthalin. This discrepancy is the constant for the apparatus; the quantity must be deducted from the readings in all future determinations of foods. As an example we may take the following:

Heat of combustion of naphthalin,  $C_{10}H_8$ , 1084 small cal.

This means that 1 gram-molecule when completely oxidized gives 1084 small calories of heat.

Taken for the determination of the constant, 250 mgs. of  $C_{10}H_8$ .

Heat of combustion of 250 mgs.  $C_{10}H_8$ , 271 cal.

Heat of formation of  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$ , the products of combustion of  $C_{10}H_8$ ,  $96.9 + 115.2 = 212.2$  cal.

Difference, being the actual calories expected, 58.8 cal.

Degrees Centigrade rise in temperature after explosion,  $14.8^{\circ}$  C.

This is equivalent to 59.2 calories, since a calorie is the amount of heat necessary to bring 1 g. 1 degree higher in temperature;  $\frac{1}{4}$  gram (250 mgs.) was taken.

Therefore, the constant for the bomb in question is the difference between the expected and found, namely, 0.4 cal., which must be deducted from any other determination.

*The Preparation of the Specimen for Combustion.*—The specimen must be thoroughly dried, but not decomposed by heat. Drying at  $40^{\circ}$  C. in a current of air is customary. The specimen is then pulverized, made into pellets, or carefully weighed into the vessel.

The determination of the heat: This is done as described above for naphthalin.

Calculation: From the heat determined subtract the constant for the calorimeter and express the answer in terms of large Calories per 100 gs. of substance.

**Calories in Common Foods.**—In hospitals, restaurants, etc., attention is directed to the caloric value of foods served. The following table gives approximately<sup>2</sup> the Calories in some common foods. For a complete list see Gephart:

<sup>1</sup> Page 49.

<sup>2</sup> The Calories, vitamin values, etc., given on many restaurant menus are frequently absurdly inaccurate.



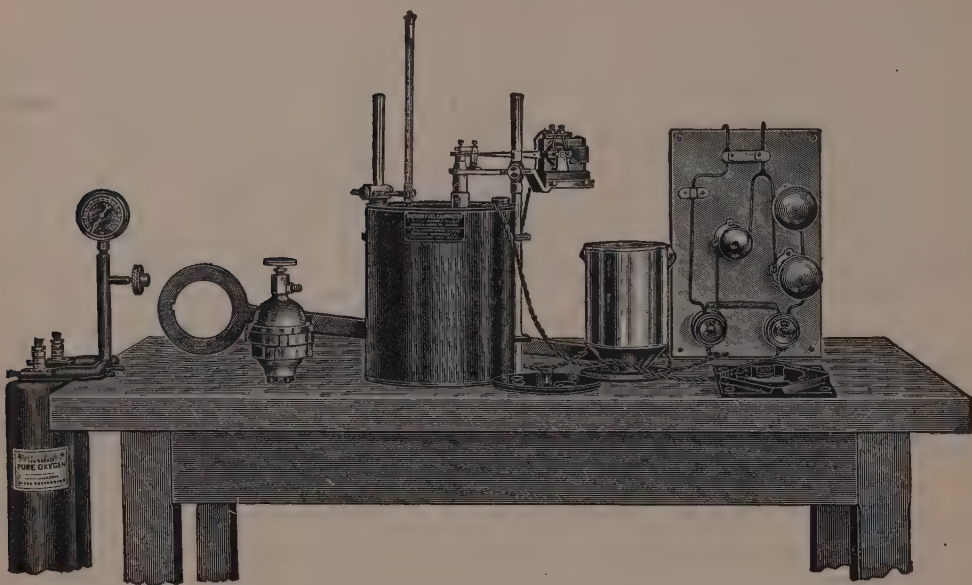


Fig. 171.—A common form of food-calorimeter. The Emerson Bomb Calorimeter. From left to right: Oxygen cylinder; gas-pressure indicator; wrench for closing bomb; bomb; thermostat, bearing thermometer and stirrer; support for bomb; lamps for regulating current used to explode the bomb.

<i>Breakfast dishes:</i>	<i>Cals.</i>
Shredded wheat with milk.....	180
Corn flakes with milk.....	120
Porridge (oatmeal) with milk.....	190
Boiled white rice with milk.....	100
Poached egg on toast, two eggs.....	300
Omelette, plain.....	200
Banana.....	100
Baked apple.....	100
Baked apple with cream.....	150
Stewed prunes.....	140
Apple sauce.....	80
Sliced orange.....	100
Coffee, per cup, black (tea, postum, etc., identical).....	8
Cocoa ("hot chocolate"), plain.....	200
Milk, glass.....	200
Buttermilk.....	100
Bean soup, 240 mls.....	250
Chicken and rice soup.....	250
Cream of tomato soup.....	250
Vegetable soup.....	225

*Lunch dishes:*

	Cals.
Biscuit, baking powder, 90 gs. ....	200
Bread, wheat, white, 90 gs. (also graham; bran; rye, etc.) ....	150
Coffee cake. ....	242
Doughnuts. ....	400
Corn muffins. ....	250
Baked codfish. ....	200
Codfish cakes. ....	250
Filet of flounder, fried. ....	225
Boiled halibut steak. ....	200
Fried oysters. ....	135
Oyster stew. ....	250
Eggs, boiled, two. ....	150
Bacon, broiled. ....	300
Corn beef hash. ....	325
Fried ham. ....	400
Ham and eggs. ....	390
Small steak. ....	300
Baked beans. ....	350
Spaghetti and cheese. ....	240
Chicken croquette, cream sauce, and potatoes. ....	250

*Dinner dishes:*

	Cals.
Sausage. ....	300
Sausage and buckwheat cakes. ....	450
Creamed asparagus. ....	125
Beets, plain. ....	50
Cabbage, boiled. ....	60
Carrots, buttered. ....	85
Cauliflower, buttered. ....	90
Fried egg-plant. ....	120
Green peas, buttered. ....	230
Lima beans, buttered. ....	200
Onions, buttered. ....	150
Potatoes, baked. ....	200
Spinach, buttered. ....	85
Tomatoes, stewed. ....	80
Lettuce and tomato salad. ....	50
Potato salad. ....	70
Sliced tomatoes, plain. ....	35
Club sandwich. ....	600
Cantaloupe. ....	50
Cup custard. ....	150
Ice-cream. ....	225
Grape fruit, half. ....	70
Orange juice. ....	70
Apple pie, per cut. ....	280
Mince pie. ....	400
Cake, plain. ....	200

Other factors being equal, one may arrange a diet having a certain caloric value by taking isodynamic equivalents of foods, that is, having the same heat value. The reader is warned at once, however, that the total value of any food cannot be measured in Calories. Many other considerations enter into such evaluation. The thermal value alone is indicated by Calories. Foods are therefore seldom "isodynamic."

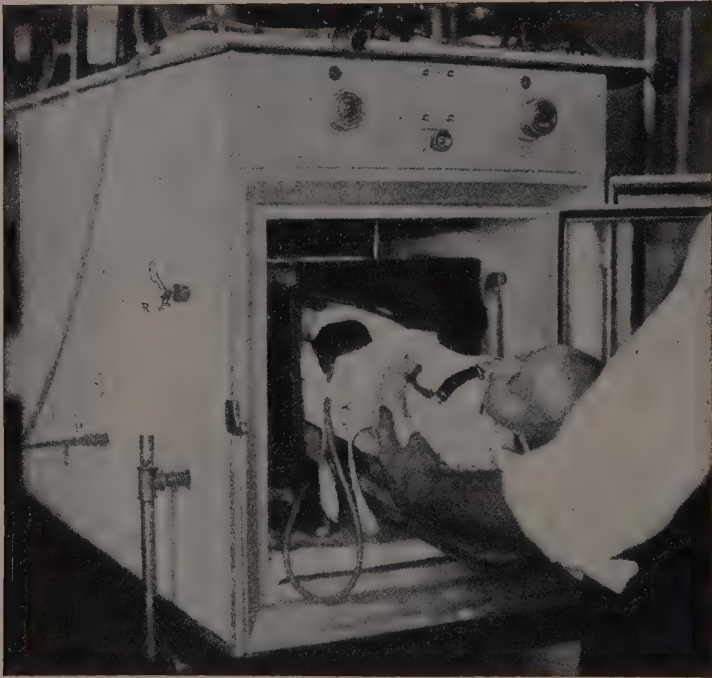


Fig. 172.—Direct calorimetry. Metabolism chamber for estimating the calories of energy utilized by a child. The condition of the subject is carefully watched by means of the leg-cuff (for pulse) and chest pneumograph (for respirations). For plan of a room calorimeter, see page 593, Fig. 173. (Murlin and Hoobler, *Amer. Jour. Dis. of Child.*, vol. 9, p. 89 (Fig. 1), 1915.)

**Calories Within the Body.**—How can the number of Calories of energy required by a human being be critically determined as a basis for scientific feeding? The appetite cannot be trusted, because one individual may eat more than he requires, while another may not eat enough. Moreover, in great crises, as in war time, how can food be scientifically apportioned among the populace? An instance of sad misjudgment was given during the Great War when, in the very city

where much of our knowledge of nutrition was derived, the children were rationed far below their needs. The graph on page 611 shows the number of Calories required by boys.

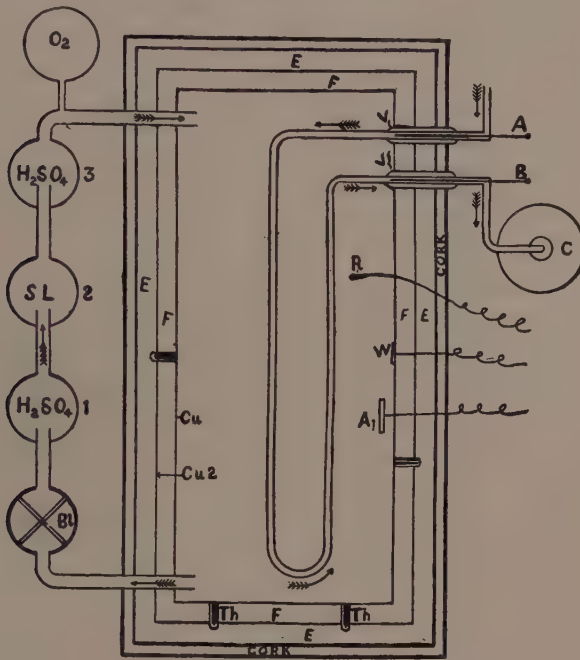


Fig. 173.—Schematic diagram of the Atwater-Rosa-Benedict respiration calorimeter. (From Lusk, *Elements of the Science of Nutrition*.)

Ventilating system: 1,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to remove moisture given off by patient. 2, Soda lime to remove  $\text{CO}_2$ . 3,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to catch moisture given off by soda lime.  $\text{O}_2$ , Oxygen introduced as needed by subject. Bl, Blower to keep air in circulation.

Indirect calorimetry: Increase in weight of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (1) = water elimination of subject. Increase in weight of soda lime (2) + increase in weight of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (3) =  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination. Decrease in weight of oxygen tank = oxygen consumption of subject.

Heat-absorbing system: A, Thermometer to record temperature of ingoing water. B, Thermometer to record temperature of outgoing water. V, Vacuum jacket. C, Tank for weighing water which has passed through calorimeter each hour. W, Thermometer for measuring temperature of wall.  $A_1$ , Thermometer for measuring temperature of the air. R, Rectal thermometer for measuring temperature of subject.

Direct calorimetry: Average difference of A and B  $\times$  liters of water + (gs. water eliminated  $\times 0.586$ )  $\pm$  (change in temperature of wall  $\times$  hydrothermal equivalent of box)  $\pm$  (change of temperature of body  $\times$  hydrothermal equivalent of body) = total Calories produced.

Th, thermocouple; Cu, inner copper wall;  $\text{Cu}_2$ , outer copper wall; E, F, dead air-spaces.

**Methods of Calorimetric Determination.**—Two chief methods are in use: (1) Physical, or direct method, and (2) Chemical or indirect.

*Direct Method of Calorimetric Determination.*—The principle of this method is the same as that described on page 588 for finding food calories, *i. e.*, causing combustion within a space insulated from without. In the case of the food calorimeter, a bomb was placed in a thermostat. The material being analyzed was placed in the bomb. In human calorimetry the bomb is replaced by the human body and a compartment large enough to hold the body, or larger, replaces the thermostat. A certain amount of movement during the studies of metabolism of exercise, etc., is necessary. For the details of such a calorimeter see Mathews' *Physiological Chemistry*. Briefly, the principal factors are as follows: The absorption of the heat derived from the subject is effected by ice-water (constant temperature) circulating through pipes suspended in the calorimeter. The amount of water passing through it for a given length of time is determined by weighing the water after it leaves the chamber. The walls of the calorimeter, being hollow, insulate the chamber from the outside, and hence all thermal changes are recorded by the difference in temperature of the water as it enters and leaves the chamber. The room is ventilated by a pipe system and rotary blower and the air is passed through absorbers ( $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and moist soda lime) to remove the  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . By weighing the absorbers, before and after a run, the amount of these gases removed from the air of the chamber for a given time is determined. Oxygen is continually fed into the chambers in order to replace that used by the subject. The direct determination of heat is made by multiplying the volume of water passed through the apparatus for a given period by the temperature difference of the water before and after passage through the calorimeter; this makes up about 75 per cent. of the heat given off by the subject. The remaining 25 per cent. of the heat from the subject within the calorimeter is caught as latent heat in the water-vapor absorbed by the  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; about half a Calorie of heat is contained in each gram of water-vapor.<sup>1</sup> This must be added to the heat found in the circulating water, and the two quantities constitute all of the heat derived

<sup>1</sup> The amount of water-vapor in the air cannot be judged by fog or steam. Few persons would believe that there are only 30 mls. of liquid water in enough atmospheric fog to fill the volume of a common freight car, yet that is the usual amount as determined by measurements made by one of the United States Government departments.



from the subject in the calorimeter during the run. The results are expressed in Calories per hour.<sup>1</sup>

*Indirect Method for Calorimetry.*—Principle: A man utilizes about 1 liter of oxygen for every 5 Calories of heat given off; this has been determined by direct calorimetry. However, within narrow limits, the caloric value of one liter of oxygen varies according to the character of the food; on a diet of fat, 4.686 Cals. are given off from the body for each liter of oxygen consumed, while on a diet of starch, sugar, etc., each liter of oxygen corresponds to 5.047 Cals. A protid diet gives an intermediate figure. It has been found by French investigators of the last century that the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> given off by a carnivorous animal (dog) compared with that given off by a herbivore (rabbit) is less, proportionate to the oxygen consumed; that is,  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2}$  for a meat-eating animal is less than the ratio for a vegetable-eating animal. The character of the food determines the caloric value of oxygen as well as the value of the ratio, known as the "respiration ratio," or quotient,  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2}$ . Hence, by determining the oxygen consumed, we may evaluate the character of the metabolism, and by estimating the oxygen consumed and the CO<sub>2</sub> given off, the respiratory quotient is found. This indicates the number of Calories due to the burning of glucid, lipid, and of protid. Knowing the respiratory quotient, and the amount of one of the foods named above, by using the chart on page 612, it is possible to determine the number of Calories derived from the other foods, or the character of metabolism, whether chiefly glucid, protid, or lipid. If the subject is on a high glucid diet, his data will be found in the right-hand corner of the chart; if fat, in the left-hand corner. The figures are in percentages. The chart is arranged for the average respiratory quotient, namely, 0.83.

<sup>1</sup> In the United States, direct calorimetry for the human subject is possible in the following laboratories: Washington, D. C., Department of Agriculture; Nutrition Laboratory, Boston, Mass.; Carnegie Institution of Washington; Russell Sage Institute of Pathology, New York, N. Y.; Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md.; University of Rochester, Rochester, N. Y. A large animal calorimeter was built by the late Dr. Armsby at Pennsylvania State College, State College, Pa. The first calorimeter built in this country was erected in the laboratories of Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn., by the late Professor Atwater. This work was transferred to Washington, D. C., during the lifetime of Professor Atwater and later was resumed by a colleague, F. G. Benedict, at the Nutrition Laboratory referred to above. See page 24.

*The Tissot<sup>1</sup> Method with the Douglas Bag.*—The following apparatus is necessary:

Douglas bag (Fig. 174) or equivalent for collecting the respired air. The tube leading from the patient's mouth to the bag must be of large bore, about the size of the tubing on a vacuum cleaner. Unless a gas-mask is used, the mouthpiece must be provided with rubber flanges, which fit inside the cheeks to insure that no air escapes. An easily adjusted "flutter-valve" which can be operated without the patient's knowledge is provided, whether or not the mask is used.



Fig. 174.—Method of administering the Douglas bag in collecting respired air for R/Q determinations. After a few minutes' breathing through the mouthpiece to the outer air, the nurse carefully closes the valve, permitting the patient to breathe into the bag.

A gas-meter, capable of recording the number of mls. of gas passed through it from the bag, in order to determine the total amount of gas being analyzed for CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub>.

A gas-analysis apparatus (Haldane, Carpenter,<sup>2</sup> Henderson,<sup>3</sup> etc.), of which there are several different kinds on the market, the simplest of which being that of Henderson (Figs. 176, 177).

Procedure: The subject lies on his back with a good supply of fresh air available. The mouthpiece of the apparatus is applied,

<sup>1</sup> Tissot (French physician), *J. de physiol. et de patholog. générale*, vol. 6, p. 688, 1904.

<sup>2</sup> Carpenter, T. M. (Nutrition Laboratory, Boston, Mass.), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 55, p. xix (Proceedings), 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Henderson, Y. (Yale University, New Haven, Conn.), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 33, p. 31, 1918.

the valve being open to the outer air. The subject is instructed to inhale and exhale regularly several times before the valve is closed. The latter is closed<sup>1</sup> at the end of an inspiration and the patient then inhales from the open air and exhales into the bag for from eight to ten minutes.<sup>2</sup> At the end of this time the valve is opened, thus permitting the patient to exhale into the open air and at the same time closing the bag. The mouthpiece is removed and the bag is then attached to the gas-meter. Pass several hundred mls. of the respired air through the meter, then collect a sample of the gas for analysis



Fig. 175.—Newcomer modification of the metabolism apparatus of Haldane and others. Respired air is collected in the Douglas bag, the volume of air determined by the ordinary gas-meter and analyzed on the Haldane gas-analysis apparatus. Sampling tubes are seen suspended from the wall. See Newcomer, H. S. (Phipps Institute, Philadelphia), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 47, p. 489, 1921.

in the Henderson apparatus. The total amount of gas in the bag is determined by continuing the passage of the gas through the meter. The sampler, working by a mercury level, is attached to the Henderson apparatus and the  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$  are determined by the ordinary procedure of the gas-analysis apparatus; oxygen from a given volume of the sample air is absorbed by pyrogallol and  $\text{CO}_2$  by moist soda lime, or other absorbent. The volume of the gas in the sampler is known and the total volume has been determined by the gas-meter. By

<sup>1</sup> An attendant closes the valve without the knowledge of the subject, in order to avoid subjective effects.

<sup>2</sup> In the author's experience, eight minutes is the average optimum time for the collection of respiratory air; beyond this time, the subject becomes restless and begins to feel aware of the unusual procedure.

simple calculation the gaseous exchange for the period of eight or ten minutes is found. It is necessary, for comparison, to make an analysis of the air of the room from which the Douglas bag was

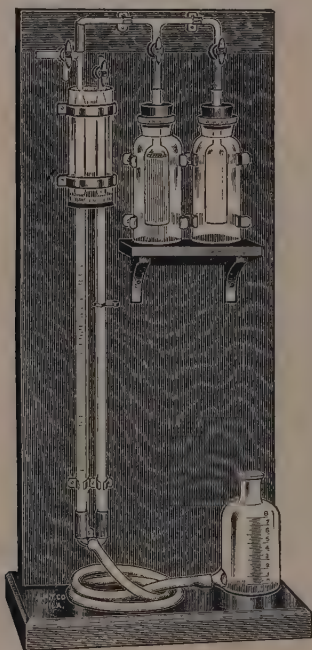


Fig. 176.—Henderson modification of the Orsat apparatus for analysis of respired air. Oxygen is determined by absorption from a small, known volume of the air, by means of phosphorus sticks in the left-hand absorption bottle and  $\text{CO}_2$  by absorption in the right-hand bottle. For more critical work, see apparatus in Fig. 177.

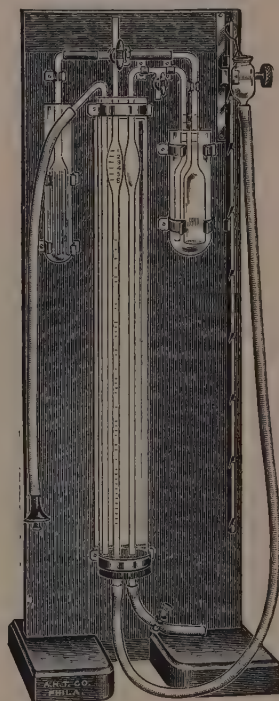


Fig. 177.—Improved form of gas-analysis apparatus; Henderson's modification of the Haldane instrument. Compare Fig. 176.

inflated at the beginning of the collection; or, if the air is obtained directly from a free atmosphere, the following data may be used:

Oxygen concentration of air, 20.93 mls. per 100 mls. of air.

Carbon dioxide concentration, 0.3 ml. per 100 mls. of air.

Oxygen may be used in place of air.

*Spirometer Method.*—In this method the bag is replaced by a spirometer of large dimensions, from which the patient takes oxygen



either in the form of pure oxygen or as air. He inhales and exhales into the spirometer. The rest of the procedure is the same as for the first method.

*Method by Oxygen Utilization.*—Principle: By this method the amount of oxygen utilized by the subject from a spirometer full of

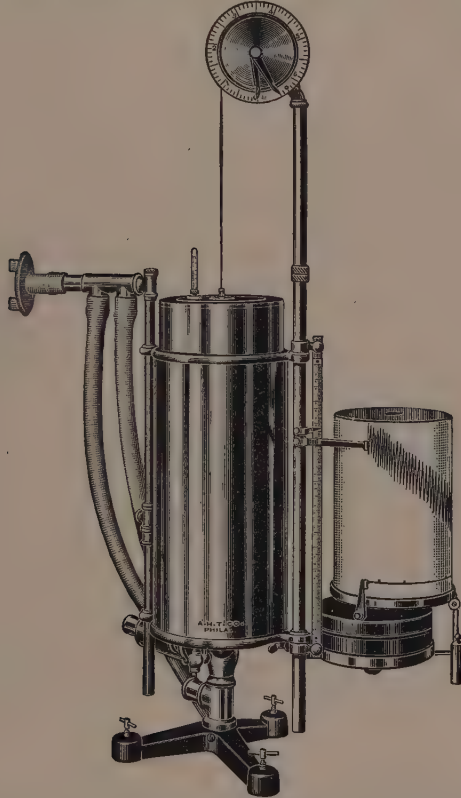


Fig. 178.—The Roth modification of the Benedict basal metabolism apparatus. This instrument avoids the use of an electric blower for circulating the gas through apparatus and also incorporates a means of graphically recording the findings on a kymograph (right). The mouthpiece is shown attached to the arm extending to the left. The spirometer is the large cylinder in the middle of the picture, with its bell floating in water.

oxygen from an oxygen cylinder is determined for a given period of time. A circuit of the gas is maintained by means of a respiratory valve from the spirometer to the mouthpiece and thence through the soda lime absorber which may be either within the spirometer or outside. Finally, the current of gas is returned to the spirometer.



The soda lime takes up both  $\text{CO}_2$  and water-vapor from the circulating gas and, therefore, the contents of the spirometer remain as pure oxygen gas. An index, graduated in milliliters on the outside of the spirometer, enables one to read the volume of oxygen placed in the spirometer and also the content at the end of the run. The difference indicates the amount of oxygen utilized by the subject for the period of the determination, or a graphic record is obtained from the use of a kymograph (Fig. 178).

Procedure for the *Roth* Method: With the subject lying comfortably on his back, wheel up the calorimeter, and by means of the adjustable arm bring the mouthpiece directly over the subject's mouth. Adjust the mouthpiece with the flanges within the subject's cheeks. Have him inspire and expire for about two minutes, and then, at the end of an expiration, open the valve in order to permit him to breathe from the spirometer. Note the time. At each expiration note that the spirometer does not return to the mark at which it rested at the beginning of the previous inspiration; oxygen is being utilized and the  $\text{CO}_2$  from the breath is being absorbed by the soda-lime. If the subject becomes restive, the run may be discontinued. Terminate the run on the even minute for ease of calculation. Read off the volume of  $\text{O}_2$  utilized from the spirometer and the temperature from the thermometer. Enter these data in your note-book. Calculations will be made later (page 610). If the kymograph is used, one revolution of the drum is made in fifteen minutes, or 33 mms. per minute.

The following description applies to the apparatus known as the Sanborn instrument, which is a modification of the Benedict<sup>1</sup> apparatus; this was described in the *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*, vol. 178, page 667, 1918.<sup>2</sup>

Procedure: Testing the apparatus: Open the valve leading to the mouthpiece and elevate the floating cylinder of the spirometer to 7000 mls., indicated on the graduated scale. Place two 100-g. weights on top of the cylinder, one on either side of the center, and close the valve. The cylinder should remain stationary. If it does not, submerge each part of the tubing and its connections under water to determine where the leak is; in the instrument provided with a cir-

<sup>1</sup> F. G. Benedict (page 23).

<sup>2</sup> Two main changes have been made: (1) Removing the motor to the outside of the spirometer, and (2) enclosing the absorber within the spirometer. See *Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.*, vol. 183, p. 449, 1920.

culating pump<sup>1</sup> there is frequently trouble of this sort. Having repaired the leak, empty the cylinder, and fill with oxygen through the small bibb-cock below the spirometer.

The remainder of the procedure is like that of the Roth apparatus (Fig. 178).

*The Graphic Method.<sup>2</sup> Method of Krogh.<sup>3</sup>*—The apparatus is a rocking spirometer,<sup>4</sup> with an index attached to record the fall of the spirometer bell as oxygen is used by the subject. The pointer writes on a kymograph-paper. In the spirometer are placed 8 kgs. of moist

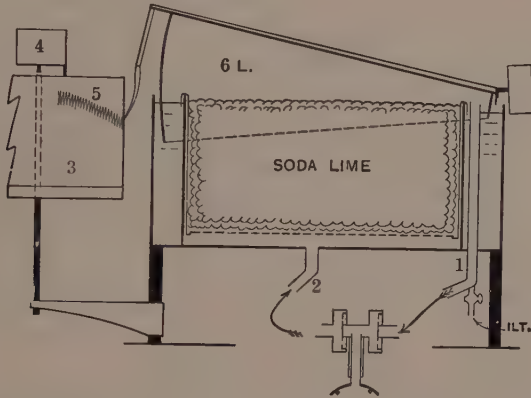


Fig. 179.—Krogh's calorimeter. The hinged compartment 6L. replaces the spirometer of the methods described on pages 599 and 600. A kymograph, 5 to 3, serves the same purpose as that in the Roth apparatus (page 599). The mouth-piece for the patient is connected with Tubes 1 and 2, below. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is removed by means of the soda lime. Oxygen gas is admitted to the apparatus through 1LT. (From DuBois, "Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease," Lea & Febiger, Publishers.)

soda lime for absorbing the  $\text{CO}_2$ , this amount being adequate for several hundreds of analyses. The gas is absorbed from the spirom-

<sup>1</sup> The Roth apparatus first described is a modification of the Benedict form; in former, respiratory valves are substituted for the rotary blower. See Boston Med. and Surg. Jour., vol. 186, p. 457, 1922; vol. 186, p. 491; vol. 189, p. 551.

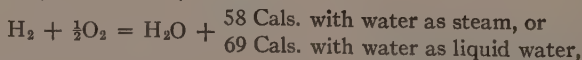
<sup>2</sup> The Roth method utilizes a chronokymograph, a rotary cylinder upon which a pen writes, thus indicating the excursions of the spirometer cylinder.

<sup>3</sup> A. Krogh (Copenhagen; Nobel-prizeman in physiology, 1923), Wiener klin. Wochenschr., volume for 1922, No. 13. See also Boston Med. and Surg. Jour., vol. 189, p. 313, 1923. The original description was in the Skandinavisches Arch. f. Physiol., vol. 27, p. 100, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> The principle of the spirometer is that of Gad; see figure in Brubaker, A. P., Text-book of Physiology, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 8th ed., 1925, p. 431.

eter, passes to the subject, and thence is breathed back into the soda lime. The kymograph rotates at the uniform speed of 20 mms. per minute. Records are made in ink. At the beginning of the run 5 liters of pure oxygen are added to the spirometer through the tap attached to the pipe leading to the spirometer. The gas-mask or mouthpiece leading from the spirometer is fitted to the subject and the run is started. The first five minutes are disregarded, owing to the abnormally high oxygen absorption due to the rise of  $O_2$  content in the spirometer. The run is made for about ten minutes. As before, the temperature, barometric pressure, and oxygen consumed are entered into the note-book. The last item is obtained from the paper, which is removed from the drum. The ten-minute period, indicated by vertical lines, is exactly 200 mms. long. A scale, calibrated in liters of oxygen, accompanies the apparatus. The scale is applied to the vertical line and the reading is taken. Then apply to the second vertical line, and the difference gives the amount of  $O_2$  consumed during the run.

**What Substances Produce Heat Energy?**—This question was answered by Lavoisier,<sup>1</sup> who used a small ice-calorimeter<sup>2</sup> capable of holding an experimental animal. The amount of ice melted by the animal after a certain interval (ten hours) gave the data necessary for determining how many calories of heat pass from the animal within that time. By considering that carbon was burned and gave rise to that energy, Lavoisier was able to account for only 81 per cent. of the total amount, but by considering that hydrogen was burned, likewise, he arrived at 96 per cent. of the theoretical amount. We know now that heat coming from an organism is due to the burning of carbon to  $CO_2$  and the oxidation of hydrogen to  $H_2O$ . If simply elementary carbon and hydrogen were burned, we could at once state the amount of heat arising from the burning of these elements, but our foods do not furnish just C and  $H_2$ ; the carbon and hydrogen of our foods are in the form of compounds like glucids, lipids, and proteins. Also, decomposition accompanies oxidation. Now all atomic oxidations are exothermic, that is, heat is given off whenever an atom unites with oxygen, thus:



<sup>1</sup> Page 21.

<sup>2</sup> See Mathews, page 283.

but reactions in which compounds are oxidized, decomposition of the reacting compounds frequently necessitates adding heat from without and this part of the reaction is endothermic. Then, when oxidation occurs, heat is given off, but it is necessary to subtract the heat which had to be supplied to decompose the substance prior to oxidation. Moreover, there is the specific dynamic action of the foods<sup>1</sup> discussed on page 553. Altogether, as a basis of indirect calorimetry it is necessary to determine by actual experiment the yield in calories of food substances. For the three typical foods:

	Calories.
1 g. glucid as starch yields.....	4.116 <sup>2</sup>
1 g. lipid yields.....	9.353
1 g. protid yields.....	4.124 <sup>3</sup>

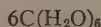
By comparing these figures with the theoretical calculated from food calorimetric determinations, the "anomaly" can be found.

The **respiratory quotient** depends upon the character of the metabolism. By means of it the character of metabolism is determined. We shall discuss the R/Q for the three typical food materials:

(1) *The R/Q for Glucids.*—Glucose is taken as a basis for consideration:



or we may express it:



It is evident that if glucose is burned, only 6 atoms of carbon will require oxygen from without, because intramolecular oxidation of the hydrogen by the oxygen contained in the molecule will take place. Six CO<sub>2</sub> molecules are formed on oxidation of the carbon, that is:



Therefore:

$$\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} = 1.$$

<sup>1</sup> In thermochemistry any external effect upon a thermochemical equation is known as an anomaly, and in biochemistry the term "protein anomaly" is encountered, meaning that some factor other than stoichiometry is involved.

<sup>2</sup> Slater, W. K. (University of Manchester, Manchester, England), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 18, p. 621, 1924. 1 g. of pure glycogen from the French clam gives 3.836 Cals.

<sup>3</sup> About 5.5 when burned outside the body; the difference is due to the fact that the body does not completely oxidize the nitrogenous part of the molecule; see page 587.

The respiratory quotient for glucids is therefore unity.

Another simple method of calculation may be given: Taking starch:



Since 1 molecular weight  $\approx$  22.4 liters,<sup>1</sup>

$$6\text{O}_2 = 6 \times 22.4 \text{ liters, or } 134.5 \text{ liters.}$$

Likewise:

$$6\text{CO}_2 = 6 \times 22.4 \text{ liters, or } 134.5 \text{ liters.}$$

$$\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} = \frac{134.5}{134.5} = 1, \text{ the R/Q for glucids.}$$

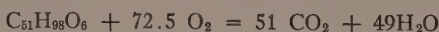
Whenever the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  excreted equals the volume of oxygen consumed for the same period, as determined by one of the methods given above, the subject is utilizing the sugars.

(2) *The R/Q for Lipids.*—Here we shall take, for illustration, a molecule of an unsaturated fat, since these substances seem to be those actually burned in the body:



Taking out as much intramolecular water as the oxygen in the molecule permits, we have  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , utilizing 12 hydrogens, leaving 92 hydrogens to be burned with oxygen furnished from the outside. Oxygen must be furnished to burn 57 carbons. Fifty-seven molecules of oxygen are required to burn the 57 atoms of carbon, and the 92 hydrogens, or 46  $\text{H}_2$  molecules, require an equal number of  $\frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2$  molecules, or 23  $\text{O}_2$  molecules, making, in all, 80 oxygen molecules which have to be furnished to burn the molecule of fat. The R/Q, or  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} = \frac{57}{80} = 0.71$ , the respiratory quotient for lipids.

Or, we may make the calculation according to the actual volumes of gases following the second method given under glucids: Taking the compound,



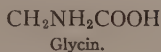
$$\text{R/Q} = \frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} = \frac{51.0 \times 22.4}{72.5 \times 22.4} = \frac{1142.5}{1624.0} = 0.70 + \text{R/Q lipids.}$$

(3) *The R/Q for Protids.*—The respiratory quotient for protids is intermediate between that of glucids and the lipids. The burning

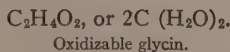
<sup>1</sup> A gram-molecule of any substance in gaseous form occupies the volume of 22.4 liters.



of protid is virtually the oxidation of the amino-acids composing it. Some of the amino-acids, like glycine, have the same R/Q as glucids:

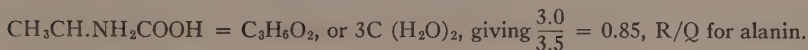


Omitting nitrogen, since glycine is oxidized after deamination<sup>1</sup>:



This gives  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2} = 1$ , R/Q for glycine.

Other amino-acids, like alanine, have a lower R/Q:



Taking the nineteen or twenty amino-acids and averaging their respective quotients in this manner we find the R/Q for protids 0.82.

**Calories from Urinary Nitrogen.**—The calories derived from protids may be determined by collecting the urine, estimating the total nitrogen, and then multiplying the number of grams of nitrogen by the caloric value of 1 g. of urinary nitrogen, 26.51 Cals. One hundred grams of protid when eaten will produce 431.63 Calories,<sup>2</sup> a determination made by direct calorimetry. There are 16.28 gs. of nitrogen in 100 gs. of the average protid; hence, 1 gram of urinary nitrogen gives  $\frac{431.63}{16.28} = 26.51$  Cals.

**Non-protid Calories.**—Subtracting the protid Calories, determined above, from the total number of Calories estimated by any of the calorimetric methods gives the non-protid Calories (sum of Calories from glucids and from lipids). This quantity varies with the R/Q, as shown by the following table from Lusk after Loewy:

1 g. glucid.....	R/Q 1.00	5.047 Cals. per liter O <sub>2</sub>
1 g. lipid.....	R/Q 0.70	4.686 Cals. per liter O <sub>2</sub>

We are now in position to understand why the respiratory quotient varies with the different kinds of food: The oxygen present in the molecule in proportion to the carbon and hydrogen determines the respiratory quotient. Consequently, the amount of oxygen utilized

<sup>1</sup> Page 528.

<sup>2</sup> This amount of protid, when burned in a food calorimeter, yields 563 Cals., but in the body 131.46 Cals. are lost through the feces and urine.

by the individual is an index of the kind of metabolism occurring in that individual. In clinical diagnosis advantage is taken of this fact.

### BASAL METABOLISM

By the term "basal metabolism" is meant the oxygen utilized by a subject at rest, on a maintenance diet and under normal conditions.<sup>1</sup> In abnormal states, the B. M. R.<sup>2</sup> is raised or lowered over the expected normal. The expected normal is estimated in terms of body characteristics. An increase or decrease in B. M. R. of 15 per cent. or more from the expected normal is considered pathognomonic.

**The Determination of Basal Metabolism.**—Basal metabolism may be determined by any of the methods outlined above, direct or indirect. In either case, it is necessary to have a standard normal for reference. *The standard normal is expressed in terms of unit body surface, but age, sex, and other conditions are factors.* The actively metabolic mass determines the Calories. The metabolism of a mouse is actually much less than that of an elephant, but proportionately, comparing the body surfaces, the two are quite similar. Estimated in terms of square meters of body surface, or fractions thereof, the heat production of "warm blooded"<sup>3</sup> animals is similar.

TABLE (AFTER LUSK FROM VOIT) SHOWING THE HEAT PRODUCTION IN DIFFERENT ANIMALS IN TERMS OF SQUARE METERS OF BODY SURFACE

	Kilos.	Calories.
Mouse, weighing.....	0.018	1188
Chicken.....	2.000	947
Dog (large).....	51.500	1039
Pig.....	128.000	1078
Infant on breast.....	5.000	1221
Human dwarf.....	6.600	1231
Man, adult.....	64.300	1042
Dog (fasting).....	12.000 (estim.)	1112
Man, adult (fasting).....	50.000 (estim.)	1134

The metabolism of different animals estimated in Calories per square meters of body surface per day averages about 1100 Calories, or

<sup>1</sup> Krogh (see page 601) prefers "standard metabolism"; see Krogh.

<sup>2</sup> Basal metabolic rate, measured by the oxygen utilization per hour per standard reference, *i. e.*, square meter of body surface.

<sup>3</sup> Animals lacking the thermostat regulator, the so-called "cold-blooded" animals, or poikilothermal forms (varying temperature), behave differently. See Murlin, p. 521.

45.85 Cals. per hour. The average heat production per square meter of body surface per hour is 40 Calories, since there are times in the twenty-four hours when the metabolism is much above B. M. R. In man this is true for the adult. In the young, there is an increase from birth to five years which is somewhat compensated for by a fall appearing at five years and progressing until death.

*Measurement of Body Surface.*—Obviously, the measurement of the surface of such an irregular body as that of an animal is not easily



Fig. 180.—Method of estimating surface area by direct method. A cretin, Benny L., and his surface mold. (DuBois.)

accomplished. The method proposed by French investigators was improved by DuBois,<sup>1</sup> who dressed his subjects in union suits and then pasted over this underwear strips of paper which did not stretch nor contract; then the suits were cut up and laid out flat, photographed, and the photographic reproductions weighed and the weights compared with that of photographic paper representing known area. By this means, Du Bois found a formula whereby the height and

<sup>1</sup> DuBois, E. F. (Medical Director, Russell Sage Institute of Pathology, New York, N. Y.), Arch. Int. Med., vol. 15, p. 868, 1915.

weight of the subject when modified by certain constants, could be expressed in terms of body surface, the formula being:

$$A = W^{0.425} \times H^{0.725} \times C,$$

where

A is the area (sq. cm.).

W is the weight in kilos.

H is the height in centimeters.

C is a constant, numerical value, 71.84.

By means of this formula, knowing the height and weight of the subject, the surface area may be calculated with an error of about  $\pm 1$  per cent. A closer approximation, however, may be made by using the Harris-Benedict equation, which differentiates men and women:

For men:  $66.4730 + (13.7516 \times \text{weight}) + (5.0033 \times \text{height}) - (6.755 \times \text{age})$ .

For women:  $655.0955 + (9.5634 \times \text{weight}) + (1.8496 \times \text{height}) - (4.6756 \times \text{age})$ .

This method gives results about 4 per cent. lower than the DuBois' results. It is best used with an average subject.

**Relation of Oxygen Consumption to Basal Metabolism.**<sup>1</sup>—The amount of oxygen utilized by the respiration of the subject<sup>2</sup> is determined by one of the methods given above. The problem remains to convert it into Basal Metabolic Rate. Let us assume that the figure obtained is for ten minutes. The utilization rate per minute is 0.1 of the whole amount of O<sub>2</sub> used from the spirometer, or equivalent. Again, since such determinations may be made at Atlantic City (barometric average, 760 mms. Hg), at Denver (bar. average, 640 mms.), or elsewhere, it is essential to the comparison of oxygen utilization that the volume of O<sub>2</sub> be reduced to standard conditions, 760 mms. Furthermore, since a gas volume varies with the temperature, this correction must be made. The two quantities, pressure and temperature, may be reduced to standard conditions simultaneously by the following equation:

$$\frac{P_1 V_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2 V_2}{T_2},$$

where  $P_1 V_1$  are the standard pressure and volume sought at standard temperature,  $T_1$ , expressed on the absolute scale (zero being  $-273^\circ \text{C.}$ );  $P_2 V_2$  represent the pressure by barometer when the determination is

<sup>1</sup> See Boothby and Sandiford, and also DuBois.

<sup>2</sup> Page 595.

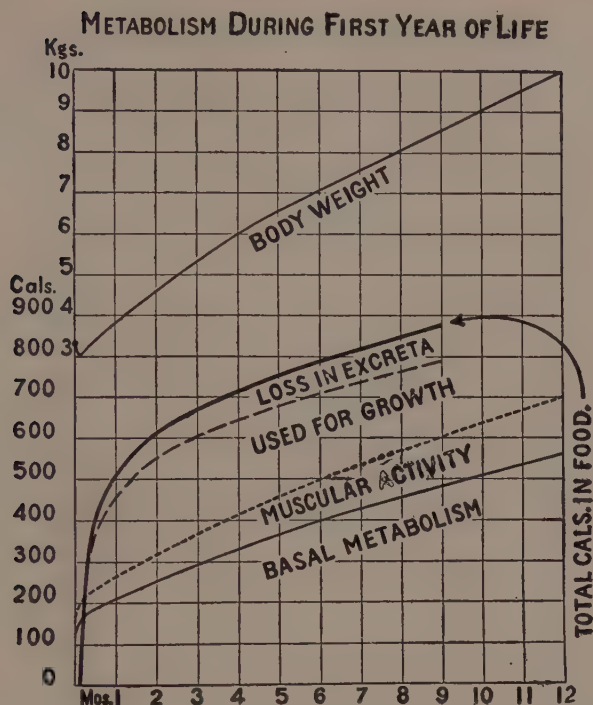


Fig. 181.—Chart showing metabolism during first year of life. (Talbot, Amer. Jour. Dis. of Child., vol. 17, Chart 2, p. 231, 1919.)

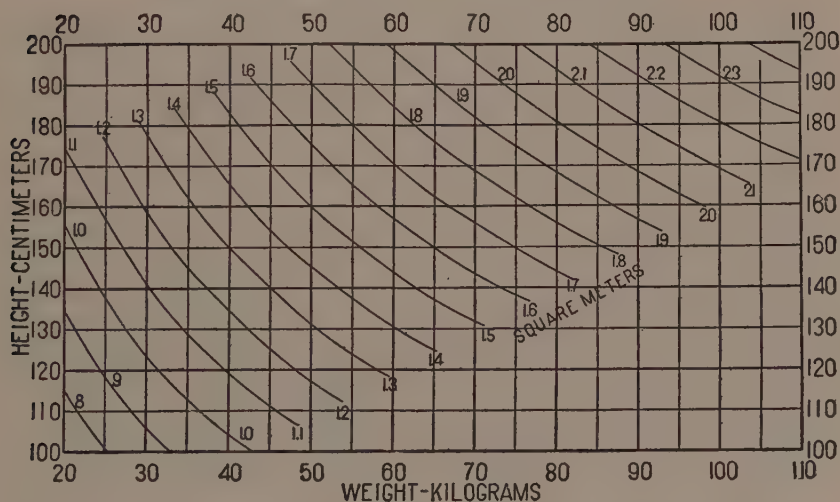


Fig. 182.—DuBois chart for determining surface area of man in square meters from weight in kilograms (Wt.) and height in centimeters (Ht.) according to the formula: Area (Sq. cm.) =  $Wt.^{0.425} \times Ht.^{0.725} \times 71.84$ . (DuBois.)



made and the volume observed on the scale of the spirometer; and  $T_2$ , the temperature on the thermometer attached to the spirometer, expressed in degrees Centigrade + 273. By solving for  $V_1$ , the volume of oxygen absorbed is expressed in standard volume.<sup>1</sup> Considering the subject to be upon an average maintenance diet, where the respiratory quotient is 0.84, 1 liter of oxygen used is equivalent to the expenditure of 4.85 Cals.<sup>2</sup> of energy. For one hour this amounts to sixty times as much. Then:

$$\text{Calories per hour} = \text{Number of mls. O}_2 \text{ used} \times 60.$$

For the comparison of different individuals, some large, some small, it is necessary to express this quantity in square meters of body surface. This is done by solving the equation on page 608 (top) and then we have the necessary data for determining the basal metabolic rate (B. M. R.):

$$\frac{\text{Calories found as above}}{\text{Square meters body surface}} = \text{B. M. R. (calories per square meter per hour)}.$$

B. M. R. is recorded as percentage above or below a standard expected from the height-weight and other data for the subject. This is determined by the following:

- (1) If the expected rate is more than the rate found:

$$\text{Per cent. B. M. R.} = \frac{\text{Expected rate} - \text{rate found}}{\text{Expected rate}} \text{ gives } - \text{ per cent.}$$

- (2) If the expected rate is less than the rate found:

$$\text{B. M. R.} = \frac{\text{Rate found} - \text{expected rate}}{\text{Expected rate}} \text{ gives } + \text{ per cent.}$$

When the protid is not involved in this determination it is assumed that there may be variation either above or below the expected normal of 15 per cent., without being pathognomonic. If the subject is a man aged forty-five, the normal standard B. M. R. is about 38.5 Cals. per sq. cm. per hour, and if his B. M. R. proves to be 43.6 Cals., his percentage B. M. R. is  $\frac{43.6 - 38.5}{38.5} = +0.13$ , or 13 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> Other corrections for nitrogen of the air, respired air, etc., are discussed on page 84 of Boothby.

<sup>2</sup> This is exclusive of the "non-protid" R/Q, which amounts to 0.3, and hence is unimportant.

**Normal Standards.**—The chart of DuBois on page 609, Fig. 182, gives at a glance the surface corresponding to the weight of the subject in kilograms and the height in centimeters. Thus, if one enter the table

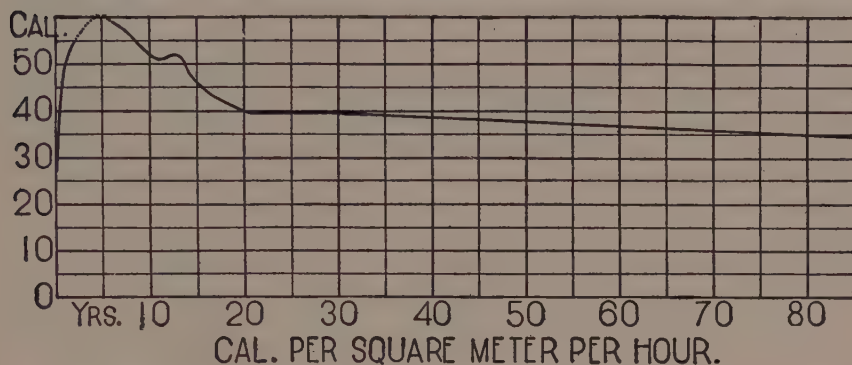


Fig. 183.—Basal metabolism, as measured in Calories, produced per square meter of body surface per hour from birth until the age of eighty-five years in human males. Between maturity and the eighty-fifth year there is a gradual fall in the intensity of metabolism of 13 per cent. (Du Bois.)

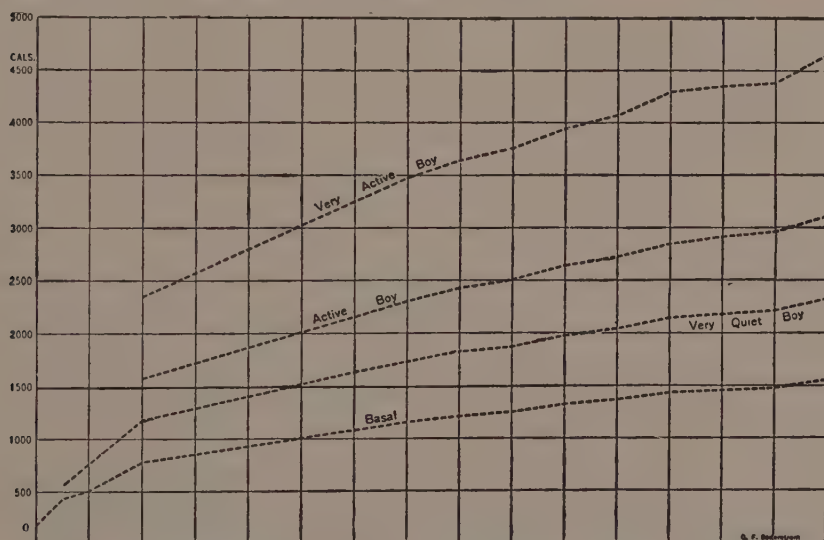


Fig. 184.—Comparative estimates of physiological needs for food of growing boys and girls. Ordinates, Cals., abscissæ, years. (Lusk, *Jour. of Home Econ.*, Baltimore, vol. 10, p. 281, 1919.)

with the data of a male adult 177.5 cms. in height and 63.5 kilos in weight, his body surface is 1.75 sq. m. A normal person will give for this extent of surface about 70 Cals. per hour, which, reduced to

1 sq. m. per hour, gives 40 Cals. This figure is the same as was found from the total Calories in twenty-four hours estimated by oxygen consumption,<sup>1</sup> but in that case we specified an "adult man." The expected normal varies with age as well as with surface; hence, three factors must enter the determination of the expected normal: Height, weight, and age. Normal standards have been worked out for various combinations by various investigators,<sup>2</sup> notably Benedict and his colleagues, and the tables are reproduced in the accompanying pages<sup>3</sup>; there are also tables by DuBois, which were published earlier.<sup>4</sup>

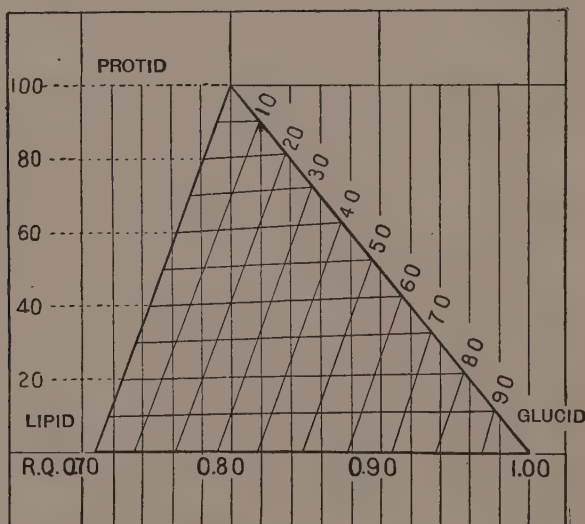


Fig. 185.—Du Bois chart for obtaining percentage of Calories from different classes of food substances, when the Respiratory Quotient and the number of Calories derived from protid food are known. Example:  $R/Q = 0.82$ ; Cals. from protid, 18 per cent. Then: Percentage Cals. from glucids = 35 per cent.; from fat, 53 per cent. (From Du Bois, *Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease*. Lea & Febiger, Publishers.)

*Use of the Tables.*—In order to predict the expected Calories per hour for adult males, enter Table A with the weight expressed in

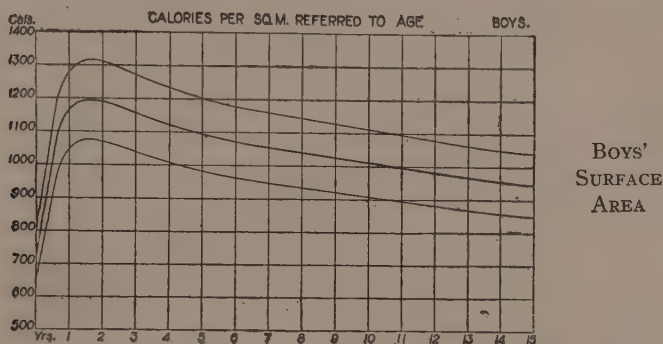
<sup>1</sup> Page 607.

<sup>2</sup> See *Lancet* (British medical publication), vol. 199, p. 289, 1920, article by Dreyer.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix. See Carnegie Institution Publication Number 279. Washington Carnegie Institution of Washington, 1919. Also Number 303, 1921. For data concerning girls see *Boston Med. Surg. Jour.*, vol. 188, p. 127, 1923. (See Carpenter.)

<sup>4</sup> See Du Bois.

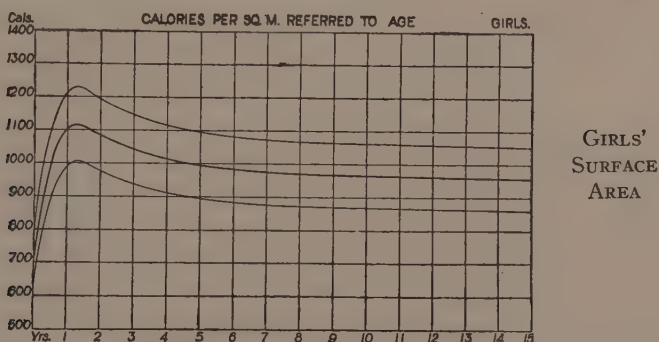
kilos and find the corresponding Calories. Then enter Table B with the height expressed in centimeters and find the corresponding Calories. Add Calories from A to those from B. For adult females, use Tables A and C in a similar manner. For boys, use Table D. For girls, use Table E or Table F. Dreyer's table (G) gives the data



High, medium, and low metabolism, boys. Per surface area. (After Talbot.)

for adult males; the same table may be used for small females if 10 per cent. be subtracted from the corresponding male Calories.

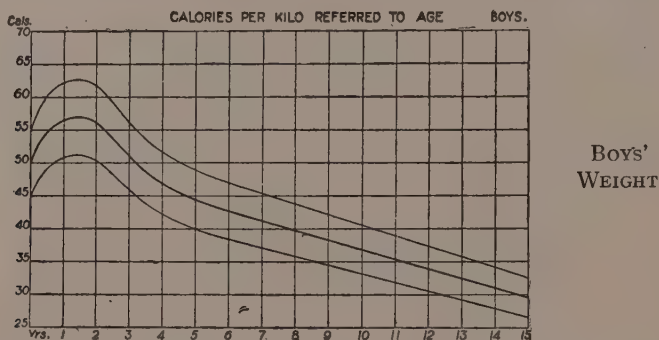
**Normal Variations in Basal Metabolic Rate.**—As stated above, the B. M. R. may vary about 15 per cent. on either side of the normal standard without indicating a pathological state. Attention has al-



High, medium, and average metabolism, girls. Per surface area. (After Talbot.)

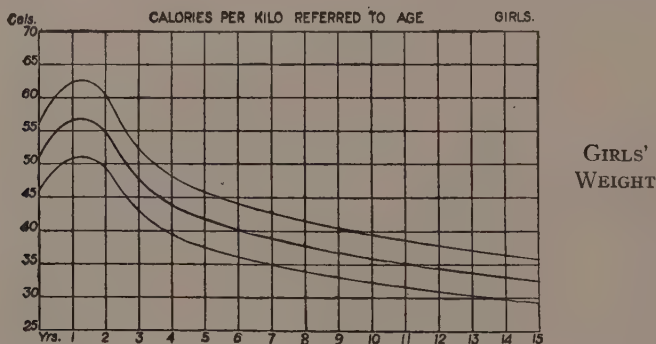
ready been directed to the variation in sex and in age. As a rule, the female B. M. R. runs 7 per cent. less than that of the male. The variation in age is given in the graphs on pages 613 and 614. From birth to about three to five years the metabolism increases, then falls until old

age. During a day's period at different ages the variations are characteristic. For the male and female, alike, the greatest daily variation occurs between forty-two and fifty-two years. In the female this is a period of profound bodily change, involving structure and function.



High, medium, and low metabolism, boys. Per weight. (After Talbot.)

The variation from basal metabolism during the period of growth is shown in the graphs on pages 609 and 611. The actual energy requirements over basal rate are shown in Fig. 184 for boys of different temperament, and it will be noted that the energy requirement of a



High, medium, and low metabolism, girls. Per weight. (After Talbot.)

very active boy of nine is so increased that his B. M. R. equals that of an adult male (3700 Cals.).

In fasting, the B. M. R. is strikingly constant, as the following table of the metabolism of a professional faster shows (after Lusk<sup>1</sup>):

<sup>1</sup> Lusk, page 87.



## METABOLISM OF CETTI IN STARVATION

Fasting days.	Protid.	Fat.	Calories from protid.	Calories from fat.	Calories, total.	Calories per kilo.
1 to 4.....	85.88	136.72	329.8	1288.2	1618	29.00
5 to 6.....	69.58	131.30	267.3	1237.4	1504	28.38
7 to 8.....	66.30	149.35	254.7	1407.3	1662	31.74
9 to 10.....	67.96	132.38	261.1	1247.4	1508	29.26

Not only is this statement true for man, but for animals in general. The amount of protid in the food determines the level of metabolism as determined in Calories. Thus, in an experiment of Rubner, quoted by Lusk, in which a dog, previously on low protid diet, was fed much meat for several days, the Calories increased and when the protid was withdrawn, the metabolism continued on the elevated plane:

TABLE SHOWING THE INCREASE IN METABOLISM ON ADDITION OF PROTID TO THE DIET<sup>1</sup>

Calories in meat ingested.	N retained by body.	Carbon retained by body.	Total Calories of metabolism.
0 .....	-1.31	....	310.61
0 .....	-1.52	....	278.00
481.5.....	3.95	2.97	311.43
481.5.....	2.80	3.70	333.82
481.5.....	2.30	1.61	368.41
481.5.....	2.20	2.53	361.70
481.5.....	0.92	4.45	375.47
481.5.....	0.20	4.31	395.77
0 .....	-3.70	....	357.20
0 .....	-2.64	....	310.29

Fat, when given alone, exerts a specific dynamic action, as we have said on page 555, the extra metabolism being solely due to fat, If fat be given with protid, however, there is no increase in metabolism, even if there is such an excess of fat over body requirements as to lead to fat deposition.<sup>2</sup> This fact is borne out when the metabolism of a fat subject is compared with that of a lean one, for, although the total metabolism is greater in the case of the fat individual, yet when estimated as Calories per hour per unit of body surface, the metabolism of the two subjects is similar. We have previously referred

<sup>1</sup> Note that nitrogenous equilibrium is reached on the first day of protid feeding, and that, as the carbon shows, there is a storage of organic substances.

<sup>2</sup> In this case the specific dynamic action of fat does not become evident.

to the fact that fat is metabolically inert and may increase the total surface, but not the metabolically active substance.

The **starches** and **sugars**, as we have shown, when fed in "plethora" amounts, **exert a specific dynamic action**, increasing metabolism. This action is greatest when glucids are not immediately utilized; an excellent illustration is fructose, which is less readily retained in the glycogen-forming organs, and hence passes to the tissues, where it protects the fat and leads to increased production of energy. One hundred grams of fructose cause 10 per cent. more energy development than an equal amount of glucose, and the respiratory quotient shows that the fructose is converted into fat. Glucose causes an increase in Calories of 9 per cent., due to its own combustion, as indicated by the Respiratory Quotient:

Minutes.		Percentage increase over B. M. R.
	<i>100 gs. glucose by mouth, R/Q after</i>	
60.....	0.91	3
120.....	0.89	11
180.....	0.88	9
240.....	0.90	6
	<i>200 gs. of glucose by mouth, R/Q after</i>	
60.....		
120.....	0.92	24
180.....	0.93	16
240.....	0.95	8
300.....	1.00	7

Fructose, on the other hand, causes an increase in Calories because it is more readily converted into fat, and the fat burns, giving larger amounts of heat. Glucids, when fed with protids, cause increased development of Calories. Thus, 50 gs. of glucose plus 20 gs. of the amino-acid glycine, produce the same amount of heat as 66 gs. of glucose fed alone, involving an increase in Calories of 53 per cent., which is more than the 66 gs. of glucose alone produce. Glucids fed with lipids cause increased heat production, but only to the extent that each of the substances would do if fed separately. The R/Q being less than unity (0.93), indicates that fat and glucose are burned at the same time. It is immaterial whether fat or sugar is the diet as far as metabolism is concerned.<sup>1</sup>

**Insulin** causes an increase in B. M. R. only<sup>2</sup> when it induces hypo-

<sup>1</sup> See, however, page 560 regarding fatigue.

<sup>2</sup> Boothby, W. M., and Weiss, R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. i (Proceedings), 1925.

glycemic convulsions, *i. e.*, blood-sugar 0.069 g. per 100 mls. blood, in the case of Boothby and Wilder. Hitherto, reports have been made to the effect that insulin augmented the B. M. R., but Boothby finds that  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination is increased on administering insulin, because it reduces the  $\text{CO}_2$ -combining power of the blood; the result is that the numerator of the ratio  $\frac{\text{CO}_2}{\text{O}_2}$  is increased, which brings the quotient nearer unity. Hence, it is impossible to conclude that insulin causes an increased respiratory quotient, or augmented B. M. R. when there is an increased elimination of  $\text{CO}_2$ .

The **effect of muscle work** on the production of heat is to incite metabolism, and this results in: (1) Greater mechanical work, and (2) greater heat production. It is probable that the second factor aids the first and perhaps causes it; the extra heat produced is at the expense of the fat, the extra mechanical energy at the expense of the glucose. Mechanical work is more efficient on a high diet of glucose than on an increased protid diet. The protid when fed alone to a man at rest causes a similar increase in Calories, due to its Specific Dynamic Action, which is analogous to the increased metabolism of fat and sugar occurring in muscle work. Thus:

A man at rest and fasting produces 1976 Cals.

A man at rest fed 600 gs. sugar produces 2023 Cals., increase 2.4 per cent. over B. M. R.

A man working fed 600 gs. sugar produces 2868 Cals., increase 45.2 per cent. over B. M. R.

A man at rest fed meat in large amount produces 2515 Cals., increase 27.2 per cent. over B. M. R.

A man working fed meat in large amount produces 3370 Cals., increase 70.5 per cent. over B. M. R.

It is evident that the increase in Calories attributable to work is the same for sugar as it is for meat, and that the Specific Dynamic Action of the meat alone causes an increase in Calories nearly as great as that due to muscle work (2868 Cals., compared with 2515 Cals.).

The **effect of outside temperature and of clothing on the heat production** during exercise is negligible. The only effect attributable to these factors is the interference with heat loss, which is evident in fat subjects in whom fat inhibits the loss of heat from the skin; consequently, when outside temperature rises to nearly blood temperature ( $37^\circ \text{C.}$ ), metabolism rises and heat is not lost rapidly enough.

**Effort or strain** does not affect the heat production of the body nor

do nervous effects attributable to fatigue cause any augmentation. However, after prolonged exercise, the metabolism is on a higher plane, even during rest, but the more accustomed a subject is to muscle effort, the sooner will his metabolism descend to the normal; this is a test applied in the evaluation of men for the army.

**Beverages**, like tea, coffee and cocoa, do not cause an increase in metabolism unless fortified with food.

**Size of body** is a factor in the efficiency of muscle exercise, a lean man of small stature requiring a greater expenditure of energy to effect the same amount of work than a lean man of large size. A normal man, weighing 86.5 kilos, walking horizontally expends 0.219 kilogrammeters of energy per kilo of body weight, whereas a man of 65.8 kilos body weight requires an expenditure of 0.230 kilogrammeters for every kilo of body weight per meter traveled.

**Speed** also influences the degree of energy expended; a normal man moving at an ordinary rate expends more energy proportionately than when walking fast, and the same is true for running. The case just mentioned, where the weight is 86.5 kilos, when moving at an ordinary rate expends 0.219 kilogrammeters per kilo of body weight per meter, but if he move very slowly he expends 0.233 kilogrammeters per meter. A man walking at about 5 miles per hour expends an average of 0.932 small calories per kilo of body weight per meter. Running at 5.3 miles per hour, he expends 0.816 small calories per kilo of body weight per meter.

The **position of the body** is a factor in energy production and should be given careful attention both by the physician in the case of the sick and by the basal metabolism technician. Metabolism determined with the patient in the dorsal position<sup>1</sup> is 0.05 Calorie per minute lower than when he is in a sitting position. If the patient stands while the determination is made, there will be further increase of 0.11 Calorie per minute. However, if the patient leans upon a support, the figures will be the same as those for the sitting posture. The B. M. R. of a soldier at "attention" is 1.99 Calorie per minute higher than his rate would be if taken in the dorsal position.

**Variations in Metabolism Due to Disease.**—*Goiter*.—A person with hyperthyroidism expends much more energy in the performance of a given task than a normal person.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Lying on his back.

<sup>2</sup> See page 553 concerning the relation between thyroid and S. D. A.

	Calories per kgm.
A person normal with respect to thyroid expends.....	1.20
A person having exophthalmic goiter expended.....	2.24
A person having adenoma with hyperthyroidism.....	2.86
A person having myxedema (hypothyroidism).....	1.36

The average B. M. R. in myxedema is  $-28$  per cent.; that in exophthalmic goiter,  $+52$  per cent.; in adenoma with hyperthyroidism,  $+47$  per cent. The effect of thyroidectomy may be determined by comparing the expenditure of energy in walking in a horizontal plane before and after operation. Such a determination gave 2.16 small calories per kilogrammeter before and 1.77 to 1.35 after two weeks following an operation. In hypothyroidism the deviation from the normal B. M. R. is usually more than 15 per cent., and may reach  $-30$  per cent. This permits a laboratory diagnosis based on basal metabolism determination, which is useful in clinical diagnosis of goiter cases. When thyroxin is used it gives 1.008 small calories per milligram of thyroxin, but the effect is delayed and not immediate as in the administration of epinephrin.

*Diabetes Mellitus.*—About 70 per cent. of patients with diabetes mellitus show no abnormality in the B. M. R., but on a high protid diet, or one high in heat producing capacity, metabolism is increased. The increase in metabolism reported by some investigators has been shown by Joslin<sup>1</sup> to be due to the high protid and fat diets. The following figures from Boothby and Sandiford show the distribution of Calories in 61 cases of diabetes mellitus:

	Cases.
Basal M. R. below $-20$ per cent.....	5
From $-20$ to $-16$ .....	3
From $-15$ to $-11$ .....	5
From $-10$ to $+10$ (normal).....	69
From $+11$ to $+15$ .....	13
From $+16$ to $+20$ .....	2
From $+20$ to higher.....	3

The number of cases in which there is a normal B. M. R. ( $-15$  to  $+15$ ), 87 per cent. The effect of insulin on B. M. R. is indirect, causing an increase in utilizable glucose and a stimulation of the conversion of fat into utilizable glucose; more heat is produced. Insulin itself does not cause acceleration of metabolism.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Joslin, E. P., American physician, Harvard University. See *Treatment of Diabetes*, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> In phlorhizinized dogs Ringer (*Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 58, p. 483, 1923) reported that insulin actually caused an increased oxidation of glucose, as witnessed by the increase in R/Q; see, however, page 616.



*Leukemia*.—The B. M. R. is increased in leukemia, which one would scarcely expect, owing to the inactivity caused by muscular asthenia. The explanation that has been given by von Graefe<sup>1</sup> that the increased metabolism in leukemia is due to increased production of new cells is problematic, for, as we shall see, in pregnancy there is but little increase in basal metabolic rate, although production of new cells in the fetus<sup>2</sup> is prolific. The explanation probably lies in the plethora of amino-acids of the blood-stream due to autolysis of leukocytes, or it may lie in the presence of some specific substance stimulating cells to greater metabolism.

*Pregnancy*.—Although there is an abundant formation of new tissue during pregnancy, the metabolism is increased but slightly. The metabolism of a pregnant woman during the ninth month is higher than that during sexual rest, but the increase is due to the fact that two organisms are contributing, mother and child. The metabolism of the pregnant mother is about equivalent to that of the mother a week after delivery plus that of the child on the same date. Thus, it is evident that the effect of pregnancy on metabolism is practically negligible. During menstruation the B. M. R. is usually normal.

*Anemia*.—Blood-letting, following by transfusion to restore the volume of lost blood, causes no abnormal increase in B. M. R. In pathological anemias there is an increase in metabolism in about one-third of the cases, as shown by the following figures (Boothby and Sandiford):

Out of a total of 36 cases:	Per cent.
Below -20.....	3
From -20 to -16.....	0
From -15 to -11.....	3
From -10 to +10 (normal).....	53
From +11 to +15.....	8
From +16 to +20.....	19
From +20 and higher.....	14

Number of cases considered normal (-15 to +15) 64 per cent. Number showing increased metabolism, 36 per cent. As the hemoglobin falls, metabolism rises.

*Nephritis with Edema*.—Since edema increases the body surface

<sup>1</sup> von Graefe, A., German ophthalmologist, thyroid investigator, author of the "von Graefe sign" used in clinical diagnosis with respect to goiter.

<sup>2</sup> The metabolism of the fetus is a part of the general metabolism of mother and fetus.

but not active metabolic mass, water being inactive, the metabolic rate is lower than the expected; oxygen is used to a less extent than the increased body surface calls for. All forms of edema affect the metabolism in a similar manner.

*Obesity* involves somewhat similar factors to edema. Adipose tissue being metabolically inert, but nevertheless increasing body surface, causes a lower metabolism than would be expected from the body measurements. When the outside temperature is lower than blood temperature ( $37^{\circ}\text{C.}$ ), metabolism is lower because of the factor just mentioned, *i. e.*, inertness. As stated before, interference with the loss of heat tends to cause a rise in body temperature which, in turn, affects metabolism and causes increased oxygen consumption.

From the foregoing discussion it is evident that the clinical value of metabolism determinations chiefly centers around the thyroid.

#### SUMMARY

(1) Energy requirements and the dissipation of energy in the body are expressed as heat units, or Calories. Isodynamic foods are those having the same caloric value in nutrition. Other factors than heat value, however, enter into the question of the value of foods in nutrition.

(2) A food calorimeter gives the value of foods when utilized in the body.

(3) This figure, however, is modified by special properties of the different foods, known as their Specific Dynamic Action and their ability to be completely oxidized in the body.

(4) In order to determine the actual value of any food, the energy it gives when burned in the body must be determined.

(5) The two chief means for the estimation of energy expended by the body are: (1) Physical or direct determination, and (2) chemical or indirect; the (2) is determined either by: (a) The amount of energy is estimated from the oxygen used and the products of oxidation appearing after oxidation; or (b) the oxygen utilized, alone, is determined.

(6) Inasmuch as the amount of oxygen necessary to burn the different kinds of food in the body differs according to the food, the relation between the products of oxidation and the oxygen consumed varies with the kind of food.

(7) The quotient of the ratio  $\frac{\text{carbon dioxide exhaled}}{\text{oxygen consumed}}$  is known as the Respiratory Quotient, abbreviated R/Q. For fats the R/Q is 0.70, for glucids 1.0, and for protids 0.82.

(8) Clinically, the oxygen absorbed is expressed in unit of time per unit of surface-extent, sex, and age. This is compared with the normal standards and the per cent. above or below indicates the variation from normal metabolism. A  $\pm 15$  per cent. variation is considered within the normal range.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Benedict, F. G., and collaborators in Carnegie Institution of Washington, Papers published by the Institution, Washington, Carnegie Institution of Washington from 1905 to date. Especially valuable is the paper by Carpenter (see under Carpenter, below).
- Boothby, W. M., and Sandiford, I. Laboratory Manual of the Technic of Basal Metabolic Rate Determinations, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1920.
- Boothby, W. M., and Sandiford, I. Basal Metabolism, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 4, p. 69, 1924.
- Carpenter, T. M. Tables, Factors, and Formulas for Computing Respiratory Exchange and Biological Transformations of Energy, Carnegie Institution of Washington Publications, Number 303. Washington, Carnegie Institution of Washington, 1921.
- Du Bois, E. F. A chart showing graphically the respiratory quotient and the percentage of calories furnished by protein, fat, and carbohydrate, *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 21, p. 62, 1923.
- Du Bois, D., and Du Bois, E. F. Clinical Calorimetry X. A formula to estimate approximate surface area if the height and weight be known, *Arch. Int. Med.*, vol. 17, p. 863, 1916.
- Du Bois, E. F. Basal Metabolism in Health and Disease, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1924.
- Gephart, F. C. Analysis and Cost of Ready-to-serve Foods; a Study in Food Economics, Chicago, Amer. Med. Assoc., 535 North Dearborn Street, 1915. Also published in *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 64, p. 1717, 1915.
- Krogh, M. Respiratory Exchange in Animals, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1921.
- Lusk, G. Elements of the Science of Nutrition, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1919 (new edition, probably 1925).
- Lusk, G. Food and Reconstruction, in America and the New Era, New York, E. P. Dutton & Co., 1920.
- Lusk, G. Articles on Metabolism, in *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1922, vol. 3.
- McCollum, E. V. The Newer Knowledge of Nutrition, New York, The Macmillan Co., 1922.
- Mathews, A. P. Physiological Chemistry, New York, William Wood & Co., 1921.
- Murlin, J. R. In Abt, I. A., *Pediatrics*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1923, vol. 1.
- Roth, P. Modifications of Apparatus and Improved Technic Adaptable to the Benedict Type of Respiration Apparatus, *Boston Med. and Surg. Jour.*, vol. 186, p. 457, 1922.

## CHAPTER XIV

### METABOLIC ADJUVANTS

"Medicine owes no thanks to him who, without proof, would formulate her theories."—*Elliott*, quoted by Hoskins.

**Correlation in the Body.**—The human body, being an organism,<sup>1</sup> all its parts are correlated. There are two great systems which accomplish this correlation: (1) The nervous system, and (2) the chemical system. The chemical system has two parts: (a) The endocrine system,<sup>2</sup> which has to do with the substances produced by organs of the body, and (b) the vitamin system, which is concerned with substances produced by plants. Both systems control substances which are essential to the proper performance of bodily functions. At the present time the function of the vitamin system is not clear, but it is certain that the same fundamental principle is involved in both endocrine and vitamin, namely, the production of substances in one tissue which exert a profound effect upon another tissue. Vitamins have already been referred to,<sup>3</sup> but they will be reviewed here in the light of their practical interest in medicine. It is significant that our knowledge of the vitamins arose through the study of deficiency diseases known as avitaminoses. It must be borne in mind throughout the following discussion that our knowledge of the endocrine and vitamin systems is still too incomplete to warrant formulating a complete theory of their relations to the human body.

It is possible that vitamins are necessary for animals for the same reason that certain substances like iron and manganese are to plants, namely, to stimulate certain reactions which, owing to the specialization, may become reduced or suppressed. An example of a metabolic adjuvant in plants is glucokinkin, the insulin-like substance found by

<sup>1</sup> Greek *organon*, an instrument. An organ is an instrument designed for a given purpose, and the body, or "organism," is an integral unit composed of many organs.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *endon*, within, and *krino*, to separate; that is, a system separating certain substances commonly called internal secretions. Another term synonymous with endocrine is cryptorhetic (Greek *krypto*, hidden, and *reo*, to flow). The substances are synthesized by the body from precursors made by plants.

<sup>3</sup> Page 540.



Collip in many diverse kinds of plants. Plants which contain chlorophyl are able to manufacture their own food substances from inorganic sources. Animals do not contain chlorophyl and the utilization of their foods require green-plant adjuvants. Our recent knowledge of vitamin-like reagents, such as radiated foods, suggests that since the animal has largely lost its power to respond to the action of sunlight, so-called vitamins, or vitamin-carriers, like cod-liver oil must furnish the radiations, or special chemical configurations for human functions. It will be recalled that it is possible to replace the antirachitic vitamin by direct radiation of the human body, in which case we have the condition realized in plants. Our artificial habits of living, either out of the sunlight in houses or in using glass opaque to the effective rays of the sun, lead to "avitaminoses," which are counteracted only by supplying the deficit in some way.

#### AVITAMINOSES

**Beriberi**<sup>1</sup> occurs in the United States principally in hospitals and prisons. It occurs in the Labrador,<sup>2</sup> in Cuba and among the surrounding islands, in the great river regions of South America, the Amazon and Orinoco. In the Orient it is found in China and in parts of other countries in which food is of a limited nature, or has been shipped from long distances. Wherever beriberi appears it is due to the same cause—the monotonous diet of cereal foods in which certain portions of the grains are lacking. In Japan the use of rice which has had the outer layers of the grain removed, leaving practically nothing but starch, is still wide-spread, but the incidence of "kakke," the native name for beriberi, is far less than in former times. In the Labrador the consumption of white bread was formerly high, and when supplemented or wholly replaced by brown bread in the form of whole-wheat or graham bread, the disease largely disappeared. In the United States since 1880, when the milling of white flour began, beriberi has appeared to some extent where the use of white bread and of a diet inadequate in vitamin B is practised. Such cases have been recognized principally in the hospitals for mental defectives, one manifestation of the disease being nervous.

<sup>1</sup> The term signifies "impotence," and while once used to designate what are now known to be different diseases, at present it is confined to the disease described in the above paragraphs.

<sup>2</sup> Through the humanitarian work of Grenfell (English physician) the ravages of this and other diseases have been lessened.



There are *two forms of beriberi*, (1) *wet*, and (2) *dry*. Both involve a Wallerian<sup>1</sup> degeneration. The wet type is so called on account of the edema which occurs owing to the faulty action of the vasomotor nerves controlling the dilatation of the blood-vessels. The dry type is characterized by the paralysis and atrophy of the muscles, due to the lack of nerve supply. This condition is called multiple or polyneuritis.<sup>2</sup> It is for this reason that the vitamin responsible for the disease is called the antineuritic vitamin.

*Cause of Beriberi.*—The disease has been attributed to various causes, but it is now known that it is due to a deficiency of vitamin B. As an index to the amount of vitamin remaining in rice after polishing, the phosphorus, estimated as  $P_2O_5$ , is used. An exclusive diet of

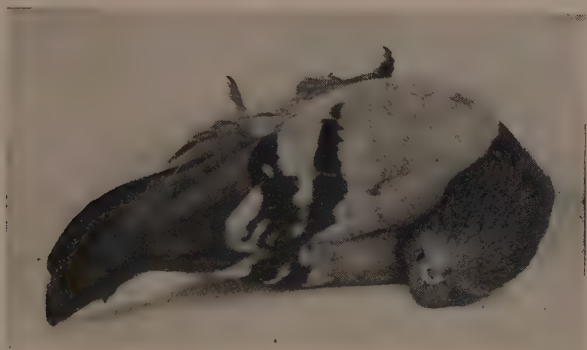


Fig. 186.—Polyneuritis in pigeon fed an exclusive diet of polished rice for three weeks. Compare Fig. 161, showing recovery.

rice having a phosphorus content below 0.4 per cent. is conducive to the production of the disease. The Japanese navy used the nitrogen content instead of the phosphorus as an index, the increase in nitrogen from 16 gs. (which permit beriberi to develop) to 30 gs. per day obviating the development of the disease. The extra nitrogen was added in the form of soy-beans (page 418), which brought in vitamin B.

Beriberi appeared in Japan at the beginning of her period of ex-

<sup>1</sup> Named for the English physician and neurologist, A. V. Waller; when it is desired to follow the course of a nerve tract in an experimental animal, the tract is cut and degeneration of the lipid myelin sheath of the tract takes place, making it possible to stain the preparation differentially and thus to follow the nerves affected to their ganglia. Certain diseases show this phenomenon, beriberi being one.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *polys*, many, and *neuron*, nerve, *itis* standing as the ending of a word agreeing with the word *nosos*, which means illness; see page 265.

pansion in the eighteenth century. In order to maintain large supplies of food capable of being kept for extensive periods of time, rice was polished.<sup>1</sup> During the foreign wars of Japan foods of this nature were necessary. Later, barley was added to the diet of polished rice and the incidence of the disease lessened conspicuously.

Beriberi affected the Roman army during certain campaigns in northern Africa. Later Napoleon, before undertaking similar campaigns, secured the services of the great French chemist, Berthollet, who invented the method of hermetically sealing the containers of foods carried by the army. Thus the disease was obviated.

During the campaign of the British in the Euphrates region (1914-1918) beriberi appeared among the troops, but at present it does not exist in any army.

**Beriberi induced experimentally** in the lower animals and in man is essentially<sup>2</sup> identical with the spontaneous disease. A method for demonstrating the disease in birds is given in Exercise 31, Chapter XVII. Extensive human experiments were made by Crowell and Strong<sup>3</sup> on criminals in the Bilibid Prison, Manila. Twenty-nine prisoners were selected for volunteers and were divided into groups:

Group I. Diet: Polished rice plus special diet plus extract of the polishings. Thirty per cent. developed a mild form of beriberi.

Group II. Diet: As before, but lacking the extract of the polishings. Sixty per cent. developed beriberi.

Group III. Diet: Red rice<sup>4</sup> and special diet. Thirty per cent. developed beriberi of a modified form.

Group IV. Diet: Polished rice and special diet. Forty-five per cent. developed beriberi.

These findings are to be contrasted with the experimental production of polyneuritis as described in Exercise 31. The polishings from the rice do not protect against the disease, nor do they serve as efficiently

<sup>1</sup> A protid which spoils easily is removed from rice by polishing. A similar protid exists in the wheat germ. This is why wheat flour is degerminated.

<sup>2</sup> There are some characteristic differences, as, for instance, those concerned with the nervous system; in experimental beriberi there is more pain and less plantar involvement.

<sup>3</sup> Philippine Jour. Science, Sect. B., vol. 7, Number 4, 1912. Strong, R. P. (Professor of Tropical Medicine, Harvard University). To Professor B. C. Crowell, Director of the Department of Pathology, Jefferson Medical College, the author is indebted for advice concerning questions involving pathology.

<sup>4</sup> Red rice is undermilled rice, retaining the protid layer and some of the pericarp, which contains the salts. It is known in the United States as "brown rice."

in curing it as other substances, such as beans or yeast, unless care be taken to prepare the polishings properly and to keep them from deteriorating. Experimentation on a large scale on the inhabitants of the Philippines under the direction of Victor G. Heiser<sup>1</sup> showed how unpolished rice protected against beriberi.

That **beriberi is a vitamin deficiency disease** was proved by Eijkman,<sup>2</sup> although Grijns<sup>3</sup> had demonstrated that experimental polyneuritis could be checked by adding extract of native beans to the diet of polished rice. Funk<sup>4</sup> first suggested the name vitamin for a definite substance or group of compounds capable of preventing avitaminoses.

**Interrelations of Vitamins and Internal Secretions.**—The fundamental work of McCarrison<sup>5</sup> on experimental animals has shown the effect of avitaminoses on endocrine organs. According to this author, diets deficient in vitamins cause hypertrophy of the adrenals, but atrophy of the thyroid, testicles, and ovary. The thymus is affected, but this organ has not been assigned to the endocrines by all biochemists. The pituitary is not affected. The relation between thyroid and intestinal bacterial flora is demonstrated in these studies, for bacterial infection is favored by hypothyroidism, which, in turn, is induced by diets deficient in vitamin. McCarrison explains the edema of beriberi as due to excess secretion of epinephrin, which increases intercapillary pressure and thus mechanically forces the liquid of the blood into the tissues. Excessive glucid diet with low fat content seems to exert some deleterious effect in beriberi which is explained by McCarrison as occurring through the adrenal glands. This is illustrated in epidemics of beriberi in which subjects who eat the most rice (generally men) suffer first and most intensely. Any glucid, however, produces the same result, for the staples like boiled white potatoes, hominy grits, etc., when used under similar conditions, cause the disease.

<sup>1</sup> Heiser, Victor G., Rockefeller Foundation, New York, N. Y., who was instrumental in developing the great hygienic measures adopted in the Orient, especially in the Philippines, the result of which has been the elimination of many diseases.

<sup>2</sup> Eijkman, C., Dutch investigator, then working in the Dutch East Indies, now Professor of Hygiene, University of Utrecht, The Netherlands.

<sup>3</sup> Grijns, G. (pronounced "hrins"), working also in the Dutch possessions in the East.

<sup>4</sup> Funk, C., Polish investigator, chemical advisor for the Polish Government at Warsau.

<sup>5</sup> Page 573.

**Pellagra.**<sup>1</sup>—This disease is found in the mill villages of our Southern States, where it is of a more dangerous type than anywhere else in the world. It was first described in northern Spain where it existed in the Asturias. It is still found along the river Nero, where it is known as the “mal de la rosa.” Here the inhabitants live largely on corn (maize). In Italy the name “pellagra” was given by Francesco Frapolli of Milan (1771). In the British Isles the disease has been found even as far north as the Shetland Islands. This practically refutes the theory that the disease is due to eating corn, for corn is practically never eaten by the inhabitants of these districts. Moreover, among the North American Indians, who use corn in large quantities (“Indian corn”) in their diet, the disease was unknown until the beginning of the nineteenth century. In the last fifty years, pellagra has been found in the Southern United States among all classes of people and the mortality reached 39 per cent. However, the rate began to fall in 1913 and between 1914 and 1916 fell to 10 per cent.

**Symptoms.**—The disease is manifested by definite symptoms correlated with the season. In winter the nervous system is affected and neurasthenia develops. As spring advances alimentary disturbances arise (stomatitis, eructation, diarrhea). At the same time the skin becomes “sunburned,” but, unlike the typical sunburn, the eruptions are quite symmetrical. They occur on the backs of the hands and on the forearms; also a necklace is formed, known as Casal’s necklace.<sup>2</sup> The disease progresses and, ultimately, the neurasthenia passes into psychoses and insanity. It is the latter condition which called the attention of medical men to the disease in the Southern United States. Extensive observational and experimental studies of pellagra have been made by the United States Public Health Service, the Rockefeller Foundation, and by various public and private investigators. Goldberger<sup>3</sup> and his associates made experiments in 1915 on prisoners, and concluded that the disease was due to protid deficiency. The Thompson-McFadden Commission<sup>4</sup> likewise studied pellagra and their conclusions are incorporated in the statements given below concerning the cause of the disease.

<sup>1</sup> Italian *pella*, skin, and *agra*, rough.

<sup>2</sup> Casal, G., Spanish physician who first described the disease under the name “Rosy Disease,” mentioned above as “mal de la rosa.”

<sup>3</sup> Goldberger, J., Director of the Field Investigations, U. S. Public Health Service.

<sup>4</sup> From the New York Post-Graduate Medical School. The personnel consisted of Siler, Garrison, McNeal, and others.



The *belief that pellagra is a deficiency disease* is favored by the analogy with other diseases of somewhat similar nature, but no definite proof exists that it is an avitaminosis. The prevalent opinion is that vitamin A deficiency weakens the body and favors the development of tuberculosis, etc. The following summary for believing the cause to be a deficiency in the diet, especially of the vitamin, is presented.

(1) Pellagra is a disease of poverty and largely of women. This indicates that diets poor in fresh materials are the rule, a condition well known to students of the disease. Poverty limits the use of fresh foods and the woman deprives herself of the choicer portions of the food.

(2) Pellagra subjects live largely on monotonous diets. In the mill sections of our South the diet is largely composed of canned goods, which are well-known sources of avitaminoses.

(3) The relation between the use of corn in the diet and pellagra is explained by the spoiling of corn, in moulding, and in bacterial action which destroys the vitamins.

(4) The low content of the pellagra diet in substances containing vitamin A signifies that the deficiency is due to the lack of that fat-soluble vitamin.

(5) Conspicuous differences in closely contiguous districts regarding the food substances show that food is a factor. Thus, in upper Egypt, where millet, which is rich in vitamin A, is largely used as a cereal food, pellagra does not occur; whereas, in neighboring districts in which Turkish corn, deficient in this vitamin, forms a large part of the diet, pellagra is common.

(6) The islands of Sicily and Corfu were free from pellagra while they grew their own corn (prior to the middle of the nineteenth century), but with the advent of foreign shipments of this cereal, with consequent deterioration of the corn, pellagra appeared.

(7) The increase of pellagra in the United States has been explained by Alsberg<sup>1</sup> as due to the newer method of harvesting corn; formerly the corn was husked and dried, but now it is cut at the base and left in the fodder, which, being green and moist, undergoes decomposition. Moreover, much immature corn is thrown upon the market from crops grown in the northwest.

*The Theory of Jobling.*—Turning now from the hypothesis that

<sup>1</sup> Alsberg, C. L. (Food Research Institute, Palo Alto, California; photograph, page 421).



pellagra is of deficiency nature, we come to the important theory of Jobling<sup>1</sup> that pellagra is a photodynamic intoxication, due to fluorescent chemical agents produced by certain types of bacteria or fungi in the intestine. The bacteria or moulds particularly responsible for the disease are favored by a high starch diet. This explains why pellagra has developed among people who live largely on a diet of corn. It also explains why the disease is more intense during the period of the year when the actinic rays of the sun<sup>2</sup> are at their maximum; the skin has been sensitized by the fluorescent substances produced in the intestine. Sensitization to light has been accomplished artificially by administering certain substances, like hematoporphyrin,<sup>3</sup> and manifestations which occur in pellagra on exposure to the sun's rays have been obtained, such as erythema on the neck and hands, and edema. Jobling found that the mould *Aspergillus glaucus-repens* was present in the feces of many pellagra patients, but absent from the excretions of non-pellagrins. The artificial medium in which the mould is cultivated<sup>4</sup> becomes acid, changes color to a light brown, and is strongly fluorescent.

In conclusion, it must be admitted that *the cause of pellagra is unknown*. The fact that a change in diet of peoples affected with pellagra has resulted in an increase or decrease of the disease, not only in our Southern States, but in other countries, indicates a relation between nutrition and pellagra.<sup>5</sup>

**Xerophthalmia**<sup>6</sup> is a condition definitely attributable to vitamin A deficiency,<sup>7</sup> and during the Great War this cause was practically demonstrated by the conspicuous increase in the disease among the older children of Scandinavian countries deprived of butter and fats. The younger children were not affected because milk was provided for them, but the older ones had their butter and milk rations cut, owing to the economic desirability of shipping such valuable foods to other countries. During 1918, when the German blockade became effective, and exportation of fats from Denmark was discontinued,

<sup>1</sup> Jobling, J. W. (Professor of Pathology, Columbia University, formerly of Vanderbilt University, Nashville, Tenn.), in connection with Lloyd, A. D. (Loyola School of Medicine, Chicago, Ill.), Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 80, p. 365, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Page 634.

<sup>3</sup> Page 377.

<sup>4</sup> The medium of Currie, J. N., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 31, p. 15, 1917.

<sup>5</sup> See Vedder, E. B., Arch. Int. Med., vol. 18, p. 137, 1916.

<sup>6</sup> Greek *xeros*, dry, and *ophthalmos*, eye.

<sup>7</sup> Other factors than vitamin deficiency have been suggested by Mori (Japanese investigator, Darien, Manchuria), Amer. Jour. Hygiene, vol. 3, p. 99, 1923.

rationing of the population began. Each person received a quarter of a kilo of butter per week and since other fats, like pork fat and oleomargarin were not available, everyone ate butter with the result that xerophthalmia practically disappeared from Denmark. Each country is subject to the appearance of the disease whenever, through economic stress, children are made to depend upon foods deficient or lacking in vitamin A.<sup>1</sup> Experimentally, the cause and conditions involved in xerophthalmia have been determined. Mendel in 1913 found that white rats fed a diet deficient in vitamin A developed xerophthalmia. The progressive stages, as described by Yudkin and Lambert,<sup>2</sup> are:

1. Lacrimation.
2. Photophobia.
3. Drowsiness.
4. Edema of the eyelids.
5. Depilation of the eyelids.
6. Swelling of the lids.
7. Receding eyeball into the orbit.
8. Disappearance of the corneal reflex, when the cornea is touched.
9. Incrustation of the cornea and keratitis.
10. Opacity of the cornea.

The cornea is affected only secondarily and, if vitamin is administered early enough, the sight is unimpaired. These workers conclude that the primary seat of the disease is the lacrimal gland, the cells of which show early changes in vitamin A deficiency. The formation of yellow incrustation is due to the invasion of bacteria, which with the normal functioning of the gland is inhibited. When the gland becomes diseased its secretions are no longer capable of preventing bacterial development and consequently leucocytes accumulate (pus formation) to feed upon the bacteria. Such conditions are similar to the "xerosis" and keratomalacia of the ophthalmologist. They are held in check, or altogether eliminated by feeding a diet rich in vitamin A, such as tomatoes, butter, fresh leafy vegetables (spinach or lettuce), and cod-liver oil. Commerical preparations of milk, such as the evaporated, dried, and condensed forms, retain vitamin A, and hence are preventive of xerophthalmia, but skimmed milk and buttermilk are but slightly so.

<sup>1</sup> Bloch, C. E., *Blindness and Other Diseases in Children Arising from Deficient Nutrition*, Amer. Jour. Dis. Children, vol. 27, p. 139, 1924. See Fig. 159, page 542.

<sup>2</sup> Yudkin, A. M., and Lambert, R. A. (Yale University), *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 19, pp. 375, 376, 1922. Also *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 2206, 1922.

**Rickets (Rachitis).**—Man and his domesticated animals suffer from rickets, but such of the tame animals as return periodically to their wild habits, like the cat, are not known to become rachitic. The white rat, largely used for experimental purposes, can be made rachitic only by closely confining it to certain rachitic diets.<sup>1</sup>

*Both children and adults are affected*, but adult rickets is much less common. It occurs in women leading a life of confinement, similar to

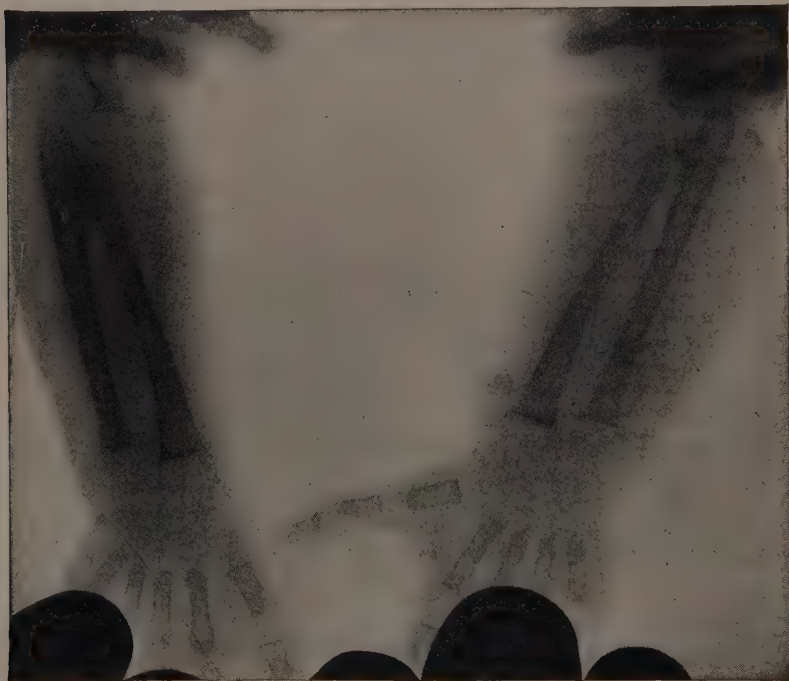


Fig. 187.—Moderate rickets. Compare with Fig. 188. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

that of the high-caste Mahomedan women who, after marriage, seldom leave their homes. The time of development of the disease varies. It may be present at birth. Cases have been observed in which the disease developed in spite of the fact that the child was kept in conditions not conducive to rickets. This points to a prenatal factor, perhaps to the condition of the mother. Rickets may be said to be a characteristic condition of prematurely born children. Its incidence is between November and May.

<sup>1</sup> Page 637.

*The Disease is Attributed to Avitaminosis.*—Formerly vitamin A was assigned as the especial antirachitic vitamin, but recent work has shown the desirability of assigning a specific factor, termed “X” by McCollum and by Park. It is possible that a second factor, working perhaps in conjunction with vitamin deficiency, may be a contributing cause, namely, absence of light of a wave-length of about 3000 Å,<sup>1</sup> for we know that the disease may be treated by subjecting the patient to light of this value, whether derived from natural or from artificial sources. The substance “X” is closely associated with vitamin A and



Fig. 188.—Healed rickets. Daily irradiation for one-half hour with carbon arc lamp. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

consequently the two have been confused. Whether they are actually different entities remains to be demonstrated.

*The reasons for believing vitamin A to be antirachitic are:*

1. Rickets develops in the known absence of vitamin A.
2. Fats containing vitamin A are antirachitic.
3. As animals grow older their need for an agent “A” to promote growth, to prevent xerophthamlia, and to prevent rickets (“X”) grows less to the same degree.

<sup>1</sup> Page 127.



4. Zucker found that the non-saponifiable residue from cod-liver oil hydrolysis exerted both an antixerophthalmic and antirachitic function.<sup>1</sup>

*The reasons for believing that vitamin A is distinct from the factor "X":*

1. McCollum found that cocoanut oil is not antixerophthalmic, but is antirachitic.
2. Butter fat is antixerophthalmic to a greater degree than it is antirachitic.
3. Destruction of vitamin A by keeping it at 120° C. for four hours in a stream of oxygen gave a product which was antirachitic, but which had lost its power to protect against xerophthalmia.
4. The most convincing evidence, however, is that recently found by Steenbock and by Hess<sup>2</sup> working independently, namely, that cholesterol, which has no antixerophthalmic property ("A"), nor antirachitic capacity before treatment, after irradiation with light of the value 3000 Å becomes antirachitic, but not antixerophthalmic.<sup>3</sup>

*The Effects of Light<sup>4</sup> in Rickets.*—It has been known since 1890 to the medical profession and probably still earlier in a popular way that sunlight had a beneficial effect upon the disease. In 1919 Huldschinsky<sup>5</sup> reported that the ultraviolet ray exerted a curative action. He found that the action concerned the utilization of calcium and that this substance in the form of salts was usually deposited under the action of the light and not especially in rachitic regions, showing that

<sup>1</sup> Dubin, H. E., and Funk, C., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 21, p. 139, 1923. Zucker, M. F., Dept. Pathology, Columbia University, New York, N. Y.

<sup>2</sup> Page 635.

<sup>3</sup> Irradiated rats grow normally and the criterion of difference between vitamin A and the factor "X" is not as clear as in the case of xerophthalmia. That there is a difference, however, is seen from the experiments of Steenbock (*Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 62, p. 590, 1925) with his Lot Number 2633 and Lot Number 2905. In the former, the ash from rats not irradiated, but kept in the cage with irradiated rats, was more than the ash from irradiated rats; in the latter, rats coming into contact with the excreta of irradiated rats, although they themselves were not irradiated, gave more ash, showing that a factor other than irradiation is operating to increase growth, or that the light effects are carried by some chemical substance excreted through the feces.

<sup>4</sup> Park (E. A., Yale University) prefers to speak of "radiant energy" rather than "light," since the effective ray is invisible to the human eye.

<sup>5</sup> Huldschinsky, K. (Polish physician), *Zeitschr. f. orthop. Chir.*, vol. 89, p. 426, 1920.



the effect was systemic rather than local. Sunlight, unhindered by ordinary glass is quite as effective as ultraviolet light from artificial sources, but the value of sunlight varies according to the season. The carbon filament, quartz mercury vapor lamp, and cadmium spark act similarly to sunlight, but not the tungsten arc lamp. Hess<sup>1</sup> has shown that the light which is effective in rickets has a wave-length of about 300  $\mu\mu$  (3000Å), or shorter, and that it is possible that two factors, wave-length and intensity, are concerned with the efficiency. Subjection of a patient or experimental animal to unobstructed sunlight, or to light from artificial source having a wave-length and intensity of adequate amounts causes a modification of the concentration of certain blood constituents, especially of inorganic salts.

White rats on diet No. 761 (McCollum) gave blood calcium, 5.5 mgs. per 100 mls. blood.

White rats on same diet supplemented with cod-liver oil, fourteen days, gave blood calcium, 8.2 mgs. per 100 mls. blood.

White rats on diet No. 618 gave blood phosphorus 2.4 mgs. per 100 mls. blood.

White rats on same diet supplemented with cod-liver oil, five days, gave blood phosphorus 5.7 mgs. per 100 mls. blood.

*Rickets has been produced by:*

(1) Lowering the phosphorus intake and increasing the calcium. The disease in this case is characterized by low blood phosphorus, lack of ossification, and irregular distribution of osteoblasts.

(2) Lowering the calcium and increasing the phosphorus. The disease is characterized by low blood calcium, but ossification centers are more regularly arranged.

(3) Administration of magnesium carbonate. The disease is characterized by its severity, low blood phosphorus, and general appearance of (1).

(4) Addition of strontium carbonate to the diet. The general effects are similar to (1) and to (3).

The feeding of pasteurized milk produces rickets, apparently through the lowering of both Ca and P in the blood of the animal to which milk is given. The quantitative relations between phosphorus and calcium are reported by Howland and Kramer<sup>2</sup> for blood concentrations as follows: If the quotient,

$$\frac{\text{Mgs. inorganic blood phosphate} \times \text{mgs. blood calcium}}{100 \text{ mls. whole blood}},$$

<sup>1</sup> Hess, A. F. (Columbia University). For bibliography see Park.

<sup>2</sup> Howland, J., and Kramer, B. (Johns Hopkins University), *Monatschr. f. Kinderheilkunde*, vol. 24, p. 279, 1923.

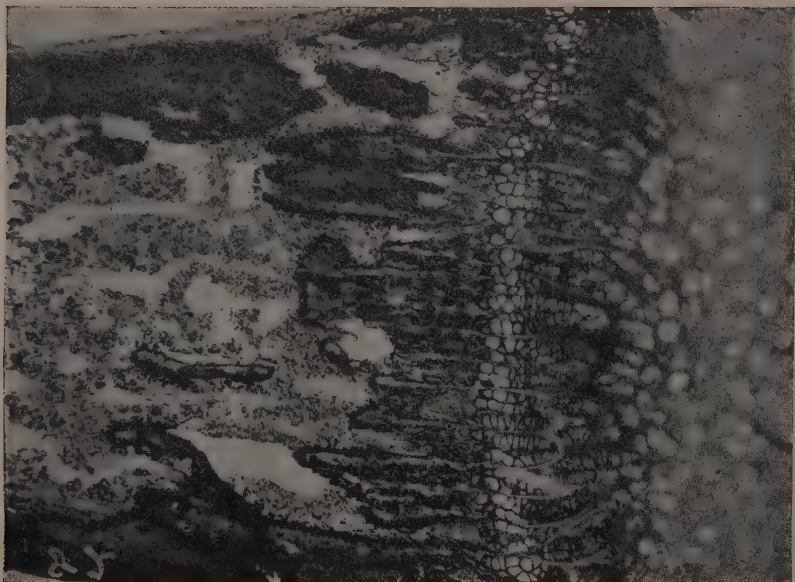


Fig. 189.—Normal rib of rat. Decalcified. Compare with Fig. 190. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

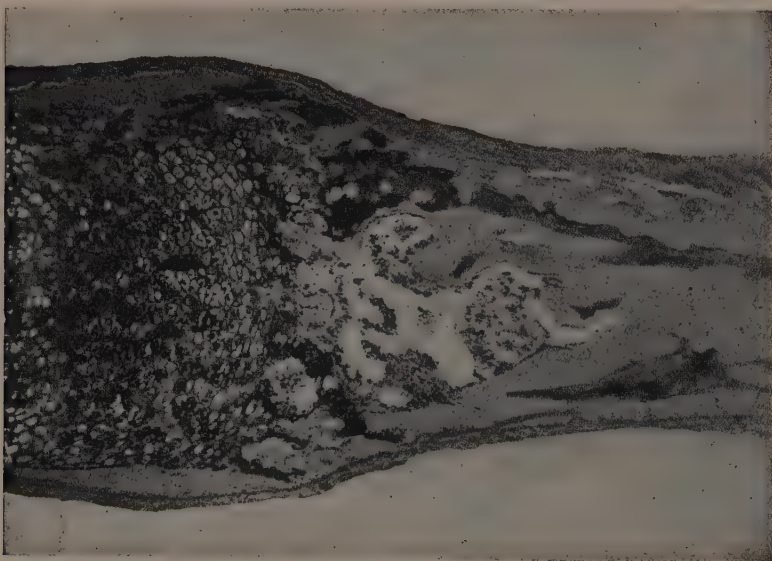


Fig. 190.—Rib of rat. Thirty-four days on rickets-producing diet. Marked rachitic lesions. Absence of "white line." Note increased width and irregularity of proliferating cartilage, absence of calcium deposition, great excess of osteoid in region of metaphysis and about cortex. Compare with Fig. 189. Decalcified. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

is equal to or above 40, rickets will not develop; is less than 40, rickets will develop.

There is a relation between the development of rickets by a given diet and the acid-base value of the diet. When the rickets-producing diet of Sherman,<sup>1</sup> which contains flour, cheese, calcium lactate, sodium chlorid, and iron as ferric citrate, was made more acid by replacing the lactate with  $\text{CaCl}_2$ , rickets did not develop. Neither light nor vitamin is a factor.

*Prevention of Rickets.*—It is evident from the foregoing discussion that rickets may be prevented by:

(1) Furnishing foods which contain the proper "vitamin."

(2) Furnishing light of proper wave-length, namely, 300  $\mu\mu$  (3000 Å). Recent work seems to show that the "vitamin" is actually absorbed light, or chemical configurations due to the action of this light.

The effect of irradiating cholesterol, a constituent of the substances that may be irradiated and rendered antirachitic, can be seen from the following experiment of DeFrates<sup>2</sup>:

ALBINO RATS, WISTAR INSTITUTE<sup>3</sup> STOCK

No.	Sex.	Born.	Diet.	Weight				
				Mar. 28.	Mar. 30.	Apr. 1. <sup>4</sup>	Apr. 22.	Apr. 29.
1.....	♀	Jan. 29th	No. 1	68 gs.	70 gs.	67	76	84
2.....	♂	Jan. 29th	No. 1	48	50	50	60	68
3.....	♂	Jan. 29th	No. 1	67	68	66	79	90
4.....	♂	Jan. 29th	No. 1	78	78	79	80	79.5
5.....	♀	Jan. 29th	No. 1	61	62	61	54	(died)

The diet used in these experiments (Diet No. 1) consisted of the following substances (this is practically the diet of Steenbock, for which the author is indebted to Dr. Steenbock):

	Portions
Yellow corn.....	76
Wheat gluten.....	20
$\text{CaCO}_3$ .....	3
$\text{NaCl}$ .....	1

It is evident that rats fed irradiated cholesterol (Nos. 1, 2, and 3) grew at normal rates, while rats fed cholesterol which had not been

<sup>1</sup> See Zucker, T. F., Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., vol. 20, p. 20, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> DeFrates, J. S., data unpublished. See page 14.

<sup>3</sup> Wistar Institute, Philadelphia. The Institute furnishes pedigreed stock for experimental purposes.

<sup>4</sup> Began feeding cholesterol; Nos. 1, 2, and 3 fed cholesterol, irradiated fifteen mins. Distance 2.5 dms. Nos. 4 and 5 not irradiated.

irradiated, failed to grow, or died (Nos. 4 and 5). The diet in all cases was such as to develop rickets, unless a second factor were furnished;

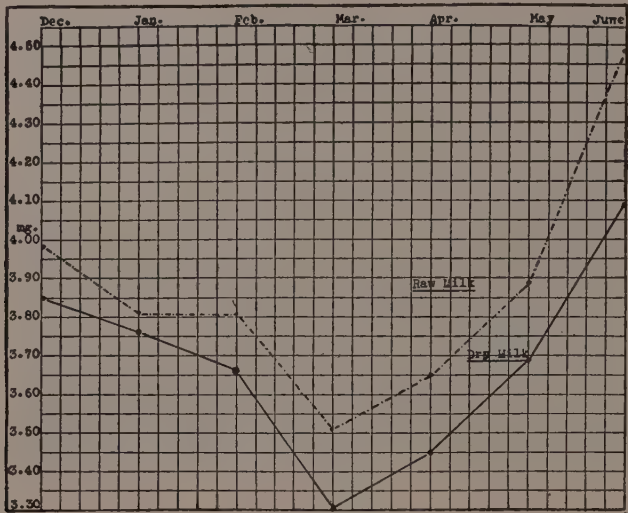


Fig. 191.—Seasonal variations in inorganic phosphate of the blood; diet, milk. Compare with Fig. 192. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

this accessory factor was irradiated cholesterol. It is interesting that DeFrates was unable to obtain curative effects from phytin

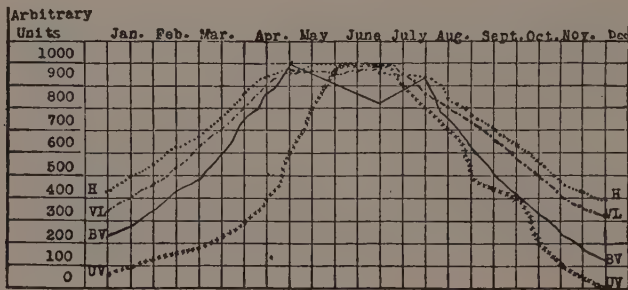


Fig. 192.—Seasonal variations of the sun's spectrum: H, Solar heat; VL, visible light; BV, blue violet; UV, ultraviolet. (Alfred F. Hess in Abt's Pediatrics, vol. ii.)

(page 369), which has a chemical configuration somewhat similar to cholesterol, but lacking a terpen radicle (page 211).

In another set of experiments DeFrates showed that irradiation



does not produce any recognizable chemical change in irradiated foods, such as olive-oil, and while others, like Hess, have reached a similar conclusion, it does not follow that the light does not alter the constitution of these food substances in some way as yet not discovered.

While excellent results in the control of rickets have been obtained by the use of artificial light, sunlight, when used through unobstructing transparent quartz or from the sun in the open air, have yielded similar favorable consequences. Such transparent quartz window-panes are being installed in hospital solaria throughout the country.

**Tetany**, which will be discussed in detail later, in the present Chapter<sup>1</sup> bears a certain relation to rickets and frequently accompanies this condition. Calcium metabolism is concerned in both instances; both are diseases encountered in prematurely born children; both show seasonal variations. Tetany, as we shall see, probably has its cause in the parathyroid gland, in the absence or insufficiency of which calcium metabolism is affected. Tetany is induced by parathyroidectomy,<sup>2</sup> by sodium poisoning on feeding  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , or  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , and by gastritis. The blood calcium is reduced, whereas the blood phosphorus remains normal. Calcium administered as  $\text{CaCl}_2$  improves tetany in children and the blood calcium rises, with a concomitant fall in phosphorus. Infantile tetany treated by means of the mercury vapor lamp improves clinically and there is a return to normal of blood calcium; the blood phosphorus also remains normal. In general, infantile tetany responds to the same curative measures that are used in the treatment of rickets. By using a method similar to that which he used in purifying insulin, Collip<sup>3</sup> succeeded in isolating a fraction of parathyroid material which, when administered, relieves all symptoms of the disease in parathyroidectomized, experimental animals (Figs. 194 and 195).

**Sprue**<sup>4</sup> is a disease typically of the tropics, characterized by a catarrhal inflammation of the mouth (stomatitis) and alimentary

<sup>1</sup> Page 648.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes in removing the thyroid in goiter cases the parathyroid is disturbed, or is accidentally removed, and tetany results; the condition is called tetany strumipriva, from the Latin *struma*, goiter, and *priva*, to deprive of.

<sup>3</sup> Collip, J. B. (page 20), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, pp. 395, 439, 1925.

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes called "screw," "thrush." The term "screw" is a Dutch word, modified from the native word "spruw" of the Dutch East Indies. It occurs in the United States (Wood).



tract. It seems to be aggravated by a low protid diet and one excessive in fat.<sup>1</sup> There is constantly associated with the disease an intestinal parasite belonging to the fungi, known as *Monilia*. Authorities disagree concerning the relation of this plant to sprue. Fresh milk<sup>2</sup> is used as treatment, but it is not known whether a vitamin is concerned or whether the increased amount of calcium administered by way of the milk is responsible. Administration of calcium in the form of calcium lactate and parathyroid tissue is also beneficial in this disease. Current opinion tends to favor a dual origin for the disease: (1) Food deficiency, and (2) infection by the fungus, *Monilia*.

**Scurvy** was first scientifically studied in Norway. The sailors of that country experienced the ravages of the disease on their fishing voyages. The early experimental studies of the two Oslo<sup>3</sup> investigators, Holst and Fröhlich<sup>4</sup> were stimulated by the reports of the investigations of Eijkman on beriberi and experimental polyneuritis, described on page 625. Using guinea-pigs, they repeated Eijkman's experiments with polished rice and found that, unlike pigeons which showed symptoms of polyneuritis on such a diet, guinea-pigs developed scurvy, identical, as far as symptoms were concerned, with the human disease.<sup>5</sup> Before this systematic work of the Scandinavian investigators, it had been noted in the United States by Theobald Smith<sup>6</sup> that an exclusive diet of oats produced scorbutic lesions in guinea-pigs. The Oslo workers found, later, that bread and other cereal preparations gave similar results. As antiscorbutic substances, they used fresh, uncooked cabbage, carrots, dandelion "greens," lettuce, endive, potatoes, and fruits like bananas and apples.

Stefánsson<sup>7</sup> found that he could live for years in the north coun-

<sup>1</sup> Although high fat diets act unfavorably, there is a fat deficit in an untreated case of sprue. Milk is almost a specific for the improvement of sprue.

<sup>2</sup> For an account of the diet of sprue patients in Porto Rico, see Ashford, B. K., *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, vol. 2, p. 139, 1922. The diet is increasingly "rice, polished and imported."

<sup>3</sup> The current name for Christiania.

<sup>4</sup> Holst, A., and Fröhlich, T. (University of Oslo, Norway), *Jour. of Hygiene* (English), vol. 7, p. 619, 1907.

<sup>5</sup> The chief symptoms are given in the legend beneath the figures showing the manifestations of the disease.

<sup>6</sup> Smith, T., Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research, Department of Animal Pathology, Princeton, N. J.

<sup>7</sup> Stefánsson, V., Anthropologist and Arctic traveler. See *My Life with the Eskimos*. Also *The Friendly Arctic*, both published in New York, The Macmillan Co., 1913 and 1921.

tries on meat diets without contracting scurvy, if blood, raw meat, and glandular tissues like liver and kidney were used. One of his men, who became impatient with the progress of the expedition, sulked, and refused to eat raw meat, developed scurvy. This, however, disappeared on resumption of a fresh meat diet, especially one including blood.

During the Great War scurvy affected the troops in spite of our knowledge of its etiology and curative measures. In Mesopotamia in 1917-20<sup>1</sup> scurvy affected the troops from India, and beriberi the British. The British soldier is frequently called the "lime-juicer" on account of his faithful attention on expeditions to a supply of the juice of the fruit of the lime, but the campaign was of such a nature that this supply failed.<sup>2</sup> The expedition of Shkelton<sup>3</sup> into the Antarctic was kept free from scurvy by the use of concentrated lemon-juice and tablets from the same source.

Tomatoes protect against scurvy in guinea-pigs in amounts of from 1.5 to 2.5 mls. fresh juice. Canning reduces potency 75 per cent.; bottling reduces the potency 60 per cent. Once prepared, however, the canned or bottled preparation remains unchanged for years. Freezing reduces the potency not only of tomato-juice, but of all antiscorbutic substances.

The use of the white potato<sup>4</sup> by the Germans and by the Irish saved these countries during times of stress from outbreaks of scurvy, and the same may be said of parts of the United States. The most dependable antiscorbutic agent we have at the present time is the tomato, which, for years, was not considered as food, being known as "love-apple" and fit only for display purposes. With the increase of hermetically sealed and sterilized foods, the tomato stands out clearly

<sup>1</sup> Page 626.

<sup>2</sup> Lime-juice loses its potency as an antiscorbutic agent after a time and this has been the cause of many serious outbreaks of scurvy in various expeditions. The so-called "lime-juice" of the British Army of earlier times was actually lemon-juice. The potency of lime-juice is remarkable when fresh and when concentrated with only 0.07 per cent. solids still shows its original activity, but its power is lost on standing.

<sup>3</sup> See the report of the surgeon of the expedition: Macklin, A. H., and Hussey, L. D. A., *The Lancet* (English Journal), vol. for 1922, second part, p. 322. Scurvy appeared with fatal results in the expedition of Scott to the South Pole, due, apparently, to the failure of the antiscorbutic preparations provided for the usage of explorers.

<sup>4</sup> See Appendix for the contrast in antiscorbutic value of the white and sweet potato.

as an antiscorbutic substance, retaining its protective properties under severe conditions.

*Infantile scurvy*<sup>1</sup> is produced by the use of milk preparations such as evaporated, condensed, etc.<sup>2</sup> Wherever high temperatures are used, as in evaporating milk for the market, the antiscorbutic value is reduced or altogether lost.

At the present time foods deficient in vitamin C in use in Europe and in Asia are conducive to the development of scurvy. In 1923 Prussia had 386 unmistakable cases of scurvy, although the disease had not been observed there previous to 1915. Undernutrition and avitaminosis are reported to involve increased basal metabolism, and the feeding of vitamin C diets results in the decrease in oxygen consumption to normal. Much scurvy goes undetected in its incipient form, being mistaken, owing to the edema for cardiorenal disease. The error is discovered only after careful clinical study.

The *relation between vitamin C deficiency and decayed teeth* is of especial importance. Although advertisements would lead one to believe that the modern mouth is diseased, while that of our ancestors was perfect, the actual facts show this to be untrue. The teeth of mummies and of other human remains are frequently in a condition similar to that of the worst mouth encountered by the Twentieth Century oral surgeon. In Egypt diseased teeth were probably the result of the diet restricted to cereals, like maize (corn), which is lacking in vitamin C. There is no question that teeth suffer in cases in which the diet is low in the antiscorbutic vitamin. For the legend "A clean tooth never decays" we may well exchange "A vitamin-fed tooth never aches."

### ENDOCRINOSES

The endocrinoses include such pathological states as are attributable to endocrine disturbances. We have seen, in the foregoing section, that the vitamins exert a profound influence upon the organism; even when present in small amounts, they change the course of metabolism. The endocrines likewise exert a great influence on the body

<sup>1</sup> Barlow's disease (Sir Thomas Barlow, British physician of the nineteenth century).

<sup>2</sup> Attempts have been made to show that milk preparations contain adequate antiscorbutic properties. Undoubtedly, a small amount of such substance is present, but that, as the milk preparations are used they are protective, is not borne out by facts. This statement does not apply to all forms of milk preparations.

and, as we shall see, minute amounts determine whether a certain metabolic condition shall exist. On the other hand, diseases of the endocrine organs occur which are not due to the deficiency of the secretion, but to other causes, few of which are known. Endocrine substances are produced within the human body; the chemical basis, however, must be derived from plants. The influence of internal secretions is manifested principally through the sympathetic nervous system. Here, as in the case of the vitamins, our knowledge of the biochemistry involved has been derived largely through the study of pathological states affecting the endocrine glands. The reader is warned, however, that the correlation between endocrines and disease is not definitely known in many cases and that there are many differences of opinion.

**Goiter.**—This is a more or less popular term, which is rather loosely applied to various diseases of the thyroid<sup>1</sup> gland. These may be divided into general types: Those due to a deficiency in the secretion of the thyroid gland, known clinically as hypothyroid conditions; and those due to an excess of the secretion of the gland, known clinically as hyperthyroid diseases. We have discussed the chemical substance responsible for the particular biochemical characteristics of this gland,<sup>2</sup> thyroxin, discovered by Kendall. The normal requisite of thyroxin is about 0.6 mg. per day. Deficiency in this substance causes the following diseases:

**Hypothyroid Diseases.**—*Cretinism* (so named because of its prevalence in the Island of Crete off the southern coast of Greece, a mountainous island, with valleys supplied with water from mountain streams) develops before puberty. Dwarf and deformed children are the results of cretinism. If taken sufficiently early, cretinism may be cured by the administration of iodine in some form. Cretinism may be called "infantile myxedema." Two phases of the disease are recognizable:

(1) Myxedematous type: Persistent lack of development of the sex-organs, dwarfism, mutism, muscle inco-ordination, and low mental development are characteristic.

(2) Nervous type: Tetany, idiocy, bilateral paralysis (diplegia), and hyperexcitability of the nervous system. In the Himalayan regions, in the valleys of the Swiss, French, Italian and Austrian moun-

<sup>1</sup> Greek *thyreos*, a shield; so called from the shape of the gland, Greek *eidos*, like.

<sup>2</sup> Page 136.



tains, and throughout the globe, where similar topographical conditions prevail, cretinism is endemic. At puberty: This form of goiter called, variously, endemic, cystic, simple, adolescent, etc., is seen with the greatest frequency in our Middle West, especially in a belt extending from Old Smoky in the Southern Appalachian Mountains to Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada. It is largely confined to the female subject. During menstruation, and other sexual periods, the size of the thyroid gland becomes greater. The basal metabolic rate is normal. The disease rarely involves other organs, but the goiter later becomes adenom-



Fig. 193.—E. C. Kendall, Mayo Foundation, Rochester, Minnesota. Discoverer and first to synthesize thyroxin.

atous and degenerative, fibrous or calcareous changes occur. Actual exophthalmic goiter may develop later in life. Iodin is now administered to the inhabitants of affected regions, sometimes in the form of phials of iodid, given to school children, or sometimes the iodid is distributed in the form of table salt, or through drinking-water, in the municipal supply. Table salt containing iodin is now available on the market.<sup>1</sup> The response to such treatment is rapid. A well-developed goiter, however, never completely retrogresses.

*Myxedema*<sup>2</sup> is observed in adolescents and adults. It is characterized by edema of the face and hands, with accompanying dry-

ness and wrinkling of the skin. Low basal metabolic rate, slow pulse, loss of mental alertness, and loss of hair from the body are the usual symptoms. Administration of thyroxin produces an increase in B. M. R. and a return of the skin condition to normal. Administration of thyroxin or of iodin must be made with care,<sup>3</sup> for overdoses lead to conditions resembling the following group of hyperthyroid diseases, es-

<sup>1</sup> A preparation distributed by the Morton Salt Co., Chicago, contains 0.00002 g. iodine per 100 gs. of the salt.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *myxa*, slime, and *oidema*, a swelling.

<sup>3</sup> See editorial, *Therapeutic Gazette*, vol. 49 (W. S.), p. 265, 1925.



pecially in the adenomata of later life, which may follow simple goiter or myxedema.

**Hyperthyroid Disease.**—*Basedow's*<sup>1</sup> *disease*; exophthalmic goiter; toxic goiter; Graves'<sup>2</sup> *disease*. This disease is characterized by the increase in B. M. R., increased pulse-rate, exophthalmos,<sup>3</sup> nervousness, etc. Conditions similar to exophthalmic goiter appear following overdoses of thyroid preparations used to reduce obesity. The sympathetic nervous system is affected. The treatment is "skilful neglect" by permitting the patient to rest under controlled conditions; surgical excision of the thyroid gland, or ligation of its blood-supply; and regulation of the diet. Administration of definitely known quantities of thyroxin, or of iodine preparation, to exophthalmic goiter patients improves the condition, even within short intervals of time,<sup>4</sup> but must not be carried too far. The toxicity involved is similar to that induced by overfeeding of thyroid or of iodine; these effects are not due to the direct effect of thyroxin. This agent accelerates metabolism throughout the body and it is this extra metabolism which produces the toxic manifestations.

Adenomatous goiter<sup>5</sup> is distinguished from true exophthalmic goiter by the characteristic manner of responding to thyroxin. Favorable effects are obtained by administering thyroxin to hyperthyroid cases, but unfavorable when given to patients suffering from adenomas with hyperthyroidism. The latter is characteristic of persons up to about thirty-five years, while adenomatous hyperthyroidism is generally of later occurrence.

*Iodine and Goiter.*—Disturbances of the thyroid gland are general, but the incidence of goiter is greater in certain regions than in others in which there is a lower content of iodine in water and foods.<sup>6</sup> In the latter districts the iodine content of drinking-water varies from 1 to 22 parts per iodine per 100,000,000,000 parts of water, while in the non-

<sup>1</sup> Basedow, K. A. von, German physician of the eighteenth century.

<sup>2</sup> Graves, R. J., Irish physician of the eighteenth century.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *ex*, out, and *ophthalmos*, eye; protruding eye. The cause of the protrusion is unknown.

<sup>4</sup> Boothby, W. M. (Mayo Foundation), *Endocrinology*, vol. 8, p. 725, 1924.

<sup>5</sup> For a discussion of adenomatous goiter and hyperthyroidism, as well as the use of thyroxin in goiter, see Boothby, W. M., *Endocrinology*, vol. 8, p. 727, 1924.

<sup>6</sup> For a discussion of the relation between goiter and iodine in food and water see McClendon, J. F. (Minnesota), *Inverse Relation Between Iodine in Food and Drink and Goiter, Simple and Exophthalmic*, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 82, p. 1669, 1924.

goitrous regions the iodine content of the water supplying the districts is more than 23 parts per (10)<sup>11</sup> parts H<sub>2</sub>O. The two maps represented on page 572 illustrate the coincidence of low iodine content and high goiter. The difference in iodine content of food materials grown in non-goitrous and in goitrous districts is, as a rule, remarkably correlated with the iodine content of water in these districts. Thus, from non-goitrous regions, like certain parts of New England, the iodine content of wheat estimated as milligrams per metric ton<sup>1</sup> of wheat varies from 4 to 10, while wheat from goitrous districts (Minnesota) contains from 1 to 7. Carrots, from non-goitrous regions in California, have an iodine content of 170 contrasted with 2.3 in carrots from the goitrous districts of Oregon.

**Addison's Disease.**<sup>2</sup>—We have discussed the chemistry of epinephrin,<sup>3</sup> which is produced in the adrenal glands. Of the two histological portions, (1) the outer cortical and (2) the inner or medullary zone, the second is of especial interest in Addison's disease, although both portions are affected. This medullary zone consists of elements derived from the nervous tissue belonging to the sympathetic system and, primitively, the cells are differentiated into (a) sympathetic, multipolar nerve cells, and (b) cells which later become the "chromaffin cells,"<sup>4</sup> with which the internal secretion of the adrenals is concerned. It is this portion of the gland which becomes defective in Addison's disease.

The *characteristics of the disease* are hypoglycemia, pigmentation of skin, hair, eye-lashes, etc., giving a bronze color; nervous symptoms, such as insomnia, headaches, later delirium and convulsions, ready fatigue, apathy, rheumatoid pains in the back, and elsewhere; low blood-pressure, adrenal hypoplasia in many cases<sup>5</sup>; cardiac atrophy,

<sup>1</sup> Metric ton  $\approx$  1000 kgs.

<sup>2</sup> Addison, T., English physician of the early nineteenth century.

<sup>3</sup> Page 263.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, the "colored cells," because chromic acid turns them brownish, and ferric chlorid, green. These cells occur in nests and are found not alone in the adrenals but also in the carotid artery, ganglia of the sympathetic trunks, solar plexus, left stellate ganglion, junction of the left coronary artery and the superior mesenteric, hilus of the kidney, and along the course of the sympathetic nerves. There may be compensation on the part of the other portions of the chromaffin system for loss of function of the chromaffin cells in the adrenals and, therefore, there may be no Addison's disease following destruction of the medulla.

<sup>5</sup> This condition has been observed where there is no evidence of Addison's disease. This may be explained by considering that chromaffin tissue outside the adrenal glands may take over the function of the chromaffin tissue of the adrenal, but few studies have been made to determine this point.

atrophy of the sex organs. The disease is frequently associated with tuberculosis, but is a condition of middle age, being rare in children and in the aged.

The *cause of the disease* is attributed to the loss of function of the adrenals. Experimentally, many of the symptoms of the disease may be induced when the adrenals are removed. Stewart and Rogoff<sup>1</sup> find that when the adrenals are removed from experimental animals (dogs), the most pronounced symptoms are the profound disorganization of the digestive system, weakness only toward the latter stages of the survival before death, hyperexcitability of the nervous system, circulatory disturbances and, at autopsy, hemorrhage of the gastrointestinal tract. The duration of life after adrenalectomy extended from 3.5 to thirty-four days, the longer periods being in dogs that were injected with Ringer's Solution,<sup>2</sup> to which some glucose had been added. Since these beneficial effects were obtained without the administration of any endocrine material, it is scarcely to be expected that the gastrointestinal and other symptoms mentioned above are due to any disturbance of the endocrine system.

Experimentally, it is nearly impossible to remove either the cortex or the medulla alone. Consequently, the knowledge that we desire as to the results of the loss of function of either of these portions of the glands has never been obtained.

*Treatment* by the administration of epinephrin has led to no proof that Addison's disease is due to the lack of this substance.<sup>3</sup> Whole-gland tablets, when administered, have produced a reduction of pigmentation and it is doubtless the cortex which is the principal factor. The cortex is derived from the same general portion of the embryo that the sex cells are, and injury to the cortex, as, for instance, by a tumor, produces marked effects upon the secondary sexual characters (lack of hirsuteness, defective maturity of the external genitals, etc.). Administration of epinephrin by mouth is generally ineffective.<sup>4</sup> Subcutaneous injections cannot be maintained for long periods.

<sup>1</sup> Stewart, G. N., and Rogoff, J. M. (Western Reserve Medical School, Cleveland, Ohio), *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 22, p. 394, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Page 397.

<sup>3</sup> See Wells, H. G., cited on page 341, page 621.

<sup>4</sup> Patients with Addison's disease are benefited by epinephrin, but the reason lies in its vascular action. Epinephrin is favorable to other diseases which are not endocrinoses, such as asthma.

We cannot say definitely that Addison's disease is caused by the lack of any internal secretion, especially epinephrin, but, on the other hand, this cause has not been shown to be ineffectual.

Next will be considered certain conditions which are believed to be due to a lack of some specific endocrine substance, although the correlation is difficult.

**Tetany Parathyroprivia.**<sup>1</sup>—Tetany is an abnormal hyperexcitability of the nervous system attended by systemic conditions, such as alteration of the inorganic constituents of the blood. In all animals damage to the parathyroids, especially in the young subject, induces tetany, but the effect varies with the species. The outstanding feature seems to be the development of a toxic condition, and this has led to the theory that the function of the parathyroid is that of a detoxicating gland.<sup>2</sup> The most efficient treatment hitherto has been the administration of calcium, which is low in the affected organism.

We do not know the nature of the toxic agent, but the administration of methyl-guanidin, which is creatin, deprived of the acetic acid radicle,<sup>3</sup> has been found to exert an influence similar to that of the removal of the parathyroids. Tetany is controlled by lowering the absorption of toxin from the alimentary canal and by inducing its elimination. There is some connection between tetany and a diet of meat,<sup>4</sup> which probably is due to the creatin of this food. Treatment by the use of parathyroid extracts has previously led to no improvement, but recently Collip<sup>5</sup> has secured an extract from parathyroids which acts favorably in the treatment of tetany.<sup>6</sup> This work is the first positive demonstration of the dependence of tetany upon parathyroid inefficiency. The relation of calcium to tetany is known only in an empirical way, but Collip finds that his extract causes a rise in blood calcium. He defines the potency of the parathyroid extract in units, each unit being one one-hundredth of the amount of extract which causes an increase within twenty-four hours of 5 milligrams of

<sup>1</sup> Page 255.

<sup>2</sup> This function has been assigned to many other glands, thyroid, adrenal, and others. See page 137.

<sup>3</sup> Page 359.

<sup>4</sup> Collip (see below) is able to feed experimentally parathyroidectomized animals into which an extract of parathyroid tissue has been injected, with high meat diets.

<sup>5</sup> Page 20. See Collip, J. B., and Clark, E. P. (Alberta), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 64, p. 485, 1925.

<sup>6</sup> Excessive doses of the extract cause overabundance of calcium in the blood, with consequences of pathological nature, such as vomiting, cardiac involvements, etc.



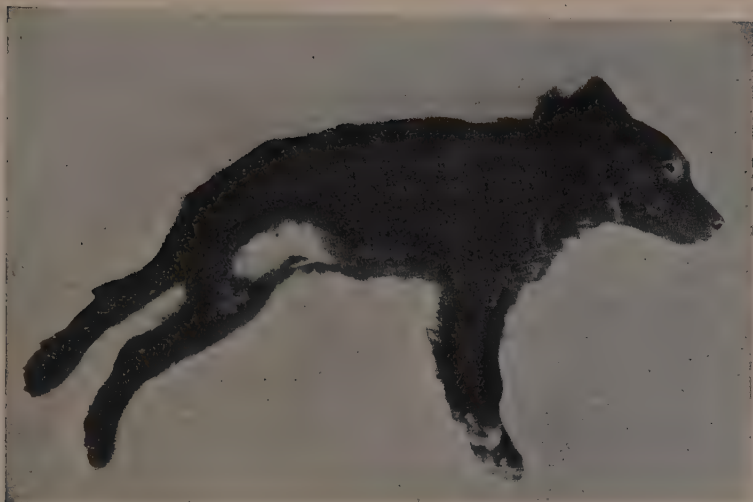


Fig. 194.—Dog fifty-nine days after removal of thyroid and parathyroid. Tetany parathyroprivia. (After Collip, Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. 400, 1925.)



Fig. 195.—Same dog as shown in Fig. 194, three hours after subcutaneous injection of Collip's parathyroid extract. (From Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. 400, 1925.)



serum-calcium in a 20-kilogram parathyroidectomized dog. The greatest increase of calcium thus far obtained is up to 20 mgs. per 100 mls. blood-serum. After the calcium has risen to a certain level phosphorus begins to rise in the blood likewise.

Tetany does not necessarily occur in simple parathyroid lesions. Rarely, it complicates goiter when the latter involves the dysfunction of the parathyroids. Tetany also accompanies certain infectious diseases, especially typhoid fever. In tuberculosis involvement of the parathyroid may lead to tetany. Poisons, like morphine, may induce it. It occurs among persons following certain trades, such as shoe-making, repairing, and tailoring. It is typically a disease of the city. McCarrison has reported the coincidence of tetany and goiter of myxedemic type, but tetany does not seem to be associated with ordinary colloid goiter. In fact, the disease is quite rare in the Alps, Tyrol, and in other goiter districts. Tetany in children seems to be related to lesions in the parathyroids, for hemorrhages occur in these glands during the course of the disease. Various gastro-intestinal diseases may cause tetany. Hyperparathyroidism, involving adenomata, has been observed. As a rule, no correlation is evident between excessive growth of the parathyroid and any bodily dysfunction.

**Gonadal Diseases.**—Under this heading are grouped diseases which are connected with lesions of certain internal organs and which affect the genital system, either the primary male and female sex cells, or the secondary sexual characters, such as hirsuteness, shape of the body, pitch of the voice, etc. We have already mentioned the relation existing between the genital organs and the adrenal cortex.<sup>1</sup>

Previously, it was believed that there is a relation between the thymus gland and other glands of internal secretion which control reproduction and growth. Feeding thymus substance to larval frogs previous to metamorphosis delays the process and the tadpoles become enlarged. Certain pluriglandular disorders (Timme's syndrome<sup>2</sup>) have been referred to the thymus reacting with other glands, but in no case has it been proved that an internal secretion is formed by the thymus. Certain work indicates that an association exists between thymus and the hypophysis, about to be discussed. Whatever the nature of the thymus may be, it is evident from the extensive investi-

<sup>1</sup> Page 647.

<sup>2</sup> Timme, W. (New York neurologist), *Med. Clin. of N. A.*, vol. 2, p. 959, 1919. Pluriglandular diseases will be discussed later (pages 657 and 659).

gations of Park and McClure<sup>1</sup> that the thymus is not indispensable to the dog, or probably to any mammal, including man. Incidentally, the administration of mixtures of hormones ("pluriglandular therapy") has not been found to have any distinctively favorable effects.

*Premature sexual development* has been correlated with lesions of the epiphysis.<sup>2</sup> Both structural and functional disturbances involving the higher nervous centers occur in the sexual system. The gland enlarges and pressure is exerted on the surrounding brain tissue. In older persons, adiposity seems to be produced. In the young, there is an accelerated sexual development, especially in the male; premature deepening of the voice, enlarged intromittent organ, precocious estruation, and other manifestations are noted. Both the administration of pineal substance and the destruction of pineal tissue leads to precocious development. However, here, as before, much more information is necessary before a definite rôle may be assigned to the pineal apparatus or its relation to the development of the genital system proved. No internal secretion has been detected, all evidence being physiological.

*Dystrophy adiposogenitalis*, or *eunuchoidism*, occurs when the hypophysis<sup>3</sup> is injured or removed. There is an accumulation of fat over the body, but true obesity does not result; subjects affected with this disease do not respond to regulations of diet and other treatments designed to reduce obesity. There are three factors recognized in this

<sup>1</sup> Park, E. A., and McClure, R. D. (Chief Surgeon, Ford Hospital, Detroit, Mich.), Amer. Jour. Dis. Child., vol. 18, p. 317, 1919.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *epi*, upon, and *physis*, nature, or substance. The organ lies over the third ventricle of the brain and is derived from that region, the primitive end of the central nervous system. It becomes infiltrated with connective tissue from the seventeenth year of life. It reaches its greatest development about the seventh year. The structure is sometimes called the pineal apparatus.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *hypo*, under, and *physis* as in epiphysis. The organ is dual in origin: (1) Neural, an evagination from the floor of the brain comes into contact and slips by (2) an upward evagination from the alimentary canal, in the region of the pharynx. The pharyngeal lobe lies forward of the neural; this anterior lobe is epithelial in nature, the posterior lobe being filled with neuroglia. The stalk connecting the anterior lobe with the brain is known as the infundibulum. Pituitrin sold on the market as "pituitary substance" or "extract" comes from the posterior lobe, but Biedl (famous Czech pathologist) believes that the substance is made from the pars intermedia, lying immediately posteriorly to the anterior or pharyngeal lobe. The substance is then transferred to the posterior lobe, where it is stored, or carries on its way to the third ventricle of the brain, where it mingles with the cerebrospinal fluid. Recently Abel at Johns Hopkins University has partly purified this substance by means of picrate and tartrate. See pages 500 and 655.

condition: (1) Hypophysis; (2) interstitial cells of Leydig in the testis, and (3) thyroid. Since subjects with known lesions of the hypophysis do not always develop such form of dystrophy, it cannot be ascribed to this organ alone in all cases. The same may be said respecting the gonads; eunuchs do not all become overfat. Again, the thyroid may show no derangement, judged chiefly by the normal basal metabolic rate. It is certain in many cases that the hypophysis has something to do with the condition, for feeding by mouth of hypophyseal material produces favorable results. Reports have been made that such treatment plus administration of sex gland substance acts favorably.

*Adipositas dolorosa* was first described by Dercum<sup>1</sup> and is known as Dercum's Syndrome.<sup>2</sup> It is characterized by a deposit of fat on the shoulders, deltoid region, chest, pelvic region, and abdomen. The forearms, arms, forelegs, and legs remain the natural shape and size. Dercum ascribes the disease to a dysfunction of the thyroid gland. The hypophysis, adrenals, and sex glands are normal. Administration of thyroid preparations has a favorable effect. The condition is described here in order that it may be differentiated from the foregoing states which involves fat deposition.

*Late eunuchoidism*<sup>3</sup> is the technical designation of a condition which is characterized by fat deposition, especially on the mons veneris, breast, and hips with accompanying atrophy of the genital apparatus, both primary and secondary. In the male the penis, scrotum, prostate and secondary sexual characters, such as the beard; in the female, the labia majora and the uterus, retrogress after having functioned for several years. Tuberculosis of the genital apparatus, trauma, as in war, or any cause inducing the atrophy of the sexual apparatus is responsible for the disease. The interpretation of reports of gland administration in the treatment of this condition has to be made with great care, because psychic effects enter into the matter; a depressed mental state due to hypofunction of almost any portion of the body is relieved frequently by treatment of a variety of kinds, which indicate that in the case of eunuchoidism, especially the care

<sup>1</sup> Dercum, F. X. (Emeritus Professor of Nervous and Mental Diseases, Jefferson Medical College). See *The Biology of the Internal Secretions*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1924. Also *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 84, p. 248, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *syn*, together, and *dromos*, running; that is, accompanying each other, being said of certain etiological features that appear when the disease develops.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *eunous*, regard, and *echein*, to hold; castrated subjects are highly regarded in the harems of the East, where they are known as eunuchs.

given the subject incident to operation and treatment, may cause euphoria.<sup>1</sup> Undoubtedly, positive results have been obtained by transplanting ovaries from one subject into another and this is followed by sexual functioning, even to the extent of bringing forth offspring. Loeb<sup>2</sup> believes ovarian tissue controls sexual events and Doisy<sup>3</sup> has isolated a hormone<sup>4</sup> from the ovaries of rats; when this substance is injected<sup>5</sup> into castrated female rats, estrus occurs. The ovary, placenta, or liquor folliculi (but not embryo or corpora lutea) is extracted with alcohol, hydrolyzed by boiling with alkali, the sodium soap solution thus formed being evaporated to dryness and the hormone extracted by chloroform. Cholesterol, which is also extracted, is precipitated by digitonin,<sup>6</sup> leaving the hormone in solution. It is a heat-stable substance, soluble in fats and oils. The fact that corpora lutea do not contain this substance corroborates Loeb's theory in part, that corpus luteum controls ovulation.<sup>7</sup> In the male, the Steinach<sup>8</sup> operation consists of vasotomy (ligation and section of the vas deferens; removal of a portion of it near the tied part), thus supposedly causing the backing up of the secretion, especially of the prostate gland and of the sex cells, as distinct from the supporting interstitial cells of Leydig; or, by irradiation, the sex cells are destroyed. It is supposed that this operation or treatment permits the maintenance of a normal blood-supply to the interstitial cells, while the sex cells (spermatogonia and spermatozoa) are destroyed, and for this reason do not require nourishment; this permits a more abundant supply of

<sup>1</sup> Greek *eu*, well, and *pherein*, to bear; that is, having well-being, or "feeling well."

<sup>2</sup> Loeb, Leo (Professor of Pathology, Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis, Mo.), brother of Jacques Loeb (page 103). See *Science*, vol. 48, p. 273, 1918.

<sup>3</sup> Doisy, E. A. (Professor of Biochemistry, St. Louis University School of Medicine, St. Louis, Mo.). See page 24.

<sup>4</sup> Greek *'ormanein*, arouse to activity; see page 135.

<sup>5</sup> Doisy, in connection with collaborators (Allen, E. (Missouri), Pratt, J. P. (Ford Hosp., Detroit), see *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 85, p. 399, 1925) reports that the effects of injecting the extract into spayed rats produced characteristic changes in the vaginal epithelium; these changes are utilized to define the ovarian hormone unit, which Doisy does as follows: One unit is the greatest dilution of extract of the ovarian follicle which, in three injections during a day, is followed by a characteristic vaginal epithelial change on the morning of the third day.

<sup>6</sup> A glucose from digitalis.

<sup>7</sup> See Corner, G. W. (Johns Hopkins University), *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 457, 1923.

<sup>8</sup> Steinach, E. (University of Vienna, Austria).



materials for the interstitial cells. It is in the interstitial cells that a hormone is supposed to be produced. Perhaps psychic effects are encountered, which give the feeling of "rejuvenescence." It is known that operations similar to this, employed to sterilize criminals, give rise to prostate enlargement; this may cause the apparently beneficial effects. The evaluation of the Steinach operation, irradiation, thorium, or actinium treatment varies with different observers.



Fig. 196.—Doisy's ovarian hormone. No. 805, control. No. 806, 1 mg. of the substance daily for four days. No. 807, 2 mgs. daily for four days. No. 808, control for No. 809. No. 809, 1 mg. daily for eight days. (Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 718, 1924.)

*Premature development, or heightened activity of the sex-glands, occurs generally associated with tumors of the sex glands, of the cortex of the adrenal, or with hypophyseal disturbances. It is not known whether administration of gland substance is favorable or not. However, surgical operation has led to astonishing results of curative value.*

*Osteomalacia*<sup>1</sup> is a disease having some relation to the gonads. In

<sup>1</sup> Greek *osteon*, bone, and *malakia*, softening.



it, the calcium metabolism is deranged. It is more common in women and is frequently accompanied by exophthalmic goiter and tetany. Castration generally retards the disease and may effect a cure. The condition is relieved by childbirth, or by induced abortion. Some favorable results have followed administration of pituitary substance. To attribute the disease definitely to disturbance of one endocrine system is not yet possible.

**Diseases Not Necessarily Connected with the Gonadal System.—**

*Marie's disease*,<sup>1</sup> or acromegaly,<sup>2</sup> is attributed to the excessive activity of the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. The nose, lips, tongue, jaw, feet, and hands become enlarged and also the sella turcica. The pituitary gland presses upon the brain and localization symptoms follow. The thyroid becomes affected, while other glands, like the sex glands, atrophy. Gland therapy has been of little aid, the chief form of treatment being either surgical removal of a portion of the gland, or Roentgen-ray application. Sometimes the disease is treated from the standpoint of the thyroid. The pituitary gland consists of anterior and posterior lobes, with the pars intermediary intercalated between them. The anterior lobe secretes one of the two hormones of the gland, namely, tethylin.<sup>3</sup> Pituitrin probably arises in the pars intermedia and is stored in the posterior lobe. We have already spoken of the secretion of the substance called pituitrin (page 651) and of Abel's preparation as a tartrate.<sup>4</sup> The disease diabetes insipidus, characterized by an excessive excretion of urine, seems to be correlated with lesions of the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. Administration of pituitrin tartrate causes a reduction of urine excretion. The tartrate has pronounced pharmacological effects which are taken advantage of in obstetrics.

*Fröhlich's*<sup>5</sup> *Syndrome* is characterized by fatty deposition, or obesity, atrophy of the gonads and other glands of the endocrine system, lowered mental and physical activity of the body as a whole, optic involvement and lowered or suppressed action of the hypophysis. Treatment is by operation, or administration of gland substance, but in

<sup>1</sup> Marie, Pierre, French physician of the nineteenth century.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *akros*, top, and *megale*, great; meaning the extremities, which become enlarged in this disease.

<sup>3</sup> Tethylin, named by T. B. Robertson (Adelaide, South Australia). See his *Biochemistry*, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1924, 2d ed.

<sup>4</sup> Abel, J. J., *Industrial and Eng. Chem.*, vol. 16, p. 1031, 1924.

<sup>5</sup> Fröhlich, A. (Austrian neurologist, contemporary). See Figs. 198 and 199.

such gland feeding does not seem to affect the gland itself, but rather the body functions, such as the reduction of obesity. The sight, if impaired, is not benefited by gland therapy, because the growth of the gland infringes upon the optic nerves, and since the size of the gland is not reduced in therapy the optical defects are not bettered.

*Gigantism* is a condition best described as *early acromegaly*, although some observers (Biedl) believe the two to be different.



Fig. 197.—Fröhlich syndrome. Male. Service of Dr. Solis-Cohen, Jefferson Hospital. Note the deposition of fat, immature external genital organs, small stature. The sight is impaired, owing to the encroachment of the pituitary upon the optic nerves. (From S. Solis-Cohen and E. Weiss, *Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.*, April, 1925; courtesy of Lea & Febiger.)

The principal basis for differentiating the two diseases is that there is a characteristic difference in the behavior of the gonads: In acromegaly there is a premature development, while in gigantism a condition similar to eunuchism is found. Many other glands belonging to the system of endocrines are affected in gigantism. The hypophysis may be involved, but hyperfunction of this organ is not alone the cause of gigantism. The adrenal cortex is enlarged, hyperplasia of the chromaffin system occurs, and enormous enlargement of the

pancreas is characteristic. This last condition is commonly associated with diabetes mellitus. The death rate of giants is high during the earlier years of life, due to the exhaustion of the secretions and the failure of the glands producing them. Gigantism has been cited as an example of the "pluriglandular diseases."

*Multiple endocrine sclerosis* is a second member of this group. It is characterized by deficiency in general, progressive weakness, anemia, failing mental vigor, defective senses, cachexia, and the development



Fig. 198.—Sister of the subject of Fig. 197. (From S. Solis-Cohen and E. Weiss, Amer. Jour. Med. Sci., April, 1925; courtesy of Lea & Febiger.)

of conditions characteristic of special endocrine diseases, such as Addison's disease, late eunuchoidism and adiposity. Brittleness of the nails, loosening of the teeth, and thinning of the bones are additional features. Therapy from the standpoint of endocrinology is uncertain, but particular gland substances, like thyroid, have beneficial results.

*Pancreatic insufficiency*, involving sugar and fat metabolism (diabetes mellitus), has been considered previously.<sup>1</sup> Insulin is the par-

<sup>1</sup> Pages 502 and 519.

ticular product in question. It is necessary for the utilization of both sugar and fat. Administration of insulin restores, for a time, the normal function of glucid and lipid metabolism. We have spoken previously, also, of the beneficial use of whole gland substance along with insulin.<sup>1</sup> This gives some basis for the belief that insulin is not the only hormone of the pancreas, and that it is ineffective in the absence of that organ.

*Diabetes insipidus*<sup>2</sup> has been mentioned previously (page 655) as being characterized by abnormally high urinary output, with low or no sugar content, intense thirst, great appetite, loss of bodily vigor, adiposity, and sexual disturbances. There is no pathological histological finding indicating the cause of the disease, but it is known that polyuria, at least, is induced by irritating the hypophysis and the region surrounding this organ. The disease has been found associated with tumor of the hypophysis. It has been held in check by administration of pituitary substance. Feeding or injecting the posterior gland substance induced polyuria in normal subjects. The disease, then, concerns the posterior lobe and perhaps the pars intermedia and acromegaly the anterior portion of the gland.

**General Considerations Concerning the Endocrines.**—The criterion for the presence of an internal secretion depends upon: (1) The identification of the substance in the blood or lymph leaving the organ in which it is supposed to be produced.

(2) Symptoms which develop following excision of the organ producing the substance or suppression of its activity are affected by administration of the gland or substance isolated from it.

(3) Evidences of pathological symptoms appear after long periods of administration of the substance or gland from which it is procured.

*The question remains, How many diseases mentioned above can be attributed to deficiency in or excessive production of endocrine substances?* The reader will recall the relatively few instances in which the above criteria hold. Epinephrin has been detected in the blood leaving the

<sup>1</sup> Page 501.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *dia*, through, and *bainein*, to pass. The term is applied to any condition in which urine is abundantly excreted. Insipidus, from the Latin, meaning *without taste*, and refers to the difference in taste between "sweet urine" (of diabetes mellitus) and the tasteless or salty urine of the patient with diabetes insipidus. The taste of the urine was for many years the chief means of differentiating these diseases, and in the rural districts, where physicians are unable to provide special laboratory facilities, the method is resorted to even at the present time.



glands, but in adrenal deficiency, administration of epinephrin is not of direct benefit. Again, administration of epinephrin over a period of any length does not produce conditions resembling those pathological states which are supposed to be due to hypersecretion of this substance. Turning to thyroxin, this substance has not been isolated from the efferent blood or lymph of the thyroid, but it is quite conceivable that the substance is given to the blood in such exceedingly small quantities that our means of analysis are inadequate. However, criteria (2) and (3) are readily demonstrated experimentally. In the case of insulin, all three criteria have been found applicable, for, although the chemically pure substance has not been isolated at the date of writing,<sup>1</sup> its action can be demonstrated in the blood leaving the pancreas, thus signifying its presence; criteria (2) and (3) have been successfully applied. However, after leaving these substances, we have difficulty in assigning any of the three criteria to endocrine organs and the supposed secretions peculiar to them. There is no reason, however, why future work should not demonstrate the chemical nature of the substance derived from the pituitary, the gonads, and other organs. The work of Abel on pituitrin and of Collip on the parathyroid represents successful attempts.

**The Interrelation of Organs of Internal Secretion.**—These have been discussed by Hoskins<sup>2</sup> and by Carlson,<sup>3</sup> the latter warning that “in this field appears the maximum fiction and the minimum of established facts.” Carlson states that the most conspicuous correlations are as follows:

1. Dependence of the ovaries and testes on normal development and functioning of the thyroid and pituitary.
2. The interrelation between the hypophysis and the presence of normal thyroid and gonads.
3. Thyroid administration over long periods induces adrenal and hypophyseal hyperplasia. Other organs are affected, making it impossible to believe that the effect is specific.
4. In experimental animals (larval frogs) excision of the thyroids leads to hypertrophy of the parathyroids. This has not been observed in mammals.

<sup>1</sup> See, however, page 500, concerning Abel's work with insulin.

<sup>2</sup> Hoskins, R. G. (Ohio State University; founder of the journal *Endocrinology*), *Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.*, vol. 141, p. 154, 1911.

<sup>3</sup> Carlson, A. J. (Chicago), *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 98, 1922.



5. Lesions of the adrenal cortex (tumors) are correlated with premature sex development; vice versa, removal of the gonads has been observed to affect the cortex, causing hyperplasia.

6. Removal of the gonads exerts a retardation on the development of the thymus, but no other significant fact points to the affiliation of thymus with endocrine organs, or the identification of this organ as an organ of internal secretion. This view of Carlson may be somewhat modified by the recent statements of Marine,<sup>1</sup> who finds correlations

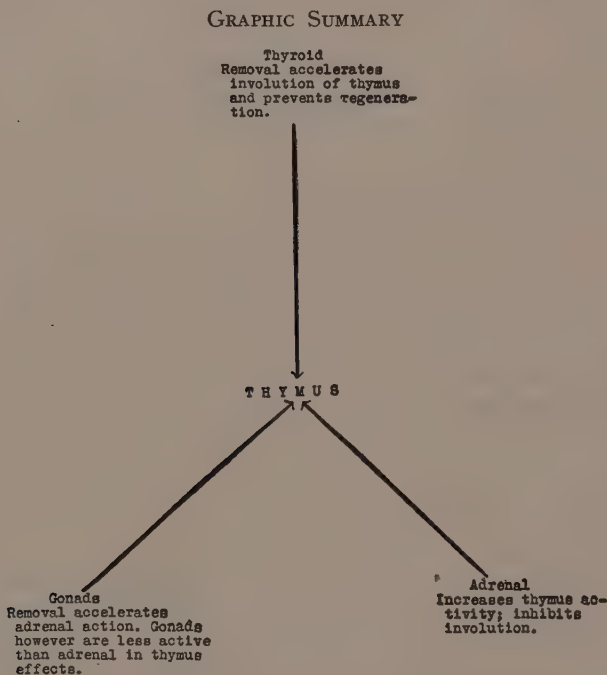


Chart showing the relations between the thymus gland and other endocrines.

between the thymus, adrenal, gonadal, and other glands of internal secretion.

**The Rôle of Endocrine Organs in the Production of Disease.**—This has been discussed in the paper of Carlson just mentioned and by Dercum.<sup>2</sup> Let us review, briefly, the evidence submitted by Dercum:

*Thymus.*—This organ is associated with lymphatic hyperplasia

<sup>1</sup> Presented to the Federation of Societies of Experimental Biology and Medicine, Washington, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Page 652.

and persistent thymus. Hyperplasia of the thyroid, pancreas, adrenal medulla, and of the testicles results from thymectomy. Thymic asthma and death are attributed to toxic conditions due to the interference in normal functioning of the thymus, since this organ is found to have undergone hyperplasia. However, mere traumatic pressure is inadequate to explain the conditions. The relation between persistent thymus and hypoplasia of the adrenal cortex has been asserted by several workers. Many cases of hyperthyroidism are accompanied by persistent thymus.

*Thyroid.*—The relation between thyroid and thymus has just been discussed. Hyperplasia of the one frequently accompanies hyperplasia of the other and the same may be said of hypoplastic conditions. Hyperthyroidism depresses pancreatic function, leading to glycosuria because of diminished insulin output. Connection exists between thyroid activity and the function of the sympathetic system, which may be correlated with the manifestations found in hyperthyroidism (flushing, etc.), in which it is probable that adrenal activity is stimulated by the thyroid by way of the sympathetic. Perhaps the exaggerated stature in hyperthyroidism is correlated with the hyperfunctioning of the pituitary, which is known to become enlarged, especially if hyperthyroidism begins during adolescence.

*Pituitary.*—As already indicated, the pituitary frequently enlarges in both hypo- and in hyperthyroidism, attributable, by Dercum, to compensatory development. In *adipositas dolorosa* the pituitary is affected, along with the thyroid, pointing to a common affection of the endocrine organs, since the sex glands (interstitial as well as primary sex cells) and adrenals are concerned. The thymus is abnormally persistent in many cases of Fröhlich syndrome and especially in the removal of the anterior lobe in experimental animals. The posterior lobe seems to have no correlative action with other endocrines, but secretes a special agent, similar in function to epinephrin.

*Pancreas.*—Hyperfunctioning of the pancreas is found in hyperthyroidism and in hyperpituitarism. Hyperfunctioning is observed in hypopituitarism. Endocrine disturbances leading to adiposity involve pancreatic hyperfunctioning. Thyroidectomy sometimes leads to pancreatic enlargement.

*Adrenal Gland; Cortex.*—Relations between the genital system and the adrenal cortex seem established. Hypertrophy of the cortex

is associated with pseudohermaphroditism,<sup>1</sup> either congenital or acquired.

*Adrenal Gland; Medulla.*—This has already been referred to on pages 646 and 647. Gonads: The sex glands are correlated with diminished thyroid, persistent thymus, and perhaps hyperpituitarism. The pineal bears some relation to the gonads.

*Parathyroid.*—Relations are supposed to exist between the parathyroids and the chromaffin system, the thymus and the thyroid.

**Summary.**—Carlson has summarized the findings from experimental data as follows: Extirpation of the following organs belonging to the endocrine system, or assumed to belong to it, leads to the results named:

*Thyroid.*—Cretinism (young); myxedema (adult). Induced myxedema never completely resembles the myxedema of the pathologist.

*Parathyroids.*—Tetany; depression; death, unless especially controlled by diet or gland administration.<sup>2</sup>

*Pancreas.*—Diabetes mellitus.

*Testes.*—Infantilism (young), loss of estrus, degeneration of the secondary sex characters.

*Ovaries.*—Infantilism; in the adult, premature menopause and atrophy of the secondary sex characters.

*Adrenal Medulla.*—No pathological state.

*Adrenal Cortex.*—Addison's disease, as judged by symptoms similar to those of human Addison's disease (prostration, etc.).

*Pituitary, Anterior Lobe.*—Infantilism (young); adiposity and loss of vigor (adult); atrophy of the gonads and loss of estrus; death (disputed by some).

*Pituitary, Posterior Lobe.*—No symptoms of pathological nature. Whether diabetes insipidus is produced by posterior lobe pituitarectomy or not is open for more critical work.

*Pineal.*—Without pathological results.

*Thymus.*—Without effect, unless adolescence is hastened.

As a general conclusion, Carlson believes that extirpation experiments afford no basis for believing that one endocrine system may substitute another.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *pseudo*, false, *Hermes* (a god) and *Aphrodite* (a goddess), partaking of the properties of both sexes. In pseudohermaphroditism the condition is one in which while the primary sex cells remain either male or female, the bodily characteristics resemble the opposite sex.

<sup>2</sup> Page 648.

**Detoxication Function of the Endocrine System.**—Experimentation has not yet revealed the answer to this question. It is not possible at present to state definitely whether organs of internal secretion function to care for the poisons which, under all conditions, are present in the body. We have discovered various chemical means for detoxicating substances. The many instances in which toxic symptoms develop following removal of one of the endocrine glands have led some observers to believe that the function of the gland is to inhibit intoxications.

#### SUGGESTED READINGS

- Abt, I. A. *Pediatrics*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., in several volumes, vol. 1, 1923. Articles concerning the endocrines appear under different headings; refer to the index in each volume.
- Addison, T. *On the Constitution and Local Effects of Disease of the Suprarenal Bodies*, London, England, 1855.
- Aub, J. C. The Relations of Internal Secretions to Metabolism, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 95, 1922.
- Barker, L. F. *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1922.
- Biedl, A. *Innere Sekretion*, Berlin, Urban und Schwarzenberg, 1910.
- Blum, F. Die Schilddruese als entgiftendes Organ, *Berliner klin. Wochenschr.*, vol. 35, p. 950, 1898.
- Cannon, W. B. Some Conditions Controlling Internal Secretions, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 92, 1922.
- Carlson, A. J. Hypofunction and Hyperfunction of the Ductless Glands, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 98, 1922.
- Cushing, H. *The Pituitary Gland and Its Disorders*, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 1912 (out of print).
- Dercum, F. X. *The Biology of the Internal Secretions*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1924.
- Doisy, E. A., et al. Preparation and Properties of an Ovarian Hormone, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 59, p. xlv (Proceedings), 1924. Also *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 61, p. 711, 1924. Also see p. 653 of present book.
- Falta, W. (Tr. by Meyers, M. K.). *Endocrine Diseases*, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 3d ed, 1923.
- Hoskins, R. G. Some Principles of Endocrinology Applied to Organotherapy, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 79, p. 104, 1922.
- Hoskins, R. G. Some Current Trends in Endocrinology, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 77, p. 1459, 1921.
- Hoskins, R. G. An Appraisal of Endocrinology, *Northwest Medicine*, June, 1923.
- Hoskins, R. G. The Function of the Endocrine Glands, *Scientific Monthly*, vol. 18, p. 257, 1924.
- Krumbaar, E. B. Pituitary Disorders in Their Relation to Acromegaly, etc., *Med. Clin. of N. Amer.*, November, 1921, p. 927, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1921.
- Loeb, Leo. Corpus Luteum and the Periodicity in the Sexual Cycle, *Science*, vol. 48, p. 273, 1918.
- Lueders, C. W. The Use of Laboratory Methods in the Diagnosis of Early Hyperthyroidism, *Arch. Int. Med.*, vol. 24, p. 432, 1919.

- MacClendon, J. F. Inverse Relations Between Iodin in Food and Drink and Goiter, Simple and Exophthalmic, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 82, p. 1669, 1924.
- Macleod, J. J. R. Insulin and Diabetes, *British Med. Jour.*, vol. for 1922, p. 833.
- Marine, D., and Kimball, O. P. The Prevention of Simple Goiter in Man, *Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc.*, vol. 77, p. 1068, 1921.
- Marshall, F. H. A. The Internal Secretions of the Reproductive Organs, *Physiological Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 335, 1923.
- Opie, E. L. On the Relation of Chronic Interstitial Pancreatitis to the Islands of Langerhans and to Diabetes Mellitus, *Jour. Exp. Med.*, vol. 5, p. 397, 1901.
- Park, E. A. The Etiology of Rickets, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 106, 1923.
- Pfahler, G. E. The Treatment of Hyperthyroidism by Radiation, *Med. Clin. of N. Amer.*, vol. 5, p. 853, 1921.
- Sajous, C. E. de Me. The Internal Secretions, etc., Philadelphia, F. A. Davis & Co., 10th ed., 1922.
- Stanley, L. L. Testicular Substance Implantation, *Endocrinol.*, vol. 5, p. 701, 1921.
- Steinach, E. Verjuengung duech experimentelle Neubelebung der alterden Pubertätsdruese, Berlin, J. Springer, 1920.
- Stewart, G. N. Adrenalectomy and the Relation of the Adrenal Bodies to Metabolism, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 4, p. 163, 1924.
- Zentmeyer, W. The Etiological Relation of the Eye to Endocrine Diseases, *Penna. Med. Jour.*, vol. 25, p. 523, 1922.
- The journal called *Endocrinology* prints résumés of important papers. Publications relating to vitamins are cited on page 581.



## CHAPTER XV

### THE EXCRETIONS OF THE BODY

"If you can measure that of which you speak, and can express it by a number, you know something; but if you cannot measure it, your knowledge is unsatisfactory."—*William Thomson (Lord Kelvin)*.

WE shall first consider various methods of studying the qualitative and quantitative chemistry of bodily excretions, as familiarity with this subject is essential to an understanding of the function of these substances in the organism, and to a formulation of a physiology of excretion. Most of the methods employed today in clinical laboratories have been devised by biochemical students of the Western Hemisphere, but, as a rule, European chemists contributed the fundamental principles. By these methods the excretory function of the urine, breath, perspiration, and feces have been determined. By them the clinician has been enabled to diagnose important diseases and to follow the course of the disease. The great discovery by Banting of insulin would be of little value in therapeutics, were it not possible to make an exact quantitative determination of blood-sugar and to govern administration thereby. This is accomplished by the method of Folin, Benedict, or others. The great importance of prognosis in modern medicine emphasizes the necessity of the student's familiarity with the methods and results of blood and urine analysis. For a practising physician and theoretical biochemist alike, the following pages are of the greatest importance.

Although the blood is an intermediary between the tissues and the excretory organs, and logically demands discussion at this point, the chemistry of the blood is better studied after the methods involved in urinalysis have been considered, for many of the blood chemistry methods are adaptations of those of urinalysis. A brief résumé of the methods of excretion of the products of metabolism follows:

#### Organic Substances:

##### 1. *Products of glucid metabolism:*

- (a) Carbon dioxid is excreted in gaseous form in the breath, in conjugated form as constituents of the urine, perspira-

tion, saliva, etc. Concerning the excretion of  $\text{CO}_2$  as inorganic carbonate, see below under Inorganic Substances.

- (b) Water is excreted in the breath, urine, perspiration, and feces and chemically bound in many compounds.
- (c) Intermediate products of glucid metabolism—acids and conjugated substances, like glucuronates—are excreted through the urine.

## 2. *Products of lipid metabolism:*

- (a) As for glucids.
- (b) As for glucids.
- (c) Intermediary products of lipid metabolism, especially those formed in pathological states such as occur in acidosis, are excreted in the urine, although in severe cases the breath may contain certain products (acetone, in the acidosis of diabetes mellitus).
- (d) Cholesterol and other sterols are excreted through the feces. The phospholipid phosphorus is excreted as inorganic phosphate in the urine. Recent investigations demonstrate that the phosphorus of the urinary "nucleoprotein" comes largely from exogenous sources.

## 3. *Products of protid metabolism:*

- (a) As for glucids.
- (b) As for glucids.
- (c) Intermediate products of protid metabolism (peptides; amino-acids) are excreted by way of the urine.
- (d) Aromatic rings belonging to amino-acids, like tyrosine, tryptophan, etc., are excreted as open-chain compounds, and are passed off in a manner similar to glucid products; or they are conjugated to form such products as hippuric acid. The latter is the usual way.
- (e) The amino-group of proteins are excreted largely through the urine as urea. Some nitrogen is excreted as purin, almost entirely through the urine, but to a small extent through the salivary and sweat glands. The nitrogen of the breath is derived from the air by inhalation, and, except for a small amount which may be mechanically retained for a short time, leaves the body on the next expiration.

**Inorganic Substances.**—These are principally salts, and are excreted in the urine, perspiration, and feces. Those in the urine are largely concerned with maintenance of proper acid-base relations in the body. Cystin sulphur and sulphur coming from other protid components is excreted as sulphate, inorganic and ethereal, but also as unoxidized sulphur which escapes burning in the liver.<sup>1</sup> Phosphorus from the phospholipids, nucleoprotids, and elsewhere is excreted by way of the urine. Potential phosphoric and sulphuric acids in the form of salts, inorganic, conjugated, etc., are constantly constituents of the urine. Calcium is excreted through the urine, but largely through the feces. In the female, calcium is excreted also through the milk. Sodium chlorid is excreted through the urine, perspiration, alimentary glands, and feces. Iron is excreted through the feces.

#### THE URINE

**Definition.**—The urine<sup>2</sup> is a straw-colored liquid secreted by the kidneys, of aromatic odor and salty taste. Its average normal specific gravity is 1.015, and it gives the Jaffé reaction for creatinin.<sup>3</sup> Its constituents are derived from the blood as it passes through the kidney. Space does not permit a discussion of the various theories of the secretion of the urine, but the author inclines strongly to the essentials of the Ludwig hypothesis<sup>4</sup> of filtration. Richards<sup>5</sup> has shown that the flow of urine through the glomerulus varies with the blood-pressure, that the variations in concentration of urinary constituents run parallel with those in the blood, and other factors behave in such a manner that they may be reconciled with the theory mentioned above.

The kidney itself is not of great importance in the production of substances found in the urine, although several recent investigations have demonstrated that it is more actively engaged in syntheses<sup>6</sup> than was formerly believed.

<sup>1</sup> Page 578.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *ouron*, derived from *reo*, to flow. The Latin is *urina*.

<sup>3</sup> Of the many identification tests for urine, the only reliable one is the demonstration of creatinin.

<sup>4</sup> For a statement of the theories see Brubaker's Physiology, cited on page 601, or Cushny.

<sup>5</sup> Richards, A. N., Professor of Pharmacology, University of Pennsylvania. See Richards, A. N., and Schmidt, C. F., Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 59, p. 489, 1922. Also Transactions of the College of Physicians, Philadelphia, volume for 1925.

<sup>6</sup> We refer to the formation of hippuric acid and of ammonia, both discussed in later sections (page 726 and Chapter XVI).

Of the organic constituents, urea exists in the greatest amount, and is formed chiefly, if not entirely, in the liver. The ammonia of the urine is formed in the kidneys, and conjugated products, such as hippuric acid, are also produced in this organ, in part at least.

Inorganic substances found in the urine as, for example, sodium chlorid, are wholly derived from the blood. According to the modern conception of the formation of urine, we may say, that it is deprotidized blood, but the concentration of the various ingredients differ in the two cases, as some non-protid constituents of the blood do not occur in the urine except under pathological conditions. Thus, creatin is a normal constituent of human blood (0.0035 g. per cent.), but occurs in the urine in the adult male only in disease. Its appearance in the female is physiological after puberty, at sexual events like pregnancy and the menopause.

**General Characteristics of the Urine.**—The amount of urine excreted during a period of twenty-four hours may vary between wide limits, but the constituents are maintained fairly uniformly, other conditions being equal. This means that the amount of water in the urine is a changeable quantity. With the change in dilution of the urine, other properties change. The higher the water content of the urine, the lower the specific gravity, and the paler the color. The diet affects certain constituents; the more meat eaten, the greater the amount of water excreted, because of the diuretic effect of the urea produced from the meat and excreted in the urine. The more water excreted through the kidneys, the lower the specific gravity of the urine. Other urinary constituents are little affected by the diet. Creatinin is an example. The urine and the gastro-intestinal secretions are the two fluids of the body which depart radically from the neutrality of body fluids. Man, being an omnivore,<sup>1</sup> secretes a urine which is not as highly acid as that of carnivorous animals, but more acid than that of herbivores.

**Clinical Value of Urine Studies.**—The urine plays an important part in clinical diagnosis. Every examination for life insurance requires a qualitative, and frequently a quantitative, determination of its constituents. Each operation of any importance involves as a precautionary measure the examination of the urine. It is true that since the development of rapid and exact methods of blood analysis, urinalysis is of less importance in the diagnosis of many diseases,

<sup>1</sup> Latin *omne*, all, and *voro*, to eat; that is, capable of devouring a variety of foods.



but both are often necessary for exact and detailed study. Urinalysis is frequently made in conjunction with blood analysis, as in the urea concentration tests of Ambard, Maclean, and others. From an examination of the urinary excretion over a given period, valuable data concerning the condition of the subject and his metabolism are obtained. The examination of the urine has led to an understanding of the normal and pathological behavior of foods, and we now know rather completely the history of foods as they undergo various changes in the body.

### PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

**Volume of the Urine.**—The average, normal, daily (twenty-four-hour) excretion of urine of adults in the United States amounts to about 1200 mls.<sup>1</sup> This figure may be modified in a given individual by one or more of the following conditions:

1. Air temperature, involving season of the year.
2. Characteristic constitutional state, whether phlegmatic or nervous. Racial characteristics are modifying causes.
3. Predominant character of the food, protid, fat, or starch. Use of coffee and beverages.
4. Amount of water intake as water, and in milk and beverages.
5. Daily variations of body temperature, reaction, etc.

1. *Temperature and the Season.*—During the warmer months, the skin excretes more water than during the winter months, and consequently the urinary volume is lower, owing to the diversion of water from the kidneys to the skin. For the same reason, urine is more concentrated in summer than in the colder months of the year. In the author's experience there is an average difference of one hundredth in the specific gravity of urine for summer and winter; that is, a summer urine 1.025, winter, 1.015.<sup>2</sup> Vasomotor reactions stimulated by changes in temperature constantly modify the amount of water excreted by

<sup>1</sup> It is true that the United States is subjected to great variations in climate and also that its population is a "melting-pot" of many races, but nevertheless there is enough homogeneity of conditions to make the average daily excretion of urine less than in the Teutonic countries of Europe, and somewhat more than in the Romance peoples of the Mediterranean districts. Germans who have come to the United States adopt a lower diet in protids. Dutch do much the same.

<sup>2</sup> It is customary in clinical biochemistry to drop the decimal point in speaking of the specific gravity, and henceforth we shall do so, but it must be understood that "ten-fifteen" means 1.015.



the skin and by the kidneys. In a similar manner, but to a less extent, the water excreted by the lungs is correlated with that excreted through other organs, such as the kidneys and skin. Clothing has modified the sensitiveness of many persons to changes in temperature; owing to the mode of dress, the woman of civilized countries is more exposed to changes in temperature than men, so that she becomes inured to small changes.<sup>1</sup> The skin responds to changes in temperature somewhat according to the Weber-Fechner Law in psychology; before the skin responds to a gradual change in temperature, it is necessary that the temperature fall 3° C. A rapid fall in temperature is recognized even to the extent of half a degree, but such rapid changes are infrequently encountered by the unprotected skin of the civilized human being. An Eskimo may toil and perspire freely, sit down with his back to the wind and suffer no ill, while a similar behavior on the part of a tiro from civilization would probably lead to death.

2. *Race and Temperament.*—The amount of urine voided in twenty-four hours differs with race, probably owing to diet rather than any obscure cause. The Teutonic type generally excretes a larger volume of urine than the Romance type; but this difference may be correlated with the character of the diet, as the northern races eat much meat, which is conducive to increased excretion.

As a rule, individuals of excitable nature excrete more urine than those of a phlegmatic disposition. The mentally deranged, hysterical, and the insane void large volumes of urine. Normal persons, following unusual mental or emotional stress, have an increased flow of urine. This is found in students during examination periods. In some cases, however, such manifestations are caused by a large amount of beverages which contain diuretic substances (caffeine in coffee, etc.).

3. A *diet high in protids* favors increased elimination of water in the urine. The reason for this is that the meat is digested to amino-acids which are absorbed and converted to urea, a well-known diuretic. This property of urea causes dilatation of the renal artery and other renal vessels, thus bringing more blood to the kidney. Coffee, tea, and chocolate act as diuretics, owing to the purin content mentioned above. Irritation of the urinary tract by medicines (cantharides; croton-oil, etc.), bacterial toxins, or perhaps by the bacteria them-

<sup>1</sup> During the exposure to cold winds and water, after the sinking of the Titanic by collision with an ice-berg, it was reported that women showed less effects of the rigorous conditions than the men.

selves, tends to cause frequent micturition, which may or may not be a factor in increased fluid excretion.

4. *Intake of unusual amounts of water and milk* causes increased elimination of water, the excretion being about 400 mls. less per liter than the intake. There does not seem to be anything specific in these fluids. Whatever causes an increase in the volume of blood flowing through the kidney is conducive to an accelerated flow of urine.

5. *Day urine* is normally greater in volume than night urine.

	Mls.
Day urine.....	850
Night urine.....	350

Night urine greater in volume than 750 mls. indicates kidney trouble. The urine varies with the temperature of the body, which has a uniform variation throughout the day. The temperature (and urine volume) begins to rise about 6 A. M., regardless of such factors as exercise and diet, and this temperature elevation is accompanied by a sudden increase in urine excretion. The temperature reaches a peak about 4 P. M., which may be accompanied by a secondary increase in urine excretion. After 4 P. M. the temperature falls until morning, and there is an accompanying fall in urine excretion.<sup>1</sup> Under the heading Reaction more detailed study will be made of variations of urine during the day and night when correlated with hydrogen-ion concentration and other factors.<sup>2</sup>

*Pathological variations* in the volume of urine are found in the polyuria of diabetes mellitus and diabetes insipidus; in the polyuria accompanying lesions of the portions of the brain other than that associated with diabetes insipidus.<sup>3</sup> When water has been withheld in the tissues, as in nephritis, whether interstitial or parenchymatous, or in edema, pleurisy, etc., and then, owing to repair, there is a return to normal conditions, polyuria exists for a time. A decreased amount of urine is termed oliguria,<sup>4</sup> and this condition accompanies the low blood-pressure attendant upon heart disease, and is observed with fevers, diarrhea, and the toxemias of pregnancy. Total suppression of urine is known as anuria.<sup>5</sup> It occurs in bichlorid poisoning follow-

<sup>1</sup> Simpson, G. E. (University of Pennsylvania), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 59, p. 107, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> For variations of urine constituents during morning hours see Folin's Laboratory Guide, 1922. <sup>3</sup> Page 501. <sup>4</sup> Greek *oligos*, small.

<sup>5</sup> Greek *a*, privitive (meaning without), and urine.

ing a period of oliguria, in certain infectious diseases like scarlet fever, and during anesthesia. Anuria is not necessarily fatal, and may persist for over two weeks without an attending toxicity, called, uncritically, "uremia."<sup>1</sup>

#### Summarizing:

Normal excretion of urine, from 800 to 2500 mls. per twenty-four hours:  
 Polyuria ..... 2500 mls. or more.  
 Oliguria..... 800 mls. or less.  
 Anuria..... total suppression of the urine.

**Color of the Urine.**—The color of urine may be described as yellow; the average normal urine is straw yellow. This color deepens when the urine becomes concentrated, as when too small an amount of water is ingested while the subject perspires freely. Departure from straw yellow is abnormal. Brownish or reddish urine indicates either disease or the presence of a food ingredient that affects the color. Rhubarb and cascara cause deep yellow urines, something like the canary yellow following *santonin* (see below). While departures from the straw yellow of normal urine are not necessarily pathological, they should arouse suspicion in the mind of the observer.

*Variations in Normal Urine.*—Pale yellow: Polyuria, due to any of the factors mentioned above; alkaline reaction, in some cases; temporary anemia.

Greenish yellow: Characteristic of night urines, and of polyuria in diabetes insipidus, in which case the color is very slight.

Canary yellow: This color is produced by the drug *santonin*, used to remove round-worms from the alimentary tract, especially in children. The drug paralyzes the smooth muscle-fibers of the worm, so that it cannot maintain its position in the tract, and if the host is given a purgative, such as calomel, the worm will be swept out with the feces.

Deep yellow: Concentrated urine, as mentioned above.

Amber yellow: Characteristic of day urines.

*Pathological Variations.*—Pale yellow: Diabetes mellitus<sup>2</sup>; pathological anemias,<sup>3</sup> chlorosis; renal lesions, such as interstitial nephritis.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *ouron*, urine, and *'aima*, blood, or, literally, "urine in blood." For a method of detecting the presence of urine in blood see Tashiro, S., Medical Bull. Univ. Cincinnati, vol. 3, p. 8, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> The pale yellow of this urine is correlated with high specific gravity which distinguishes it from diabetes insipidus and other conditions of pale yellow colored urines.

<sup>3</sup> But not pernicious anemia.

**Reddish yellow:** Fevers; diseases of the lungs (pneumonia), liver (cirrhosis), etc. Bloody urines, as in children following use of turpentine for the cure of colds; in cases of lesions of the genito-urinary tract. Urea derivatives (veronal<sup>1</sup>), used as soporifics, produce hematuria,<sup>2</sup> which makes the urine reddish. This, in concentrated conditions, has a deep wine color.

**Brownish-black urine:** Icterus,<sup>3</sup> due to bile; concentrated blood-pigment, especially methemoglobin. Types of tumors (melanotic). Alkaptonuria<sup>4</sup>; extensive suppuration; intestinal stasis, as in cholera. Caution: Certain medicines cause urines almost identical in color with those produced by pathological states: creosote used in tuberculosis; resorcinol, used in checking diarrhea; also many coal-tar products.

**Bluish-green urines:** Pale greenish urines are voided by subjects with beginning icterus. A blue urine follows administration of the urinary antiseptic, methylene-blue; the colors in different stages after administration vary from green to blue and later become green again.

**Taste of the urine,** normally, is salty. In former times diabetes mellitus was diagnosed by the sweetish taste of the urine. The name of the disease was derived from this fact. (See page 658, note 2.)

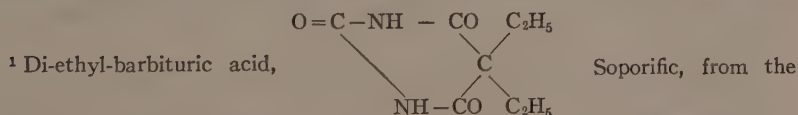
**Odor.**—The urine has, under normal conditions, a characteristic odor, which is quite evident after considerable dilution. The odor is due to:

(1) "Urinoid," a compound of unknown chemical composition, which gives the characteristic odor of urine, even after all visible and chemical means of identification have been removed. In the preparation of urinary ingredients like creatinin (see below), the urinoid odor clings to the fractions after precipitation with picric acid and after extensive washings.

(2) Ammonia, which is normally present, but which increases on standing. The odor of the barnyard is largely that of ammonia.

The odor is modified by:

(1) Putrefactive changes in the bladder, as in urinary cystitis, the odor being aromatic, but different from the normal odor. Urine after



Latin *sopor*, sleep, and *facto*, to make.

<sup>2</sup> Page 377.

<sup>3</sup> Greek *ikteros*, yellow. The disease is generally known as jaundice.

<sup>4</sup> Page 264. The color is due to oxidized homogentisic acid.



being voided likewise undergoes a similar change. In cases of extensive pyelitis, a characteristic odor, a mixture of urinoid, ammonia, and hydrogen sulphide arises.

(2) The acetone odor, as found in acidosis, such as that of diabetes mellitus. In cases of an acidity, in which putrefactive changes occur, in the stomach and intestine, this odor appears.

(3) Fecal odor: Affections of the urinary tract as in perforations or rectovesical fistulae from tuberculosis, malignancy, or radium, etc.

(4) Food and medicinal odors: Some food odors pass into the urine, as in the case of onions; asparagus gives rise to a sulphurous odor, due to methyl-mercaptan,  $\text{CH}_3\text{SH}$ . Turpentine and terpin hydrate give rise to an odor resembling that of violets. Menthol,<sup>1</sup> used to relieve pain, gives rise to a peppermint odor.

**Appearance.**—The appearance of urine, when viewed by transmitted light, is normally clear, but, even in health, this may be modified by the diet. The urine of herbivores, like the cow and horse, is turbid, owing to the precipitation of the urinary phosphates in the alkaline urine.<sup>2</sup> The urine of man behaves in a similar manner when the diet is vegetarian. Normal urine, on standing, develops a more or less distinct cloud, or nubecula,<sup>3</sup> which is due to the precipitation in acid urine of the mucin; the mucin is secreted by the lining of the urinary tract. Mixed with the mucus are pavement epithelial cells, and other cellular elements. Even acid urine, on standing, becomes alkaline through the action of bacteria on urea, which frees ammonia. Phosphates are precipitated under these circumstances. Bacteria in time will cause a cloud, since they multiply rapidly in standing urine to which no preservative has been applied.

**Sediment.**—Fresh urine should show no sediment, but after a meal rich in protids, a reddish sediment, due to urates, may appear when the urine has stood for a short time, or immediately after urination. Standing urine may show deposits of uric acid crystals and later of urates and of phosphates, like calcium phosphate. Sediment of calcium carbonate may appear. In certain diseases the sediment may contain erythrocytes, pus, casts of epithelium from the tubules of the kidney, and spermatozoa.

<sup>1</sup> Derived from a mixture of aromatic substances from the plant *Mentha piperita* or *Hedoma* sp. The mixture is called "oil-of-peppermint." Menthol (page 465) in the body gives the peculiar odor to the urine.

<sup>2</sup> For the cause of alkalinity in herbivorous urine see page 574.

<sup>3</sup> Latin *nubes*, cloud, and the suffix, *-cula*, diminutive.



**Reaction.**—The mixed, twenty-four-hour urine of most persons is acid when freshly voided and tested with litmus-paper. Urine taken over short periods, however, may vary from actual alkalinity to its maximum acidity.<sup>1</sup> Following a meal there is a period known as the “alkaline tide” during which acidity becomes reduced and the urine neutral, or alkaline. The tide is most marked on a protid diet and least on a glucid meal. It is in direct relation to the amount of gastric

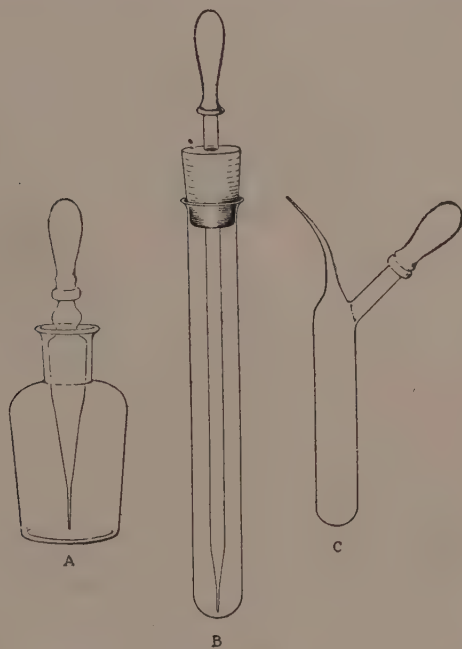


Fig. 199.—Felton's method for determination of  $pH$  in small amounts of fluid. Drop-plate method. A drop of the unknown is placed on a spot-plate and a drop of buffer containing an appropriate dye is added. This is continued until the colors match. (Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 46, p. 302, 1921.)

acidity due to hydrochloric acid, for the tide does not appear in an-acidity and not usually after a period of fasting. Hubbard<sup>2</sup> believes that the secretion of gastric juice is the chief factor in determining

<sup>1</sup> Urine cannot be made more acid than  $pH$  5, nor more alkaline than  $pH$  8. In the frog, at least, the urine of the uriniferous tubules is alkaline as far as evidence from injected dyes is concerned.

<sup>2</sup> Hubbard, R. S. (p. 23). See Hubbard, R. S., Munford, S. A., and Allen, E. G., Gastric Secretion and the “Alkaline Tide” in Urine, Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 68, p. 207, 1924. Other references are given in this article.

the presence of an alkaline tide and its degree of development. The reason why the hydrochloric acid of the stomach determines the alkaline tide is that the acid-base balance of the body is affected by the secretion of HCl, and there are fewer acid radicles passing through the urine than during the period when HCl is not being excreted into the stomach. Folin<sup>1</sup> has shown that the acidity of the urine is due to (1) acid phosphates ( $\text{BH}_2\text{PO}_4$ ), and (2) organic acids, and the balance in such cases is determined by the total amount of acid radicles in the body. If the HCl drains away the  $\text{H}^+$  (which determines acidity), leaving the anion  $\text{Cl}^-$  to meet the cations  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , etc., a balance will be struck when there is a lowered excretion of acid-forming radicles in the urine. An obvious increase in the ammonia of the urine will result. It may be that the HCl is later absorbed by the walls of the intestine, into the blood, and there reduces the alkalinity during post-alkaline tide periods.

The relation between urine reaction and urine volume, mentioned above, is an inverse relation; during the night there is an increase in the acidity of the urine which is correlated with a decrease in the amount of urine secreted. The ammonia of the urine likewise increases.

The *degree of acidity of normal urine* may be expressed in terms of hydrogen-ion concentration, since true acidity, or effective reaction, is measured by the number of hydrions existing in the solution at the time. Normal human urine has an acidity thirty times<sup>2</sup> that of distilled water, or  $\text{pH}$  5. If the reaction is determined as titratable acidity, then the true acidity is 0.0001 that obtained by titration. Titration, then, gives a false idea of the reaction of the urine, unless it is carefully controlled to avoid the dissociation of ammonia compounds and the precipitation of some of the acid phosphates of the urine which are conjugated with calcium, it is quite unreliable. Folin<sup>3</sup> has devised such a method which is given in Chapter XVII, the Practical Exercises of the present book. The principle of the method is that a neutral solution of an oxalate ( $\text{Na}$ , or  $\text{K}$ ) is added to a quantity of urine. The

<sup>1</sup> Folin, O., Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 13, p. 45, 1905.

<sup>2</sup> The  $\text{pH}$  of distilled water is 7; this means  $(10)^{-7}$  or  $\frac{1}{10\ 000\ 000}$  normal. Multiplied by 30, we have  $\frac{1}{333\ 333+}$ , or  $3.3 (10)^{-5}$ , or about  $\text{pH}$  4.7.

<sup>3</sup> Folin, O., Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 9, p. 265, 1903, and vol. 13, p. 102, 1905. See also his book, p. 165.

oxalate (1) precipitates the ammonia as ammonium oxalate and thus prevents the interference with the indicator, phenolphthalein,<sup>1</sup> used in the titration, and (2) the premature formation of tribasic phosphate when alkali is added is prevented, for calcium is precipitated as calcium oxalate. Titration may then proceed, and since decinormal alkali is generally used, the result is expressed as the number of mls. of 0.1 normal alkali necessary to neutralize the acid in the full twenty-four-hour sample of urine. Normal urine gives about 600 mls. Estimated as hydrochloric acid, the titratable acidity in twenty-four hours is equal to approximately 2 gms. (36 drops) of the desk reagent.

**Factors Modifying the Urinary Reaction.**—(1) *Character of Food.*—The reaction of urine runs parallel with the diet, an average vegetarian diet giving pH 6.6, whereas a high protid diet gives pH 5.9. Starvation, involving an almost exclusive protid metabolism, produces a urine of maximal acidity, pH 5. The phosphorus and sulphur of the protid foods are converted into potential phosphoric and sulphuric acids. The alkali metals, such as Na, from plant food yield carbonates. Different kinds of protid food cause different degrees of acidity, meat giving more acid than eggs, for example. A diet of fat tends to increase the urinary acidity, since the alkali radicles are used to produce soaps.

(2) *Time of Day.*—Urine voided during the day is less acid than that voided at night, perhaps owing to the lack of intake of food during the night, which throws the body virtually upon its own tissues for maintenance, with consequent similarity to the metabolism of carnivores. The difference between day and night urine has been attributed also to the differences in respiratory rate of these two periods, the tendency being for active respiratory movements to be correlated with a lessening of acidity, and lower respiration to increased acidity.<sup>2</sup>

(3) *Acid-base Equilibria in the Body.*—Of the potential acids formed during metabolism in the body, carbon dioxid passes off largely in the breath, while all other acid substances must be excreted in the

<sup>1</sup> Phenolphthalein, in the presence of ammonia does not present a definite end-point because the indicator is a very weak acid and unites with a strong base,  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , which fixes the indicator and does not permit its dissociation as a free acid. With a slight excess of hydroxyl over  $\text{H}^+$ , the end-point is clear.

<sup>2</sup> Leathes, J. B. (page 198), *Brit. Med. Jour.*, vol. for 1919, Part 2, p. 165, 1919; also Collip, J. B. (page 20), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 41, p. 473, 1920. The principle involved is evolution of  $\text{CO}_2$  in active respiration.

urine. In general, there is a smaller intake of basic radicles in the food than of acid (page 575), and hence the equilibrium must be regulated to a certain extent by the kidney. This content of acid is increased under certain conditions, as in acidosis attendant upon exercise, as well as in pathological cases (see below). The alkali reserve is conserved by a mechanism in the kidney discovered by Benedict,<sup>1</sup> whereby ammonia is excreted to neutralize, as it may, acids which are brought to this organ in larger amounts than it can handle,<sup>2</sup> or perhaps even the usual amount of acid brought to the kidney by the blood. The ammonia replaces the blood bases and thus conserves them. The variation in reaction of the urine goes largely with that of the blood. Hence, factors of pathological nature, to be mentioned, affect first the reaction of the blood, and then that of the urine. As we shall see later, the alkali reserve may be estimated by determining the CO<sub>2</sub>-combining power of the blood.<sup>3</sup> This power bears a numerical relation to the reaction of the urine expressed as the index of acid excretion:

$$\text{Index} = 80 - 5\sqrt{\frac{D}{W}},$$

in which 80 is the maximum CO<sub>2</sub>-combining power of blood; 5, the root of the quantity (NH<sub>3</sub>-acid per liter of urine, expressed as 0.1 normal) and D the rate of this quantity excreted per twenty-four hours; W is the weight of the person in kilos. From 3 to 27 is normal; above 27 acidosis is indicated.

(4) *Physiological States*.—At the beginning of exercise there is a decrease in the acidity of urine, due to the rapid loss of CO<sub>2</sub> through the lungs and consequent readjustment of the blood reaction. Later, and in the case of individuals inured to exercise, there is an increase in acidity due to acidosis, that is, the production of acids mainly from the metabolism of fat which overburden the alkali reserve, and the ammonia formation which ordinarily compensates for increased acid production. Cold baths tend to produce urines of diminished acidity, and may cause alkaline urines.

Fasting causes an increased urinary acidity, since the person is virtually on a protid metabolism. The excretion of acid amounts to

<sup>1</sup> Benedict, S. R., and Nash, T. P., Jr. (Cornell Medical College, New York N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 48, p. 463, 1921; also Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 51, p. 183, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> For further discussion of Benedict's work on ammonia in the blood, etc., see Chapter XVI. Benedict and Nash derived the ammonia either from urea or from amino-acids by deamination.

<sup>3</sup> Page 70.

about 425 mls. expressed as 0.1 normal, per twenty four hours, when the excreted base is taken into consideration, or to about 925 mls. of total acid, if this factor is not considered. On an average diet the total acid excretion is about 950 mls., or, with bases subtracted, 120 mls. In the fetus, the total acid excretion is about 120 mls., but the bases excreted at the same time amount to 185 mls., giving a loss of base which must be met by the mother, and which probably accounts for the low alkali reserve of late pregnancy. In children up to one year of age, the excretion of acid varies according to whether the child is breast fed or is given cow's milk. Breast-fed infants excrete less acid than those fed on cow's milk:

Average acid excretion:	Mls. 0.1 normal acid.
Breast-fed infant.....	40
Cow-milk fed infant.....	250

For the child from one to ten years of age the acid excreted per twenty-four hours has been calculated at about 1834 mls., the value varying with the character of the food; fat, especially, causes an increase in acidity (page 677):

	Mls. 0.1 normal acid.
Excretion of acid on moderately fat diet.....	1670
Excretion of acid on high fat diet.....	1960

The distribution of acid excreted depends upon physiological states, but, on an average, it is as follows:

Acid excreted through the urine in twenty-four hours due to:

	Mls. 0.1 normal.
Acid phosphate.....	100 to 200
Acid neutralized by $\text{NH}_3$ .....	300 to 400
Acid as organic acid.....	0 to 150
Acid as carbonate.....	10 to 40

(5) *Pathological States*.—Acidosis is encountered in many diseases. Interference with blood-supply, interference with the oxidative powers of the body, and lowered oxygen tension in the air inhaled contribute to the production of acids in the body, the depletion of alkali reserve and overwhelming of the ammonia neutralizing power, with consequent excretion of acid. Since disease of any kind may cause reduction of gastric acidity, there is frequently a relative increase in acid excreted. In some diseases, however, the urine becomes alkaline.



In anemia, in certain debilitating nervous diseases, in pneumonia when there is rapid absorption of the exudate, the urine becomes alkaline.<sup>1</sup> Alkaline urine is encountered in typhoid fever. In chronic interstitial nephritis, there may be a retention of phosphate in the blood, which causes a lower total acid excretion through the kidneys and a tendency towards alkaline reaction, or an actual alkalinity in the urine. A pseudo-alkalinity is encountered in urinary cystitis, or pyelitis, where bacteria cause the decomposition of urea in the urine while it remains in the bladder. Pseudo-alkalinity is easily distinguished from true metabolic alkalinity by testing the urine with red litmus-paper. True alkalinity turns the paper permanently blue, whereas the volatile alkalinity of decomposed urine causes the blue to appear, but the red color returns when the paper dries.

(6) *Artificial Alteration of Urine Reaction*.—In urinary cystitis and pyelitis the urine becomes alkaline, and permits the growth of bacteria which stimulate the formation of pus, and cause irritation of the bladder and urethral walls. It is necessary to change the reaction of the urine to acid. This is done by administering acid phosphate,  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , which is normally responsible for the greater part of the acidity of the urine. Following this procedure, when the urine becomes acid, hexamethylene-tetramin<sup>2</sup> is given by mouth, and in the acidity of the urine the following reaction occurs:



The formaldehyde, thus freed, acts antiseptically. An alkaline, neutral, or low acid urine is desirable; in acidity, urinary calculi tend to develop. The alkaline reaction is acquired by (1) low protid, high vegetable and fruit diet, which increases the bases over the acid radicles; (2) medicinal administration in the form of sodium bicarbonate, citrates,<sup>3</sup> etc. Bases must be furnished to pregnant women and to children. This is the basis of the value of moderate protid and liberal fruit and vegetable diets for such persons. On the other hand, acid

<sup>1</sup> This does not indicate a fault in the acid-base metabolism, for investigators in Van Slyke's department at the Rockefeller Hospital have shown that the blood alkali reserve is practically normal. (Hastings, A. B., Neill, J. M., Morgan, H. J., and Binger, C. A. L., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med.*, vol. 21, p. 66, 1923.)

<sup>2</sup> Commercially known as "urotropin" (Greek *ouron*, urine, and *trope*, food).

<sup>3</sup> Citrates become oxidized to carbonates, which explains the anomaly that "acid" fruits, like lemons, furnish base; page 575.

diets are indicated in certain diseases, as in infantile tetany and rickets.<sup>1</sup>

**Specific Gravity.**<sup>2</sup>—The specific gravity of the urine varies widely under physiological and pathological states. In general, urinary volume and specific gravity are inversely proportionate; when the volume is high, the specific gravity is low. This, however, is by no means invariably the case, and the exceptions are of value in clinical diagnosis. In diabetes mellitus the volume and specific gravity are both elevated, owing to polyuria and to glucose and accompanying substances.

There are the same seasonal and environmental variations, as in the case of urinary volume. In summer, the specific gravity increases, especially when there is not enough liquid in the diet. The average normal specific gravity is 1.015. The variations are as follows:

*Seasonal.*—These have been discussed on page 669.

*Hourly.*—Considerable variation between day and night urine, and urine excreted from hour to hour, is characteristic of a normal state. "Fixation of specific gravity," that is, flattening out of the curve of urine excretion, indicating a lessening of the variation in specific gravity from period to period, is pathognomonic. This is especially true if the lessening occurs while the specific gravity is low, that is, 1015 or below. A difference of from 8 to 9 points in the specific gravity for two hour periods is normal for day urines. The specific gravities of day and night urines normally are not widely different, but there must be slight differences in the concentration of day urine to compensate for variations in environmental conditions, whereas at night these conditions are usually constant.

*Pathological Variations.*—Some of these have been indicated above.

<sup>1</sup> Zucker, T. F., Johnson, W. C., and Barnett, M. (Columbia University, New York, N. Y.), Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., vol. 20, p. 20, 1922. Also see Greenwald, I. (Harriman Research Laboratory, Roosevelt Hospital, New York City, N. Y.), Endocrinology and Metabolism, edited by L. F. Barker, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1922, vol. 3.

<sup>2</sup> This term may be defined as the ratio between the weight of a unit amount of a substance like urine, etc., and the weight of a similar amount of pure water at its greatest density, 4° C. Unless the measurements are made at the same place on the earth's surface, the ratio must be made between the masses of the liquids, since weight varies with latitude and altitude. For example, the specific gravity of sulphuric acid at its highest purity as sold on the market is 1.84, which means that 1 ml. weighs 1.84 g. when pure water weighs 1 g. per ml. Similarly, a liter of pure sulphuric acid weighs 1840 gs. when a liter of pure water weighs 1000 gs.

After taking a liter and a half of water, the normal kidney should produce a specific gravity of very low order (1005 or below). At the end of a day without much liquid, the specific gravity should be about 1030 or above. Loss of this power has been utilized as a means of detecting renal disease. The reader will refer for further details of pathological variation to the discussion of variations in volume on page 669. For a consideration of the characteristic variations in the urine see the writings of Mosenthal.<sup>1</sup>

The *method of estimating specific gravity* of the urine in common use is by means of a hydrometer—a glass bulb with an elongated stem. The bulb is weighted with mercury, or with shot, and the stem is graduated in degrees on the Gay-Lussac scale, distilled water at



Fig. 200.—Urinometer for determining the specific gravity of urine. The hydrometer is first tested with distilled water to insure that the unit point is accurate. The readings are then taken on the urine and expressed clinically as. "ten-twelve," "ten-thirty," equivalent to 1.012 and to 1.030, respectively.

4° C. being unity. The bulb is dropped into the urine and permitted to settle; then the graduation opposite the meniscus of the surface of the urine is read. Few of the commercial instruments are accurate, and all should be standardized against distilled water at the temperature indicated on the bulb. Some firms standardize at 15° C. and others at 20° C. A plus or minus factor must be carried if the instrument deviates from the volume at the standard temperature with water. The most accurate method for determining specific gravity is by means of a pycnometer, or specific gravity bottle or pipette.

<sup>1</sup> Mosenthal, H. O. (Columbia University and New York Post-Graduate Medical School), Renal Function as Measured by the Elimination of Fluids, etc, Arch. Int. Med., vol. 16, p. 733, 1915.

The Ostwald type is readily used. It is first filled with distilled water to the mark and weighed, then emptied and filled with urine. This sample is discarded and the pyknometer again filled with urine, thus insuring an undiluted sample for estimation. The instrument is weighed. Finally, after emptying, it is rinsed with pure water and dried by passing a current of air through it, after which it is weighed for the third time. Then:

$$\text{Specific gravity} = \frac{\text{Weight of tube + urine}}{\text{Wt. of tube + H}_2\text{O} - \text{wt. dry.}}$$

**Total Solids.**—In general, the total solids<sup>1</sup> of the urine are correlated with the specific gravity, since the constituents of the urine vary but slightly qualitatively, although they may vary considerably quantitatively. Various factors have been suggested which, when multiplied by the last two figures of the specific gravity (those of the second and third places of decimals), give approximately the number of grams of solids left per liter of urine when the volatile portions of the urine have been evaporated.

Haeser's coefficient: Multiply the last two figures by 2.33.

Long's coefficient: Multiply the last two figures by 2.66.

These results are expressed in terms of liters of urine.

Haines' coefficient: Multiply the last two figures by 1.10.

This result gives the grains (60 mgs.) of solids per ounce (Troy wt., 31.1 gs.). Long's<sup>2</sup> coefficient is the one which seems best to approximate the total solids in the urine of the average subject in the United States.

#### CHEMICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE URINE

**Nitrogen Elimination.**—Nitrogenous substances may be excreted through any avenue of excretion, but metabolic nitrogen is ordinarily voided through the urine. We have referred in another Chapter<sup>3</sup> to the fact that in any consideration of the balance between intake and output of nitrogen, it is necessary to consider only urinary nitrogen,

<sup>1</sup> By this term is meant the non-volatile material of the urine, expressed as grams per unit volume.

<sup>2</sup> Long, J. H. (deceased), formerly Professor of Chemistry, Northwestern Medical School, Chicago, Illinois.

<sup>3</sup> Page 605.



for the Munich school of investigators<sup>1</sup> found that nitrogen which does not pass through the urine is negligible. A small amount of urea is excreted through the perspiration; a smaller amount of uric acid, from the salivary glands into the mouth; and a small amount of ammonia, through the breath; but taken together, these extra-urinary nitrogenous substances amount to little compared to those excreted through the urine. The feces contain nitrogen, but this nitrogen is largely derived from bacteria, from secretions of the alimentary tract, and from food which has not been absorbed.

#### **Carbon, Hydrogen, and Oxygen Elimination Through the Kidney.**

—While no other excretory system, neither skin, lung, nor intestine, shares with the kidney the function of excretion of nitrogen to any extent, the *urine* is but *one of several* systems for the excretion of substances composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. The skin, the lungs, and the intestine excrete water. The kidney, likewise, shares in this process. The lungs excrete carbon dioxid. The kidney shares in this function, the carbon dioxid being linked chemically with ammonia in urea<sup>2</sup> and in other substances about to be discussed.

**Inorganic Substances.**—The kidney excretes a variety of inorganic substances, such as phosphates and carbonates. This function seems to be the oldest of all the powers of the renal apparatus, since it chiefly involves the maintenance of proper osmotic pressure relations. The primitive organism from which the higher forms of animals have developed was segmented into a series of compartments, from the anterior to the posterior end of the body. Such an organism lived in the sea where the osmotic pressure was considerable, and it was necessary that an efficient regulatory mechanism be provided to keep the osmotic pressure of the organism similar to that of the surrounding medium; otherwise, the compartments would collapse or expand. Each compartment communicated with the outside by means of a pair of coelomo-ducts through which salts and water could be excreted to maintain the proper balance. Modifications of these ducts have occurred, but they are recognized by the morphologist in the present-day mammal. Probably the exchange of a new medium, air, for the aqueous medium of former times, caused considerable change in the excretory system. Moreover, some parts of the system were appropri-

<sup>1</sup> Pages 22 and 583.

<sup>2</sup> Or, more properly, what would become CO<sub>2</sub> unless urea were formed. See page 74 and page 528 concerning urea synthesis.



ated by the genital apparatus as a means of emitting its products, eggs and spermatozoa. The excretion of nitrogenous substances may be considered a secondary process for the kidney, and doubtless one which was foisted upon it in a manner similar to that of the expulsion of sex products.

**Organic Excretory Products: Nitrogenous.**—Total elimination of nitrogenous products; "total nitrogen." In twenty-four hours the average adult human male excretes through the urine about 12 gs. of nitrogen. This nitrogen is not free, but is contained in a variety of substances, particularly urea, uric acid, ammonia, creatinin, and hippuric acid. The nitrogen contained in each of these substances bears a more or less definite proportion to the total amount of nitrogen excreted. Thus, with urea,

$$\frac{\text{Urea nitrogen}}{\text{Total nitrogen}} = \frac{85}{100} = 0.85, \text{ or } 85 \text{ per cent.}$$

On a total excretion of 12 gs. of nitrogen, 85 per cent., or 10.2 gs. of urea may be expected as normal. This total nitrogen may be altered by the diet, by physiological states and by pathological conditions. It rises on a high protid diet, and falls on a low protid or liberal glucid diet. It rises with an accelerated basal metabolic rate, falls with a subnormal one. It falls in cases of renal involvement (retention). The average total nitrogen excretion in warm climate, such as the Southern States, has been studied by Denis. She finds for Tulane<sup>1</sup> students 10.6 gs. per twenty-four hours. The corresponding figures for the Northern States are from 15 to 18 grams. Other conditions modifying the excretion of total nitrogen, and of certain nitrogenous substances, will be mentioned in the course of the following discussion.

The *method of measuring total urinary nitrogen*, whatever may be the modification, primarily depends upon the following principles:

1. Conversion of the nitrogen to ammonium sulphate by boiling the sample with substances containing the radicle  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$ . Sulphuric acid, cupric sulphate, and potassium sulphate are usually used.

2. Decomposition of the ammonium sulphate formed in (1) by alkali, thus freeing  $\text{NH}_3$ .

3. Determination of the ammonia by:

<sup>1</sup> Dr. W. Denis is Professor of Biochemistry at Tulane University Medical School, New Orleans, La.

(a) Kjeldahl's method: Aspirating the  $\text{NH}_3$  into known amount of standard acid and titrating excess acid left after all the ammonia has been neutralized (page 282).

(b) Folin's method: Aspirating as before, determining the ammonia content by treating the fluid with Nessler's Solution, and comparing the color thus obtained with a standard color corresponding to a known ammonia content.

The Kjeldahl and Folin methods have many variations, some of which will be given later.<sup>1</sup> In the case of pathological urines containing protid, as in the forms of Bright's disease, the albumin must be removed before the determination is made; for total urinary nitrogen means non-protid nitrogen.

*Kjeldahl Method for Total Urinary Nitrogen.*—This method has been outlined on page 283, in which casein was used as the substance to be analyzed. Using urine, pipette 5 mls. of the protid-free filtrate (if albumin is present), or simply 5 mls. of the urine, if protid free, into a 500- to 800-ml. Kjeldahl flask (Fig. 104, page 283) and follow the procedure for the method given on that page.

*Folin's Method for Total Urinary Nitrogen; Macroform.*—Principle: The principle is the same as that of the Kjeldahl method.

Procedure: Transfer 5 mls. of urine to a Kjeldahl flask. Add 5 mls. of the special (Appendix) phosphoric-sulphuric acid mixture, also 2 mls. of 10 per cent. ferric chloride solution, and small pebbles to prevent "bumping." Boil vigorously over a microburner. In three to four minutes the foam which forms at first will have entirely disappeared and the flask filled with dense white fumes. When this stage is reached (but no earlier) cover the mouth of the flask with a crucible cover and continue heating for two minutes. Then dilute urines, will be greenish, concentrated urines, a light yellow; the black matter will be completely destroyed. The flame should then be turned very low and the gently boiling process should be continued for two minutes, making a total boiling period of four minutes, counting from the time the cover was put in place. Remove the flame and let the flask cool for four to five minutes. At the end of four or not more than five minutes add, *first*, 50 mls. of water, then 15 mls. of saturated sodium hydroxide (50 per cent. solution) and connect the flask promptly, by means of a rubber stopper and ordinary glass tubing, with a 300-ml. flask for receiver. In

<sup>1</sup> Pages 686 and 687 and Chapter XVI.

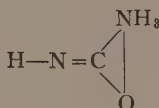
the flask place 35 mls. of 0.1 normal acid, about 150 mls. of distilled water, and a drop or two of indicator (alizarin, etc.). As soon as the connection is made apply the microburner flame. Boil five minutes. Disconnect, remove the flame, and titrate the contents of the receiving flask against decinormal alkali as in the Kjeldahl method. The calculation is the same as in that method.

*Folin's Method; Microform.*—Principle: Colorimetric comparison of the ammonia derived from a Kjeldahl-like procedure (but without aspirating or distilling into normal acid), with the color developed by a known concentration of nitrogen as ammonium sulphate. Procedure: Dilute the urine according to its content of nitrogen: Normal urine, 10 mls. up to 100 mls. with distilled water; urines high in nitrogen, 20 mls. up to 100 mls.; those low in nitrogen, 5 mls. up to 100 mls. The optimal amount of nitrogen is about 1 mg. nitrogen in the amount of urine being analyzed. Of the diluted urine, well mixed, pipette 1 ml. (Ostwald-Folin pipette) into a 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube and add 1 ml. of the special acid mixture (Appendix) and a piece of Pyrex glass or quartz pebble to prevent "bumping." Hold the tube by means of a test-tube holder (or clamp it in a burette clamp) and by means of a microburner make the contents boil until the whitish vapors referred to above appear. Then cover the mouth of the tube with an inverted crucible cover. Continue heating until the mass in the bottom of the tube turns brownish, then black, and then, finally, clear yellowish green or (preferably) green. Continue boiling one minute longer. The total period must be not less than two minutes. Remove the flame, let cool spontaneously for (preferably) five minutes, and then cautiously add distilled water from your wash-bottle until about 10 mls. have been added. Transfer the fluid to a 200-ml. volumetric flask. Add about 10 mls. more water to the tube, as wash-water and combine the washings, repeating until you have a volume of about 150 mls. Preparation of the standard: Pipette into a similar 200-ml. volumetric flask 10 mls. of the standard  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  solution, thus adding 1 mg. nitrogen to the standard flask. Add 1 ml. acid mixture and water to make about 150 mls. of volume. Then rotate the flasks and add, as nearly at the same time as possible, 30 mls. of Nessler's solution (Appendix). Agitate the contents and dilute to the mark. Mix. Compare in a colorimeter and apply Beer's formula (page 164). For more critical work Benedict (page 19) recommends two modifications: (1) Distillation as

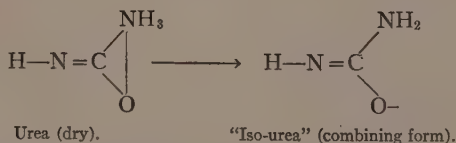
in the Kjeldahl method (modified) and (2) direct method involving (a) Dilution of the urine so that the analyzed specimen contains about 5 mgs. nitrogen, that is, about five times the amount used by Folin; (b) boiling as in the Folin method, but omitting the cupric sulphate from the acid mixture, and (c) diluting to 50 mls. (in a 50-ml. volumetric flask). Of this 50-ml. solution 10 mls. are pipetted into a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Direct Nesslerization is then performed as in the Folin procedure by adding distilled water to make about 50 mls. of fluid, then 30 mls. Nessler's solution, and finally water to make up to the mark, 100 mls. The colorimetric comparison and calculation are the same as in the Folin method.

*Nitrogen Partition.*—For practically all purposes, whether research or clinical diagnosis, it is desirable to distribute the total nitrogen among the components already mentioned, urea, uric acid, etc. In order to do this it is necessary to determine the urea nitrogen, uric acid nitrogen, etc. Before this can be done intelligently the chief chemical characteristics of these various substances must be known.

**Urea** occurs in normal urine in amounts of about 10 gs. as urea nitrogen, or 30 gs. as dry urea in twenty-four hours. In three hours, during the morning, about 1.12 g. is excreted as urea nitrogen. Chemical definition: Urea is an ammonio-keto-cyanate:



The cyclic formula is demanded by the chemical characteristics of dry urea, among which is the relatively stable nature of the compound. Salts of urea are found in the urine, the cyclic ring being opened in the presence of water.<sup>1</sup>



Throughout this book urea is considered as a cyclic cyanic compound, following the investigations of Woehler, who first artificially synthe-

<sup>1</sup> The thyroxin ring is another example of a ring opening and closing (page 94).



sized it, and who found that urea is formed "par l'action du cyanogène sur l'ammoniaque liquide"; the investigations of the physical-chemist Walker and collaborators, who showed that "Woehler's synthesis" is a bimolecular reaction and that the reaction is reversible, which means that this synthesis is not a mere isomeric transformation of ammonium cyanate to ammonium carbamate (urea), but must consist of a double reaction; the investigations of Gamgee, who demonstrated that the two atoms of nitrogen are not connected up in the molecule of urea in the same manner, and also that urea is more refractory as a compound

than the usual "carbamid" formula,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagup \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$  would lead one to

believe; the investigations of Heinze and others to the effect that one of the nitrogens of urea is pentavalent; the necessity of making a formula for urea different from the usual carbamid formula, to accommodate the salts of urea; the conclusions of Werner following his extensive studies<sup>1</sup> of cyanogen compounds, carbamates, urea, and allied substances. Urea crystallizes in long, white, tetragonal prism crystals which have a salty taste. They are readily soluble in cold and hot water; in all strengths of ethanol<sup>2</sup> up to 20 per cent., and in acetone. Urea is slightly soluble in ether and in chloroform. The crystals melt at 132° C., and at their boiling-point they undergo decomposition, which takes place at about 180° C. The following table from Werner shows the effect of heating urea:

At about 180° C. Time of heating: twelve minutes.		At about 195° C. Time: six to seven minutes, rapidly.	
Volatilized and lost as NH <sub>3</sub> and HNCO....	8.40		19.00
Ammonium cyanate, NH <sub>4</sub> .OCN, sublimed..	0.58		0.42
Biuret, HN(CONH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> .....	18.26		10.25
Cyanuric acid, C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>3</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O <sub>3</sub> .2H <sub>2</sub> O.....	3.35		15.34
Cyanuromonamid, or ammelide, C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>4</sub> N <sub>4</sub> O <sub>2</sub> .	0.83		8.46
Urea unchanged after twelve minutes.....	68.58		46.53

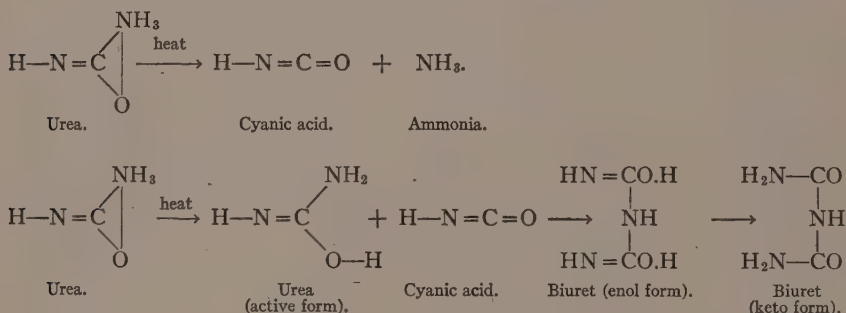
*Tests for Urea: As Dry Urea.*—Transfer a "knife-point" of the dry material to a long, narrow test-tube, preferably of hard glass. Heat the lower part of the tube over a low microburner flame, but allow the upper part to remain cool and act as a condenser. Test the fumes with red litmus-paper as the substance fuses; in the presence

<sup>1</sup> For a complete discussion see his book.

<sup>2</sup> At 70° C., 100 mls. of ethanol 98.6 per cent. strength dissolve 17.5 gs. urea.



of decomposed urea the paper turns blue, indicating the presence of ammonia. Now permit a few drops of cobalt nitrate solution to pass down the sides of the tube; as the drops come in contact with the sublimed substance a blue color develops, indicating the presence of cyanic acid,  $\text{HNCO}$ . Again, pass a test-tube sponge cleaner down the tube past the sublimate and wash the sponge in about 1 ml. of distilled water in a small evaporating dish. To the liquid in the dish add two small crystals of hydroxylamin hydrochlorid,  $\text{H}_2\text{N.OH.HCl}$ , and let them dissolve, after which add ferric chlorid, 5 per cent. solution, until a change of color appears. In the presence of cyanic acid a purplish-blue color develops.<sup>1</sup> Lastly, to the substance remaining at the bottom of the test-tube add 2 mls. of 10 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$  solution and a drop of very dilute cupric sulphate solution; a pinkish color appears, due to the presence of biuret,  $\text{HN}(\text{CONH}_2)_2$ . The reactions involved in the foregoing procedures are as follows:

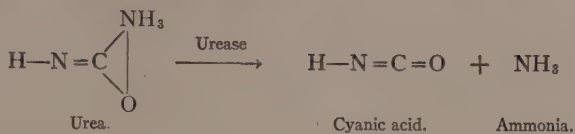


*Urea in Solution.*—(a) By Urease: To 5 mls. of the solution in a test-tube add 5 drops of the indicator phenolsulphonephthalein. By means of a stirring-rod transfer drops of acetic acid (1 : 200 solution) to the test-tube until the color is a yellowish pink,<sup>2</sup> which is slightly acid. Add a generous “knife-point” of jack-bean meal to the tube, shake to mix the meal and the fluid thoroughly, and place the tube in a water-bath at  $50^\circ \text{C}$ . At the end of five minutes examine the preparation; if no color change has occurred, leave another five minutes or, at most, fifteen minutes. The presence of urea is indicated by the purplish-red color of the alkaline solution of the indicator, due to the

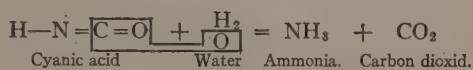
<sup>1</sup> If less than about a gram of urea is taken in these tests, the sublimate should be scraped from the broken tube and transferred to the evaporating dish.

<sup>2</sup> The color should be checked with the standards.

ammonia which has been dissociated from the urea under the dissociating action of the enzyme, urease, of the meal as follows:

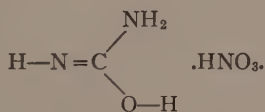


The cyanic acid then undergoes hydrolysis as follows:



Ammonium cyanate, biuret, and other combinations occur, due to interactions. This enzyme reaction is employed in the quantitative determination of urea in blood, urine, etc. (page 698).

(b) By Precipitation as Urea Nitrate: Place 5 mls. of freshly voided urine in a test-tube and dilute<sup>1</sup> with one volume (5 mls.) of distilled water. Mix and transfer 1 or 2 drops of the solution to a microscope slide; add a drop of cold, concentrated colorless<sup>2</sup> nitric acid. Cover with a cover-glass and examine under the microscope for crystals of urea nitrate,



(c) By Precipitation as Dixanthylurea<sup>3</sup>: To 2 mls. of fresh urine in a test-tube, add 7 mls. glacial acetic acid; mix. Add to the solution 1 ml. 10 per cent. solution xanthhydrol in methanol.<sup>4</sup> Let the preparation stand for five minutes or longer until crystals appear. Examine a drop of the crystals suspended in the solution under the lower power

<sup>1</sup> The purpose of this dilution is to obviate the retarding effect on crystallization of the substances in the urine of colloidal nature.

<sup>2</sup> Nitric acid containing nitrous acid decomposes urea. See page 291.

<sup>3</sup> Fosse, R. (French chemist), Sur l'identification de l'urée, et cetera. *Comptes rendus* (Paris), vol. 157, p. 948, 1913.

<sup>4</sup> Xanthhydrol is made from xanthone, which, in turn, can be obtained by heating salol,  $\text{HO.C}_6\text{H}_4.\text{CO}_2.\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ , when it is converted into the diphenylene keto-oxid, or xanthone. Xanthone is converted into xanthhydrol by reducing it with zinc. For the method of preparing xanthhydrol from xanthone see Fosse, R., *Annal. Chimie*, vol. 6, p. 13, and p. 155, 1916. The chemically pure xanthhydrol is obtainable from the A. H. Thomas Co., West Washington Square, Philadelphia, Penna.

of the microscope. The crystals are in the form of fine, radiating filaments. Filter the remaining solution through a dry paper marked with your initials, lay the paper upon a watch-glass and place in the oven. When dry note the delicate reddish or pinkish color of the crystals.

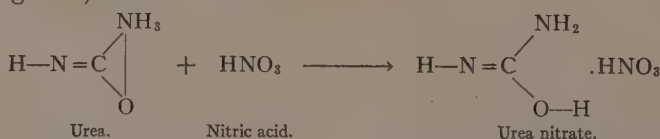
*Preparation of Urea from Urine.*—This is done readily by following the principles of the urea nitrate procedure given on page 691. Filter 500 mls. of fresh urine<sup>1</sup> into a large evaporating dish and boil over a moderate flame until its volume is about 100 mls. Pour this liquid into an Erlenmeyer flask of 500 mls. capacity and stand the vessel in chopped ice-salt mixture. When the temperature has fallen to 0° C., add 100 mls. of nitric acid,<sup>2</sup> which has been standing in the ice-salt mixture until this time. Mix and after about fifteen minutes examine for crystals. Filter, but do not wash with water. Scrape the crystals from the paper into a large evaporating dish and add barium carbonate, creamy, aqueous solution, until the liquid no longer effervesces. Place the dish on a steam-bath, evaporate to dryness,<sup>3</sup> and extract the residue with 50 mls. of ethanol at 50° C., the alcohol being heated on the water-bath and care taken to avoid ignition. Repeat the extraction once with a similar amount of ethanol and combine the extracts in an Erlenmeyer flask. Add 5 gs. of animal charcoal, mix and filter, repeating if necessary until a clear solution is obtained. Concentrate the filtrate to a thin syrup on the water-bath and permit to cool. Crystals of practically pure urea are obtained.

*The Production of Molecular Nitrogen by the Decomposition of Urea.*—This process involves two important reactions:

1. The action of nitrous acid upon urea.
2. The action of hypohalogenites upon urea.

1. The Nitrous Acid Reaction: The equations are as follows:

(a) The production of an additive compound of urea by the action of a strong acid, like nitric acid:

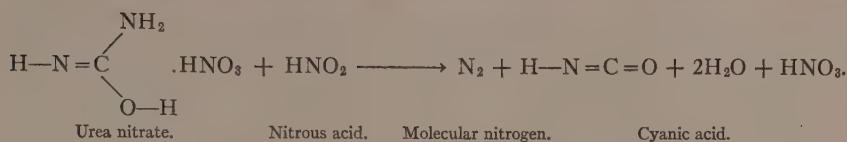


<sup>1</sup> See Chapter XVII for the method of collecting and preserving urine for practical work.

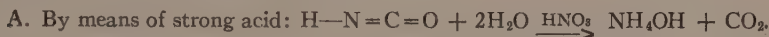
<sup>2</sup> For the kind of acid see page 691, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> The preparation may be left on the bath until the following period, properly labelled.

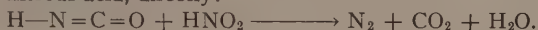
(b) The production of molecular nitrogen and by-products:



Cyanic acid is hydrolyzed, either:

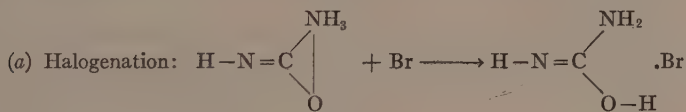


B. By the nitrous acid, directly:

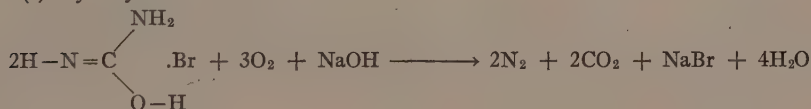


The relative proportions of these different reactions depend upon various factors and for this reason it is not possible to use the method for quantitative purposes.<sup>1</sup> The practical interest in the reaction is, however, that in the quantitative determination of amino-acids by the gasometric method of Van Slyke,<sup>2</sup> the basis of which is the deamination of these amines by nitrous acid, freeing  $\text{N}_2$ , which is measured over water, some nitrogen may arise from any urea which is present unless conditions are carefully controlled.

2. The Hypohalogenite Reaction: By hypohalogenites we mean such compounds as hypochlorite and hypobromite. The reactions are as follows:



(b) Hydrolysis and oxidation:



The bromine in (a) is derived from the solution of bromine-sodium hydroxide used. The  $\text{O}_2$  is derived from the readily decomposed  $\text{NaOBr}$ . The hypobromite method has been used for clinical purposes. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is absorbed by a caustic alkali,  $\text{NaOH}$  or  $\text{KOH}$  and the nitrogen is read as a column over water. This volume, expressed for standard

<sup>1</sup> Conversely, however, it is possible to determine the concentration of  $\text{HNO}_2$  by the action of urea on this acid.

<sup>2</sup> Page 291.

temperature and pressure, is then converted into mass of nitrogen by the usual procedure discussed under the gasometric method of Van Slyke.<sup>1</sup> This procedure is found in the usual text-books.<sup>2</sup> The hypohalogenite method is superfluous and far less exact than the urease method. "In spite of its shortcomings . . . this method is probably more largely used than any other for the estimation of urea."<sup>3</sup> Its use, nevertheless, should not be encouraged because:

1. The results are inaccurate, even for clinical work. The results given by the hypobromite method more closely approximate the total nitrogen of the urine, owing to the fact that nitrogen is obtained not alone from urea, but from other nitrogenous constituents of the urine.

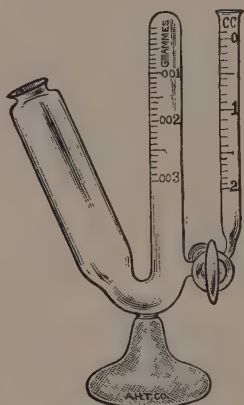


Fig. 201.—Doremus-Hinds' ureameter. Hypochlorite solution is placed in the wide, ungraduated tube; then the tube is tilted until the fluid fills the larger graduated tube. Finally, 1 or 2 mls. of urine are added from the small burette. The nitrogen is read in grams per ml. The error of the method is that total nitrogen rather than urea nitrogen alone, is approximated.

2. The urease method demands no more apparatus, no more time for making the determination, and does not demand the gas analysis calculations of the gasometric method.

*The Clinical Significance of Urea.*—Urea is an exogenous product, that is, one which varies in amount with the character of the food.<sup>4</sup> A high protid diet leads to an increase in urea excretion; a low meat

<sup>1</sup> Page 297.

<sup>2</sup> Mathews, cited on page 403.

<sup>3</sup> Werner, page 190.

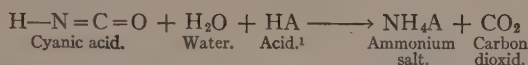
<sup>4</sup> The terms "exogenous" and "endogenous" were used by Burian and Schur (Med. Klin., 1905), but the concept was extended by Folin in the same year.



diet to a lowered output of urea. This is shown by the following table (Folin):

	High protid diet.	Low protid diet.
Total nitrogen in urine.....	16.8 gs.	3.60 gs.
Urea nitrogen.....	14.7 gs. (87.5 per cent.)	2.20 gs. (61.7 per cent. t. n.)

The average normal urea excretion is about 85 to 90 per cent. of the total nitrogen, 10 gs. urea nitrogen corresponding to about 30 gs. dry urea, per twenty-four hours. During fasting, urea falls, both absolutely and relatively to the total nitrogen. There is a corresponding rise in ammonia, due to the hydrolysis of the cyanic acid, according to the following equation:



In all acidosis there is this decrease in urea and a corresponding rise in ammonia. Since acidosis occurs on fasting, the above equation represents a modification of the usual course of nitrogen metabolism, the normal manner being the formation of urea from the cyanic acid derived from the protid.<sup>2</sup>

Pathologically, urea shows variations:

Urea excretion is increased:

In fever; diabetes and polyuria in general; following the crisis and consequent absorption of the exudate in pneumonia, in pleurisy with effusion, etc. In exophthalmic goiter and in many cases of cancer urea is increased. In general, heightened metabolism involves increased elimination of urea.

Urea is decreased:

In all cases of urinary retention, like later stages of nephritis; hepatic disorders, as in cirrhosis, acute yellow atrophy, etc.; in psychic states, like paresis and melancholia. Exercise lessens urea excretion.

Urea is variable:

In acute nephritis, chronic nephritis, hysteria, and in excessive exercise.

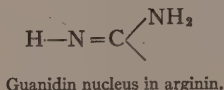
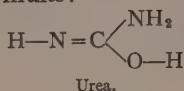
The urinary urea is derived from the blood, which transports it from the organs where it is made. The liver is largely responsible for

<sup>1</sup> An acid is composed of  $\text{H}^+$  and an anion like  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{COO}^-$ , etc. For brevity, the anion is expressed in the above equation as A.

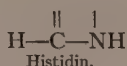
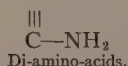
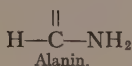
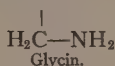
<sup>2</sup> Concerning the manner in which cyanic acid is derived from protid as a step in the formation of urea from meat, see page 696.

this synthesis, but other organs, especially the kidneys, partake of this function, and it is probable that urea formation occurs throughout the body as a typical function of all living cells. Later, a quantitative expression for the relation between urea in the urine and in the blood will be given.<sup>1</sup>

*How Urea is Synthesized in the Body.*—Reference to page 255 will reveal a radicle known as guanidin radicle in the formula for the amino-acid arginin, which bears close relations to urea, as shown by the following formulæ:



It has been known for a score of years that urea is derived from this amino-acid by the separation of the guanidin nucleus from the remainder of the  $\alpha$ -amino-chain. No other amino-acid presents a configuration which permits us to derive urea from it in such a simple manner. Creatin, although not an amino-acid, contains this radicle, creatin being methylated guanidin acetic acid, but there is no reason other than this for believing that urea could be derived from creatin. The same may be said of the anhydrid, creatinin. However, it is necessary to assume that urea is derived from amino-acids in some manner, because increased intake of amino-acids results in increased elimination of urea. In the amino-acids derived from the digested meat, these configurations are found, leaving off the carboxyl and the aliphatic chain:



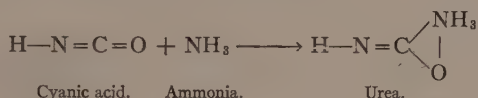
These formulæ represent the various ways in which carbon and nitrogen are associated in the amino-acids. It is easily seen that from such configurations, cyanic acid may arise by oxidation:  $\text{O}=\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{H}$  (or  $\text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{O}$ , as usually written). Then, by hydrolysis, urea is formed:



The last reaction is readily accomplished in the test-tube at the temperature of the human body, 37° C.

<sup>1</sup> Chapter XVI. See editorial, Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 80, p. 1073, 1923.

Besides the amino-acids,<sup>1</sup> which are the normal sources of urea, other substances containing ammonia, or the ammonia radicle, may form urea in the body. Ammonium chlorid administered to rabbits is followed by the excretion of practically the same amount of nitrogen as urea as the nitrogen given in the form of  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$ . It seems that ammonia must be liberated in such cases. Carnivores excrete an acid urine. When ammonium chlorid is fed to a dog, urea is not increased, but the ammonium chlorid is excreted as such. Ammonia is not freed from its union with the chlorion. Does a similar process occur in the organism in which ammonia is deaminized from amino-acids? Such an origin is probable, the ammonia then conjugating with cyanic acid to form urea as follows:



It is not known how much deaminization occurs, but it is probable that from the data of metabolism experiments, some of which have been discussed,<sup>2</sup> that the ammonia is removed from the fatty acid in the amino-acids, leaving the acid to be utilized as glucid.

*Therapeutic Uses of Urea.*—1. As a functional test for renal efficiency: Urea is a normal constituent of the urine and when administered, it is recovered from the urine quantitatively in the same amounts, if the kidney functions properly. If, however, the kidney is deranged, as in mercuric chlorid poisoning, or in the case of hypoplasia of one or both kidneys, the urea will not pass through readily, but is held back (“retained”) in the blood and tissues.<sup>3</sup> Quantitative determination of the urea content of samples of urine obtained by catheterization of each ureter will disclose the malfunctioning of one kidney, the other being normal, as in the case of contracted kidney, etc. In pregnancy there is at times occlusion of one of the ureters by pressure of the fetus and such a procedure as the one just described

<sup>1</sup> See Fiske, C. H., and Sumner, J. B. (Harvard Medical School and Cornell Medical, Ithaca, respectively). The Importance of the Liver in Urea Formation from Amino-acids, Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 18, p. 285, 1914.

<sup>2</sup> Page 528.

<sup>3</sup> Coal-tar dyes are, likewise, retained by a diseased kidney and this affords a basis for clinical tests. The dye phenolsulphonephthalein is used (page 59). For cystoscopic work, indigo-carmin (indigo-sodium-disulphonate) is used.

frequently suffices to detect the nature of the difficulty without necessitating surgical intervention.

2. As a diuretic: This has been discussed on page 670. From 20 to 40 gs. of urea are taken by mouth, although urea may be administered hypodermically. It is possible to administer urea too liberally, for if the blood urea rises from the normal of 12 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood to eight or ten times that figure, lassitude, fatigue, or more serious symptoms may appear.

In a later section, methods for detecting disease of the kidney by means of the tests mentioned above will be given (Chapter XVI).

*Quantitative Determination of Urea in the Urine (Method of Folin).*—Principle: Urea is converted into ammonium carbonate and by-products by the action of the enzyme urease<sup>1</sup> found abundantly in certain Oriental beans, like the soy-bean<sup>2</sup> and the jack-bean. The ammonium carbonate is then broken up, freeing ammonia, which is quantitatively determined by treating the preparation with Nessler's solution (ammonia in the presence of Nessler's solution,<sup>3</sup> causing the formation of a reddish liquid), and comparing it in a colorimeter with a solution of ammonia (from ammonium sulphate) of known strength, likewise treated with Nessler's solution. The mode of action of urease is as follows<sup>4</sup>:

1. Absorption of the urea to the colloidal urease, thus concentrating the urea.

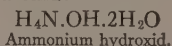
2. Dissociation of the urea into cyanic acid,  $\text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{O}$  and ammonia, the latter being held by the urease.

3. Hydrolysis of the cyanic acid:  $\text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{O} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} = \text{NH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ . The products, ammonia and carbonic acid, form the acid carbonate,  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$ .

<sup>1</sup> Miquel, P., *Le ferment soluble de l'urée*, Comptes rendus (Paris), vol. 3, p. 397, 1890.

<sup>2</sup> Takeuchi, T., *Urease in Higher Plants*, Jour. Coll. Agric., Tokio (Japan), vol. 1, p. 1, 1909.

<sup>3</sup> The chemistry of Nessler's solution is as follows: "Millon's Base" ( $\text{Hg}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{OH} \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is formed when mercuric oxid is treated with ammonia. In the presence of iodine the iodid of Millon's Base is formed ( $\text{OHg}_2$ ) $\text{NH}_2\text{I}$ . This compound is the cause of the red color of Nessler's solution in the presence of ammonia. The solution is a mercuriopotassium iodid. Millon's base is constructed somewhat like ammonium hydroxid:



<sup>4</sup> Feron, W. R., *Urease*, Part II. The Mechanism of the Zymolysis of Urea, Biochem. Jour., vol. 17, p. 800, 1923.

4. This acid carbonate unites with  $\text{NH}_3$  to form ammonium carbonate,



The ammonium carbonate, thus formed, simply separates ammonia in the urine from other substances. Then, by the aid of caustic soda contained in the Nessler's reagent, the ammonia is liberated:



The ammonia thus produced forms the red substance  $(\text{OHg}_2)\text{NH}_2\text{I}$ , referred to above. In order that the enzyme act favorably, a neutral reaction must be maintained, and this is done by adding a buffer composed of a phosphate mixture (page 60).

Reagents (Appendix): Nessler's solution.

Standard ammonium sulphate solution.

Urease preparation.

Buffer mixture.

Procedure: 1. Pipette 10 mls. of the urine into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and dilute to the mark with distilled water. This makes a 1 : 10 solution.

2. Using a 1-ml. Ostwald-Folin pipette, place 1 ml. of the diluted urine in an ordinary test-tube and add 1 drop of the buffer mixture and also 1 ml. of the urease solution.

3. Leave the tube in a thermostat at  $50^\circ \text{C}$ . for eight minutes or at room temperature ( $20^\circ \text{C}$ .) for fifteen minutes or longer.

4. Pour the contents of the tube into a 200 ml. volumetric flask and add about 150 mls. of distilled water.

5. Preparation of the standard: In a similar 200 ml. volumetric flask place 10 mls. of the standard ammonium sulphate solution; add also 1 ml. of the urease solution in order that the standard and unknown may have the same treatment. Then dilute, as before, with distilled water to about 150 mls.

6. Pour into each of two small beakers 20 mls. of Nessler's solution. Then simultaneously pour the contents of one beaker into the unknown flask and the contents of the other into the standard flask. Mix, and dilute to the mark in each case. Stopper and invert the flasks several times. Discard about 5 mls. of liquid from each flask to insure uniform samples.



7. Add the standard solution to each of two colorimeter cups until they are about half-full and place each under the colorimeter plungers. Raise the left cup<sup>1</sup> until the reading on the scale is exactly 20 mms. Then match the colors by wheeling up the right-hand cup by means of the calibrated drum. The two readings should agree within 1 millimeter.

8. Now pour the standard solution from the right-hand cup and refill the cup without rinsing with liquid from the unknown flask.<sup>2</sup>

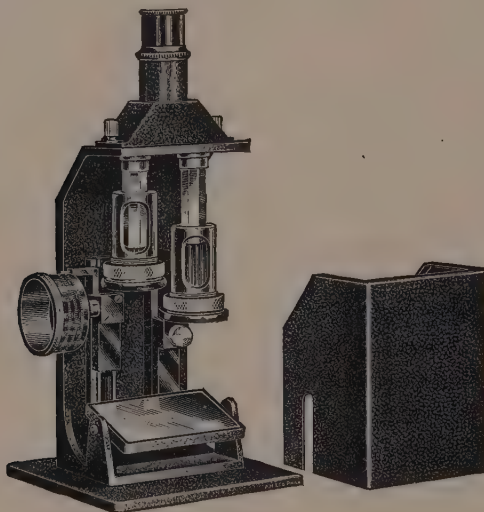


Fig. 202.—Colorimeter for biochemical analyses. The calibrated drum on the reader's left records the excursions of the "unknown" cup, up and down. The "standard" is placed in the opposite cup.

Compare.

9. Calculation:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of standard}}{\text{Reading of unknown}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown}}{\text{Concentration of standard}}$$

The Reading of standard is 10 mms.

Reading of the unknown is  $n$  mms.

Concentration of the unknown is  $x$  mgs.

<sup>1</sup> The description is given for the Bausch and Lomb biological colorimeter.

<sup>2</sup> Care must be taken that bubbles do not collect on the lower face of the prism plungers. These may be obviated by inclining the cups as they are placed in position. The standard color approaches that of the unknown more nearly than does that of distilled water, and hence the recommendation not to rinse.

The Concentration of the standard is 1 mg.<sup>1</sup>

Since the urine was diluted 1: 10, the result must be multiplied by 10. This gives the milligrams of nitrogen in 1 ml. of the urine as voided. To express the result in terms of per cent. multiply by 100. To express the result in terms of twenty-four-hour quantity, multiply the quantity for 1 ml. by the number of milliliters of urine voided in twenty-four hours.

*Method of Marshall.*—This method is adapted to rapid clinical work. Principal: The theory is practically the same as that for the foregoing method. The difference is that, instead of determining the ammonia by Nesslerization, the ammonia is titrated with standard acid solution.

Reagents: Urease solution, as in the preceding method.

Toluene,  $C_6H_5.CH_3$ , for preserving the solutions against bacterial action.



Fig. 203.—“Carbon dioxide” flask, recommended as a substitute for the ordinary beaker in biochemical work when a volatile substance is to be stored for a time; the flask may be stoppered.

Decinormal acid solution, page 88.

Methyl orange indicator, Appendix.

Procedure: Pipette 5 mls. of urine into each of two “carbon dioxide” flasks of 200- to 300-mls. capacity (Fig. 203). Label one flask “Experiment” and the other “Control.” Dilute the contents of each flask with 100 mls. of distilled water. Add to each 2 mls. of toluene.

<sup>1</sup> By concentration is meant mass per volume. The standard solution is so made that each 10 mls. contains 1 mg. of nitrogen. That is, the ratio between the molecular weight of the nitrogen contained in  $(NH_4)_2SO_4$  and the molecular weight of the sulphate is:

$$\frac{132.144}{28.0} = 4.716.$$

For a solution in which 10 mls. contains a milligram of nitrogen, obviously 0.4716 g. of  $(NH_4)_2SO_4$  must be used. In making the standard solution used here, 0.4716 g. of pure ammonium sulphate crystals was dissolved and made up to 1000 mls. of solution with water.

To flask "Experiment," add 2 mls. of urease solution. Stopper both flasks. Let the preparation stand for the following periods according to temperature.

At room Temperature, 20° C., minimum six hours or overnight.

Temperature, 40° C., sixty minutes.

Temperature, 50° C., fifteen minutes.

At the end of the period add 2 mls. of the urease solution used for the experiment to the "Control" flasks, and then titrate each flask separately with the standard acid, with methyl orange as indicator.

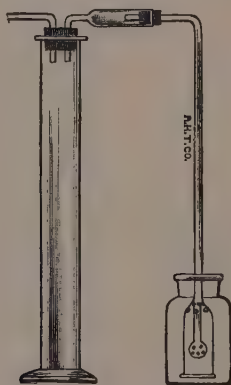


Fig. 204.—Folin's ammonia apparatus for larger quantities of urine. A known quantity of urine is placed in the cylinder and the ammonia is blown into the known amount of acid of known normality in the bottle. The special tube in the bottle is designed to afford rapid means of absorption.

Calculation: Subtract the reading of the "Control" from that of the "Experiment" and multiply by the weight of nitrogen in 1 ml. of the 0.1 normal solution.<sup>1</sup> The result gives the number of grams of urea nitrogen in 5 mls. of the solution. To express in per cent., multiply by the number of 5's in 100, that is, 20. To express in terms of twenty-four-hour quantity, divide by 5 to obtain the value for 1 ml. and multiply by the twenty-four-hour quantity. By multiplying the burette reading obtained by titrating with 0.1 normal HCl each by 0.6, you obtain the grams of urea as dry urea (not nitrogen) in a liter of urine, since 1 ml. of 0.1 normal HCl corresponds to 3 mgs. of urea.

**Ammonia.**—The urine contains about 0.5 g. of ammonia nitrogen,

<sup>1</sup> For the derivation of this factor see page 286. The factor for 0.1 normal solution is 0.0014 g.

corresponding to 0.7 g. as  $\text{NH}_3$  in an average sample taken over a period of twenty-four hours. In a three-hour morning period, about 0.065 g. urea nitrogen is excreted (Folin). The ammonia is free ammonia; that is, it is readily volatilized by an air current and readily absorbed, chemically.<sup>1</sup>

Test for ammonia: The Nessler reaction is a faithful test for the presence of ammonia (page 698).

The *clinical significance of ammonia* applies largely to the acid-base regulation in the body. Benedict finds that the ammonia, obtained from urea in the kidney, acts as an agent to save the loss of basic radicles from the alkali reserve of the blood and tissues, by replacing them before the acid radicles are excreted.<sup>2</sup> Thus,  $\text{BH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , consisting of Na, K, etc., united to the radicle  $\text{PO}_4$ , may carry away a relatively large amount of basic radicles, like Na, K, etc., but in the kidney, before they are lost, ammonia may replace them. Thus, ammonia conserves the alkali reserve. We have mentioned the inverse proportion of urea and ammonia in the urine; the rise of ammonia is accompanied by the lowering of the urea. It is for reasons such as these that in acidosis ammonia increases. In fact, acidosis probably occurs when the kidney cannot make ammonia rapidly enough to replace the basic radicles owing to the overproduction of acid in the body, and thus there is a loss of alkali reserve.

*Pathological variations* in urinary ammonia occur in various forms of acidosis, like that which occurs in diabetes mellitus, in diminished oxidative powers of the body other than in diabetes, as in acid intoxications, in dyspnea, in the pernicious vomiting of pregnancy, in diseases of the liver such as acute yellow atrophy, cirrhosis, and malignancy. Such conditions involve an increased output of ammonia. On the other hand, there may be a decreased elimination of ammonia in nephritis, in hypochlorhydria, and in achylia gastrica.<sup>3</sup> It is customary to administer sodium bicarbonate in cases of increased ammonia excretion and this causes a lowering of the ammonia output as long as the effect lasts. The use of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , however, in such cases is limited on account of attending difficulties like sodium intoxication. In fasting there is an increase in ammonia in the urine. Drinking large

<sup>1</sup> It probably exists as  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , or as a loosely bound compound in equilibrium with it:  $\text{NH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ ;  $2(\text{NH}_4\text{OH}) + \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightleftharpoons (\text{NH}_4)_2\text{CO}_3 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , etc.

<sup>2</sup> Page 575.

<sup>3</sup> Page 444.

quantities of water increases the elimination of ammonia. A large diet of fat reduces its excretion in the urine, probably because of the chemical binding of ammonia to the fatty acid radicles. The most important clinical use of urinary ammonia determinations is in diabetes mellitus and in the toxemias of pregnancy.

*Quantitative Determination of Ammonia in the Urine (Method of Folin).*—Principle: Powdered artificial silicates, resembling in chemical structure the naturally occurring zeolites,<sup>1</sup> share with them the power of having the loosely combined sodium of their molecule replaced by

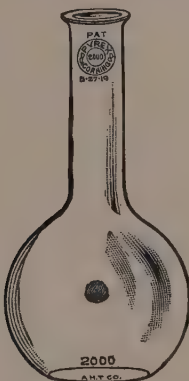
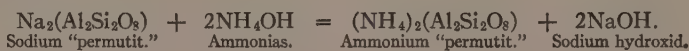


Fig. 205.—Florence type flask.

a metal or radicle like Mg, Ca, or  $\text{NH}_4$ . The equation in the case of ammonia is:



In Folin's method, ammonia replaces sodium. The reaction is a chemical replacement and not a physico-chemical "adsorption." The ammonia is attached to the powder, which is washed free from urine and substances, like urinary creatinin which interfere with the reaction.

<sup>1</sup> The zeolites are hydrated sodium-aluminium-calcium silicates found in various soils, especially those which have been weathered. The artificial zeolites, sold under the trade name "Permutit" (pronounced by the Permutit Company "per-mu'-teet"), are used in softening water for industrial purposes. Other artificial zeolites are known as borromite. For a discussion of the chemistry of permutit see Frankforter, C. J., and Jensen, F. W. (University of Nebraska, Lincoln), *Industrial and Engineering Chemistry*, vol. 16, p. 631, 1924.



Procedure: Pour about 2 gs. of the specially prepared permutit for ammonia determinations<sup>1</sup> into a 200-ml. volumetric flask. Add not more than 5 mls. of urine accurately measured by means of the Ostwald-Folin pipette. After making sure that none of the urine has remained in the neck of the flask, agitate the contents for not less than five minutes.<sup>2</sup> Add about 50 mls. of distilled water, rinse it about to catch all of the powder, and then let it settle with the flask inclined considerably to one side. Decant the liquid down to the heavier powder, neglecting the fine suspension. Repeat once or more in case there is bile<sup>3</sup> in the urine. Now finally dilute to about 25 mls. with distilled water, add 5 mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution, mix, and then dilute to about 150 mls. with distilled water. While rotating the contents of the flask, introduce 10 mls. of Nessler's solution (Appendix). Leave ten minutes or somewhat longer, but never over thirty minutes. Then fill to the mark, mix, and compare with a standard prepared as directed on page 699. The standard must be "nesslerized" simultaneously with the unknown.

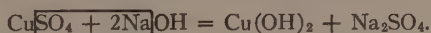
Calculation : This is similar to that for urea.

*Method of Sumner.*<sup>4</sup>—In place of permutit, cupric hydroxid is used. It precipitates creatinin of the urine, which interferes with the determination of the ammonia. The ammonia may then be determined without separating it.

Reagents (Appendix): (1) Cupric sulphate solution.

(2) Sodium hydroxid solution.

The reaction concerned is the production of cupric hydroxid:



Procedure: Pipette into a large test-tube (200 x 20 mms.) exactly 10 mls. of the special cupric sulphate solution (1), 15 mls. of urine, and 10 mls. of the special NaOH solution (2). Close the tube im-

<sup>1</sup> Obtainable from the makers, The Permutit Co., 440 Fourth Avenue, New York, N. Y., or from the Philadelphia Office, Liberty Building, Philadelphia, Penna. When ordering, "Folin's special" should be specified; this is a more homogeneous powder, which settles readily.

<sup>2</sup> A simple device for shaking, available everywhere, is to tie the flask to a water-tap and slightly open the faucet; the stream causes a gentle movement of the contents of the flask.

<sup>3</sup> The presence of bile-salts causes a shift in the electrolytes, thus interfering with the fixation of the ammonium radicle. Compare page 111 concerning the effect of bile-salts on surface tension.

<sup>4</sup> Page 24. See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 34, p. 37, 1918.

mediately with a rubber stopper and shake vigorously, in order to insure complete precipitation of the copper. Filter through a dry

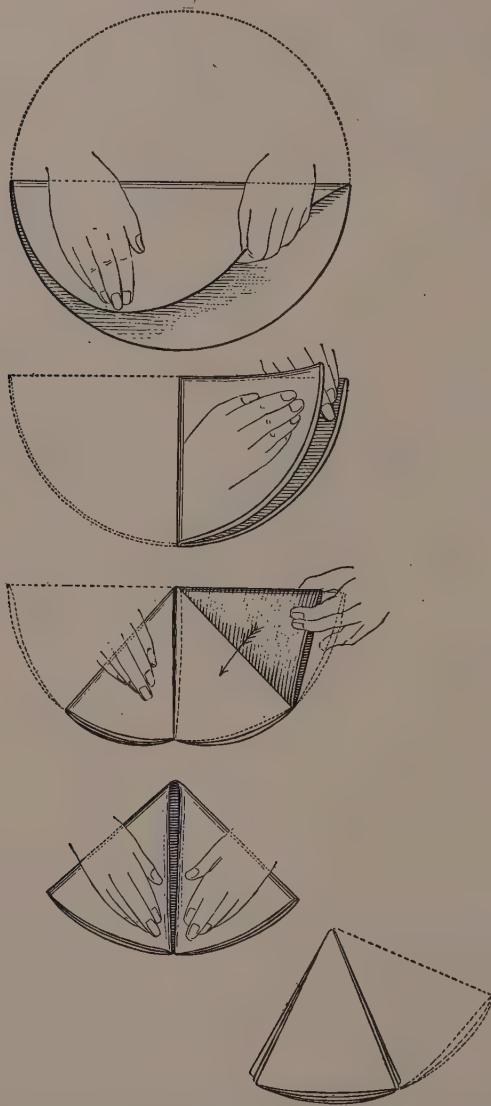


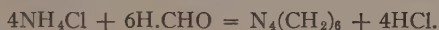
Fig. 206.—An important biochemical procedure—folding a filter to be used with substances that filter with difficulty. The creases cause the paper to stand out from the glass walls of the funnel.

filter (covering the funnel with an evaporating dish to prevent con-

centration). Transfer 5 mls. of the filtrate to a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add 1 drop of a saturated solution of Rochelle salt to dissolve any copper which may have become precipitated. Dilute with 20 mls. of distilled water and "nesslerize" with 10 mls. of the Nessler solution used in the Folin total nitrogen procedure on page 687. Compare with a standard ammonium sulphate solution, 10 mls. of which contain 1 mg. of nitrogen.

Calculation: The calculation is exactly similar to those of the foregoing methods, except that it is necessary to multiply by 7 since only 5 mls. of the filtrate were taken.

*Method of Ronchèse, Modified by Malfatti.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: This is an adaptation of the method referred to<sup>2</sup> as formol-titration in the quantitative determination of amino-acids. The chemical basis is the same for ammonia, namely, the liberation of acid from a neutral solution of ammonium salt and the titration of the acid by standard alkali:



Reagents: Neutralized formalin solution (page 288).

Decinormal or 0.05 normal alkali, as required.

Procedure: Pipette 10 mls. of urine into a small evaporating dish and add 3 drops of phenolphthalein solution (indicator). Titrate with standard alkali to neutrality.<sup>3</sup> Now add an excess (10 mls.) of the neutral formalin solution, mix, and titrate again to neutrality with the standard alkali. Assuming the alkali to be decinormal, the calculation is made by multiplying the titration figure by 0.0014, which gives the number of grams of ammonia nitrogen in the amount of urine taken (10 mls.). Percentage ammonia is given by multiplying by 10. The twenty-four-hour quantity is obtained by dividing by 10 and multiplying by the total twenty-four-hour quantity.

The error in the method is the incorporation of the amino-acid nitrogen along with that from ammonia. The normal urine contains a small amount of amino-acids, but this amount is increased in certain diseases, like acute yellow atrophy of the liver, and in such cases the ammonia figure derived by the method just described would be considerably increased over its actual value. The amino-acid nitrogen

<sup>1</sup> Ronchèse, Bull. Soc. Chim. de France, volume for 1907, I, p. 900. Malfatti, Zeitschr. f. anal. Chem., vol. 47, p. 273, 1908.

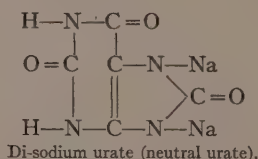
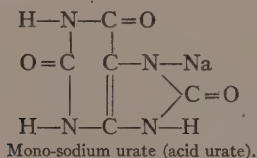
<sup>2</sup> Page 287.

<sup>3</sup> This figure may be rejected unless it is desirable to use it as a rough indication of the acidity of the urine. See, however, page 676.

is readily determined by the Van Slyke gasometric method,<sup>1</sup> or the Folin procedure,<sup>2</sup> and must be subtracted from the ammonia quantity obtained by the Ronchèse-Malfatti method just described, if accurate results are desired.

**Uric Acid and Urinary Purins.**<sup>3</sup>—Uric acid is excreted in normal human urine in fairly constant amounts, of about 0.2 g. as uric acid nitrogen corresponding to 0.70 g. of uric acid (dry).<sup>4</sup> In addition to this substance, other purins occur in the urine, amounting to about 0.05 g. as crystalline substance in twenty-four hours. These purins are methyl-purins (cafein, theobromin, theophyllin, etc.) derived from beverages like tea, coffee and chocolate. On a diet in which purins are excluded, a so-called "purin-free diet" only these purins appear. On a purin-rich diet, small quantities of amino-purins and hydroxy-purins appear in the urine. The purin bases of the normal urine are exogenous in origin. Uric acid is both exogenous and endogenous, and represents the end-product of the metabolism of the purin bases in the nuclei of the cells and probably some uric acid derived from the purins of the food. The constancy with which the kidney excretes uric acid day after day on varying diets is indicative of its derivation chiefly from the tissues, rather than from the foods.<sup>5</sup>

The chemistry of the purins has been discussed.<sup>6</sup> Amino-purins, guanin and adenin, occur in the nucleoprotids of the cell nuclei and are oxidized in the liver to the oxypurins, hypoxanthin, xanthin, and uric acid. Urates are defined as salts of uric acid. Sodium urate is found in the blood and urine in greater quantity than other salts of uric acid. The formula for sodium urate is as follows (two forms):



<sup>1</sup> Page 291.

<sup>2</sup> See later in the present Chapter.

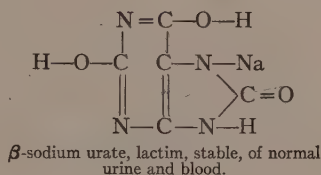
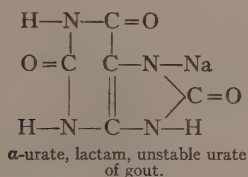
<sup>3</sup> Benedict, S. R., *Uric Acid in Its Relations to Metabolism*, Harvey Lecture, Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 2, p. 1, 1916.

<sup>4</sup> Hanzlik, P. J. (Leland Stanford, Jr., University, School of Medicine, San Francisco, California), and Hawk, P. B. (see page 447 note 1). Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 5, p. 355, 1908, give 0.59 g. uric acid as the average normal excretion per twenty-four hours.

<sup>5</sup> A brief statement of the modern aspect of purin metabolism is given in an editorial in the Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 82, p. 1865, 1924.

<sup>6</sup> Pages 333 and 364.

In the urine the most common urate is *mono-sodium urate*, but owing to the low degree of acidity endowed this compound by the hydrogen attached to the atoms 1 and 9,<sup>1</sup> the substance reacts practically neutrally. Free uric acid receives its acidity from the hydrogens on atoms number 3, 9, 1, and 7,<sup>2</sup> and the low degree of acidity donated by the hydrogens on atoms 1 and 7 leaves the ordinary urinary uric acid with a reaction like that of a very weak di-basic acid that is practically neutral in aqueous solution. The urates seem to be differently formed under certain circumstances. In gout, the mono-sodium urate is usually the unstable " $\alpha$ -urate" of Emil Fischer (contrasted with the  $\beta$ -urate):



Urates are precipitated as non-crystalline mon- and di-ammonium urate by saturating the urine with ammonium chlorid.

Uric acid,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{N}_4\text{O}_3$ , or 2, 6, 8, tri-oxy-purin, in pure crystalline condition, appears as minute rhombic prisms. When impure, the normal crystalline shape is distorted into various "whetstone," "dumb-bell," and rosette shapes. In such form uric acid crystals generally appear in the microscopic examination of the urine. The solubility of uric acid in pure water at room temperature ( $20^\circ \text{C.}$ ) is low, 1 : 16,000 parts of water. In water at  $60^\circ \text{C.}$ , the solubility is increased, 1 : 1600, or 10 per cent. With the exception of ammonium acetate, borate, and carbonate, alkalies dissolve uric acid. With concentrated sulphuric acid, uric acid forms a sulphate which is readily hydrolyzed by introducing water. Precipitants of uric acid are the so-called alkaloidal reagents, picric acid, mercuric chlorid, silver nitrate (ammoniacal), phosphotungstic acid, and lead acetate. Both uric acid and the urates exert reducing powers on cupric and other solutions; Fehling's solution is reduced, but Benedict's quali-

<sup>1</sup> For the nomenclature of purin rings, see page 328. Concerning the matter of acidity of uric acid, see Cohen, J. B., Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students, Part III, Synthesis, London, Edward Arnold & Co., 4th ed., 1923, p. 120.

<sup>2</sup> Arranged according to their effectiveness.



tative reagent is affected only on contact with uric acid for some time.

*Tests for Uric Acid:* 1. *Phosphomolybdic-phosphotungstic Acid Test of Folin.*<sup>1</sup>—Add to the solution suspected of containing uric acid a small pinch of desiccated sodium carbonate, mix, and add 1 ml. of the reagent<sup>2</sup>; a blue color indicates a positive test for uric acid.

2. *Murexid Test.*—Directions for examining a solution: Place 5 mls. of the solution in a porcelain evaporating dish and evaporate to dryness over a free flame and then on a water-bath. Then add to the residue 3 drops of concentrated nitric acid in order to oxidize the uric acid to alloxantin, which is condensed from two molecules of alloxan. Heat the mixture on the water-bath until practically dry and longer if necessary until all the nitric acid has been evaporated. The residue is reddish. While the dish is being heated, prepare a dilute solution of ammonium hydroxid by filling a test-tube with distilled water and adding 3 drops of desk reagent concentrated ammonium hydroxid. Then add several drops of this diluted reagent to the residue in the evaporating dish. In a positive test the color becomes violet red. Next add a few drops of 10 per cent. NaOH solution; the color loses the reddish tinge and becomes bluish violet. The reactions are given on page 367.

Difficulties in obtaining the test are due to:

(a) Charring over a free flame; the water-bath must be used, at least to complete the process of desiccation.

(b) The drying does not completely remove the nitric acid. It is necessary that all  $\text{HNO}_3$  be removed.

(c) Using disproportionate amounts of reagents.

*The detection of uric acid and urates in urine (Folin):* Pipette 2 mls. of urine into a porcelain evaporating dish. Add 1 drop of a saturated solution (10 per cent.) of oxalic acid and evaporate the fluid to dryness on a water-bath. Permit the preparation to cool. Extract the polyphenols, which give the same color as uric acid, by adding 10 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol. Let stand five minutes and then decant the alcohol by gently pouring it from the residue. Dilute the residue with 10 mls. distilled water and 2 drops saturated solution of sodium carbonate. Stir to dissolve the uric acid in the alkaline medium, add one

<sup>1</sup> For the chemistry involved see Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

ml. of the uric acid reagent employed above<sup>1</sup> and wash the fluid from the dish into a small beaker with 20 mls. saturated sodium carbonate solution. A blue color is positive.

**Uric acid is prepared from urine** by adding to 100 mls. of urine 2 mls. of concentrated HCl, and letting the solution stand overnight or longer; brownish crystals of uric acid appear attached to the sides and bottom of the vessel. The pigment is a derivative of bile pigments and is known as uro-erythrin.<sup>2</sup>

*Clinical interest* in the uric acid of the urine has always been marked and research has led to much better understanding of its significance. The investigations of Benedict, Folin, Hunter, and their collaborators in America and of several European workers<sup>3</sup> are particularly noteworthy.

*The variations in output of uric acid are:*

*Physiological.*—Diet: The following table, after Lusk from Rockwood,<sup>4</sup> gives a series of observations concerning uric acid excretion over long periods of time:

	G. uric acid, crystal, per twenty-four hours, average.
January.....	0.308
February.....	0.305
March.....	0.315
April.....	
May.....	0.321
June.....	
July.....	0.313
August.....	
September.....	
October.....	
November.....	0.298

An extensive series of observations were made by Hanzlik and Hawk<sup>5</sup> on the excretion of uric acid over long periods of time and with controlled diets. The average daily excretion for 10 adults was found to be:

<sup>1</sup> Page 710, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *ouron*, urine, and *erythros*, red.

<sup>3</sup> Among whom may be mentioned Wiechowski, Schittenhelm, Burian, on the Continent, and Onslow in England. For an account of the chemistry of uric acid see Folin, O., and Derick, C. (Harvard Medical School and Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 362, 1924.

<sup>4</sup> Rockwood, E. W. (Professor of Chemistry, University of Iowa, Iowa City, Ia.), Amer. Jour. Physiol., vol. 12, p. 38, 1904.

<sup>5</sup> See page 708.

Subject.	Weight.	Average twenty-four-hour excretion of uric acid as such:	As uric acid nitrogen.
F.....	53.1 kilos.	0.475 g.	0.159 g.
J.....	76.0	0.520	0.174
B.....	65.5	0.588	0.196
C.....	72.2	0.597	0.199
H.....	66.1	0.608	0.203
A.....	74.1	0.615	0.206
I.....	63.3	0.619	0.207
G.....	68.7	0.644	0.215
K.....	72.3	0.651	0.218
E.....	76.7	0.660	0.221

The lowest excretion is 0.475 g. uric acid and the highest, 0.66 g. There is no correlation between body weight and uric acid excretion, subject J having considerable weight, but the second lowest amount of excretion.

Folin has shown that the excretion of uric acid varies with the character of the food, although there is no constant relation:

Total nitrogen ingested, 119 gs. Uric acid excreted, 0.37 g. as nitrogen.  
Total nitrogen ingested, 0 g. Uric acid excreted, 0.09 g. as nitrogen.

The increase in gland substances (thymus, pancreas, brain, etc.) in the diet causes an increase in uric acid excretion. A high protid diet causes an increased elimination of uric acid, not by producing more uric acid, but by reducing its destruction in the blood and by increasing its passage through the kidney. The same "wash-out" effect of high water or other liquid intake observed in the case of nitrogenous substances in general is also found in the case of uric acid.

Exercise causes a small increase in uric acid excretion.

*Pathological Variations.*—Uric acid excretion is much increased in fever or in any wasting disease which causes much tissue destruction, as in poliomyelitis; in leukocytosis of whatever kind, and especially in leukemias, due to the destruction of white blood-corpuscles; in pneumonia and empyema, during the absorptive stage following the crisis. Gout demands especial attention.<sup>1</sup> The uric acid of the blood is abnormally high,<sup>2</sup> due to the lowered sensitiveness of the kidney to increase in circulating uric acid; the response of the kidney to changes in uric acid in the blood varies with the individual, but it is patho-

<sup>1</sup> The most accurate knowledge we possess concerning the chemistry of gout is embodied in the paper of Folin, Berglund, and Derick, mentioned on page 711.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter XVI.

logical in the gouty. Hence, the picture of gout is that of a kidney irresponsive to the demand to increase the elimination of uric acid through the urine. The high blood uric acid is a stimulus to increased destruction of uric acid. This is probably the reason why the kidney passes less uric acid through its tissue into the urine. The accumulation of urates in the cartilages is probably due to the fact that such tissues are, in some manner, abnormal and resemble dead tissue which permits the diffusion of urates into themselves. In rheumatism there is greater excretion of uric acid during the attack, where the fever is high, than during the postfebrile periods.

Uric acid is decreased in anemia (excepting pernicious anemia), lead-poisoning, chronic interstitial nephritis, and sometimes diabetes mellitus (diabetes alternans).

*Uric acid calculi* occur throughout the urinary tract in many individuals. The calculi are known as "sand," "gravel," and "stones," according to their size and appearance. The type of calculus depends largely upon the reaction of the urine. There is usually a nucleus, or core, around which the calculus is deposited. The core consists of calcium oxalate,<sup>1</sup> or of an organic base, like blood fibrin, epithelial cells, and "casts." The uric acid calculus consists of pure uric acid mechanically mixed with urates and pigments. The various zones may be recognized by fragmenting a calculus and noting the rings of colors, concentric with the nucleus. Calculi may be identified by the tests given above for uric acid and the urates, the calculus being dissolved or suspended in water.

**Flame test:** Place a bit of the stone on a platinum foil and hold it in the flame of a Bunsen burner; it burns without a flame. Ammonium urate calculi are less frequently encountered. They are distinguished from ordinary uric acid and sodium urate calculi by their softness and the readiness with which they may be powdered. They give the murexid tests. They also give a strong test with Nessler's Solution when treated with 10 per cent. NaOH.

#### *Quantitative Determination of Uric acid (Method of Folin, Modi-*

<sup>1</sup> Other concretions occur in the urine, calcium oxalate being a common form, next in frequency to the uric acid deposits.



Fig. 207.—Erlenmeyer type of flask.

*fied by Benedict*).—Principle: Uric acid in a measured amount of urine is treated with a cyanid in order to intensify the color produced by a modified phosphotungstic uric acid reagent; the chief modification of this method is the introduction of arsenic pentoxid to form, and arseniophosphotungstic acid<sup>1</sup> which increases, the specificity of the reagent for uric acid. The colored solution thus obtained is compared in a colorimeter with a standard solution of uric acid, similarly treated.

Reagents: For the preparation of the reagents see the Appendix.

Procedure: Dilute the urine 1 : 20<sup>2</sup> by pipetting 5 mls. of the urine into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and adding water to the mark. Mix and pipette 10 mls. of the diluted urine into a 50-ml. volumetric flask. Add 5 mls. of 5 per cent. sodium or potassium cyanid solution



from a burette<sup>3</sup> and 1 ml. of the arseniophosphotungstic acid

solution. Mix. After five minutes dilute to the mark, mix by pouring from the flask into a beaker and back again. Rinse out the beaker; finally, compare with a standard made during the five-minute interval as follows: Ten mls. of the standard uric acid solution which contain 0.20 mg. of uric acid are pipetted into a 50-ml. volumetric flask. Add 5 mls. of the cyanid mixture from a burette and 1 ml. of the uric acid reagent. Leave for the same period (five minutes), dilute to the mark, stopper, and mix.

Calculation:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard}}{\text{Reading of the unknown}} \times 0.2 \text{ gives the mgs.}$$

of uric acid as such in 10 mls. of urine. For per cent., multiply by 10.

<sup>1</sup> The formula for a compound synthesized by Fremery (M.\*Fremery, Ber. d. chem. Gesellsch., vol. 17, p. 29, 1884) from potassium tungstate and arsenic pentoxid, As<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, is:



The arseniophosphotungstic reagent of Benedict has sodium replacing potassium and, in addition, has phosphoric acid, making, therefore, a substance having a formula similar to the above, but with H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> added to it, and with the atoms Na in place of K.

<sup>2</sup> Or to such a volume that the uric acid content is about 0.15 to 0.30 mg. per 10 mls. of urine.

<sup>3</sup> Caution!!



Two-tenths of a gram of KCN are toxic. Less than

1 ml. of a 5 per cent. solution may be fatal!



For twenty-four-hour quantity, take 0.1 of the result obtained by solving the first equation and multiply by the figure denoting the twenty-four-hour quantity of urine. Note that the result is uric acid and not uric acid nitrogen.

*Method of Folin.*—Principle: This method requires a centrifuge to cause the precipitate of uric acid as silver urate to settle. The precipitated silver urate is then freed from interfering polyphenols in the supernatant liquid. Next the silver precipitate is dissolved in the cyanid solution, sodium carbonate is added to permit the development of the color, and the preparation is read in the colorimeter against a standard uric acid solution.

Reagents: See Appendix.

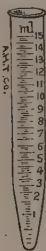


Fig. 208.—A 15-ml. centrifuge tube, graduated. For mounting when in use, see Fig. 209.

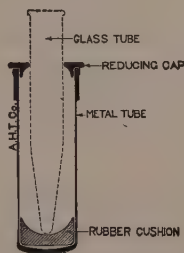


Fig. 209.—Fifteen-ml. centrifuge tube in its situation in the centrifuge cup. The cup is the same as that used with the 50-ml. tube, but a small metal cap (reducing cap) holds the 15-ml. tube in place.

Procedure: Secure two 15-ml. centrifuge tubes and place them in your test-tube rack. Pipette with great accuracy 2 mls. of urine into each tube. Add about 3 mls. of distilled water and the same amount of special silver lactate solution. Set each tube on a pan of the balance near the centrifuge machine and adjust the balance so that when the tubes are placed in the machine they are in equilibrium. Centrifuge two minutes at high speed (Fig. 136). Then pour from each tube all of the supernatant liquid possible. Prepare the standard as follows: Pipette, accurately, 5 mls. standard uric acid solution into a

100-ml. volumetric flask and add from a burette<sup>1</sup> 2 mls. of



the 15 per cent. cyanid solution and 20 mls. of saturated sodium carbonate. Next, to each of the centrifuge tubes add 2 mls. of cyanid

<sup>1</sup> See page 714.

solution, dissolve the precipitated silver urate by means of a fine ball-tipped stirring-rod, and fill each tube with distilled water (5 mls.). Pour the contents of each tube into one of two 100-ml. volumetric flasks and add to each flask 20 mls. of the sodium carbonate solution. Grasp the neck of each flask and cause the contents to rotate. While the liquid is in motion add to each flask 5 mls. of the uric acid reagent, and after five minutes dilute the contents of each flask with distilled water to the mark. Stopper, invert, and agitate the contents thoroughly; then immediately pour from each flask into small beakers about 40 mls. of each of the liquids. A heavy sediment appears and a clear, supernatant liquid overlies it in each of the beakers. Pour some of this clear solution from the beaker containing the standard into the left cup and from one of the other beakers into the right cup of the colorimeter. Make comparison. Repeat with the second beaker, which acts as control.

Calculation: 5 mls. of the standard uric acid solution contain half a milligram of uric acid.

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard}}{\text{Reading of the unknown}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown}}{\text{Concentration of standard}}$$

If the standard is placed at 20 mms., then  $\frac{20}{n} = \frac{x}{0.5}$ . Then  $nx = 10$  and  $x = \frac{10}{n}$ . With the standard at 20, the number of milligrams of uric acid (dry) in 2 mls. of the urine being analyzed is 10 divided by the colorimetric reading of the unknown. Per cent. uric acid is 50 times that figure. The twenty-four-hour excretion of uric acid is obtained by dividing the result for 2 mls. by 2 and multiplying by the figure representing the volume of urine excreted in twenty-four hours.

*Method of Morris.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: This method is based upon the procedures of Folin and of Benedict, but precipitation of the uric acid is made with zinc (chlorid), thus avoiding the deterioration of the silver lactate reagent used in the former methods, in daylight; also, "arsenio-18-tungstic acid" replaces the arseniophosphotungstic acid reagent of the foregoing methods. This solution gives nearly three times the color produced by the other solution.

<sup>1</sup> Morris, J. L. (in charge of biochemistry, Western Reserve School of Medicine, Cleveland, Ohio), Colorimetric Determination of Uric Acid, etc., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 50, p. 55, 1922.

Reagents: See the Appendix for composition of the arsenio-18-tungstic acid solution.

Zinc chlorid, 2.5 per cent. aqueous solution.

Procedure: Pipette 1 ml. of urine into a 50-ml. centrifuge tube and dilute with distilled water to about 40 mls. Add 1 ml. of the zinc chlorid solution and mix with a small stirring rod. Add 1 ml. of 10 per cent. sodium carbonate solution and stir. Centrifuge for two minutes, decant the supernatant fluid and dissolve the residue in about 4 drops of 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid solution, using a stirring-rod. Add 5 mls. of distilled water and 10 mls. of 10 per cent. sodium cyanid from a burette. Pour the liquid into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and wash the tube with a small amount of water until the washings, when added to the liquid in the volumetric flask, make a total volume of 60 mls. Prepare the standard by pipetting 1 ml. of the special phosphate standard uric acid solution into a 50-ml. volumetric flask and dilute to about 30 mls. Add 5 mls. of the 10 per cent. sodium cyanid solution from a burette. Placing the 100-ml. and the 50-ml. volumetric flasks side by side before you, add to each, at the same time, the following amounts of the arsenio-18-tungstate reagent. 1 ml. to the 50-ml. flask containing the standard uric acid solution (0.5 mg. uric acid) and to the 100-ml. flasks, 2 mls. of the tungstic reagent. Agitate the contents of the flasks and dilute to the marks. Read in a colorimeter against the standard.

Calculation: There is 0.5 mg. uric acid in 50 mls. of the standard. This corresponds to 1 ml. in 100 mls. of solution. Applying this to the general formula given above, the concentration of uric acid in percentage of twenty-four-hour quantity of urine may readily be made.

**Creatin and Creatinin.**—The chemistry of these compounds has been discussed.<sup>1</sup> Creatin is methyl-guanidin-acetic acid and creatinin is its anhydrid. Creatin is present in the urine only at certain stages of life, while creatinin is a normal and the most characteristic component of the urine. Creatin at least is both endogenous and exogenous in origin. However, the knowledge of the origin, function, and meaning of these components is less certain than that concerning any other substance in the urine. One reason for this is that prior to 1904 no method for accurately and rapidly determining creatinin had been developed, and it is only by virtue of the work of Folin published in that year that progress has been made. The method for creatin followed. The close

<sup>1</sup> Page 361.

chemical relation between creatin of the muscle and of the blood and creatinin of the urine suggests that one is derived from the other; yet up to the present time, no unchallenged proof has been offered for this theory. Myers<sup>1</sup> and collaborators have shown the constancy in amount of muscle creatin and ascribed to this factor the constancy in elimination of urinary creatinin. The creatinin content of muscle is greater than that of any other tissue. When creatin is added to muscle undergoing autolysis,<sup>2</sup> the creatin is converted to creatinin at a constant rate, which is about the expected rate if creatin were converted into creatinin in the muscle and excreted in the urine. The conclusion is reached that creatinin is formed in muscle from creatin at a constant rate, the creatinin being transported to the kidney by way of the blood and there excreted into the urine.

The constancy in creatinin excretion over several hours per day is shown by the following table from Simpson (Two-hour periods):

Time.	Subject, W. H. J. A., mgs.	Subject, G. E. S., mgs.	Subject, B. P. W., mgs.	Subject, G. W. C., mgs.
A. M.				
8-10.....	95	..	65	
9-11.....	..	69	...	78
10-12.....	84	..	83	
11-1.....	..	63	..	70
P. M.				
12- 2.....	86	..	91	
1- 3.....	..	78	..	66
2- 4.....	98	..	68	
3- 5.....	..	68	..	90
4- 6.....	91	..	76	
5- 7.....	..	73	..	68
6- 8.....	80	..	75	
7- 9.....	..	63	..	61
8-10.....	95	..	66	
9-11.....	..	71	..	63
10-12.....	82	..	76	
MIDNIGHT				
11-1.....	..	72	..	54
12-2.....	84	..	71	
1-3.....	..	63	..	63
2-4.....	78	..	74	
3-5.....	..	80	..	67
4-6.....	71	..	75	
5-7.....	..	65	..	73

<sup>1</sup> See Myers, cited on page 535.

<sup>2</sup> See page 456. Compare Hammett, F. S. (Fig 116a), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 53, p. 323, 1922.

Concerning sex differences, it has been found<sup>1</sup> that creatinin is excreted in practically equal amounts by men and women, but in the case of creatin, some apparently normal women excrete a small amount each day.

As to the function of creatin and creatinin in the human body, it has been suggested that the former is concerned in some manner with the muscle tonus. Soldiers standing at "attention" excrete a larger amount of creatinin than when walking, sitting, or lying down. Electrical stimulation of frog's muscles is followed by an increased content of creatin.<sup>2</sup> Biochemists are not in agreement concerning the rôle of these two substances in body fluids and tissues. Creatin has been supposed to:

1. Exist only as a waste-product.
2. Act as food. Creatin is retained to a certain amount when fed.
3. Be intermediate in lecithin formation, suggested by its relation to cholin; or, vice versa, creatin may come from cholin.
4. Form arginin, suggested by the common possession of the guanidin radicle. Or, vice versa, creatin may be derived from arginin.
5. Have a relation to glucid metabolism. Sugar is necessary for the metabolism of creatin.
6. Maintain muscle "tonus," or to aid in its contraction.
7. Be a detoxicating agent for guanidin, which is associated with tetany.

*Clinical Significance of Creatin.*—1. In glycopriva. Withdrawing or conspicuously lowering starches and sugars from the diet produces creatinuria. In diabetes mellitus, or in any condition in which the glucid metabolism is interfered with (renal diabetes; alimentary glycosuria; phlorhizin poisoning for experimental purposes or for diagnostic reasons; epinephrin administration, etc.), creatin is excreted.

2. In muscle catabolism, as in poliomyelitis, myositis, dermatomyositis, and in other muscular involvements.

3. Exophthalmic goiter.

<sup>1</sup> McLaughlin, L., and Blunt, K. (University of Chicago, Chicago, Ill.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 58, p. 267, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> See page 720 for discussion concerning the actual presence of creatin in the urine. Benedict (Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 52, p. 11, 1922) expresses a doubt that the creatin in the blood is anything but a waste-product.



4. Fasting; see (1). However, certain protids, like serum protid, and eggs, cause the disappearance of creatinuria. In fact, it is possible that (1) is to be explained by the protid-sparing action of glucids.<sup>1</sup>

5. Excessively high protid diet, especially with certain kinds of protids. This has been offered as an explanation of creatinuria of children. The creatinuria of children and that of exophthalmic goiter cases varies with the time of taking nourishment. Creatinuria can be established in women at periods other than sexual events by high protid feeding. In fact, the expression "creatin diabetes" has been used to signify the creatinuria on high protid diets. The term "diabetes" refers to the elimination of creatin and not of sugar. It is the food protid and not stored protid which gives rise to creatin. In children on a high protid diet creatin reaches a maximum corresponding to the establishment of a positive nitrogen equilibrium.

6. In children creatinuria occurs in both sexes, but the termination of the period during which creatin is excreted is different in the two sexes. It is characteristic of night urine and it may fall under (1) or (5). It persists longer in female children than in males, the former terminating creatinuria at puberty, the male children about two or three years earlier.

7. In women there is much variation in creatin excretion. Some women excrete creatin only at sexual events, others exhibit intermittent creatinuria. It is supposed that intermittent creatinuria passes over into the continuous creatinuria of pregnancy and other sexual periods. Postpartum urine shows an increased content of creatin over that during pregnancy. It is at its height about the third day after delivery and extends to the end of the first week, owing to the lactation which begins about this time and not to the involution of the uterus, as formerly supposed.

8. In acidosis. Other factors arising during acidosis may be the cause of the creatinuria observed during that condition. It is probable that the cause lies in (1) or in (5) above.

The amount of creatin excretion reported in chemical papers must be considered according to the method used to obtain the figures. It is probable that many of the reports are untrustworthy, owing to the method employed. The table on page 721 represents the work done with accurate modern methods.

<sup>1</sup> Page 555.

## NITROGEN PARTITION BY GRAMS AND PERCENTAGE FOR NORMAL CHILDREN (JOHNSTON AND VEEDER)

Date and age.	Amount.	Specific gravity.	Total nitrogen.	Ammonia nitrogen.	Urea nitrogen.	Creatinin nitrogen.	Creatin nitrogen.	Uric acid nitrogen.	Per cent. of total nitrogen.					Undetermined.
									Urea.	Ammonia.	Creatinin.	Creatin.	Uric acid.	
"Standard" Diets														
I. 21 months	750	1.012	4.480	0.173	3.941	0.050	0.037	0.060	87.8	3.9	1.1	0.8	1.3	5.1
10/27-28	550	1.018	4.425	0.176	3.852	0.047	0.027	0.050	87.0	4.0	1.1	0.6	1.1	6.2
10/28-29														
Average.....	650	1.015	4.45	0.175	3.897	0.049	0.032	0.055	87.4	3.9	1.1	0.7	1.2	5.7
II. 9 years	440	1.030	7.936	0.354	.....	0.165	0.112	0.069	....	4.5	2.1	1.4	0.9	8.7
11/9-10	410	1.030	8.064	0.325	6.717	0.162	0.098	0.052	83.5	4.0	2.0	1.2	0.6	
11/10-11														
Average.....	425	1.030	8.000	0.340	6.717	0.164	0.105	0.060	83.5	4.2	2.0	1.3	0.8	8.2
Creatinin-free Diets														
I. 28 months	860	1.007	3.968	0.214	3.332	0.049	0.079	0.089	84.0	5.4	1.2	2.0	2.2	5.2
11/29-30	860	1.012	3.347	0.259	2.778	0.045	0.064	0.099	83.0	7.7	1.3	1.9	2.9	3.2
11/30-12/1	705	1.014	3.676	0.213	3.120	0.052	0.074	0.077	85.0	5.8	1.4	2.0	2.1	3.7
12/1-2														
Average.....	755	1.011	3.663	0.229	3.077	0.049	0.073	0.088	84.0	6.3	1.3	2.0	2.4	4.0
II. 6 years	770	1.013	4.975	0.205	4.041	0.081	0.064	0.081	81.0	4.1	1.6	1.3	1.6	10.4
11/29-30	1140	1.007	4.800	0.213	3.760	0.100	0.038	0.101	78.3	4.4	2.1	0.8	2.1	12.3
11/30-12/1	610	1.013	4.733	0.200	.....	0.095	0.024	0.073	....	4.2	2.0	0.5	1.5	
12/1-2														
Average.....	840	1.011	4.836	0.201	3.90	0.092	0.042	0.083	80.0	4.2	1.9	0.9	1.7	

The table on page 721 is from Johnston and Veeder.<sup>1</sup>

Folin found that the diet caused a characteristic change in creatin excretion:

Vegetarian diet.....	8 to 18 mgs. per 100 mls. urine.
Mixed diet.....	250 (about) " " " " "

In women the average creatin excretion in cases of intermittent creatinuria is less than 0.10 g. During pregnancy it rises to approximately 0.17 g. per twenty-four hours and to 0.42 g. in the first three or four days after delivery. Immediately after delivery there may be a rise as high as 1.5 g., but this is not usual.

*Pathologically*, creatin appears in increased amounts in:

1. Acute fevers.
2. The later stages of exophthalmic goiter.
3. Diabetes mellitus and interferences with the glucid metabolism.
4. Muscle wastings, like poliomyelitis.
5. "Marasmus"<sup>2</sup> in children.

*Creatinin*, as we have shown above, is a constant excretory product of the urine of both sexes, young as well as adult, although there is a lowered creatinin excretion, which may be correlated with the lower content of muscle creatin (of the newborn 0.07 per cent.; of adult 0.3 per cent.). The creatinin excretion varies with muscle bulk.<sup>3</sup> The average normal twenty-four-hour excretion is 7–11 mgs. per kilo of body weight. An adult male weighing 70 kilos<sup>4</sup> excretes about 0.7 g. in twenty-four hours. Creatinin varies physiologically:

1. With exercise, combined with fasting, the extent varying with the subject.
2. With metabolic rate, especially in women. Smaller, underweight, more active women excrete relatively more creatinin than larger, less active subjects.
3. By feeding meat extracts and other foods containing a high creatinin content. Eighty per cent. or more of creatinin administered appears as creatinin in the urine.

<sup>1</sup> Johnston, M. R., and Veeder, B. S. (Washington University, St. Louis, Mo.), The Nitrogen Partition in the Urine of Normal Children, Amer. Jour. Dis. Child., vol. 13, p. 404, 1917.

<sup>2</sup> Greek *marasmos*, from *maraino*, drying up. Said of children when they show progressive wastings and emaciation for which there is no obvious cause. The term is non-critical and generally refers to avitaminoses or other nutritional disturbances.

<sup>3</sup> But not with muscle exercise. See (1) concerning exercise, combined with starvation.

<sup>4</sup> 154 pounds.

*Pathologically*, creatinin is increased in muscle catabolism as in fevers, during the toxic stage, etc. It is diminished in post-pyrexial stages of intoxication, in acute parenchymatous nephritis (nephrosis), in anemias, in tuberculosis, etc. The significance of creatin and creatinin from the standpoint of blood analysis will be discussed later.<sup>1</sup>

*Qualitative Test for Creatin.*—Principle: Hydrolysis to creatinin. The test is quantitative as follows. (For qualitative tests for creatinin see pages 361 and 362.)

*Quantitative Determination of Creatin and Creatinin.*<sup>2</sup>—There is no practical method available for the quantitative determination of creatin. The method devised by Folin involves the following principle:

**Folin's Method for Creatin.**—Principle: Conversion of creatin to creatinin and the estimation of the combined creatinin from creatin and of the "preformed" creatinin existing in the urine. Then, after estimating the latter on a second sample of urine, creatinin from creatin is obtained by subtraction.

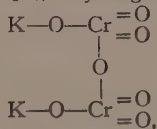
Procedure: Pipette 10 mls. of urine into a small Erlenmeyer flask. Add 10 mls. of 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid. Place the flask without stopper in an autoclave and leave for ten minutes at a temperature of about 115° C. Remove, let cool, and transfer to a 500-ml. volumetric flask. Add 10 per cent. NaOH to neutralization and then 5 mls. more. Add 15 mls. of saturated picric acid solution and let stand just five minutes. Dilute to the mark and compare with one of the two following standards:

1. A half-normal solution of potassium dichromate<sup>3</sup> made by

<sup>1</sup> Chapter XVI.

<sup>2</sup> Page 362.

<sup>3</sup> Potassium dichromate,  $K_2Cr_2O_7$ , may be given the following structural formula,



in which chromium is hexavalent. To determine the normal value for making a standard solution we find the change in valency when the dichromate is used to oxidize a substance. On being reduced chromium becomes trivalent, since the

dichromate is reduced to chromic acid,  $Cr=O$ . Hence, since a gram-molecule made

up to a liter is a normal when expressed in gram equivalent and since the gram equivalent is defined as the weight in grams corresponding to one unit of

weighing out 24.10 gs. pure potassium dichromate<sup>1</sup> and making up to 1 liter with H<sub>2</sub>O. However, the color of the dichromate solution is qualitatively different from that of the red creatinin picrate produced in this determination. Moreover, in calculating, compensation must be made for the slight quantitative difference between the color of the solution of creatinin picrate that corresponds to a standard solution of creatinin and the half-normal dichromate solution. The basis of the calculation is as follows: Ten milligrams of creatinin treated with picric acid and alkali as described above and made up to 500 mls. of solution give a color slightly less pronounced than that of a half-normal dichromate solution; with the dichromate as 8 mms. and the creatinin at 8.1 mms., the colors match. The standard, therefore, is set at 8, but since the standard dichromate solution simply replaces the standard creatinin solution, in calculations, 8.1 is the standard reading. Hence, with dichromate as standard:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard} = 8.1}{\text{Reading of the unknown} = n} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (10 mgs.)}}$$

Solving for x, we have:

$$\text{Creatinin in 10 mls. urine} = \frac{81}{\text{Reading of the unknown}}.$$

2. Creatinin standard: To make the standard for colorimetric reading pipette 1 ml. of the standard creatinin solution<sup>2</sup> containing 1 mg. of creatinin into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add 20 mls. saturated picric acid solution and, lastly, 1.5 ml. of 10 per cent. NaOH delivered from a burette. Let stand five minutes, dilute to the mark, and read in the colorimeter. The calculation is simple: Apply the colorimetric formula used previously in (1) above.

The amount of creatin is then found by making a determination of the preformed creatinin by repeating the foregoing method, but omitting the hydrolysis with hydrochloric acid and subtracting the figure obtained from that derived after hydrolysis.

---

valence change, we have for each chromium atom a valence change of 3; that is, 6 - 3 = 3. Therefore, to make a normal solution of K<sub>2</sub>Cr<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> we must take one-sixth of the molecular weight of the dichromate. Mol. wt. K<sub>2</sub>Cr<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> = 290.20; divided by 6, we have 48.36. Hence, 48.26 g. K<sub>2</sub>Cr<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> dissolved and made up to 1000 mls. of solution in water make a normal solution, and a half-normal solution is  $\frac{48.36}{2} = 24.10$  gs. K<sub>2</sub>Cr<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub> made up to 1000 mls. with water.

<sup>1</sup> Since the word is of Greek origin (Greek *chromos*, color) the Greek prefix *di* (Greek *dis*, two) must be used rather than the Latin *bi*- (Latin *bis*, two).

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.



Modifications of foregoing method have been made by Benedict:

1. Hydrolysis is accomplished in an open evaporating dish. Add a pinch of powdered lead to prevent discoloration of the fluid. Boil rapidly over a free flame until a syrup is obtained and continue the evaporation on a steam-bath. The remainder of the procedure is like that already given.

2. A picric acid-sodium hydroxid solution is made up together, to be used in place of the separate solutions. The mixing must be done immediately preceding the use of the solution.

3. A specially purified picric acid should be used in place of the ordinary commercial kind. Directions for purifying the commercial picric acid are given in the Appendix.

The *determination of creatinin* in the urine is made by the method given above for creatin, omitting the hydrolysis with acid. The creatinin of urine is spoken of as "preformed" creatinin.<sup>1</sup> The following method of Folin involves the use of 1 ml. of urine:

*Folin's Method for Creatinin in the Urine.*

—Transfer by means of a 1-ml. Ostwald-Folin pipette<sup>2</sup> 1 ml. of urine to a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Wash the pipette with a stream of distilled water and drain as much water as possible, blowing the excess upon filter-paper. Transfer 1 ml. of the standard creatinin solution (mentioned above) to a second 100-ml. volumetric flask. Add to each flask 20 mls. of saturated picric acid solution,<sup>3</sup> and from a burette, 1.5 ml. of 10 per cent. sodium hydroxid solution. Leave ten minutes. Dilute to the mark with distilled water and mix. Read against one another in the colorimeter. In this case the standard may be set at any height, since pure creatinin<sup>4</sup> is used as a standard. Calculation: The calculation is similar to that of the foregoing method, the concentration of the standard being 1 mg.

<sup>1</sup> See page 723.

<sup>2</sup> For the use of these pipettes see the Appendix. As Benedict, Greenwald, and others insist, urines containing "aceton" substances must first be boiled in order to remove such compounds, for they react with the reagent picric acid similarly to creatinin (see page 726). See Blau, N. F. (Cornell Medical, New York, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 48, p. 105, 1921.

<sup>3</sup> This solution must be made from purified picric acid, mentioned above, owing to the small amounts of urine and reagents used.

<sup>4</sup> Or pure creatinin-HCl.



Fig. 210.—Meker type Bunsen burner used for ashing residues in analysis of mineral substances, etc.

**Qualitative Tests for Creatinin.**—**Jaffe's Test** (see page 361).—The test follows the quantitative method for preformed creatinin just given. Place 5 mls. of urine in a test-tube and add 1 ml. of saturated solution of picric acid and also 5 drops of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Shake the tube. The color gradually becomes reddish, owing to the formation of a red creatinin picrate.<sup>1</sup> Add 1 drop of glacial acetic acid; if done within ten minutes, the color becomes yellow by the re-formation of picric acid. If acetone is present, the color will become reddish brown. Glucose requires long exposure or heat to produce a somewhat similar color, due to picramic acid.<sup>2</sup>

**Weyl's<sup>3</sup> Test.**—Place 5 mls. of urine in a test-tube and add 5 drops of a freshly made 5 per cent. solution of sodium nitroferrocyanid (nitroprussid) and a few drops of sodium hydroxid solution, made by diluting 10 per cent. solution one-half. Note a permanganate color. Add 1 drop of glacial acetic acid and boil; the color turns greenish and blue, owing to the Prussian blue formed in the reaction. Note: In order to distinguish creatinin from acetone,<sup>4</sup> which gives somewhat similar color reaction, observe that on the addition of the acid in the nitroprussid test for creatinin, the color is at first greenish and later may turn blue if creatinin is present, whereas acetone, treated in like manner, gives a purplish-red color.

**Hippuric Acid.**—This conjugated amino-acid<sup>5</sup> is found in varying amounts in human urine, ranging from 0.8 to 1.9 g. per twenty-four hours. The amount excreted increases when the glycine content of the body is raised, but experimentation tends to show that increasing the benzoic acid in the body does not cause accelerated excretion of hippuric acid.<sup>6</sup> Hippuric acid is increased only when protids containing the amino-acid glycine or substances capable of being converted into glycine, such as alanine, are administered. Hippuric acid is increased and urea is decreased when benzoates are administered<sup>7</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> Greenwald, I., and Gross, J., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 59, p. 601, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> The substances used in the above test are similar to those used in the quantitative method for glucose by Benedict. With glucose, picramic acid is formed by reduction (page 157). Besides creatinin sodium picrate, rubidium, and cesium creatinin picrate have been synthesized (Greenwald and Gross, cited above).

<sup>3</sup> Weyl, T., German chemist, died 1913. Compare page 362.

<sup>4</sup> Page 520.

<sup>5</sup> Page 239.

<sup>6</sup> Lewis, H. B., and Griffith, W. H. (Universities of Michigan and Illinois, respectively, *Fig. 98*), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 55, p. 22, 1923.

<sup>7</sup> Swanson, W. W. (page 729), *The Effect of Sodium Benzoate Ingestion on the Composition of the Blood and Urine, with Especial Reference to the Possible Synthesis of Glycine in the Body*, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 62, p. 565, 1925.

glycin is synthesized from the nitrogenous substances in the body which would otherwise form urinary urea and be excreted as such.

Hippuric acid is increased in cases of intestinal stasis in which there is extensive putrefaction; in diseases of the liver and in acute intoxications with high fever. A distinction must be made between the production and the elimination of this and other urinary constituents. Hippuric acid is absent from the urine or occurs in but small quantities in the retention of nephritis and in hypoplasia of the kidneys.

There is no specific test for hippuric acid other than crystallization.<sup>1</sup> Crystals are obtained from the urine by the following method: Place 200 mls. of freshly voided urine in an evaporating dish and boil over a free flame until the contents have been reduced to a syrup. Transfer the residue to a small Erlenmeyer flask. Wash the last traces into the flask from the dish, using a small amount of water. Add 2 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid and stopper. Let the preparation remain overnight, or until the following period. Then filter through dry paper and collect the precipitate, which is hippuric acid mixed with uric acid and other nitrogenous and mineral substances. Lay the paper upon the desk to dry and then wash off the crystals into a small Erlenmeyer flask by means of a few mls. of acetic ethyl ester.<sup>2</sup> Add more of the ester and shake in order to cause the extraction of the hippuric acid. Decant the liquid from the residue into a small beaker and let it evaporate. When crystals appear examine the preparation under the microscope.

*Quantitative Determination of Hippuric Acid (Folin).*—Principle: Hippuric acid is hydrolyzed to glycin and benzoic acid. The acid is extracted with chloroform and titrated with alkali (standard solution of sodium ethoxide, or "alcoholate"). Procedure: Pipette 100 mls. of urine into an evaporating dish and add 10 mls. of 5 per cent. NaOH solution. Evaporate to dryness on a steam-bath. Using not over 25 mls. of half-concentrated nitric acid,<sup>3</sup> dissolve the residue, working it up by means of a "policeman" and then transfer the solution and residue to a 500-ml. Kjeldahl flask, provided either with a reflux condenser or a long glass tube to serve as such. Add a small

<sup>1</sup> Hippuric acid, on heating in a dry test-tube, gives off the odor of benzaldehyde, or oil of bitter almonds, but this is not distinctive.

<sup>2</sup> Or "acetic ether," also called ethyl acetate,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COO.C}_2\text{H}_5$ , a solution of 90 to 99 parts of the ester in water.

<sup>3</sup> The desk reagent  $\text{HNO}_3$  diluted with an equal part of water.

crystal of cupric nitrate and some lump pumice to prevent bumping and boil the mixture for not less than five hours over a microburner. Withdraw the flame and let the flask cool. Wash the long tube or the condenser with a jet of water from your wash-bottle and transfer the contents of the flask to a separatory funnel. Use about 25 mls. of water in making the transfer. You should have by this time about 100 mls. of solution in the funnel. Now add to the funnel 55 gs. of crystalline ammonium sulphate and let them dissolve. Then add 50 mls. of chloroform and mix.<sup>1</sup> Open the stopper, and then the cock, carefully, and drain off the lower chloroform layer into a flask. Close the stop-cock, add 35 mls. of fresh chloroform and repeat the extrac-

tion. Repeat with two 25-ml. volumes of chloroform and transfer the combined extracts to a large separatory funnel. Add 100 mls. of a special sodium chlorid-hydrochloric solution,<sup>2</sup> shake the vessel thoroughly, and then, after the zones separate, draw off the chloroform layer below into a flask. To the flask add a few drops of phenolphthalein (indicator). Titrate with standard sodium ethoxid solutions.<sup>3</sup>

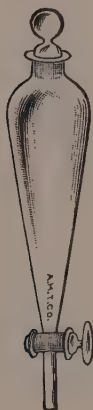


Fig. 210a.—Squibb separator funnel.

**Calculation:** The molecular weight of hippuric acid is 179.1. A normal solution contains that number of grams per liter, each ml. of which contains a thousandth of 179.1 gs., or 0.1791 g. The sodium ethoxid is decinormal and the results will be in terms of decinormal-

ity. Since all decinormals are volumetrically equivalent, the hippuric acid will be decinormal and each ml. will contain 0.01791 g. of hippuric acid. One hundred mls. will contain a hundred times that figure, or 1.791 g. In order to convert from volume of hippuric acid to mass multiply each ml. of the titration by 1.791, which gives the per cent. hippuric acid.

<sup>1</sup> It is necessary to invert the funnel and to release the compressed gas formed by cautiously opening the stop-cock. It is easier to do it in this manner than to unstopper the upper aperture.

<sup>2</sup> Four hundred grams of solid NaCl are dissolved in 900 mls. of water and 0.5 ml. of concentrated HCl is added. Make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.



*Method of Kingsbury and Swanson.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: This method differs from the Folin method in its earlier part, the speed of hydrolysis being increased by using solid NaOH and magnesium oxid. The urinary pigments are oxidized with potassium permanganate.

Procedure: Place 50 mls. of urine in a large Kjeldahl flask and add 7.5 gs. of sodium hydroxid and 0.5 g. magnesium oxid. Boil over a free flame, so that at the end of thirty minutes the volume has been reduced to about one-half. Now add 1 ml. of a 7 per cent.  $\text{KMnO}_4$  solution.<sup>2</sup> Wash down the last trace of permanganate by means of a jet of water from your wash-bottle, using as little water as possible. Now twirl the flask for about one minute, cool under the tap, and add 30 mls. concentrated nitric acid, pouring the acid down the inside of the neck of the flask. Stopper with a cork bearing a condenser<sup>3</sup> and boil for three-quarters of an hour. Cool. Rinse off the condenser, transfer the liquid to a small separatory funnel, and add 25 gs. crystalline ammonium sulphate. When this is dissolved add 50 mls. of chloroform,<sup>4</sup> extract, draw off the chloroform and repeat with 35 mls. and then with 25 mls. volumes. Combine the extracts in a large separatory funnel and add the NaCl-HCl solution given above for the Folin procedure. Draw off the chloroform layer through a funnel provided with dry paper into an Erlenmeyer flask. Add a few drops of phenolphthalein indicator and titrate with sodium ethoxid decinormal solution to a definite pink color.

Calculation: The number of mls. of decinormal sodium ethoxid solution used times 1.791<sup>5</sup> gives the number of grams of hippuric acid per 100 mls. of urine.

*Clinical Interest in Hippuric Acid.*—The rate of excretion of hippuric acid has been utilized as indicative of liver function<sup>6</sup> and renal efficiency.<sup>7</sup> The former depends upon the synthesizing power of the

<sup>1</sup> Kingsbury, F. B. (Biochemist, Metropolitan Life Insurance Co., New York, N. Y.), and Swanson, W. W. (University of Minnesota), A Rapid Method for the Determination of Hippuric Acid in Urine, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 48, p. 13, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> This is meant to be a saturated solution at the ordinary room temperature (20° C.).

<sup>3</sup> Compare the Folin procedure, page 727.

<sup>4</sup> For Kingsbury's method of purifying commercial chloroform see Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Page 728.

<sup>6</sup> Lackner, E., Levinson, A., and Morse, W. (Michael Reese Hospital, Chicago), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 12, p. 184, 1918.

<sup>7</sup> Kingsbury and Swanson (note 1, above), *Arch. Int. Med.*, vol. 28, p. 220, 1921. Morgulis, S., Pratt, G. P., and Jahr, H. M. (University of Nebraska College of Medicine, Omaha), *Arch. Int. Med.*, vol. 31, p. 116, 1923.



liver for hippuric acid, the latter the power of the kidney to excrete hippuric acid. For diagnosis of hepatic inefficiency the hippuric acid is determined in the urine on a standard diet, preferably for two or three days previous to the test. Then a given amount of sodium benzoate is given by mouth and the same day the hippuric acid in the urine is determined. If there is an increase in hippuric acid excretion, it is indicative of normal hepatic function; failure of increase or any increase below the theoretical normal amount computed from the ingested benzoate indicates that the liver is not functioning properly. Concomitant with the estimation of hippuric acid, urinary chlorids are determined in order to indicate whether the kidney is functioning normally. In the renal test the bladder is emptied and 2.4 gs. of sodium benzoate dissolved in about 100 mls. of water are administered by mouth at any time during the day. Fruit is eliminated from the diet. At the end of three hours urine is voided, or that voided during the three hours is collected and made up to 500 mls. volume, of which 100 mls. are taken for analysis. The result is expressed in terms of per cent. of ingested benzoate. In cases of oliguria, it may be necessary to extend the period of collection of urine over a longer time. The following table from Kingsbury and Swanson shows the results for selected cases:

Class.	Hippuric acid excretion. Per cent. of ingested $C_6H_5COONa$ excreted.
	56
	96
Normals.....	104
	52
	73
	24
	59
Chronic nephritis.....	28
	53
	81
Cardiac decompensation.....	26
	51
Mitral stenosis.....	66
	103
Chronic interstitial nephritis.....	45
	94

Morgulis gives figures for cases of similar nature for six-hour periods.

**Amino-acids.**—In normal human urine amino-acids are excreted daily, the amount varying with the individual and with the character

of the food. The normal excretion averages about 4 to 12 mgs. per hour. It is possible that about 1 gram of glycine, besides that conjugated as hippuric acid, is excreted daily. No direct correlation between physiological states and amino-acid excretion has been made. Pathologically, amino-acids are found excreted in large amounts in almost any condition in which the liver function is involved. This probably does not indicate an interference with the deaminizing power of the liver, which is shared with all organs, and especially, as Folin has demonstrated, with the muscles; but rather, as Van Slyke's observations have shown, that the normal liver absorbs large amounts of amino-acids and a deranged liver throws into the circulation excess amounts of amino-acids, with consequent excess amounts for excretion through the kidneys. In conditions in which there is a large and sudden production of amino-acids, as in the resolution of the exudate in pneumonia through autolysis, amino-acids appear in the urine in increased quantities.

Tests for the presence of amino-acids in the urine follow the same procedure as those for amino-acids in digests,<sup>1</sup> etc. The "Ninhydrin" test is available, but it must be recalled that this test gives other dialyzable protidtemns than amino-acids.

*Quantitative Determination of Amino-acids in the Urine (Method of Folin).*—Principle: The ammonia of the urine is removed by permutit<sup>2</sup> and the solution of amino-acids remaining is treated with a quinon compound which changes color, quantitatively, in the presence of amino-acids. The color is compared in a colorimeter with that developed by a similar treatment of known quantities of pure amino-acids, like glycine.

For reagent see Appendix.

Procedure: Secure four test-tubes which have been graduated at 25 mls. and to each of three of these tubes add, respectively, 1, 2, and 3 mls. of the standard amino-acid solution. To each tube add similar amounts, respectively, of the special 1 per cent. sodium carbonate solution. Add water to each tube to make a volume of 10 mls. Now prepare the specimen of urine: Place 25 mls. of urine in a 50-ml. Erlenmeyer flask and dilute to about 50 mls. Add about 2 gs. of permutit powder and agitate the contents of the flask for not less than five minutes. Let the powder settle and from it decant the supernatant liquid into another flask, draining the permutit as dry as pos-

<sup>1</sup> Page 234.

<sup>2</sup> Page 704.

sible. Repeat this procedure once, agitating the contents of the flask for not less than five minutes. Then pipette 5 mls. of this ammonia-free urine into the fourth test-tube. Add 1 ml. of decinormal HCl solution and 1 ml. of the special 1 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution. Dilute as with the standards, to 10 mls.

Prepare the reagent<sup>1</sup>: Weigh out 250 mls. of quinon and dissolve the powder in 50 mls. distilled water. Then to each of the four tubes add 5 mls. of the quinon solution. Mix. Place in a dark closet overnight, or until the following period. Then, to each tube add 1 ml. of the special acetic acid - acetate solution and 5 mls. of 4 per cent. sodium thiosulphate solution, which destroys the surplus quinon. Dilute each tube to the mark (25 mls.). Compare the unknown with the standard which it resembles most closely (1, 2, or 3). The comparison must be made within one hour, because after that the thiosulphate attacks the compound responsible for the color produced by the amino-acids acting upon the quinon.

Calculation: Each ml. of the standard amino-acid solution contains 0.07 mg. of amino-acid nitrogen. Standard Number 1 contains 0.07 mg., standard Number 2, 0.14 mg. and Number 3, 0.21 mg. of nitrogen. Assuming that the calculation is being made for Number 2:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of standard}}{\text{Reading of unknown (n)}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (0.14)}}$$

If the standard is placed at 20, then:

$$x = \frac{2.8}{n} \text{ mgs. amino-nitrogen per 5 mls. of 50 per cent. urine.}$$

Multiply the result by 40<sup>2</sup> to give percentage of  $\text{NH}_2$  nitrogen in the urine.

*Method of Van Slyke for Total<sup>3</sup> Amino-acids in the Urine.*—Principle: The amino-compounds are hydrolyzed by means of acid, the time of hydrolysis being hastened by autoclaving. The neutralized and concentrated residual fluid is then analyzed in the Van Slyke apparatus<sup>4</sup> by gasometric determination of amino-nitrogen.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> The urine was diluted one-half (50 per cent.); 5 mls. of this diluted urine were taken. To give 100 mls. multiply by 20, and for full strength, multiply by 2; hence  $2 \times 20 = 40$ .

<sup>3</sup> That is, the conjugated amino-acids, like hippuric acid as well as the uncombined.

<sup>4</sup> Page 292.

Procedure: Pipette 25 mls. of urine into a 50-ml. volumetric flask and add 1 ml. of concentrated sulphuric acid. Cover the mouth of the flask with tin-foil, leaving minute openings for the equilibration of the gases. Place the flask in an autoclave or oil-bath at 180° C. and leave for 1.5 hour. At the end of the period add 2 gs. powdered calcium hydroxid, agitate the contents, and then dilute to the mark. Filter, preferably with a piece of folded filter (Fig. 206). Transfer 20 mls. of the filtrate to an evaporating dish and leave on the steam-bath until dry. Take up the residue in 1 ml. of 50 per cent. acetic acid solution, afterwards diluted with not more than 5 mls. of water. Use a rubber-tipped "policeman" to scrub the dish. Pour the liquid into a 10-ml. volumetric flask. With a few drops of water dilute to 10 mls. and use 2 ml. amounts of the liquid for the determinations in the smaller apparatus or two aliquots of 5 mls. each for the larger apparatus. The following guide to the time of deaminization should be read:

From: 15° to 20° C.....	4 to 5 minutes
20° to 25° C.....	3 minutes
25° to 30° C.....	2.5 minutes

Calculation: See the description of the method on page 296.

*Free or Preformed Amino-acid in the Urine (Method of Van Slyke).—*

Principle: Urea is decomposed by urease<sup>1</sup> and the ammonia is neutralized. The filtered solution is then analyzed by the gasometric method given above.

Procedure: Pipette 25 mls. of urine into a 50-ml. volumetric flask and add 2 mls. of urease solution.<sup>2</sup> Leave at 50° C. for two hours, or overnight at 37° C. Then add 10 mls. of a 10 per cent. suspension of calcium hydroxid and make up to the volume (50 mls.). Filter. Evaporate as in the preceding method for total amino-nitrogen and proceed from this point according to that method.

The calculation is similar to that of the foregoing method. The result gives the uncombined amino-nitrogen.

*Rapid Clinical Method of Henriques and Sørensen.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle: Methylation of the amino-radicle of the amino-acids, thus destroying the basic properties of this radicle and permitting the carboxyl acidity to manifest itself. The principle is essentially that of the determination

<sup>1</sup> Page 690.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Henriques, V. (Professor, Copenhagen), and Sørensen, S. P. L. (Carlsberg Laboratory, same institution), *Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chemie*, vol. 64, p. 120, 1909.

of ammonia by the formol-titration method.<sup>1</sup> A preliminary treatment of the urine to remove ammonia, phosphates, etc., is necessary.

Reagents: These are similar to those of the method referred to above.

Procedure: Pipette 50 mls. of the urine into a 100 ml. volumetric flask and add 1 ml. phenolphthalein (indicator). Add 2 gs. barium chlorid solid. Agitate the contents of the flask so that the fluid will become saturated with the barium salt. Now add a saturated solution of barium hydroxid until the solution turns pinkish; this is due to the phenolphthalein in the alkaline solution. Add an excess of 5 mls. of the hydroxid. Fill to the mark, stopper, and invert. Let stand fifteen minutes and then filter. Measure 80 mls. of the filtrate into a second 100-ml. volumetric flask and neutralize the liquid (litmus-paper). Make up to the mark with freshly distilled water. Proceed to the titration: Pipette 20 mls. of the fluid into a beaker and add 0.2 normal sodium hydroxid solution until the color is pinkish. Then add 10 mls. of the neutralized formalin and carefully titrate to the same pink color. In order to fix this color in mind make a control of 20 mls. of distilled water, to which 20 mls. of the formalin solution is added. Add a few drops of phenolphthalein solution and titrate with the alkali to the first trace of pink color. Add 1 drop of the alkali; the color deepens. Add 2 drops more and the deep reddish pink color used for color comparison will be obtained. Bring the unknown to this color by adding alkali. Note amount of alkali used from burette.

Calculation: The calculation resembles that for Kjeldahl determinations of total nitrogen. The alkali being twice decinormal (0.2 normal), each ml. corresponds to  $2 \times 0.0014$  g., or 0.0028 g. nitrogen. This factor multiplied by the number of mls. used from the burette gives the number of grams of amino-nitrogen derived from the amino-acids in 20 mls. of the diluted filtrate, which was obtained by diluting 80 mls. of the original filtrate to 100 mls. of solution. Then five times the result gives the amino-nitrogen in 80 mls. of the original filtrate, and since this filtrate was 50 per cent. pure urine, the 80 mls. correspond to 40 mls. of pure urine. To express in per cent., multiply by 2.5; that is,  $\frac{1}{40} \times 100 = 2.5$ .

**Undetermined Nitrogen.**<sup>2</sup>—The character of about 4 per cent. of the nitrogen of the urine is still undetermined. After the urea, uric

<sup>1</sup> Pages 287 and 707.

<sup>2</sup> See Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 80, p. 1007, 1923.



acid, ammonia, and other known forms of nitrogen have been determined, this fraction remains. It seems to vary with the diet and has not been correlated with any special physiological or pathological factor other than conspicuous changes of diet.

*"Colloidal Nitrogen."*—This term was introduced by Salkowski<sup>1</sup> in 1905 to designate that alcohol-precipitable nitrogen which does not dialyze (hence the term). Normally, it constitutes about 2 per cent. of the total nitrogen, but in cases of malignancy may become increased even to 10 per cent. of the total nitrogen. This increase is not, however, invariable and is not particularly reliable in clinical diagnosis, for other conditions, such as hepatic cirrhosis, also lead to a similar increase. Some of the substances making up colloidal nitrogen contain sulphur, and there has been a correlation established between the amount of sulphur and colloidal nitrogen, on one hand, and the rate of growth of carcinomas, on the other.

It is probable that the undetermined nitrogen is composed of simple amino-acids, while the "colloidal nitrogen" is either mixed with urea or a compound from which urea may be derived by comparatively simple process. Such seems to be the character of the "alloxyproteic" and the "oxyproteic" acids which have been described as occurring in the "colloidal" or undetermined fraction of the urine.

Allantoin<sup>2</sup> occurs normally in the urine, even in the case of purin-free diet, in amounts to from 0.012 to 0.014 g.<sup>3</sup> The substance has already been mentioned in connection with uric acid<sup>4</sup> as an oxidation product. Liebig determined that if uric acid was moderately oxidized, allantoin was obtained and that with more prolonged oxidation, other products occurred. From the following evidence it has been assumed that allantoin is the result of the destruction of uric acid by oxidation in the body:

1. When uric acid is ingested allantoin appears in the urine.
2. When a gland substance, like thymus, rich in purins, is fed, allantoin appears in larger amounts in the urine, but when purin-poor materials, like muscle, are fed, the allantoin is recovered only in small amounts, as on a purin-free diet.

<sup>1</sup> Page 210.

<sup>2</sup> So called because of its presence in the allantoic fluid in the allantois, or primitive urinary bladder (Greek *allas*, sac, like sausage, and *eidos*, like).

<sup>3</sup> Wiechowski, W., *Biochem. Zeitschr.*, vol. 25, p. 431, 1910.

<sup>4</sup> Pages 334 and 367; allantoin precedes alloxan in oxidation; see also Chapter XVI concerning blood uric acid.

3. When allantoin is fed to the dog, which excretes relatively considerable amounts of allantoin, 70 per cent. appears in the urine, but when fed to man, only 20 per cent. is recovered from the urine.

4. In a large series of animals,<sup>1</sup> the uric acid and allantoin excretions are in inverse proportion.

5. Uric acid is destroyed in a digest of tissues from organisms which normally excrete allantoin, but not in digestions of human tissues. However, the following points argue against the theory that allantoin represents the degree of destruction of uric acid:

1. Allantoin is excreted uniformly on a purin-free diet.

2. There is no increase in cases of leukemia and of gout when a purin-free diet is fed.

3. Following subcutaneous injection of uric acid into dogs in certain carefully controlled cases, about half of the uric acid was excreted and very little allantoin could be discovered.

4. The "uricolytic index"<sup>2</sup> of the dog is about that of the goat, yet when the goat ingests a known amount of uric acid, there is a dissimilar concentration of uric acid in the blood after a given time;

One and a half hours after injection there remains in the blood of:

	G. uric acid per 100 mls. blood.
Dog .....	0.0020
Goat .....	0.0095

The goat destroys less uric acid than the dog.

The clinical interest in allantoin is slight, principally because so little is known regarding the origin of allantoin and its relations to the uric acid of the urine. There are inherent errors in the methods of determination of very small amounts of allantoin in the fluids of the body; these errors frequently overbalance the slight variations indicative of disease. Allantoin has been reported to be increased during pregnancy, but it must be recalled that it is a normal secretion of the urine of the fetus. Moreover, nurslings show relatively and actually larger amounts of urinary allantoin than adults.

*Chemical Characteristics.*—In tepid water allantoin crystallizes into glistening white prisms (m.p., 231° C.). Dissolved in hot water or in ethanol, they give a neutral reaction. Ten per cent. sodium

<sup>1</sup> See Hunter's series (Hunter, A., and Ward, F. W., Toronto), Trans. Roy. Soc., Canada, vol. 13, series iii, sec. v, p. 7, 1919.

<sup>2</sup> Percentage of uric acid oxidized to allantoin, estimated by the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{Per cent. allantoin}}{\text{Per cent. uric acid} + \text{allantoin}}$$

hydroxid solution in the cold dissolves the crystals. No odor or taste is imparted by the aqueous solution or during decomposition. Like purins in general, allantoin is precipitated by ammoniacal silver nitrate and silver lactate solutions. There is no qualitative test. The allantoin silver salt may be distinguished by determining the content of silver, which is 40.73 per cent. by weight. When the crystals of allantoin are decomposed by boiling alkali, the solution treated with a reagent containing an indol substance, and the solution layered with concentrated sulphuric acid the glyoxalic reaction<sup>1</sup> is obtained.

*Quantitative Method of Folin.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: Allantoin, along with the urea of the urine, is converted to ammonium carbonate<sup>3</sup> by acid treatment, and in another procedure the urea is determined by the specific action of urease. Allantoin is then obtained by difference.

Procedure: Place 5 mls. of urine in a 200-ml. Erlenmeyer flask, fitted with a reflux condenser. Add 20 gs. of magnesium chlorid and 5 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Add an indicator, like methyl red, and 5 mls. of paraffin oil to reduce surface tension and prevent frothing. Apply the heat so that the condensed fluid falls in drops, three or four to the minute. Boil for an hour, tilting the flask and condenser if the urea tube is used,<sup>4</sup> in order that the liquid in the flask may remain acid in reaction. Discontinue heating at the end of the hour and transfer the contents of the flask with a little wash water to a 700-ml. Kjeldahl flask, or a "balloon" type flask (Fig. 247), attached to a Kjeldahl or Liebig condenser. The procedure of the Kjeldahl method<sup>5</sup> for total nitrogen is followed from this point. Add not over<sup>6</sup> 10 mls. of 40 per cent. NaOH solution, pouring the alkali down the inside of the neck of the flask and permitting it to layer. After the decinormal acid in the milk bottle below the condenser has been brought into communication with the lower outlet of the condenser, attach the flask to the distilling apparatus and then agitate the contents of the vessel until they are thoroughly mixed. The reaction must be alkaline. Distill for about one hour. Titrate the excess of decinormal acid in the milk bottle as in the Kjeldahl method for total nitrogen.

<sup>1</sup> Pages 306 and 307.

<sup>2</sup> Modified by Plimmer, R. H. A. (page 215), *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 8, p. 641, 1914.

<sup>3</sup> For the method of decomposition see page 695.

<sup>4</sup> If a reflux condenser is used, a few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid are added.

<sup>5</sup> Page 282.

<sup>6</sup> Magnesium hydroxid is formed and is precipitated, which causes bumping.

**Calculations:** The titration gives the amount of acid left after all the ammonia has been neutralized and the figure is in terms of decinormality. Therefore, to convert the volume of ammonia nitrogen indicated by the titration figure to mass of nitrogen, multiply the titration mls. by the weight of nitrogen in 1 ml. of decinormal solution of nitrogen, 0.0014 g. The result gives the combined nitrogen derived from allantoin and urea in 5 mls. of urine.

**Second procedure:** Make a determination by one of the urease methods given above (pages 698–701) of the urea content of the same urine and calculate for 5 mls.

**Final calculations:** Subtract the second from the first result; the figure obtained represents the grams of allantoin nitrogen in 5 mls. of urine.

The nitrogenous substances just discussed comprise all those which are derived from the normal metabolism of the body, but certain nitrogen-bearing substances of adventitious nature also occur, which are derived from secretions, bacterial decompositions, etc.

**Mucin.**—This substance is derived from the urinary ducts and vessels, the walls of which, like mucous membranes in general, secrete certain substances, including the glucoprotid, mucin. Like the mucin of the saliva and of connective tissue, it is precipitated by adding dilute acid. Mucin may be confused with albumin, but the two are readily differentiated: Albumin is precipitated by acid, and unless a large excess of acid is used it remains precipitated. On the other hand, mucin is precipitated by dilute acid and dissolves in excess. The nature of urinary mucin is not entirely clear. Besides the acid-precipitable substance, it occurs in the “nubecula”<sup>1</sup> in an insoluble state. Mucin is increased in catarrhal conditions of the urinary tract. Other substances differing from mucin are precipitated from the urine by adding acid, the nucleo-albumin being an example. It may be distinguished from mucin by its insolubility in moderately concentrated acid. The term is doubtless a misnomer, because the substance contains no phosphorus, as the so-called nucleo-albumins such as vitellin and casein do. The presence of chondroitin sulphuric acid suggests that the so-called “nucleo-albumin” of urine belongs rather to the scleroprotids.<sup>2</sup>

The test for mucin is the same as that for other forms of mucin; it is a glucoprotid and, when boiled with acid, is hydrolyzed. The glu-

<sup>1</sup> Page 674.

<sup>2</sup> Page 301.

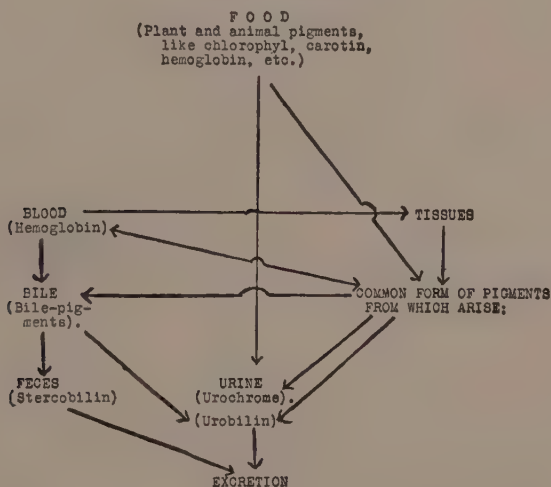


cose is split from the protid and may be detected by making a Benedict sugar test.<sup>1</sup>

### URINARY PIGMENTS

The relation between the urinary pigments and the body as a whole has been described by Whipple<sup>2</sup>; his ideas are expressed in the following diagram:

#### GRAPHIC SUMMARY



The term "pigment complex" is used to designate a fundamental chemical configuration for all pigments, whether of blood, urine, feces, or of other sorts.<sup>3</sup> It has not been determined definitely what share the various factors have in the production of urinary pigments; indeed, we do not know the chemical nature of all pigments. The more distinct pigments of the urine will now be discussed:

**Normal Pigments. Urochrome.**—This is the principal pigment of the urine. It is the main cause of the straw-yellow color of this excretion and of the color of uric acid calculi. It has no readily distinguishable bands in the spectrum. It is derived principally, but not exclusively, from the foods, especially from chlorophyll (but not from carotin, the yellowish pigment of many vegetables). Milk contains a

<sup>1</sup> Page 156.

<sup>2</sup> Whipple, G. H. (Rochester School of Medicine, Rochester, N. Y.). See page 480.

<sup>3</sup> For a discussion of these matters, see page 468. The pyrrol ring, four of which occur in hemoglobin, is such a complex.



pigment similar to urochrome in that it presents no distinct bands in its spectrum. A substance which does not occur in normal urine, but which appears in certain pathological states has been called "urochromogen." When urine containing this substance is treated with an oxidizing agent like permanganate, the urochrome content is increased. This has led to the belief that a precursor of urochrome exists. Such a precursor has not been isolated. A test for urochromogen has been suggested: Five mls. of urine are diluted by adding 15 mls. of water. Add 3 drops of 1 : 1,000 permanganate solution; a yellow color develops. Chemically, urochrome has been described as an oxidation product of protids, a so-called "oxyproteic acid" which contains sulphur, but the knowledge of the acid is incomplete. It is probably not a chemical entity, but a mixture of pigments. The urochromogen is said to appear in intoxications involving high temperatures, as in typhoid fever. It is characteristic of tuberculosis and is frequently used in clinical diagnosis.

It will be observed that urochrome is not derived from bile-pigments.

**Urobilin** was mentioned in the discussion of the pigments of the bile<sup>1</sup>; it is the "stercobilin" of the feces. A precursor, found in urine not exposed to light of certain wave-lengths and known to be of the general structure of hemoglobin in that it contains 4 pyrrol rings, is called urobilinogen. It is probable that urobilinogen is partially derived from the Kupffer cells of the liver, which are known to have an affinity for pyrrol. To urobilinogen has been attributed the "Ehrlich di-azo reaction" with para-di-methyl-amino-benz-aldehyde, for indol.<sup>2</sup> This and other considerations led to the erroneous belief that urochromogen arises in the intestines and becomes absorbed into the blood and thence is excreted via the urine. This theory seems untenable in the light of recent investigations.

Urobilin is excreted in the urine in amounts of about 0.020 to 0.025 g.<sup>3</sup> in twenty-four hours. In severe liver disease like cirrhosis and in diseases of the bile-ducts and gall-bladder (cholangitis), as much as a gram has been found in the twenty-four-hour urine. A diet of protid taken ordinarily, or the protid metabolism of fasting; or, third, the ingestion of a heavy protid meal at the end of a fasting period increases the excretion of this pigment. A rise in the urobilin in the morning is

<sup>1</sup> Page 470.

<sup>2</sup> Page 276.

<sup>3</sup> These figures cannot be absolutely exact.

indicative of disease. In pneumonia, hemolytic jaundice, lead-poisoning, and certain nervous states attributable perhaps to increased secretion of epinephrin<sup>1</sup> there is an increase in the excretion of urobilin. Formerly it was believed that the urobilin concentration in the urine was of value in the clinical diagnosis of malaria, but it has been shown that this is not uniform. Urobilin increases whenever there is a retention of bile in the blood. Urobilin is derived from the bile-pigments, but it is an open question whether it occurs ordinarily in bile; it is known to occur in bile abnormally under the same conditions in which it occurs in the urine.

*Test for Urobilinogen.*—From the practical standpoint no significant physiological or pathological differences exist between urobilinogen and urobilin, and a test which demonstrates the presence of either or of both is, therefore, quite practicable. On the other hand, the fact that urobilinogen does not show characteristic absorption bands in its spectrum, while urobilin does, may be used as a differential character.

*Tests for Urobilin and Urobilinogen.*—Treat 100 mls. of fresh urine with 90 gs. of solid ammonium sulphate. Let stand half an hour. Filter off the precipitate of urates, urobilinogen, etc., and extract the residue with 300 mls. of ethanol at 55° C. on a water-bath. The ammonium sulphate is precipitated and the supernatant liquid is of a yellow color, due to urochrome. If a few drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid be added to this fluid, the color is intensified, due to the conversion of urobilinogen to urobilin.

*Alternate Test of Schlesinger.*<sup>2</sup>—To 5 mls. of urine add 1 drop of glacial acetic acid and 2 drops of a tincture of iodine (5 per cent.), which is used to cause the conversion of urobilinogen to urobilin in place of the HCl used above. Now prepare an alcoholic solution of zinc acetate by adding about 1 g. of the acetate to 10 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol, or, preferably, "absolute, 99.6 per cent.," ethanol. Pour the contents of this tube into the first one containing the urine and iodine, back and forth until the acetate is thoroughly mixed and dissolved. Place yourself near a window, preferably a northern exposure, and with your back to the light, examine the tube for green fluorescence which is positive for urobilin.

<sup>1</sup> Injection of epinephrin produces increased excretion of urobilin.

<sup>2</sup> Schlesinger, W. (Medical Clinic, University of Vienna, Austria), Deutsch. med. Wochenschr., vol. 29, p. 561, 1903.

## ABNORMAL PIGMENTS

**Uro-erythrin**,<sup>1</sup> rosaïc acid, uromelanin, or purpurin imparts the deep mahogany color to the highly concentrated urines, especially those of fever patients. The pigment appears in the reddish sediments of such urine, probably owing to its insolubility in water. It is soluble in strong ethanol (99.6 per cent.) and amylol. The chemical structure has not been determined, although it is supposed to be derived from urochrome; others derive it from skatol. Clinically, it is present in the urine in cases of fever, disturbance of liver function, tuberculosis, any chronic condition of the heart and lungs, and bacterial intoxications, except typhoid, although it may accompany the latter. It is especially characteristic of the urine of cases with arthritic involvements (articular rheumatism). Light causes the pigment to fade. Uro-erythrin may be distinguished by its lack of fluorescence; by definite absorption bands which appear between wave-lengths 550  $\mu\mu^2$  to 480  $\mu\mu$  (see chart of spectrum), interrupted at 520  $\mu\mu$  by an indistinct shadow at ordinary dilutions of the urine; by the intensification of the red by concentrated sulphuric acid which probably aids in conversion of a chromogen to uro-erythrin; and by the bluish-green tint given by alkali.

The *test* must be performed in the dark, or in subdued light. Concentrate 100 mls. of the urine on a water-bath; or dissolve some of the sediment tinged with pigment in warm water. To either preparation add ammonium chlorid to saturation.<sup>3</sup> This causes the precipitation of the pigment along with ammonium urate. If time permit, reprecipitation is desirable to remove the urobilin; this is done by filtering off the precipitate, making up the residue to 100 mls., reprecipitating with ammonium chlorid and filtering again. Wash the last residue on the filter with hot water and make up the residue to 50 mls. with distilled water. The solution must now be neutral. Then add 50 mls. of chloroform and agitate the solution to remove any hematoporphyrin which may be present. Decant the fluid from the precipitate and acidify it with 1 per cent. acetic acid, 50 mls. Add 50 mls. of chloroform again and extract thoroughly. The chloroform removes the uro-erythrin from the acidulated residue. It may be recovered by evaporating the chloroform on the water-bath. Apply the distinguishing characteristics given above to the residue.

<sup>1</sup> Greek *ouron*, urine, and *erythros*, red.

<sup>2</sup> Figure 119.

<sup>3</sup> Seventy-five grams in hot water to every 100 mls. of fluid.

**Uroroseinogen** (indol-acetic acid), the chromogen of the ordinary pigment, urorosein, appears in characteristic amounts in pathological states (gastritis; pernicious anemia; chlorosis of females at puberty; several unrelated conditions, like typhoid fever and osteomalacia). The pigment, or its chromogen, is soluble in ethanol, but more soluble in amylol; it is insoluble in chloroform, ether, and acetic ethyl ester. It is produced by bacteria in standing urine; for this reason, it is essential that fresh specimens be used, or those preserved with an antiseptic. The pigment is said to appear in normal urine on strictly vegetable diets.

Clinically, its presence is not significant in diagnosis, owing to its appearance in various conditions.

*Test:* Treat 5 mls. of fresh urine with 5 mls. concentrated hydrochloric acid. Add 3 drops of 1 per cent. sodium nitrite solution,  $\text{NaNO}_2$ . A rose-red color appears, owing to the oxidation of the chromogen, indol acetic acid, to the pigment urorosein.

**Bilirubin** (hematoidin; perhaps identical with hematoporphyrin), the typical bile-pigment,<sup>1</sup> may appear as a granular sediment varying in color from yellow to reddish or yellowish crystals, rhombic, or needle-like in shape.

The *test* usually employed is extraction with chloroform and application of one of the bile-pigment tests.<sup>2</sup> The crystals, however, are readily recognized. This pigment has little clinical interest, since it does not accompany any one pathological state. The same may be said of a variety of other biliary pigments occurring in the urine.

**Hematoporphyrin** has been found in many diseases mentioned in the discussion of urorosein, and also in sulphonal and other similar poisonings. The dark brownish color of the urine in sulphonal poisoning is, however, only in part due to hematoporphyrin.

The *test* is spectroscopic examination. Preparation of the specimen: To 50 mls. of urine add 10 mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution to precipitate the phosphates and pigments, including hematoporphyrin. Decant the supernatant liquid, saving the residue. Treat the residue with 0.5 ml. of concentrated hydrochloric acid and then add 15 mls. of "absolute" ethanol. Filter through dry paper. Transfer 5 mls. of the clear filtrate to a test-tube and examine with the spectroscope. Compare the spectrum with that shown for hemato-

<sup>1</sup> Page 470.

<sup>2</sup> Page 472.



porphyrin, Fig. 119. The question of the identity of hematoporphyrin with other pigments is an open one (see page 379).

**Hemoglobin** appears in urine when there is a flow of blood into the urinary tracts and is recognized by the spectroscopic test or the benzidin reaction (page 393). The spectroscopic test always gives hemoglobin, not oxyhemoglobin, in such cases. The hemoglobin becomes changed into other pigments on standing and the presence of hemoglobin indicates a lesion in the lower rather than in the upper tracts.

**Homogentisic acid**<sup>1</sup> is encountered in alkaptonuria. The chemistry has been discussed. Homogentisic acid appears in acid urines, but to demonstrate its presence an alkaline reaction must be induced either by letting the urine stand, thus permitting the development of ammonia from urea by bacterial action, or by adding 10 per cent. NaOH solution.

*Test.*—If homogentisic acid is present the urine will give a reduction with copper solutions, like Fehling's; it is necessary, however, to insure that a reducing sugar is not responsible for the reduction; this may be done by fermenting away the glucose in the case of a diabetic urine. Another test is to treat the urine with alkali; a brownish color develops if homogentisic acid is present. This acid is not pathognomonic of any strictly pathological state and has no clinical interest.

*The Diazo-reaction of Paul Ehrlich.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: This is probably an oxidation of a chromogen found in pathological urines, but the exact cause of the reaction is unknown. Whatever the nature of the reaction, it is of value clinically, for although it is not pathognomonic of typhoid, it helps to follow the course of the disease, since the intensity of the reaction varies with the severity of the disease. Other conditions in which the diazo-reaction is positive are: Tuberculosis (pulmonary), measles, scarlet fever, diphtheria, and pneumonia. In the arthritides it is generally neutral (compare uro-erythrin, page 742).

Reagents: Appendix.

Procedure: Place 100 mls. of the sulphanilic acid solution (I) in a small Erlenmeyer flask and add about 1 ml. of the sodium nitrite solution (II). Introduce into this solution by means of a volumetric cylinder 50 mls. of urine and mix. Pour 5 mls. concentrated ammonium hydroxid carefully down the side of the flask, so that a zone

<sup>1</sup> Page 264.

<sup>2</sup> Ehrlich, Paul (page 269).



forms. At the line of juncture of the ammonium hydroxid and the solution a red ring appears if the test is positive. Normal urine gives a yellowish-orange ring. Ehrlich adds the following control procedure: Shake the mixture and let stand overnight; a green precipitate appears if positive.

The diazo-reaction may give a falsely positive result following the administration of certain drugs, like opium. It is positive in phenol (carbolic acid) poisoning. The orange color of normal urine is inhibited by administering tannic acid.

**Iminazol derivatives**<sup>1</sup> occur in the normal urine. They are derived principally from histidin of endogenous origin, but to some extent from the foods. On a low protid diet 118 mgs. of iminazol substance were found in the urine, while on a high protid diet 172 mgs. were obtained. Pathologically, these substances vary in a characteristic manner in nephritis. They are usually low in such diseases. A method for quantitative determination of iminazoles in the urine is proposed by Koessler and Hanke (page 265, note 3).

**Indican.**—The chemistry of this substance and the manner of its derivation from intestinal putrefactive products of bacterial origin have been discussed.<sup>2</sup> As an indicator of fecal retention owing to constipation, adhesions, etc., its use is wide-spread. The fact that it appears in certain individuals who are apparently well and have normal stools, makes it improbable that the indican reaction is reliable clinically as its present popularity would lead one to believe. As a rule, a heavy meat diet causes indicanuria, probably for two reasons: (1) The increased amount of tryptophan gives rise to indican, and (2) in persons on high protid diet atony of the intestine and diminished stools are not uncommon. Any static condition of the intestine is conducive to the development of indicanuria, owing to the possibility of bacterial fermentation followed by absorption of the putrefactive products. A common erroneous impression is that in indicanuria the color of the urine is changed from normal. No characteristic color change accompanies indicanuria. However, if the urine is allowed to stand, discoloration develops.

**Cotton-plug Test.**—Pipette 2 mls. of fresh urine into a test-tube. Stopper the tube with absorbent cotton. Remove the plug, moisten the surface exposed to the contents of the tube with 2 drops of 1 per cent. potassium persulphate ( $K_2S_2O_8$ ) and then with 1 drop of reagent

<sup>1</sup> Page 268.

<sup>2</sup> Page 276.

para-dimethyl-benzaldehyde.<sup>1</sup> Now insert the plug again into the mouth of the tube and boil the urine over a microburner for about one minute after the ebullition has begun. The appearance of a pink color indicates the presence of indican.

*Obermayer's*<sup>2</sup> *Test*.—Principle: The indoxyl-sulphuric acid is oxidized to the condensation product, indigo, which is blue and is soluble in chloroform. Procedure: Place 5 mls. of the urine in a test-tube and add 5 mls. of Obermayer's solution.<sup>3</sup> Stopper the tube and invert it several times. Remove the stopper and add 5 mls. of chloroform. Stopper, shake gently, and then permit the two zones to separate by gravity; the presence of indican is indicated by the blue indigo absorbed by the chloroform layer.

In cases of syphilis in which iodids are administered and are excreted into the urine, the latter is reddish. This color disappears if sodium thiosulphate is added.<sup>4</sup> Urines preserved with thymol turn violet which may obscure the blue of the indigo. Thiosulphate again destroys the color.

*Jaffe's Test*.<sup>5</sup>—Treat 5 mls. of urine with 5 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Make, freshly, a dilute solution of calcium hypochlorite  $\text{Ca}(\text{OCl})_2$  and add 3 drops to the urine solution. Mix. Add 5 mls. of chloroform, stopper, and invert. Indican is oxidized, as before, to indigo, which imparts a blue color to the chloroform. The reaction is frequently only bluish; add more hypochlorite and agitate the solution. Too much hypochlorite will cause the oxidation of the indigo to the yellowish isatinates, chiefly calcium isatinate.

**Melanin** appears in the urine of persons with melanotic tumors. A substance resembling "melanin" has been described in malaria. In the urine as voided there is a chromogen which, when the urine stands, becomes converted into dark substances. These are probably oxidation products of the aromatic amino-acids, like tyrosin.<sup>6</sup> Ferric chlorid alone without the hydrochloric acid of the indican test causes the melanochromogen to be converted into the dark melanins. This reaction distinguishes melanins from the dark substances which color the urines in cases of carbolic acid poisoning, alkaptonuria, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Obermayer, F. (Professor of Internal Medicine, University of Vienna, Austria), Wiener klin. Wochenschr., vol. 3, p. 176, 1890. See page 277.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Making white sodium iodid.

<sup>5</sup> Page 361.

<sup>6</sup> Page 263.

This completes the survey of nitrogen-bearing substances in the urine. There remain, however, protids and protidtemns, which appear in the urine under pathological conditions.

**Protids and Protidtemns.**—**Protid.**—Heat-coaguable protids are absent from normal human urine; the presence of a substance which gives a positive Heller or boiling test<sup>1</sup> is indicative of a pathological condition. In many pathological states protid appears in the urine. It may be similar to if not identical with the serum albumin and serum globulin of the blood, but investigations have failed to show definitely whether urinary protids are derived from the blood or whether they arise from the renal tissue.<sup>2</sup> Wells attempted to answer this question by means of immunological reactions, and concluded that as far as this criterion is concerned, there is no evidence that urinary protids are derived from the blood. Chemically, no differentiation has been made between the protids of the blood and of the renal tissue. This much may be said, however: Cells are poor in heat-coagulable protids which would argue for the origin of urinary protids from the blood. Heat-coagulable protids are characteristic of secretory fluids like white of egg and blood protids. Of the urinary protids there are two kinds, namely, albumins and globulins. It is probable that both groups are composed of protids in mechanical mixture rather than a single substance.

**Albumin.**—In the usual form of nephritis, commonly designated "Bright's disease,"<sup>3</sup> albumin comprises from 25 to 75 per cent. of the total protid in the urine. Since tests are usually insufficiently delicate to detect traces of albumin lower than 0.10 g. per liter of urine, it cannot be said that such traces do not appear in urine which is practically normal, but detectable amounts are always correlated with pathological states, temporary, acute, or chronic. In mild cases of albuminuria from 5 to 10 gs. as dry albumin are excreted. The albuminurias are of various kinds:

1. *Albuminuria of Acute Nephritis.*—The amount of albumin is proportionate to the stage of the disease and the quantitative determination is of clinical importance. The output of albumin is exceptionally high in nephritis of syphilitic origin. In chronic paren-

<sup>1</sup> Pages 751 and 219.

<sup>2</sup> Cameron, A. L. (Chicago physician), and Wells, H. G. (Professor of Pathology, University of Chicago), Arch. Int. Med., vol. 15, p. 746, 1915.

<sup>3</sup> Bright, Richard, English physician, died 1858. The name "Bright's disease" is a group name for any form of nephritis in which protid appears in the urine.

chymatous nephritis, or nephrosis, there is a large output of albumin, while in chronic interstitial nephritis the amount of albumin is low and irregular. In renal hypoplasias, little albumin appears. Infections, drugs, agencies causing passive congestion of the kidney, and cardiorenal conditions are attended by the appearance of albumin in the urine. Following athletic events participants frequently have albumin in the urine. Exposure to cold may be the cause of a congestion of the kidneys and consequent albuminuria.

2. *Orthostatic or Postural Albuminuria*.—Albumin appears in the urine of certain individuals when they are caused to stand for a considerable length of time. The ambulance surgeon of the metropolis is frequently called to treat cases of collapse involving albuminuria when individuals of either sex are required to stand while being measured for clothing in the shops. Since the condition is one of stasis of the blood flow through the kidneys, due to low blood-pressure, exercise frequently affords relief.

3. *Emotional Albuminuria*.—In various nervous diseases (epilepsy, paresis, neurasthenia, etc.) albumin appears in the urine. Experimentally stimulation of the floor of the brain in the region of the fourth ventricle leads to similar conditions.

Still other forms of albuminuria exist which cannot be considered here.

**Globulin**.—In the blood the ratio  $\frac{\text{serum albumin}}{\text{serum globulin}}$  is about  $\frac{1.5}{1.0}$ . In Bright's disease albumin and globulin appear, but the ratio is seldom that found in the blood. In certain cases, as in hypoplasias of the kidney, there may be more globulin than albumin. In general, an increase in the proportion of globulin to albumin indicates aggravation of the disease. In nephrosis there is a low excretion of globulin and consequently the severity of the disease is indicated by the degree of increase of albumin over globulin.

**Protidtemns**.—Hydrolysis products of the protids, like albumoses, peptones, and amino-acids, have been observed in the urine under certain conditions. It is questionable that pepton ever occurs, the substance frequently found being albumoses. The term "albumosuria" is applied to the presence of albumose in the urine. This condition arises in the post-critical stage of pneumonia during which the exudate is being absorbed; the autolysis of the pus produces a large amount of albumose which is practically a foreign body and is excreted into the urine. Lesions of the liver are frequently accompanied by the ap-



pearance of albumose in the urine. The appearance of amino-acids in urine has already been discussed (page 730).

*Protid of Unknown Relationship Discovered by Bence-Jones.*<sup>1</sup>—This substance is known as "Bence-Jones Protid." The discoverer considered it a member of the group of primary albumoses, but since it may be hydrolyzed by boiling with acid, and since among the products protalbumose<sup>2</sup> appears, it is not a hetero-albumose as its discoverer believed. It is doubtless a true protid or an early hydrolysis product of protid. Folin<sup>3</sup> believes that it is a protid as low in the scale as an albumose. "The Bence-Jones albumose is more or less similar to one of the primary peptic digestion products (Meissner's 'metapeptone') and is probably formed by internal autolytic digestion since it appears to be independent of the total protein metabolism." The substance appears in cases of diseases of bone-marrow (myelomas) of the chest and pelvic girdle, in isolated cases of cancer, and probably in lymphatic diseases (leukemia). Clinically, its presence usually indicates multiple myeloma. Few cases have been accurately diagnosed and studied (about 35).

Its *chemical characteristics* are:

(1) Its behavior when the urine is heated; at from about 45° to 60° C.<sup>4</sup> turbidity of the urine appears; the opalescence increases to a distinct cloud. At 100° C.



Fig. 211.—D. Wright Wilson, Professor of Biochemistry, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia. Investigations of Bence-Jones' substance, acid-base metabolism, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Bence-Jones, H., English physician, died 1873. Intensive studies of this substance were made by Wilson (Fig. 211). Bayne-Jones, S., and Wilson, D. W., Bull. Johns Hopkins Hospital, vol. 23, p. 37, 119, 1922; Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med., vol. 18, p. 220, 1921.

<sup>2</sup> Page 339.

<sup>3</sup> See below, page 283 of the paper by Folin and Denis.

<sup>4</sup> Folin and Denis give 40° to 55° C. See Folin, O., and Denis, W., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 18, p. 277, 1914.



this cloud disappears,<sup>1</sup> but returns when the temperature falls to about 60° C.<sup>2</sup> (2) It has been found in 1 case to undergo spontaneous crystallization<sup>3</sup> and this crystalline substance can be recrystallized and purified. Since the proportion of amino-nitrogen to the total nitrogen of the crystalline substance is 4.8 to 100, it is evidently a true protid and not a protidtemn, in which the proportion of amino-nitrogen is much higher.<sup>4</sup> There are probably different kinds of Bence-Jones protids, for Wilson found but one specimen capable of spontaneous crystallization.<sup>5</sup>

The test for Bence-Jones protid is under Chemical Characteristics.<sup>6</sup>

**Tests for Protids in the Urine.**—Delicate tests for protid in the urine are essential in modern clinical diagnosis.

1. *Heat Test.*—Filter 10 mls. of the urine through dry paper; if the urine remains turbid, shake it with a small amount of kaolin and filter again. Or, dilute the urine 1 : 5 with distilled water. Using a small test-tube ("Wassermann tube"), fill with the urine prepared with either method. Add acetic acid 1 : 100 until only a slight alkalinity is left. Incline the tube slightly, bring the upper portion into the flame of the microburner, or Bunsen burner turned low, and let the upper portions of the liquid come to a boil. Without agitating the contents of the tube, let it stand a minute or two; a cloud of heat-coagulated protid or of earthy phosphates<sup>7</sup> may appear. In order to differentiate protid from inorganic salts, add 1 drop of 1 : 10 acetic acid and boil. If the turbidity persists, add another drop and boil again. If still turbid, protid is indicated.<sup>8</sup> Since the coagulum dissolves in higher concentrations of acid, an excess may cause the cloud to disappear and thus give rise to an erroneous conclusion.

<sup>1</sup> In a case recently studied by the author the turbidity disappeared at 97° C.

<sup>2</sup> Wilson, D. W. (Fig. 211). Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 56, p. 203, 1923. See also below, notes 3 and 5.

<sup>3</sup> Gritterink, A., and de Graaff, C. J. W. (Dutch chemists), Zeitschr. f. physiol. Chem., vol. 34, p. 393, 1902, obtained the Bence-Jones substance in a crystalline condition by special means.

<sup>4</sup> Page 289.

<sup>5</sup> Others have been unable to obtain crystals of Bence-Jones' protid; see Folin and Denis, cited above; also Jour. Physiol., vol. 42, p. 199, 1911.

<sup>6</sup> Page 749.

<sup>7</sup> Calcium or magnesium phosphates; the boiling evolves CO<sub>2</sub> and permits the precipitation of the salts.

<sup>8</sup> Acid dissolves the phosphates, while coagulated protid does not disperse in the acid medium of this degree of hydron concentration.

2. *The Exton<sup>1</sup>-Roch<sup>2</sup> Test.*—Place 5 mls. of the filtered urine in a test-tube and add 5 mls. of the reagent<sup>3</sup>; mix by rolling the tube between the palms of the hands. Warm slightly over a low flame. Heating to boiling does not harm the preparation, but adds no value to the test. A match may be used to heat the tube in the absence of another mode of heat. The test is positive if turbidity appears. The physician may use the *test at the bedside*. The solution may be made at any time from the dry ingredients as follows: To 1 teaspoonful of water add as much sulphosalicylic acid as will lie heaping on a United States dime and also as much sodium sulphate, powdered, as will lie heaping on a 5-cent piece.

3. *Heller's<sup>4</sup> Test.*—Place about 5 mls. of concentrated colorless nitric acid in a clean test-tube. By means of a pipette<sup>5</sup> overlay the nitric acid with an equal volume of the filtered urine. A zone of coagulated protid appears immediately above the junction of the two liquids if the test is positive.

If the patient has been treated with compound tincture of benzoin to prevent coughing, or for a similar purpose, the gum inhaled, then excreted through the urine, gives a zone similar in appearance to albumin under the conditions of Heller's test. In order to prove the presence of albumin add ethanol to the urine before layering it over the acid; the alcohol dissolves the gum. If the urine is concentrated, a slight formation of urea nitrate may occur. This difficulty is obviated by diluting the urine. Concentrated urine also gives an accentuated development of color due to urobilin, urochrome, and other pigments of urine and of bile in abnormal urine. Lastly, certain preservatives, like thymol, behave like gum benzoin in urine treated with nitric acid. Add ethanol or, better, gasolene or other lipid solvent. In general, the zone of albumin can be differentiated at sight from a ring of other substance. Albumin appears as a fluffy zone of ill-defined upper limits, whereas other substances, like those mentioned above, present a more or less definitely defined ring.

<sup>1</sup> Exton, W. G. (Prudential Life Ins. Co., Biochemical Laboratories, Newark, N. J.), Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 80, p. 529, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Roch, G. (German pharmaceutical chemist), Pharma. Centralhalle, vol. 30, p. 549, 1889. Abstract in Zeitschr. f. Analyt. Chem., vol. 29, p. 241, 1890.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Heller, A. L. G., Professor of Pathology, University of Kiel, Germany.

<sup>5</sup> Or, one may partly draw the stopper from the bottle containing the urine, letting the drops flow. Some operators reverse the layering procedure. The so-called "horismascope," designed for ready layering, is obtainable on the market.

4. *Roberts's*<sup>1</sup> *Test*.—To 5 mls. of the reagent in a test-tube add by layering as in (3), one volume of urine. A white zone is positive. Similar precautions to those mentioned for (3) must be taken. The advantage of Roberts' reagent over nitric acid is that colored zones, due to condensations of pigments, do not occur.

5. *Sumner's*<sup>2</sup> *Test*.—To 5 mls. of filtered urine add an equal volume of the reagent.<sup>3</sup> The presence of a precipitate indicates a positive reaction. The reagent may be diluted if desired. Sensitivity, 1 : 200,000.

**Tests for Protidtemns.**—A heat-incoaguable substance (or substances) occurs in certain degenerative processes such as desquamation of the epithelium of the intestine. Procedure: Heat-coagulate in the presence of acetic acid any true protids that are present. Filter and apply the following tests:

*Spiegler's*<sup>4</sup> *Test*.—Add 1 drop of concentrated hydrochloric acid and add the acidulated urine to 5 mls. of the reagent in a test-tube, layering as before. A positive test is indicated if a white ring appears. This test is positive for very minute amounts of the protid and for larger amounts of protidtemns (albumoses and peptones). For this reason the separation of coagulable protids must be complete before applying the test.

**Quantitative Tests for Albumin in Urine.**—1. *Quick's*<sup>5</sup> *Method*.—Principle: Precipitation of the albumin in a known quantity of urine in a specially calibrated tube, similar to an Esbach tube (Fig. 212), and reading the volume of the precipitate in grams per liter of urine. Procedure: Add urine up to the mark indicating 10 mls. capacity and 10 per cent. trichloroacetic acid to the mark indicating 15 mls. capacity. Stopper the tube and invert it ten times to insure mixing. Let the tube stand overnight (or longer) and then read the height of the precipitate in grams per liter of urine. The height of the precipi-

<sup>1</sup> Roberts, Sir William, English physician, died 1899. See Appendix for composition of the reagent.

<sup>2</sup> Sumner, J. B., and Hubbard, R. S. (pages 24 and 23), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 56, p. 701, 1923. See page 228 and last of this Chapter (Total Base) for other uses of the reagent employed in this method.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Spiegler, E. (Skin specialist and Clinical Assistant, University of Vienna, Austria, died 1908). For composition of the reagent see Appendix. Original description in *Ber. d. d. chem. Ges.*, vol. 25, p. 375, 1892.

<sup>5</sup> Quick, A. J. (University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia), *Jour. Lab. Clin. Med.*, vol. 8, p. 615, 1923. The tubes are obtainable from Arthur H. Thomas Co., West Washington Square, Philadelphia, Pa.

tate is directly proportionate to the concentration with a deviation of from 0.05 to 0.5 per cent. The following Table gives the correspondence:

Grams protid per liter.	Volume of precipitate.
0.5.....	0.5 ml.
1.0.....	1.1
1.5.....	1.6
2.0.....	2.1
2.5.....	2.6
3.0.....	3.2
3.5.....	3.7
4.0.....	4.2
5.0.....	5.0

If the precipitate is heavy, the urine should be diluted quantitatively.

2. *Esbach's<sup>1</sup> Method.*—Principle: Precipitation of the protid in a calibrated tube by means of Esbach's solution in place of trichloroacetic acid. The remainder of the method is the same as that of Quick (1). Procedure: Secure an Esbach's tube and add urine to the U mark and the reagent to the R. Stopper, invert the tube, and let it stand for several hours, preferably overnight. Then read the amount of precipitate. The readings are in grams per liter, or *tenths of per cent.* Quick has shown that Esbach's method gives faithful results only when the concentration of protid is from 2 to 3 gs. per liter of urine; below that amount the readings are too low, and above it, too high. Moreover, temperature exerts an effect; the readings are too low when the temperature rises above room temperature (20° C.). The specific gravity of the urine also affects the readings; if the specific gravity is greater than the average normal (1.012), the readings are too low.

3. *Folin and Denis' Method.*—This is an adaptation of Kober's nephelometric method<sup>2</sup> for the determination of protids in milk and

<sup>1</sup> Esbach, Franco-Teutonic physician, Paris, who died in 1890. For reagent see Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Kober, P. A., manufacturing chemist, The Kober Co., Hastings-on-Hudson, N. Y. Greek *nephele*, cloud, and *metreo*, to measure. Nephelometry involves rendering the substance turbid and the degree of turbidity depends upon the concentration of the substance. The standard is made in a similar manner and the two preparations are compared in a colorimeter modified in such a manner that all direct light, as in colorimetry, does not pass through the solution, but light sent at right angles to the axis of the cups is caught by the particles of the cloud and sent upward to the eye, Folin, O., and Denis, W., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 18, p. 273, 1914.



digestion mixtures. Procedure: To about 75 mls. of water in each of two 100-ml. volumetric flasks add 5 mls. of a 25 per cent. sulphosalicylic acid solution. To one flask add 5 mls. of the standard protid solution.<sup>1</sup> To the second add, in quantities of 0.1 ml. (about 2 drops), the unknown urine containing protid until the two flasks seem to contain about the same amount of protid as far as appearance of turbidity is concerned. Note the number of mls. of urine added.

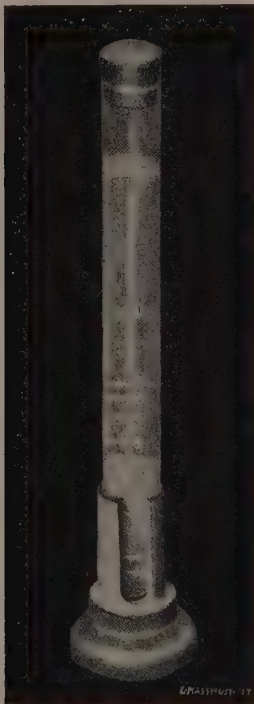


Fig. 212.—Esbach albuminometer. The tube held in a wooden base is filled to U with urine and to R with reagent. The precipitated albumin is shown as 0.3 per cent. (From McJunkin, *Clinical Microscopy and Chemistry*.)

Dilute the contents of the two flasks with distilled water to the marks. Stopper and invert the flasks. Transfer half a colorimeter cup of the standard protid solution to each cup of the instrument and compare the turbidity. The comparisons must be made until one can read within an error of a tenth of a millimeter. Then remove the right-hand cup, drain it free from liquid, and fill half-full with the contents

<sup>1</sup> The method of preparing the standard solution of protid is given in the Appendix.



of the second (urine) flask. Set the standard at 20 mms. Adjust the cup containing the unknown until the two fields are alike. Calculation:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard (20)}}{\text{Reading of unknown (n)}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (10)}}$$

$$nx = 200 \text{ and } x = \frac{200}{n} \text{ mgs. of protid in the number of mls. of urine taken.}$$

4. *Kjeldahl Method*.—Place 10 mls. of urine in a beaker and add 2 drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Heat slowly to the boiling-point. Filter. Permit the coagulated albumin to remain upon the paper until no more drops of fluid pass to the filtrate. Then throw the coagulated albumin with its paper into a Kjeldahl flask and determine the nitrogen by that method.<sup>1</sup> Multiply the result by 6.25.<sup>2</sup> The result is the number of grams of protid in 10 mls. of urine. The per cent. is obtained by multiplying by 10.

**Glucids in the Urine.**—Normal urine treated with a delicate reagent that is readily reduced shows the presence of reducing substances. The total reducing substance is about 3 gs. per twenty-four hours. Of this, about 1 g. is due to glucids.<sup>3</sup> Normal urine contains no glucose, but when considerable amounts of it are ingested it seems that a certain level of glucose is reached, whereby the tissues become saturated and the excess sugar appears in the blood and thence in the urine. Benedict found that 20 gs. of glucose taken with a standard breakfast caused an excretion of 0.25 g. of urinary glucid, but that when taken alone no increase in the glucid content of the normal urine occurred. Normally, a person may utilize as much glucose, or equivalent, as he can take into the stomach without nausea. This amounts to from 200 to 300 gs. The test cannot be made with other sugars, like table sugar (sucrose), owing to the difference in rate of absorption of these diglucids from that of glucose. The "paradoxical law of glucose" of Allen<sup>4</sup> states that there is no limit to the amount of sugar which the non-diabetic subject can utilize. The sole limitation is the means of introducing the glucose into the tissues. More than 200 to 300 gs. of glucose cannot be taken by mouth. Woodyatt,<sup>5</sup> how-

<sup>1</sup> Page 282.

<sup>2</sup> Page 287.

<sup>3</sup> The remainder is made up of uric acid, creatinin, and unknown substances.

<sup>4</sup> Allen, F. M. (Physiatric Institute, Morristown, N. J.). See Glycosuria and Diabetes, Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1913.

<sup>5</sup> Felsher, H. V., and Woodyatt, R. T. (Sprague Memorial Institute, Chicago), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 737, 1924. The work was performed on dogs.

ever, has found that if glucose is injected into a vein faster than 800 mgs. per kilogram of body weight of the patient per hour, glucose appears in the urine; when this rate is reached the reducing substance in the urine is suddenly increased to 24 times normal. About 50 gs. of glucose given intravenously and without interruption to an average man weighing 70 kilos seems to be the maximal amount the body can utilize per hour. Beyond this limit glycosuria<sup>1</sup> develops. A similar threshold is established for fructose, but galactose and lactose behave differently. There is a degree of tolerance for each individual above which rapidly increasing excretion of galactose occurs as larger amounts of galactose are ingested.<sup>2</sup> For many individuals as much lactose as occurs in a glass of ordinary milk (10 gs.) produces more or less lactosuria or galactosuria.

Folin believes that the glucids which make up the reducing substance of the urine other than that which is due to creatinin, uric acid, etc., are: (1) foreign, non-utilizable glucids introduced into the body in cereals, vegetables, fruits, and (2) decomposition products of glucids due to cooking, canning, baking, and other processes of food preparation. "The sugar of normal urine consists, therefore, of a motley variety of carbohydrate products and carbohydrate derivatives, including di- and polysaccharides."<sup>3</sup> Høst<sup>4</sup> classifies the urinary reducing substances of glucid nature as follows: (1) Substances of unknown composition, but not glucose, appearing in concentrated urine and in normal urine after a meal rich in glucids; these Høst calls "physiological substances." (2) Glucose, due to increase of blood glucose above the renal threshold. Greenwald<sup>5</sup> and collaborators find pentose 33 per cent., lactose, and other glucids composing the urinary reducing substances. Diet does not modify the substances

<sup>1</sup> Glycosuria, a term due to Benedict to signify an increase, not a new appearance, of urinary sugar. See *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 34, p. 258, 1918.

<sup>2</sup> Berglund, H., and Tsang, G. N., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. xlviii (Proceedings), 1925.

<sup>3</sup> Folin, O., and Berglund, H., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 51, p. 213, 1922.

<sup>4</sup> Høst, H. F. (Norwegian investigator), *Jour. Metab. Res.*, vol. 4, p. 315, 1923.

<sup>5</sup> Greenwald, I., Samet, J., and Gross, J. (Harriman Research Laboratory, Roosevelt Hospital, New York, N. Y.). The nature of sugar in normal urine. I. A Comparison of the Glucose Equivalent of Various Sugars in Different Methods for the Determination of Glucose, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 62, p. 397, 1924. Also same number of this journal: II. The Sugar Excretion Upon Various Diets and the Influence of Diet Upon Glucose Tolerance with Some Remarks on the Nature of the Action of Insulin, p. 401, 1924.

excreted on a protid diet, which suggests that the pentoses come from the mononucleotids<sup>1</sup> of the tissues, or of ingested meat and other substances. Concerning the presence of glucose in urine these investigators say: "Glucose may appear in the urine of normal persons after the ingestion of large quantities of glucose, or after the ingestion of a carbohydrate meal immediately following a period of carbohydrate-free diet. Just as with other function, there are probably all gradations in the ability of individuals to assimilate glucose. The existence of a 'glucose threshold' seems established by the work of others," referring to the names mentioned above, Folin and Berglund, Benedict and Osterberg, and Felsher and Woodyatt.

While the twenty-four-hour quantity of reducing substance does not vary characteristically with the diet, or with pathological states, the hourly picture has been utilized as a diagnostic agent.<sup>2</sup> Under controlled conditions, if the excretion of urinary reducing substance rises above about 0.10 g. per hour, the metabolism of sugar is pathological.

The effect of insulin on urinary reducing substance is similar to its effect upon the sugar of the blood; the urinary sugar disappears. This fact does not mean that the reducing substance is glucose, because, as Folin suggests,<sup>3</sup> the appearance of glucids in the urine is indicative of a supersaturation of the tissues by such substances. Moreover, since all glucids which are utilizable in the body are converted into glucose, it is readily seen that the effect of insulin, being to immediately reduce glucose, must affect all glucids.

*Method for Determining Urinary Glucids. Quantitative Method of Folin and Berglund.*<sup>4</sup>—Principle: Interfering substances (creatinin, uric acid, etc.) are removed by Lloyd's reagent<sup>5</sup> by adsorption. Then the di- and polyglucids are treated by acid hydrolysis. The sugars thus produced are estimated quantitatively by the Folin-Wu sugar method.

Procedure: To 5 mls. of the urine add an equal volume of 0.1 normal sulphuric acid and dilute with 10 mls. of distilled water. Add

<sup>1</sup> Page 323.

<sup>2</sup> Page, I. H. (Eli Lilly Research Laboratories, Indianapolis, Indiana), *Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med.*, vol. 8, p. 631, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Page 756, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> Folin, O., and Berglund, H., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 51, p. 209, 1922.

<sup>5</sup> Concentrated "Fuller's earth," a silicious substance found in deposits of fossil unicellular plants called diatoms. Lloyd, J. U., of the firm of Lloyd Brothers, Cincinnati, Ohio.

about 1.5 g. of Lloyd's reagent. Agitate the contents for about two minutes. Filter. Pipette 10 mls. of the filtrate into a urea receiving tube graduated at 25 mls.<sup>1</sup> Add 1 ml. of 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid solution. Place the tube in a water-bath at 100° C. Leave it for one hour and a quarter or longer; di- and polyglucids are hydrolyzed to monoglucids. Cool the tube under the cold water-tap. Add carefully in the presence of a piece of litmus-paper, or phenolphthalein, 10 per cent. NaOH solution to neutrality.<sup>2</sup> Add water up to the 25-ml. mark.

The determination is made as follows: Place 4 mls. of the solution just mentioned (the dilute filtrate) in a special Folin blood-sugar tube.<sup>3</sup> Transfer to a second and third tube of the same kind exactly 2 mls. each of the weaker (0.20 mg.) and the stronger (0.40 mg.) glucose standard solution, respectively. To each of the three tubes add 2 mls. of the reagent alkaline copper solution.<sup>4</sup> The solution should fill the bulb and some or all of the constricted portion of the Folin tube.<sup>5</sup> Place the tubes in the water-bath at 100° C. for six minutes. Cool the tubes under the tap or in a beaker of cold water. Then add to each tube 2 mls. of the reagent phosphate-molybdate solution.<sup>6</sup> Dissolution of the cuprous oxid requires about two minutes. Dilute each solution to the mark (25 mls.). Stopper and invert each tube in order to mix the contents thoroughly. Compare the colors of the unknown with that of the corresponding standard (weaker or stronger).

Calculation: Place the standard at 20.0 mms. Then:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of standard (20)}}{\text{Reading of unknown (n)}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (0.2 mg.)}}$$

Or:

$$\frac{20}{n} = \frac{x}{0.2}$$

Solving for x:

$$x = \frac{4}{n} \text{ mgs. for 0.80 mls. urine.}$$

Or:

$$500 \times n \text{ mgs. per 100 mls. urine} \approx 0.5 \text{ g. per cent.}$$

<sup>1</sup> Figure 213; the tube shown in Fig. 233 is also suitable.

<sup>2</sup> At the neutral point a cloud of material derived from the reagent appears which acts as indicator. If the cloud is used to indicate the neutral point, alkali is added until, after agitating the contents of the tube, the cloud remains.

<sup>3</sup> Figure 238; the tube shown in Fig. 239 can also be used.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Strictly speaking, the fluid should not quite fill the bulb, in order to keep down the effects of CO<sub>2</sub> of the air, but unless special tubes are made having larger bulbs, there will be more fluid than the bulb can accommodate.

<sup>6</sup> Appendix.



If the stronger standard is used (0.40 mg.), then  $x = 1000 \times n$  mg. per cent. =  $n$  g. per cent.

*Method of Benedict.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: Mercuric nitrate in the presence of sodium hydrogen carbonate is used to precipitate substances like creatin and creatinin which interfere with the reaction by causing reduction. The mercury is removed by means of zinc. The determination of glucids is made upon the filtrate by a modified Lewis-Benedict blood-sugar method.<sup>2</sup>

Procedure: Place 20 mls. of urine in a 500-ml. beaker. Add one volume of the mercuric nitrate solution<sup>3</sup> and mix. Add desiccated sodium bicarbonate in small quantities, while agitating the solution until frothing ceases and blue litmus-paper turns red. Pour the solution upon a dry filter-paper in a funnel and receive the filtrate in a small beaker. Add to the filtrate a pinch of zinc dust and also a drop or two of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Mix and let stand about five minutes. Filter again into a small beaker. Hydrolysis is accomplished according to the procedure given above in Folin's method.

The determination: Transfer 2 mls. of the filtrate to a blood-urea receiving tube similar to that used in the Folin method. Add one volume of water, 1 ml. of 20 per cent. solution of sodium carbonate,<sup>4</sup> and 4 mls. of the reagent picrate.<sup>5</sup> Plug the tube with non-absorbent cotton, place in a water-bath at 100° C., and leave for ten minutes. Cool the tube under the tap, dilute to the mark (25 mls.), and compare in a colorimeter with a standard solution of glucose (1 mg. in 4 mls. of H<sub>2</sub>O) which has been treated in exactly the same manner as the unknown (1 ml. Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> sol., 4 mls. picrate; heat ten minutes, and dilute to the mark).

Calculation: With the standard set at 20 mms.,  $\frac{200}{n}$  gives the milligrams of glucid per 100 mls. of urine.

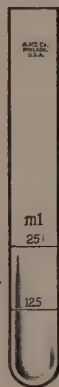


Fig. 213.—The Folin receiving tube for use in urea determinations.

<sup>1</sup> Benedict, S. R., and Osterberg, E., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 34, p. 195, 1918.

<sup>2</sup> Chapter XVI. The modification consists in increasing the picric acid content of the reagent by making the solution more solvent for that acid. A known quantity of NaOH is used for this purpose.

<sup>4</sup> Or a saturated solution.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Appendix.



*Detection of Clinically Important Amounts of Glucose in Urine.*—We have shown that normal subjects on ordinary diets do not excrete glucose in the urine and there is little doubt that any glucose in the urine is pathognomonic.<sup>1</sup> Aside from “renal glycosuria,” which seems to be due to a lesion of the kidney, the statement holds for all forms of glycosuria—alimentary,<sup>2</sup> diabetes mellitus, etc.

The following **qualitative tests** are designed for the practising physician for the detection of glucose in such quantities that they are of importance in the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus, etc.

*Benedict's Qualitative Test.*—To 5 mls. of the Benedict qualitative reagent,<sup>3</sup> in a test-tube, add not over 0.5 ml. of urine. Boil the mixture for not less than two minutes. The change of color from greenish-olive through olive to brown and red indicates a positive reaction, and the concentration of glucose in the urine is roughly indicated by the color; the approach toward the brownish-red indicates larger amounts of glucose.

*Folin-McEllroy Method.*—Place 5 mls. of reagent in a test-tube and add not over 0.5 ml. of urine. Boil for from one to two minutes. Unlike Benedict's method, the reading for clinical purposes is made on the hot solution. The colors are about the same as those obtained by the Benedict method.

Since neither uric acid nor other interfering substances in the urine respond to these qualitative tests, it is unnecessary for practical work to resort to any other method. For this reason the multiplicity of tests for glucose in the urine, that most books dealing with the same subject cover, will not be discussed here.

*Ketose Qualitative Test; the Reaction of Selivanoff.*<sup>4</sup>—This test demands extreme care in its performance; otherwise aldoses, like glucose, may give a positive reaction.

To 5 mls. of reagent add not more than 0.5 ml. of urine. Boil for about one minute, but not much longer. Place the test-tube in your rack and let it cool to room temperature. The development of color indicates a positive reaction. Urines of subjects on diets high in

<sup>1</sup> Greek *pathos*, suffering, and *gnomon*, an index; that is, indicative of disease.

<sup>2</sup> Alimentary glycosuria is that condition in which glucose appears in the urine after the ingestion of an unusual amount of glucose or glucose-producing foods. It is probable that alimentary glycosuria is an incipient form of diabetes mellitus.

<sup>3</sup> Page 156. See also Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Page 164. For Borchardt's modification see Cole, page 312. For ordinary cases of fructosuria the usual Selivanoff reaction, as described above, is adequate.

sucrose give the reaction, especially if the urine is collected within two hours after the meal.

*Pentose Qualitative Test of Bial.*<sup>1</sup>—Place 5 mls. of the reagent in a test-tube and heat to boiling. Withdraw from the flame and add, at once, 1 ml. of urine. Color develops in the presence of arabinose (derived from foods) or ribose (from nucleoprotid of plant origin, or belonging to the extranuclear mononucleotids<sup>2</sup>). Characteristic absorption bands occur in the spectrum of the solution when cooled.<sup>3</sup>

*Lactose Test by Mucic Acid.*—Considerable urine is required. Procedure: Transfer about 100 mls. of urine to a low-form beaker and add 200 mls. of colorless concentrated nitric acid. Place the beaker on a boiling water-bath in a hood in order to concentrate the urine. When brown fumes no longer pass off from the beaker, the liquid should become clear; this occurs when the volume has been reduced to one-fifth of the original amount. Wash out the contents into a smaller beaker by means of a spray of water. Permit the preparation to stand overnight or longer in a cool place. Examine the contents of the beaker at the next exercise for a mass of small crystals of mucic acid.<sup>4</sup> Place a drop of the deposit in the bottom of the beaker upon a microscope slide, cover with a cover-glass, and examine for characteristic acutely pointed prisms. For certain identification the crystals may be filtered from the liquid, dried in the open air protected from dust, and their melting-point (213° to 215° C.) determined by the method given on page 148.

Osazones are means of identification of urinary sugars. The method for their production is given on page 146. The time of appearance of the crystals is important in diagnosis. Lactosazone appears late, glucosazone quite readily, and maltosazone more readily still. The directions are repeated here:

*Phenylhydrazin Test for Glucids in Urine.*—Acidulate 10 mls. of urine with 1 ml. glacial acetic acid. Add as much phenylhydrazin hydrochlorid<sup>5</sup> as will lie upon a United States "nickel" piece and also as much crystalline sodium acetate as will make up thrice that amount by bulk. Dissolve the mixture, using heat if necessary. Filter, in order to remove any undissolved matter. Leave the filtrate in a

<sup>1</sup> Page 163.

<sup>2</sup> Page 335.

<sup>3</sup> Page 163.

<sup>4</sup> Page 152.

<sup>5</sup> If phenylhydrazin base is used, it is a liquid, and 3 mls. are taken. Add an equal bulk of crystals of sodium acetate and a volume of urine of 10 mls. Follow the directions given above for the remainder of this procedure.

boiling water-bath for as long as your time permits (half to one hour) and then remove the flame without touching the tube. This insures that the crystals are not broken while forming. After the tube has cooled to about room temperature, carefully pipette<sup>1</sup> some of the residue to a slide and examine without covering the preparation with a cover-glass. Compare the shapes of the crystals with those in the figures. Note the time of appearance of the deposit at the bottom of the tube and apply the statement made above regarding the time of appearance of these crystals.

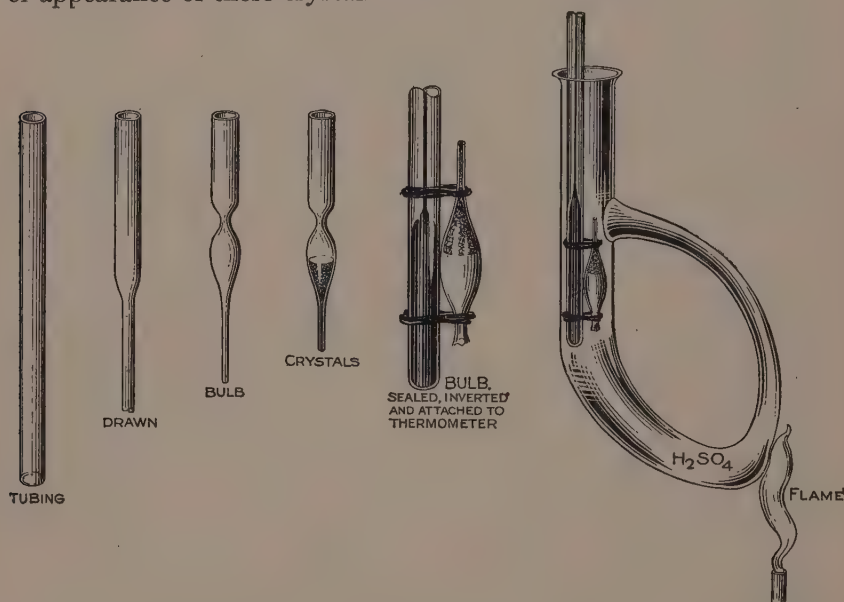


Fig. 214.—Method of making melting-point tubes and of their employment in melting-point determinations. The Thiele tube is used to advantage in this process, as shown. The above method is especially useful in determining the melting-point of osazones.

*Fermentation Test for Glucids.*—Pentoses and lactose do not ferment, and it is possible to use this fact as a means of distinguishing these glucids from glucose. See page 167 for general methods. Procedure: Secure a fermentation tube (Fig. 81) and clamp it into your stand. Transfer a test-tubeful of urine to a small mortar, add about one-eighth of a cake of yeast, and with a pestil thoroughly suspend the yeast in the urine. Fill the fermentation tube with the suspen-

<sup>1</sup> Using a large caliber pipette like a 25-ml. pipette or larger, in order that the crystals are not crushed.

sion, guarding against any bubbles of air. The bulb is left nearly free from the suspension in order that it may catch the urine displaced by  $\text{CO}_2$ , formed during fermentation. Place the apparatus in a warm oven, or leave in a warm place until the following period. The accumulation of gas in the upper portions of the tube indicates a positive test for fermenting sugar.

*Glucuronates in Urine.*—On page 278 we have shown that one of the acids produced by the partial oxidation of glucose is glucuronic acid. Substances are detoxicated by being conjugated with this acid and excreted into the urine as glucuronates. Glucuronic acid can be prepared for class demonstration by either of the following methods:

1. *By Preparation of Saccharic Acid and Subsequent Reduction to Glucuronic Acid.*—Treat a 5 per cent. solution of glucose with enough nitric acid to make a 5 per cent. solution. Leave for one hour. Neutralize with 10 per cent. NaOH solution, taking care to reach the neutral point with litmus-paper. Then add one volume of the following reagent in order to destroy the glucose left unconverted: Cupric sulphate, three parts by weight, and NaOH (stick), four parts. Let stand a short time and then filter. Save the filtrate. Now reduce the saccharic acid by treating the filtrate with a small amount of sodium amalgam<sup>1</sup> for not longer than five minutes. Then make the solution acid to litmus-paper. The content of saccharic acid is variable, but the solution can be used for the tests.

2. *Method of Plimmer* (see Plimmer, page 196).—Indian-yellow, conjugated glucuronic acid with euxanthone, is obtainable on the market as a synthetic product.<sup>2</sup> Indian-yellow is treated with dilute hydrochloric acid at the boiling-point of water, the solution cooled, the euxanthone filtered off, and the solution neutralized.

*Properties of Glucuronic Acid.*—The general behavior is similar to that of pentoses, in that it does not ferment with yeast, is dextrorotary in the polariscope, responds to the Bial test for pentoses,<sup>3</sup> and to Fehling's test, but not to Benedict's.

**Lipids, Lipidemns, and Their Oxidation Products in Urine.**—Fat

<sup>1</sup> A larger amount or a prolonged exposure of the filtrate to this reducing action converts most of the saccharic acid to gluconic acid.

<sup>2</sup> Sulphanilic acid is diazotized and diphenylamin is added; the compound formed is treated with nitric acid. When herbivores, like the rabbit, are fed the leaves of the Indian mango-tree euxanthic acid (Indian-yellow) is formed by detoxicating euxanthone with glucuronic acid. The compound is hydrolyzed as described above.

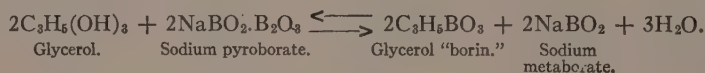
<sup>3</sup> Page 163.



occurs in the urine under unusual, pathological conditions such as lymph varicosity in the kidney, bladder, or elsewhere in the genito-urinary tract; the presence of the parasite *Filaria*, an Oriental nematode worm; and postural strains. These conditions are probably induced by lymph stasis<sup>1</sup> resulting from inefficient lymph movement. The average amount of fat found in the urine under such circumstances ranges from 0.5 to 2.2 gs. per 100 mls. of urine.<sup>2</sup>

*Method of Qualitative Detection of Fat in Urine.*—Pipette 5 mls. of the urine into a test-tube and add 1 volume of carbon tetrachlorid, stopper the tube, and invert it several times. Leave five minutes and then repeat the inversion. Let the two layers separate. Decant the upper layer of the tetrachlorid from the lower by means of a pipette. Pour the tetrachlorid into a small beaker and leave it in a water-bath at 100° C., or on an electric hot-plate at low heat, over an asbestos mat until all of the tetrachlorid has evaporated. If a residue remain, perform Dunstan's<sup>3</sup> test.

Principle: When polyhydric alcohols, like glycerol,<sup>4</sup> are added to an aqueous solution of sodium pyroborate,  $\text{NaBO}_2 \cdot \text{B}_2\text{O}_3$ , the following reaction takes place:



The reaction resembles that of the borax-bead, as when copper and borax are heated in a flame, giving  $2\text{NaBO}_2 \cdot \text{Cu}(\text{BO}_2)_2$ . In aqueous solution, the glycerinborin is hydrolyzed to boric acid:  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{BO}_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{OH})_3 + \text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$ , giving an acid reaction. Procedure: Add sufficient phenolphthalein (indicator) to 5 mls. of 0.5 per cent. borax to produce an evident pink color. Then add this solution to the residue from the tetrachlorid, slowly, drop by drop, until the pink color is lost, after which heat to boiling. The color reappears if glycerol is present.

<sup>1</sup> Latin *sto*, I stand.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes "fat" has been found in the urine after catheterization; the "fat" is petrolatum used in lubricating the catheter.

<sup>3</sup> Dunstan, W. R. (Professor of Chemistry, Pharmaceutical Soc. of England), Note on the Reaction of Glycerin and Other Polyhydric Alcohols, *Pharm. Jour.*, Series 3, vol. 13, p. 257, 1882. The reactions are given in full in *Jour. Chem. Soc.*, vol. 46, p. 278, 1884.

<sup>4</sup> Other substances responding to this test are mannitol, erythritol, pyrogallol, and guaiacol, as well as glucose, levulose, and lactose.



In place of the test just given, the acrolein test may be applied.<sup>1</sup>

*Quantitative Determination of Lipids in the Urine.*—Pipette 10 mls. of the urine into an alundum extraction thimble<sup>2</sup> and place at once in the middle compartment of a Soxhlet<sup>3</sup> extraction apparatus (Fig. 137). Fill the flask attached to the lower portion of the apparatus two-thirds full of ether and, after fixing it in place, turn on the electric current. The ether boils and the vapors condense in the middle compartment. The ether accumulates until it fills the compartment to the smaller siphon tube; it then siphons to the flask below, carrying with it the dissolved fat. After siphoning five times, turn off the current, slip an asbestos mat under the flask, let the ether accumulate in the middle compartment, and when it has just about reached the outlet of the siphon tube, remove the flask and substitute a second flask, or beaker. Place the original flask in a hot-water bath and leave until all the ether has been removed. The residue contains water and any fat which may be present. Place the flask on an electric hot plate and leave until the water and ether have entirely vaporized. Cool the flask, wipe the exterior free from any adhering water, and weigh the flask to tenths of a gram. Then add 5 mls. of ether, heat gently in a water-bath, and pour off the liquid. Repeat three times. Cool the flask and weigh again. The difference in the two weights gives the fat content in 10 mls. of urine.

*Products of Lipidmetns Occur in the Urine Under Pathological Conditions.*—It is true that many urines, when examined very carefully, are found to contain "acidosis" substances, like aceton, but it is probable that in each case there is ketosis,<sup>4</sup> due to diet, exertion, or to some other factor. Hubbard<sup>5</sup> has shown the variations under controlled conditions. Normally the fats are burned to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

<sup>1</sup> Page 194.

<sup>2</sup> Or use a piece of filter-paper thrown into a scroll, into which the urine is pipetted until the paper is saturated; then the paper is dried and more urine is added to completion of the 10 mls. The dried paper contains the fat. In drying, the temperature must not exceed  $40^\circ \text{C}$ .

<sup>3</sup> Dr. Henry Leffman, Pathological Chemist, Emeritus, Jefferson Hospital, has called the author's attention to the fact that this method should be called the Chwambathy method, after Soxhlet's pupil by that name. In the original paper Soxhlet distinctly says that the invention was made by his pupil.

<sup>4</sup> Page 520.

<sup>5</sup> Hubbard, R. S., and Wright, F. R., Variations in the Rate of Excretion of the Aceton Bodies During the Day, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 61, p. 377, 1924. The figure on page 381 of this article is referred to. See page 23.

In cases of anoxemia and of diabetes oxidation does not go on to completion, but stops at the 4-carbon stage. Beta-hydroxy-butyric acid, aceto-acetic acid, and aceton are formed. These acids are then mostly excreted into the urine, although some may pass off in the breath.

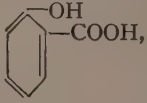
*Qualitative Tests for Acidosis Substances in the Urine.*—Aceto-acetic acid soon disappears from urine on standing. For this reason tests to detect its presence should be undertaken as soon as possible after the urine is voided, and if the tests for other substances are to be made, the test for aceto-acetic acid should be made first.

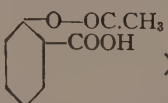
**Aceto-acetic Acid.**—The most faithful test is that of Gerhardt.<sup>1</sup>

Principle: Aceto-acetic acid<sup>2</sup> in its enol form reduces ferric chlorid,  $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6$ , to ferrous chlorid,  $\text{FeCl}_2$ ; ferrous chlorid is oxidized to the greenish or brownish ferrous hydroxid,  $\text{Fe}(\text{OH})_2$ . The mixture of these various salts has a red color which is that obtained in the test. A preliminary treatment of the urine with ferric chlorid causes the urinary phosphates to be precipitated as ferric phosphate, and this compound is removed by filtration. Procedure: To 5 mls. of the urine add, drop by drop, 5 per cent. ferric chlorid solution until more precipitate is obtained. Filter. To the filtrate add a few drops more of ferric chlorid solution. A positive test is given by the appearance of a maroon color in the liquid.<sup>3</sup> The depth of color does not ordinarily indicate the quantity of aceto-acetic acid with any faithfulness.

<sup>1</sup> Gerhardt, C. F., French chemist, died 1856. See Bigwood, E. J. (Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore), and Ladd, W. S. (Columbia University, New York, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 58, p. 347, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Also called di-acetic and acetyl-acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}:\text{O}.\text{CH}_2.\text{COOH}$  (keto form), and  $\text{CH}_3.\text{COH}.\text{CH}_2.\text{COOH}$  (enol form).

<sup>3</sup> Substances which carry an hydroxy group, similar to the enol of aceto-acetic acid, give the same color with ferric chlorid. Salicylic acid, , is an

example. Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid, ) , frequently administered

as an analgesic, is slowly converted into salicylic acid in the body, and this acid is excreted into the urine. For this reason it is necessary to remove the salicylates by shaking the urine previous to the test with chloroform; then acidify the solution with concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and add ether. After shaking the preparation and permitting the liquid to settle, the supernatant ether layer is pipetted into a test-tube, ferric chlorid is added, drop by drop, to the ether, and if the test is positive for aceto-acetic acid, the maroon color appears.

Bigwood and Ladd suggest that aceto-acetic acid be reported as follows:

Less than 0.1 g.....	Negative	No color change
0.1 to 0.4 g.....	Trace	Light brown
0.4 to 1 g.....	+	Dark brown
1 to 2 gs.....	++	Light maroon
2 to 4 gs.....	+++	Dark maroon
4 gs. and above.....	++++	Black

Aceton gives no changes of color in a ferric chlorid solution. This permits us to distinguish between these two acids, especially when the test is made in conjunction with the following one, in which sodium nitroprussid is used; this substance reacts with both aceto-acetic acid and aceton. If the above test is negative while the following one is positive, aceton is indicated. If the following test is strongly positive, coming immediately, aceto-acetic acid is indicated, and the test of Gerhardt should be performed.

*Bigwood-Ladd Test for Aceton.*<sup>1</sup>—Using the special solution,<sup>1</sup> add 20 drops to 10 mls. of urine in a test-tube. Stopper the tube, invert it several times, and then pipette down the side of the tube 5 mls. of concentrated ammonium hydroxid solution. If the test is positive, a purplish zone appears at the junction of the two liquids. The preparation should stand for two minutes before being read. The following reports are suggested:

Trace.—	Yellowish ring, no purple.
+	Narrow zone of purple.
++	Wide ring, not intense in color.
+++	Wide ring, maximum.
++++	The ring is a heavy purple mass.

*Quantitative Method for Total Aceton Substances (Van Slyke).*—Principle: After removing interfering substances (glucose, etc.)<sup>2</sup> by cupric sulphate and calcium salt, the substances are oxidized to aceton by means of potassium dichromate. The aceton is weighed as mercurio-sulphate-chromate compound.

Procedure: Precipitation of the glucose. Transfer 25 mls. of urine to a 250-ml. volumetric flask or cylinder. Dilute with 100 mls.

<sup>1</sup> For reagents see Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> It is not necessary that the urine be diabetic to contain these interfering substances. Glucids, creatinin, etc., interfere.

distilled water and 50 mls. of the special cupric sulphate solution.<sup>1</sup> Mix by stoppering and inverting the flask or cylinder. Add 50 mls. of the special  $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$  suspension. Mix. If still acid to litmus, add an additional amount of the hydroxid and distilled water to make 250 mls. of solution. Let the preparation stand for thirty minutes. Filter the precipitated glucose from the solution by passing it through a folded filter-paper (Fig. 206), or a physiological funnel,<sup>2</sup> without folding the paper into flutings.

The determination: Pipette 25 mls. of the filtrate obtained from the above treatment into a 400-ml. Erlenmeyer flask, or a small "balloon" flask (Fig. 247). Dilute with 100 mls. of distilled water. Add 10 mls. of half-concentrated sulphuric acid and 35 mls. of 10 per cent. solution of mercuric sulphate,  $\text{HgSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Insert a stopper bearing a Hopkins reflux condenser (Fig. 108) into the mouth of the flask. Place the flask on a wire gauze over a Bunsen burner and heat the solution to boiling. Continue boiling for an hour and a half, or longer. Then let the flask cool at first in the air and then under the tap. Filter the solution by suction through an alundum filter-crucible, saving the residue. Not over 200 mls. of cold distilled water may be used to wash the residue under suction. Let the air current pass through the crucible for as long as possible, then remove the crucible and place it in the thermostat at  $110^\circ \text{C}$ . for one hour, or until the following period. Then let it cool in the open air. Weigh the crucible containing the precipitate. Then remove the precipitate and wash thoroughly with water. Place the crucible on a pipe-stem triangle over a Bunsen burner and let it remain for half an hour. Then rinse the crucible, let it dry in the air, and weigh again. The difference gives the weight of the mercury compound.

Calculation: Estimate the total aceton substances as aceton: Twenty milligrams of the mercury are equivalent to 1 mg. of aceton. In order to obtain the total aceton substances in 100 mls. of urine divide the weight of the mercury compound (found as described above) by 0.02, and multiply the result by 40.<sup>3</sup>

*Alternate Method of Determination.*—Titration of the mercury by

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> A funnel with corrugated sides to prevent paper from adhering closely to the glass and inhibiting filtration. Sometimes the term is applied to a very small ordinary funnel (page 490).

<sup>3</sup> That is, 25 mls. of urine were taken originally; this makes  $4 \times 25 = 100$ . Of the 250 mls. in the filtrate from the precipitation process, 250 mls. were taken. This makes the dilution 25 to 250 or 1 : 10. Then  $4 \times 10 = 40$ .



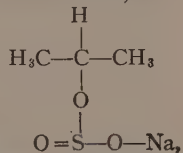
potassium iodid: After the crucible has been taken from the oven and permitted to cool in cold water, transfer the contents to a small beaker, and add 15 mls. of normal hydrochloric acid solution. Dissolve the mixture by heating. Cool and add about 6 mls. of 3 M (thrice molecular) sodium acetate, which acts as a buffer and reduces acidity. Place the beaker beneath a burette containing 0.2 M potassium iodid solution and titrate until the end-point has been reached, which is indicated by the solution of red mercuric iodid after it has been formed. It is best to add an excess of the iodid and to titrate back with a known solution of mercuric chlorid (0.05 M  $\text{HgCl}_2$  solution).<sup>1</sup>

Calculation: One ml. of the 0.20 M potassium iodid solution is equivalent to 13 mgs. of the mercury precipitate.

*Determination of Aceton by the Turbidimetric Method of Folin.*—

Principle: The aceton is aspirated into a solution of bisulphite. The compound thus formed is suspended in an alkaline mercuric cyanid- $\text{AgNO}_3$  solution, the turbidity then being compared with that developed by a standard solution of aceton. Procedure: To about 1 ml. of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid solution in a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube, add 2 mls. of urine.<sup>2</sup> Place in a similar tube 10 mls. of freshly prepared 2 per cent. sodium bisulphite solution ( $\text{NaHSO}_4$ ).<sup>3</sup> Connect the two tubes as shown in the figure (Fig. 227). Place the tube containing the urine in a beaker of water at about 40° C. Now start the air current, which carries the aceton over into the bisulphite solution, and

let it run for ten minutes. Aceton-sodium-bisulphite,



is formed. Pour the solution quantitatively into a 100-ml. volumetric flask, washing with a small amount of distilled water, enough to make

<sup>1</sup> The mercuric chlorid solution should be standardized against the potassium iodid used. Pipette exactly 25 mls. of the 0.05 M  $\text{HgCl}_2$  into a small beaker, *taking care that none of the fluid enters the mouth!* Dilute with about 100 mls. of distilled water. Pass  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  gas through the solution until the maximum black mercuric sulphide,  $\text{HgS}$ , has been obtained. Filter this by suction from the filtrate, and weigh as directed above. There should be 0.2908 g. of mercuric sulphide in the weighed amount. Then the potassium iodid solution is titrated against the standard mercuric chlorid solution, the exact concentration of which has been just determined by the sulphide method.

<sup>2</sup> The amount should be such as to give about 0.5 mg. aceton.

<sup>3</sup> This substance may be obtained from dealers in photographic supplies. The commercial solution contains 50 per cent. bisulphite. It must be kept stoppered.



a volume of about 50 mls. of fluid. The standard is made as follows: To each of the two similar volumetric flasks add 10 mls. of the standard acetone solution containing 0.5 ml. of acetone; add also 10 mls. of 2 per cent. sodium bisulphite solution, and dilute with distilled water to make a volume of about 50 mls. Now add to each flask 15 mls. of the alkaline  $\text{Hg}(\text{CN})_2 \cdot \text{AgNO}_3$  solution<sup>1</sup> which must be clear. Dilute at once with distilled water to the mark. Mix and let stand for about fifteen minutes. Place the colorimeter to face a window and pull the curtain down within about a decimeter of the sash, so that the light emerges from a horizontal slit. Make sure<sup>2</sup> that each field of the colorimeter is illuminated equally with the other. Place about 5 mls. of the suspension from one standard preparation in the left cup and a similar quantity of the unknown in the right cup. Set the standard at 20 mms. Calculation:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of standard (20)}}{\text{Reading of unknown (n)}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (0.5)}}$$

Or:

$$\frac{20}{n} = \frac{x}{0.5}; x = \frac{n}{10} \text{ for 2 mls. and } x = \frac{n}{20}, \text{ or } 5 \times [n \text{ mgs. per cent.}]$$

**Determination of Beta-hydroxy-butyric Acid.**—This may be determined by ascertaining the difference between the total acetone substances and the quantity of aceto-acetic acid determined by the foregoing method. For direct determination of beta-hydroxy-butyric acid, proceed as follows:

*Folin-Shaffer-Marriott Method for  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric Acid.*—P. A. Shaffer<sup>3</sup> estimated the amount of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid by causing it to become oxidized to acetone. Marriott<sup>4</sup> adapted this method to the determination of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid in blood. Folin combined these two methods and incorporated the more recent work of Shaffer, which showed that when small amounts of the acid are oxidized by chromic acid, theoretical yields of acetone are obtained. Procedure: Diluting the specimen, pipette 5 mls. of urine into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and fill to the mark with distilled water. This gives,

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> This is best done by filling each cup of the colorimeter with the standard solution from one of the standard flasks and placing the left cup at 20 mms.; read the right cup against it. If the readings do not agree, adjust the colorimeter until they do.

<sup>3</sup> Fig. 156.

<sup>4</sup> Marriott, W. McK., Professor of Pediatrics, Washington University, St. Louis, Mo.

on the average, about 2 mgs. of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid per ml. of solution. The determination: Pipette 2 mls. of the urine thus diluted into a large Kjeldahl flask. Add 200 mls. of water and 5 mls. of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid solution. Boil over a free flame for about ten minutes.<sup>1</sup> Measure (cylinder) 25 mls. of the special chromic acid solution.<sup>2</sup> Arrange the flask for distillation by connecting it to the Reitmeyer adapter bulb of a Kjeldahl distilling apparatus.<sup>3</sup> Place a pint milk bottle below the apparatus, as in the Kjeldahl method,<sup>4</sup>

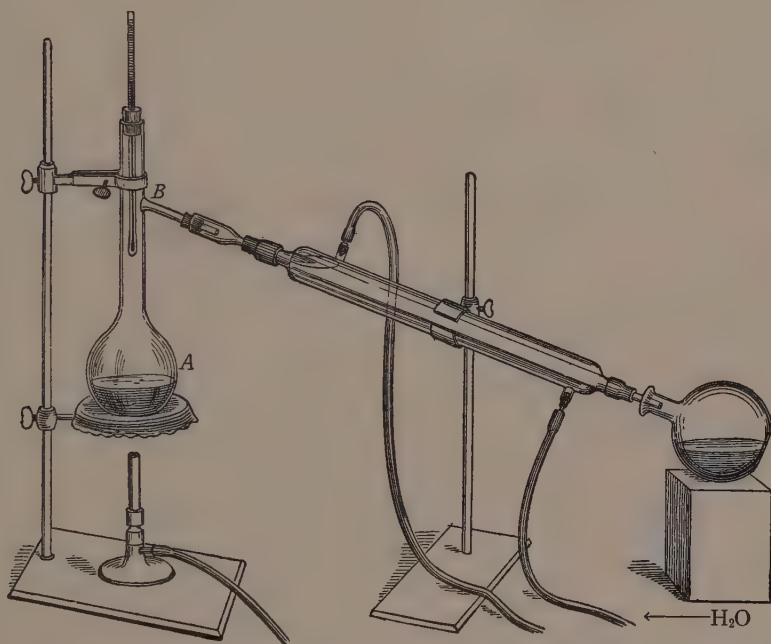


Fig. 215.—Apparatus for distillation. Water is passed through the apparatus by means of the lower (right-hand) tubing and out into the sink through the upper tubing. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

but in place of the acid usually used in the Kjeldahl method add about 100 mls. of distilled water to the bottle. Make sure that the tube leading from the end of the condenser to the bottle dips beneath the water in it. Light the burner and keep it turned low for about half an hour; then increase the flame. At no time is it necessary to

<sup>1</sup> The purpose of this procedure is to remove acetone or aceto-acetic acid which is nearly always present in urine containing  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid. <sup>2</sup> Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> Figure 215; the Reitmeyer bulb is shown in Figs. 106 and 107. <sup>4</sup> Page 283.

cause the contents of the flask to boil actively, owing to the high volatility of acetone ( $56.1^{\circ}\text{C.}$ ). At the end of an hour disconnect the flask, pour out the contents, and rinse with distilled water. Transfer the contents of the milk bottle to the Kjeldahl flask and add about 2 gs. of sodium peroxid. Reconnect the Kjeldahl flask with the apparatus and distill about 80 mls. again into the milk bottle, which contains about 10 mls. of distilled water. The second distillation takes about fifteen minutes. Disconnect the milk bottle, turn off the flame, and then add the contents of the bottle to a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Dilute to the mark, stopper, invert, and mix. Pour the contents of the flask into a beaker. Rinse the flask twice with distilled water and then pipette 50 mls. of the contents of the beaker into the flask. Add to the flask 15 mls. of the Scott-Wilson solution,<sup>1</sup> dilute to the mark with distilled water, stopper, invert, and mix. To a second 100-ml. volumetric flask add 10 mls. of the standard acetone solution used in the previous determination<sup>2</sup> and also 15 mls. of the Scott-Wilson reagent. Dilute the contents of this flask to the mark with distilled water. Let the two flasks stand for fifteen minutes. Then compare the turbidities in a colorimeter as directed before.<sup>3</sup> Calculation: The content of acetone per mls. of unknown urine specimen is obtained exactly as in the preceding determination.<sup>4</sup> In the present case, however, the urine is diluted 1 to 20 and it is necessary to multiply the result by 20 in order to obtain the amount of acetone in 2 mls. of the distillate; but only one-half of the distillate (50 mls.) was taken for turbidimetry. The result must be multiplied by 2. This gives the milligrams of acetone in 2 mls. of the original urine. One-half of this figure multiplied by 1.79<sup>5</sup> gives the  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid corresponding to the number of milligrams of acetone found.

#### INORGANIC CONSTITUENTS OF THE URINE

From the standpoint of quantity the most important constituent of the urine, aside from urea (30 gs. per day), is *sodium chloride* (15 gs. per day). Other mineral substances are excreted in the urine, but

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Page 770.

<sup>3</sup> Page 770.

<sup>4</sup> Page 769.

<sup>5</sup> This is the amount of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid that corresponds to 1 mg. of acetone. The ratio of the molecular weights of  $\beta$ -hydroxy-butyric acid and acetone is  $\frac{104.08}{56.06} = 1.79$ .

none approaches sodium chlorid in quantity. The following Table gives the concentrations and probable function of the inorganic substances of the urine:

<i>Substance.</i>	<i>Quantity per twenty-four hours.</i>	<i>Probable function.</i>
Sodium chlorid, NaCl	15 gs. <sup>1</sup> 9.4 gs. <sup>2</sup> 8.5 gs. <sup>3</sup> 8.42 gs. <sup>4</sup>	Solvent; proper osmotic relations; aids in maintaining reaction.
Phosphoric acid, H <sub>3</sub> PO <sub>4</sub>	1.6 gs. (Folin) 3.5 (Abderhalden)	As NaH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> reduces the acidity of the body; when retained, owing to impairment of the kidney in nephritis, the alkali reserve of the blood is depleted, as in ketosis. A small amount of organic phosphorus is excreted by way of the urine. This represents compounds like nucleoprotids, phosphoprotids, and phospholipids.
Sulphur (as H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> )	2.1 gs. (Folin) 3.2 (Abderhalden)	Represents metabolism of the protids and aids in the regulation of the body neutrality by excreting the acid radicle SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>-</sup> .

*Total sulphur is divisible into three kinds of sulphur (page 578):*

1. Inorganic, due to the oxidation of sulphur in the liver; this is of two kinds:
  - (a) Derived from the cystin and other organic sulphur of the foods; the sulphur becomes oxidized in the liver.
  - (b) Derived from the sulphates of the food.

Amount of inorganic sulphate, 2.7 gs. per twenty-four hours.

2. Ethereal sulphate, due to inorganic sulphur conjugated with aromatic substances from foods, intestinal putrefaction, etc.

Amount of ethereal sulphate, 0.25 g.

3. Sulphur which has not been oxidized in the liver; this consists of that cystin and other sulphur-bearing compounds derived partly from foods, which have escaped destruction in the liver; and similar compounds derived partly from the tissues.

Amount of "neutral sulphur," 0.16 g.

<sup>1</sup> On a salt intake of about 18 gs. per twenty-four hours, about 15 gs. NaCl are excreted. This is normal for many persons. Concerning reduced amounts of NaCl in the diet see page 561.

<sup>2</sup> Abderhalden, E. (Tr. by W. T. Hall), Text-book of Physiological Chemistry, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1908, p. 590.

<sup>3</sup> Folin, O., Proportionated from tables in Folin, p. 121.

<sup>4</sup> Mosenthal, H. O., Renal Function as Measured by the Elimination of Fluids, Salt and Nitrogen, and the Specific Gravity of the Urine. II. The Effect of High, Low, and Normal Diets, Arch. Int. Med., vol. 22, p. 770, 1918. The intake was 8.5 gs. per twenty-four hours.

<i>Substance.</i>	<i>Quantity per twenty-four hours.</i>	<i>Probable function.</i>
Sodium, Na	4 gs.	Excreted with cations like $\text{Cl}^-$ . Concerned with the factors mentioned above under NaCl.
Potassium, K	2 gs. as $\text{K}_2\text{O}$	Represents the metabolism of the tissues as contrasted with the intercellular material. Becomes excreted in proportion to sodium as 1 : 3.5. Potassium is necessary in the maintenance of proper osmotic relations.
Calcium, Ca	7 gs.	Excreted as calcium phosphate, chiefly. The exact rôle of Ca in excretion and in metabolism as a whole is not known. The amount excreted varies with the excretion of other inorganic substances, like phosphates and chlorids.
Magnesium, Mg.	0.30 g.	Magnesium resembles calcium in its occurrence and association with other excreted substances.
Iron, Fe.	0.01 g.	The minute amount of iron excreted in the urine is insignificant at the present time for physiological or clinical purposes.

Besides the substances mentioned above, other inorganic elements like iodine have been detected. To date, no definite relation between their presence and physiological or pathological variations has been discovered.

#### METHODS FOR THE DETERMINATION OF INORGANIC SUBSTANCES IN THE URINE

The following methods have been selected principally owing to their utility in clinical diagnosis. Rapidity of procedure, small amounts of fluid required, and similar factors make them particularly practicable.

**Chlorids.**—*Determination of Chlorids in the Urine (Seelman's<sup>1</sup> Modification of Volhard's Procedure).*—Principle: Precipitation of the chlorids as silver chlorid and titration of the excess silver nitrate after the precipitation. Procedure: Place 0.5 ml. of the urine in a small evaporating dish, using a Mohr 2-ml. pipette (Fig. 216) graduated in hundredths of a ml. Pass a stream of water through the pipette and then distilled water. Drain it as free as possible from water. Pipette exactly 1 ml. of Seelman Solution I into the dish, using a 1-ml. Ostwald-

<sup>1</sup> Seelman, J. J., physician, Milwaukee, Wisconsin. See Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 1, p. 444, 1916. For solutions see Appendix.



Folin pipette. Stir the contents of the dish with a small solid glass stirring-rod. Now draw up in the clean 2-ml. Mohr pipette enough of Solution II to bring the meniscus above the starting-point of the readings; adjust the meniscus. Let drops flow from the pipette into the dish, stirring all the time, until the brownish color persists for at least ten seconds. Read the pipette.

Calculation: Subtract from 2 mls. the reading of the pipette. This gives the grams of NaCl per 100 mls. of urine.<sup>1</sup>

*Comment.*—The original Volhard method involved the separation of the silver chlorid from the solution containing the silver nitrate. This was advocated because some of the silver chlorid is converted into silver thiocyanate during titration and, consequently, more thiocyanate is used than the quantitative results demand. This gives higher figures than the theoretical one for chlorids in urine. However, in such minute quantities as are used in the above method, the error is about 5 mls. of thiocyanate, or only about one one-thousandth of the amount of sodium chlorid excreted in the urine per twenty-four hours.

*Explanation of the Reactions.*—Nitric acid is used in the solutions to prevent the purins of the urine from interfering with the reactions. They are precipitated as purin silver nitrate and utilize some of the thiocyanate added in titration, unless nitric acid be added. Iron alum (ferric ammonium sulphate,  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ ) is added to act as an indicator; when all of the excess silver nitrate has been con-

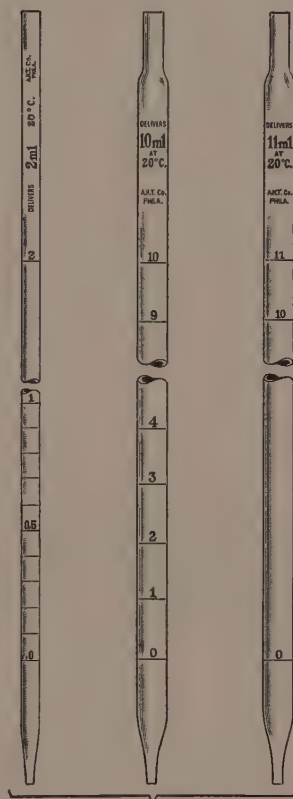


Fig. 216.—Mohr type pipettes.

<sup>1</sup> Each 2 mls. of Solution II correspond to 1 ml. of Solution I and this corresponds to 0.01 g. of NaCl. Each ml. of Solution II corresponds to 0.005 g. of NaCl. If we designate the result ( $2 - n$ ), being the titration figure, by  $y$ , then 5  $y$  mgs. of NaCl occur in the 0.5 ml. of urine taken for the determination. For 100 mls. of urine we have 5  $y$  ( $2 \times 100$ ) mgs. This is the same as 1000  $y$  mgs., or  $y$  gs. per 100 mls. of urine (percentage).

verted into silver thiocyanate ( $\text{AgCNS}$ , white), then ferric thiocyanate ( $\text{Fe}_2(\text{CNS})_6$ ,  $(\text{KCNS})_9$ , brown),<sup>1</sup> appears owing to the reaction between the thiocyanate and ferric alum.

*Volhard Method.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: The principle is the same as that of the Seelman modification. Larger amounts of urine and of reagents are used. The precipitated silver chlorid is removed by filtration. Procedure: Pipette 10 mls. of urine into a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Dilute with about 50 mls. of distilled water. Add 5 mls. of the indicator, ferric alum. Add 5 mls. of pure white nitric acid.<sup>3</sup> Add 20 mls. of standard silver nitrate solution. Dilute to the mark (100 mls.), stopper, invert, and mix. Filter through a dry filter-paper. When more than half has been filtered, pipette 50 mls. of the clear filtrate into a large evaporating dish and titrate with the thiocyanate solution. Calculation: One volume of the silver solution is equivalent to two volumes of the thiocyanate. Each ml. of the silver solution is equivalent to 8.23 mgs. of  $\text{NaCl}$ . Then:

$20 - n \times 8.23$  gives the mgs. per 10 mls. urine.

Multiply by 10 for per cent. chlorids as  $\text{NaCl}$ .

**Phosphates.**—*Free or Non-conjugated Phosphates in the Urine (Method of Bell and Doisy)*<sup>4</sup>.—Principle: Ammonium molybdate solution is added to urine. Phosphomolybdic acid is formed. The phosphomolybdic acid is then caused to assume a color characteristic of the amount of phosphorus by reducing the phosphomolybdic acid. This is accomplished by means of hydrochinon acting in an alkaline medium.<sup>5</sup>

Procedure: Transfer 2 mls. of urine to a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Make the standard at the same time. Pipette 5 mls. of the standard

<sup>1</sup> Such compounds are called "rhodanates" from the Greek *r(h)odon*, a rose.

<sup>2</sup> Liebig's *Annalen der Chemie*, vol. 190, p. 1, 1878.

<sup>3</sup> Free from the lower oxids of nitrogen and, of course, from chlorids. Nitrous acid must not be present, because it forms a red compound with the thiocyanate, which leads the operator to believe that an end-point has been reached before the actual titration is completed.

<sup>4</sup> Washington University and St. Louis University, St. Louis, Mo., respectively, *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 44, p. 55, 1920.

<sup>5</sup> The reaction is similar to that of the Folin method for uric acid (page 715). Ammonium molybdate  $(\text{NH}_4)_6\text{Mo}_7\text{O}_{24}$  may be considered for this reaction simply as molybdic acid (molybdenum trioxid),  $\text{MoO}_3$ . When phosphoric acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) is added, phosphomolybdic acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4(\text{MoO}_3)_3$ ) is formed. This becomes reduced by hydrochinon (di-hydroxy-benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$ ) to a blue molybdenum salt (see page 157).

$\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  solution<sup>1</sup> into a similar 100-ml. volumetric flask. Now to each flask add 25 mls. of distilled water, 5 mls. of the special molybdc acid solution, and 5 mls. of the hydrochinon solution. Rotate the flasks to mix the contents and let stand for five minutes. Add 25 mls. of the special sulphite solution to each flask. Dilute to the mark with distilled water and, after mixing, let stand for five minutes. Pour, simultaneously into the two cups, liquid from each flask and insert the plungers of the colorimeter at the same time. Permit to stand two minutes. Then place the standard cup (left) at 20 mms. Adjust the right cup to such a depth that the color matches that of the left cup. Then take the reading.

Calculation:

$$\frac{\text{Reading of the standard (20)}}{\text{Reading of the unknown (n)}} = \frac{\text{Concentration of unknown (x)}}{\text{Concentration of standard (0.5)}}$$

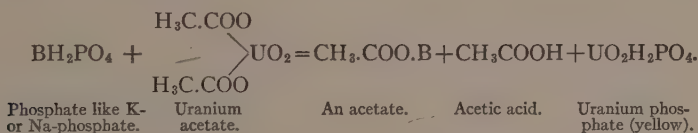
Or:

$$x = \frac{10}{n} \text{ mgs. for 2 mls. of urine,}$$

or:

$$x = \frac{500}{n} \text{ mgs. per cent. of inorganic phosphate in urine.}$$

*Sutton's<sup>2</sup> Method for Non-conjugated Phosphates.*—Principle: The phosphate is precipitated as uranium phosphate by adding a known quantity of uranium salt (acetate or nitrate in acetate solution). The reaction is as follows:



An indicator is used to define the end-point of the titration. Usually potassium ferrocyanid is used, which becomes uranium ferrocyanid (brown) when the phosphate has all been precipitated. Since this gives a slightly high reading, cochineal<sup>3</sup> may be used.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix. The solution is made in such a manner that 5 mls. contain 0.5 mg. phosphorus.

<sup>2</sup> Sutton, F., English analytical chemist. See Chem. News, vol. 1, pp. 97, 122, 1860. Also Sutton, F. (revised by W. L. Sutton and A. E. Johnson), A Systematic Handbook of Volumetric Analysis, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 11th ed., 1924. The Germans, Neubauer and Pincus, suggested the same procedure in 1907.

<sup>3</sup> Carminic acid,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{18}\text{O}_{10}$ . The end-point is indicated when the solution turns green.

**Procedure:** Pipette 50 mls. of the urine into a 400-ml. beaker. Add 5 mls. of the special sodium acetate solution<sup>1</sup> and then a few drops of cochineal solution to serve as an approximate indicator. Heat the contents of the beaker to about 60° C.<sup>2</sup> From a burette, either held in the hand or clamped above the beaker, add standard uranium solution until the color changes from the red of the cochineal to green. Arrange a spot plate containing potassium ferrocyanid solution in the depressions and, with a stirring-rod, add a drop of the boiling solution to a drop of the ferrocyanid on the plate. The exact end-point is indicated when a permanent brown color remains after application of the stirring-rod.

**Calculation:** The solution of uranium salt is so made that 1 ml. corresponds to 5 mgs. of phosphate, estimated as  $P_2O_5$ . Then:

The number of mls. of uranium solution used in titration  $\times 5$  = milligrams of  $P_2O_5$  in 50 mls. of urine.

Or:

This result, multiplied by 2, gives the milligrams percentage  $P_2O_5$ .

The twenty-four-hour quantity is found by taking 0.01 of the figure and multiplying by the number of mls. in twenty-four-hour volume.

**Total phosphates** (non-conjugated and those oxidized from conjugated phosphates):

*Method of Neumann.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle: Phosphorus united to organic substances (nucleoprotids, lecithin, etc.) is hydrolyzed and oxidized to inorganic phosphate. Then the total phosphate (free and that released from organic compounds) is estimated by the above method. **Procedure:** Pipette 10 mls. of urine into a large Kjeldahl flask. Add 10 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid and 5 mls. of concentrated nitric acid. Place the flask on the digestion shelf of the Kjeldahl apparatus in the hood and heat gently. When the colored fumes (oxides of nitrogen) are no longer given off from the solution, the residue should be white. If it remain colored, let the flask cool and continue cooling under the tap. Then add 3 mls. of nitric acid to the contents of the flask and heat again. Cool as before, add about 150 mls. of

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> This is to insure that the calcium phosphate of the urine is not precipitated, as it readily is in acetic acid solution when boiled. After considerable uranium solution has been added, then the solution may be brought to the boil.

<sup>3</sup> Neumann, A. (German chemist). The method is given in Sutton, cited on page 777. See also *Zeitschr. f. Physiol. Chemie*, vol. 37, p. 129, 1902.



water and 20 mls. of ammonium nitrate solution (80 per cent.). Heat to  $85^{\circ}$  C. Permit to cool somewhat and then add 20 mls. of 10 per cent. solution of ammonium molybdate. Heat gently and note the formation of a yellow color. Shake at intervals for fifteen minutes. Let the solution cool during this time, and when at about room temperature filter off the precipitated phosphomolybdate.<sup>1</sup> Rinse the Kjeldahl flask with a small amount of cold water and add the rinsings to the residue on the paper. Then, finally, wash the residue with a small amount of cold water. Remove the crucible or funnel and transfer the contents to the flask, using distilled water to aid in solution. Add, also, enough half-normal NaOH solution to dissolve the precipitate, recording the amount of alkali used. Then add 10 mls. excess. Add about 300 mls. of distilled water. Now boil the solution in order to remove the ammonia. Cool the flask under the tap and titrate the excess of alkali which has been added, using 0.5 normal sulphuric acid, with phenolphthalein as indicator. Calculation: Each ml. of the alkali used to cause solution of the precipitate corresponds to 0.0012 g.  $P_2O_5$ . Then:

(mls. alkali added + 10 mls.) — (titration figure + 0.0012)  
gives the number of gs. total phosphate as  $P_2O_5$  per 10 mls. urine.

The result  $\times 10$  gives the percentage of  $P_2O_5$ .<sup>2</sup>

**Sulphur in the Urine.**—It is customary to consider four different quantities of sulphur in urine:

1. *Total Sulphates.*—All of the sulphur of urine is oxidized, during the process of making the determination, to sulphate,  $SO_4$ .

2. *Inorganic Sulphate.*—Sulphur having been oxidized in the body, particularly in the liver, to sulphate,  $SO_4$ .

3. *Ethereal Sulphates.*—Conjugated  $SO_4$  with compounds like the products of putrefaction, phenol, indoxyl, etc. The linkage between the radicle  $SO_4$  and the compound is an oxygen, and this is the basis of the term "ethereal."

4. *Neutral sulphur*, in the form of "acid" or sulph-hydryl sulphur, SH. This represents the sulphur of the body which has not been oxidized. It is composed partly of food compounds containing sul-

<sup>1</sup> Filtering is best accomplished by using suction and a good Gooch or alundum crucible. However, with care, filtering may be done through paper, although it is better to support the paper by means of a small perforated porcelain plate.

<sup>2</sup> If the result is to be expressed in terms of phosphorus, then the factor is 0.0005 g.



phur, that have not been oxidized in the liver to  $\text{SO}_4$ ; also of the sulphur from metabolized protids that escapes oxidation in the liver. Inasmuch, however, as neutral sulphur varies directly with the metabolism of the body, exogenous compounds containing sulphur probably play only a subordinate part in its formation.

**Methods of Determining Total Sulphates.**—*Method of Rosenheim and Drummond.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle<sup>2</sup>: Benzidin hydrochlorid is a weak organic base, neutral to phenolphthalein. It may act as a bearer of an acid; with sulphuric acid, a salt,  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8(\text{NH}_2)_2 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , insoluble in water slightly acidulated with HCl. The sulphuric acid is easily removed from the benzidin when the solution is titrated with a caustic alkali, like NaOH.

Procedure: For total sulphates (method modified by use of Benedict's reagent): Principle: The neutral sulphur,  $\text{SH}$ , is oxidized by means of  $\text{KClO}_3$  and  $\text{Cu}(\text{NO}_3)_2$  to inorganic sulphate,  $\text{SO}_4$ . Then the sulphate is determined by the benzidin method. Method: Pipette 10 mls. of urine into an evaporating dish. Add 5 mls. of the special Benedict reagent for oxidizing sulphur.<sup>3</sup> Leave the dish on the steam-bath until the liquid has evaporated. Then cover it with a large watch-glass and place it on a tripod over a moderate flame. Heat for about five minutes until the cupric nitrate of the reagent has become oxidized to cupric oxid. Let the dish cool. Add 10 mls. 1:10 HCl solution and also about 10 mls. of water. Aid the solution of the residue with a "policeman." Neutralize the solution, using 10 per cent. NaOH solution and litmus-paper. Add, in addition, enough of the alkali to render the solution slightly alkaline. Place the dish on the steam-bath again in order to warm it. Filter off the cupric oxid by means of suction. Wash with distilled water. Reject the residue. To the filtrate add about 2 mls. of concentrated HCl and 100 mls. of benzidin hydrochlorid solution.<sup>4</sup> The benzidin sulphate thus formed appears

<sup>1</sup> English chemists; see *Biochem. Jour.*, vol. 8, p. 134, 1913. The use of benzidin for this purpose was first suggested by Mueller (German chemist) in 1902. Besides the authors mentioned, similar methods have been suggested by Raiziss and Dubin (Dermatological Laboratory, Philadelphia), by Hibbard (soil biochemist of the United States), and by others. Rosenheim and Drummond have suggested a routine for the analysis of different fractions of sulphates in the urine.

<sup>2</sup> For a discussion of the principle of the use of benzidin in sulphate determination see Treadwell, F. P. (tr. by Hall, W. T.), *Analytical Chemistry*, vol. ii, p. 714, 5th ed., 1919, New York, John Wiley & Sons. Also Sutton (cited above, p. 777), p. 340.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

as an evident precipitate. Filter through a paper supported by a porcelain plate. Wash with water that is saturated with benzidin sulphate solution. Transfer the residue and its paper to a beaker. Add about 50 mls. of distilled water and heat to  $80^{\circ}$  C. Add about 4 drops of phenolphthalein as indicator. Titrate the solution with decinormal sodium hydroxid solution until it becomes red. Calculation: Each ml. of decinormal NaOH is equivalent to 1 ml. of 0.1 normal  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The weight of sulphuric acid in 1 ml. of decinormal acid solution is 0.0049 g. Then:

Titration figure  $\times 0.0049$  = gs.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  per 10 mls. of urine.  
Multiplied by 10, we obtain per cent.  $\text{SO}_4$ .

*For Inorganic Sulphates.*—Pipette 25 mls. of urine into a 250-ml. Erlenmeyer flask. Add 2 mls. of hydrochloric solution 1:3 and 100 mls. of the benzidin solution used above. Agitate the contents of the flask and let stand for about ten minutes. Filter.<sup>1</sup> Add 10 mls. of the benzidin sulphate solution to the flask, rinse it, and add the rinsings to the residue on the filter. Now transfer the filter-paper and residue to the flask, rinsing all parts that have come into contact with the solutions into the flask. Break up any aggregates of benzidin sulphate by means of a "policeman." Then heat the solution almost to the boiling-point and titrate with decinormal NaOH solution, using phenolphthalein as indicator.

Calculation: This may be carried out exactly as in the case of total sulphates, or, if it is desired to express the result in terms of  $\text{SO}_3$ , 1 ml. of decinormal NaOH is equivalent to 4 mgs. of  $\text{SO}_3$ . Then the neutral sulphur is obtained by subtracting the quantity thus obtained from that of the total sulphates.

*Ethereal Sulphates.*—By subtracting the figures for inorganic sulphates from those for total sulphates, the amount of ethereal sulphates, expressed as either  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{SO}_3$ , is obtained.

*Unoxidized Sulphur*, SH-sulphur or "neutral sulphur." This fraction may be obtained by using the data acquired from the determination of inorganic sulphates, together with that determined by the following procedure for inorganic and ethereal sulphates. The principle involves the acid hydrolysis of the ethereal sulphates and their de-

<sup>1</sup> The filtrate must be passed through the filter again in case it is not entirely clear.

termination along with the inorganic sulphates. Procedure: Pipette 25 mls. of urine into an Erlenmeyer flask. Add 20 mls. of 1:5 hydrochloric acid solution and boil half an hour. Cool, neutralize with 10 per cent. NaOH solution (litmus-paper), then reacidify with the HCl solution until Congo-red paper is turned from red to blue. Add 100 mls. of the benzidin hydrochlorid solution. Agitate the contents and leave for fifteen minutes. Filter. Wash the flask with about 10 mls. of saturated benzidin sulphate solution and add the washings to the residue on the paper. Reject the filtrate and add the residue and paper to the flask. Warm to about  $100^{\circ}$  C. Titrate with 0.1 normal NaOH solution with phenolphthalein as indicator. Calculation: The calculation is exactly similar to that of the preceding determinations: 1 ml. of 0.1 normal NaOH solution is equivalent to 0.0049 g.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , or to 0.004 g.  $\text{SO}_3$ . Sodium, potassium, and calcium may be determined gravimetrically. Such data are desirable in studies of acid-base balance in the organism. Since we have methods for determining total base and total acid excretion, it is seldom necessary to resort to the determination of these individual substances. The reader may consult the following references for methods of determining sodium, potassium, calcium, and magnesium:

Determination of *sodium* and *potassium*: Folin's manual.

Determination of *calcium* and *magnesium*: The method is given in Folin's manual, but the original description was made by McCrudden.<sup>1</sup>

Iron may be determined by the method of Wolter.<sup>2</sup> The description of the method is given by Hawk.

**Iodin** occurs in small quantities. The determination in the urine is sometimes made following administration of iodids.

*Method of Marsh.*<sup>3</sup>—Principle: Total halogen is determined by the Volhard method<sup>4</sup> and in a second sample, after the iodine has been freed from the mixture of halogens by nitrous acid.<sup>5</sup> Procedure: Pipette 50 mls. of urine into an evaporating dish, preferably of nickel. Add 35 mls. of fusion mixture solution<sup>6</sup> and leave on a tripod over a

<sup>1</sup> McCrudden, F. H. (Professor of Applied Therapeutics, Tuft's Medical School, Boston, Mass.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 7, p. 82, and vol. 10, p. 187, 1911.

<sup>2</sup> Wolter, M. (German chemist), Biochem. Zeitschr., vol. 24, p. 103, 1910.

<sup>3</sup> Marsh, H. L. (University of Illinois College of Medicine, Chicago). See Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 8, p. 271, 1923.

<sup>4</sup> Page 776.

<sup>5</sup> See Treadwell-Hall, cited on page 780, p. 331.

<sup>6</sup> Four grams per cent. of NaOH and 20 gs. per cent.  $\text{NaNO}_3$ , aqueous.

low flame until a dry residue is left. Then turn up the flame and fuse. When the blackness of carbon has disappeared, cool, and add 100 mls. of distilled water. Care must be taken throughout that no liquid is lost by spattering. The dish should be kept covered with a large watch-glass. Next a determination for total halogen is made according to the method of Volhard, given on page 776. Fifty mls. of the filtrate, after precipitating the halogens as silver salts and filtering, are used for the determination. Now proceed to the determination of iodine-free solution. Follow the method given above to the completion of the fusion. Then transfer the 100 mls. of solution to a 2-liter flask. Add about 1000 mls. of water. Add 3 mls. of concentrated chloride-free  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and 10 mls. of a special nitrous acid solution.<sup>1</sup> Boil the solution until all the iodine has been evolved. The solution becomes colorless. This takes about half an hour, but may be continued longer. The determination is made by the Volhard method: Add to the cooled solution 110 mls. of decinormal silver nitrate solution in order to prevent the volatilizing of chlorine during the following concentration. Now concentrate the solution to 200 mls.<sup>2</sup> Transfer the residual fluid quantitatively to a 250-ml. volumetric flask and make up to the mark with distilled water. Make Volhard determination as before. Calculation: The iodine quantity is determined by subtracting the data found by the second determination from the amount in the first determination.

*Method of McClendon.*<sup>3</sup>—The principle of this method is a microcolorimetric determination of iodine dissolved in carbon tetrachloride. The method, designed for iodine in water, is applicable to the urine. In the case of albuminuria the protid must be removed.

**Total Base in the Urine.**—In evaluating the acid-base relations of the body it is necessary to know the potential basicity of the substances in the urine. Excellent methods have been suggested for this purpose. Fiske's method is given herewith:

*Method for Fixed Base of Fiske.*<sup>4</sup>—Principle: Conversion of the base into sulphate and the determination of the sulphate by the ben-

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> This process of concentrating may be done in a large evaporating dish, but spattering must be avoided. "Bumping" may occur in the flask.

<sup>3</sup> McClendon, J. F. (University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minn.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 289, 1924.

<sup>4</sup> Fiske, C. H. (Assistant Professor of Biological Chemistry, Harvard Medical School, Boston, Mass.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 51, p. 55, 1922.



zidin method. Procedure: Pipette 5 mls.<sup>1</sup> of urine into a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube of resistance glass, like Pyrex. Add 1 ml. of approximately 4-normal<sup>2</sup> sulphuric acid, 0.5 ml. concentrated nitric acid, and a quartz piece to prevent bumping. Boil over a micro-burner until white fumes<sup>3</sup> appear. The residue in the bottom of the tube should become colorless about this time. In case it does not, let the preparation cool somewhat, then add 4 drops of nitric acid and continue the heating. Remove the flame, let the tube cool for about three minutes, and then carefully wash the contents of the tube into a urea-tube graduated at 25 mls., using not more than 10 mls. of distilled water for the washing. Add a drop of methyl-red indicator solution and then solid ammonium carbonate until the color begins to change. Next add enough 4-normal  $H_2SO_4$ , drop by drop, to restore the pink color. Heat to boiling and, if necessary, again restore the pink color by means of the acid solution. Add about 0.5 ml. of the special ferric chlorid solution<sup>4</sup> and agitate the contents of the tube. Then add 1 ml. of 5 per cent. ammonium acetate solution and enough distilled water to make a total volume of about 10 mls. Heat to boiling, dilute to the mark (25 mls.), using cold distilled water, close the mouth of the tube with a rubber stopper, invert several times, and pour the contents of the tube upon a dry, ashless filter-paper in a small funnel. Collect about 20 mls. of the filtrate in a test-tube. Stopper the tube and hold it under the cold tap until the contents are cool. Transfer 5 mls. of the filtrate to a small evaporating dish.<sup>5</sup> Add 1 ml. of the special 4-normal  $H_2SO_4$  and evaporate on a water-bath until nearly dry. Then lay the dish on a pipe-stem triangle and apply heat from the standard Bunsen burner. Keep the flame low to begin with, raising it gradually, until all the fumes cease to come off.

<sup>1</sup> The amount of urine should be such that not over 0.005 mg. of inorganic phosphate is involved. This may be found by the method given on page 778. If the urine contain more than 5 mgs. of inorganic phosphate per 5 mls., reduce the number of mls. taken for observation. Unless there is a kidney involvement, causing retention of phosphate, it is never necessary to increase the amount of urine used in the determination. On the other hand, if the urine is considerably concentrated, one must use less of it.

<sup>2</sup> This is about 20 per cent. of the desk reagent.

<sup>3</sup> White fumes must be distinguished from those of partly condensed water and other vapors.

<sup>4</sup> Appendix.

<sup>5</sup> Dishes of platinum or platinum substitute are preferable, but those of nickel or of porcelain may be used; Pyrex or Jena glass dishes are desirable.



Remove the flame and let the dish cool. Then sprinkle over the residue in the dish some powdered ammonium carbonate and heat again. Raise the flame to the maximum and continue heating while the dish is red. Each part of the dish must receive this treatment and it is best to move it about the triangle by means of crucible tongs. Then remove the flame and let the dish cool. Add about 2 mls. of water and dissolve the residue, using a "policeman." Wash off the policeman with a few drops of water from your wash bottle. Now wash the contents of the dish quantitatively into a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube of resistance glass, using about 2 mls. of water for each of four washings. Determine the inorganic sulphate content of the test-tube by the benzidin method,<sup>1</sup> using 0.02 normal NaOH for the titration of the benzidin.

Calculation: The number of mls. of 0.02 normal NaOH solution used in the titration less 0.01 (temperature correction) gives the fixed base in terms of decinormal solution for the number of mls. of urine taken. In the above case 5 mls. of urine were taken. The per cent. base then is 20 times the result obtained.

*Total Base May be Determined by Other Methods, Notably by that of Greenwald<sup>2</sup> and that of Sumner.<sup>3</sup>*—The method of Greenwald is based upon the following principle: The bases of the urine are combined with anions like  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{SO}_4^{=}$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4^-$ , and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , and, in the case of bases excreted in albuminuria of nephrosis, with protid.<sup>4</sup> If we add an excess of acid (HA) of the proper kind, in excess of that needed to precipitate anions, any protid is precipitated as a combination with the acid and the bases are salts like BA,  $\text{BH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , etc. Then, if we determine the excess acid remaining after precipitation and also the amount of the anion of the acid that is used in precipitating the protid of the blood, the difference represents the amount of anion of the acid that is used in precipitating the bases of the blood. The excess acid is determined by titrating with an alkali and suitable indicator; the anion of the acid in the present case is picrate, since picric acid is used as the acid-precipitating agent. The amount of picrate is determined by one of two methods: (1) Gravimetric-

<sup>1</sup> Page 781.

<sup>2</sup> Greenwald, I. (page 23), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 54, p. 263, 1922. The method as published is adapted to determinations in blood, but the procedure may readily be adapted to the analysis of the urine.

<sup>3</sup> Sumner, J. B. (page 24).

<sup>4</sup> See page 313 concerning the existence of protid as anion.

ally as nitron picrate<sup>1</sup>; (2) volumetrically, using titanous chlorid,  $\text{TiCl}_3$ .<sup>2</sup>

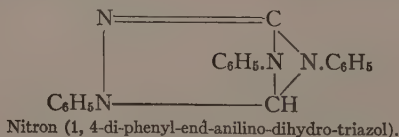
Sumner's method employs di-nitro-salicylic acid<sup>3</sup> in place of picric acid. As in the case of picric acid, dinitrosalicylic acid precipitates the protids. Likewise, it is possible to determine, colorimetrically, the excess dinitrosalicylic acid and the free and combined fraction, thus making it easy to obtain the combined fraction by difference. Dinitrosalicylic acid in the presence of ferric chlorid becomes very red in color. In the procedure given below the amounts of reagents



Fig. 217.—Tyrosin crystals from urine ( $\times 450$ ). (From Todd, Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods.)

are designed for blood bases, but by suitable dilution of the urine the method is applicable directly to that fluid. Procedure: (1) Precipi-

<sup>1</sup> Nitron is a modified pyrrol (see hemoglobin, page 337) compound; strongly basic in nature, but easily split into the original substances when it is made into a salt like nitron picrate. Nitron is:



The nitrate, picrate, etc., are very insoluble, which is a quality of special advantage in this determination.

<sup>2</sup> See Knecht, E., and Hibbert, E. (German and English chemists), *New Reduction Methods in Volumetric Analysis*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1910.

<sup>3</sup> Page 228. The method is published in *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 56, p. 701, 1923.

tation: Two mls. oxalated blood, diluted with 8 mls. water are treated with 10 mls. of the reagent.<sup>1</sup> Filter. (2) Free acid: Heat 5 mls. of the filtrate to boiling; cool; titrate with 0.01 n. alkali (methyl-red in-

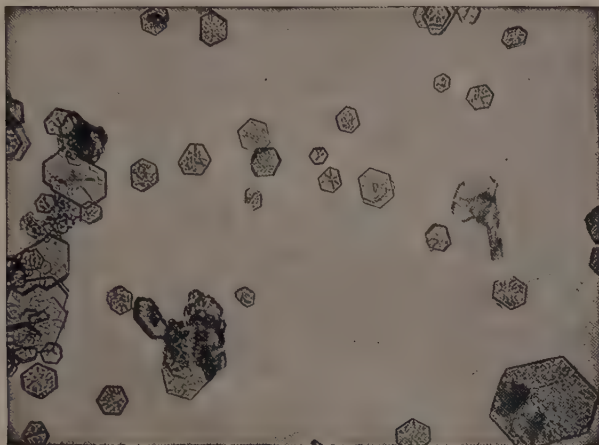


Fig. 218.—Cystin crystals from urine of patient with cystin calculus ( $\times 200$ ).  
(From Todd, Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods.)

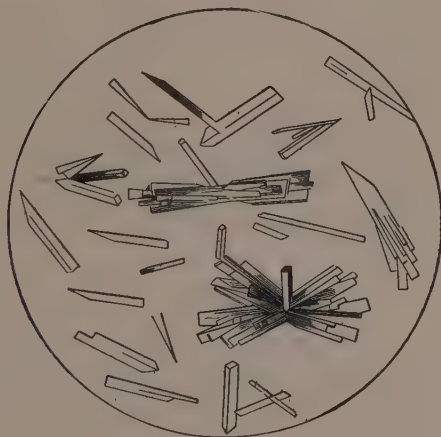


Fig. 219.—Stellar calcium phosphate. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

dicator, then with thymolphthalein indicator). (3) Free and combined acid: Make colorimetric comparison of a solution of 5 mls.

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.



Fig. 220.—Triple phosphate in urine and spheres of ammonium urate. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)



Fig. 221.—Calcium oxalate. (From Holland, Medical Chemistry and Toxicology.)

filtrate treated with 5 mls. 10 per cent. ferric chlorid and made up to 100 mls. with  $H_2O$ , with standard. Calculation:

$$\text{Free + combined acid} = \frac{R_s}{R_u} \times \text{mls. 0.01 normal alkali used to neutralize 0.5 ml. acid.}$$

$$\text{Titration alkali in 0.5 ml. blood expressed as 0.01} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Quantity just determined minus} \\ \text{Mls. 0.01 n alkali neutralizing 5 mls. filtrate to methyl-red indicator.} \end{array} \right.$$

$$\text{Titration alkali in 0.5 mls. blood} \times 20 = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Titration alkali in 100 mls. of blood expressed as decinormal.} \end{array} \right.$$

## SUMMARY

1. The urine is one of the means of excretion.
2. It is the chief and, for practical purposes, the sole excretory avenue for nitrogenous end-products.
3. For this reason the study of the quantitative excretion of such substances in the urine is of great importance in discussions of metabolism.
4. Although in a given individual under controlled conditions the excretion of substances in the urine is fairly uniform, yet it varies with different physiological and pathological states.
5. Methods have been described by which accurate determinations of minute amounts of the various substances excreted in the urine may be made.
6. The methods outlined in this chapter will be used in the Practical Exercises in Chapter XVII.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

Throughout this Chapter references have been made to special books and pamphlets. The more general publications on urinary excretion listed below serve to supplement the discussions just completed:

- Barger, G. *The Simpler Natural Bases*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1914.
- Beaumont, G. E., and Dodds, E. C. (Middlesex Hospital, London, England). *Recent Advances in Medicine*, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1925.
- Cole, S. R. *Practical Physiological Chemistry*, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins (American edition), 1925.
- Cushny, A. R. *The Secretion of the Urine*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1917.
- Folin, O. *Laboratory Manual of Biological Chemistry*, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 4th ed., 1925.
- Hawk, P. B. *Practical Physiological Chemistry*, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1923.
- Jones, W. *The Nucleic Acids*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1925.
- Macleod, J. J. R. *Physiology and Biochemistry in Modern Medicine*, St. Louis, Missouri, C. V. Mosby & Co., 4th ed., 1923.
- Neuberg, C. *Der Harn*. Jena, Gustav Fischer, 2 volumes, 1913.
- Plimmer, R. H. A. *Practical Organic and Biochemistry*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 4th ed., 1923.
- Rose, W. C. *Purin Metabolism*, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 3, p. 544, 1923.
- Sherwin, C. P. *The Fate of Foreign Organic Compounds in the Animal Body*, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 238, 1922.
- Underhill, F. P. *Manual of Selected Biochemical Methods*, New York, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1921.
- Webster, R. W. *Diagnostic Methods*, Philadelphia, F. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1923.
- Werner, E. A. *Urea*, New York, Longmans, Green & Co., 1923.



## CHAPTER XVI

### METHODS FOR THE DETERMINATION OF BLOOD CONSTITUENTS

"Accurate data on the chemical composition of the blood are primarily the result of American observations with American methods."—*Myers*, *Practical Chemical Analysis of the Blood*.

IN Chapter VII we discussed the blood as a tissue. In the present Chapter we shall consider it as an avenue of transportation for materials passing from the receiving system, the alimentary tract, to the consumers, the tissues, and for waste-matters passing from them to the discharging system, the kidneys. In this instance we shall be less interested in what the blood is than in what transport material it contains.

In clinical diagnosis the data obtained from accurate studies of the urine have been of great value. However, it is difficult to collect urine with the accuracy essential to critical determinations; the volume varies considerably from hour to hour and dependable data can be obtained only when urine is collected accurately over prolonged periods, the standard interval being twenty-four hours. For such reasons,

if for no other (and there are many more), the study of blood is greatly to be preferred. Blood is readily obtained at any period desired; its physical characteristics do not vary as widely as those of the urine; and variations in the blood constituents are far more characteristic of physiological and pathological states than those of urine.



Fig. 222.—Victor C. Myers, Professor of Biochemistry, University of Iowa, Iowa City. Contributor to the chemistry and metabolism of urinary and blood constituents.

In general, 10 mls. of blood is ample from which to ascertain a variety of data, organic and inorganic, as well as gaseous materials such as oxygen and carbon dioxid. This amount of blood is obtained by venous puncture with a hypodermic needle, without discomfort to the patient. In the young the blood is taken from the heel or from the superior longitudinal sinus. The procedure is routinely used in clinical diagnosis. The layman is apt to think that this entails risk of infection, or of causing the formation of clots, which act as emboli,



Fig. 223.—Vacuum tube used for the collection of blood for analysis. The small test-tube above fits over the sterile hypodermic needle which is attached to the bulb by means of a rubber tube. The bulb is exhausted. When ready for use, remove the test-tube, insert the needle into the blood-vessel, break the glass tube passing through the rubber tube, and the blood will flow into the bulb.

but such is not the case. The author has known, personally, of thousands of venipunctures, and in no case has there been any unfavorable development attributable to taking the sample.<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, in many of these cases, the subject has been saved from prolonged

<sup>1</sup> The only two instances that may have fallen under this category were (1) an air embolism in the immediate region of the puncture, made by careless operator, and (2) extensive extravasation in a case of an hemophiliac. One patient was punctured for over forty times and no more evidence of the operation after the last puncture was seen than would have followed the single insertion of the needle.

illness or even from death by the diagnosis made possible by blood analysis.

Wholly aside from the practical usefulness of blood chemistry, it is a boon to the sciences of physiology, pharmacology, and biochemistry, for without the accurate knowledge of the substances in the blood-



Fig. 224.—Methods for securing blood by puncture of a vein. The middle figure shows distention of the veins of the arm about the elbow. The needle is entered by a quick upward thrust. Practically any prominent and firm vein may be used. The upper left-hand figure shows collection of blood in a test-tube. Usually 10 mls. or more are easily collected before clotting occurs. The lower right-hand figure shows collection of blood in a Keidel vacuum tube. (From Kolmer, *Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy*.)

stream, an understanding of many events in these departments would be impossible.

The following pages are devoted to the presentation of methods of blood analysis and the interpretation and clinical application of the findings.

## NON-PROTID NITROGEN

The blood, like all tissues, contains protid, but, with the exception of certain instances to be discussed, the content of protid in the blood is of little or no significance either in pure biochemical studies or in clinical diagnosis. Consequently, the protids of the blood are rejected before determinations of the various constituents, organic or inorganic, are made. Whole blood is rarely used in the analyses. When protid has been removed from the blood the sum total of the nitrogen derived from the remaining nitrogenous substances as determined from the filtrate is spoken of as non-protid nitrogen. We cannot say, however, that non-protid nitrogen is the sum of the nitrogen belonging to the known substances like urea, etc., for experiments



Fig. 225.—Folin's digestion tube for total nitrogen determinations (non-protid nitrogen), blood urea, etc.

have shown that there is some nitrogen which belongs to substances of unknown nature. We may, therefore, more accurately define non-protid nitrogen as the total nitrogen of the blood less that of the protids. The total nitrogen of the blood is about 2.5 gs. per 100 mls. of whole blood. The non-protid nitrogen is about 1 per cent. of that amount, or 25 mgs. per 100 mls. of blood.<sup>1</sup> The undetermined nitrogen makes up about 3.6 per cent. of the non-protid nitrogen. The undetermined nitrogen is believed by Folin to be simple protids, histons. It is present to greater extent in corpuscles and in plasma, and there-

<sup>1</sup> In Benedict's laboratory normal non-protid nitrogen is found to be 28 to 35 mgs. per 100 mls. blood. See also Berglund, H., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 79, p. 1375, 1922. For the average normal non-protid nitrogen figure adopted in the author's laboratory see back cover of this book.

fore appears only when the corpuscles are hemolyzed. The plasma of the blood is of the nature of intercellular material, and one would naturally expect to find a greater quantity of nitrogen in the actively

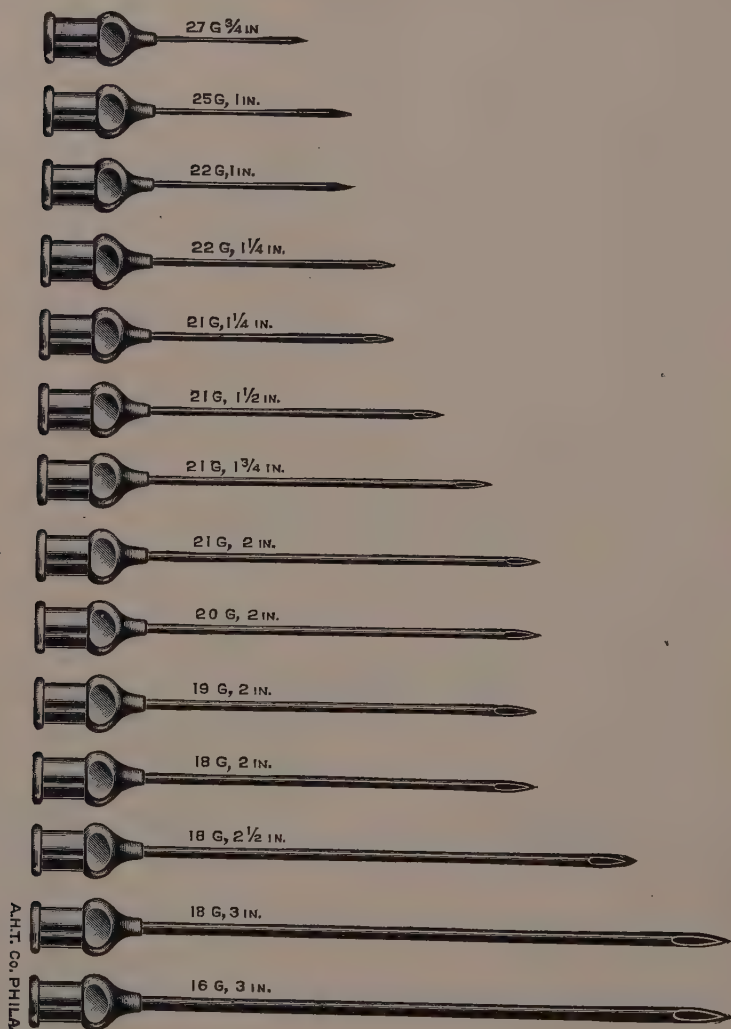


Fig. 226.—Sizes and shapes of hypodermic needles used in biochemical work. For the proper shape of the point see Fig. 232. Natural size.

metabolizing corpuscles of the blood than in the passive plasma. When the plasma and the corpuscles are analyzed separately for nitrogenous substances this is found to be true.



Total N. P. N. <sup>1</sup> in 100 gs. of plasma.....	Mgs. 24.7
Total N. P. N. in 100 mls. of corpuscles.....	43.6 <sup>2</sup>

The non-protid nitrogen varies physiologically<sup>3</sup>:

### 1. Diet:

Fasting.....	Mgs. 32.1
Glucid diet <sup>4</sup> .....	21.0
Low protid diet.....	32.0
High protid diet <sup>5</sup> .....	34.0

### 2. Time of day respecting meals:

Control, from carotid artery before injecting.....	Mgs. 35 <sup>6</sup>
80 minutes after injecting 5 gs. glycin into vein.....	130
Before injecting asparagin.....	43
22 minutes after injecting 10 gs. asparagin; blood sample from jugular vein.....	49
24 minutes after injecting the asparagin; blood sample from portal.....	69
47 minutes after injecting the asparagin; blood from carotid....	52
120 minutes after injecting the asparagin; carotid.....	62
123 minutes after injecting the asparagin; portal.....	70
129 minutes after injecting the asparagin; mesentery.....	62
132 minutes after injecting the asparagin; inferior vena cava...	62

3. Source of specimen: The difference in concentration of non-protid nitrogen in blood taken at different places in the body after meals is seen in the foregoing table 2, above, for, although the food (glycin and asparagin) was introduced intravenously and not through the usual channel, the mouth, the result is the same. However, during fasting there is a uniform distribution of non-protid nitrogen:

N. P. N. portal blood.....	Mgs. 40 <sup>7</sup>
N. P. N. of carotid.....	38

<sup>1</sup> The abbreviation "N. P. N." stands for non-protid nitrogen.

<sup>2</sup> After Folin, O., Non-protein Nitrogen of Blood in Health and Disease, *Physiol. Revs.*, vol. 2, p. 460, 1922. The table is given as a whole on page 464 of Folin's article and is reproduced in the present book on pages 795-798.

<sup>3</sup> Gettler, A. O., and Baker, W., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 25, p. 211, 1916.

<sup>4</sup> Glucids probably act in this case as protid sparsers. There is less mobilization of nitrogen in the blood. For protid-sparing action see page 555.

<sup>5</sup> This diet consisted of nearly twice the amount of protid normally eaten by the average man.

<sup>6</sup> The data were taken from Fiske, C. H., and Sumner, J. B., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 18, p. 285, 1914.

<sup>7</sup> Folin, O., and Denis, W., *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 11, p. 87, 1912.

4. Exercise, rest, and other physiological states do not produce characteristic changes in the N. P. N. of the blood.

*The non-protid nitrogen varies in pathological states:*

Normal or subnormal:

Pregnancy:	Mgs.
Case 1.....	25
Case 2.....	24
Case 3.....	22
Eclampsia, after convulsions:	
Case 1.....	26
Case 2.....	27
Case 3.....	23 <sup>1</sup>
Prostate obstruction <sup>1</sup> :	
Case 1.....	20
Case 2.....	22
Case 3.....	24
Diabetes mellitus:	
Case 1.....	24
Case 2.....	24
Case 3.....	26
Cancer, uterine, very malignant <sup>2</sup> .....	22.4
Breast, rapid growth, male.....	22.4
Mouth, long duration, advanced.....	28.0
Sarcoma, prostate.....	23.8

#### Above normal (retention):

Incipient nephritis:	Mgs.
Case 1.....	29.5
Case 2.....	32.3
Case 3.....	34.3
Nephrosis:	
Case 1.....	27.5
Case 2.....	28.3
Case 3.....	33.2
Arteriosclerosis affecting kidney:	
Case 1.....	36.6
Case 2.....	39.1
Case 3.....	40.0
Cancer (deep):	
Case 1.....	32.0
Case 2.....	41.0
Case 3.....	37.8

<sup>1</sup> These figures may be higher in some cases.

<sup>2</sup> Theis, R. C., and Stone, W. S. (Cornell University Medical College, New York, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 4, p. 349, 1919.

Gout, during attack:

Case 1..... 34.2

Case 2..... 25.5<sup>1</sup>

Nephritis, terminal..... 100 to 300

Anuria in bichlorid poisoning..... 400<sup>2</sup>

Anuria of prostate..... 22 to 120

Prostate obstruction, after prostatectomy..... 40 to 60

Intestinal obstruction, peritonitis, etc..... 50 to 60<sup>3</sup>

The manner in which the components of the N. P. N. vary in disease is shown in the following table (after Berglund)<sup>4</sup>:

	Whole blood.					
	Amino-acid.	Urea.	Creatinin.	Uric acid.	Undetermined.	Non-protid.
Case 1.....	5.0	13	1.8	3.7	19.0	39
Case 2.....	6.4	49	2.0	4.5	7.4	65
Case 3.....	4.5	49	3.0	4.7	22.0	78
Case 4.....	5.8	60	7.7	4.8	37.0	107
Case 5.....	7.6	91	7.2	6.4	41.0	144
Case 6.....	8.4	174	12.9	13.6	75.0	267
Case 7.....	7.3	193	16.0	12.0	48.0	258

*The retention of various substances making up the N. P. N. is fairly uniform.* The variations between whole blood and plasma may be seen by comparing the table just given with the following, which is based upon the same cases:

	Amino-acid.	Urea.	Creatinin.	Uric acid.	Undetermined.	N. P. N.
Case 1.....	4.3	13	1.8	3.7	20	39
Case 2.....	5.8	47	2.3	6.4	18	74
Case 3.....	3.5	52	3.0	6.1	18	77
Case 4.....	5.4	71	8.1	6.8	21	103
Case 5.....	6.2	109	8.1	9.3	23	144
Case 6.....	7.5	214	14.5	18.4	52	285
Case 7.....	7.3	234	19.2	21.0	51	306

When the corpuscles were analyzed for these various components, by washing the cells after centrifuging and decanting the super-

<sup>1</sup> Plasma, not whole blood; figures from Folin, O., et al., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 361, 1924. They approximate those for whole blood (see Berglund, H., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 79, p. 1375, 1922).

<sup>2</sup> Case in Jefferson Hospital, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Probably due to proteose toxicity, the proteose being absorbed from the intestine into the blood. See Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 84, p. 122, 1925.

<sup>4</sup> Berglund, H. (Department of Medicine, Harvard University), see page 793.

natant plasma and then hemolyzing them, the following data were obtained:

	NH <sub>3</sub> .	Urea.	Creatinin.	Uric acid.	Undetermined N.	N. P. N.	Number of mls. of cells per 100 mls. of whole blood.
Case 1...	5.9 <sup>1</sup>	13	1.8	3.7	18	39	45
Case 2...	7.2	52	1.5	1.6	...	51	50
Case 3...	7.4	41	3.0	0.9	31	81	27
Case 4...	7.2	26	6.5	...	86	122	23
Case 5...	11.8	38	4.4	...	93	144	25
Case 6...	9.7	113	10.5	6.1	109	238	39
Case 7...	7.3	138	11.7	...	43	193	42

### Methods for Determining the Non-protid Nitrogen of Blood.—

*Direct Nesslerization Method of Folin.*<sup>1</sup>—Preparation of the non-protid solution. In order to obtain the protid-free solution for analysis, the following procedure is recommended by Folin: Principle: Blood is collected in tubes provided with an oxalate as anticoagulant.<sup>2</sup> The best proportion of oxalate to blood is 20 mgs. of potassium<sup>3</sup> oxalate for the usual amount of blood drawn for analysis, namely, 10 mls.<sup>4</sup> Then the blood is hemolyzed if the determination is to be made on whole blood; this is done by adding a hypotonic solution (water), which causes the osmotic pressure within the corpuscles to become greater than the tension of the cell walls, with the result that the corpuscles become disrupted, freeing to the liquid any nitrogenous substances that the cell may contain. The protid (stroma of the corpuscles, plasma albumin, and globulin, etc.) is then coagulated by means of tungstic acid (sodium tungstate in the presence of sulphuric acid) and the solution is then filtered. The determinations are made upon the clear, protid-free filtrate.

<sup>1</sup> The methods of Folin described in these pages were originally published in the Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 38, 1919, and later. The work was accomplished in conjunction with H. Wu (Pekin-Union Medical School, Pekin, China). Some of the methods have been modified by Folin and Wu and by others in minor details. For frequent additions, alterations, and supplements the journals must be referred to, as well as Folin's Laboratory Manual, 4th ed., 1925.

<sup>2</sup> The oxalate forms calcium oxalate, which is insoluble. When calcium is not present in coagulating fluids, like blood and milk, the protid, although it may be in a changed condition, only becomes precipitated when it is converted into an insoluble salt. Calcium performs this function. By removing Ca the blood does not coagulate.

<sup>3</sup> Folin advocates the use of lithium oxalate, because potassium salts produce undesirable precipitates, especially with the reagent used in the determination of uric acid.

<sup>4</sup> Excessive amounts of oxalate interfere with the proper filtering of the blood after adding the coagulating reagent and the uric acid determination is less dependable. See page 65.

Procedure: Transfer 10 mls. of the blood from the test-tube in which it was collected to a small Erlenmeyer flask. Add 70 mls. of distilled water from a cylinder. Mix thoroughly. Then add from a cylinder 10 mls. of the reagent<sup>1</sup> sodium tungstate. Nearly fill your 15-ml. pipette with the special sulphuric acid reagent and add 10 mls. slowly to the contents of the flask while gently agitating the contents. Stopper the flask and continue the mixing. The solution is proper for filtering if only a slight amount of foam has formed and if the color of the solution becomes chocolate brown.<sup>2</sup> Place a funnel that has a capacity of about 120 mls.<sup>3</sup> in your rack. Provide the funnel with a dry paper, wetted after it is in place, with a few mls. of the solution. Then pour the whole of the well-mixed solution upon the paper. The filtrate must be crystal clear. If it is not, pour the filtrate upon the residue in the funnel and rinse the receiving vessel; or better, use another vessel which is dry. When enough filtrate has passed proceed to the determination. If the filtrate is not to be used until a following period, add a small amount of sodium fluorid as a bactericidal agent.

*The Determination of the Non-protid Nitrogen.*—Principle: The analysis is made by a modified Kjeldahl process. Procedure: Pipette 5 mls. of the filtrate obtained by the above method into a 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube. The tube should be dry. If it has been recently used, wash with water, drain, and then rinse with alcohol. Add 1 ml. of the special acid mixture and a "bumping-piece," a quartz pebble or a piece of broken Pyrex tube. Hold the test-tube over a micro-burner until white fumes appear. Then cover the mouth of the tube with an inverted porcelain crucible cover and continue heating with a reduced flame. Note the appearance of the charring in the boiling liquid in the bottom of the tube. Continue the almost imperceptible boiling until the brownish-black color gives place to a yellowish-green, and this, in turn, to a clear green. Usually about two minutes elapse between the appearance of the white fumes and the completion of oxidation. Next permit the tube to cool for about one minute and a

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Failure of the coagulum to answer these two requirements is ordinarily due to excessive amounts of tungstate. In such cases carefully add, with gentle shaking, 10 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  solution, drop by drop, until the foam disappears and the color assumes the proper shade. If this does not occur promptly, the preparation should be rejected and a new one made.

<sup>3</sup> An ordinary 60-degree glass funnel having a long stem and capacity of about 100 mls. should be used.



half. Add slowly<sup>1</sup> from your wash-bottle water to make the total volume about 25 mls. Transfer the contents of the tube to a 50-ml. volumetric cylinder<sup>2</sup>; make up the volume to 35 mls. with distilled water and to 50 mls. with the special Nessler solution. Stopper the cylinder, or tube, and invert several times in order to mix the contents. The mixed solution must be clear. If it become murky, mix well and transfer some to a 15-ml. centrifuge tube and centrifuge. Use the supernatant liquid to half fill the cup. To the other cup add a similar amount of the standard solution made by the following method: Pipette three 1-ml. portions of the special ammonium sulphate solution into a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Add 2 mls. of the acid mixture used in the oxidation of the unknown and dilute with water to about 60 mls. Then add 30 mls. of the Nessler solution at the same time that you add Nessler solution to the unknown. Make up to 100 mls. with distilled water. Stopper the flask, invert, mix, and transfer enough to the second cup of the colorimeter to make the cup half full. Compare the color of the two solutions in the colorimeter, setting the standard (left) at 20 mls.

Calculation:

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.3 \text{ mg.})^3}$$

Then:

$$nx = 6$$

and

$$x = \frac{6}{n} \text{ mgs. of nitrogen in 5 mls. of 1:10 solution.}^4$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{60}{n} \text{ mgs. in 5 mls. whole blood.}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{1200}{n} \text{ mgs. for 100 mls. of whole blood,}^5 \text{ that is, per cent.}$$

<sup>1</sup> If cold water is added quickly to the hot acid, some of the contents of the tube may be lost, owing to the sputtering when the two liquids are mixed.

<sup>2</sup> If a special Folin digestion tube (Fig. 225) is available, the whole procedure may be carried on in it. The tube is marked at 35 mls.

<sup>3</sup> Three-tenths of a milligram, since the standard solution of ammonium sulphate is so made that each 10 mls. contain 1 mg. of nitrogen and each ml., 0.1 mg. nitrogen. Three mls. of this solution (containing 0.3 mg. of nitrogen) are diluted to 100 mls.; this solution is used to match the unknown.

<sup>4</sup> Five mls. of whole blood were made up to 50 mls. during the process of precipitation of the protids. Five mls. of the filtrate were taken for the determination of N. P. N.

<sup>5</sup> That is, there are twenty 5-ml. amounts in 100 mls. of blood;  $20 \times 60 = 1200$ .

*Other Procedures for N. P. N.*—The method given above may be modified by titrating, as in the *standard Kjeldahl method*<sup>1</sup>: After obtaining the clear solution at the end of boiling, proceed as follows: Cool, dilute with about 7 mls. of water, and insert into the mouth of the tube a stopper carrying a long tube provided with a piece of rubber tubing and a clamp (Fig. 47<sup>2</sup>) and a short delivery tube for attaching to a small condenser. Three mls. of 50 per cent. NaOH solution have been sucked up into the long tube and held by the clamp. Place 2 mls. of decinormal hydrochloric acid in a 100-ml. volumetric flask and see that the delivery tube from the condenser dips beneath the surface of the acid solution. When all attachments have been made open the clamp and permit alkali to neutralize the acid in the test-tube. Now heat the bottom of the tube freely in a flame to cause vigorous boiling. Discontinue when a residue of salts appears in the bottom of the tube and "bumping" occurs. Disconnect the condenser, wash off the drops of HCl from the delivery tube dipping into the volumetric flask, and titrate the contents against 0.1 normal NaOH solution as in the Kjeldahl method.<sup>3</sup>

If one desires to obtain all amino- and peptid-nitrogen, the trichloroacetic method of precipitation of the protids recommended by Greenwald<sup>4</sup> may be used with the above procedure of Benedict, or with that suggested by Myers.<sup>5</sup>

*Non-protid Nitrogen by Myers' Method (Somewhat Modified).*—Pipette into a 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube 3 mls. of whole blood, obtained from a vein and prevented from coagulating by the method given for the Folin procedure. Add 15 mls. of distilled water and enough 5 per cent. trichloroacetic acid to make a total volume of 30 mls.; this gives a 1 : 10 solution (note for the purpose of calculation). Stopper the tube and mix. Let stand half an hour. Filter through a dry paper moistened with some of the liquid. Rinse out the test-tube and use it to receive the filtrate. Pipette 10 mls. of the filtrate

<sup>1</sup> Page 286. The procedure given here is recommended by Benedict. See Bock, J. C. (Marquette University, Milwaukee, Wisconsin), and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 20, p. 47, 1915.

<sup>2</sup> For the present purpose the apparatus, as shown in the figure, is inverted.

<sup>3</sup> The use of a volumetric flask for receiving the distillate is unnecessary, if one does not care to use the Benedict procedure for Nesslerization as in the Folin method given above (page 798). Benedict has recommended the above procedure as giving more accurate results.

<sup>4</sup> Greenwald, I., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 21, p. 61, 1915.

<sup>5</sup> Myers, page 43.

into a thin-walled test-tube of such a size that it can be slipped into a 100-ml. volumetric cylinder. The cylinder carries a short tube that dips just beneath the two-hole rubber stopper fitting the cylinder and a second, longer one which passes through the other hole in the stopper to the bottom of the test-tube within the cylinder. Oxidize the substances in the filtrate in the test-tube according to the principle of the Kjeldahl method: Add to the test-tube about 0.2 g. potassium sulphate crystals, 2 drops of 10 per cent.  $\text{CuSO}_4$  solution, and about 0.5 ml. of concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Boil the mixture over a microburner as in the Folin method. Continue boiling two minutes after the solution

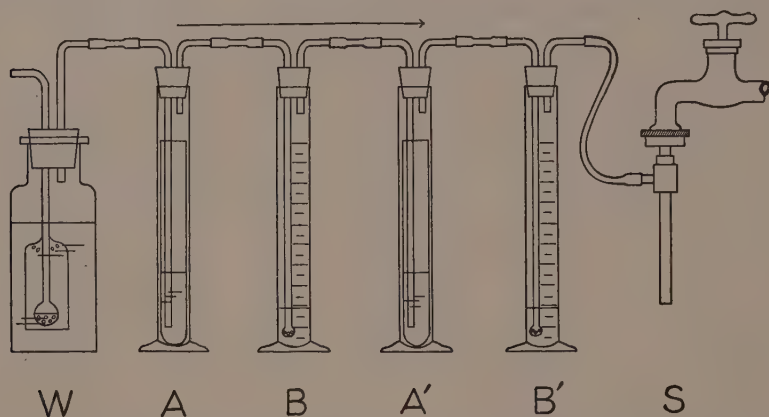


Fig. 227.—Aération apparatus for estimation of urea and ammonia: W, Bottle containing dilute sulphuric acid to remove ammonia from the air which passes through the apparatus, A, A', cylinders in which the test fluid is placed; B, B', cylinders with decinormal acid to receive the ammonia; S, suction. The arrow flies with the air current. Method of Victor Myers, see page 19. (From Todd, *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Methods*.)

has passed through the charring stage and has become clear green. Let the tube stand for the purpose of cooling for about two minutes and dilute the contents with 6 mls. of distilled water. Lower the test-tube into the second of a series of two volumetric cylinders (Fig. 227), and in the first one place 15 mls. of distilled water and 2 mls. of 0.1 normal  $\text{HCl}$  solution. Affix to the cylinder containing the unknown solution a wash-bottle<sup>1</sup> containing not less than 150 to 200 mls. of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid in order to remove the ammonia

<sup>1</sup> Benedict has shown that a large volume of acid must be used in any aspiration method in order to catch all the ammonia introduced from the air which the pump aspirates through the system of cylinders. See the reference to Bock and Benedict, page 801.

existing in the air that passes through the system. The wash-bottle should contain an indicator, like Congo-red, to show when the acid becomes neutralized by the ammonia from the air. When all is connected up, remove the rubber tubing from the longer tube in the second cylinder and introduce by means of a pipette 3 mls. of 50 per cent. NaOH solution to neutralize the acid in the test-tube. Replace the tubing and start a current of air, at first slowly and then as rapidly as possible, without any risk of drawing one solution into another. Continue aspirating for half an hour. While the current of air is still passing through the apparatus, carefully disconnect the tubing between the cylinders, thus avoiding any back-flow.

*Titration or Nesslerization May Be Used.*—The latter process is as follows: Pipette into a 100-ml. volumetric flask 5 mls. of the standard ammonium sulphate solution, equivalent to introducing 1 mg. of nitrogen. Dilute to about 60 mls. with distilled water. Add 20 mls. of the special, diluted Bock-Benedict Nessler solution (Appendix). Now turn your attention to the Nesslerization of the unknown in the test-tube: Add 8 mls. of the diluted Nessler solution to the contents of the test-tube and make up the volume to 25 mls., transferring the liquid to a cylinder if necessary. Dilute the standard solution to the mark, stopper, mix, and transfer some of the liquid to the standard (left) cup of the colorimeter.<sup>1</sup> Transfer, also, some of the unknown solution to the right-hand cup (or to the cylindrical one, C, of the Bock-Benedict colorimeter), and compare the colors.

Calculation<sup>2</sup>:

$$\frac{R_s}{R_u} = \frac{D_u}{100} \times 1 \times 100 \text{ mg. gives the mgs. N. P. N. in 100 mls. of blood, where}$$

$R_s$  is the reading of the standard.

$R_u$  is that of the unknown.

$D_u$  is the dilution of the unknown.

100 is the dilution of the standard.

1 is the number of mgs. in the standard.

100 is necessary for the conversion to mgs. per ml.

## UREA

Urea nitrogen represents about one-half of the non-protid nitrogen of normal blood. The proportion varies in disease, as may be seen by consulting page 797. It varies with the intake of nitrogen in the

<sup>1</sup> If the Bock-Benedict colorimeter is used (Fig. 235), the standard goes into the cup provided for that purpose. See Bock, J. C., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 35, p. 227, 1918. The standard cup is situated between the mirrors.

<sup>2</sup> For the Dubosq type of colorimeter.



foods. The average normal urea concentration in human blood is 12 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood 1.5 to two hours after a meal. On a diet high in protid the content of urea nitrogen is high. It is low during fasting for short periods, but rises after prolonged starvation. Folin gives the normal ranges of blood urea nitrogen as 8 to 15 mgs., the latter figure being found only on exceptionally high protid diets. The change from a low to a higher blood urea nitrogen level, or vice versa, owing to changes in diet, is not immediate. Days may elapse before the change in the blood becomes evident. The following table shows the effect upon urea nitrogen of introducing urea into the intestine (after Folin):

	Mgs.
Urea nitrogen absorbed from the intestine.....	1436
Portal blood urea nitrogen before injection.....	23
Carotid blood urea nitrogen before injection.....	23
Portal blood urea nitrogen after injection.....	154
Carotid blood urea nitrogen after injection.....	92

The distribution of urea nitrogen in blood throughout the body during rest periods is uniform, but two or three minutes after meals there is a rise, at first in the portal system, which carries the absorbed urea from the intestines to the liver, and thence through the body. Within half an hour the urea nitrogen in carotid blood increases to not more than eleven times normal.

In *pathological states* urea shows prompt response to any renal lesion. From the table on page 806 it may be seen that the increase in urea nitrogen is proportionately greater than in any other constituent of the N. P. N. It is for this reason that attempts have been made to make a quantitative relation between blood and urinary urea and certain factors that vary with individuals. Ambard<sup>1</sup> suggested a formula involving the ratio: Blood urea to urine urea, modified by the weight of the subject. The formula is based on the assumption that the rate of excretion of urea varies as the square of blood urea and also that excretion of urea depends upon the number of grams per unit volume, regardless of volume of urine. Equation of Ambard is:

$$\text{Coefficient} = \frac{\text{Gs. urea per 1000 mls. blood}}{\sqrt{\text{Gs. urea per 24 hrs.} \times \frac{70}{\text{Body weight}}} \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{Gs. urea per 1000 mls. urine}}{25}}}$$

70 being average normal body weight and 25 average normal twenty-four-hour excretion of urea (dry).

<sup>1</sup> Ambard, L. (University of Paris). See *Physiologie Normale et Pathologique des Reins*, Paris, Masson et C<sup>ie</sup>, 2d ed., 1920.



The normal coefficient is 0.08. McLean<sup>1</sup> used this coefficient as 100 per cent. as a standard expressing the degree of urea retention caused by inefficiency of the kidney. Van Slyke and his colleagues found that the rate of excretion varies in a linear way, that is, as the first power of blood-urea and as the square root of the volume of urine<sup>2</sup>:

$$C = \frac{\text{Grams of urea excreted per twenty-four hours}}{\text{Blood urea per liter} \sqrt{\text{Urine volume per twenty-four hours} \times \text{kilos body weight}}}$$

The coefficient normally is  $C = 7.5 \pm 3$ . The coefficient becomes less during retention.

For ready calculation the firm of Keuffel and Esser provides a special Mannheim type slide-rule (Fig. 228), with gauge-points.



Fig. 228.—The McLean calculating rule for urea concentration. By simple manipulation the McLean Index is read. (Kindness of the Keuffel and Esser Co., Hoboken, N. J., who supply both rule and directions for its use.) The rule is adapted to many biochemical calculations.

Concerning these attempts at quantitative expressions, Folin says: "The idea of the existence of such a constant certainly breaks down when it is extended so as to account for the rate of excretion of all waste products." Myers says it "affords a basis for detecting the abnormalities in urea excretion, but not for interpreting the significance of such abnormalities, since it was largely physiological in its nature."

The following Table gives the *characteristic variations of blood urea nitrogen in different pathological states*:

Normal or low: As in the case of N. P. N. Especially in nephrosis, 13 mgs. per cent.

High: Also as in the case of N. P. N. In addition: Urea represents the second step of Myers' "staircase,"<sup>3</sup> by which is meant that renal lesions first affect excretion of uric acid, then of urea, and finally of creatinin (Table, page 806):

<sup>1</sup> McLean, F. C., and Selling, L.: Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 19, p. 31, 1914.

<sup>2</sup> Up to a certain limit. In diabetes, in which there is an excretion of several liters of urine, the results become irregular.

<sup>3</sup> See Chase, A. F., and Myers, V. C., Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 67, p. 929, 1916.

TABLE SHOWING THE "STAIRCASE" OF MYERS

	Mgs. per 100 mls. blood:		
	Uric acid.	Urea N.	Creatinin.
Tuberculosis, pulmonary.....	6.5	16	2.7
Pericarditis.....	5.6	13	2.1
Interstitial nephritis.....	5.5	12	2.5
Diffuse nephritis.....	9.6	19	2.4
Early interstitial nephritis.....	9.5	25	2.5
Early interstitial nephritis.....	6.6	24	3.3
Early interstitial nephritis.....	8.7	20	3.6
Early interstitial nephritis.....	6.3	31	2.0
Chronic interstitial nephritis.....	8.0	80	4.8
Chronic diffuse nephritis.....	8.3	72	3.2
Chronic diffuse nephritis.....	9.5	44	3.5
Chronic interstitial nephritis (fatal).....	22.4	236	16.7
Chronic interstitial nephritis (fatal).....	15.0	240	20.5
Chronic interstitial nephritis (fatal).....	14.3	263	22.2
Chronic interstitial nephritis (fatal).....	8.7	144	11.0

**Methods for the Quantitative Determination of Blood-urea Nitrogen.**—Urease is the basis of the modern methods for the determination of urea in blood. Nevertheless, the warning of Folin must be heeded: "The determination is unfortunately by no means so dependable as one may seem to think." The enzyme employed is exceedingly sensitive, is occasionally more or less completely inactivated, and yields values that are too low." In other words, properly controlled conditions are essential to accurate results; under such conditions the findings are most valuable.

*Method of Folin.*—Principle: The blood protids are precipitated by the method given under non-protid nitrogen. A measured portion of the filtrate is then treated with urease and the ammonia formed in the reaction is distilled into standard acid as in the Kjeldahl method. After Nesslerization of the distillate color comparison is made, as in the N. P. N. method.

Procedure: Using a clean<sup>1</sup> 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube, place 5 mls. of the filtrate obtained by the blood-precipitation method, given under non-protid nitrogen (page 799), in it, add 1 ml. of the special urease solution<sup>2</sup> and 2 drops of the special buffer mixture.<sup>2</sup> Leave the tube in a water-bath at not over 55° C. for five minutes, or, if the room temperature is above 20° C., the tube may be left for not less than fif-

<sup>1</sup> If the tube has been used for Nesslerizations, it must be cleaned with concentrated HNO<sub>3</sub>, then thoroughly washed with tap-water, and finally with distilled water. Nessler's solution, owing to the mercury it contains, is a poison to the enzyme, urease.

<sup>2</sup> Appendix.

teen minutes in the test-tube rack. Then proceed to the distillation: Place 2 mls. of 0.05 normal HCl solution in another test-tube<sup>1</sup> and introduce into it a cork through which a long piece of glass tubing, bent into a wide  $\cap$  is pushed (Fig. 229) to serve as delivery tube to the second test-tube. To the first test-tube, add a boiling-piece (quartz pebble), 1 drop of foam-preventing agent (paraffin oil; albolene) and 2 mls. of a 10 per cent. solution of borax; then insert the stoppers. Apply heat gently, but continuously,<sup>2</sup> to the bottom of the distilling tube for four minutes. Then slightly withdraw the receiving tube,

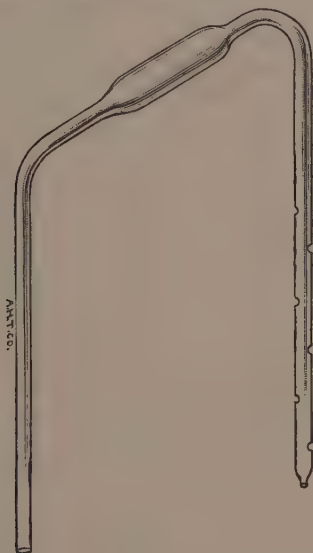


Fig. 229.—Watson and White modification of the Folin-Wu connecting tube for urea determinations. The apparatus is designed to avoid frothing and back-suction during distillation of the ammonia. See Watson, T., and White, H. L. (Univ. Southern Cal., Los Angeles), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 45, p. 465, 1921.

and leave it in this position while distillation progresses for another minute. With a stream of water from your wash-bottle wash

<sup>1</sup> One may obtain on the market special Folin urea receiving tubes graduated at 25 mls. The tube of Nash (Fig. 233) may also be used. Or an ordinary tube may be marked with glass-marking pencil to indicate this volume.

<sup>2</sup> The beginner will experience much difficulty in that the small variations in the flame used to cause distillation will permit back-suction of the contents of the receiving tube. In order to avoid this difficulty it is best to provide classes of students with the apparatus shown in Fig. 229; or one may use ungraduated 5-ml. pipettes, the bulb serving as a safety device. A mica chimney for the microburner reduces the variations in the flame (Fig. 234).

the lower end of the delivery tube. Cool the contents of the receiving test-tube under the cold water-tap. Add distilled water to make a volume of about 20 mls.

Make the standard: Pipette 3 mls. of standard ammonium sulphate solution into a 100-ml. volumetric flask, dilute to about 75 mls., and Nesslerize by adding 10 mls. of Nessler's solution. At the same time add 2.5 mls. of Nessler's solution to the receiving test-tube; dilute the solution in the flask and tube to their respective marks (100 mls. and 25 mls.), stopper, mix, and read in a colorimeter.

Calculation: The calculation is like that given for N. P. N.<sup>1</sup> (page 800); or the reading of the standard may be placed at 20 mms., that number divided by the reading of the unknown and the result multiplied by 15. The amount thus obtained is the number of milligrams of urea nitrogen in 100 mls. of whole blood.

*Method of Myers.*—Principle: Urease is used to remove the ammonia from the urea as in the method of Folin. Then the ammonia is aspirated by means of an air current into standard acid, using the apparatus required for Myers' method for N. P. N. (Fig. 227). Whole blood is usually used in place of blood filtrate, although the latter may be used.

Procedure: Pipette 2 mls. of oxalated whole blood into a thin-walled test-tube which can be fitted into a volumetric cylinder. Add 1 ml. of the special urease solution and 2 drops of the special buffer mixture used in the Folin method. Leave the tube in a beaker of water at not over 55° C. for fifteen minutes or longer. Add 4 drops of caprylic alcohol to prevent foaming and prepare the receiving cylinder by pipetting exactly 2 mls. of decinormal hydrochloric acid into it and also adding 4 drops of caprylic alcohol. Have all connections ready and then to the blood tube add 5 mls. of 50 per cent. sodium carbonate solution. Continue aërating for about half an hour. The rest of the procedure is like that for N. P. N. (page 802). These two procedures may be conducted simultaneously.

#### AMMONIA IN THE BLOOD

Nash and Benedict<sup>2</sup> have demonstrated that ammonia production is controlled by the kidney. The process is concerned with the regu-

<sup>1</sup> The principle is the same, but Nesslerization is made for N. P. N. on 50 mls. and for urea at half that amount.

<sup>2</sup> Nash, T. P., and Benedict, S. R. (Cornell Medical, New York, N. Y.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 48, p. 463, 1921.

lation of the alkalinity of the organism, by protecting it against depletion of the alkali reserve. Interference with the ammonia production by the kidney leads to acidosis, because the acid radicles are not neutralized by the ammonia and hence they accumulate in the blood, thus depleting the alkali reserve (bicarbonate, fixed bases and protid). The amount of ammonia in human blood is small. Folin found a fraction of a milligram per 100 mls. of blood; Denis the same. Other observers<sup>1</sup> find 0.35 mg. ammonia in the blood of the dog. Whatever the average amount is, it has no significance clinically. The determination is one of great difficulty. A satisfactory method has been published by Nash and Benedict<sup>2</sup> as a modification of the Folin procedure.

URIC ACID IN BLOOD

The determination of uric acid involves uric acid as such, and not uric acid nitrogen. The average normal amount of uric acid in human blood is 3 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood.<sup>3</sup> The distribution is uniform for both arterial and venous blood; this is shown for the dog's blood as follows:

	Uric acid per 100 mls. plasma.	
	Arterial, mgs.	Venous, mgs.
Five minutes after injecting 200 mgs. uric acid....	66.8	65.6
Three minutes after injecting 100 mgs. uric acid...	28.2	28.4
Three and a half minutes after 100 mgs. are injected	41.2	44.4

The distribution of uric acid between serum and corpuscles is shown by the following table from Benedict and co-worker<sup>4</sup>:

Where the whole blood uric acid is	The serum uric acid is	The corpuscular uric acid is
3.4 mgs. per cent.	3.1 mgs. per cent.	3.4 mgs. per cent.
2.8 " "	3.0 " "	1.8 " "
3.6 " "	3.4 " "	3.7 " "
2.6 " "	3.0 " "	1.8 " "
6.0 " "	6.4 " "	2.3 " "

<sup>1</sup> Matthews, S. A., and Miller, E. M. (Rush Medical College; Matthews now of Loyola University, Chicago, Ill.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 15, p. 87, 1913.

<sup>2</sup> Page 808.

<sup>3</sup> In the laboratories of Jefferson Hospital it is rare to find a uric acid content lower than 3 mgs. per cent. in normal cases.

<sup>4</sup> Theis, R., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 6, p. 1, 1921.



The uric acid is destroyed in the blood. This is shown in the following table from Folin<sup>1</sup> (dog):

	Uric acid per 100 mls. plasma.
100 mgs. of uric acid injected per kilo body weight in four minutes.	
Immediately after injection intravenously, blood plasma had	72.8 mgs.
3 minutes after injection . . . . .	30.6 "
4 minutes after injection . . . . .	25.4 "
16 minutes after injection . . . . .	12.1 "
17 minutes after injection . . . . .	10.8 "

Such destruction of uric acid in the blood does not occur if the blood is removed from circulation. Tissues take from the blood certain amounts of uric acid. Normally, the kidneys are especially able to absorb it. In gout, the power of the kidney to absorb uric acid becomes modified and blood of gouty persons may contain high quantities of uric acid.

Subject K-z of Folin, May 11, 10.7 mgs. per cent. uric acid (plasma).

Subject K-z of Folin, May 22, 8 mgs. per cent. uric acid (plasma).

Subject B-th of Folin (attack), 9.2 mgs. per cent. uric acid (plasma).

The uric acid of circulating blood is that which (1) has not been destroyed in the blood, and (2) cannot be absorbed by the kidney.

The following table gives the *variations in uric acid concentration in blood under physiological and pathological conditions* (whole blood):

*Physiological variations:*

Low concentrations:

Of unknown nature . . . . .	1 mg. per 100 mls.
Due to low protid diet . . . . .	1 to 3 mgs. per 100 mls.
Due to drugs (analgesics) . . . . .	Less than 3 mgs. per 100 mls.
High protid, purin free . . . . .	3 mgs. per 100 mls. <sup>2</sup>

High concentrations:

Due to age (first five days postnatal) . . . . .	Above 3 mgs. <sup>3</sup>
High purin diet . . . . .	3 to 5 mgs. per cent.
Causes unknown . . . . .	3.8 mgs.

<sup>1</sup> Folin, O., Berglund, M., and Derick, C., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, p. 361, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> From Folin, Berglund, and Derick (see page 711), page 437. The subject had been on a high-protid purin-free diet for ten days. The total urinary nitrogen was over 30 per cent. above the average normal for man, which indicates the character of the diet.

<sup>3</sup> Kingsbury, F. B. (page 23), and Sedgwick, J. P. (pediatrist, Minnesota, deceased). See Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 31, p. 261, 1917.

*Pathological variations:*

## Low uric acid concentrations (or normal):

Recovery from acute nephritis.....	2.5 mgs. per cent.
Neurasthenia.....	1.7 mgs.
Pregnancy.....	2.3 mgs. (normal)
Arteriosclerosis (may be higher).....	1.9 mgs.
Cancer (average of 15 det., Theis).....	3.0 mgs. (normal)
Nephrosis.....	Normal to 5 mgs.

## High uric acid concentration:

Incipient interstitial nephritis <sup>1</sup> .....	4.0 mgs. per cent.
Chronic interstitial nephritis (usual).....	6 to 15 mgs. per cent.
Chronic interstitial nephritis (rare).....	15 to 27 mgs. per cent. <sup>2</sup>
Gout during attack.....	9.2 mgs. per cent.
Gout between attacks.....	7.2 " "
Prostate obstruction.....	3.9 " "
Bichlorid poisoning, up to.....	20.0 " "
Toxemias of pregnancy up to.....	12.0 " "
Leukemia, fatal.....	10.0 " "
Lead poisoning.....	7.0 " "
Infections (pneumonia, before crisis).....	6.0 " "

**Methods for Determining Blood Uric Acid.**—The exact methods for determining small amounts of uric acid in blood resulted from the suggestion of Folin in 1912<sup>3</sup> that the blue color which appears when uric acid in alkaline solution is treated with phosphotungstic acid solutions can be utilized for quantitative purposes. Other substances<sup>4</sup> than uric acid give this color under similar conditions, and the chief modifications that have been made in the *original Folin method* concern procedures which make the reagent specific for uric acid enhance the color and simplify the determination. Benedict laid the foundation for the most rapid method when he discovered that sodium cyanid frees uric acid from certain compounds, and that it may be used to replace some of the phosphoric acid used in the reagent. The older methods used an alkali (sodium carbonate), but in the latest modi-

<sup>1</sup> May be higher.

<sup>2</sup> This is a case cited by Meyers (Myers, V. C., and Fine, M. S., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 20, p. 391, 1915).


<sup>3</sup> Folin, O., and Denis, W., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 13, p. 469, 1912. Later papers in the same journal matured the work. The color reaction was considered in the two following papers: Folin, O., and Macallum, A. B., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 11, p. 265, 1912; same journal, vol. 12, p. 239, 1912 (Folin and Denis).

<sup>4</sup> Like Millon's reagent; phosphotungstic acid produces color in substances having an hydroxyl radicle in the para position on the aromatic nucleus (page 236).

fication of Benedict cyanid replaces the alkali. In the making of standard solutions for the colorimetric comparisons Folin suggested the practical application of formaldehyde to form formaldehyde-uric acid compounds, which, when their solutions were diluted with water, liberated uric acid. These compounds resist alterations of the uric acid portion, and yet when the acid is ready for use, it is easily obtained from the formaldehyde-uric acid compound.

*Method of Benedict.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: Protids are precipitated from whole blood according to the method of Folin (page 799) and an aliquot portion of the filtrate is treated with cyanid solution to render it free in solution and to afford alkali necessary for the production of color. Then arsenic-tungstate solution is added as arsenic intensifies the color. The preparation is heated to accentuate the characteristic color still more, and after cooling the tubes the colors are compared at once to avoid development of turbidity. The standard is made from a solution of uric acid in a special buffer mixture which just holds the acid in solution,<sup>2</sup> yet prevents oxidation and consequent lowering of the concentration of uric acid.

Procedure: Pipette 5 mls. of the filtrate into a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube and add 5 mls. of distilled water. Make the standard: Pipette 5 mls. of diluted<sup>3</sup> stronger standard solution into a second tube and make the volume up to about 10 mls. of solution. To both tubes add

4 mls. of 5 per cent. sodium cyanid solution<sup>4</sup>  (Caution!)

from a burette and also 1 ml. of the special arsenic phosphoric solution.

<sup>1</sup> Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 51, p. 187, 1922. The reagents are given in the Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> The method is described in Benedict, S. R., and Hitchcock, E. H., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 20, p. 619, 1915.

<sup>3</sup> The dilution is made whenever a determination is to be made, since the solutions keep better in concentrated form; a weaker and a stronger standard are ordinarily used. For the weaker, proceed as follows: Pipette 25 mls. of the Benedict-Hitchcock solution into a 500-ml. volumetric flask. Add enough distilled water to make about 250 mls. of solution. Add 25 mls. of 1 : 10 HCl solution. Dilute to the mark (500 mls.). The 25 mls. of the Benedict-Hitchcock standard solution contain 5 mgs. of uric acid. This diluted to 500 mls. makes each ml. contain 0.01 mg. of uric acid. In order to prepare the stronger standard proceed as follows: Repeat the above method, except that only 50 mls. of the Benedict-Hitchcock standard solution are used in place of 25 mls. This gives for each 5 mls. of solution 0.02 mg. uric acid.

<sup>4</sup> In preparing this solution a trace (2 mls.) of concentrated ammonium hydroxid is added per 1000 mls. of solution.

Stopper the tubes, immediately invert them to mix the contents; then place at once in the boiling water-bath. Leave three minutes and then transfer to a large beaker of cold water. Let the tubes remain in the cold water for three minutes. Stopper, invert, and transfer at once to their respective colorimeter cups. Calculation:

$$\frac{R_s (y)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.02 \text{ mg.})}$$

Solving:

$$x = \frac{0.02 y}{n} \text{ mgs. per 5 mls. of 1:10 blood.}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{0.2 y}{n} \text{ mgs. per 5 mls. whole blood.}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{4 y}{n} \text{ mgs. per 100 mls. whole blood.}$$

*Method of Folin.*—Principle: Uric acid is precipitated as silver urate, which is centrifuged from the rest of the urine. The urate is decomposed by NaCl and then colored. Procedure: Pipette 5 mls. of the blood filtrate obtained as described under N. P. N. (page 799) into a 15-ml. centrifuge tube. It is better to carry all such determinations involving the use of centrifuge in duplicates because it is necessary to balance the tubes in the machine. In the present case the second tube is afforded by the standard which is treated in the same manner as the unknown. Pipette into a second tube, similar to the first, 5 mls. of the standard uric acid solution.<sup>1</sup> To each tube add 7 mls. of silver lactate solution and mix by rotating the tube between the palms of the hands. Balance the two tubes against one another in the balance (Fig. 134) near the centrifuge and centrifuge for two minutes at high speed. Decant the supernatant fluid by pouring off all you can and then invert the tubes on a piece of filter-paper. Now add 1 ml. of the special sodium chlorid solution and stir with a slender glass rod having a ball point. Add 4 mls. of distilled water and stir again. Wash off the adhering liquid from the stirring-rod with a small stream of water from your wash-bottle, taking care to use as little water as possible and to maintain the same volume in the two tubes. Centrifuge again for one minute. Decant the supernatant liquid from each tube into another tube similar to those used in the Benedict method. Reject the precipitate. The rest of the method follows that

<sup>1</sup> Made as described for uric acid in the urine, page 715.

of Benedict: To each tube add 1 ml. of uric acid reagent, 3 drops of lithium sulphate solution, and 2 mls. of distilled water. Rotate the tubes between the palms of the hands, and while the contents are still in motion add, from a burette, 2 mls. of the special sodium cyanid

solution  (Caution!). Let stand for about two minutes, place

the tubes in boiling water for 1.5 minutes, and then cool under the cold water-tap. Dilute to 25 mls. with distilled water, stopper the tubes, and mix by inverting them several times. Then compare the colors in a colorimeter. Calculation: Placing the standard at 20 mms.,

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.02)}.$$

Solving,

$$nx = 0.4$$

And

$$x = \frac{4}{10 n}, \text{ or } \frac{2}{5n} \text{ mgs. per 5 mls. of 1:10 blood.}$$

Then

$$x = \frac{80}{n} \text{ for 100 mls. of whole blood.}$$

The above method, in which substances in the urine that act upon the reagent are removed by centrifuging, has been found to obviate the cloudiness which sometimes appears when the direct method is used by some inexperienced workers. Benedict has shown<sup>1</sup> that human and animal blood contain a substance (or substances), 1 gram of which he has isolated, which substance is precipitated by silver lactate and reacts with the uric acid reagent. However, since the silver compound of this substance is not decomposed in the method just given, it does not vitiate the results of this method.

#### CREATININ IN THE BLOOD

Clinically, the data given by the Folin method for creatinin in the blood<sup>2</sup> has been found valuable in prognosis and treatment. Benedict and Behre,<sup>3</sup> however, believe that "no results so far available offer definite evidence of the existence of creatinin in blood." Greenwald has isolated a red compound which is responsible for the Jaffé reaction (page 361) upon which Folin's method for creatinin depends.

<sup>1</sup> Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 64, p. 215, 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., vol. 17, p. 475, 1914.

<sup>3</sup> Behre, J. A., and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 52, p. 11, 1922.



Substances other than creatinin may give this reaction. Benedict finds that the so-called creatinin of the blood reacts more readily with picric acid than true creatinin does. He has found, also, that amounts of pure creatinin comparable to those supposed to occur in the blood when heated with alkali no longer give the Jaffé reaction, but that blood filtrates treated in a similar manner show little change from filtrates not so treated. Again, kaolin<sup>1</sup> abstracts pure creatinin from blood filtrates up to amounts of 3.5 mgs. per 100 mls. of filtrate, but the "creatinin" of blood is not affected by kaolin. Lastly, although the evidence is based upon only a single experiment, Benedict found that there is no indication that "creatinin" of nephritic blood is true creatinin; the blood of a dog which had had its ureters ligated (imitating prostatic obstruction) showed no true creatinin as judged by direct zinc chlorid precipitation, although 5 mls. of the filtrate showed 9 mgs. of "creatinin" by the usual blood creatinin method.

Regarding the creatinin supposed to occur in blood, the following data have been collected:

Normal amount<sup>2</sup>..... 1 to 2 mgs. per cent. whole blood

#### Increase after feeding creatinin by mouth<sup>3</sup>:

Time.	Creatinin by mouth.	Blood creatinin mgs. per cent.
7/ 2/1920.....	None	1.04
7/10 ".....	1 g. single dose	2.27
7/13 ".....	3 gs. single dose	2.50
7/13 ".....	3 gs. two doses	2.12
7/17 ".....	5 gs. single dose	4.75
7/21 ".....	10 gs. single dose	7.90
7/21 ".....	10 gs. two doses	6.15
7/22 ".....	10 gs. three doses	2.14 <sup>4</sup>

Increased in cardiorenal conditions..... 3 to 4 mgs.

Increased in apparently normal conditions..... Up to 3.5 mgs.

Increased in long-standing diabetes mellitus..... 3 to 4 mgs.

Increased sometimes in intoxications with fever... 3.5 mgs. and lower

Increased in interstitial nephritis in amounts corresponding to the severity of the disease..... Up to 30 mgs.

Increased in intestinal obstruction..... Up to 10 mgs.

<sup>1</sup> A highly purified clay. Compare the method of Greenwald, I., and McGuire, G., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 34, p. 103, 1918.

<sup>2</sup> In the laboratories of Jefferson Hospital the normal creatinin content of blood is taken as 1.5 mg. per 100 mls. of whole blood, based upon data accumulated by different workers over several years. The cases were checked against their histories.

<sup>3</sup> After Berglund, his Table III.

<sup>4</sup> This series of figures shows that there is probably some interdependence of true creatinin upon the so-called "creatinin of the blood."

Myers believes that a creatinin content greater than 3.5 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood indicates great severity and bad prognosis for the course of the disease.

*The distribution of creatinin between plasma and corpuscle* is shown in the following data after Berglund:

	Plasma creatinin.	Corpuscle creatinin.
Where the whole blood creatinin is 1.16 mg. per cent..	1.17	1.17

Attention is called to the "staircase" (page 806). It will be seen that the passage of creatinin through the kidney is affected later than that of other constituents; in other words, creatinin is more easily cared for by a defective kidney than uric acid and urea.

#### **Quantitative Method for the Determination of Creatinin in Blood.<sup>1</sup>**

—Principle: The creatinin or chromogen of the blood giving the Jaffé reaction is converted into a picrate by treating the blood with concentrated solutions of picric acid in alkaline solution. The color developed is compared with that produced by treating a known quantity of pure creatinin or the zinc chlorid in the same manner.

Procedure: Pipette 25 mls. of a saturated solution<sup>2</sup> of pure picric acid into a 100-ml. Erlenmeyer flask and add 5 mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Agitate the contents of the flask and let stand for several minutes before using. In the meantime pipette 10 mls. of the tungstic filtrate obtained as described under N. P. N. into a 50-ml. heavy glass shaking bottle. To a second and similar bottle add 5 mls. of the standard creatinin solution (page 724). Dilute with 15 mls. of distilled water. Add to the unknown (first bottle) 5 mls. of the alkaline picrate prepared above and to the standard 10 mls. Stopper the bottles and place them on the platforms of the shaking

<sup>1</sup> The method given here is primarily that of Folin modified according to recommendations of Benedict, Greenwald, Myers, as well as by Folin and collaborators.

<sup>2</sup> The solution must be thoroughly saturated at the temperature at which it is to be used. This is best done by warming a solution of picric acid that has stood over a residue of the crystals for a week or more and has been shaken at intervals. While warm, shake the bottle vigorously, let any undissolved crystals settle, and decant into a beaker a small amount of supernatant liquid which is to be used in the determination. Then cool this solution to room temperature under the cold water-tap immediately before use. A still better plan is to maintain in a shaking machine a supersaturated solution of picric acid at all times and to draw from it at the time that a determination is to be made. The method for purifying picric acid for these determinations is given in the Appendix, taken from the Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 54, p. 239, 1922. Folin's method is given in the same journal, vol. 28, p. 349, 1917.

machine<sup>1</sup>; screw down the clamp and shake at moderate speed for two minutes. Leave longer at reduced speed if possible; however, the maximum time should not be greater than ten minutes. Make the comparison in a colorimeter.

Calculation:

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.015 \text{ mg.})}$$

Then

$$x = \frac{3}{10 n} \text{ for 10 mls. of 1:10 solution.}$$

$$x = \frac{30}{n} \text{ per 100 mls, whole blood.}$$

### CREATIN

**Creatin** is a normal constituent of blood, average normal 6.0 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood. Marked variations characteristic of disease have not been observed. It is measured by first determining the preformed creatinin according to the method just discussed and then converting the creatin to creatinin by the same method that was used for creatin in the urine. The method is given in Folin's Manual, page 247, edition of 1922.

### THE AMINO-ACIDS IN THE BLOOD

The amino-nitrogen of blood is the largest portion of the non-protid nitrogen with the exception of the urea nitrogen. Following a meal the amino-acid nitrogen rises from an average normal of 5.7 to 7.8 mgs. per 100 mls. of whole blood to much higher figures (over 12 mgs.), depending upon the amount of protid ingested. Amino-nitrogen is then largely exogenous in character, and for this reason is not significant clinically. There is a relatively large destruction of amino-acids in the liver and other tissues, both (1) of those derived from the food and entering the liver by way of the portal vein; and (2) of those which have been "pushed out" of the tissues by the amino-acids which escape destruction in the liver. Whether there is a need for amino-acids in the tissues or not, these acids are destroyed in the liver to a certain extent. Even after a time of fasting, when the concentration of amino-acids in the tissues is low, if a protid diet is resumed the liver allows only a relatively small amount of the amino-acids to pass through unchanged; these are, of course, greedily absorbed by the tis-

<sup>1</sup> The directions are for the International Equipment Co. centrifuge with head shaker. Any shaking device may be used.

sues. There is no storage of amino-acids in the tissues; after they have remained in a tissue for a period which varies with the kind of tissue and the amino-acid concentration, they pass again into the bloodstream and circulate throughout the body. If they reach the liver they are destroyed. We do not know whether they pass to other organs and find lodgment or not. It is known, however, that one tissue may be called upon to provide amino-acids for another tissue.

*Pathologically*, amino-nitrogen rarely rises in the blood. "The deaminization process appears to be such a fundamental process that one cannot expect to find many pathological conditions in which the amino-nitrogen of the blood filtrates will vary very much from the normal."<sup>1</sup> Even during severe nephritis, when the N. P. N. of the blood rises to over 300 mgs. per 100 mls. of blood, there is no characteristic increase in amino-nitrogen. However, in extensive destruction of liver tissue, as in acute yellow atrophy, amino-nitrogen rises to about 30 mgs., according to the severity of the disease and the individual factors concerned. Two factors conspire to cause this increase: (1) Great destruction of tissue and (2) loss of power of deaminization.

**Methods for Determining Amino-nitrogen in Blood.**—Two methods are available: (1) The gasometric method of Van Slyke (page 291) and (2) the colorimetric procedure of Folin. The results seem to be practically identical.

*Gasometric Method of Van Slyke.*—The general principles of this method and its application to certain fluids have already been given on page 291. In the case of blood it is necessary to obtain a protid-free filtrate. This is done by the following method, although the tungstate filtrate described for N. P. N. on page 799 may be used.

Precipitation of the protid for the Van Slyke procedure: (a) For whole blood: Pipette 10 mls. of oxalated blood into a 250-ml. volumetric flask. Add about 100 mls. of distilled water. Add 20 mls. of 10 per cent. mercuric sulphate solution,  $\text{HgSO}_4$ . Mix and let stand about ten minutes. Then dilute to the mark (250 mls.), stopper, invert, agitate the contents, and filter through a fluted filter (Fig. 206). The filtrate may be poured back over the residue in the funnel if there is discoloration. The filtrate is always, however, pink tinged. The substance responsible for this color does not interfere with the procedure.

<sup>1</sup> Folin, O., cited on page 817; his page 476.



(b) For plasma; also for serum: Pipette 8 mls. of the plasma into a 200-ml. volumetric flask and add about 50 mls. of distilled water. Add 15 mls. of the mercuric sulphate solution. Agitate the contents of the flask. After about eight minutes dilute to the mark with distilled water, mix, let stand about five minutes, and filter as in (a).

Procedure: From 2 to 10 mls. of the filtrate from either (a) or (b) are used in the larger form of the Van Slyke apparatus and from 0.5 to 2 mls. in the micro-form. The various steps are described on page 294. The calculation is the same.

*The Colorimetric Method of Folin.*—Principle: Comparison of the red color produced by bringing the amino-acids in contact with a quinon compound (sodium  $\beta$ -naphthoquinon-sulphonate), with the color developed by a known quantity of glycine; cystine, leucine, tyrosine, aspartic acid, phenylalanine, or glutamic acid may be substituted. A proper degree of alkalinity must be maintained by means of sodium carbonate solution. The color is intensified by adding an acetate solution, which serves also to inhibit turbidity. Any excess quinon is destroyed by adding sodium thiosulphate solution.

Procedure<sup>1</sup>: Pipette 5 mls. of the tungstic filtrate obtained for N. P. N. (page 799) into a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube. Into a similar tube pipette 1 ml. of the standard amino-acid solution and add about 3 mls. of distilled water. Now add to each tube 1 drop of a 0.25 per cent. phenolphthalein solution as indicator. Add 1 ml. of 1 per cent.  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution to the standard amino-acid solution and to the unknown add the carbonate drop by drop until the colors in the two tubes match. Add another 5-ml. amount of distilled water to the standard, thus making its volume twice that of the unknown. Add 2 mls. of a freshly prepared solution of sodium- $\beta$ -naphthoquinon-sulphonate. To the other tube (the unknown) add 1 ml. Roll each tube between the palms of the hands in order to mix the contents and then leave the tubes in the dark (locker) for at least twenty-four hours. To the standard add 2 mls. of the special acetate solution, and to the unknown, 1 ml. From a Folin-Wu blood pipette (Fig. 237) or a burette add to the standard tube 14 mls. of distilled water and to the unknown 7 mls. The volume for the standard should now be 30 mls. and that of the unknown, 15 mls. Stopper the tubes, invert, and half fill each cup of a colorimeter. Set the reading of the standard at 20 mms. Make the comparison.

<sup>1</sup> The reagents are described in the Appendix.



Calculation:  $n$  being the reading of the unknown,  $\frac{140}{n}$  mgs. is the amino-acid nitrogen per cent. whole blood.

### BLOOD SUGAR

Little is known of blood sugar. Determinations are made and the results are interpreted as glucose. That some of the reducing substance of the blood consists of another form of glucid is evident from the occurrence of lactose in the urine of lactation; of pentoses, polyglucids and glucidtemns, the "normal" sugar of urine (page 755). Diabetics in which insulin does not lower blood "sugar" also illustrate this point. On the other hand, qualitative tests, such as fermentation, the osazone, etc., demonstrate not only that glucose is present, but that it is the important glucid. Van Slyke<sup>1</sup> reviewed attempts made to identify glucose. As to yeast fermentation, Wolf<sup>2</sup> warns that similar conclusions have been drawn for urine "glucose," but no carbon dioxid is demonstrable in such "fermentations." Van Slyke also permitted blood to glucolyze at normal temperature. The results were uniform by the two methods. *Glucose is 0.07 to 0.09 g. of the total reducing substances of the blood (0.10 g. per 100 mls. blood), leaving 0.01 to 0.03 g. as non-fermentable residual substance.* Insulin causes the disappearance of glucose, leaving unaffected the residual substance. In glomerular nephritis the increase in blood sugar is due to glucose.

**Method for Quantitative Determination of Blood Sugar.**—Two chief methods exist. The normal figures in use are those determined by Strouse,<sup>3</sup> who adapted the original Bertrand technique,<sup>4</sup> modified by Kovarski.<sup>5</sup> The method of Bang,<sup>6</sup> used in Europe, gives reliable results. The principle of Bang's method—iodometrical determination of reduced cuprous salts—was applied by Shaffer<sup>7</sup> and later by Tervaert<sup>8</sup> to blood sugar studies. These methods are copper reduction methods.

<sup>1</sup> Hiller, A., Linder, G. C., and Van Slyke, D. D., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 64, p. 625, 1925.      <sup>2</sup> Lund, G. S., Wolf, C. G. L., Biochem. Jour., vol. 19, p. 538, 1925.

<sup>3</sup> Strouse, S. (Professor of Medicine, Northwestern University Medical School, Chicago, Illinois). See Johns Hopkins Hospital Bull., vol. 26, p. 211, 1915.

<sup>4</sup> Bertrand, G. (Professor in the University of Paris, France), Bull. de la Société Chimique de Paris, vol. 35, p. 1285, 1906.

<sup>5</sup> Kovarski, A. (German clinician), Deutsche Med. Wochenschr., vol. 39, p. 1635, 1913.      <sup>6</sup> Bang, I. (German biochemist), Die Blutzucker, Wiesbaden, 1913.

<sup>7</sup> Shaffer, P. A., and Hartmann, A. F. (p. 522), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 45, p. 349, 1921.

<sup>8</sup> Tervaert, D. G. C. (Utrecht, The Netherlands), Biochem. Jour., vol. 19, p. 541, 1925.

The two methods described in the following pages are colorimetric methods suited to rapid clinical work. The method of Benedict seems to give higher readings than that of Folin. However, Benedict's method is widely used, especially in laboratories which supply vacuum tubes (Figs. 223 and 224) to their clients; these tubes contain picric acid solution which causes the precipitation of the protids of the blood and at the same time supplies the necessary substance for making the colorimetric determination. An anticoagulant is unnecessary when these tubes are used.

*Method of Benedict.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: The principle is given under the heading Urinary Determinations, page 759. Picric acid is converted into picramic acid in a process of reduction, the sugar becoming oxidized by oxygen from the nitro-groups of the tri-nitro-phenol (picric acid). A modification of the technique given by Benedict has been made in the Mt. Sinai Hospital Laboratories, New York, N. Y., by A. A. Epstein (Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 63, p. 1667, 1914). Procedure: For whole blood: Blood is withdrawn from a vein<sup>2</sup> by means of a hypodermic needle (20 gauge, 1.25 inch Luer type, see Fig. 226). The needle is then thrust through a rubber tube attached to an Ostwald-Folin pipette (2 mls.) which contains in its tip some powdered, crystalline potassium oxalate. Enough blood is injected in this manner into the pipette to make more than 2 mls. with the oxalate. Adjust the meniscus of the blood column in the pipette to the mark; the pipette delivers exactly 2.0 mls. of blood. Now transfer the 2 mls. of blood to a 25-ml. volumetric flask containing 5 mls. of distilled water. Mix. Add 15 mls. of the special alkaline solution of picric acid<sup>3</sup> and 1 drop of caprylic alcohol in order to prevent foaming. Add distilled water to the mark, stopper, invert the flask, and agitate the contents. Filter through a dry filter into a small beaker. Pipette 8 mls. of the filtrate into a 200 x 20 mm. Pyrex test-tube; it is convenient to use tubes graduated at 12.5 and 25 mls. (Figs. 230 and 233). Add 2 mls. of the

<sup>1</sup> Lewis, R. C. (Professor of Biochemistry, University of Colorado, Boulder), and Benedict, S. R., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 20, p. 61, 1915; vol. 34, p. 203, 1918; vol. 37, p. 503, 1919. For a method adapting this procedure to small amounts of blood see Smith, M. (Joslin's Clinic, Deaconess Hospital, Boston), Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 7, p. 364, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Superficial blood-vessels give blood that is more nearly arterial in character than purely venous blood, and for some purposes it is desirable to withdraw blood from the finger-tip, ear-tab, vein from the back of the hand, etc. See Foster, G. L., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 55, p. 291, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

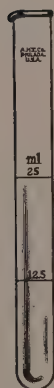


Fig. 230.—The Lewis-Benedict blood sugar tube.

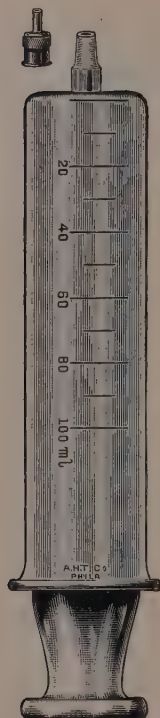


Fig. 231.—The Luer type syringe. For needles used with this syringe see Fig. 226.



Fig. 232.



Fig. 233.—The combination tube proposed by Nash, suitable for the Lewis-Benedict, Myers-Bailey, and other blood sugar and nitrogen determinations.

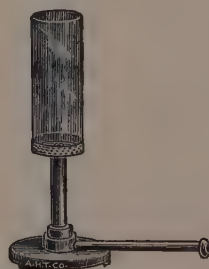


Fig. 234.—“Micro”-burner used in many biochemical procedures. A mica chimney may be used, as shown, to avoid draughts.

special picric acid solution and 1 ml. of sodium carbonate solution.<sup>1</sup> Stopper the tube with non-absorbent cotton and leave it in a boiling water-bath for ten minutes or longer. Cool the tube under the cold water-tap. Dilute to the mark with distilled water. The dilution is made according to the probable amount of sugar in the specimen. If it is large, dilution is made to 25 mls., judging from the depth of color; otherwise to 12.5 mls. Compare in a colorimeter with a standard picramic solution or, better, with a solution of glucose (0.64 mg. glucose; 0.00064 g.): Place 4 mls. of distilled water in a 200 x 20 mm. test-tube and add 0.64 mg. of glucose.<sup>2</sup> Add 4 mls. of the special picrate solu-

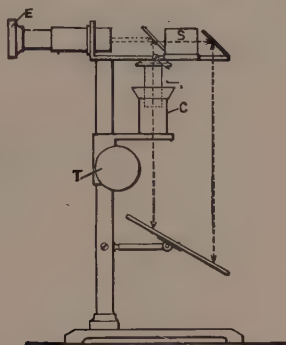


Fig. 235.—Bock-Benedict type of colorimeter. The eye, applied at *E*, sees simultaneously an image due to light from (1) the standard in the small square cell *C* and (2) the unknown in the cup *C*. By moving the unknown up and down by means of the milled head, *T*, the field is finally made uniform.

tion and 1 ml. of the sodium carbonate solution. Leave in the boiling water-bath for ten minutes along with the unknown.

Calculation:

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.64 \text{ mg.})}$$

Solving:

$$x = \frac{12.8}{n} \text{ mgs. for 8 mls. of filtrate,}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{4}{n} \text{ mg. for the 2 mls. whole blood, or } \frac{2}{n} \text{ mg. per cent.}$$

If the standard is placed at any figure other than 20 mms., then:

$$\frac{R_s}{R_u} \text{ divided by 10 gives the per cent. of blood sugar in whole blood.}$$

<sup>1</sup> Twenty gs. of  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  made up to 100 mls. with distilled water.

<sup>2</sup> The glucose may be kept in a solution in water, protected from bacterial action and of such strength that an aliquot part, say 1 ml., contains 64 mgs. glucose.

If the blood has been collected in a vacuum tube, the tip of the tube is broken; otherwise the procedure is like that given above.

*Method of Folin.*<sup>1</sup>—Principle: The sugar of the blood is boiled with a copper solution; the copper is reduced as in Fehling's and other methods. A phosphomolybdic acid solution is then added; this molybdenum compound reacts with the reduced copper (cuprous oxid or hydroxid), producing an intense blue like that noted in the determination of uric acid.

Procedure<sup>2</sup>: Pipette 2 mls. of the blood filtrate used in the previous determinations (page 799) into a Folin special blood-tube (Fig. 236<sup>3</sup>). Prepare the standards: Pipette into a second tube, similar to the one just mentioned, 2 mls. of the standard glucose solution containing 0.2 mg. (weaker) and into a third similar tube 2 mls. of



Fig. 236.—Folin blood-sugar tube. The reducing reaction proceeds in the small bulb and oxygen is prevented from influencing the procedure on account of the constriction.



Fig. 237.—The Folin-Wu blood pipette, capacity 15 mls.

the standard glucose solution containing 0.4 mg. (stronger standard). These standards give a range of blood sugar from 70 to 400 mgs. per

<sup>1</sup> Folin, O., and Wu, H. (page 798), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 41, p. 367, 1920.

<sup>2</sup> For reagents see the Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> This form of tube has been used for many years in quantitative analysis to suppress reoxidation by the oxygen of the air. Reduction takes place in the bulb of the tube and the constricted portion does not permit air to enter the bulb, except an extremely small amount during ebullition.



100 mls. of whole blood. Now to each of the three tubes add 2 mls. of the alkaline copper solution.<sup>1</sup> Leave the three tubes in a water-bath at 100° C. for six minutes. Then transfer them to a beaker of cold water and leave for three minutes. Add to each tube 2 mls. of the phosphomolybdate solution. When the cuprous oxid has dissolved add water to make the total volume 25 mls.; it is convenient to have these tubes graduated at this point (Fig. 236). Stopper, invert, mix, taking care that the contents of the bulb are thoroughly mixed with those of the main portion of the tube.

Calculation: If the standard is placed at 20 mms., then:

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.2 \text{ mg.})}$$

Solving:

$$x = \frac{4}{n} \text{ per 2 mls. of 1:10 blood,}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{2000}{n} \text{ mgs. per 100 mls. whole blood.}$$

For the stronger standard the result is obtained by the equation

$$x = \frac{4000}{n} \text{ mgs.}$$

*Method for Finger-tip Blood.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: Application of the Folin-Wu procedure, just described, to minute amounts of blood, involving about 100 mgs. of blood-sugar in 0.05 to 0.1 ml. whole blood. Procedure: Dip a pledget of cotton in 70 per cent. ethanol and bathe the tip of the finger thoroughly, followed by ether to remove the fat. Stab the tip with a sterile, new steel pen-point or blood-lance. Using a special pipette, provided with mouthpiece and rubber suction tube, similar to an ordinary hemacytometer pipette, but graduated at 0.05 and 0.1 ml., draw up blood past the mark selected and, by means of filter-paper, withdraw blood until the meniscus is opposite the proper mark. If the blood is supposed to be normal, use the 0.10 quantity; if hyperglycemia, the 0.05 ml. mark. Transfer the blood to a small tube graduated at 2 mls. and containing 1.5 ml. distilled water, in

<sup>1</sup> In the making of these tubes it is impossible to maintain uniformity in size of the bulb. The solution must fill the bulb, but it must not intrude upon the constricted portion. If, after adding the various solutions described above, the bulb is not full, or is too full, it is best to reject the tube and use another.

<sup>2</sup> Kramer, B., and Gittleman, I. F. (Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md.), Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 81, p. 1171, 1923.

order to cause hemolysis as in the Folin method. Draw the water into the pipette and expel it several times, to insure thorough mixing and quantitative results. Precipitate the protids by adding to the tube graduated at 2 mls. 0.1 ml. of 10 per cent. sodium tungstate solution and 0.1 ml. of two-thirds normal sulphuric acid.<sup>1</sup> Roll the tube between the palms of the hands for mixing and continue until the proper brown color described in the Folin procedure (page 799) is obtained. Make up the volume to the mark (2 mls.) with distilled water and mix again. Let stand for five minutes and then centrifuge



Fig. 238.—Kramer-Gittleman modification of the Folin-Wu blood-sugar determination for small amounts of blood.

for two minutes. Pipette the supernatant fluid from the residue into a 10-ml. volumetric cylinder. If the amount of blood taken for analysis was 0.10 ml., the supernatant fluid should be 1.4 ml., otherwise 1.5 ml. is obtained. Transfer the fluid to a Folin-Wu sugar tube (Fig. 238) graduated at 6 mls. as well as 12.5 and 25 mls. To two similar tubes add 1 ml. of the standard glucose solution containing 0.1 mg. per ml.<sup>2</sup> Add to each tube 2 mls. of the alkaline copper solution of the Folin method and leave the three tubes in a boiling water-bath for six minutes. Transfer to a cold water-bath for three minutes. To each tube add 2 mls. of the molybdate solution.

Insert a rubber stopper into each tube, invert, and transfer to the cups of the colorimeter. Set the standard at 15 mms. Calculation:

$$\frac{R_s (15)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.1) \text{ mg.}}$$

Solving:

$$x = \frac{1.5}{n} \text{ mgs. per 0.07 ml. blood, or}$$

$$x = \frac{15}{n} \times \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{1000}{0.07} \text{ mgs. sugar in 100 mls. blood.}$$

<sup>1</sup> Appendix. Also page 227.

<sup>2</sup> If the blood is considerably hypoglycemic, make a standard containing 0.5 ml. of the standard solution.

*Critique on the Folin Procedure.*—Various criticisms have been urged against the methods outlined above,<sup>1</sup> but in the author's experience strict adherence to the specifications laid down by Folin and collaborators in their various papers will obviate the alleged errors. If, however, it is preferred to modify the technique, that change advocated by Rothberg and Evans suggested in the article cited should be given first attention. The special tube (Fig. 239) advocated is designed to permit dilution of the unknown solution, after the addition of the molybdate solution, until the color of the unknown is similar to that of the standard. The higher the concentration of glucose, the farther the observed readings on the colorimeter depart from the theoretical readings. The calculation for the use of the

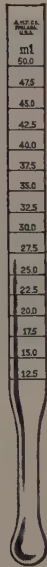


Fig. 239.—The Rothberg-Evans modification of the Folin sugar tube for blood sugar.



Fig. 240.—The Myers-Bailey tube for blood sugar.

Rothberg-Evans modification differs from that of the Folin-Wu method only in that the dilution factor must be included. If the standard be placed at 20 mms., the standard being diluted to 25 mls., then:

$$\frac{20}{n} \times 100 \times \frac{\text{dilution of unknown}}{25} \text{ gives the mgs. per cent.}$$

Or, simplified:

$$\frac{80 \times \text{dilution of unknown}}{\text{Reading of unknown}}.$$

<sup>1</sup> Rothberg, V. E., and Evans, F. A. (Singer Research Laboratory, Pittsburgh, Penna.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 58, p. 435, 1923, is one such.

*Myers*<sup>1</sup> *Method*.—Principle: Modification of the Benedict method (page 821), the principal variations being of the nature of that just mentioned as a modification of Folin's method, namely, dilution of the unknown to approximate the color of the standard; the special tube (Fig. 240) is used as a convenient method of diluting to a known degree.

Procedure: Into a 20-ml. centrifuge tube resembling an ordinary test-tube add 8 mls. of distilled water and 2 mls. of well-stirred oxalated blood or plasma. Mix by means of a delicate stirring-rod and



Fig. 241.—Method of securing blood from heart of a guinea-pig. Blood for class use may be obtained in this manner. (From Kolmer, *Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy*.)

add about 0.5 g. of dry picric acid in order to cause precipitation of the blood protids, as well as to saturate the solution with the acid. When the solution becomes homogeneous in consistency and color, throughout, centrifuge for three minutes. Place a small funnel provided with folded paper in a dry test-tube in your rack and filter the supernatant liquid in the centrifuge tube. Pipette 3 mls. of the clear filtrate into a test-tube graduated as shown in Fig. 240. Add 1 ml.

<sup>1</sup> Myers, V. C., and Bailey, C. V. (Fig. 222, and New York Post-Graduate Medical School, New York, N. Y., respectively), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 24, p. 147, 1916.

of saturated (22 per cent.) sodium carbonate solution and leave the tube in a boiling water-bath for about half an hour. Making the standard: Into a second tube similar to the one just described pipette 3 mls. of the standard glucose solution (0.02 g. per cent. picric acid solution); add 1 ml. of the saturated  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  solution. Leave in the bath together with the tube containing the unknown solution. After there has been a maximum development of the brownish colored picramic acid,<sup>1</sup> which is obtained certainly within the thirty-minute period and frequently within fifteen to twenty minutes, transfer the tubes to a beaker containing cold water. When the temperature of the contents of the tubes reaches room temperature, dilute the standard to exactly 10 mls. and then dilute, carefully, the unknown to the nearest calibration (10, 15, 20, etc.) that is possible in order to have the colors of the unknown and standard nearly match. Set the standard at 15 mms. Calculation: The calculation is like that of the Rothberg-Evans' method (page 827). Myers and Bailey give the following scheme of calculation:

$$\text{Blood sugar in gs. per cent.} = \frac{R_s \times \text{dilution of unknown} \times 0.1}{R_u \times 10}$$

### BLOOD CHOLESTEROL

Fourteen hundredths g. per 100 mls. of whole blood is the normal average concentration of cholesterol in human blood. It plays an important rôle in the blood. It prevents profound changes in osmotic relations in the plasma. It is a carrier of fatty acids. Bloor<sup>3</sup> finds that the unsaturated fatty acids of the plasma of blood are largely held as cholesterol esters.<sup>4</sup> These substances seem to be absent in the fetal blood. Since it is the unsaturated fatty acids that are concerned with the metabolism of fat, the importance of cholesterol is evident. Cholesterol is free in the corpuscle (erythrocyte). The following table<sup>5</sup> gives characteristic variations of blood cholesterol:

<sup>1</sup> Page 157.

<sup>2</sup> Baumann, E. J. (Montefiore Hospital, New York, N. Y.), *Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med.*, vol. 7, p. 357, 1922, has modified the Folin-Wu procedure for small amounts of blood.

<sup>3</sup> Bloor, W. R. (Fig. 90), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 63, p. xlv (Proceedings), 1925.

<sup>4</sup> The esterification of cholesterol with a fatty acid is by way of the secondary alcohol attached to one of the aromatic rings (see page 212).

<sup>5</sup> From Myers, after Rothchild and Wilensky (Mt. Sinai Hospital, New York, N. Y.), *Amer. Jour. Med. Sci.*, vol. 156, p. 239, 1918. The reference is to page 411.



*Factors lowering blood cholesterol:*

Characteristic of no disease (Denis).

Elevated body temperatures and perhaps external temperatures, since tropical natives have low cholesterol.

Cancer, in late stages only (Denis).

Anemia and cachexia,<sup>1</sup> as in beriberi and muscle dystrophies.

*Factors increasing blood cholesterol:*

High lipid diet.

Diabetes mellitus (see below).

Nephrosis, but none in nephritis (Bloor).

Pregnancy (see below).

Hepatic disorders, especially obstruction of the biliary apparatus.

Hemiplegia.

*In diabetes mellitus* "cholesterol is distinctly related to the prognosis."<sup>2</sup> In earlier and less involved cases it occurs proportionately to blood sugar<sup>3</sup>:

	Grams cholesterol.	Grams blood-sugar.
Normal average of 23 bloods.....	0.22	0.10
Mild diabetes, average of 32 bloods.....	0.24	0.17
Moderate diabetes, average of 37 bloods.....	0.26	0.26
Severe diabetes, average of 55 bloods.....	0.41	0.23

The following table gives the value of cholesterol in expectancy of life in diabetes mellitus in which neither diet nor insulin are of avail<sup>4</sup>:

Duration of life observed in patients.	Number of cases.	Cholesterol per cent. whole blood.
0.8 year.....	4	0.8 to 1.5 gm.
1.9 years.....	27	0.43 to 0.79 gm.
2.4 years.....	19	0.32 to 0.42 gm.
4.0 years and over.....	73	0.31 and less

*During pregnancy* cholesterol biliary calculi are frequently found in women in the Occident,<sup>5</sup> and this condition is accompanied by hypercholesterolemia.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> McCrudden, F. (Robert B. Brigham Hospital, Boston, Mass.), Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 70, p. 1216, 1918. (Footnote 3.)

<sup>2</sup> Joslin, E. P., The Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus, Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1923.

<sup>3</sup> Table from Joslin just quoted, Table 83, page 192. The figures are for whole blood in grams per 100 mls. blood.

<sup>4</sup> Joslin, Table 87, page 199.

<sup>5</sup> For unknown reasons Oriental peoples do not have high cholesterol in the blood, nor is there a prevalence of gall-stones in either sex.

<sup>6</sup> Bunker, C. W. O., and Mundell, J. J. (Medical Corps, U. S. Navy, Washington, D. C.), Jour. Amer. Med. Assoc., vol. 83, p. 836, 1924.

In *eclampsia* high cholesterol seems to be correlated with accompanying nephritis. The figures for cholesterol may reach 278 in *eclampsia* or 334 in renal disease.

**Method for the Determination of Cholesterol.**<sup>1</sup>—*Method of Bloor.*—

**Principle:** Cholesterol esters are hydrolyzed and the free cholesterol derived from the esters, together with that which was free in the blood (especially in the corpuscles), is determined by separating it from other portions of the blood through absorption by solvents, and treating it with acetic anhydrid, as in the Liebermann-Burchard test for cholesterol (page 211). **Procedure:** Pipette 5 mls. of whole blood obtained as described on page 63 into a 100-ml. volumetric flask that has previously been provided with 75 mls. of a mixture of "absolute" ethanol 3 parts and anhydrous ether 1 part. The ether must be redistilled if the commercial product is used. Rotate the contents of the flask so that the blood will not clump together. Now immerse the flask in the boiling water-bath while maintaining the rotary motion until the contents begin to boil. Cool, make up to the mark with the alcohol-ether mixture, stopper loosely, mix, and filter through dry filter-paper into a small Erlenmeyer flask. When about 25 mls. have passed through the paper pipette 20 mls. of the filtrate into a Whitall Tatum "Non-Sol"<sup>2</sup> Erlenmeyer flask. Add 0.1 ml. (2 drops) of 50 per cent. NaOH solution made from metal sodium and distilled water, and leave the flask in the boiling water-bath, rotating the contents at frequent intervals and noting when the residue is concentrated to about 2 drops of liquid; the whole bottom of the flask must be kept moist with the liquid contents of the flask. At this stage there should be no odor of alcohol. Cool. Add 0.1 ml. solution of sulphuric acid (1 part  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and 3 of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ). Mix. The contents of the flask must now be alkaline; if the acid used has been strong enough to render the contents of the flask acid to litmus paper, add dilute sodium carbonate solution until they become alkaline. Masses of sodium sulphate will now appear in the flask, and these must be kept from forming aggregates by striking the flask against the palm of the hand. Return the flask to the water-bath and leave until no more moisture adheres to the walls of the vessel.

<sup>1</sup> For another method see Leiboff, S. L. (Lebanon Hospital, New York, N. Y.), *Jour. Biol. Chem.*, vol. 61, p. 177, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> This glass is used owing to its refractoriness toward highly caustic solutions, such as the ones used in this process. The best form of vessel is the wide-mouth "carbon dioxide" beaker, capable of being stoppered (Fig. 203). The glass in question is obtainable from the Whitall Tatum Company, 410 Race Street, Philadelphia, Pa.

Dissolving the cholesterol: Cool the flask and add 10 mls. of chloroform. Mix and let stand for about ten minutes; if any substance adheres to the sides of the flask, rotate the contents. Fit a hardened filter-paper into a small funnel and pour the chloroform into it. Add to the residue in the flask 5 mls. of chloroform and repeat the above procedure, uniting the filtrates in which all of the cholesterol from the 20 mls. of blood filtrate is found.

The determination: Leave the flask containing the filtrate in the water-bath until the volume of the liquid in it is about 2 mls. Then transfer the contents to a small volumetric cylinder (10 mls.) that can be stoppered. Rinse the flask with a few drops of chloroform and add these rinsings to the cylinder until you have a volume of 5 mls.

Add 1 ml. of acetic anhydrid,  $\begin{matrix} \text{H}_3\text{C.CO} \\ \diagup \text{O} \\ \text{H}_3\text{C.CO} \end{matrix}$ , and 0.1 ml. of concentrated

$\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Stopper, mix, and let stand near the colorimeter for fifteen minutes at room temperature. Mix again, half fill the colorimeter cup,<sup>1</sup> and read against a standard cholesterol solution made as follows: Pipette 5 mls. of the standard cholesterol solution containing 0.5 mg. cholesterol per 5 mls. of fluid into a cylinder similar to that used above and treat the solution exactly as the unknown was treated. Care must be taken to have both the unknown and the standard exposed to the same kind and intensity of light.

Calculation: The calculation is exactly similar to all foregoing colorimetric calculations. The standard placed at 20:

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.5 \text{ mg.})}$$

Solving:

$$x = \frac{10}{n} \text{ mgs. for 20 mls. filtrate.}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{50}{n} \text{ for 100 mls. filtrate } \approx 5 \text{ mls. blood.}$$

Or:

$$x = \frac{1000}{n} \text{ mgs. per 100 mls. whole blood.}$$

<sup>1</sup> Unless the cup is provided with a rubber gasket, or otherwise protected from the solvent action of chloroform, it cannot be used. Special fused glass cups are obtainable. The Bausch and Lomb type of cup is desirable. Heavy boiler water-gauge glass tubing is enclosed in a brass cylinder, the bottom of which screws into the cylinder with a tight joint.

## BLOOD FATTY ACIDS

The residue left after decanting the cholesterol-chloroform solution contains fatty acids derived from 10 mls. of filtrate from 5 mls. of whole blood. Bloor<sup>1</sup> gives methods for quantitative determination of these substances and also lecithins. The details cannot be given here.<sup>2</sup> The fatty acids are in part absorbed by the erythrocytes of the blood and converted into lecithin, in which form they are transported through the blood; in part (especially unsaturated fatty acids, like oleïc) are joined with cholesterol to form esters which travel in the blood-stream. The chief fatty acids are oleïc and linolic, then the



Fig. 242.—Method of obtaining blood from the superior longitudinal sinus in children too small for venipuncture. The child is six months of age; the shape and size of the anterior fontanel have been outlined; a 5-ml. Record syringe fitted with No. 18 needle is being employed, the needle having been entered for about 6 mms. in the median line at the posterior angle, and perpendicular to the sinus. (Kolmer in Keen's Surgery, vol. viii.)

saturated acid palmitic, then a small amount of some four double-bond acid (oleïc has but one pair), and finally a small amount of acid with three double-bonds.

In *pathological states* involving an increase in fat in the blood, as in diabetes (lipemia), both plasma and corpuscle show an increase in cholesterol, but the proportion of lecithin to cholesterol is maintained in the same way as in normal blood (in the corpuscle twice as much

<sup>1</sup> Bloor, W. R., Pelkan, K. F., and Allen, D. M., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 52, p. 191, 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Directions are given in Folin's Manual.

lecithin as cholesterol); in the plasma equal amounts of lecithin and of cholesterol occur. In diabetes, however, there is a characteristic decrease in lecithin content of the plasma.

The quantity of these various constituents of lipid nature in normal blood is:

	Mgs. per 100 mls. whole blood.
Total fat.....	600-700
Lecithin.....	300-350
Cholesterol.....	140-170

### INORGANIC CONSTITUENTS OF THE BLOOD

While the modern indirect methods for the determination of inorganic constituents of blood in minute quantities have been criticized,<sup>1</sup> these methods are in constant use in clinical and research laboratories in the United States and Canada, and in parts of Europe and South America, and elsewhere. The following pages are devoted to such methods as are applicable to medical work, especially for clinical diagnosis. The warning given by Macallum that in careless hands these methods are unreliable must not go unheeded.

**Blood Chlorid**—According to Greenwald and Gross,<sup>2</sup> the average normal blood chlorid as NaCl per 100 mls. of whole blood is 0.505 g. Estimated in the plasma, the figures are about 15 per cent. higher (one-sixth higher); that is, about 0.57 g. the chlorion is readily diffusible between corpuscle and plasma (Fig. 39), and this necessitates care in making the determinations. Moreover, the change in CO<sub>2</sub> content of the blood causes a shift in the chlorion<sup>3</sup>; in uncovered vessels the CO<sub>2</sub> escapes, or if plasma is left in contact with corpuscles, CO<sub>2</sub> passes into them, with the result that in either case an increase in plasma chlorion occurs. Sodium does not accompany the migrating chlorion, but remains behind to form NaCl which compensates for the loss of CO<sub>2</sub>. Normally, the chlorid varies with the intake of NaCl. During the first forty minutes after a meal there is a fall in blood chlorid; then a return to normal, and from ninety to one hundred and thirty-five minutes, a fall again. On injecting NaCl, about 8 per cent. is retained in the blood and the remainder passes into the tissues.

<sup>1</sup> A. B. Macallum (McGill University, Montreal, Canada), Some Recently Introduced Micro-quantitative Methods and Their Value. Paper presented before the American Society of Biological Chemists, Washington Meeting, December, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Greenwald, I., and Gross, A., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 54, p. 589, 1922.

<sup>3</sup> Page 79 and diagram (Fig. 39).



On a chlorid-free diet high blood chlorids return to the normal figure, which does not fluctuate, even if the supply is further diminished. However, low chlorid diets have been found efficacious in reducing the chlorid content of the body. Urinary chlorid falls on a restricted diet. We have referred to this matter in the preceding Chapter (page 560). In disease the chlorid runs high, in nephritis, cardiorenal conditions, prostatic obstruction, anemia, and in other states in which it is probable that the kidney is the responsible agent. Chlorid is low in any diabetic condition, the chlorid being "washed out" by the excess loss of water; in pneumonia and in febrile conditions; in anaphylactic shock; in emphysema. Loss of water in vomitus likewise causes low chlorid. The concentration of chlorid in blood is a valuable diagnostic agent in certain diseases. The following table shows the characteristic variations in nephritis and in other states (after Gram)<sup>1</sup>:

Case.	Condition.	Serum NaCl.	Corpuscle NaCl.	Cell volume.	Whole blood NaCl.	Chlorid concentration.
1	Normal.....	0.591	0.314	48.0	0.455	Normal or low
2	Normal.....	0.582	0.321	47.9	0.457	"
3	Normal.....	0.594	0.330	50.7	0.460	"
4	Normal.....	0.580	0.336	49.9	0.458	"
5	Polycythemia.....	0.580	0.307	75.1	0.375	"
6	Edema (physiological).....	0.588	0.285	42.4	0.461	"
7	Pernicious anemia.....	0.588	0.289	17.1	0.538	"
8	Diabetes.....	0.511	0.276	28.9	0.443	Low
9	Cardiac insufficiency.....	0.552	0.291	44.0	0.437	"
10	Tuberculosis.....	0.576	0.313	40.7	0.469	"
11	Pernicious anemia.....	0.641	0.372	26.0	0.570	High
12	Nephritis.....	0.620	0.315	44.6	0.484	"
13	Anemia.....	0.628	0.308	20.0	0.564	"

In nephritis involving cardiac inefficiency the highest chlorid content of blood has been found, 0.84 g. per 100 mls. plasma. In such cases edema accompanies the retention of chlorid. Throughout there is a close relation between water and salt metabolism. High blood-pressure has been ascribed to salt retention, and this has been disputed on the basis of blood chlorid, for hypertension does not necessarily occur in high blood chlorid conditions. We have pointed out that the greatest retention is in cardiorenal states in which hypertension does not usually occur. Blood chlorid is held at a normal figure whenever possible. There is an excess of NaCl excretion through

<sup>1</sup> Gram, H. C. (Girvin Fellow in Research Medicine of the Rockefeller Foundation), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 337, 1925.

the kidneys on salt retention, followed by a decrease with accompanying relief from the high blood-pressure.

It is important to note that a diseased kidney can excrete NaCl during retention of nitrogenous substances.

**Methods for Determining Blood Chlorid.**—*Van Slyke Method for Larger Amounts of Blood (or Serum).*—Principle: The Volhard method (page 776) is employed, and during the precipitation of the chlorids as silver chlorid in nitric acid solution protid is destroyed. Procedure: Pipette 5 gs., or mls., of oxalated blood into a 100-ml. Pyrex Erlenmeyer flask and add 15 mls. of 0.05 normal silver nitrate solution<sup>1</sup> in concentrated HNO<sub>3</sub>. Cover with an inverted porcelain crucible top and leave on a water-bath overnight or longer<sup>2</sup> until the supernatant liquid is clear and light yellow. Add 30 mls. of distilled water and about 1.5 g. of powdered ferric ammonium sulphate violet crystals. Cool to room temperature. Titrate, using 0.05 normal thiocyanate solution. The end point is the same as in the urinary Volhard method.

Calculation: Subtract the correction figure,<sup>3</sup> 0.04 ml., from the burette reading. Then:

$$\text{NaCl per liter blood or plasma} = 0.585 (15 - \text{mls. CNS}).^4$$

*Van Slyke Method for Small Amounts of Blood.*—Pipette 1.0 ml. of whole blood (or serum) into a 100-ml. Pyrex tube 200 x 20 mms. Add 3 mls. of the silver solution used in the preceding method. Digest as described above. Add 6 mls. of 5 per cent. ferric ammonium sulphate solution and cool the tube to room temperature. Titrate, using 0.02 normal thiocyanate solution. Calculation: After making the correction, as before,

$$\text{Gs. of NaCl per liter whole blood or serum} = \frac{1.17 (7.5 - \text{mls. of CNS used})}{\text{mls. of whole blood or serum}}$$

<sup>1</sup> Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> If serum is used the time is greatly shortened. The clear yellow supernatant liquid will appear at the end of the 2.5-hour period.

<sup>3</sup> This represents an excess of thiosulphate necessary to give a clear end-point in the titration.

<sup>4</sup> This is derived from the general expression:  $\text{NaCl per 1000 mls. whole blood} = \frac{2.925 (\text{mls. of 0.05 normal AgNO}_3 \text{ used} - \text{mls. 0.05 normal thiocyanate used})}{\text{mls. whole blood (or serum) taken}}$

in which 2.925 is derived from the molecular weight of NaCl (58.5) used in making a normal solution. For an 0.05 normal solution, corresponding to the normality of the AgNO<sub>3</sub> and the thiocyanate solutions, we have  $0.05 \times 58.5 = 2.925$ . Sodium, potassium, or ammonium thiocyanate may be used.

## BLOOD PHOSPHORUS

The total phosphorus (inorganic and organically bound) of the blood is of no significance at the present time.<sup>1</sup> The inorganic phosphorus, however, has interest in clinical work and in studies of the normal metabolism of phosphorus and of inorganic substances in general. There seems to be no organic phosphorus in the serum that can be hydrolyzed by acid hydrolysis. This harmonizes with the studies of lecithin<sup>2</sup> which Bloor finds confined in part if not altogether to the corpuscle.

The blood phosphorus in normal states decreases from infancy to maturity (after Myers):

	Mgs. per cent.
Average normal blood inorganic P in infant.....	5.05
Average normal blood inorganic P in infant. ....	3.70

In health such figures are retained without marked variation. Phosphorus is concerned in some way with glucid metabolism. On injecting insulin into a normal person the inorganic phosphate of the blood falls. A hexosephosphate may form (page 171).

*In disease characteristic variations occur:*

(1) Retention due to nephritis. In early stages of interstitial nephritis there is little or no change in blood phosphorus, but in advanced, chronic nephritis there may be such a retention as to cause a phosphate acidosis, referred to previously (page 568). In such instances the inorganic phosphorus may increase over three times normal.

(2) In rickets the inorganic phosphate of the blood is reduced to a greater or less extent. It may reach as low a figure as 2 mgs. per cent. serum. However, it is difficult if not impossible to correlate the blood phosphorus figure with the state of health of the patient. Curative measures (irradiation and the feeding of irradiated foods and of foods such as cod-liver oil) cause a rise of blood phosphorus coincident with a restoration of a calcium-phosphorus ratio, deposition of bone, etc.

<sup>1</sup> For a method of determining total blood phosphorus see Smith, C. S., and Brown, A. L. (Ohio State University, Columbus), Jour. Lab. and Clin. Med., vol. 9, p. 203, 1923.

<sup>2</sup> For a method of determining the phosphorus derived from lecithin, see Whitehorn, J. C. (Biochemist to the McLean Hospital, Waverly, Mass.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 62, p. 133, 1924.

(3) The healing of wounds, like the knitting of bone, is frequently accompanied by an increase in blood phosphorus. A decrease to normal ensues when healing has taken place. In some cases of bone fracture the Roentgen ray fails to show when union has occurred, and in such cases the quantitative study of inorganic blood phosphorus, when carefully controlled, is of value in following the course of treatment.<sup>1</sup>

**Method for Determining Inorganic Phosphate of the Blood.**—*Method of Benedict and Theis.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: The phosphate is precipitated as phosphomolybdate by adding a solution of molybdenum trioxid. The molybdenum is then reduced by means of hydrochinon<sup>3</sup> in a sulphite solution, in a water-bath. The reducing solution is highly colored blue and is compared in a colorimeter with a standard phosphate solution that has been similarly treated.

Procedure: Preparation of the sample: By means of a hypodermic needle withdraw 5 mls. of blood from the subject and inject the blood into a clean 15-ml. centrifuge tube. Permit the clot to form, and while doing so balance the tube against a similar tube, using water. Centrifuge at low speed for five minutes or longer. Avoid hemolysis; specimens showing hemoglobin in serum are to be rejected.

The determination: Pipette 2 mls. of serum into a 10-ml. volumetric flask. Add about 1 ml. of distilled water. Add also 4 mls. of 20 per cent. trichloroacetic acid. Mix. Dilute to the mark, 10 mls., with distilled water. Permit the flask to stand for ten minutes or longer, then pour the contents upon a dry, ashless filter in a small funnel. Pipette 5 mls. of the filtrate into a test-tube and add 3 mls. of distilled water. Then add 1 ml. of the special molybdic acid solution, diluted immediately before use with an equal volume of concentrated sulphuric acid. Finally add 1 ml. of the special hydrochinon-sulphite solution. Stopper, invert the tube in order to mix the contents, and leave in a boiling water-bath. The standard: Into a test-tube, similar to that used for the unknown solution, pipette 5 mls. of a solution of potassium hydrogen phosphate,  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , and treat exactly as you have the serum. Place in the boiling water-bath with the tube containing the unknown.

<sup>1</sup> Eddy, W. H., and Heft, H. L., Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 55, p. xii (Proceedings), 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Benedict, S. R., and Theis, R. C. (page 796), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 61, p. 63, 1924.

<sup>3</sup> Hydrochinon (*p*-di-hydroxy-benzene),  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$ , is similarly used in photography to reduce silver salts.



Calculation (standard at 20 mms.):

$$\frac{R_s (20)}{R_u (n)} = \frac{C_u (x)}{C_s (0.025 \text{ mg.})}$$

Solving:

$$x = 2 \frac{1}{n} \text{ per ml. serum, or } \frac{50}{n} \text{ mgs. pre 100 mls. serum.}$$

### SODIUM IN BLOOD

In acid-base studies it is necessary to determine the sodium content of the blood. Sodium is a characteristic constituent of the plasma and not of the corpuscles. The average normal amount of sodium is 324 mgs. per 100 mls. net weight blood-serum.<sup>1</sup> For whole blood sodium runs 200 mgs. per 100 mls. Sodium plays a rôle in the maintenance of neutrality in the body (page 79). Clinically, sodium is not correlated with conspicuous variations in body states.

*Method of Kramer and Gittleman.*<sup>2</sup>—Principle: Sodium is precipitated from the blood-serum as sodium pyro-antimoniate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{H}_2\text{Sb}_2\text{O}_7$ . The antimony is then determined on the precipitate after removal of all excess antimony by means of centrifuging, and after dissolving the precipitate in concentrated hydrochloric acid. For the determination the antimony is reduced and iodine is at the same time released from potassium iodide that has been added. Finally, the iodine is determined by means of thiosulphate.

Procedure: Pipette 2 mls. of serum into a 50-ml. centrifuge tube. Add 10 mls. of the special pyro-antimoniate solution<sup>3</sup> and 3 mls. specially prepared ethanol 95 per cent.,<sup>4</sup> drop by drop, while agitating the contents by means of a small "policeman." Wash off the rod with 2 drops of water, stopper the tube, and let it stand for half an hour. Remove the stopper and centrifuge at moderate speed for five minutes. Using a small 1-ml. pipette fitted with rubber bulb withdraw all but about 2 mls. of the supernatant fluid. Add 10 mls. of 30 per cent. ethanol solution, mix, and centrifuge again for one minute. Remove all the supernatant fluid that is possible.

Determination of the antimony in the precipitate: To the precipitate add 5 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid and stir with the "policeman." Pour quantitatively into a 250-ml. beaker, using not

<sup>1</sup> From the data given by Kramer, B., and Gittleman, I. (Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md.), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 62, p. 353, 1924.

<sup>2</sup> Page 825.

<sup>3</sup> Appendix.

<sup>4</sup> Redistilled over sodium.



over 10 mls. distilled water for washing the residue into the beaker. Fill a burette<sup>1</sup> with decinormal sodium thiosulphate solution and adjust the meniscus. To the beaker add 2 mls. of 20 per cent. potassium iodid solution. Add the thiosulphate rapidly until the brown color produced when the iodid was introduced disappears, and then add 0.5 ml. of starch indicator. Continue the titration until the solution becomes clear like water.

Calculation: Each ml. of the thiosulphate used from the burette corresponds to 1.15 mg. of sodium.

*Total Titrable Base in the Blood.*—Method of Sumner and Hubbard: This method has been given on page 786.

#### SUMMARY OF CHAPTER XVI

1. Quantitative methods have been given for determining from small amounts of blood the various constituents which are important in metabolism.

2. These methods are, as a rule, colorimetric or volumetric.

3. Blood constituents vary according to endogenous and exogenous conditions.

Endogenous variations may be physiological ("normal"), due to a change in metabolism; or they may be pathological, as in goiter, diabetes mellitus, and nephritis.

Exogenous variations are those concerned with the food. When, for example, less nitrogenous food is ingested, the non-protid nitrogen of the blood is lowered.

4. In general, the constituents of the blood vary within very narrow limits. The substances in the tissues and those in the excretions (urine) may vary conspicuously, but the blood, which is simply a transporting system, does not change except in serious pathological conditions.

5. The blood is a diagnostic agent of great importance. Certain diseases cannot be accurately diagnosed without blood analysis. The modern treatment of diabetes mellitus by diet and insulin requires immediate knowledge of the blood-sugar content. The various forms of nephritis are best followed by blood chemistry.

6. The knowledge of the intermediate metabolism of substances, and of metabolism in general, has been greatly enhanced by modern blood chemistry.

<sup>1</sup> A 15-ml. Folin-Wu blood sugar pipette will serve (Fig. 237).

## 7. Three great divisions of blood chemistry exist:

(a) Nitrogenous.

(b) Inorganic.

(c) Reaction of medium, acid-base relations.

Each has its clinical application.

## SUGGESTED READINGS

Many references have already been given as footnotes in the Chapter. The rapid progress of blood chemical methods and results makes it impossible to follow the subject without resort to *periodicals*. The following sources of modern methods should be used to keep abreast of the subject:

Biochemical Journal, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Ill. Price, annually, \$14.00.

Journal of Biological Chemistry, Rockefeller Institute, 66th St. and Avenue A, New York, N. Y. About \$15.00 annually (three volumes at \$5.00 each).

Proceedings of the Society for Experimental Biology and Medicine. Obtainable from the Secretary, College of the City of New York, N. Y. Price per year, \$5.00.

Journal of the American Medical Association. Obtainable from the Association, Chicago, Ill. Per year, \$5.00.

Journal of Clinical Investigation. Obtainable from the publishers, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Md. Per year, \$5.00.

Journal of Laboratory and Clinical Medicine, obtainable from the publishers, C. V. Mosby Co., St. Louis, Mo. Per year, \$6.00.

Many of the *books* bearing upon blood chemistry are included in the list given at the end of the last chapter (Chapter XV, page 789). In addition, and with especial reference to blood chemistry, the following are valuable reference books:

Beaumont, A. E., and Dodds, E. C.: Recent Advances in Medicine, Clinical, Laboratory, Therapeutic, Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1925.

Folin, O.: Laboratory Manual of Biological Chemistry, New York, D. Appleton & Co., 1925.

Myers, V. C.: Practical Chemical Analysis of Blood, St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Co., 1924.

Rockwood, E. W.: A Laboratory Manual of Physiological Chemistry, Philadelphia, The F. A. Davis Co., 5th ed., 1924.

Underhill, F. P.: A Manual of Selected Methods in Biological Chemistry, New York, John Wiley & Son, 1923.

Hawk's Physiological Chemistry (cited on page 480) contains many of the older methods and most of the newer methods of blood analysis.

## CHAPTER XVII

### METABOLIC STUDIES ON URINE AND BLOOD

*"Nobis serimus, nobis metamus."*<sup>1</sup>

IN the foregoing pages methods have been outlined for the analysis of urine and blood. Since the diagnosis of many diseases depends upon the application of such methods, they are important clinically. Our knowledge of the normal and abnormal metabolism of animals has been gained largely through the analysis of blood and urine. It is for these reasons that an intensive study of urine and blood analysis is included in biochemistry.

Whenever possible the studies about to be undertaken should be conducted on the student himself, or his co-workers, thus affording him concrete examples of normal or abnormal findings. Also pathological blood and urine specimens should be available for comparative studies. These are always obtainable from the hospitals, or from practising physicians, but are not always available at such a time as to fit into a particular scheme of presentation, such as that given here. They must, therefore, be studied whenever they can be obtained. In some cases it is possible to imitate actual pathological specimens by introducing such substances as protid, glucose, or acetone into normal specimens. However, natural specimens are preferable, as artificially made solutions do not give identical reactions. For example, when glucose is added artificially to normal urine the colloidal relations are different from those of diabetic urine, and reduction of copper in a Fehling or Benedict qualitative test is also different from that of an actual specimen. If an artificial solution, after copper reduction, be viewed by reflected light, the color is deep brown or red; when viewed by transmitted light, as when the light passes through the solution directly to the eye, the color is bluish-green unless the glucose is added to high concentration. This effect is especially evident if pure glucose is used in aqueous solution. The colors obtained by copper reduction methods depend upon the degree of dispersion of the copper substances, and the dispersion depends, in turn, upon the constitution of the solvent.

<sup>1</sup> What we sow, we reap.

**Preparation for the Exercises in This Chapter.**—For the collection of urine each student must provide himself with two 1-liter prescription bottles, or two 500-ml. bottles, graduated in milliliters. These are obtainable at any pharmacy. He will also need 100 mls. of toluene to be used as a preservative of the urine. Five mls. are added to each liter of urine and then the specimen thoroughly shaken. Unless otherwise directed, all twenty-four-hour specimens must be brought to class. A twenty-four-hour collection is made as follows: At 8.00 A. M. empty the bladder and reject the specimen. Thereafter until 8.00 the following morning save all urine voided. At the beginning of the collection add about 3 mls. of toluene to each 500-ml. bottle. Use 5 mls. for a liter bottle, whether the urine is expected to fill it or not. Under certain circumstances departures from this method of collecting the urine will be indicated. Care must be exercised to include in the collection all precipitates that may form. The following data must be determined upon each specimen unless otherwise directed:

1. Total volume.
2. Specific gravity.
3. Color.
4. Precipitate, suspension, sediment.
5. Reaction to litmus paper.

A variation in diet or water intake or change of body condition (infection, etc.) during the period for which the determination is made should be recorded in your note-book.

#### PRELIMINARY STUDIES ON URINE

**EXERCISE 1.**—Determine the total solids in the urine according to the methods of Long (page 683). To 100 mls. of urine add 1 g. of sodium chlorid and to a second 100-ml. specimen add 1 g. of glucose. Determine the total solids in each case. Save each specimen for the following Exercise.

**EXERCISE 2.**—Using the mixed urine of Exercise 1, precipitate the uric acid according to the method given on page 711. During the precipitation study the chemistry and reactions of uric acid as follows:

- (a) Use the crystal uric acid obtained at the store-room.<sup>1</sup> Test

<sup>1</sup> This uric acid has been collected from the precipitations made by previous classes and saved.

the solubility in cold and hot water; in ethanol and in 1 : 10 HCl and 1:10 solution of 10 per cent NaOH (0.01 per cent. NaOH). Test the solubility in 1 per cent. sodium carbonate solution.

(b) Using crystals from the store-room, perform the murexid test (page 710) and the Folin qualitative test (page 710). When the crystals have been obtained from the precipitate, repeat the tests under (b). Study the crystals under the microscope. Make drawings of typical crystals.

Deliver to the store-room any uric acid not utilized in these Exercises.

EXERCISE 3.—Quantitative uric acid determination: Determine the concentration of uric acid in a twenty-four-hour specimen, using the method given on page 713. Calculate the uric acid nitrogen in this specimen and enter the result in your note-book.

EXERCISE 4.—Secure a sample of urinary calculi from the laboratory and, using the scheme of analysis given on page 713, record the results of the examination.

EXERCISE 5.—Secure from the store-room urea crystals. Examine the crystals, making a drawing of the typical form. Draw also the forms of urea nitrate crystals (page 691). Test the solubility of the crystals in:

- (1) Cold and hot distilled water.
- (2) Ethanol, 50 and 95 per cent.
- (3) Acetic acid, glacial and 50 per cent.

EXERCISE 6.—Determine, quantitatively, the urea in a twenty-four-hour quantity of urine, using the method given on page 698. Express the result as urea nitrogen.

EXERCISE 7.—Determine the urea on the same specimen by the method given on page 701.

EXERCISE 8.—Determine the amount of ammonia in the urine that was used for the two preceding exercises. Express as ammonia nitrogen.



EXERCISE 9.—Apply the Jaffé test for creatinin to 5 mls. of a mixed specimen of twenty-four-hour urine. Into each of two test-tubes place 5 mls. of urine. Into tube (*b*) pour 1 ml. of a 1 per cent. solution of glucose. Apply the Jaffé test, using the same amounts of reagents for each tube. Refer to page 157 for the picric acid reaction for glucose and to page 361 for the picric acid test for creatinin (Jaffé).

EXERCISE 10.—Determine, quantitatively, the creatinin in a twenty-four-hour sample of urine (page 725). Compare your results with those of other members of the class and determine whether there is any correlation between creatinin and individual bodily characteristics by the following method: Plot, on coördinate paper, as abscissæ,<sup>1</sup> the weights of the subjects, and as ordinates, the corresponding creatinin excretion. If there is a correlation, the two factors will vary in the same way.<sup>2</sup> The creatinin excretion figure will be utilized later (page 846).

EXERCISE 11.—The urine of a child has been provided. Determine the content of creatin according to the method given on page 723. This Exercise may be performed using urine to which a known quantity of creatin, obtained from beef-extract, has been added.

EXERCISE 12.—Determine the total nitrogen in 5 mls. of a mixed twenty-four-hour specimen of urine by each of the following methods<sup>3</sup>:

1. The Kjeldahl method, pages 283 and 686.
2. The Folin method, page 686.
3. The micro-method, page 687.

<sup>1</sup> A term used by René Descartes, French mathematician, founder of analytical geometry, to designate the horizontal base line (Latin *ab*, from, and *scindo*, to cut; that is, to remove) or axis in a system of coördinates. The ordinate (Latin *ordinata applicata*, the line applied parallel to the vertical axis) is the vertical axis. With these two lines fixed and the points of intersection known, any relation between two factors or sets of factors, such as body weight and creatinin excretion, can be definitely expressed. The system is exactly like that used when we say "The College of Physicians is at 59th Street and Tenth Avenue." For practical directions concerning statistical methods see Pearl, R. (Johns Hopkins School of Hygiene and Public Health), *Introduction to Medical Biometry and Statistics*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1923.

<sup>2</sup> Two quantities may vary in a linear way (lines parallel), inversely (lines standing at an angle to one another), etc.

<sup>3</sup> Instead of each student performing each Exercise, one group of students may determine total nitrogen by the Kjeldahl method, another by Folin's method, and a third by the micro-method.

EXERCISE 13.—Repeat the above procedure, using urine from a patient with Bright's disease. In this case the protid must be separated from the non-protid substances of the urine. Acidulate 50 mls. of the urine with 2 mls. of concentrated desk reagent hydrochloric acid, mix, and boil until the albumin has coagulated. Filter, cool the filtrate, and apply the biuret test. If negative, proceed; if positive, add a knife-point of kieselguhr, mix, and filter through a dry filter. Or 5 mls. of 5 per cent. trichloroacetic acid solution may be added to the original urine. Let the specimen stand for five minutes, then filter. Use either of these filtrates as a basis for the determination of non-protid nitrogen ("total nitrogen"). For comparison determine, by the Esbach or Quick method (pages 752 and 753), the total protid of the same urine, and, using the factor 6.25, determine the nitrogen contained in that amount of protid. Compare this amount of nitrogen with the total nitrogen (N. P. N.) of the urine determined first in this Exercise.

EXERCISE 14.—Total the amounts of nitrogen from each of the constituents sought in Exercises 4, 5, 8, and 10. Subtract this from the total nitrogen figure. What substances make up the remainder of the nitrogen?

EXERCISE 15.—By means of the modified Volhard method (page 774) determine the concentration of chlorids in a twenty-four-hour sample of urine.

EXERCISE 16.—By means of the method given on page 776 determine the inorganic phosphates in the same sample of urine.

EXERCISE 17.—Using the same sample of urine, let one group of students determine the total sulphates; another, the inorganic; and a third, the ethereal and neutral sulphur. Place the results upon the blackboard for comparison. Repeat, using as many twenty-four-hour specimens of urine as possible.

EXERCISE 18.—Preparation of specimens for future Exercises: In order that material be available for future studies in metabolism certain preparations should be begun at this point:

(a) *Preparation of creatinin for standards* in creatin and creatinin

determinations. Follow the procedure given in the Appendix. Creatinin may be left as zinc chlorid, or it may be purified to creatinin. The collection of urine may be made from classes other than the one taking biochemistry or from preserved, discarded urine from the biochemical laboratory. Fresh urine, however, is always preferable. By pooling specimens from a group of students enough urine can be obtained (say 10 liters) to afford considerable creatinin. The standard creatinin solution should be prepared during intervals in the following Exercises.

(b) *Preparation of Standard Nitrogen Solution.*—Secure from the store-room a weighing bottle of purified<sup>1</sup> ammonium sulphate crystals, receiving the bottle on a piece of filter-paper in order to avoid soiling the glass with oil from your hand, as this would increase the weight of the bottle. Place the bottle on the left-hand pan of an analytical balance and on the right pan place weights to balance the bottle to the fourth decimal place (tenths of milligram). Now open the bottle with crucible tongs with rubber tips and remove with a knife-point or cardboard scoop as many crystals as will lie on a 5-cent piece. Restopper the bottle and transfer the crystals to a 100-ml. beaker. Weigh the bottle again. By subtraction find the weight of the crystals removed. Then, by proportion, determine what volume of water must be added to them to give 1 mg. of nitrogen per 10 mls. of solution. The proportion is 0.4716 g. per liter solution. Then, if the weight is 0.3200,

$$\frac{0.4716}{0.3200} = \frac{1000}{x}; x = 678 \text{ mls.}$$

Dilute the crystals with about 50 mls. of distilled water and transfer them quantitatively to a liter flask, using about 500 mls. of water. Into a 500-ml. volumetric flask<sup>2</sup> pour the solution to the mark and transfer the residue to a 100-ml. volumetric flask; dilute to the mark. You have now 600 mls. of solution, and 678 mls. are required. Pour the contents of the two volumetric flasks into the original flask, and, using the 25-ml. volumetric pipette, add three quantities of 25 mls. each of distilled water, and then with the 1-ml. Ostwald-Folin pipette add 3 mls. more. The flask now contains exactly 678 mls. of solution, each 10 mls. of which contains a milligram of nitrogen. Add 5 mls.

<sup>1</sup> The method of purifying ammonium sulphate for the making of standard nitrogen solutions is given in the Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> Any combination of flasks may be used, but the fewer the transfers, the more accurate the work.

of toluene to the solution, stopper, mix thoroughly, and let stand for use in later Exercises. It is well to determine the nitrogen in this solution by making a Kjeldahl determination (page 282), or a modification of this method for total nitrogen; or by checking a nesslerized specimen against the laboratory standard.

EXERCISE 19.—Make an analysis of unknown urine given you, the nitrogen content of which is known to the instructor:

1. Total nitrogen. Let one group of students perform the analysis by the Kjeldahl method (page 282) and another by the micro-method (page 687).

2. Ammonia. Let one group make the determination by the Permutit method (page 704), and another by the Malfatti method (page 707).

3. Urea. Let one portion of the class use the aspiration method (page 702), another the direct nesslerization method (page 698), and a third the Marshall method (page 701).

4. Uric acid. Let one section use the centrifuge method (page 715) and another the direct method (page 714).

Continue respective groups, making determinations for:

1. Creatinin (page 725).

2. Chlorid (page 774).

3. Inorganic sulphate (page 781).

4. Phosphate (page 776).

When all the determinations have been made, place the results on the board and compare them. In case of discrepancies the student whose figures vary from those of others using the same method must repeat his determination.

EXERCISE 20.—Using a sample of a twenty-four-hour specimen of your own urine, determine the total nitrogen by the micro method (page 687) and also the sulphate and sulphur (page 781). Compare the results you have obtained with those of other students, paying especial attention to the ratio  $\frac{\text{neutral sulphur}}{\text{total nitrogen}}$ . Is there any correlation? Plot your results against those of other students at your desk.

EXERCISE 21.—By means of the method given on page 757 determine the "normal" glucid content of a specimen of urine. Using a

part of the same specimen, perform a fermentation test and note the presence or absence of fermenting sugar. Retain the liquid left in the fermentation tube and analyze for reducing substance again by the first method used.

**EXERCISE 22.**—Preparation for this Exercise: In place of collecting the full twenty-four-hour quantity of urine on this day, save only that excreted from 7.00 to 10.00 A. M., after rejecting the night urine at 7.00 A. M. Using this sample of three-hour urine, make the following determinations:

1. Total nitrogen (page 687).
2. Urea nitrogen (page 698).
3. Creatinin (page 725).
4. Ammonia nitrogen (page 705).

Compare the results with those given in Folin's Manual (cited on page 121<sup>1</sup>). If time permit, uric acid and the inorganic substances may be determined also.

**EXERCISE 23.**—Preparation for this Exercise: The class is divided into four groups or other convenient units:

1. This group refrains as much as possible from drinking all liquids and from taking liquid in the form of soup, etc., for twenty-four hours. The diet should consist of toast and butter; baked potatoes and butter; griddle-cakes; cottage cheese. If the thirst that follows such an experiment is pronounced, an orange may be used, but only a small amount of liquid should be taken.

2. This group uses liquids freely, especially tea, coffee, cocoa, and other liquids containing diuretics, like caffeine.

3. This group maintains a high protid diet (steak, eggs, beans, peas, bread, etc.).

4. This group uses a low protid diet (melons, cream, salads, tea, and other beverages), ice-cream, apples, apricots and other fruits, asparagus, bananas, creamed carrots, beets, cabbage, cauliflower, grapes, onions, oysters, clear soups or vegetable creamed soups, pineapples, white potatoes, prunes, raisins, spinach, and white rice).

Study urines collected by each individual for the following points:

1. Total volume, color, specific gravity, and total solids.
2. Reaction (quantitative, colorimetric) as follows: Introduce 5

<sup>1</sup> This chart should be copied on the blackboard for student reference.



mls. of filtered urine into a Pyrex test-tube similar to those used in Exercise 4, page 66. Add 1 drop of the indicator methyl-red (Appendix) and compare with the standards which were made (page 60). If the colors fail to match, repeat with a new preparation, using brom-cresol-purple or brom-thymol-blue.

3. Total nitrogen, urea nitrogen, ammonia nitrogen, creatinin, and uric acid.

Compare the results and note any correlations with the diet.

EXERCISE 24.—High and low chlorin diets. The class is divided into two groups:

A. Low chlorin diet (see Strouse and Perry)<sup>1</sup> as follows:

Total salt, about 7 gs.:

*Breakfast:* Rice, boiled, buttered with salt-free butter, the so-called "fresh" butter of the market.

Tea, coffee, or cocoa with cream.

Egg-nog (2 eggs beaten into 250 mls. of whole milk).

*Lunch:* Two lamb chops, or small steak, fried or broiled, salt free; olive oil or cottonseed oil may be used in preparing this dish.

Toast, preferably of salt-free bread, like the Jewish unleavened bread, and with salt-free butter.

White potatoes boiled in salt-free water. Butter salt free.

Gelatin pudding, baked apple, apple sauce, etc.

*Dinner:* Meat as for lunch, potatoes sauté, creamed or French fried in oil, carrots, beets, etc., boiled.

Salads (banana, lettuce and tomato, etc.), with French dressing (oil and vinegar, no salt, but with pepper if desired; or salt-free mayonnaise).

Dessert of custard, made salt free, stewed fruit, toast and cottage cheese (cream cheese), etc.

B. This group maintains a high salt diet somewhat as follows:

Total salt, over 15 gs.:

*Breakfast:* Bacon and eggs (salted); potato chips.

Oatmeal, salted to taste.

Beverage.

*Lunch:* Soup made from meat extract ("Steero-cubes," etc.) salted as highly as possible to taste. Saltine crackers.

Ham, fried or broiled.

Bread, brown ham gravy.

Hashed brown potatoes, salted.

Dessert: Ice-cream.

<sup>1</sup> Strouse, S., and Perry, M. A. (Michael Reese Hospital, Chicago), Food for the Sick, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1917 (out of print, but obtainable in libraries). Also Friedenwald, J., and Ruhräh, J. (University of Maryland, Baltimore, Md.), Diet in Health and Disease, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Co., 1925.

*Dinner:* Soup, like Campbell's<sup>1</sup> vegetable soup, highly salted. Saltine crackers.  
Roast beef, salted.  
Vegetables, like cabbage, etc., highly salted.  
Salad, like bacon and lettuce salad.  
Ice-cream, pie, etc.

Determine the chlorid content of the two groups of urines by the method given on page 776. Compare the results. Note the volume, reaction, and specific gravity of the two sets of urines.

## B. ADVANCED METABOLIC STUDIES

In several institutions a course in chemical pathology, nutrition, etc., is included in a course in biochemistry, either during the same or a subsequent year. The following Exercises are designed to be offered in such a course. In many instances the Exercises may be carried along with those given above, either as additional studies of the nature of problems or as demonstrations.

EXERCISE 25.—Using the standard nitrogen solution prepared on page 847,<sup>2</sup> analyze the specimen of blood given you according to the method given on pages 801 and 808 for the following constituents:

1. Non-protid nitrogen.
2. Urea nitrogen.

The method for preparing the blood for analysis is given on page 799.

EXERCISE 26.—Using the standard creatinin solution prepared from the creatinin or the creatinin zinc chlorid in Exercise 18, page 846, determine the creatinin in the blood given you, using the directions for such determinations given on page 816.

EXERCISE 27.—By the method given on page 836, first method, determine the blood chlorid content of the blood filtrate given you.

EXERCISE 28.—By the method given on page 824 determine the sugar content of the blood filtrate given you.

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Bartlett, of the Campbell Soup Company, Camden, N. J., reports the average sodium chlorid content of the Campbell soups, diluted for use, as about 1 g. per 100 mls. soup.

<sup>2</sup> In case the work is not continuous the preparation of the standard may be deferred to the present Exercise; or, if the standard has been prepared for some time, it must be checked against a known standard, the value of which is accurately known.

EXERCISE 29.—Pathological specimens: Using the blood filtrate given you, that has been obtained by venipuncture of pathological cases, analyze for the following quantities:

1. Non-protid nitrogen.
2. Urea nitrogen.
3. Uric acid (page 812).
4. Sugar.

Indicate which constituent you find abnormal in quantity.

EXERCISE 30.—The instructor will call for volunteers<sup>1</sup> from whom blood may be withdrawn by venipuncture. In this Exercise the instructor or assistants<sup>2</sup> will withdraw the blood. Chemists appointed from the class will prepare the anticoagulant, receive the blood, and analyze it for the nitrogen, chlorid, and sugar. Place the results upon the blackboard.

EXERCISE 31.—Preparatory to future work: Later, studies will be made upon deficiencies in diet on the lower animals. In order to prepare such demonstrations the following procedure is recommended<sup>3</sup>:

1. *Vitamin Deficiency*.—A. *Vitamin A*.—Place two white rats in Cage A and two in Cage B. Note sex and age; the laboratory records give these data. Mark Cage A with white paint and clip the ear of each rat with one "V" to indicate that it belongs to this cage; mark "V" in pencil on the label of this cage. Mark cage B with red paint and add a small marking of red paint to the coat of both rats in this cage.

Cage A, Experiment.

Cage B, Control.

Enter into a note-book the day on which the experiment began and other desirable data. Feed both sets of rats the following diet:

<sup>1</sup> The call should be issued at the meeting preceding the one at which the blood is to be used. The subjects must present themselves for venipuncture before taking breakfast, or the equivalent.

<sup>2</sup> It is always possible to obtain the services of a physician to aid in this class work. It is unwise at this time to permit students to operate unless under strict supervision. Later it is most desirable that the student learn the technic. This may be done on an experimental animal (as explained), but preferably on man.

<sup>3</sup> The instructor should appoint small groups of students to arrange these demonstrations. Each group should appoint a member to act as caretaker for the animals, rotating the work as desired.

Casein, purified, vitamin free <sup>1</sup> .....	50 gs.
Potato starch, commercial.....	150 "
Pure leaf lard.....	40 "
Salt mixture <sup>2</sup> .....	10 "

In addition, feed to the animals in Cage B fresh butter, 30 gs. The amount of food must depend upon the age and condition of the rats, which should be weighed at frequent intervals (daily, if possible) and their weight curve drawn. The weight should not fall below that at the beginning of the experiment in either case for at least two weeks.<sup>3</sup> At about this time signs of vitamin A deficiency should appear in the experimental animals in Cage A. Note especially the condition of the eyes. Rickets will not appear within the time limit of this Exercise, especially if adult rats are used. Attention will be given later to this condition.

B. *Vitamin B Deficiency*.—Place two pigeons in separate cages. Provide the cages with water, bits of egg or oyster-shell, and feed a plentiful supply of white, polished rice.

To B (control) feed also a mixture of cracked yellow corn, hempseed, barley, and some fresh vegetable like cabbage.

The cage must be kept free from droppings and the water dishes must be boiled at frequent intervals. After about ten days the birds will show the onset of avian beriberi, of which polyneuritis is one of the first symptoms, which becomes acute later, the time varying with the specimens.<sup>4</sup> After the pigeon has become evidently affected (compare

<sup>1</sup> Page 105.

<sup>2</sup> This is a mixture of different salts, acids, and bases. The laboratory maintains a stock supply of such a mixture, the ingredients of which are as follows:

Dairy salt <sup>5</sup> .....	75 gs.
Oyster shell, ground.....	10 "
Sodium carbonate.....	2 "
Syrupus ferri iodidi, U. S. Phar. IX.....	3 mls.
Bone ash <sup>6</sup> .....	10 gs.

<sup>3</sup> For normal curves of growth and standard data concerning the white rat see *The Rat*, Memoir No. 6, Wistar Institute, Philadelphia, The Wistar Institute of Anatomy and Biology, 36th Street and Woodland Avenue, 1924. For the care of the rat as an experimental animal see *Breeding and Care of the Albino Rat for Research Purposes*, by M. J. Greenman, M. D., and F. Louise Duhring, Philadelphia, The Wistar Institute of Anatomy and Biology, 1923.

<sup>4</sup> In the case of two pigeons that the author has used in the laboratories of Jefferson Medical College for over two years, one has not shown polyneuritic symptoms within the four-week interval that is sufficient to cause that condition in the second bird.

<sup>5</sup> See Wisconsin Agr. Exp. Bull. No. 74.

<sup>6</sup> Obtainable from the A. H. Thomas Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

Figs. 160 and 186), feed a diet consisting of a mixture of fresh yeast (compressed), hard-boiled eggs, wheat-germ, and cereal grains (cracked whole wheat, etc.). Note the rapid recovery.

C. *Vitamin C Deficiency*.—Scurvy. Guinea-pigs are best for this purpose. Place two male guinea-pigs, characteristically marked, in each of two cages. Feed to both the following diet:

	Parts.
Rolled oats.....	69
Alfalfa meal.....	25
Casein.....	5
Sodium chlorid.....	1

This diet will produce scurvy in guinea-pigs within two weeks under ordinary conditions (Steenbock's diet, personally communicated, for the favor the author's thanks being extended).

It also usually induces rachitic symptoms in guinea-pigs within three weeks, and unless treated the animals die within about one month. After pronounced scurvy symptoms have developed<sup>1</sup> administer to one set of the pigs (experiment) the following in addition to the diet just mentioned:

Orange juice.....	5 mls. (in milk)
Carrots, preferably small young, that have stood in water for several days and show growth of green leaves.....	ad libitum
Or lima beans, germinated on standing on wet blotting-paper in a warm place for several days.....	ad libitum

In order to see the effect of milk as antiscorbutic feed daily over 100 gs. (mls.) of fresh milk to the control animal. The recovery is slow. After some time feed fresh carrots, onions, and germinated peas or beans; the recovery is more rapid.

D. *Production of Rickets*.—In this Exercise only healthy, young rats may be used. Secure a wooden box that is used in the shipment of fruit. The box has a board dividing it into two compartments. Remove this board and saw or bore a hole through it large enough to

<sup>1</sup> These symptoms are bleeding from the gums, looseness of the teeth, etc., but for the purposes of superficial examination from day to day one may depend upon the assumption by the pig of what is known as the "face-ache" position, that is, applying one cheek to the bottom of the cage. When moving about the affected pig frequently retracts one hind leg as if the soles were tender. It is desirable to kill one pig and have the pathological department section the head of one femur after decalcification.



permit white rats to pass. Replace the board. Make a front, that can be opened, from expanded metal lathing or 1 cm. wire-mesh screening. Fill a pint milk bottle with fresh water and stopper it with a cork bearing a single glass tube that protrudes about 1 dcm., and inwardly about 0.5 dcm. With the bottle inverted, insert the tube into a small hole in the side of the cage and secure the bottle in a slightly inclined position by means of wires. The tube should be at such a height that the rat may remove drops of water from the tip of the tube by stretching its body upward, but does not brush the water from the tube in its ordinary movements about the cage. Lay a floor of sterilized (autoclaved) "excelsior" or other packing. Place the cage in a well-ventilated, but quiet and partially darkened room. Introduce a pair of breeding white rats<sup>1</sup> into the cage. Young will ordinarily be born (litters of from 6 to 8) within twenty-two days. The male should be left in the cage during the breeding season and until after the birth of the young. It will not disturb the young rats unless dietary or environmental conditions are abnormal. The mother must be fed a full diet of milk, cocoa, oats, cracked whole wheat, fresh vegetables, like chard, lettuce, carrots, cabbage, and apples. Cocoa should be added as a variation from a monotonous diet. Germinated beans of cereals should always form a part of the general diet of the male and female. The food should be administered three times daily during the lactating period and the excess food removed. After thirty days, when the young have reached a weight of about 50 gs., the experiment leading to rickets may be begun. Isolate the young animals in groups of two to four and feed exclusively the following diet (Steenbock, 2965)<sup>2</sup>:

	Parts.
Yellow corn.....	76
Wheat gluten.....	20
Calcium carbonate.....	3
Sodium chlorid.....	1

<sup>1</sup> White rats are for sale in various laboratories. The Wistar Institute, 36th Street and Woodland Avenue, Philadelphia, Pa., M. J. Greenman, M. D., Director, will supply stock at about \$3.50 per pair. One should not use a supply of white rats of unknown origin on account of prevalence of disease, vermin, and "wildness." White rats that have mingled with the wild Norway rat may have become infected with a Trypanosome, which, introduced into the human body, leads to a sleeping sickness of the general nature of the disease of the Congo. In the case of rat-bite fever the same treatment administered for trypanosomiasis is effective.

<sup>2</sup> Personally communicated by Dr. Steenbock to the author; the favor shown in this instance is greatly appreciated.

This diet will ordinarily produce rickets in the white rat within a month. Within about this time rickets will become active, manifesting itself by lameness. Kill one rat and, if possible, photograph it with the Roentgen ray at the knee-joint upon a dental film. Section as for the conditions in scurvy (pages 632, 633, and 854, note). To the remaining rats feed an antirachitic diet as follows. Divide the animals into two groups:

Group A receives standardized<sup>1</sup> cod-liver oil in liberal amounts in addition to the rachitic diet just given.

Group B receives irradiated cholesterol<sup>2</sup> or lanolin containing cholesterol esters.

Improvement should be noticed after a few days. The progress of calcification should be followed if possible by the fluoroscope or by roentgenograms. After several weeks kill one rat and section the head of the femur (page 636), as previously directed (page 854, note).

**EXERCISE 32.**—At this point each student should record his diet, so that it may be referred to in evaluating his caloric intake. Record the complete diet for breakfast, dinner, and supper (or lunch and dinner), as well as food ingested between meals. Record all intake of water (a glass holds from 150 to 200 mls. according to the kind of glass), beverages, etc. Continue for one week.

**EXERCISE 33.**—Qualitative determinations on pathological urines: Secure from the instructor pathological urine. Make tests for the following substances:

1. Albumin (pages 750–752).
2. Sugar (page 760).
3. Aceton (page 767).
4. Di-acetic acid (page 766).

**EXERCISE 34.**—Quantitative determination of protid in the urine: Use the Quick method, page 752. Also use the Esbach method, page 753. Check your results by the method given on page 846, weighing the precipitated protid.

<sup>1</sup> That is, commercial cod-liver oil, the antirachitic value of which is indicated on the label.

<sup>2</sup> Cholesterol that has been exposed to the rays of an ultraviolet quartz lamp at a distance of 10 cms. for over two hours. The Cooper-Hewitt lamp may be used.

EXERCISE 35.—Determine the sugar content as glucose of the specimen of urine used in a preceding Exercise (Exercise 33) by the two following methods:

1. Method of Folin (page 757).
2. Method of Benedict (page 157).

EXERCISE 36.—Make osazone tests upon the unknown urines given you.

EXERCISE 37.—Under the direction of the instructor make polariscope analysis of the unknown urines given you in Exercise 33.

EXERCISE 38. *Effect of Insulin*.—This Exercise should be commenced at the beginning of a laboratory period in order to give adequate time for the completion of the recovery stages. A white (albino) rabbit is preferred. Weigh the rabbit which has been starved for twelve hours preceding the experiment. Clip the hair from the outer margin of one ear and incise the marginal vein (Fig. 243). By massage aid the flow of blood and collect about 3 to 4 mls. of blood. A chemist, selected from the group of students,<sup>1</sup> determines the content of blood-sugar by one of the methods outlined on pages 821–824 of the text. Inject subcutaneously (this is facilitated by holding up the skin of the back) a dose of insulin calculated to give 0.04 g. blood sugar per 100 mls. of whole blood within four hours<sup>2</sup>; or a femoral vein may be exposed and the injection made into it. Withdraw blood from the marginal vein<sup>3</sup> at the end of one hour and again at the end of two hours, and analyze for sugar. When convulsions appear inject immediately 10 mls. of warm 1 per cent. glucose solution intravenously; or one may introduce a stomach-tube with a “physiological funnel” (Fig. 252) and administer a quantity of warm 5 per cent.

<sup>1</sup> In large classes one rabbit should be used for each ten students; from this group an operator, a chemist, and four reporters should be selected.

<sup>2</sup> This is calculated according to the weight of the rabbit and the strength of the insulin used. It is possible that a clinical unit will be used in which one unit is contained in either 10, 20 or 40 mls., being “U-10,” etc. The original Toronto unit of insulin is three times the strength of the clinical unit and the Toronto unit is defined as the amount of insulin which will produce hypoglycemia to 0.04 g. glucose per cent. and hypoglycemic convulsions in four hours. The statement made above applies to the “Iletin” of Eli Lilly & Co., Indianapolis, Ind. See Appendix.

<sup>3</sup> If the blood has clotted in one vein, another may be used, or the femoral or the jugular may be used.

glucose solution into the stomach. Note the recovery. A final blood-sugar determination should be made.

EXERCISE 39.—*The Piqûre of Claude Bernard*.—Introduce by stomach-tube<sup>1</sup> into a fully grown female rabbit 1 g. of urethane per kilo of body weight (Appendix). After thirty minutes introduce into the occiput a thin hat-pin or tempered wire, directed downward and tipped slightly forward. Note when the instrument has reached the floor of the cranium. The distance should be marked off by measurement along the side of the animal's head before the experiment has begun. Move the point backward and forward and then withdraw



Fig. 243.—Intravenous injection of a rabbit, as in insulin experimentation. (From Kolmer, *Infection, Immunity, and Biologic Therapy*.)

the probe. There should be no loss of blood. Lay the animal on its back on a board and catheterize the bladder. Test the urine from time to time for reducing substance. Glucose should appear within half an hour.

EXERCISE 40.—Secure from the store-room a sample of diabetic human urine. Determine the following quantities on the same specimen:

Total nitrogen (page 687).

Sugar (page 157).

<sup>1</sup>A male catheter with physiological funnel and mouth-piece serve for this purpose.



From this data obtain the D/N ratio.<sup>1</sup> Correlate the value of the ratio with the condition of the patient as obtained from the hospital record room.

EXERCISE 41.—Repeat Exercises 25, 26, 27, and 28, and analyze the blood of the subjects volunteering for this purpose for the following quantities:

1. Non-protid nitrogen.
2. Urea nitrogen.

EXERCISE 42.—By means of the Van Slyke method (page 70), under the direction of an instructor, determine the carbon dioxide combining power of blood taken from a volunteer. Is the finding normal?

EXERCISE 43. *Gastric Analysis*.—A number of volunteers<sup>2</sup> abstain from breakfast and follow the routine given on page 436. The following determinations are to be made:

1. Total acidity (page 440).
2. Free acidity (page 441).
3. Organic (lactic) acid (page 445).
4. Peptic activity (pages 445 and 446).

Appropriate curves will be drawn and the results discussed. (See page 444.)

EXERCISE 44.—Collect specimens of urine from the subjects in Exercise 43. Correlate the findings with those of gastric acidity. Is there any evidence of "alkaline tide"?

EXERCISE 45. *Duodenal Drainage*.—A subject (page 458), either student or instructor, will take the duodenal tube and bile-drainage will be made. The bile should show characteristic A, B, and C biles.<sup>3</sup> The class will make chemical tests on the fresh human bile thus obtained:

<sup>1</sup> Page 496.

<sup>2</sup> Practically all students in the classes of Jefferson Medical College submit themselves to this Exercise during the term. The student must remember that this procedure is routinely performed in hospitals and involves thousands of determinations a week throughout the world. Each medical student should have experienced as many of the routine procedures in medicine as possible, since otherwise it is impossible for him to treat his patients in a sympathetic and efficient manner.

<sup>3</sup> See Lyon, cited on page 480; also see Fig. 149, page 458.



1. Note physical characteristics:
  - (a) Color.
  - (b) Odor.
  - (c) Specific gravity.
  - (d) Foam test (page 111).
  - (e) Hay's test (page 111).
2. Chemical studies:
  - (a) Gmelin's test (page 472).
  - (b) Pettenkofer's test (page 468).

EXERCISE 46.—Examination of specimens of body fluids for the presence of blood (pages 390–394):

EXERCISE 47. *Glucose Tolerance Test*.—Volunteers present themselves without breakfast for this test. Each takes 100 gs.<sup>1</sup> of pure glucose dissolved in enough water to permit ready administration. The urine is voided immediately, at half-hour intervals for a period of two hours; and each specimen is tested for sugar. If sugar appear, quantitative determination should be made.

EXERCISE 48.—Volunteers present themselves for the following test without breakfast. Five mls. of blood are withdrawn and the time noted. Immediately 100 gs. of pure glucose are administered as in the preceding Exercise. Blood-sugar is studied on the initial blood sample and on one taken one, two, and three hours after ingestion. Plot a curve showing the blood-sugar level at the different times of the analysis.

EXERCISE 49. *Basal Metabolism*.—The subject volunteering for this Exercise presents himself in the morning after a light dinner of the previous evening and without breakfast. He has retired early (before 10 P. M.), and comes to the laboratory, where he reclines on a cot at absolute rest for half an hour. Then the apparatus is rolled into place, after having been carefully checked for leaks or other errors, the mouthpiece adjusted, and the run is made. Eight or ten minutes suffice. Discontinue the run, make the calculations, and express the result as percentage above or below the normal, al-

<sup>1</sup> It is better to use the amount of glucose suitable for the weight of the subject, that is, 1.75 g. per kilo body weight.

lowing a variation of  $\pm 15$  per cent., before considering the rate indicative of a pathological condition.

EXERCISE 50.—The subject of the preceding experiment is given a breakfast and the class estimates the caloric, vitamin, keto-antiketogenic value, and whatever other data can be determined within the time limit of the Exercise.

EXERCISE 51. *Food Surveys*.—In order to instruct the prospective medical student in practical analysis of foods and diets, the following Exercise should be performed: The class is divided into groups of four students each, each group selecting a topic from the following list, and presenting the results as a paper before the class before the end of the term:

1. Estimation of Calories on own diet.
2. Estimation of Calories on diet of selected case of large individual at hard, manual labor, such as a gardener, railroad trackman, woodsman, foundryman, or coal-heaver.
3. Estimation of Calories on diet of sedentary worker, such as librarian, clerk, cashier, or draftsman.
4. Study of vitamin content in food displayed at a given market or grocery.
5. Using tables from books on diets (pages 622 and 111), estimate the salt (NaCl) content of a restaurant meal served in a selected restaurant.
6. Estimation of keto-antiketogenic value of own diet.
7. Comparison of two selected restaurants regarding cost of food as served per caloric and other nutritional values.
8. Composition of a diet for a subject suffering with gout.
9. Selection of foods from a given menu suitable for a diabetic.
10. Selection of foods from a given menu suitable for an obese person.

Other topics of similar kind may be suggested by the instructor.



## APPENDIX

### REAGENTS REQUIRED IN THE EXERCISES OF THE PRECEDING PAGES

*Acetic Acid*.—Acetate solution for amino-acid analysis, see page 886.

*Acetic Acid, Glacial*.—99 per cent. acetic acid. Specific gravity 1.48. Common impurity,  $\text{H.COOH}$ .

*Acetic Acid, Normal Solution*.—Dilute 54 mls. glacial acetic acid up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Percentage dissociation in decinormal solution, at  $25^{\circ}\text{C}$ ., 0.013 per cent.

*Acetic Acid, Strong*.—36 per cent. acetic acid. A commercial product.

*Acetic Anhydrid*.—For cholesterol determinations a freshly distilled product is desirable. Method of procedure: Weigh approximately 120 gs. fused sodium acetate and place in a liter distilling flask connected with a long Liebig condenser. Add, by means of a dropping funnel inserted through the stopper of the flask, 90 gs. acetyl chlorid, technical. Make the additions of the chlorid slowly while the flask rests in cold water, or in an ice-mixture. Mix by rotating the flask. Then place the flask on an asbestos gauze over a Bunsen burner, and when the thermometer, passed through a second hole in the stopper, reaches  $130^{\circ}\text{C}$ ., collect the distillate. B. p. of acetic anhydrid,  $139^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Discard the distillate above  $140^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The chief impurities are chlorids and compounds like thioacetic acid.

*Aceto-acetic Acid*.—This substance may be obtained from ethyl aceto-acetate,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2\text{COO.C}_2\text{H}_5$ , by hydrolysis. The Gauthier method for the synthesis of the ester, ethyl-aceto-acetate (see Meyer and Jacobson, *Organischen Chemie*, I, p. 961, 1893), is as follows: From a block of sodium metal shave about 30 gs. into a liter flask connected with a Hopkins reflux condenser (Fig. 108, page 290). Add 300 gs. of "absolute" acetic ethyl ester ("ethyl acetate" or "acetic ether"); a violent reaction usually occurs. If an evident reaction does not take place, very gently warm the flask. When the action has slowed, place a water-bath under the flask and continue heating as long as particles of metal sodium appear when the flask is agitated. Cool. Add dilute hydrochloric acid to distinct acidity (litmus paper). Now add one volume of saturated  $\text{NaCl}$  solution. Transfer the solution to a separatory funnel and separate the oily layer (sodium ethyl aceto-acetate) from the aqueous layer. Leave the oily layer in a desiccating dish over dry  $\text{CaCl}_2$  for a day or longer. Transfer to a liter distillation flask connected with a Liebig condenser and collect the distillate that appears when the thermometer reaches  $160^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Ethyl-aceto-acetate comes over between  $175^{\circ}$  to  $185^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The yield is about 120 gs. Aceto-acetic acid from ethyl aceto-acetate: While the solution in alcohol of the acetate may be used for the tests for diacetic acid, one may convert the ethyl-ester into the acid by hydrolyzing it, but the acid decomposes in a heated acid solution: Make the potassium salt of ethyl-acetato-acetate by treating the preparation synthesized above with a 3 per cent.  $\text{KOH}$  solution and leaving the preparation in an ice-box over night. Then acidulate with dilute sulphuric acid and shake the flask with ethyl ether. Separate the ether layer from the second layer and transfer the ether to a large evaporating dish; leave on a water-bath or electric hot-plate until the ether has evaporated. Add barium carbonate

solution; the sulphuric acid is removed as barium sulphate. The ester remains as a syrupy mass which absorbs water readily.

*Aceto-acetic Acid Solutions for Arnold's Method.*—(1) To 25 mls. of water add 2 mls. concentrated HCl and then add 1 g. *p*-amino-acetophenon. Make up to 100 mls. with water. (2) One g. sodium nitrite made up to 100 mls. H<sub>2</sub>O. For use, mix 2 volumes of (1) with 1 of (2), add 1 volume of urine, 2 drops of concentrated NH<sub>4</sub>OH, and to 2 mls. of the mixture add 15 mls. of concentrated HCl. A purple color indicates a positive reaction.

*Aceton Solution of Scott-Wilson.*—Silver mercuric cyanid solution. Dissolve 9 gs. of NaOH purified by alcohol and 0.5 g. mercuric cyanide in 60 mls. of distilled water. Add 20 mls. of a silver nitrate solution containing 0.7268 g. silver nitrate



Fig. 244.—“Acid mouth” reagent bottle. In use, grasp the stopper between the index- and second finger and hold the stopper while using the contents of the bottle; do not lay the stopper upon the table.

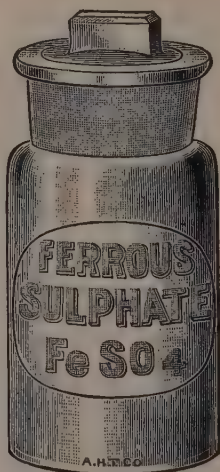


Fig. 245.—“Salt-mouth” bottle, suitable for solid chemicals, like NaCl, etc.

per 100 mls. of solution, stirring slowly. If necessary, filter through a layer of asbestos in a Gooch crucible. The silver nitrate solution must be added slowly and with uninterrupted and vigorous stirring. The final solution must be clear; if turbid, let settle for several days and use the supernatant liquid decanted from the residue. For Folin's method of preparing this reagent see page 887 under the names of the describers.

*Aceton Solution for the Van'Slyke Procedure.*—(1) Cupric sulphate solution: 200 gs. of crystals dissolved in water and made up to 1000 mls. (2) Mercuric sulphate solution: 73 gs. of pure red mercuric oxid, dissolved in 1000 mls. of 4 normal H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> solution. (3) Sulphuric acid: To 500 mls. of distilled water in a large flask add, cautiously, 600 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid. Cool under the



- tap and make up to 1000 mls. Titrate 2 mls. against a normal NaOH solution and adjust to make a solution 17 normal. (4) Calcium hydroxid solution: Mix 100 gs. of light calcium hydroxid with 1000 mls. of distilled water. (5) Potassium dichromate solution: Dissolve 50 gs. of the crystals in water and make up to 1000 mls.
- Aceton Solution for Use as Standard for Quantitative Determination.*—See page 887.
- Acree-Rosenheim Reagent.*—1 : 6000 solution commercial formalin.
- Alcohol, Detection of Methanol.*—See page 893.
- Alcoholic Sodium Hydroxid Solution.*—Weigh 20 gs. of NaOH (or KOH) on a laboratory balance and dissolve in enough "absolute" ethanol to make 1000 mls.
- Aldehydes, Schiff's Reaction for.*—See page 897.
- Alkaline Molybdate Solution.*—See page 867.
- Alkaline Picrate.*—See page 868.
- Almén's Reagent.*—Dissolve 4 gs. of tannic acid in 8 mls. of 30 per cent. acetic acid and add 190 mls. of 50 per cent. ethanol.
- Alpha-naphthol Solution.*—Dissolve 1 g. of alpha-naphthol in about 50 mls. of ethanol and dilute with this strength alcohol to 100 mls.
- Amino-nitrogen Tables.*—See page 902.
- Ammoniacal Silver Nitrate Solution.*—See page 898.
- Ammonium Carbonate Normal Solution.*—48 gs.  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{CO}_3$  dissolved in 200 mls. distilled water and made up to 1000 mls.
- Ammonium Chlorid Normal Solution.*—214 gs.  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  dissolved in distilled water and made up to 1000 mls.
- Ammonium Hydroxid, Concentrated.*—"Ammonia water." Twenty-eight per cent.  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  gas dissolved in water at 20° C. Clear and colorless, specific gravity, 0.90. Common impurity,  $\text{CO}_2$ , Ca, pyridin (unless specially purified).
- Ammonium Hydroxid, Dilute.*—Ten per cent. solution made from the 28 per cent. by dilution. Specific gravity, 0.96.
- Ammonium Hydroxid, Normal Solution.*—52.5 mls. of concentrated  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  made up to 1000 mls. with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Percentage dissociation in decinormal solution at 25° C., 0.013 per cent.
- Ammonium Molybdate Solution for Phosphates.*—Dissolve 124 gs.  $(\text{NH}_4)_6\text{Mo}_7\text{O}_{24} \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in lukewarm water and add distilled water to make 1000 mls. of solution.
- Ammonium Molybdate Stock Solution.*—Pour 100 mls. of 20 per cent. or stronger ammonium hydroxid solution into a mortar and add 75 gs. ammonium molybdate crystals; the preparation should be made in a hood. Grind with a pestil until the crystals are dissolved. Add 200 mls. more of the ammonium hydroxid. Pour into a 3000-ml. volumetric cylinder 900 mls. of concentrated nitric acid. Dilute with 400 mls. of distilled water. To this mixture add, in small quantities at a time, the ammonium molybdate solution first prepared. Keep the solutions cool during the additions. Finally add 1600 mls. of distilled water and mix thoroughly. Stopper. Filter if necessary.
- Ammonium Nitrate Solution, Normal.*—Add 80 gs.  $\text{NH}_4\text{NO}_3$  to about 200 gs. distilled water and make up to 1000 mls.
- Ammonium Oxalate Solution.*—For Ca determinations. Two gs. ammonium oxalate made up to 100 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- Ammonium Sulphate Standard Nitrogen Solution.*—See page 887.
- Ammonium Sulphide Solution.*—The solution as made and sold on the market contains about 8 per cent. sulphur.
- Amylol Mixture for Babcock Determinations.*—Mix 50 mls. amylol (amyl-alcohol) with 50 mls. concentrated HCl.

*Anilin Acetate Paper.*—Suspend 1 volume of anilin in 1 volume of distilled water and 1 of acetic acid (glacial). Mix. Dip filter-paper strips into the mixture, drain, dry in the air, and preserve in salt-mouth bottles (Fig. 245).

*Antifoaming Mixture.*—See page 889, cetyl alcohol.

*Apomorphin Hydrochlorid.*—Emetic: Dog, by hypodermic syringe, 1 mg. per kilogram of body weight; or 0.1 ml. of a 1 per cent. aqueous solution per kilo. Time before effect occurs: about five minutes. Minimal dose, 0.2 mg. per kg. For cat, dose may be twice as great. Man (following accidental poisoning): 10 mgs. by mouth; 5 mgs. by hypodermic administration.

*Aqua Regia* (Nitrohydrochloric Acid).—Concentrated  $\text{HNO}_3$ , 1 volume;  $\text{HCl}$ , 4 volumes.

*Atropin Sulphate.*—Used on experimental animals to save cessation of heart-beat in overanesthetization with chloroform. Dose, rabbit, by stomach-tube, 1.5 g. Hypodermically, 500 to 750 mgs. Intravenous, 70 to 75 mgs. (All per kilo of body weight.) Dog, hypodermically, per kilo: 140 to 400 mgs. Cat, per kilo hypodermically, 30 mgs. Guinea-pig, 600 mgs. per kilo. White rat, 2.5 gs. hypodermically, per kilo. Maximum non-fatal dose for man, 1 mg.

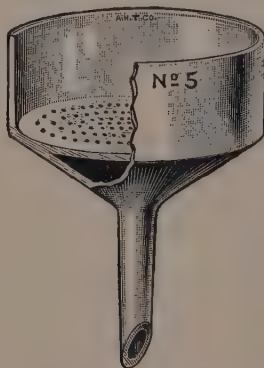


Fig. 246.—Buchner funnel. Filter-paper is laid upon the perforated disk. The stem of the funnel is inserted into the stopper of a suction flask.

*Barfoed's Reagent.*—Dissolve 45 gs. of neutral, crystal cupric acetate in about 900 mls. of distilled water. Filter if the solution is not clear. To the clear solution add 2 mls. of 30 per cent. acetic acid. Dilute with distilled water to 1000 mls.

*Barium Chlorid Solution, Normal.*—Add 122 gs.  $\text{BaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to water and make up after dissolution to 1000 mls.

*Barium Hydroxid, 0.25 Normal Solution.*—4.2 gs.  $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$  dissolved in distilled water and made up to 100 mls.

*Barium Hydroxid Solution, Commercial Solution.*—3.3 per cent.  $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , aqueous solution.

*Baryta Mixture.*—Make the following normal barium chlorid solution: Weigh 122 gs. of  $\text{BaCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. To each volume of this solution add 2 volumes of the baryta water described below.

*Baryta Water.*—Dissolve 100 gs. of barium hydroxid ( $\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot 8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) crystals in 1500 mls. of boiling water. Filter while hot. Permit the solution to cool. Crystals of barium hydroxid separate. Decant the supernatant liquid ("baryta water")

into a bottle bearing a trap containing moist soda-lime (sodium-calcium hydrate) in order to prevent the entrance of  $\text{CO}_2$  into the bottle.

*Basic Lead Acetate.*—See page 224.

*Bell-Doisy Reagents for Phosphates.*—See page 777 and below.

*Benedict's Creatinin Standard Solution.*—Dissolve 100 mgs. pure creatinin in distilled water in a 100-ml. volumetric flask, add 1 ml. concentrated  $\text{HCl}$  and make up to the mark with distilled water. One ml.  $\approx$  1 mg. creatinin.

*Benedict's Decolorizer for Creatin Determination.*—Powdered lead, chemically pure.

*Benedict's (with Bock) Method for Nessler's Solution.*—Weigh 100 gs. of mercuric iodid,  $\text{HgI}_2$ ; transfer to a liter volumetric flask. Add 70 gs. of potassium iodid,  $\text{KI}$ . Cover with about 400 mls. of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Dissolve by agitating the contents of the flask. Add, with constant shaking, about 500 mls. of 20 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$  solution and make up to the mark with distilled water. Leave several days for a precipitate to settle, from which the clear, supernatant fluid may be decanted into another vessel.

*Benedict's Method for Purifying Picric Acid for Blood and Urine Chemistry.*—Weigh 400 gs. of commercial picric acid with 10 or 20 per cent. water for the purpose of prevention of explosion. Transfer to a 2-liter Pyrex flask. Add 1 liter of

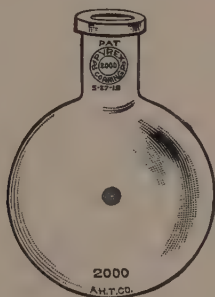


Fig. 247.—“Balloon type” flask for use in continuous boiling.

chemically pure benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ . Place the flask carefully on an electric hot plate, protected by a soft asbestos mat. Boil vigorously and at intervals agitate the contents. Fold a large filter-paper and place it in a funnel. Moisten the interior of the paper with benzene and carefully pour the hot picric-benzene solution from the flask through the paper into a large beaker. Place the beaker on the hotplate, cover with a watch-glass, and heat until the picric acid has been entirely dissolved. Turn off the current and let the beaker remain either on the plate or in a locker overnight. Drain off the supernatant benzene from the large, hard yellow crystals and wash twice with portions of benzene, 75-ml. portions. Transfer the crystals to a shallow dish and place on the hot plate to cause the evaporation of the benzene. The temperature must not be over  $80^\circ \text{C}$ . Keep the crystals thus purified and dried in a salt-mouth bottle. Remember that picric acid is highly inflammable and explosive when contained in an enclosed vessel; even a mechanical jar is sufficient sometimes to cause explosion.

*Benedict's Molybdic Acid Reagent for Blood Phosphorus* (compare the sulphite reagent mentioned above).—Dissolve 20 gs. of pure, ammonia-free molybdic acid,  $\text{MoO}_3$ , in 25 mls. of 20 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$ . Warm to about  $50^\circ \text{C}$ . Dilute to 200 mls. with distilled water. Mix and filter. Transfer to a liter flask and add, while

agitating the contents of the flask, under cold water, from the tap, and add 200 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid. The color must not be brownish, for this indicates that the solution has become overheated during the addition of the acid.

*Benedict's Picric-picrate Solution.*—To 125 mls. of normal sodium hydroxid solution, in a liter volumetric flask, add about 700 mls. of distilled water at 80° C. Add 36 gs. of dry or 40 gs. moistened picric acid and dissolve completely by agitating the contents of the flask. Cool to room temperature and make up to the mark (1000 mls.). Filter.

*Benedict's Reagent for Blood Phosphorus.*—Dissolve 30 gs. of sodium bisulphite,  $\text{NaHSO}_3$ , in about 100 mls. of distilled water in a 200-ml. volumetric flask. Add 1 g. hydrochinon and mix. Dilute to the mark with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

*Benedict's Reagents for the Direct Method for Uric Acid in Blood and Urine.*—

(1) Place 100 gs. of sodium tungstate<sup>1</sup> in a liter Pyrex flask. Add about 600 mls. of distilled water. Dissolve. Add 50 gs. pure arsenic pentoxid,  $\text{As}_2\text{O}_5$ . Dissolve. Add 25 mls. of 85 per cent. phosphoric acid and 20 mls. of concentrated  $\text{HCl}$ . Boil for twenty minutes, cool, transfer to a liter volumetric flask, and make to the mark with distilled water.

(2) Weigh 5 gs. of  $\text{NaCN}$  and add enough water to make 100 mls. of solution.

(3) Specially diluted Benedict-Hitchcock uric acid standard solution (page 869): Pipette 50 mls. of the Benedict-Hitchcock standard solution into a 500-ml. volumetric flask. Dilute to about 400 mls. with distilled water. Add 25 mls. of 1 : 10  $\text{HCl}$  solution, dilute to the mark, and mix. Ten mls. of this standard solution contain 0.2 mg. of uric acid.

*Benedict's Solution for Sugar, Qualitative.*—Dissolve 173 gs. of trisodium citrate ( $\text{Na}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7 \cdot 11\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) in about 600 mls. of distilled water at about 60° C. Add 90 gs. of dry sodium carbonate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ . Filter through a fluted filter. Make up to 850 mls. with distilled water. Weigh exactly 17.3 gs. of highest purity crystallized cupric sulphate ( $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and dissolve in about 100 mls. of distilled water. After mixing, dilute to about 150 mls. To the citrate-carbonate solution add, with constant stirring and in small amounts, the cupric sulphate solution. The volume should be close to 1000 mls.

*Benedict's Solution for Sugar, Quantitative.*—To about 600 mls. distilled water at 60° C. add 200 gs. of trisodium citrate. Dissolve by stirring. Add 200 gs. crystallized (or 75 gs. anhydrous) sodium carbonate. Finally, weigh 125 gs. of potassium thiocyanate ( $\text{KCNS}$ ) rapidly from a stock bottle and dissolve in the above solution of citrate-carbonate. Dilute with distilled water to about 800 mls. Let stand until cool and then filter. Weigh carefully 18 gs. of  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  crystals and dissolve in about 100 mls. of distilled water. Pour this solution slowly and with stirring into the citrate-carbonate-thiosulphate solution first made. Add 5 mls. of 5 per cent. solution of potassium ferrocyanide ( $\text{K}_4\text{Fe}(\text{CN})_6 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ). Dilute with distilled water to 1000 mls., filter, and keep in cork-stoppered bottles.

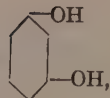
*Benedict's Standard Glucose Solution.*—(1) For urine: Dissolve 167 mgs. pure glucose in 400 mls. distilled water. Add 5 mls. of toluene, mix well, and dilute to 500 mls. with distilled water.

(2) For blood: Dissolve 0.1 g. pure glucose in about 400 mls. of 2 per cent. picric acid in a 500-ml. volumetric flask. Mix and dilute to the mark with the saturated picric acid. Three mls. of this solution  $\approx$  0.6 mg. glucose.

<sup>1</sup> Specially prepared for blood and urine analysis. Several of the larger houses furnishing chemicals will supply this material.



*Benedict's Standard Phenol Reagent.*—Weigh 11.62 mgs. of pure resorcinol,



and dilute to 100 mls. with 0.1 normal HCl. 5 mls.  $\approx$  0.5 mg. phenol.

*Benedict's Standard Phosphorus Solution.*—Dissolve 0.11 g. of potassium dihydrogen phosphate in a 300-ml. volumetric flask containing about 200 mls. of distilled water and make to the mark with chloroform water (5 mls.  $\text{CHCl}_3$  shaken up with 100 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ).

*Benedict's Total Sulphur Reagent.*—Into a 100-ml. volumetric flask place 20 gs. of cupric nitrate crystals. Add 50 mls. of distilled water, lukewarm ( $50^\circ \text{C}$ ). Then add 5 gs. of potassium chlorate,  $\text{KClO}_3$ , and make to the mark with distilled water.

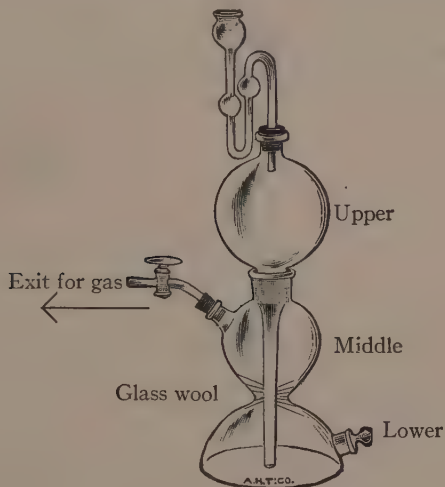


Fig. 248.—Kipp gas generator.

*Benedict-Hitchcock Standard Uric Acid Solution.*—Dissolve 9 gs. of pure  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  and 1 g.  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$  in 250 mls. of distilled water at  $60^\circ \text{C}$ . Filter into a 500-ml. volumetric flask and make up to the mark with cold water. Pour this tepid solution over exactly 200 mgs. of uric acid suspended in a few mls. of distilled water in a liter volumetric flask. Agitate the contents of the flask until all of the uric acid has become dissolved. Cool, add exactly 1.4 ml. glacial acetic acid and 5 mls. of chloroform. Then dilute to the mark. Five mls. contain 1 mg. uric acid. Keep in a cool place.

*Benedict-Nash Reagent for the Ammonia Content of the Blood.*—Into a Pyrex beaker of 100 mls. capacity weigh 8 gs. of potassium carbonate,  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ , and add 50 mls. of distilled water. After solution of the carbonate add 12 gs. of potassium oxalate crystals. Boil to about 30 mls. and then dilute to about 50 mls. with ammonia-free distilled water.<sup>1</sup> Repeat once and then finally dilute to 80 mls. Keep well stoppered.

<sup>1</sup> Distil in resistance glass (Pyrex, Jena, quartz) 250 mls. of freshly distilled water with 10 mls. of concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , saving only the middle portion.



*Benedict-Osterberg Boneblack for the Determination of Normal Urinary Sugar.*—

Method of purification: Treat 250 gs. of commercial boneblack with 1500 mls. of 1 : 4 HCl solution. Boil for half an hour. Filter the boneblack from the acid solution by means of a Buchner funnel and aspirating pump. Wash with hot water until the washings are neutral to litmus paper. Dry and powder. Test: Shake 15 mls. of a 0.5 per cent. glucose solution with 1 g. of the boneblack; filter and make a test for glucose on the filtrate. The test must be negative.

*Benzidin Solution for Sulphates.*—Grind 4 gs. of best quality benzidin with about 10 mls. of distilled water in a mortar. Wash into a 2000-ml. flask by means of about 500 mls. of distilled water. Add 5 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid and make up to the mark.

Hydrochloric acid 25 per cent. solution: Dilute 1 volume of concentrated hydrochloric acid with 3 volumes of distilled water.



Fig. 249.—Allihn type condenser. This form of condenser is especially desirable in biochemical work.

Saturated benzidin sulphate solution: Make a solution of benzidin sulphate by adding 5 gs. of sodium sulphate to 200 mls. of the benzidin hydrochlorid solution described above. Filter through a hardened filter in a Buchner funnel with suction, saving the residue on the paper. Wash once with cold water. Add the residue to 500 mls. of distilled water at 60° C. Permit to stand over night in a cool place. Filter through ordinary paper in a funnel. The solution must be clear.

*Bial's Reagent.*—Add 1.5 gs. of orcinol to 500 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid.

Mix and add 6 drops of 5 per cent. solution ferric chlorid.

*Bichromate.*—See page 896.

*Boneblack Preparation for Sugars in Normal Urine.*—See above.

*Bromin Poisoning Treatment.*—Apply anilin; in case of overbreathing Br fumes, inhale anilin fumes for not over thirty seconds (half a minute) at a time.

**Bromin Water.**—Place a large flask containing 100 mls. of distilled, cold water in a hood, or under an exhaust. Add a few drops of liquid bromin from a stock bottle and replace the stopper at once. Shake the flask vigorously. Add more bromin and repeat. Caution: Bromin affects the respiratory mucous membrane. In case of excess breathing of the bromin fumes, snuff into the nostrils a small amount of anilin vapors. In case a bromin burn occurs, remove the excess bromin by means of a piece of cotton and apply anilin. Anilin bromid is formed which is less irritating than bromin.

**Bruecke's Reagent.**—Dissolve 50 gs. of potassium iodid in 500 mls. of distilled water, saturating with mercuric iodid (120 gs.). Make up to 1000 mls.

**Buffer Solutions: Sorensen Solutions.**—(1) Decinormal hydrochloric acid solution: Pour about 200 mls. of best quality commercial hydrochloric acid, concentrated, specific gravity 1.18, into a distillation flask connected with a Liebig condenser. Distil until one-third has passed over. The acid solution left contains 20.2 per cent. of HCl gas. Dilute 165 mls. up to 1 liter; this will give almost a normal solution. Determine the normality by titrating against an exact standard solution of base.

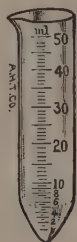


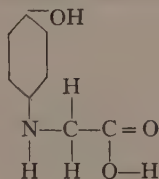
Fig. 250.—A 50-ml. centrifuge tube, graduated. For mounting in use see Fig. 256.

(2) Decinormal sodium hydroxid solution: Obtain from the store-room 50 grams of stick sodium hydroxid from sodium. Place it immediately in a weighing bottle and weigh out, rapidly, on a torsion balance, 42 grams. Dissolve the sticks in distilled water and make up to a liter with distilled water. Cool to room temperature. Determine the normality by titrating against standard sulphuric acid with methyl orange as indicator. Keep the solution in a vessel closed with a trap containing a saturated solution of barium hydroxid. From this stock make up a decinormal solution by dilution.

(3) Glycin-NaCl solution: Test a small amount of the glycine<sup>1</sup> for chlorion and sulphion; if either is present in detectable amounts, discard the preparation. By means of the Kjeldahl total nitrogen method determine the nitrogen in 2 grams of a sample; the theoretical amount of nitrogen is 18.67 gs. per 100 grams of glycine. From a pure specimen, weigh 7.505 gs. Weigh, from a pure sodium

<sup>1</sup> Note that this glycine (amino-acetic acid) is not the same as the glycine sold

on the photographic market as "glycine," which is:

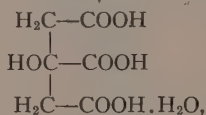


chlorid supply, 5.85 gs. NaCl. Dissolve the glycin and the salt in about 200 mls. distilled water and make up to 1 liter solution. This makes a decimolar solution of glycin.

(4) One-fifteenth molecular solution of acid phosphate: Select a specimen of mono-potassium-di-hydrogen phosphate ("primary potassium phosphate"),  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , that will exhibit a marked change in color when either acid or alkali in decinormal solution is added to a weak solution of the salt. The salt should be water-free (loss of weight on drying at  $100^\circ \text{C}$ . for twenty-four hours not over 1 part in 1000). Weigh 9.078 gs. and dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

(5) Fifteenth molecular solution of alkaline phosphate: As obtained on the market,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  bears 12 molecules of water of crystallization. The Sørensen standard buffer uses the salt  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . This may be purchased by special order from supply houses, or it may be obtained by exposing some of the salt with  $12\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to a dust-free atmosphere for about a fortnight during which period  $10\text{H}_2\text{O}$  are lost, leaving  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Tests for chlorion and sulphion must be negative. Weigh 11.876 gs.  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and dissolve in water; make up to 1 liter.

(6) Decinormal solution of sodium citrate: This solution is made by mixing citric acid with sodium hydroxid: Crystals of the acid,



dissolved in water must show no qualitative test for chlorion or for sulphion. When dried in an oven at  $70^\circ \text{C}$ ., for twenty-four hours, the color of the crystals must not change. Weigh 21.008 gs. and dissolve in exactly 200 mls. normal solution of sodium hydroxid prepared as directed under (2) above. Dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

(7) Boric solution: A pure brand of boric acid,  $\text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$ , should be selected. Throw about 5 gs. of the substance into distilled water; there should be no residue. Chlorion and sulphion tests must be negative. Treated with a few drops of methyl orange solution, the color must be orange. Weigh 12.404 gs. of the acid and dissolve in exactly 100 mls. normal sodium hydroxid solution; then make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Caffein for Stimulating Overanesthetized Experimental Animal.*—Dog, hypodermically, per kilo, 75 mgs. By stomach-tube, 100 mgs. Cat, hypodermically, 100 mgs. per kilo. Rabbit, intravenous, 100 mgs. per kilo; hypodermically, 200 mgs. per kilo; by stomach-tube, 250 mgs. per kilo. Fatal dose for man, 500 mgs.

*Casein Solution.*—Suspend, by stirring, 1 g. Harris' special casein (page 105) in about 20 mls. distilled water in a beaker. Add exactly 10 mls. 0.1 normal NaOH solution. Stir. Leave until a homogeneous solution is obtained (about an hour) and transfer to a 100-ml. volumetric flask; make up to 100 mls. with water.

*Chlorids in the Urine, Seelman Reagents.*—See page 897.

*Chlorin Water.*—In a Florence flask provided with thistle-tube and exit-tube pour 50 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  upon NaCl mixed, equal parts by weight, with manganese dioxid. Apply heat to the flask and pass the gas through water. Saturation: 0.73 g. to 100 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  at  $20^\circ \text{C}$ .

*Chloroform as Anesthetic.*—Used only where ether cannot be used. Average amount of  $\text{CHCl}_3$  necessary for anesthesia, 0.5 ml. of 0.1 per cent. solution of  $\text{CHCl}_3$  per kilo of body weight in veins. Administration may be made in this amount

by vein, but it is customary to introduce the chloroform by way of the respiratory system, in which case the criterion of narcosis is the loss of the corneal reflex (page 185). Frogs, 200 mgs. (1 ml. of 20 per cent.  $\text{CHCl}_3$  oil solution) into the dorsal lymph sac.

*Clark-Lubs Indicators.*—See pages 60 and 891.

*Clark-Lubs Solutions.*—(I) Fifth molecular potassium chlorid solution. Recrystallize the best commercial preparation obtainable three or four times; then dry in an oven at  $120^\circ \text{C}$ . for about thirty-six hours. Weigh 14.912 gs. of the KCl and dissolve in water; make up to 1000 mls.

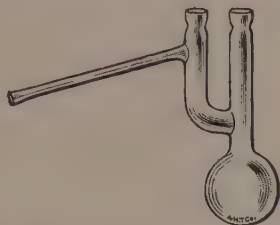
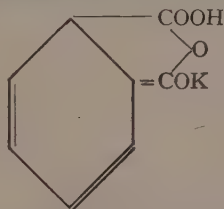


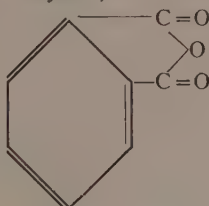
Fig. 251.—Claisen flask used in distillations. The extra tube at the side permits the introduction of a thermometer for accurately recording the temperature of the distillate. "Bumping" is avoided by inserting a small-bore tube into the straight tube, passing into the flask, nearly touching the bottom. Pieces of pumice or beads may be placed in the side tube in order to prevent droplets from actively boiling liquids in the flask from entering the distillate.

(II) Fifth molecular acid potassium phthalate: This is obtainable on the market, or one may use the method of Dodge.<sup>1</sup> Its structural formula is:



Acid potassium phthalate.

Clark<sup>2</sup> gives the following method for acid potassium phthalate from sodium hydroxid and ortho-phthalic anhydrid,



*o*-Phthalic anhydrid.

<sup>1</sup> Dodge, F. D. (Chemist, Dodge & Olcott Co., Bayonne, N. J.), Jour. Industrial and Eng. Chem., vol. 7, p. 29, 1915.

<sup>2</sup> Clark, W. M., Determination of Hydrogen Ions, 1st ed., 1920, p. 70, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1920.

Dissolve 60 grams of NaOH from sodium (see 2, above) in about 400 mls. of distilled water. Cool. Add 50 gs. freshly resublimed ortho-phthalic anhydrid. Mix. To 5 mls. of the cooled solution add a drop of phenolphthalein indicator solution; adjust the reaction to a slight pink, adding either more KOH or anhydrid as necessary, taking account of the amount of anhydrid used. Now add as much phthalic anhydrid again as the solution contains. Heat in order to cause complete solution. Filter while hot, saving the residue. Set the filtrate aside to cool slowly; crystals appear. Remove the crystals by means of a Buchner funnel and hardened paper. Recrystallize twice from distilled water. Leave in an oven at from 110° to 115° C. until the salt reaches constant weight. Weigh of these crystals 40.828 gs. Make up to 1000 mls. with water. This makes a fifth molecular solution of acid potassium phthalate.

(III) Fifth molecular solution of mono-potassium di-hydrogen phosphate,  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ : Recrystallize the commercial preparation from water. Dry in the oven at 110° to 115° C. Weigh, after constant weight has been reached, 27.232 gs. and make up to 1 liter with water. Test the solution with methyl red; the color assumed by the  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  solution should be distinctly red.

(IV) Fifth molecular boric acid ( $\text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$ )—fifth molecular potassium chlorid solution: Recrystallize the boric acid twice. Dry in the air, or in a warm oven below 50° C., in thin layers. For KCl refer to (1) above. Weigh 12.4048 gs. of  $\text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$  and dissolve in water. Weigh 14.912 gs. KCl and dissolve in the borate solution. Make up to 1000 mls. with water.

(V) Fifth-molecular (or normal) sodium hydroxid solution: Clark's method is given as follows: This solution should be as free as possible from carbonate. A solution of sufficient purity may be prepared from a high-grade sample of the hydroxid in the following manner: Dissolve 100 grams NaOH in 100 mls. distilled water in a Jena or Pyrex glass Erlenmeyer flask. Cover the mouth of the flask with tin foil and allow the solution to stand overnight until the carbonate has settled. Then prepare a filter as follows: Cut a "hardened" filter paper to fit a Buchner funnel. Treat it with warm, strong [1 : 1] NaOH solution. After a few minutes decant the sodium hydroxid and wash the paper first with "absolute" ethanol, then with dilute ethanol (50 per cent.), and finally with large quantities of distilled water. Place the paper on the Buchner funnel and apply gentle suction until the greater part of the water has evaporated; but do not dry so that the paper curls. Now pour the concentrated alkali upon the middle of the paper, spread it with a glass rod, making sure that the paper, under gentle suction, adheres well to the funnel, and draw the solution through with suction. The clear filtrate is now diluted quickly, after rough calculation, to a solution somewhat more concentrated than normal. Withdraw 10 mls. of this dilution and standardize roughly with an acid solution of known strength, or with a sample of acid potassium phthalate. From this approximate standardization calculate the dilution required to furnish an M/5 solution. Make the required dilution with the least possible exposure, and pour the solution into a *paraffined*<sup>1</sup> bottle to which a calibrated 50-ml. burette and soda-lime guard tubes have been attached. The solution should now be most carefully standardized. One of the simplest methods of doing this, and one which

<sup>1</sup> Clark finds that thick coats of paraffin are more satisfactory than the thin coats sometimes recommended. Thoroughly clean and *dry* the bottle, warm it, and then pour in the melted paraffin. Roll gently to make an even coat and just before solidification occurs stand the bottle upright to allow excess paraffin to drain to the bottom and there form a very substantial layer.



should always be used in this instance, is the method of Dodge (1915), in which use is made of the acid potassium phthalate purified as already described. Weigh out accurately on a chemical balance with standardized weights several portions of the salt of about 1.6 grams each. Dissolve in about 20 mls. distilled water and add 4 drops phenolphthalein. Pass a stream of  $\text{CO}_2$ -free air through the solution and titrate with the alkali until a faint but distinct and permanent pink is developed. It is preferable to use a factor with the solution rather than attempt adjustment to an exact M/5 solution.

(VI) Fifth molecular hydrochloric acid solution: Dilute a high-grade hydrochloric acid solution to about 20 per cent. and distil. Dilute the distillate to approximately fifth molecular and standardize with the sodium hydroxide solution just described. If convenient it is well to standardize this solution carefully by the silver chlorid method<sup>1</sup> and check with the standardized alkali.

GLYCIN BUFFERS (Sørensen)		
Glycin, mls.	HCl, mls.	pH.
0.0.....	10.0	1.038
1.0.....	9.0	1.146
2.0.....	8.0	1.251
3.0.....	7.0	1.419
4.0.....	6.0	1.645
5.0.....	5.0	1.932
6.0.....	4.0	2.279
7.0.....	3.0	2.607
8.0.....	2.0	2.922
9.0.....	1.0	3.341
9.5.....	0.5	3.679
NaOH, mls.		
9.5.....	0.5	8.575
9.0.....	1.0	8.929
8.0.....	2.0	9.364
7.0.....	3.0	9.714
6.0.....	4.0	10.140
5.5.....	4.5	10.482
5.1.....	4.9	11.067
5.0.....	5.0	11.305
4.9.....	5.1	11.565
4.5.....	5.5	12.095
4.0.....	6.0	12.399
3.0.....	7.0	12.674
2.0.....	8.0	12.856
1.0.....	9.0	12.972
0.0.....	10.0	13.066

CITRATE BUFFERS (Sørensen)		
Citrate, mls.	HCl, mls.	pH.
0.0.....	10.0	1.038
1.0.....	9.0	1.173
2.0.....	8.0	1.418
3.0.....	7.0	1.925
3.33.....	6.67	2.274

<sup>1</sup> See Sutton, F., A Systematic Handbook of Volumetric Analysis, 11th ed., Philadelphia, P. Blakiston's Son & Co., 1924, p. 183.

CITRATE BUFFERS (Sørensen)		
Citrate, mls.	HCl, mls.	pH.
4.0.....	6.0	2.972
4.5.....	5.5	3.364
4.75.....	5.25	3.529
5.0.....	5.0	3.692
5.5.....	4.5	3.948
6.0.....	4.0	4.158
7.0.....	3.0	4.447
8.0.....	2.0	4.652
9.0.....	1.0	4.830
9.5.....	0.5	4.887
10.0.....	0.0	4.958
NaOH, mls.		
9.5.....	0.5	5.023
9.0.....	1.0	5.109
8.0.....	2.0	5.314
7.0.....	3.0	5.568
6.0.....	4.0	5.969
5.5.....	4.5	6.331
5.25.....	4.75	6.678
4.5.....	5.5	12.073
4.0.....	6.0	12.364

COMPOSITION OF BUFFERS GIVING pH VALUES AT 20° C. AT INTERVALS OF 0.2

KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> —NaOH Buffers (Clark)			
KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub>	NaOH.	Dilution.	pH.
50 mls. M/5	3.72	To 200 mls.	5.8
"	5.70	"	6.0
"	8.60	"	6.2
"	12.60	"	6.4
"	17.80	"	6.6
"	23.65	"	6.8
"	29.63	"	7.0
"	35.00	"	7.2
"	39.50	"	7.4
"	42.80	"	7.6
"	45.20	"	7.8
"	46.80	"	8.0

Boric acid—KCl—NaOH Buffers (Clark)			
Boric.	NaOH.	Dilution.	pH.
50 mls. M/5	2.61	To 200 mls.	7.8
"	3.97	"	8.0
"	5.90	"	8.2
"	8.50	"	8.4
"	12.00	"	8.6
"	16.30	"	8.8
"	21.30	"	9.0
"	26.70	"	9.2
"	32.00	"	9.4
"	36.85	"	9.6
"	40.80	"	9.8
"	43.90	"	10.0

KCl-HCl Buffers<sup>1</sup> (Clark)

KCl.	HCl.	Dilution.	pH.
50 mls. M/5	64.5 mls.	To 200 mls.	1.2
"	41.5 "	"	1.4
"	26.3 "	"	1.6
"	16.6 "	"	1.8
"	10.6 "	"	2.0
"	6.7 "	"	2.2

## Phthalate-HCl Buffers (Clark)

Phthalate.	HCl.	Dilution.	pH.
50 mls. M/5	46.70 mls.	To 200 mls.	2.2
"	39.60 "	"	2.4
"	32.95 "	"	2.6
"	26.42 "	"	2.8
"	20.32 "	"	3.0
"	14.70 "	"	3.2
"	9.90 "	"	3.4
"	5.97 "	"	3.6
"	2.63 "	"	3.8

## Phthalate-NaOH Buffers (Clark)

Phthalate.	NaOH.	Dilution.	pH.
50 mls. M/5	0.40 mls.	To 200 mls.	4.0
"	3.70 "	"	4.2
"	7.50 "	"	4.4
"	12.15 "	"	4.6
"	17.70 "	"	4.8
"	23.85 "	"	5.0
"	29.95 "	"	5.2
"	35.45 "	"	5.4
"	39.85 "	"	5.6
"	43.00 "	"	5.8
"	45.45 "	"	6.0
"	47.00 "	"	6.2

## Phosphate mixtures (Sørensen)

Na <sub>2</sub> PHO <sub>4</sub> .	KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> .	pH.
0.25 mls.	9.75 mls.	5.28
0.50 "	9.5 "	5.58
1.00 "	9.0 "	5.90
2.0 "	8.0 "	6.23
3.0 "	7.0 "	6.46
4.0 "	6.0 "	6.64
5.0 "	5.0 "	6.81
6.0 "	4.0 "	6.97
7.0 "	3.0 "	7.16
8.0 "	2.0 "	7.38
9.0 "	1.0 "	7.73
9.5 "	0.5 "	8.04

<sup>1</sup> The pH values of these mixtures are given by Clark and Lubs (1916) as *preliminary* measurements.

## Borate mixtures (Sørensen)

Borate.	HCl.	pH.
5.25	4.75	7.62
5.50	4.50	7.93
5.75	4.25	8.13
6.0	4.0	8.29
6.5	3.5	8.50
7.5	2.5	8.79
8.0	2.0	8.90
8.5	1.5	9.00
9.0	1.0	9.08
9.5	0.5	9.16
10.0	None	9.24

Borate.	NaOH.	pH.
9.0	1.0	9.36
8.0	2.0	9.50
7.0	3.0	9.67
6.0	4.0	9.97
4.0	6.0	12.37

Kolthoff<sup>1</sup> Buffer Mixtures

18° C.

Succinic acid 0.05 molar.	Borax 0.05 molar.	pH.
9.86 mls.	0.14 mls.	3.0
9.65 "	0.35 "	3.2
9.40 "	0.60 "	3.4
9.05 "	0.95 "	3.6
9.63 "	1.37 "	3.8
8.22 "	1.78 "	4.0
7.78 "	2.22 "	4.2
7.38 "	2.62 "	4.4
7.00 "	3.00 "	4.6
6.65 "	3.35 "	4.8
6.32 "	3.68 "	5.0
6.05 "	3.95 "	5.2
5.79 "	4.21 "	5.4
5.57 "	4.43 "	5.6
5.40 "	4.60 "	5.8

Monopotassium di-hydrogen phosphate KH <sub>2</sub> PO <sub>4</sub> , 0.1 molar.	Borax 0.05 molar (as above),	pH.
9.21 mls.	0.79 mls.	5.8
8.77 "	1.23 "	6.0
8.30 "	1.70 "	6.2
7.78 "	2.22 "	6.4
7.22 "	2.78 "	6.6
6.67 "	3.33 "	6.8

<sup>1</sup> Kolthoff, I. M. (Utrecht, Netherlands), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, page 135, 1925.

Monopotassium di-hydrogen phosphate $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 0.1 molar.	Borax 0.05 molar (as above).	pH.
6.23 mls.	3.77 mls.	7.0
5.81 "	4.19 "	7.2
5.50 "	4.50 "	7.4
5.17 "	4.83 "	7.6
4.92 "	5.08 "	7.8
4.65 "	5.35 "	8.0
4.30 "	5.70 "	8.2
3.87 "	6.13 "	8.4
3.40 "	6.60 "	8.6
2.76 "	7.24 "	8.8
1.75 "	8.25 "	9.0
0.50 "	9.50 "	9.2

*Cleaning Fluid.*—Chromic acid solution. Dissolve 100 gs. of chromic "acid" ( $\text{CrO}_3$ ) in distilled water and make up to 1000 mls.

Chromic-sulphuric acid solution: Dissolve 100 gs. of potassium dichromate in enough 10 per cent. sulphuric acid solution to make a liter of solution. Note: When the solution, after use, turns green, the chromic acid ( $\text{CrO}_3$ ) has become chromic oxid ( $\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3$ ) which has lost its power of causing oxidation as readily as  $\text{CrO}_3$  and should be discarded. The cleaning solution should be red. Moreover, the solution must be used warm ( $40^\circ \text{C.}$ ) to be effective for the usual purposes of biochemical laboratory.

*$\text{CO}_2$  Generation.*—Introduce a small mass of glass-wool into the bottom of the middle compartment of a Kipp generator (Fig. 248) and, after removing the tube and cock (gas exit), introduce enough lumps of marble or  $\text{CaCO}_3$  to half fill that compartment. Remove the safety-tube from the upper compartment, open the gas-exit cock, and add 50 per cent. hydrochloric acid through the top opening until the lower compartment is filled and all of the lime in the middle compartment is covered. Close gas exit; as gas is formed the acid is displaced and rises to the upper chamber. When ready to use gas, simply open gas-exit cock.

*Collodion Membranes and Tubes.*—Secure Anthony's Negative Cotton from the Ansco Company, Binghamton, N. Y. Weigh out 3 gs., place in a salt-mouth bottle (Fig. 245), and pour over it 75 mls. of pure, preferably redistilled, ethyl ether. Leave half an hour, stoppered, shaking the bottle at intervals. Then add 25 mls. of "absolute" ethanol and shake the contents gently until a solution fairly transparent is obtained.

In making the membrane, or tube, cover the plate (for membrane) or fill the container (test-tube, etc.) with the collodion and then pour off all that is possible. Stand the plate against a support to drain. Clamp the vessel inverted in a clamp of a burette-stand and leave for ten minutes, but no longer. Then by aid of a knife-point and a wash-bottle (Fig. 40) remove the membrane carefully, washing the tissue from its support (glass wall of the test-tube, etc.). Preserve in distilled water.

*Colloidal Gold.*—Secure a supply of double distilled water: Distill ordinary distilled water from a pyrex, or quartz vessel, the water having had a half-dozen crystals of potassium permanganate dissolved in it previously. Using this water after distillation, place 1000 mls. in a 2-liter pyrex or quartz flask. Add 10 mls. 1 per cent. solution of gold chlorid made from crystals. Add, then, exactly 7 mls. of a 2 per cent. solution of potassium carbonate from a freshly opened bottle. Add 0.5 ml.



1 per cent. solution of oxalic acid. Heat this mixture after complete solution to the boiling-point of water. Remove the flask from the flame and shake the contents vigorously. Then immediately add 8 drops of commercial formalin (40 per cent. solution H.CHO gas in water). Color should develop; if it does not, re-heat to boiling and then violently agitate the contents again. Add, while the solution is in motion, not over 4 drops more of the formalin solution. The color should be a deep red. Store out of the light in a pyrex or other vessel incapable of giving much alkali to the solution.

*Colloidal Platinum.*—Fix to the ends of a set of wires from the house-current, cut down by means of a rheostat, or lamp-set, platinum wires about 2 cms. long on each terminal. Insert these wires through glass tubes about a decimeter long, to serve as handles. While submerged beneath the surface of pure, "conductivity" water, in which a minute amount of chemically pure lead acetate has been dissolved, bring the tips carefully toward one another, but never touching; a small arc will form between the tips of the wires, and after a short time there will be a brownish color appear in the water. When distinctly discolored with this brown platinum "sponge" (partly coagulated platinum sol.), discontinue the procedure.

*Congo-red Paper.*—Dissolve 2 gs. Congo-red powder in enough water to make a liter of solution. Pass strips of filter-paper through the solution and hang the strips up to dry in an atmosphere free from chemical fumes. Such a place is a well-ventilated hood, capable of being isolated from other hoods used for current work.

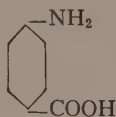
*Cyanid of Potassium.*—Fatal doses: Mammals: Rabbit about 2 mgs. per kilo. Man, 5 drops of a 2 per cent. solution. Consequently, 3 drops of the solution used in blood analysis. Treatment: Stomach lavage by large tube; emetic; permanganate, 0.5 per cent. solution in water; artificial respiration; rest.

*Dialyzing Membranes.*—See *Collodion*.

*Di-azo-benzene-sulphonic Acid.*—See Ehrlich, page 880.

*Dichromate, Potassium.*—See page 896.

*Ehrlich's Di-azo Reagent.*—(1) For indol: Para-dimethyl-amino-benzaldehyde 4 gms., ethanol 380 mls., HCl (conc.) 80 mls. Use 1 volume of the fluid to be tested and one of the reagent, a positive color being red. (2) (Used in diagnosis of typhoid.) Reagents: Sulphanilic acid:



Saturated 5 per cent. HCl solution;  $\text{NaNO}_2$ , 0.5 per cent.;  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  conc. A froth appears on shaking the reagent when mixed with the unknown solution; positive test gives a pink froth.

*Epinephrin* (adrenalin; suprenin) for collapse in experimental animal: Mammals, intravenous, 0.25 ml. of a 1 : 5000 solution per kilo.

To induce glycosuria in rabbit: 2 mls. of 1 : 1000 solution hypodermically for an average 2-kilogram rabbit.

*Esbach's Reagent.*—Dissolve 10 gs. picric acid in 600 mls. of distilled water. Add 10 gs. citric acid. After complete dissolution, add water to make a total volume of 1000 mls.

*Ethanol.*—Table for diluting different strengths of ethanol to obtain other strengths: The figures in the table under the different percentages are the number of mls. which have to be added to 100 mls. of the alcohol indicated in the top line in per-

cents. to give a diluted alcohol of the strength indicated in the column to the left. That is, if one has 85 per cent. alcohol and wishes 50 per cent., 74 mls. of distilled water must be added to every 100 mls. of the stronger solution to make the weaker:



Fig. 252.—“Physiological” or fluted filter. The ribbing prevents too close application of the paper to the sides of the funnel.<sup>1</sup>



Fig. 253.—Another form of fluted or “physiological” funnel. Compare Fig. 252.

To make ethanol solutions from:

To:	95 per cent.	90 per cent.	85 per cent.	80 per cent.	75 per cent.	70 per cent.	65 per cent.	60 per cent.	55 per cent.	50 per cent.
Add										
water:										
85	13	6								
80	21	14	7							
75	29	22	14	7						
70	40	31	23	15	8					
65	49	42	33	25	16	8				
60	62	54	44	35	26	18	9			
55	75	68	58	48	38	29	19	9		
50	95	85	74	63	52	42	31	20	10	
45	117	105	94	81	70	58	46	34	23	11
40	152	130	117	104	91	78	65	51	38	26
35	196	163	148	133	118	103	88	70	58	44
30	222	206	189	171	154	136	119	102	85	67
25	287	266	245	224	204	183	162	142	121	101
20	382	356	330	304	278	253	227	201	176	151
15	539	505	471	437	403	369	335	301	267	234
10	856	805	754	703	652	602	551	500	450	400

*Fehling's Sugar Reagents.*—Three solutions, quantitative: (1) Dissolve 103.92 gs. cupric sulphate,  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , in warm ( $60^\circ \text{C.}$ ) distilled water and dilute to 1000 mls. with water.

(2) Dissolve 320 gs. potassium sodium tartrate (Rochelle salt) in warm water and add a little phenol to prevent plant growth. Dilute to 1 liter with water.

<sup>1</sup>A small (25-ml. or smaller) funnel also is often called a “physiological funnel.”

(3) Dissolve 150 gs. sodium hydroxid in distilled water and dilute to 1 liter.

In use, mix equal quantities of (1), (2), and (3). Ten mls. of the mixed solution  $\approx$  0.05 g. glucose, 0.0511 g. galactose, 0.0431 g. mannose, or 0.05144 g. fructose.

*Ferric Chlorid Normal Solution.*—Dissolve 54 gs.  $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6$  in enough cold water to make 1000 mls. of fluid.

*Fibrin-carmin.*—Dissolve 1 g. of carmin in 1 ml. of ammonium hydroxid. Add about 400 mls. of distilled water. Leave in a flask or bottle stoppered with cotton wool until the odor of ammonia has nearly gone. Into this solution drop finely chopped, thoroughly washed fibrin and leave for twenty-four hours. Then strain the fibrin from the fluid, wash in running water until the washings are colorless, and store in ethyl ether in a well-stoppered flask or bottle. When required for use, wash the fibrin free from ether. Method of Cole.



Fig. 254.—Alundum crucible which is frequently used in place of a Gooch crucible for filtering purposes. See Fig. 255.

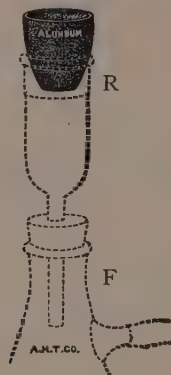


Fig. 255.—The use of the crucible in filtering. A Gooch crucible or, better, in most cases, an alundum crucible is applied to the "carbon" or filter-tube by means of a piece of wide, thin rubber tubing, R. The carbon tube passes through a stopper into the filter-flask, F.

*Folin's Uric Acid Reagent* (from  $\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , J. T. Baker Co. Special).—Add to 160 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , 50 mls. syrupy  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ . Heat to  $85^\circ \text{C}$ . and add 100 gs.  $\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Boil gently for one hour beneath a condenser. In a liter beaker place 25 gs.  $\text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3$ , 50 mls.  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ , and 200 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Boil ten minutes, cool, and add to the first solution. Mix and dilute with water to 1000 mls.

*Folin-Denis Uric-acid Reagent.*—To 750 gs. of distilled water add 100 gs. of sodium tungstate and 80 mls. of 85 per cent. syrupy phosphoric acid. Boil gently for two hours under a Hopkins reflux condenser. Cool and transfer to a 1000-ml. volumetric flask. Make up to the mark with distilled water. Check against a small amount of uric acid. Only nitrate-free reagents may be used. If the solution is very dark, add a few drops of bromin and boil fifteen minutes.

*Folin-Trimble Modification.*—Heat together 10 gs.  $\text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3$ , 20 of  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ , 80 of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Add 80 gs.  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 24\text{WO}_3 \cdot x\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Boil one hour. Add 15 gs.  $\text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3$  + 65 gs.  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  + 200  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Mix the two solutions and dilute to 1 liter.

*Folin-Denis Phenol Reagent.*—To 750 mls. of distilled water add 100 gs. of sodium tungstate. Dissolve. Then add 20 gs. phosphomolybdic acid and finally 50 mls

of syrupy 85 per cent. phosphoric acid. Boil for two hours under reflux condenser, cool, and dilute to 1000 mls. Check against a diluted solution of phenol. The tungstate must contain no molybdate. For method of detecting the presence of molybdenum in tungstate mixtures see Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 60, page 474, 1924.

*Folin-Wu Silver Lactate* (Lactic Acid Solution).—Into a 100-ml. volumetric flask place 5 gs. silver lactate,  $\text{H}_3\text{C}.\text{CHOH}.\text{COO}.\text{Ag}.\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,<sup>1</sup> and 5 gs. lactic acid (specific gravity 1.21; 85 per cent.  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5\text{O}_3$ ); dilute to 100 mls. with water.

*Folin-McEllroy Sugar Reagents*.—Qualitative: Dissolve 100 gs. sodium pyrophosphate,  $\text{Na}_4\text{P}_2\text{O}_7.10\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , 30 gs. crystal di-sodium-monohydrogen phosphate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , and 50 gs. of dry sodium carbonate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , in about 900 mls. of distilled water. Add, after these substances have been dissolved, a solution of 13 gs. cupric sulphate dissolved in 200 mls. of distilled water. The solution is ready for use.

Quantitative: (1) Acidified cupric sulphate solution: Weigh 60 gs. of highest purity  $\text{CuSO}_4.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  crystals and make up to about 900 mls. After the crystals have dissolved add 5 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

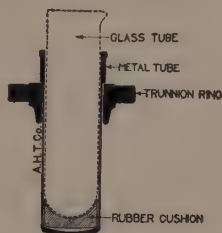
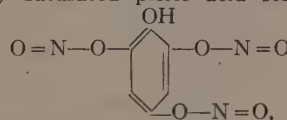


Fig. 256.—Fifty-milliliter centrifuge tube (outlined) with its proper situation in the centrifuge cup.

(2) Phosphate-carbonate-thiocyanate dry mixture: Mix 100 gs. dry di-sodium monohydrogen phosphate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4.12\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , 60 gs. monohydrated sodium carbonate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3.\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and 30 gs. of potassium thiocyanate,  $\text{KCNS}$ . Mix in a large mortar, leave overnight protected by a large filter-paper, then grind again, and bottle in a salt-mouth bottle (Fig. 245).

*Folin-McEllroy Lactose Reagents*.—(1) Saturated picric acid solution, aqueous;

weigh roughly 2 gs. of trinitrophenol,  and dissolve in

lukewarm distilled water; make up to 100 mls. with water.

(2) Twenty per cent. sodium carbonate solution: Weigh 20 gs. dry sodium carbonate ( $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ ) and make up to 100 mls. with distilled water. If made from  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3.10\text{H}_2\text{O}$  crystals, use 5.5 gs.

*Folin's Standard Creatinin Solution From Creatinin-zinc-chlorid*.—Weigh exactly 1.6106 gs. of creatinin zinc chlorid, and dissolve in 1000 mls. of decinormal hydrochloric acid. Each ml. contains 1.0 mg. of creatinin. For creatin, weigh 1.389 g. creatinin-zinc-chlorid and dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Each ml. contains the equivalent of 1.0 mg.

For blood creatinin make the following standard: Into a liter volumetric flask

<sup>1</sup> The Powers-Weightman-Rosengarten Co. preparation contains 8.4 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 50.2 per cent. silver.



pipette 6 mls, of the above solution; add 10 mls. normal HCl solution, 5 drops toluene, and dilute to the mark. 5 mls.  $\approx$  0.03 mg. creatinin.


*Folin's Uric Acid-Formaldehyde Standard Solution.*—Weigh exactly 1 g. of uric acid crystals and transfer them to a small funnel in a liter volumetric flask. Wash the crystals through into the flask by means of the following solution: Into a 300-ml. beaker place about 0.5 gram of  $\text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3$  powder and add 150 mls. of distilled water. Heat to about  $60^\circ\text{C}$ . and stir until all the powder has dissolved. Use this hot solution for rinsing the funnel. When the uric acid crystals have dissolved, cool the flask under the tap and add about 400 mls. of water. Add 25 mls. of commercial "formalin"<sup>1</sup> solution and 3 mls. of glacial acetic acid. Agitate the contents of the flask to remove the  $\text{CO}_2$  gas, dilute to 1000 mls., and mix. Keep the stock solution in small bottles (about 100 mls.) filled completely to avoid contact with air. Each ml. of this stock solution contains 1 mg. of uric acid. For use: Dilute 5 mls. of the stock solution to 50 mls. with water; each 10 mls. then contain 1 mg. of uric acid.

*Folin's Special Sulphuric Acid for Protid Precipitation, Two-thirds Normal.*—Dilute 36 mls. concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  with water to make 100 mls. of fluid.

*Folin's Special Lithium Oxalate for Anticoagulant Action.*—To 50 gs.  $\text{Li}_2\text{CO}_3$  add 85 gs. oxalic acid. To this mixture add 1 liter of water at  $80^\circ\text{C}$ . Stir slowly;  $\text{CO}_2$  will be evolved. After complete solution pour the solution into a large evaporating dish and distill off the water to a dry residue. Powder the residue in a mortar. This preparation is twice as potent as an anticoagulant as K-oxalate and dissolves much more quickly. It causes little precipitation with other reagents used in blood analysis. Lithium oxalate may be used as oxalated cloth: Cut strips of "birdseye" cloth, starch free 10 cms. long and 10 cms. wide. Into a liter beaker place 10 gs. lithium carbonate and 17 gs. oxalic acid. Add 240 mls. of distilled water at  $75^\circ\text{C}$ . While the solution is still warm pour it into a shallow dish (large evaporating dish) and pass strips of the cotton material through it, as one develops a camera film. Hang the strips in a hood free from fumes. The cloth contains 20 per cent. lithium oxalate. Fifty mgs. of the cloth thus treated will suffice to prevent clotting in from 15 to 20 mls. of blood.

*Folin's Lithium Sulphate Solution.*—Dissolve 20 gs. of powdered lithium sulphate,  $\text{Li}_2\text{SO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ , in 80 mls. of cold water. Dilute to 100 mls. with water and, after standing over night, filter.

*Folin's Special Sodium Cyanid Solution.*—Weigh 15 gs. of sodium cyanid, NaCN, into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add enough 0.1 normal solution of sodium hydroxid to make 100 mls. Use a pure white NaCN for this work (NaCN is decomposed by  $\text{CO}_2$  from the air). It is best to let the solution stand for some time, and to this purpose make the following stock solution to be kept three months: Weigh 100 gs. of NaCN into a beaker and add 670 mls. of 0.1 normal sodium hydroxid solution. Leave the beaker exposed to the air to prevent the formation of brownish azulmic acid,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{N}_5\text{O}^2$ .

*Folin's Solutions for Amino-acids.*—(1) Standard glycine solution containing 0.07 mg. nitrogen per ml.: Weigh 0.2352 g. pure glycine,  $\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\text{COOH}$ , into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add 200 mgs. of sodium benzoate,   $\text{COONa}$ . Make up to the mark with 0.1 normal HCl solution.

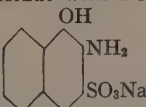
<sup>1</sup> A 40 per cent. aqueous solution of  $\text{H} \cdot \text{CHO}$  gas.

<sup>2</sup> NaCN solutions give, on standing, such products as urea, ammonium cyanate, formate, oxalate, etc. In alkaline solution this condensation does not occur.



(2) Special sodium carbonate solution: This is a carbonate-bicarbonate solution of about 1 per cent. concentration: Saturate, at room temperature, about 75 mls. of distilled water with sodium carbonate 25 gs. of dry  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , or 75 gs. of crystal,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 \cdot 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Pour 50 mls. of this solution into a 500-ml. volumetric flask and make up to the mark. Titrate 20 mls. of this solution against 0.1 normal HCl solution, methyl red, indicator. Using the figure obtained in this titration, dilute the carbonate solution until 8.5 mls. neutralize 20 mls. of the decinormal acid. When 1 ml. of this properly diluted solution is added to 1 ml. of the amino-acid preparation described in (1), the alkalinity of the mixture is correct for the development of color with the following reagent.

(3) Beta-naphthoquinon sulphonic acid, 0.5 per cent. solution. Preparation of the reagent: (a) Transfer 100 gs. of  $\beta$ -naphthol to a liter beaker; add 300 mls. of a 10 per cent. NaOH solution and stir until dissolved (fifteen minutes). (b) Transfer 50 to 55 gs. of  $\text{NaNO}_2$  to a large (4000-ml.) beaker; add about 600 mls. of distilled water until complete solution. (c) Pour (a) into the beaker and rinse with about 100 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . (d) Add 800 gs. crushed, clean ice. (e) Fill a 200-ml. volumetric cylinder with cold 10 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  solution; empty, slowly, the cylinder into the 4-liter beaker, pouring the contents down the side, stirring vigorously, and continue the stirring for a few minutes after apparent solution has occurred. Fill the cylinder again to the 200-ml. mark with the dilute acid and repeat. Continue the procedure until 800 mls. of the dilute acid have been added. Dip a piece of Congo-red indicator paper into the solution in the large beaker; the reaction should be sufficiently acid to turn the color blue. About fifteen to twenty minutes should have been consumed by this time. The yellow, semisolid paste which has formed should be just tinged with green; a distinct greenish color signifies that the conditions are not right for a good yield. Leave for one hour or longer. (f) Using a Buchner funnel and aspirating pump, filter off the precipitate and wash with a liter and a half of cold water. Save the residue. (g) Transfer the precipitate (nitroso-beta-naphthol) to a large evaporating dish; add, by sprinkling, 100 gs. of sodium bisulphite,  $\text{NaHSO}_3$ , and 50 gs. of sodium sulphite,  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3$ . Stir with enamel or porcelain spoon; the solution becomes liquid. Filter on a Buchner funnel through a double layer of quantitative filter-paper. The residue will be small. Wash with a little cold water. (h) Immediately transfer the filtrate to a large (5-liter) amber bottle containing 2 liters of distilled water and 500 mls. of concentrated HCl. Cover with a funnel and place a watch-glass in the mouth. Leave the preparation in a dark closet for about two days. If light has been excluded there will be found a mass of light needle crystals. Filter by means of a Buchner funnel and wash the residue with 2 liters of cold water.

The residue is amino-naphthol-sulphonic acid, . (i) Transfer the

precipitate to a large beaker (4 liters). Sprinkle over the precipitate 100 gs.  $\text{NaNO}_3$ . Add a solution of 100 mls. of concentrated  $\text{HNO}_3$  diluted with 350 mls. of distilled water to the beaker. Place the preparation in a hood because fumes of nitric acid arise. Leave for ten minutes, then stir, and then let stand half an hour. If no reaction take place, add from 1 to 5 mls. of concentrated  $\text{HNO}_3$ . Filter after the half-hour and wash with a liter of 10 NaCl solution. Now purify this product, sodium naphthoquinon sulphonate: (j) Transfer the substance to a large porcelain dish. Add 200 gs. powdered borax and 450 mls. of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Mix. Filter through paper (Buchner funnel) to remove the extra

borax and the black impurity; wash with about 150 mls. of cold distilled water, combining washings with the filtrate and transfer to a 4-liter beaker. Add a few drops of liquid bromin to a solution of 850 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol and 150 mls. of concentrated HCl, after the acid alcohol solution has been cooled under the tap. Agitate the solution until the bromin has been completely dissolved and pour the solution into the filtrate in the 4-liter beaker. Mix rapidly with stirring-rod. Leave five minutes; the quinon should have been nearly completely precipitated at this time. Filter on a Buchner funnel, wash with 700 to 800 mls. of 10 per cent. NaCl. Repeat once in order to remove ammonia: Omit the washing with NaCl solution and in its place use first 300 to 400 mls. of ethanol and then 200 mls. of ethyl ether. Yield: About 80 gs. of the beta-naphtho-quinon-sulphonic acid. Tests: A 1 per cent. solution in water should yield a color which, compared with a half-normal potassium dichromate solution (page 723) is as bichromate 20 mms. on the colorimeter, quinon 26 to 27 mms. Two mls. of the 1 per cent. solution mentioned above should become bleached when diluted with 25 mls. of water, treated with 1 ml. of 50 per cent. acetic acid solution, and finally with 1 ml. of a 15 per cent. sodium thiosulphate solution. The absence of ammonia may be demonstrated by adding 2 gs. of "permutit" powder (page 704) to 10 mls. of the 1 per cent. solution of the quinon, shaking for about five minutes, and then decant as in the ammonia determination; finally, adding 10 per cent. NaOH solution to the powder residue and 5 mls. of Nessler's solution (see below). There should be no yellow color.

Preparation of the working solution: Weigh, roughly on a torsion balance, 0.1 g. of the dry beta-naphthoquinon-sulphonic acid into a small flask, add 20 mls. of distilled water, and mix.

(4) Special acetic-acetate solution: Dilute 50 mls. of glacial acetic acid with 100 mls. of 5 per cent. sodium acetate solution. The acetate intensifies the color of the preparation of the quinon with amino-acid and retards the formation of turbidity due to the sulphur of the thiosulphate.

(5) Four per cent. solution of sodium thiosulphate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : Weigh 4 gs. of the pea-sized crystals and dilute with water to 100 mls.

*Folin's Modification of Nessler-Winkler Reagent.*—Transfer 150 gs. of KI and 110 mls. of resublimed iodine to a 500-ml. Florence flask. Add 100 mls. of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and about 150 gs. of mercury. Shake the flask vigorously, preferably in a shaking machine, for fifteen minutes, or at least until the flakes of iodine have dissolved. The solution becomes hot. When the reddish iodine solution has become greenish owing to the formation of the double iodide,  $\text{HgI}_2 \cdot 2\text{KI}$ , cool the flask in running tap-water. Decant the supernatant fluid from the residue of mercury followed by washing the residue with water. Dilute to 2 liters. The solution should be clear; if it is not, it was permitted to stand too long before cooling. To complete the solution make the following solution of sodium hydroxid: Weigh on the laboratory scales 550 gs. of sodium hydroxid sticks by alcohol and dissolve them in about 800 mls. of distilled water by the aid of a stirring-rod. When solution is complete, let the preparation cool to about  $50^\circ \text{C}$ . and then continue the cooling by placing the flask in a vessel under the cold-water tap. When the solution reaches a temperature of  $20^\circ \text{C}$ ., pour it into a liter cylinder and make up to the mark with distilled water. Mix and let stand for a night or longer. Then decant the clear, supernatant fluid from the residue and determine its normality by titrating 1 ml. against standard acid. With this data dilute the decanted fluid so that it makes a 10 per cent. solution. A normal solution of NaOH is 4 per cent., that is, 4 gs. in 100 mls. of solution; there is required 10 gs. in 100 mls.

of solution. Making the completed Nessler's solution: Pour 350 mls. of the 10 per cent. NaOH solution just described into a 500-ml. volumetric flask and add 75 mls. of the double iodid solution first made; add distilled water to the mark (500 mls.). Retain the double iodid and the 55 per cent. NaOH solutions as stock solutions from which the finished Nessler reagent may be made when needed.

*Folin's Standard Nitrogen Solution.*—Preparation of pure ammonium sulphate crystals: Using a good commercial grade of ammonium sulphate crystals, in a flask dissolve 165 gs. in about 300 mls. of distilled water and then add 100 gs. of pure NaOH sticks. Immediately connect the flask with a Liebig condenser and collect the ammonia evolved in about 275 mls. of concentrated, freshly opened sulphuric acid. Distill by the aid of heat.  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$  is produced in the acid and may be purified by adding 1 volume of ethanol, 95 per cent. Dry the crystals to constant weight in a desiccator over  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (page 89). For the standard, weigh 0.4716 g. of the crystals, dissolve in a small amount of distilled water, and make up to 1000 mls.; each 10 mls. contain 1 mg. nitrogen.

*Folin's Special Urease Solution.*—Transfer about 3 gs. of special preparation of "permunit" (page 704) for blood and urine chemistry, to a flask and add about 50 mls. of 2 per cent. acetic acid. Twirl the flask in order to thoroughly mix the powder with the acid solution, then let the flask rest, inclined toward one side and decant as much as possible of the supernatant liquid from the powder. Repeat, using distilled water, and repeat still again, using more distilled water. Add about 5 gs. of soy-bean or jack-bean meal to the powder after the last decantation and follow this with 100 mls. of 15 per cent. ethanol (see table of dilution, page 881). Shake gently, but continuously for ten minutes, filter through paper, saving the filtrate. Keep in an ice-box for not over four weeks.

*Folin's Buffer Mixtures for Urease Action.*—(1) Dissolve 69 gs. of  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 179 gs. of  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in 800 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Cool and dilute to 1000 mls. Add 2 mls. of toluene, shake well, and keep in a well-stoppered flask.

(2) Dissolve 14 gs. of sodium pyrophosphate,  $\text{Na}_4\text{P}_2\text{O}_7 \cdot 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , in enough of the following solution to make 100 mls: Add 20 mls. of the 85 per cent. syrupy phosphoric acid to a liter flask and make up to the mark. Determine the normality of this solution by titrating 5 mls. against 0.1 normal sodium hydroxid and dilute to make the solution 0.5 normal.

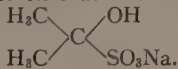
*Folin's Creatinin Reagent.*—Add 75 mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH solution (see page 886 under Folin's Nessler-Winkler solution) to a liter volumetric flask and dilute to the mark with a saturated (2 per cent.) picric acid solution.

*Folin's Special Cupric Sulphate Solution for Lactose Determinations.*—Weigh 6.05 gs. of pure  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add water enough to cause solution by the aid of a hot-water bath. Then dilute to the mark.

*Folin's Standard Stock Solution for Quantitative Aceton Determinations.*—Method using commercial aceton-sulphite: Transfer 2.5 gs. of the aceton-sulphite powder to a liter volumetric flask; wash it with about 50 mls. of distilled water. Dilute concentrated hydrochloric acid 1 : 5 and make up the solution in the liter flask to the mark with this acid solution. Mix. Transfer 25 mls. of this solution to a 150-ml. Florence flask; add 20 mls. of decinormal iodine solution (page 892), let stand five minutes. Titrate the excess iodine with decinormal thiosulphate solu-

<sup>1</sup> This is a commercial preparation used in photography. It is obtainable through dealers in such supplies, or on order from the Eastman Kodak Company,

Rochester, N. Y. The formula is:



tion (page 900). This titration gives the sodium bisulphite content of the solution of sulphite-aceton. Now determine the aceton by difference: To another 25-ml. volume of the sulphite-aceton solution in the liter flask add 50 mls. decinormal iodine, let stand as before, and then add 10 mls. 10 per cent. NaOH solution. Leave five minutes and then add 18 mls. of concentrated HCl. Titrate as before with thiosulphate. From the amount of iodine used, 50 mls., subtract the burette reading just made, and from the remainder, the figure representing the iodine corresponding to the bisulphite content. You have now standardized the sulphite-aceton solution in the liter flask. From this figure make a solution containing 0.5 mg. of aceton per 10 mls. of fluid, using the standardized bisulphite-aceton solution.

*Folin's Special Acid Mixture for Nitrogen Determinations.*—(1) Dissolve 5 gs. of pure  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  crystals in about 50 mls. of distilled water by the aid of a water-bath and make up to 100 mls. with distilled water after cooling to room temperature. (2) Pour this solution into a liter flask and add 600 mls. of 85 per cent. syrupy phosphoric acid. Mix. (3) To this mixture add 200 mls. of ammonia-free concentrated sulphuric acid. Keep well stoppered.

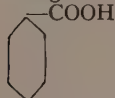
*Folin's Reagents for the Folin Modification of Benedict's Method for Uric Acid in the Blood.*—(1) Cyanide solution: Weigh, with great care, 15 gs. of lump sodium cyanide, NaCN, into a beaker. Dissolve in about 50 mls. of decinormal NaOH. Transfer the solution to a 100-ml. volumetric flask and make up to the mark with the NaOH solution.

(2) Uric acid reagent; see Folin-Denis solution, page 882.

(3) Uric acid standard solution in formalin; see page 884.

(4) Lithium sulphate solution; see page 884.

*Folin-Wu Reagents for Quantitative Determination of Blood-Sugar.*—(1) Standard sugar solution. (a) Benzoate solution: Dissolve 2.5 gs. of benzoic acid,



, in about 500 mls. of boiling water in a beaker. In another beaker

boil about a liter of water. Transfer the benzoate solution to a liter volumetric flask while the solution is hot, by means of a funnel and wash the solution adhering to the funnel into the flask with enough hot water to make a liter of solution. Cool and make to the mark with cold distilled water.

(b) Weigh exactly 1 gram of highest purity glucose powder and transfer it to a small funnel in the mouth of a 100-ml. volumetric flask. Wash the powder into the flask with about 50 mls. of the benzoate solution (1). Mix thoroughly and dilute to the mark with the benzoate solution. From this stock solution make as desired the working standard of a strength suited to the concentration of sugar in the unknown: (A) Weaker standard: Pipette 1 ml. of the stock solution (b) into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and dilute to the mark with the benzoate solution (1); 1 ml. of this standard contains 0.1 ml. of glucose. (B) Stronger standard: Pipette 2 mls. of the stock solution (b) into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and dilute to the mark with the benzoate solution (1); 2 mls. contain 0.4 mg. of glucose.

(2) Alkaline cupric sulphate solution: Dissolve 40 gs. of dry sodium carbonate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , in about 400 mls. of distilled water in a beaker and pour into a liter volumetric flask. Add 7.5 gs. tartaric acid and dissolve. Add 4.5 gs. of  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , highest purity. When the copper salt has dissolved, make up to 1 liter with distilled water. After the solution has stood for a few days, decant the clear supernatant fluid from the whitish residue into another bottle.



(3) Special phosphomolybdic acid solution: Transfer to a liter beaker 35 gs. of molybdic acid,  $\text{MoO}_3$ . Dissolve in 200 mls. of distilled water and then add 5 gs. of sodium tungstate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{WO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Add 200 mls. of 10 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$  solution (page 886). Boil vigorously for half an hour in order to remove excess ammonia introduced in the molybdic acid. Cool. Transfer to a 500-ml. volumetric flask. Dilute to about 350 mls, and add 125 mls. of 85 per cent. syrupy phosphoric acid,  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ . Mix. Dilute to the mark.

*Folin's Tyrosin Reagent*.—See page 882.

*Folin's Bichromate Standard for Creatinin Determinations*.—Half-normal potassium dichromate solution: Weigh, accurately, 24.55 gs. of highest purity  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$  and place in a liter volumetric flask. Dissolve in about 200 mls. of distilled water and make up to the mark with more water. This solution has approximately the same color as 10 mgs. of creatinin treated according to the Folin creatinin procedure. If the colorimeter standard cup is placed at 8.0 mms., and the calculation is made as if it were 8.1, quantitative relations hold.

*Folin's Protid Standard for Quantitative Determination of Urinary Protid*.—Dilute sheep-blood serum with 7 volumes of a solution of  $\text{NaCl}$  containing 15 gs. per 100 mls. of liquid. The solution is about 1 per cent.

*Formalin*.—40 grains dry  $\text{H.CHO}$  gas dissolved in water at  $25^\circ \text{C}$ .

*Fuchsin-sulphurous Acid*.—(See LaWall.) Weigh 0.5 g. basic fuchsin and add to 500 mls. water. Add 9 gs. sodium bisulphite ( $\text{NaHSO}_3$ ), then 10 mls. conc.  $\text{HCl}$ , and finally 5 mls. sulphurous acid ( $\text{SO}_2$ , 6 per cent. in water; a commercial product). This is the U. S. P. "Fuchsin sulphurous acid T. S. (test solution)."

*Fusion Mixture*.—To 2 parts by weight of pure potassium nitrate,  $\text{KNO}_3$ , add 1 part sodium carbonate, anhydrous,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ . Mix well in a mortar and store away from fumes.

*Gies' Biuret Reagent*.—Weigh 3 gs.  $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$  crystals and dissolve in warm water (50 mls.). Make up to 100 mls. with cold water. Pipette 25 mls. of this copper solution into a 1000-ml. volumetric flask and add clear 10 per cent.  $\text{KOH}$  solution to the mark (1000 mls.).

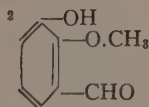
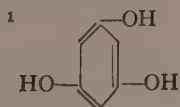
*Glucose for Tolerance Test*.—100 gs. pure glucose dissolved in water and taken by mouth. For intravenous tolerance test on experimental animals inject 0.7 g. glucose in sterile aqueous solution per kilo body weight. Increase the concentration to 0.80 g. per kilo, which represents the average tolerance for the animal. Glucose is obtainable in pure form for intravenous work on the market, but in some samples there is unneutralized  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  left from the method of hydrolysis; such preparations must not be used. For the use of glucose with insulin, see page 892.

*Glycerol Solution*.—Special for Leffmann-Beam method for Reichert-Meissl Number (see page 893).

*Guaiaconic Acid Solution*.—To 0.5 g. gum guaiacum add 100 mls. 95 per cent. ethanol.

*Guenzberg's Reagent*.—Dissolve 2 gs. phloroglucinol<sup>1</sup> and 1 g. vanillin<sup>2</sup> in 30 gs. of "absolute" ethanol. The solution does not keep well, especially in the light.

*Heptylic (Cetyl) Alcohol, Antifoaming Mixture*.—Add 25 gs. of spermaceti wax to 100 mls. of alcoholic sodium hydroxid (page 865). Boil over a water-bath or electric





stove for one hour. Leave overnight. Then add 1 volume of distilled water, mix well, filter through paper and save the residue, cetyl alcohol. Transfer the waxy residue to a beaker, add 95 per cent. ethanol, dissolve, and let stand in a warm place; the alcohol,  $C_{16}H_{33}OH$ , crystallizes out. For use, make a thick solution in ethanol "absolute." The crystals melt at  $50^{\circ}C$ . They are easily removed by ethanol. Caprylic alcohol is on the market for similar purposes; it is liquid at ordinary temperatures and boils at  $175^{\circ}C$ .<sup>1</sup>

*Hopkins-Cole "Glyoxalic" Reagent.*—Method by reduction of oxalic acid: Into a tall cylinder place 500 mls. of saturated solution (1 : 5) of oxalic acid. Add 40 gs. of 2 per cent. sodium amalgam (page 898); hydrogen gas will be evolved. When the evolution of gas ceases, filter the solution and add 1 liter of distilled water. Keep well stoppered; a small amount of  $CHCl_3$  may be added.

Method by magnesium reduction of oxalic acid: Place in an Erlenmeyer flask 10 gs. magnesium powder, used by photographers, and cover with distilled water. Add, slowly and with constant agitation of the contents of the flask, 250 mls. of saturated oxalic acid. Cool under the tap while the additions are being made. After the evolution of  $H_2$  has ceased, filter, acidify with a few drops of glacial acetic acid, and dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Preserve as directed above.

Method by electrolysis: Arrange two platinum electrodes protected from the house-current by a series of lamps or other resistance, so that they may dip in a saturated solution of oxalic acid. Pass the current through the solution until there is no longer a conspicuous evolution of gas from the solution. A yield of about 87 per cent. is obtained in this way. Preserve as directed before.

*Hopkins-Cole Reagent Used in Tyrosin Determination.*—Page 267;  $HgSO_4$ , 1000 gs.;  $H_2O$ , 500 mls. Add 70 mls.  $H_2SO_4$  and dilute to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Hopkin's Lactic Acid Reagent.*—Thiophen.

*Hydrochloric Acid, Concentrated, Colorless.*—36 per cent.  $HCl$ , water 64 per cent. Specific gravity, 1.18. Free chlorin, 0.0002 per cent. Chief impurity,  $SO_2$ .

*Hydrochloric Acid, Dilute.*—10 per cent. solution. Specific gravity, 1.05.

*Hydrochloric Acid, Normal Solution.*—Dilute 105 mls. concentrated hydrochloric acid up to 1000 mls. with distilled water; this gives an approximately normal solution, slightly stronger than the theoretical. The normality must be determined by titrating against standard alkali. Percentage dissociation, 0.1 normal solution at  $25^{\circ}C$ ., 91 per cent.

*Hydrogen Sulphide for the Laboratory.*—In the middle compartment of a Kipp generator (Fig. 248, page 869) place a number of pieces of ferrous sulphide sticks or lumps. Into the upper compartment pour dilute sulphuric acid until the liquid rises against the sticks of  $FeS$  in the middle compartment. Reaction:  $FeS + H_2SO_4 = H_2S \uparrow + FeSO_4$ . The gas leaves the side-tube when the cock is opened.

Individual method by asbestos preparation of "Aitchtueess."<sup>2</sup> Place a cylinder about 2 cms. deep of the material in the bottom of a Pyrex test-tube. Fit a glass delivery tube ("L"-shaped) to the mouth of the test-tube by means of a rubber stopper. Fix the test-tube horizontally upon a ring stand by means of a burette clamp and apply a low flame of a microburner (Fig. 234, page 822) to the end of the test-tube containing the asbestos preparation. Collect the gas as desired, but remove the flame when the gas is no longer to be used. *Do not permit the gas to go out into the room.* Remember that as the tube cools back suction will take place.

*Hypobromite Solution for Urea Determination.*—Sodium hypobromite: Dissolve

<sup>1</sup> This is the Eastman Kodak Co., Rochester, N. Y., preparation, page 292.

<sup>2</sup> Obtainable from the Philadelphia Special Chemical Co., 1833 Chestnut Street, Philadelphia, Pa.

100 gs. of NaOH in 250 mls. of distilled water. Cool. Add, with care, 25 mls. of liquid bromin. Cool thoroughly under the tap. The solution does not keep and must be freshly prepared when desired for use.

*Indicators for pH Determinations:*

*Clark-Lubs Indicators.*—Method for preparing indicator solutions from the dry powders:

Phenol red: Grind, in a mortar, the contents of a bottle (10 decigrams) with 5.7 mls. twentieth normal sodium hydroxid solution. Dilute to 25 mls. with distilled water.

Bromphenol blue: Repeat as for phenol red, but use 3.0 mls. of the alkali.

Cresol red: Repeat, using 5.3 mls. alkali.

Bromcresol purple: Repeat, using 3.7 mls. alkali.

Thymol blue: Repeat, using 4.3 mls. alkali.

Bromthymol blue: Repeat, using 3.2 mls. alkali.

Methyl red: Repeat, using 7.4 mls. alkali.

*Lamotte Standard Indicators.*—Mix 0.5 ml. of the prepared commercial solution of the following indicators, with 10 mls. of the special buffer solutions, M/5:

Thymol blue (acid range).

Bromphenol blue.

Bromcresol green.

Bromcresol purple.

Bromthymol blue.

Phenol red.

Cresol red.

Thymol blue (alkaline range).

*Insulin* is prepared for the market by several pharmaceutical firms, being concessionaries of the University of Toronto, which holds the patent. While the methods of preparation differ and are constantly being modified, the general procedure is as follows: Beef pancreas is ground, treated with sulphuric acid, then with ethanol and centrifuged, the supernatant fluid removed and saved as the "first extract." To the residue are added  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and ethanol and centrifuged again, the supernatant fluid being united with the first extract, the sediment being discarded. The extracts are filtered, and NaOH added. The mixture is subjected to vacuum concentration at below  $30^\circ \text{C}$ . Ammonium sulphate is added to precipitate the extract. The precipitate is collected and dissolved in dilute  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ . Hydrochloric acid is added and then ethanol to precipitate the protids. Ether is added to the filtrate and after an exposure to low temperature for some time, there settles out a jelly which is dissolved in acid and the reaction adjusted to the iso-electric point (5.0–4.7). The product is grayish. The concentrated product is brought to pH 2–2.5 and isotonic with physiologically normal saline (0.9 per cent. NaCl) solution. It is sterilized by means of a Berkefeld filter and subjected to standardization tests. For the market it is prepared in ampoules of "U-10" containing 10 units<sup>1</sup> to the ml.; "U-20," containing 20 units to the ml.; "U-30," 30 units to the ml., and "U-40," with 40 units to the ml. The unit is defined as that dose administered subcutaneously to a 2-kilogram rabbit, having been fasted for twelve hours, which will induce a fall of blood-sugar to 0.045 g. per 100 mls. of whole blood within four hours and result in hypoglycemic convulsions (Fig. 153). The formula used is:

$$\text{Units of insulin per ml.} = \frac{\text{Reduction of b. s.}}{\text{Diff. bt. normal and convulsive blood-sugar level}} \times \frac{\text{kilos body wt.}}{\text{mls. insulin used}} \times 1.5.$$

<sup>1</sup> Clinical units.

The insulin is finally tested for precipitation by subjecting it to high temperatures for two days. If no precipitation occurs, the sample is released for sale. The standardization varies from 5 to 10 per cent., so that each lot varies to a small extent and must be used accordingly. The blood-sugar figures serve as faithful indices of the condition of the patient. If there is a tendency to hypoglycemia after administering insulin, glucose must be given either by mouth or 5 to 20 gs. must be given by injection by vein. Insulin is given a half-hour before meals once or more times daily. Insulin is a dangerous substance and must be administered only at the advice of a physician.

*Iodid, Potassium, by Mouth for Motility Test.*—0.3 g. in capsules.

*Iodin Solution, Potassium Iodid.*—Decinormal solution: Dissolve 13 gs. iodine in 30 gs. KI dissolved in 30 mls. of distilled water. Make up to 1 liter. The solution is then standardized against decinormal thiosulphate (page 905).

*Iodin (Lugol's Solution).*—Five per cent. iodine in a 10 per cent. KI solution (aqueous).

*Iodin, Tincture.*—Seven per cent. iodine in 5 per cent. alcoholic KI solution.

*Iodin Solution for Aceton Determinations.*—Weigh 10 gs. KI into a beaker and add 50 mls. of distilled water. Weigh accurately 6.4 gs. iodine into a beaker and cover with a watch-glass while weighing. Add this to the KI solution. Dissolve and then transfer the solution to a 500-ml. flask, dilute to the mark, and mix. Standardize against thiosulphate solution.

*Kraus' Tryptophan Method* (page 308).—*Reagents:* Toluene pure, *i. e.*, toluene that gives no color with the vanillin-HCl reagent. HCl concentrated (specific gravity 1.19).  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  50 per cent. by volume.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  5 per cent. by volume. Vanillin 0.5 in 50 per cent. acetic acid. Mercuric sulphate reagent—10 per cent.  $\text{HgSO}_4$ , made by triturating 10 grams  $\text{HgSO}_4$  with portions of 5 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  until dissolved and made up to 100 mls. Mercuric sulphate—2 per cent.—made as above by dissolving 2 grams  $\text{HgSO}_4$  in 100 mls. of 5 per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .

*Lange's Colloidal Gold Reagent.*—Vessels must be absolutely clean; wash glassware with aqua-regia (page 866), then with tap, and then with distilled  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Distill a liter of ordinary distilled water through Pyrex or quartz vessels. Heat 500 mls. to 60° C. Add 5 mls. of 1 per cent. "gold chlorid"<sup>1</sup>; then 5 mls. of 2 per cent.  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ . Bring the temperature to 90° C., but no higher, and then withdraw the flame. Add 5 mls. of a 1 per cent. solution of best grade commercial "formalin," made by diluting 1 ml. of the formalin from a freshly opened bottle up to 100 mls. double distilled water. Agitate the solution of gold while adding the formalin until the solution begins to turn pinkish, after which more formalin in larger amounts are added until a deep red color appears. There may be no purple in the color. Test: 1.7 mls. of 1 per cent. NaCl ppt. 5 mls. in sixty minutes.

*LaWall's Method for Methanol in the Presence of Ethanol.*—See page 893: Dilute the alcohol solution to contain about 5 per cent. ethanol by volume. To 5 mls. of this diluted solution, in a 25-ml. volumetric cylinder, add 5 drops phosphoric acid solution and 2 mls. of a 3 per cent. aqueous solution of potassium permanganate. Let stand for ten minutes. Add 1 ml. 10 per cent. aqueous solution oxalic acid. Let stand until the solution takes on a transparent brownish color.

<sup>1</sup> Commercial gold chlorid solutions are composed of  $\text{AuCl}_3 \cdot \text{HCl} \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , containing about 50 per cent. Au. The crystals are bright yellow. They are usually supplied in ampoules containing 0.9 gram. To make a 1 per cent. solution dissolve the contents of an ampoule in about 50 mls. of double distilled water and make up to 90 mls. with the water.

Now add 5 mls. diluted and cooled sulphuric acid (1 : 3) solution in water and finally 5 mls. of the special fuchsin-sulphurous acid solution (see page 889). Mix and let stand for ten minutes. When viewed against a white back-ground, methyl alcohol imparts a violet color. A control should be conducted: Repeat the procedure, but add 2 drops of a 5 per cent. methanol solution. Sensitivity, 1 : 10,000.

*Lead Acetate, Normal Solution.*—190 gs.  $\text{Pb}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$  dissolved in water and made up to 1000 mls.

*Lead Acetate ("Basic").*—0.5 normal: Dissolve 56 gs.  $\text{PbO}$  (yellow lead oxid or "litharge") in about 200 mls. of distilled water and add 95 gs. of lead acetate,  $\text{Pb}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Lead, powdered,* for creatin determinations, see page 867.

*Leffmann and Beam's Special Glycerol Reagent for Reichert-Meissl Number.*—Add to 180 mls. of pure glycerol 20 mls. of 50 per cent.  $\text{NaOH}$  solution.

*Liebermann's (Burchard) Reagent.*—Acetic anhydrid, specific gravity 1.08; chloroform, free from chlorin.

*Lime-water.*—Dissolve an excess of calcium oxid (unslaked lime) in water, shake well, and leave well stoppered for several days; then decant the pure supernatant liquid from the residue. Preserve in a vessel so that  $\text{CO}_2$  cannot contaminate the solution.

*Lloyd's Reagent.*—Obtainable from J. U. Lloyd Co., Cincinnati, Ohio.

*Mastic Suspension for Colloidal Demonstrations.*—Dissolve 5 mastic "tears" in "absolute" ethanol and add the solution to 50 mls. of distilled water; a milky suspension occurs.

*Magnesia Mixture.*—Dissolve in distilled water (200 mls.) 55 gs. of magnesium chlorid,  $\text{MgCl}_2 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and after solution, 70 gs. ammonium chlorid ( $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$ ). Then add 125 mls. of ammonium hydroxid, concentrated, specific gravity, 0.880. Make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Mayer's Reagent.*—Dissolve in 200 mls. of distilled water 13.55 gs. mercuric chlorid,  $\text{HgCl}_2$ , warming the solution if necessary. Then add 49.80 gs. of potassium iodid,  $\text{KI}$ , and then water to make a liter of solution.

*Mercuric Chlorid Normal Solution.*—Weigh 136 gs.  $\text{HgCl}_2$  and dissolve in 800 mls. of distilled water. Make up to 1000 mls. with water.

*Methanol in the Presence of Ethanol.*<sup>1</sup>—Place in a 200 by 20 Pyrex test-tube free from scratches 1 ml. of the suspected alcohol, 2 mls. of 6.7 per cent. potassium dichromate solution, and 2 mls. of 1.2 normal (62 per cent.) sulphuric acid. Mix. Allow to stand at room temperature for about ten minutes. The reduction of the chromic acid to blue chromic sulphate should take about forty seconds, and if it takes much longer than this the alcohol used contains too much water. Add 15 mls. of distilled water, mix thoroughly, and heat in a boiling water-bath for ten minutes. Now add 5 mgs. of orcinol in 1 ml. of water, mix very thoroughly, and heat in the boiling water-bath for thirty minutes. If the alcohol contained 5 per cent. or more of methanol, a precipitate will be formed after about five minutes' heating. With 1 per cent. of methanol a precipitate will form after fifteen minutes' heating. The test will show methanol down to 0.5 per cent., although in this case it may be necessary to heat for thirty minutes and then allow the solution to cool before a precipitate forms. If the precipitate is filtered off it will be seen to be distinctly brown or yellow.

Quantities of methanol smaller than 0.5 per cent. can be detected by precipi-

<sup>1</sup> J. B. Sumner, Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 45, p. 2378, 1923.



tating the chromium by adding a slight excess of sodium hydroxide and heating. When this is filtered, the clear filtrate possesses a green fluorescence if even traces of methanol were originally present. This last procedure is of doubtful value, as it is to be expected that traces of methanol derived from glucids like pectins may possibly be present in beverages from fruits.

The alcohol used in the test is obtained by distilling the suspected solution or beverage, using a glass column to obtain as complete a separation from the water as possible. The temperature of the upper portion of the column should not be allowed to exceed 80° C.

Formic acid, amyl alcohol, acetone, and furfural do not interfere with the test. Glycerol does not interfere because it is eliminated in the process of distillation; but if it is added to the alcoholic distillate it gives a positive test if as much as 5 mgs. are present.

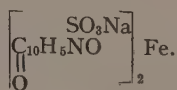
*Mette Tubes for Digestion Experiments.*—By means of the back of a pocket knife or similar object break a fresh egg in its equator. Slip the tips of your thumbs into the incision and carefully pry the two halves apart, catching the yolk in one-half and permitting the egg-white to drain into a jar. Repeat, using 3 eggs in all. Save the yolks for experiments on lecithin; the instructor will designate a place for them, preserved by alcohol. Then, by means of a bunch of wires or an egg-beater, break up the egg-white; strain through glass wool and use the more liquid portion passing through the funnel for the making of the tubes: Secure glass tubing about 1.5 mm. inner diameter and with heavy walls. Cut into decimeter lengths. Suck into each one egg-white until they are filled. Lay the tubes horizontally upon a piece of gauze, wrap them, and tie the gauze into a bag. Lower this bundle into your saucepan or casserole in which water has been boiled and permitted to cool to 85° C. Leave until the water has cooled to room temperature (20° C.). Remove the tubes from the water, unwrap the gauze, and dry the exterior of the glass-tubes on filter-paper. Melt some 60° C. paraffin and dip the extreme tip of the tubes into it, in order to protect the tubes from drying. They may be stored in this way in a refrigerator at about 8° C. When ready for use, cut about 1 cm. from each end, discard, and use the more central portions of the tubes for enzyme work.

*Millon's Reagent.*—Dissolve 1 part by weight of mercury in 2 parts by weight of pure white nitric acid, HNO<sub>3</sub>, specific gravity 1.42. A hood should be used. After the reaction has progressed for some time, cautiously heat the vessel containing the solution and dilute with twice its volume of distilled water. Leave overnight, filter, and store. This is a solution of HNO<sub>3</sub>, HNO<sub>2</sub>, Hg<sub>2</sub>(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, and Hg(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>.

*Moerner's Reagent.*—Mix 1 ml. of commercial formalin with 45 mls. of distilled H<sub>2</sub>O and add, cautiously, 55 mls. of 50 per cent. H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> solution.

*Molybdate, Alkaline.*—See page 867.

*Myers' Naphthol-green, Standard for Cholesterol Determinations.*—Weigh 50 mgs. of the dye Naphthol Green B and dissolve in water to make 1000 mls. solution. Standardize against 5 mls. of a chloroform solution of cholesterol containing 0.4 mg. cholesterol. Naphthol Green B is:



*Myers' Permanganate Solution for Calcium Determinations.*—Fill to the mark a 100-ml. volumetric flask with 0.1 normal KMnO<sub>4</sub> and dilute to 1000 mls. in a liter flask.



*Nitric Acid, Concentrated.*—Specific gravity, 1.42, 65 per cent.  $\text{HNO}_3$ . Clear, colorless before opening container, but turning brownish to reddish yellow on exposure to air, due to the formation of oxides of nitrogen. Chief impurity: calcium and  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$ .

*Nitric Acid, Dilute.*—10 per cent. solution from concentrated. Specific gravity 1.06.

*Nitric Acid, Normal Solution.*—250 mls. of concentrated nitric acid made up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Percentage dissociation at 25° C. 0.1 normal, 92 per cent.

*Nitric Acid, Fuming.*—Specific gravity, 1.50. Yellowish to brownish red. Contains  $\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$ ,  $\text{NO}_2$ , etc. Fuming nitric acid can be made for immediate use by boiling concentrated nitric acid with a match-stick or piece of pine wood.

*Nylander's Solution.*—Dissolve 50 gs. Rochelle salt (potassium sodium tartrate) in 500 mls. of distilled water and add 20 gs. of bismuth subnitrate or subcarbonate, basic nitrate,  $(\text{Bi}(\text{OH})_2)_2\text{NO}_3$ ; basic carbonate,  $(2(\text{BiO})_2\text{CO}_3 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O})$ . Add 80 gs.  $\text{NaOH}$  purified by alcohol, and make up to 1000 mls. when cooled to room temperature.

*Obermayer's Reagent.*—Dissolve 4 gs. ferric chlorid,  $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6$ , in 400 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid and make up to 1 liter with the acid.

*Pavy's Solution.*—Mix 120 mls. of complete Fehling's solution (page 881) with 300 mls. concentrated ammonium hydroxid, specific gravity, 0.880. Make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Pepsin Solution.*—Method of preparation from gastric mucosa: Secure from the abattoir pigs' stomachs and leave them for an hour or so in a warm place for autolysis to take place to a certain extent. Then open the stomachs, make long cuts through the mucosa, and tear it from the muscular coats. Pass the strips through a meat-grinder and add the mash to 300 mls. of 0.1 normal  $\text{HCl}$  solution in a large salt-mouth bottle. Leave in a cool place overnight, insuring that the mucosa comes into intimate mixture with the acid solution. Strain off the mucosa through gauze and save the liquid as an  $\text{HCl}$  extract containing pepsin. Place the mucosa in glycerol and leave indefinitely; the glycerol extract, when used for pepsin, must have a 0.2 per cent.  $\text{HCl}$  solution added.

*Pepton, Witte's.*—To show pepton shock in mammals: Inject per kilo of body weight 0.2 to 0.5 g. dry pepton or 2 to 5 mls. of 10 per cent. solution in water.

*Permanganate, potassium,* for calcium determinations, see page 894.

For decinormal solution: Weigh 3.161 gs. pure, preferably long crystal  $\text{KMnO}_4$  (better expressed as  $\text{K}_2\text{Mn}_2\text{O}_8$ , since it is in this form that the permanganate participates in most reactions) and make up to 1000 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Calculation (in acid solution):  $\text{K}_2\text{Mn}_2\text{O}_8 + 4\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = 2\text{KHSO}_4 + 2\text{MnSO}_4 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} + 5\text{O}$ ; hence  $316.06 \times 0.5 \times 0.2 \times 0.1 = 3.16$  gs. liter.

For antidote for poisons: By stomach-tube per kilo, 15 mls. of 1 per cent. permanganate aqueous solution.

For alkaline permanganate solution in gas analysis: 50 gs. of  $\text{KMnO}_4$  crystals are dissolved in 700 mls. of warm (60° C.) distilled water. Cool. Weigh 25 gs. of  $\text{KOH}$  and dissolve in the permanganate solution. Make up to a liter with more water.

Potassium permanganate is soluble in water to the extent of 7 gs. per 100 mls., at room temperature, 20° C.

*Phenol Reagent.*—See pages 869 and 882.

*Phenolsulphonephthalein*<sup>1</sup> for Renal Efficiency Test.—The usual commercial ampoule contains more than 1 ml., but 1 ml. contains 6 mgs. of the dye as mono-sodium-phenol-sulphone-phthalein. For injection in renal efficiency test: By means of a small file break the tip of the ampoule at the constriction. Insert a sterile hypodermic needle attached to a syringe and withdraw exactly 1 ml. Injection is made into the lumbar or deltoid muscles. The test is performed by making colorimetric comparison of the urine taken at one-, two-, and three-hour intervals, each specimen being made up to 1000 mls., against the standard. Standard: Dilute exactly 1 ml. of the dye up to 1 liter with distilled water.

*Phenolphthalein, Indicator*.—Weigh 1 g. and dissolve in ethanol, 50 per cent., to make 100 mls.

*Phenolphthalin (Not Phenolphthalein)*.—Blood test: See pages 392 and 394.

*Phlorhizin*<sup>2</sup> diabetes in dog, by vein, per kilo, 0.1 g. For rabbit, 0.25 g.; it is a glucoside, glucose being united to phloretin (ester of mono-phloretic phloroglucinol). It is obtained from cherry bark. See page 190.

*Phosphates, Solutions Required for Analysis*.—(1) Acetate solution: Dissolve 100 gs. of sodium acetate in distilled water and add 100 mls. of strong (glacial) acetic acid. Make up to 1000 mls. (2) Standard potassium phosphate solution: Pipette 28.17 mls. of 0.2 molecular  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and make up to the mark with distilled water. (3) Standard uranium acetate solution: To about 500 mls. of distilled water add 36 gs. of uranyl acetate,<sup>3</sup> applying heat if necessary. Cool, make up to 1 liter, and filter. (Page 778.)

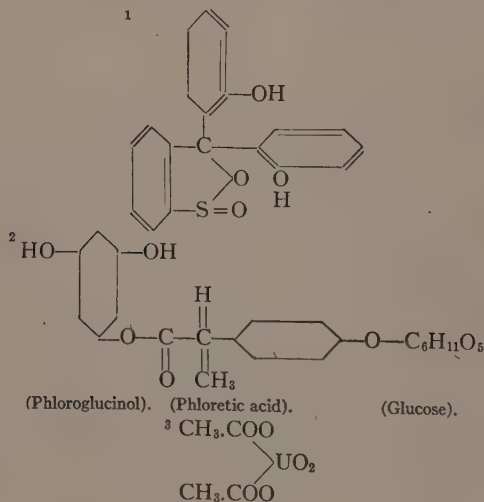
Solutions for buffers; see page 877.

*Phosphorus for Inducing Hepatic Degeneration*.—Administer by stomach 10 gs. white or yellow phosphorus per kilo, wrapped in food or in albolene or other oil, by stomach-tube.

*Picric Acid*.—Saturated at 20° C., 2 per cent. solution. Purification, see page 867.

*Potassium Chlorid, Normal Solution*.—Dissolve 74.5 gs. KCl in distilled water and make up to 1 liter.

*Potassium Dichromate,  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$ , Normal Solution*.—Weigh 49.10 gs. and make up to 1 liter.  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$  gives up 30 = 6H; therefore take  $\frac{1}{6}$  mol. wgt. Fundamental equation:  $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7 + 6\text{FeO} = 3\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{K}_2\text{O} + \text{Cr}_2\text{O}_3$ . See page 723.



*Potassium Ferrocyanid*,  $K_4Fe(CN)_6 \cdot 3H_2O$ , *Normal Solution*.—Dissolve 106 gs. in enough distilled water to make 1000 mls.

*Potassium Ferricyanid*,  $K_3Fe(CN)_6$  or  $K_6Fe_2(CN)_{12}$ , *Normal Solution*.—Weigh 22 gs. and dissolve in enough water to make 1000 mls. solution.

Saturated solution: 43 gs. ferricyanid up to 100 mls.  $H_2O$  at  $25^\circ C$ .

*Potassium Oxalate*,  $(COOK)_2 \cdot H_2O$ , *Normal Solution*.—Weigh 83.01 gs. and make up to a liter with distilled water.

As anticoagulant 1 g. made up to 100 mls. distilled  $H_2O$ . See page 65.

*Potassium Permanganate*.—See page 895.

*Potassium Acid Phthalate*.—For chemical formula see page 873. Properties: Non-hygroscopic, water soluble, behaving as a monobasic acid, colorless. Solubility at  $25^\circ C$ , 10.24 per cent.;  $35^\circ C$ , 12.67 per cent.;  $100^\circ C$ , 36.12 per cent. Solutions should be made in water not above  $35^\circ C$ , as supercooling results, producing a more acid salt. References: Journal Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, vol. 7, page 29, 1915; Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 37, page 2352 (Hendrixon), 1915; vol. 42, page 724, 1655 (Hendrixon and Dodge, respectively), 1920.

*Potassium Thiocyanate*,  $KCNS$ , *Decinormal Solution*.—Dissolve 10 gs. of the crystals in water sufficient to make 1 liter of solution. This solution is approximately decinormal; for exact normal it is necessary to standardize it (page 776). Decinormal  $AgNO_3$  solution  $\approx$  16.989 gs.  $AgNO_3$  per liter of solution. For Volhard and modifications of this method for chlorids, see pages 774, 776, 897, and 905.

*Roberts' Reagent*.—Add 1 volume pure white nitric acid to 5 volumes of a 40 per cent. (saturated) solution of magnesium sulphate.

*Saline, Sodium Chlorid Physiologically Normal*.—For frog, 0.5 per cent.  $NaCl$ ; for mammal, 0.9 per cent.  $NaCl$ . Weigh 6 (or 9) gs.  $NaCl$  and make up to 1000 mls. Special, for blood dialysis: Eight gs.  $NaCl$  made up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Test for free acids: Place 5 mls. of the well-mixed solution in a Pyrex test-tube and add 2 drops of phenol red indicator; the solution turns yellowish. Boil, expelling the  $CO_2$ ; the color changes to an orange red if the solution is free from acids other than  $CO_2$ . If the solution appears pinkish, an alkaline reaction is present and the solution must be adjusted.

*Santonin*, for demonstrating color of the urine after using this vermifuge: Man, by mouth, 0.05 g.; cat, hypodermic per kilo, 500 mgs. Rabbit, per kilo, stomach-tube, 2.0 gs. Fatal for man, 200 mgs.

*Schiff's Reaction for Aldehydes*.—Reagent: Acid fuchsin, 1 per cent. aqueous; bubble  $SO_2$  gas through the solution until it has become decolorized. For  $SO_2$  see page 899. For other aldehyde reactions see pages 870 (Bial) and 914.

*Schweitzer's Reagent*.—Add about 5 gs. of ammonium chlorid to 100 mls. of a 5 per cent. cupric sulphate solution and add sodium hydroxid, 10 per cent.; a blue precipitate is formed. Filter, saving the residue. Wash on the paper with water, press through several layers of filter-paper, and dissolve in ammonium hydroxid solution, concentrated.

*Scott-Wilson Reagent*.—See page 864.

*Seelman Reagents for Modified Volhard Method for Chlorids*.—(1) Weigh 29.055 gs. silver nitrate and dissolve in about 900 mls. of 25 per cent.  $HNO_3$  solution. Add 50 mls. of saturated<sup>1</sup> ferric-ammonium sulphate,  $FeNH_4(SO_4)_2 \cdot 12H_2O$ , violet crystals. Make up to 1000 mls. with water. (2) Weigh, roughly, 8 gs. of ammonium thiocyanate,  $NH_4CNS$ , and make up to 1000 mls. Make 2 mls. of Solution 2  $\approx$  1 ml. of Solution 1, by following the method of titration on page 774.

<sup>1</sup> 35 gs. of crystals made up to 100 mls.  $H_2O$  at  $20^\circ C$ .

*Selivanoff's Solution*.—Dissolve 0.05 g. resorcinol<sup>1</sup> in 200 mls. of 50 per cent. hydrochloric acid.

*Silver Nitrate Solution, Decinormal*.—Weigh 16.98 gs. of crystals<sup>2</sup> and dissolve in enough distilled water to make 1000 mls. solution.

For the Volhard-Harvey method weigh 23.94 gs. silver nitrate crystals and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Each ml.  $\approx$  8.23 mgs. of NaCl.

*Silver Nitrate Solution, Ammoniacal*.—Ammonium hydroxid is added to a 10 per cent. solution of  $\text{AgNO}_3$ , making  $\text{Ag}(\text{NH}_3)_2\text{NO}_3$ .

*Sodium Amalgam*.—Weigh, quickly, 15 gs. of metal sodium cut by means of scissors from a stick of sodium under paraffin oil. Add, slowly, to 1000 gs. of mercury. The temperature will rise to about 150° C. After the amalgam has formed and cooled, cover it with distilled water and knead it with a glass rod under the water. Then pour off the water and dry the amalgam between several layers of filter-paper. For pure sodium amalgams see Richards and Conant, Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 44, page 602, 1922.

*Sodium Chlorid, Saturated Solution*.—35.6 gs. of NaCl per 100 mls. of distilled water at 25° C.

Normal solution, 58.50 gs. NaCl made up to 1000 mls.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Specific gravity 1.378 at 20° C.

Physiologically normal NaCl solution, see page 115.

*Sodium Cobalti-nitrite,  $\text{Na}_3\text{Co}(\text{NO}_2)_6$* .—It may be made as follows: Dissolve 30 gs. sodium nitrite,  $\text{NaNO}_2$  in about 50 mls. distilled water. Add 5 gs. cobalt nitrate and 2.5 mls. glacial acetic acid. Make up to 100 mls. with distilled water. Filter after one day from any residue.

*Sodium Nitrite Solution,  $\text{NaNO}_2$* .—For general purposes decinormal solution, 6.9 gs. per 1000 mls. of solution.

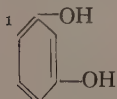
For the Van Slyke gasometric method: Make 30 gs. of  $\text{NaNO}_2$  sticks up to 100 mls. of distilled water.

*Sodium Phosphate Solutions for Buffers*.—See page 877.

For normal di-sodium-monohydrogen phosphate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , weigh 119.5 gs. of the crystals and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Sodium Ethylate Solution*.—Dissolve about 2 gs. of sodium metal, cut by means of scissors from a piece of sodium metal under oil, in "absolute" ethanol, and after dissolution of the sodium add enough "absolute" ethanol to make 1000 mls. solution. Standardize against a decinormal solution of benzoic acid in chloroform. One ml. of decinormal sodium ethylate  $\approx$  1.79 mgs. of hippuric acid (page 727).

*Soluble Starch, Lintner's Method; Modified by Small*.—Potato starch. Older potatoes are scrubbed with a vegetable brush and passed through a meat-grinder with the appropriate grinder. Transfer the grindings to a large piece of scrim, and by manipulation work out the starch from the fibers by submerging the bag under the surface of distilled water in a large vessel like an evaporating dish. Let the fluid in the vessel remain for an hour or longer in order that sedimentation of the starch and fibers that accompany the starch through the mesh may afford a means of separating the two layers. Decant the supernatant liquid from the



<sup>2</sup> Or 17.1 of fused  $\text{AgNO}_3$ , since on fusion in air some of the  $\text{AgNO}_3$  becomes silver oxid,  $\text{Ag}_2\text{O}$ , which, in the presence of  $\text{HNO}_3$ , does not form silver chlorid.



fibers; the decanted fluid contains the starch. Filter the starch from the fluid, discarding the filtrate, and leaving the starch on the paper exposed to air until dry. Weigh 25 gs. of the starch into a liter flask. Add 40 mls. of distilled water and 15 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Agitate the fluid to insure complete mixture. Leave one week, then pour off the supernatant fluid, and wash the residue with several changes of water by decantation. Filter through a Buchner funnel with hardened filter-paper. Suspend the residue in a buffer solution the reaction of which is pH 7.0 (see page 879). Before use, decant the supernatant buffer solution from the starch, add 1 volume distilled water, and filter on a Buchner funnel with hardened paper. Dry in the air. Or: The above procedure may be followed as far as the addition of distilled water and leaving one week, replacing this procedure by the following: Weigh 100 gs. of the starch that has been air dried. Add 500 mls. 95 per cent. ethanol to which 4 mls. of concentrated hydrochloric acid have been added and place the vessel holding the solution in a boiling water-bath for fifteen minutes, agitating the contents at intervals. A reflux condenser of the Hopkins type should be used. Filter, wash with several changes of distilled water, and dry in the air.

*Sorensen Standard Solutions.*—See page 877.

*Spiegler's Reagent.*—Mix in about 500 mls. distilled water:

Mercuric chlorid. ....	40 gs.
Tartaric acid. ....	20 gs.

When dissolved, add 100 gs. glycerol, then 50 gs. sodium chlorid.

Finally make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

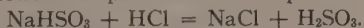
*Sodium Chlorid. Special Solution for pH Determinations:* "*Physiologically Normal.*"—Isotonic solution used on page 66: Weigh 9 grams of pure crystal NaCl and dilute with distilled water to 1 liter. Add 2 drops of an 0.01 per cent. solution of phenol red.

*Stokes' Solution.*—Dissolve 3 gs. of ferrous sulphate,  $\text{FeSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , in 50 mls. distilled water. Make a cold solution of tartaric acid, 2 gs. in 25 mls. distilled water. Add this to the ferrous sulphate solution. Mix. Make the solution up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. For use: Take 10 mls. of this solution and add concentrated ammonium hydroxid until the precipitate which forms when ammonia is added is dissolved. This must be done immediately preceding use.

Alternate method: Weigh 2 gs. of ferrous ammonium sulphate,  $\text{FeSO}_4(\text{NH}_4)\text{SO}_4 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , into a 100-ml. volumetric flask and add about 50 mls. of distilled water. After dissolution add 3 gs. of tartaric acid. After complete solution add concentrated  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  to clear the solution and water to make 100 mls. The solution keeps only a short time.

*Sumner's Methanol Method.*—See page 893.

*Sulphur Dioxid for Laboratory Purposes.*—Place 50 gs. of freshly opened sodium bisulphite,  $\text{NaHSO}_3$ , in the middle compartment of a Kipp generator (page 869), and add through the opening into the upper compartment 500 mls. of 1 : 10 hydrochloric acid solution. Glass-wool packed around the stem of the tube passing from the upper compartment through the middle one prevents the bisulphite from passing into the lowest compartment. The equation is as follows:



The sulphurous acid decomposes into  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and  $\text{SO}_2$ . The  $\text{SO}_2$  gas escapes from the side tube of the middle compartment when the stop-cock is opened.

Sulphur dioxid is used to decolorize basic fuchsin in Schiff's test (page 897).

*Starch, Soluble.*—See page 146.

*Sulphosalicylic Acid Solution.*—Dissolve 13 gs. of salicylic acid in 20 mls. of concen-



trated sulphuric acid. Warm in order to effect solution and, after cooling, add 67 mls. of distilled water.

*Sulphuric Acid, Concentrated.*—Colorless, syrupy, specific gravity, 1.84. Ninety-four per cent.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Chief impurity, lead.

Dilute: Ten per cent. aqueous, specific gravity, 1.069.

Normal solution: Dilute 28 mls. of concentrated sulphuric acid to 1000 mls. distilled water at  $20^\circ\text{C}$ . Per cent. dissociation at  $25^\circ\text{C}$ ., decinormal solution, 58 per cent. Standardize against known alkali.

Fuming sulphuric acid: 15 per cent.  $\text{SO}_3$ .

*Tannic Acid, Plimmer's Solution.*—Add to 500 mls. of distilled water 100 gs. of tannic acid and, after dissolution, 25 gs. of sodium acetate, then 25 gs. of sodium chlorid, and finally 50 mls, glacial acetic acid. Make up to 1 liter with distilled water.

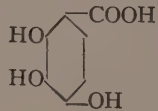
*Thiocyanate Solution for Volhard and Modifications.*—For Volhard-Harvey method: Dissolve 8 gs. of ammonium thiocyanate,  $\text{NH}_4\text{CNS}$ , in about 800 mls. of distilled water and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water. Titrate against standard silver nitrate solution (page 898) with a known  $\text{NaCl}$  solution as basis for standardization; for the method, see pages 774–776.

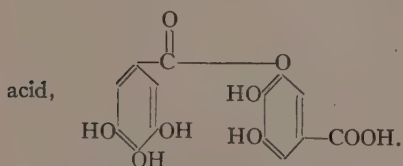
Seelman's modification: See page 774.

*Thiosulphate Solution for Aceton Determinations.*—Weigh 24.85 gs. of pure sodium thiosulphate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , from a freshly opened bottle. Make up to 500 mls. with distilled water. For standardization see page 196.<sup>2</sup>

*Trichloroacetic Acid,  $\text{CCl}_3\text{COOH}$ .*—50 gs. of the crystals are rapidly weighed on a rough balance and made up to 1000 mls. of distilled water solution. This makes a 5 per cent. solution.

*Trypsin: Method of Preparation from Pancreas.*—In asking for pancreas at the abattoir be sure to specify the belly-gland, known to German butchers as “Bauspeicheldruese.” The thymus from the calf is generally sold on the retail market as “sweetbread.” By means of scissors remove the fat as much as possible from the gland. Mince the gland substance and add 300 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol. Add about 5 mls. of toluene and an equal amount of chloroform. Shake the bottle and leave in a cool place for several days. When ready to use the extract, pour off the liquid and use for trypsinogen experiments and, for active trypsin, add the juice of some of the mucosa of the duodenum, or jejunum, which contains enterokinase. The solution must not be filtered if the extract is to be used for fat digestion experiments. For trypsin alone preserve by filtering through paper and

<sup>1</sup> The astringent principle of tea, etc. Di-gallic acid,  ; tannic



<sup>2</sup> There is confusion concerning the term “hypo” which is sometimes assigned to this substance. The term “hypo” is used in photography to designate this product,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , but in some quarters it is applied to sodium hyposulphite,  $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ , also called hydrosulphite.

adding to the filtrate a small amount of concentrated HCl (about 1 ml. per liter of filtrate).

*Turpentine for Demonstrating Hematuria in Experimental Animals.*—By mouth to dog, 20 gs. of turpentine oil.

*Uffelmann's Reagent.*—Treat a 2 per cent. solution of phenol with 0.5 per cent. ferric chlorid solution until the solution becomes colored a purplish violet.

*Urea*, as diuretic, 15 gs. urea crystals administered in a small amount of water. In order to mask the taste add a little honey to the crystals and mix well by means of a spatula. The dose may be repeated up to total of 40 gs. per day.

*Urease Solution.*—Grind 5 gs. of soy-bean or jack-bean, whole-bean or meal, with 50 mls. of 0.6 per cent.  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ . Let stand about fifteen minutes and then filter. Keep in a cool place. The solution remains active for about two days. A more stable solution is obtained as follows (after Folin): Weigh roughly 5 gs. of powdered soy- or jack-bean meal into a 500-ml. Erlenmeyer flask. Add freshly acid washed permittit powder (3 gs.) and 185 mls. of distilled water; add 16 mls. of 95 per cent. ethanol. Agitate the contents of the flask for a quarter of an hour and filter. The solution thus prepared will be active for a week at  $20^\circ \text{C}$ ., or longer if kept at ice-box temperature (about  $8^\circ \text{C}$ .). *Urease tablets* (Sumner): Grind about 50 gs. of jack-beans in a meat-grinder with coarse grinder and pass the ground beans through again, using the finer grinder. Then transfer to a large mortar and grind as fine as possible. Strain through a 20-mesh brass sieve, collecting the siftings in a large mortar. Moisten the siftings with a little 95 per cent. alcohol. If a tablet-mould is available, press the moistened powder into pellets of about 60 mgs. each. Let the pellets dry in the mould. Store the tablets in a well-stoppered bottle. Time for completely deaminizing urea in 1 ml. of urine twenty minutes at  $20^\circ \text{C}$ .

*Urethan*, for anesthesia in experimental animal.<sup>1</sup> Rabbit: 1 g. per kilo, by stomach-tube.

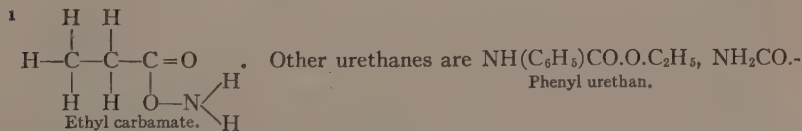
*Uranium Acetate.*—Normal solution: Weigh 21.30 gs. of the crystal ( $\text{UO}_2(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and make up to 1000 mls. with distilled water.

*Uranium Nitrate.*—Decinormal solution: Weigh 25.18 gs. of uranium nitrate crystals, ( $\text{UO}_2(\text{NO}_3)_2 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), and make up to 1000 mls. with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Sodium acetate must be used with phosphorus analyses in order to prevent the formation of free nitric acid.

*Uranium Salts for Experimental Nephritis in Animals.*—Dog: Hypodermic injection of 2 to 15 mgs. per kilo. Fatal dose, 1.66 gs. (Sollmann).

*Van Slyke's Aceton Solutions.*—See page 864.

*Van Slyke's Oxygen Solutions.*—(Volumetric method; Fig. 34, page 71.) Capacity measurements: (1) Saponin,<sup>2</sup> to cause hemolysis of the erythrocytes, 1 per cent. solution, aqueous.



$\text{O.CH.CH}_3.\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ . The one referred to in the text is the first, ethyl carbamate.  
Hedonal.

<sup>2</sup> The term "saponin" is a group name for substances of the nature of glucosides and galactosides found in plants. The common commercial saponin is derived from the Soap-weed, *Saponaria*.



- (2) Caprylic alcohol,  $C_8H_{16}OH$ , antifoaming agent.
- (3) Potassium ferricyanid solution; 20 gs. up to 100 mls.  $H_2O$ .
- (4) Sodium hydroxid, 0.5 normal solution: Dilute normal with 1 volume of  $H_2O$ .

Oxygen content: (1) Hemoglobin standard: Acid hematin from standard hemoglobin derived from oxygen capacity measurements: Determine the oxygen capacity by the method using the above reagents (page 384) and multiply the figure representing the oxygen combined with 100 mls. of blood by the factor 0.746; this gives the grams of hemoglobin per 100 mls. of blood. From such blood make an acid hematin solution by adding as much blood as necessary to a decinormal hydrochloric acid solution as will make a 3.75 per cent. hemoglobin solution. It is necessary to observe certain corrections in this calculation since we are dealing with gases:

Temperature at which determination is made:	Factor converting the burette reading to standard temperature and pressure.	barometric reading
15° C.....	0.932 ×	760
16° C.....	.928	
17° C.....	.924	
18° C.....	.919	
19° C.....	.915	
20° C.....	.910	
21° C.....	.906	
22° C.....	.901	
23° C.....	.897	
24° C.....	.892	
25° C.....	.888	
26° C.....	.883	
27° C.....	.878	
28° C.....	.873	
29° C.....	.868	
30° C.....	.863	

Multiply the observed gas volume (reading on the burette) by the proper factor in the second column × the fraction following that factor  $\left(\frac{B}{760}\right)$  and then by the special figure indicating the volume of blood taken for analysis (100 for 1 ml.; 50, for 2 mls., etc.). Finally, subtract 1.36, the volume per cent. nitrogen which accompanies the gases, but is inert. The grams of hemoglobin in 100 mls. of blood  $\approx 0.746 \times O_2$  bound by blood saturated with air at room temperature (20° C.). This last figure is obtained by subtracting 2.1 from the result obtained after multiplying by 100 or 50, etc., above.

If the Newcomer glass colorimetric standard is used, it is equivalent to using an acid hematin standard 0.038 g. hemoglobin per 100 mls. blood.

From the standard acid hematin solution make by suitable dilution, a working standard containing 0.075 g. hemoglobin per 100 mls. blood is obtained.

Methemoglobin estimation: Stadie's solutions:

Potassium ferricyanid, 3 per cent. solution in water.

Potassium cyanid, 0.1 per cent. solution in water.

Carbon monoxid solutions (Van Slyke and Salvesen):

Solutions are in part the same as those used in the determination of oxygen

capacity. In addition: Pyrogallol solution: 10 gs. of pyrogallol<sup>1</sup> in 200 mls. of a solution of KOH, made by dissolving 160 gs. KOH in 130 mls. of H<sub>2</sub>O.

Reagents for the manometric method by Van Slyke (page 386): (1) Sodium hydrosulphite solution, Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>·2H<sub>2</sub>O: Weigh 10 gs. and add 50 mls. of half-normal KOH solution; stir by means of a stirring-rod. Filter through glass-wool or cotton. Render the liquid gas free by subjecting it to the vacuum of the apparatus.<sup>2</sup>

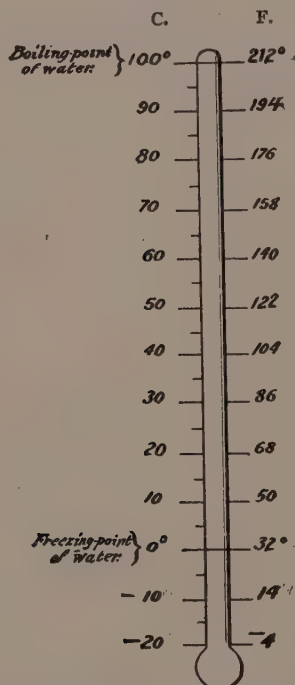
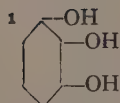


Fig. 257.—Thermometer showing Centigrade and Fahrenheit scales. "Absolute zero," -273° C.

(2) Pyrogallol may replace the hydrosulphite (2) in the absorption of oxygen. This reagent is given above. It is unnecessary to extract this solution.

(3) This reagent is virtually a combination of those described for the Van Slyke and Stadie method above. Single solution:

Potassium ferricyanid.....	3.0 gs.
Saponin (Meřck's).....	3.0 gs.
Octyl alcohol.....	3.0 mls.
Water to make.....	1000.0 mls.



Pyrogallol is the same as pyrogallic acid.

<sup>2</sup> See description of method, page 71.



## (4) For CO determinations. Single solution:

Saponin (Merck's).....	3.0 gs.
Potassium ferricyanid.....	8.0 gs.
Lactic acid, normal solution.....	40.0 mls.
Caprylic alcohol.....	3.0 mls.
Water to make.....	1000.0 mls.

## (5) Special reagents for freeing the blood of gases:

For O<sub>2</sub> determinations (as described above).

For CO<sub>2</sub>, 0.017 n. lactic acid made by diluting 1 ml. of the normal lactic acid to 60 mls. solution.

For combined CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub> the neutral ferricyanid solution described under (2) above, but having 1 ml. of normal lactic acid per 60 mls. of solution.

**Vernier.**—This is a means of dividing any unit measurement into decimal parts. A movable slide bears a graduated strip in tenths, in such a manner that it may be applied to any unit, as, for instance, the millimeter marks on the colorimeter. The zero of the vernier marks the unit to be read and the coinciding lines mark the decimals (tenths) to be added to the reading. Thus, if the zero of the vernier fall upon the interval 8.0 to 9.0 mms. of the colorimeter and it is found that the line representing 4 on the vernier coincides with a line on the millimeter scale, then the reading is 8.4 mms.

**Van Slyke Reagents for Gasometric Amino-nitrogen Method.**—Sodium nitrite solution:

Sodium nitrite sticks, NaNO <sub>2</sub> .....	30 gs.
Water up to .....	100 mls.

Acetic acid solution: Glacial acetic acid.

Solution for Hempel pipette:

Potassium permanganate, KMnO <sub>4</sub> .....	40 gs.
Potassium hydroxid, KOH (or NaOH).....	25 gs.
Water to make.....	1000 mls.

**Volhard's Chlorid Reagents**—0.1 N. Silver Nitrate.—Dissolve 16.99 gs. of pure fused silver nitrate in distilled water and make the volume up to 1 liter. Keep the solution in the dark.

$$1 \text{ ml.} = 0.00365 \text{ g. HCl.}$$

\* 0.1 N. thiocyanate.—Dissolve about 15 gs. of potassium, or about 10 gs. of ammonium thiocyanate, in a liter of distilled water. Mix thoroughly. Standardize this in the following way: Pipette 20 mls. of the standard silver nitrate into a 150-ml. beaker or Erlenmeyer flask. Add about 60 mls. of distilled water, 5 mls. of pure concentrated nitric acid, and 5 mls. of a cold saturated solution of iron alum (ferric ammonium sulphate). Titrate with the thiocyanate from a burette. A white precipitate of silver thiocyanate is formed. Continue to add the thiocyanate until a faint permanent pink (due to ferric thiocyanate) is obtained. Let  $x$  mls. = thiocyanate required. To 1 liter of the solution add  $\frac{1000(20 - x)}{x}$  mls. of distilled water.

**Wijs' Solution.**—(1) Original method: Dissolve, in a liter of glacial acetic acid, 13 gs. of resublimed iodine. Determine the strength of the iodine solution by titrating with standard thiosulphate solution.<sup>1</sup> Run in this thiosulphate from a burette

<sup>1</sup> The standardization is carried out as follows: Dissolve exactly 3.863 gs. crystal potassium dichromate in distilled water and make up to 1000 mls. After dissolution of the crystals, pipette 20 mls. into a 200-ml. bottle, add 25 mls. water, then

until the iodine solution becomes light yellow; then add starch solution and continue adding the thiosulphate until a blue color just disappears.

(2) Dissolve 9.4 gs. iodine trichloride in 200 mls. glacial acetic acid. Heat carefully over a gauze and stopper the flask with a cork stopper bearing a  $\text{CaCl}_2$  tube. Dissolve 7.2 gs. resublimed iodine in another flask containing 200 mls. glacial acetic acid, as before. Pour the two solutions into a liter volumetric flask. Cool. Make up to the mark with glacial acetic acid. Titrate this solution with decinormal thiosulphate as in (1) above.

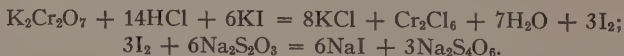
### PIPETTE TECHNIQUE<sup>1</sup>

*Transfer<sup>2</sup> and Measuring Pipettes.*<sup>3</sup>—In filling pipettes the liquid should be drawn to approximately 10 mms. above the zero (0) and then slowly emptied until the liquid is correctly set with the bottom of the meniscus at the zero mark. Any liquid adhering to the tip should be removed with filter-paper after the setting of the zero. *To empty a transfer pipette* it should be held in a vertical position; the outflow should be unrestricted until the surface of the water reaches the upper end of the delivery tube. The tip should then be touched to the wet surface of the receiving vessel and kept in contact with it until the emptying is complete. *The water remaining in the tip should not be blown out.*

*To empty a measuring pipette* it should be held in a vertical position and continuous, unrestricted outflow permitted until the liquid approaches the graduation mark on pipette. It is necessary to arrest the full flow of the liquid in time to obtain control over the final movement of the water surface and to bring the meniscus to rest gradually on the line to be tested. The instrument, therefore, is allowed to deliver freely until the water surface is approximately 10 mms. from the line representing the volume to be discharged. The rate of outflow is then reduced and the motion of the water surface brought under control so that any accurate setting can be made on the line in question. No period of waiting for drainage is allowed. The liquid adhering to the outside of the tip after the setting is then removed by touching it to the wet surface of the receiving vessel, but no liquid from within the pipette may be permitted to leave it.

*Ostwald-Folin Pipettes*—"Contain" Pipettes.—The filling and emptying of the Serological Pipettes graduated to the tip and Ostwald-Folin Pipettes to deliver are the same as described for the transfer pipette, excepting the remaining drop in the end of the tube is removed by blowing through the pipette, or follow the directions on page 61, where the warmth of the hand is used to force out the remaining drops.

10 mls. 10 per cent. potassium iodide solution. Finally add 5 mls. of pure hydrochloric acid. Stopper and leave in a closet five minutes. The solution contains exactly 0.2 g. iodine, set free according to the following reaction:



<sup>1</sup> *References.*—For the data concerning the proper use of pipettes used in this book the author is greatly indebted to the firm of Arthur H. Thomas Co., in the persons of Mr. Thomas and Mr. Patterson. Reference may be made to:

Bureau of Standards Circular, No. 9, Testing of Glass Volumetric Apparatus. Glazebrook's Dictionary of Applied Physics, Vol. 3, Measurements of Volume. The National Physical Laboratory, November, 1919, Volumetric Tests on Scientific Glassware.

<sup>2</sup> Such pipettes as the ordinary volumetric pipettes with only one graduation. Also called "tip-off" pipettes.

<sup>3</sup> The Mohr pipette belongs in this group.

Because breath contains  $\text{CO}_2$  care should be taken with pipettes.

*Contain Pipettes.*—Pipettes to contain are used the same way as Transfer Pipettes, but the pipette is rinsed out so as to insure the complete delivery of its contents.

### LOGARITHMS

are used to abbreviate the time and the number of stages in calculations. The kind of logarithm used in most chemical calculations is the common or Brigg's logarithm which may be defined as the number indicating how many times 10 is to be multiplied by itself to give the number sought.

Ten multiplied by itself no times =  $10^0$ ; the log is 0.0.

Ten multiplied by itself once =  $10^1$ ; the log is 1.0.

Ten multiplied by itself twice =  $10^2$ ; the log is 2.0.

When the log is  $0$ , the number is  $1$ ; when it is  $-1$ , the number is 0.1.

When the log is  $1$ , the number is  $10$ ; when it is  $-2$ , the number is .01.

When the log is  $2$ , the number is  $100$ ; when it is  $-3$ , the number is .001.

Numbers between 1 and 10 have fractions as logs:

$2 = 10^{0.3010}$  Log of 2 is 0.3010.

$3 = 10^{.4771}$  Log of 3 is .4771.

$4 = 10^{.6021}$  Log of 4 is .6021.

Now it is possible to represent numbers by lines of certain lengths; thus we may say that 2 is |—|; 3 is |—|. In like manner, we may say that 0.3010 is |—|; that 0.6021 is |—|. The scales C and D on a slide rule are lines representing the logarithms of numbers from 1 to 10, which may likewise be used to represent any such relationship, like 10 to 100; 100 to 1000, etc. The lines are not all alike; the length of the line from 1 to 2 is much longer than that from 2 to 3, etc. This makes no difference in the use of the rule for multiplying and dividing, because all that we wish the rule to do is to add and to subtract; for when logs are added, the numbers they represent are multiplied:

$\text{Log } 2 + \text{log } 2 = \text{log } 4 \approx 10,000$

$\text{Log } 2 \approx 100$ ;  $\text{log } 2 \approx 100$ ;  $100 \times 100 = 10,000$

When logs are subtracted the numbers are divided:

$\text{Log } 4 - \text{log } 2 = \text{log } 2 \approx 100$

$\text{Log } 4 \approx 10,000$ ;  $\text{log } 2 \approx 100$ ;  $10,000 \div 100 = 100$

As the rule is set in Fig. 228, page 805, we are adding log 10.5 to every log on the scale Ur. that is in contact with scale E; in other words, we are multiplying the numbers corresponding to these logs. If we multiply by the scale C turned the opposite way (as in the scale CI, Fig. 13), we are dividing because:  $2 \times 4 = 8$ ;  $\frac{1}{2} \times 4 = 2$ .

**Slide-rule<sup>1</sup>:** This is a convenient method for working with logarithms. If two numbers are to be multiplied, their logs are added; if they are to be divided, their logs are to be subtracted. The slide-rule simply adds or subtracts logarithms. Rules for decimal points with Duplex rule:

Multiplication: Slide to left, sum of integers      Black.  
right, sum — 1.

Division: Slide to left, difference + 1      Red.  
right, difference.

Hydrogen-ion and pH conversions by the slide rule: Example: Convert 2.88  $(10)^{-10}$  to pH. Find on the scale CI, 288, and read on the scale L, beneath 288, the figures 54. Place a decimal point in front of these numbers, making 0.54. Write in front of the decimal point the figure 9, making the completed pH = 9.54. The

<sup>1</sup> The directions are for the Keuffel and Esser duplex type, Fig. 13, page 41.



figure 9 is used because it is one less than the exponent  $-10$  of (10). The procedure is reversed when passing from  $pH$  to  $C_H$ .

### SPECIAL TABLES

TABLE SHOWING THE WEIGHT OF 1 ML. OF WATER AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES.

THE FIGURES ARE BASED ON WEIGHINGS WITH BRASS WEIGHTS IN AIR		
Temperature, degrees Centigrade.	Weight of 1 ml. of water in gs.	Volume of 1 g. of water in mls.
15.....	0.9981	1.0019
16.....	0.9979	1.0021
17.....	0.9977	1.0023
18.....	0.9976	1.0024
19.....	0.9974	1.0026
20.....	0.9972	1.0028
21.....	0.9970	1.0030
22.....	0.9967	1.0033
23.....	0.9965	1.0035
24.....	0.9963	1.0037
25.....	0.9960	1.0040
26.....	0.9958	1.0042
27.....	0.9955	1.0045
28.....	0.9952	1.0048
29.....	0.9949	1.0051
30.....	0.9946	1.0054
31.....	0.9943	1.0057
32.....	0.9941	1.0055

TABLE SHOWING THE VARIATIONS IN THE VALUE OF GRAVITY IN DIFFERENT EDUCATIONAL CENTERS. THE VALUE VARIES WITH LATITUDE AND WITH ALTITUDE

### GRAVITY CONSTANTS

G. per cm. per sec.

Atlanta, Ga.....	979.5	(Emory University).
Austin, Texas.....	979.2	(at the University of Texas).
Baltimore, Md.....	980.09	(Johns Hopkins Hospital).
Cambridge, Mass.....	980.39	(Harvard University).
Charlottesville.....	979.93	(University of Virginia).
Chicago, Ill.....	980.27	(University of Chicago).
Cincinnati, O.....	980.00	(University of Cincinnati).
Cleveland, O.....	980.24	(Western Reserve University).
Denver, Colo.....	979.68	(University of Colorado, Denver).
Galveston, Tex.....	979.27	(University of Texas).
Ithaca, N. Y.....	980.29	(Cornell University).
Little Rock, Ark.....	979.72	(University of Arkansas).
Madison, Wis.....	980.36	(University of Wisconsin).
New Orleans, La.....	979.32	(Tulane University).
New York, N. Y.....	980.26	(Columbia University, Morningside).
Philadelphia, Pa.....	980.15	(University of Pennsylvania).
Princeton, N. J.....	980.17	(Princeton University).
Salt Lake City.....	979.80	(University of Utah).
San Francisco.....	979.95	(University of California; Stanford University)
St. Louis, Mo.....	980.00	(Washington University; St. Louis University)
Washington, D. C.....	980.11	(Smithsonian Institution, etc.).
Worcester, Mass.....	980.32	(Clark University).

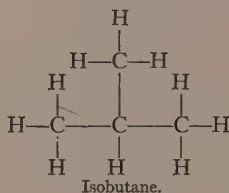
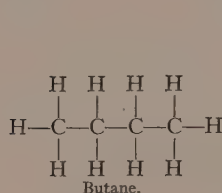
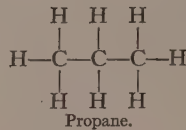
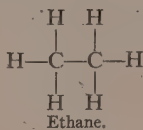
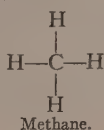
pH	RANGE OF PRINCIPAL INDICATORS	HYDROGEN-ION CONCENTRATION REACTIONS OF FLUIDS	OPTIMUM REACTIONS	ISO-ELECTRIC POINTS
10				
9	PHENOLPHTHALEIN THYMOL BLUE (Alkaline) CRESOL RED	Pancreatic juice (8.3)	→Trypsin on fibrin (8.0) →Erepsin (7.8)	
8	PHENOL RED PHENOL BLUE BROM-THYMOL BLUE	Blood (7.4). Intestinal juice. Human milk (7.1) Pure water..... Mixed saliva (6.9)	True neutrality 22° C....	Histidine (7.2)
7	BROM-THYMOL BLUE BROM-CRESOL PURPLE METHYL RED	→Cow's milk (6.7)	(Maltase (6.7) Ptyalin (6.7) Trypsin on casein (6.7)	Alanine (6.7) Oxyhemoglobin (6.6) Glycine (6.6)
6	BROM-CRESOL PURPLE METHYL RED	Urine (6.0)		
5	BROM-CRESOL PURPLE METHYL RED	Infant's gastric juice (5.0)	Protidase of Taka-dias-tase (5.1) →Invertase (4.5)	Tyrosine (5.41) Edestin (5.3) Serum albumin (denaturized) (5.4) Gliadin (5.2)
4	BROM-PHENOL BLUE	0.0001 N. HCl (4.01) 0.001 N. acetic (3.87) 0.01 N. acetic (3.37)		Egg albumin (4.8) Serum globulin (4.4); carrot globulin (4.4) Serum albumin (4.7). Also plant protoplasm (4.7); legumin (4.6)
3	BROM-PHENOL BLUE	0.0001 N. HCl (3.01) 0.1 N. acetic acid (2.87) N. acetic (2.37)		Casein (4.6) Glutenin (4.5); leucosin (4.5); tuberin (potato) (4.5) Gelatine (4.6) Phenyl-alanine (4.48) Protoplasm of bacterium (4.2) Bacteria nucleoprotid (4.0) Nucleoprotid (pancreas) (3.5); of B. typhosis (3.5) Bean protid (viciin) (3.4) Yeast (3.3) Potato juice (3.2); protoplasm of B. coli communis (3.2) Aspartic acid (2.9)
2	THYMOL BLUE (Acid)	0.01 N. HCl (2.02)		
1		Adult gastric juice (0.9 to 1.6) 0.1 N. HCl (1.08)	Pepsin (1.77)	
pH				



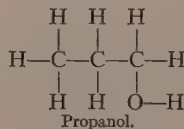
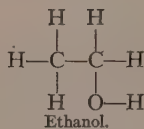
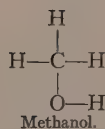
## CHARACTERISTIC BIOCHEMICAL CONFIGURATIONS

Hydrocarbon series.

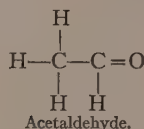
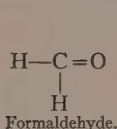
Saturated:



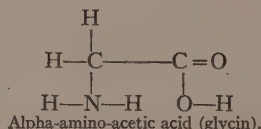
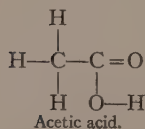
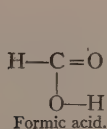
Alcohols



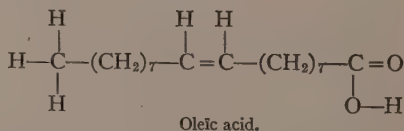
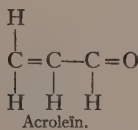
Aldehydes



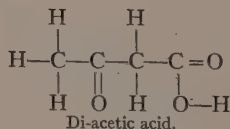
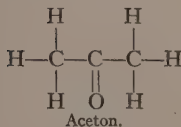
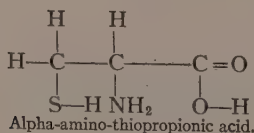
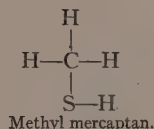
Acids



Unsaturated:

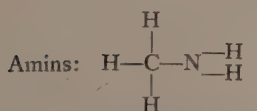


Ketones

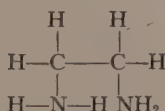
Mercaptans  
(thio-alcohols)

## ALCOHOLS, ALDEHYDES, AND ACIDS

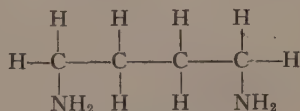
Saturated hydrocarbon.	Primary alcohol, —CH <sub>2</sub> OH.	Aldehyde —CHO.	Fatty acid, —COOH.	Carbon atoms.
Methane	Methyl	Formaldehyde	Formic	1
Ethane	Ethyl	Acetaldehyde	Acetic	2
Propane	Propyl	Propionic aldehyde	Propionic	3
Butane	Butyl	Butyric	Butyric	4
Pentane	Amyl	Valeric	Valerianic	5
Hexane	Hexyl	Caproic	Capronic	6
Heptane	Heptyl	Enanthic	Enanthic	7
Octane	Octyl	Caprylic	Caprylic	8
Nonane	Nonyl	Pelargonic	Pelargonic	9
Decane	Decyl	Capric	Caprinic	10
Undecane	Undecyl	Undecylic	Undecylic	11
Dodecane	Dodecyl	Lauric	Lauric	12
Tridecane	—	Tridecyclic	Tridecyclic	13
Tetradecane	Tetradecyl	Myristic	Myristic	14
Pentadecane	—	—	Pentadecylic	15
Hexadecane	Cetyl	Palmitic	Palmitic	16
Heptadecane	—	Margaric	Margaric; lignoceric	17
Octadecane	Octadecyl	Stearic	Stearic; ricinoleic	18
Nonadecane	—	—	—	19
Eicosane	—	—	Arachidonic	20
Heneicosane	—	—	—	21
Docosane	—	—	Behenic	22
Tricosane	—	—	—	23
Tetracosane	—	—	Lignoceric	24
—	—	—	—	25
—	Ceryl	—	Cerotic	26
Heptacosane	—	—	—	27
—	—	—	—	28
—	—	—	—	29
—	Myricyl	—	Melissic	30



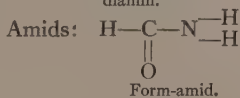
Primary amin, mono-  
methylamin.



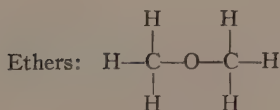
Di-amin, ethylene-  
diamin.



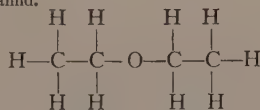
Di-amin, "putrescin," butylel-  
diamin.



Form-amid.

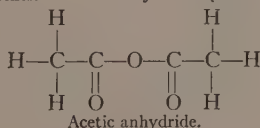


Methyl ether.



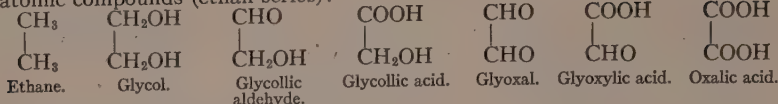
Ethyl ether (common "sulphuric" ether).

Anhydrides:

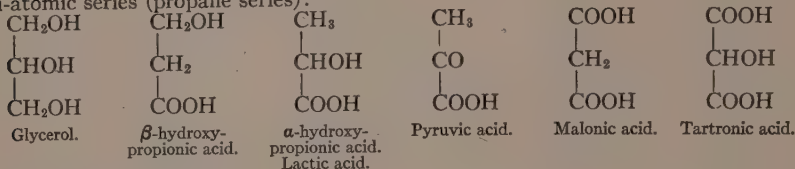


Acetic anhydride.

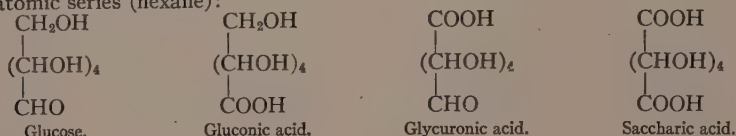
## Di-atomic compounds (ethan series):



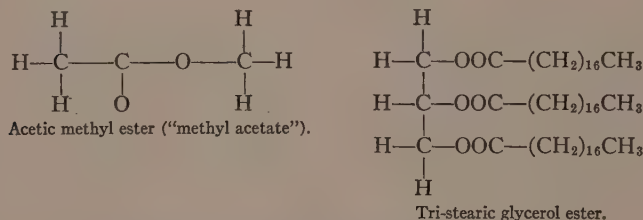
## Tri-atomic series (propane series):



## Hex-atomic series (hexane):



## Esters:

SCHEME FOR THE ANALYSIS OF MILK<sup>1</sup>

**Total Butter Fat.**—See page 406. The "lactocrite" method of Leffmann and Beam (Analysis of Milk and Milk Products, Blakiston, Philadelphia) antedates Babcock's method and is similar to it.

**Lactose.**—Myers' (German chemist) method: Precipitate 1 volume of carefully mixed milk with 1 volume of the special acid solution<sup>2</sup>; then dilute with 2 volumes of distilled water. Mix. Filter, repeating the filtering through the same paper until the filtrate is clear. Place the filtrate (or part) in a burette and follow the quantitative procedure of Folin (page 757), or of Benedict (page 157), using the figure 67 in place of 50 mgs. for lactose with Benedict's solution.<sup>3</sup>

Dialyzed iron (page 102) may be used to replace the phosphotungstic HCl solution. Dilute the iron solution with 10 volumes of water and use of this solution 5 mls. to each 10 mls. of milk diluted with about one volume of distilled water.

<sup>1</sup> For chemical examination of human milk, the specimen must be taken from the breast without undue pressure. The container must be stoppered with cork or rubber stopper and never with cotton, because cotton absorbs the cream which accumulates when the specimen stands.

<sup>2</sup> Place 200 mls. concentrated hydrochloric acid in a liter volumetric flask and add an equal volume of distilled water. Add 70 gs. phosphotungstic acid ( $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot \text{WO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), mix, and make up to a liter.

<sup>3</sup> If Fehling's Method (page 155) is used, the Cu in 10 mls. is reduced by 67.6 mgs. lactose.

For Folin and Denis' method see page 413. This method uses milk directly without previous precipitation.

**Total Protid.**—For small amounts of milk, such as the clinical laboratory frequently receives for analyses, proceed as follows:

Mix the sample thoroughly and then pipette (Ostwald-Folin 1-ml. pipette) 1 ml. into a 25-ml. volumetric flask. Add 1 drop of 10 per cent. NaOH solution, or a knife-point of powdered lithium carbonate in order to hold the casein in suspension. Add about 10 mls. of distilled water and mix thoroughly. Then dilute to the mark, adding a drop of caprylic alcohol if necessary to cut down foam. Transfer the diluted milk to a small beaker and pipette 2 mls. of the well-mixed specimen into a 200 x 20 mm. pyrex test-tube. Follow thence forward the method for nitrogen determination of Folin given on page 687.<sup>1</sup> In making the calculation remember the dilution that you have made.

If desired, a larger amount of milk (5 mls.) may be used and the Kjeldahl method (page 282) may be employed.

**Total Solids.**—Carefully clean a small (8 cm. diameter) evaporating dish and heat it to redness over an asbestos gauze with a blue flame in order to avoid deposition of soot. Let cool, preferably in a desiccator (page 89), and then weigh to the second place of decimals. Then pipette by means of the Ostwald-Folin pipette, 1 ml. of well-mixed milk into the dish and smear it over the inner surface of the dish. Leave the dish in the thermostat at 40° C., or on a steam-bath protected from dust by means of another evaporating dish inverted over the first one and slightly raised by means of small pieces of cork stoppers. At the end of the drying period (about two hours) remove to a desiccator and leave until cool. Then reweigh. The difference in weights gives the water evaporated and the remainder the total solids. Ash may be determined by a similar procedure, using a small porcelain, nickel, silver, or platinum crucible, 5 mls. of milk, and evaporating rapidly over an open flame, the crucible being suspended on a pipe-stem triangle. Care must be taken that no sputtering occur, thus losing the fluid. Follow the directions given above for total solids, weighing being carried to the fourth place of decimals.

As in the case of urine, there is a correlation between certain constituents and total solids. The Hehner-Richman formula connecting specific gravity, fat, and total solids is as follows:

Total fat by <sup>Babcock</sup> Lactocrite method =  $0.859 \times \text{solids} - 0.2186 \times \text{specific gravity}^2$

For milks poor in fat (skimmed milk) the formula is, in addition:  $-\frac{0.05 \text{ specific gravity}^2}{\text{solids}} 2.5$ .

**Detection of Adulterants.**—Water is determined by estimating the total solids. Normal milk has, on the average, the following total solid content (from Leffman after D'Hout):

	Gs. per 100 gs. milk.
Whole milk.....	14.1
Skimmed milk.....	9.6
Separator milk.....	8.0
Cream (22 per cent.).....	26.98
Buttermilk.....	10.0

<sup>1</sup> If oxidation by means of the acid mixture does not occur promptly, add 2 drops of 5 per cent. CuSO<sub>4</sub> solution and boil again. If still the reaction is not obtained, add 2 more drops of the acid mixture.

<sup>2</sup> In each case the last *two figures of specific gravity*, as in Long's coefficient (page 683), are used in place of the whole of the specific gravity figure.

*Starch* is detected by acidulating the milk with a drop or two of glacial acetic acid and adding 1 per cent. iodine solution in 80 per cent. ethanol.

*Sodium carbonate* (washing soda) is detected by diluting 1 volume of milk with 1 of ethanol 95 per cent. and adding 5 drops of 1 per cent. solution rosolic acid, whereupon a positive test is obtained if a rose color appears. Pure milk gives a brownish-yellow color.

**Preservatives.**—Formaldehyde may be determined by means of a modified Bial test: (Sumner's method of detection by orcinol). Make a control test: To 2 mgs. formalin solution, diluted with 2 mls. of distilled water, add 10 drops of the following reagent of orcinol. Reagent: Add 6 gs. orcinol to 200 mls. distilled water and add, in addition, 40 drops 10 per cent. ferric chlorid solution. Add to the formalin solution, likewise, 2 mls. concentrated hydrochloric acid. Note the white precipitate. Repeat, using 0.2 mg. of formalin: The precipitation occurs only slowly, but is accelerated by heating. To distinguish acetaldehyde: Acetaldehyde gives similar reactions, but not in dilute solutions. Second, heating the formaldehyde precipitate in its solution for fifteen minutes in the boiling water-bath causes a brownish appearance, which turns to pink when an excess of alkali (NaOH solution) is added. On the contrary, on heating the precipitate of the acetaldehyde solution similarly, there is no brown color and alkali produce a yellow color. A low concentration of formalin gives a greenish fluorescence to the solution, which is not obtained with acetaldehyde.

*References:* Sumner, J. B., Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med., vol. 20, page 1, 1923. Also: Jour. Amer. Chem. Soc., vol. 45, page 2378, 1923.

Formaldehyde may also be determined, but less satisfactorily, with a bismuth mirror test: Apply Nylander's bismuth method (which does not respond to lactose readily): To 5 mls. of the whole milk add 5 mls. of distilled water and a drop of 10 per cent. NaOH solution. To the diluted solution of milk add 1 ml. of Nylander's solution.<sup>1</sup> Boil gently for about two minutes; a positive test is indicated (but the presence of formaldehyde is not absolutely assured) if the milk becomes dark brown or black, and especially if a mirror of reduced bismuth is found applied to the inside and bottom of the tube after the contents are poured out.

Salicylic acid (and other salicylates): To 25 mls. of milk add Millon's solution in order to precipitate the protids and fats and filter. Add one volume of a mixture of equal parts of ethyl ether and gasoline; shake well, then let the ether-gasoline layer separate. Decant this into a white evaporating dish and evaporate over an electric hot plate or steam bath, *avoiding flames*. To the residue add 1 drop ferric chlorid solution; a violet color is positive.

Boiling of milk is detected by means of the destruction of a peroxidase (page 113) and consequent negative test when peroxidase is sought in a sample of milk: Place 5 mls. of milk in a test-tube and add 1 ml. of a diluted  $H_2O_2$  solution,<sup>2</sup> then 1 ml. of a solution of "Lysol" diluted 1 ml. to 100 mls. with water. A yellow color<sup>3</sup> will appear if the milk is unboiled, but if boiled, a negative reaction.

<sup>1</sup> By means of heat dissolve 2 gs. bismuth subnitrate or subcarbonate,  $(Bi(OH)_2NO_3)$ ; 2  $(BiO_2)CO_3 \cdot H_2O$ , 4 gs. Rochelle salt and 100 mls. of 10 per cent. NaOH or KOH solution.

<sup>2</sup> Dilute a commercial 3 per cent. peroxid: 5 mls. of the  $H_2O_2$  diluted with 30 mls. of distilled water.

<sup>3</sup> This test cannot well be done in the yellow light of the ordinary electric illumination; the yellow is never pronounced and is drowned out by the yellow of the light.



For use of the Van Slyke CO<sub>2</sub> method see Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 42, page 41, 1920, article by L. L. Van Slyke (New York Agricultural Station, Geneva, N. Y. Dr. L. L. Van Slyke is father of D. D. Van Slyke).

### TABLE OF MAGNIFICATIONS

Tube length = 160 mms. Projection distance = 250 mms. E. F. = equivalent focus.

Achromatic objectives		With Huygenian oculars.				
E. F. in millimeters.	Initial magnification.	5×	6.4×	7.5×	10×	12.5×
48	2	10×	13×	15×	20×	25×
32	4	20×	26×	30×	40×	50×
16	10	50×	64×	75×	100×	125×
8	20	100×	130×	150×	200	260×
4	43	215×	275×	320×	430×	560×
3	57	285×	365×	420×	570×	740×
1.9	95	475×	610×	720×	950×	1260×

### TABLES FOR METABOLIC DETERMINATIONS

AVERAGE CALORIES PER HOUR PER SQUARE METER OF BODY SURFACE (Du Bois)<sup>1</sup>

Age, years.	Males, Calories.	Females, Calories.
14-16	46.0	43.0
16-18	43.0	40.0
18-20	41.0	38.0
20-30	39.5	37.0
30-40	39.5	36.5
40-50	38.5	36.0
50-60	37.5	35.0
60-70	36.5	34.0
70-80	35.5	33.0

### DIRECTIONS FOR USE OF FOLLOWING TABLES

Harris-Benedict<sup>2</sup>: The predicted Calories per hour are obtained by adding the Calories corresponding to the weight in kilograms (A) to the Calories corresponding to age and stature (B, C, or D).

Benedict Standards for Girls (E) twelve to eighteen: The predicted Calories are given per kilogram of body weight per hour according to age.

Dreyer<sup>3</sup>: The predicted Calories are based on weight and age (F). Greater accuracy may be obtained by correcting the value for weight according to Dreyer's method. For females, subtract 7 to 10 per cent.

Interpolation: In the use of these condensed tables interpolation is necessary only for critical cases; ordinarily, for clinical work, it is unnecessary.

<sup>1</sup> Page 24.

<sup>2</sup> Benedict, F. G. (page 24). Harris, J. A., biometrist, Carnegie Institution, Cold Springs Harbor, Long Island, N. Y.

<sup>3</sup> Dreyer, G., Professor of Pathology, Oxford University, England.

## A: HARRIS-BENEDICT STANDARDS BASED ON BODY WEIGHT

Weight, kilograms.	Calories per hour:		Weight, kilograms.	Calories per hour:		Weight, kilograms.	Calories per hour:	
	Males.	Females.		Males.	Females.		Males.	Females.
10	8.5	.....	52	32.6	48.0	94	56.6	64.8
12	9.7	.....	54	33.7	48.8	96	57.8	65.6
14	10.8	.....	56	34.9	49.6	98	58.9	66.4
16	12.0	.....	58	36.0	50.4	100	60.1	67.2
18	13.1	.....	60	37.2	51.2	102	61.2	68.0
20	14.3	.....	62	38.3	52.0	104	62.4	68.8
22	15.4	.....	64	39.5	52.8	106	63.5	69.6
24	16.6	.....	66	40.6	53.6	108	64.7	70.4
26	17.7	37.6	68	41.8	54.4	110	65.8	71.2
28	18.8	38.4	70	42.9	55.2	112	67.0	72.0
30	19.9	39.2	72	44.0	56.0	114	68.1	72.8
32	21.1	40.0	74	45.2	56.8	116	69.3	73.6
34	22.2	40.8	76	46.3	57.6	118	70.4	74.4
36	23.4	41.6	78	47.5	58.4	120	71.6	75.2
38	24.5	42.4	80	48.6	59.2	122	72.7	76.0
40	25.7	43.2	82	49.7	60.0	124	73.9	76.8
42	26.8	44.0	84	50.9	60.8	126	75.0	77.6
44	28.0	44.8	86	52.0	61.6	128	76.1	78.4
46	29.1	45.6	88	53.2	62.4	130	77.2	79.2
48	30.3	46.4	90	54.3	63.2			
50	31.4	47.2	92	55.5	64.0			

## B: HARRIS-BENEDICT STANDARDS BASED ON AGE AND STATURE—MEN

Cms.	Years:										
	20.	25.	30.	35.	40.	45.	50.	55.	60.	65.	70.
150	25.6	24.2	22.8	21.4	20.0	18.6	17.2	15.8	14.4	13.0	11.6
155	26.6	25.2	23.8	22.4	21.0	19.6	18.2	16.8	15.4	14.0	12.6
160	27.7	26.3	24.9	23.5	22.1	20.7	19.3	17.9	16.5	15.1	13.7
165	28.7	27.3	25.9	24.5	23.1	21.7	20.3	18.9	17.5	16.1	14.1
170	29.8	28.4	27.0	25.6	24.2	22.8	21.4	20.0	18.6	17.2	15.8
175	30.8	29.4	28.0	26.6	25.2	23.8	22.4	21.0	19.6	18.2	16.8
180	31.9	30.4	29.1	27.6	26.2	24.8	23.4	22.0	20.6	19.2	17.8
185	32.9	31.5	30.1	28.7	27.3	25.9	24.5	23.1	21.7	20.3	18.9
190	34.0	32.5	31.2	29.7	28.3	26.9	25.5	24.1	22.7	21.3	19.9
195	35.0	33.6	32.2	30.8	29.4	28.0	26.6	25.2	23.8	22.4	21.0
200	36.1	34.6	33.2	31.8	30.4	29.0	27.6	26.2	24.8	23.4	22.0

## C: HARRIS-BENEDICT STANDARDS BASED ON AGE AND STATURE—WOMEN

Cms.	Years:										
	20.	25.	30.	35.	40.	45.	50.	55.	60.	65.	70.
150	7.7	6.7	5.7	4.7	3.8	2.8	1.8	0.9	0.0	-1.0	-2.0
155	8.1	7.1	6.1	5.1	4.2	3.2	2.2	1.2	0.2	-0.7	-1.7
160	8.5	7.5	6.5	5.5	4.5	3.6	2.6	1.6	0.6	-0.3	-1.3
165	8.8	7.8	6.9	5.9	4.9	4.0	3.0	2.0	1.0	0.0	-0.9
170	9.2	8.2	7.3	6.3	5.3	4.3	3.4	2.4	1.4	0.5	-0.5
175	9.6	8.6	7.6	6.7	5.7	4.7	3.7	2.8	1.8	0.8	-0.2
180	10.0	9.0	8.0	7.0	6.1	5.1	4.1	3.2	2.2	1.2	0.2
185	10.4	9.4	8.4	7.5	6.5	5.5	4.5	3.5	2.6	1.6	0.6
190	10.8	9.8	8.8	7.8	6.8	5.9	4.9	3.9	3.0	2.0	1.0
195	11.2	10.2	9.2	8.2	7.2	6.2	5.3	4.3	3.3	2.4	1.4
200	11.5	10.5	9.6	8.6	7.6	6.7	5.7	4.7	3.7	2.7	1.0

## D: HARRIS-BENEDICT STANDARDS BASED ON AGE AND STATURE—BOYS

Cms.	Years:			Cms.	Years:		
	10.	15.	20.		10.	15.	20.
100	18.0	16.6	15.2	155	29.5	28.1	26.6
105	19.0	17.7	16.3	160	30.5	29.1	27.7
110	20.0	18.7	17.3	165	31.5	30.1	28.7
115	21.0	19.7	18.3	170	32.6	31.2	29.8
120	22.1	20.8	19.4	175	33.6	32.2	30.8
125	23.2	21.8	20.4	180	34.7	33.3	31.9
130	24.2	22.9	21.5	185	35.7	34.3	32.9
135	25.3	23.9	22.5	190	36.8	35.4	34.0
140	26.3	25.0	23.6	195	37.8	36.4	35.0
145	27.4	26.0	24.6	200	38.9	37.4	36.1
150	28.4	27.0	25.6				

## E: BENEDICT STANDARD FOR GIRLS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN

Age.	Calories per kilogram per hour from age		Calories per hour.
	Calories per hour.	Age.	
12	1.29	15	0.99
12.5	1.24	15.5	0.94
13	1.19	16	0.91
13.5	1.14	16.5	0.91
14	1.09	17	0.91
14.5	1.04	18	0.91

## F: DREYER STANDARDS FOR MEN

Kilos.	Years: -														
	15.	20.	25.	30.	35.	40.	45.	50.	55.	60.	65.	70.	75.	80.	
25	45.2	43.5	42.3	41.2	40.4	39.7	39.0	38.5	38.0	37.5	37.1	36.8	36.5	36.2	
30	49.5	47.6	46.3	45.2	44.2	43.5	42.8	42.2	41.7	41.2	40.7	40.3	39.8	39.6	
35	53.5	51.5	50.0	48.8	47.8	46.9	46.2	45.6	45.0	44.5	44.0	43.6	43.2	42.8	
40	57.1	55.0	53.5	52.1	51.1	50.2	49.4	48.8	48.1	47.5	47.0	46.6	46.2	45.8	
45	60.1	58.4	56.7	55.3	54.2	53.3	52.4	51.7	51.1	50.5	50.0	49.5	49.0	48.6	
50	64.9	61.6	59.7	58.4	57.1	56.1	55.3	54.5	53.8	53.2	52.6	52.1	51.6	51.2	
55	66.7	64.6	62.7	61.2	59.9	58.9	58.0	57.2	56.4	55.8	55.2	54.6	54.1	53.7	
60	70.1	67.5	65.5	63.9	62.6	61.5	60.6	59.7	58.9	58.3	57.7	57.0	56.6	56.1	
65	72.5	70.2	68.1	66.5	65.1	64.0	63.0	62.2	61.4	60.6	60.0	59.5	58.9	58.3	
70	75.6	72.9	70.7	69.0	67.7	66.4	65.4	64.5	63.7	63.0	62.2	61.6	61.1	60.5	
75	78.3	75.4	73.3	71.4	70.0	68.7	67.7	66.8	65.9	65.2	64.5	63.8	63.3	62.7	
80	80.9	77.9	75.6	73.8	72.3	70.0	69.9	68.9	68.0	67.2	66.5	65.9	65.3	64.7	
85	83.4	80.3	78.0	76.1	74.5	73.2	72.1	71.0	70.2	69.3	68.6	67.9	67.3	66.7	
90	85.7	82.6	80.2	78.1	76.7	75.3	74.1	73.1	72.2	71.3	70.6	69.9	69.3	68.7	
95	88.1	84.4	82.3	80.4	78.7	77.4	76.2	75.1	74.2	73.3	72.4	71.8	71.2	70.5	
100	90.4	87.1	84.4	82.5	80.8	79.4	78.2	77.0	76.1	75.2	74.4	73.7	73.0	72.4	
105	92.5	89.2	86.6	84.5	82.8	81.3	80.0	79.0	77.5	77.0	76.3	75.5	74.8	74.2	
110	94.8	91.4	88.6	86.4	84.8	83.3	82.0	80.9	79.8	78.9	78.1	77.3	76.6	75.9	
115	97.0	93.4	90.7	88.6	86.7	85.2	83.9	82.6	81.6	80.7	79.8	79.0	78.2	77.6	
120	99.1	95.4	92.7	90.3	88.6	87.0	85.7	84.4	83.3	82.4	81.5	80.7	79.9	79.3	

BENEDICT-TALBOT<sup>1</sup> STANDARDS FOR BOYS AND GIRLS

Calories per hour from body weight					
Weight, kilograms.	Boys, Calories.	Girls, Calories.	Weight, kilograms.	Boys, Calories.	Girls, Calories.
3	6.3	6.3	31	47.5	44.6
4	8.8	9.2	32	48.3	45.4
5	11.3	11.9	33	49.2	46.4
6	13.8	14.6	34	50.0	47.3
7	16.3	16.9	35	50.8	48.3
8	18.5	19.2	36	51.7	49.2
9	20.6	20.8	37	52.3	50.1
10	22.7	22.5	38	53.1 <sup>2</sup>	50.7
11	24.6	24.2	39		50.8
12	26.0	25.4	40		51.0
13	27.5	26.7	41		51.2
14	29.0	27.7	42		51.3
15	30.2	28.8	43		51.4
16	31.5	29.6	44		51.6
17	32.5	30.6	45		51.7
18	33.5	31.7	46		51.8
19	34.6	32.5	47		52.0
20	35.8	33.5	48		52.1
21	36.9	34.6	49		52.3
22	37.9	35.6	50		52.4
23	39.2	36.7	51		52.5
24	40.2	37.5	52		52.7
25	41.3	38.8	53		52.8
26	42.5	39.6	54		52.9
27	43.5	40.6	55		53.1
28	44.6	41.7	56		53.2
29	45.4	42.5	57		53.3
30	46.5	43.5	58		53.5

## VITAMINS

COWGILL'S<sup>3</sup> EXPRESSION FOR VITAMIN B REQUIREMENT

$$K_{\text{vitamin}} = \frac{\text{Vitamin B per twenty-four hours}}{\text{Cals. per twenty-four hours} \times (\text{body weight})^{\frac{2}{3}}}$$

<sup>1</sup> Talbot, F. B., Harvard Med. School, Boston, Mass.

<sup>2</sup> For boys apply Harris-Benedict Standards: A + D.

<sup>3</sup> Cowgill, G. R., Smith, A. H., and Beard, H. H. (Yale University), Jour. Biol. Chem., vol. 63, p. xxiii, 1925.

### VITAMINS

(Distribution Among Common Foods)

	Vitamin A.	Vitamin B.	Vitamin C.	Vitamin D.	Vitamin E.
Apple.....	P	PP	PP		
Banana.....	?	P	P		
Barley (unsprouted).....	P	PP	...	P <sup>1</sup>	(sprouted)
Beans, kidney.....	...	PPP	...	...	(sprouted)
Soy.....	P	PPP	a	...	(sprouted)
Beet.....	a	P	P	P <sup>1</sup>	
Bile (beef).....	...	...	...	P <sup>1</sup>	
Brain substance.....	P	PP	?	P	P
Bread, highly milled flour, water....	a	P	a	a	a
Whole wheat.....	P	PP	a	a	a
Milk.....	P	P	?	P	
Butter.....	PPP	a	a	(fresh)	P
Cabbage (raw).....	PP	PPP	PPP	...	?
Carrots.....	PP	P	P		
Cauliflower.....	P	PP	?		
Celery.....	?	PP	?		
Chard.....	P	P	?		
Cheese.....	PP	PP	a	P <sup>1</sup>	slight
Cocanut oil (butter substitute).....	a	a	a	P	a
Cod-liver oil (undecomposed).....	PPP	a	a	PP	P
Corn oil (yellow corn).....	?	a	a	P	PP
Cottonseed oil.....	?	a	a	(when irradiated)	P <sup>2</sup>
Cream.....	PPP	P	?	(when irradiated)	P <sup>3</sup>
Cucumber.....	...	P			
Greens (dandelion).....	PP	PP	P	P	P
Egg (whole).....	PPP	P	a	P	P
Fat (suet).....	P	?	?	?	?
Fish (lean fat).....	a	P			
(fat, like mackerel).....	P	P	...	a	
Germinated beans, etc.....	P	PP	PPP	P	PP
Grains.....	P	a	a	P <sup>1</sup>	
Grapefruit.....	?	PP	PP	a	a
Grapejuice (trade brands).....	?	P	P	a	a
Grapes, fresh.....	?	P	P	a	
Heart substance.....	P	P	P	P <sup>3</sup>	P
Hemp seed.....	P	...	...	...	PP
Honey.....	a	P	a	a	
Kidney.....	PP	PP	P	P	P
Lanolin.....	...	...	...	P <sup>1</sup>	
Lard.....	a	a	a		
Lemon juice.....	a	PP	PPP		

<sup>1</sup> Irradiated.<sup>2</sup> Fertility good, but lactation indifferent.<sup>3</sup> From milk of cows on fresh pasturage.



## VITAMINS (continued)

(Distribution Among Common Foods)

	Vitamin A.	Vitamin B.	Vitamin C.	Vitamin D.	Vitamin E.
Lime (whole).....	a	?	PP		
Linseed oil.....	P	...	...	P <sup>1</sup>	a
Lettuce (grown in open air).....	PP	PP	PPP	P	P
Liver tissue.....	PP	PP	?	P	P
Meat (steak, chops).....	a	slight	P <sup>2</sup>	a	P <sup>3</sup>
Milk, fresh, unpasteurized.....	PPP	PP	PP	PP	PP
Condensed.....	PP	P	P	P <sup>2</sup>	
Dried, whole milk.....	PPP	PP	P		
Skimmed.....	P	P	P <sup>2</sup>		
Nut oils.....	...	...	a	P <sup>1</sup>	P
Oatmeal, from cracked oat.....	P	PP	a	a	
Oleomargarin, animal and vegetable fats.....	P	a	a	P <sup>1</sup>	P <sup>3</sup>
Olive oil.....	a	a	a	P <sup>1</sup>	P <sup>3</sup>
Onion.....	...	PP	PP		
Orange juice.....	P	PP	PPP		
Pancreas juice.....	a	PPP	?	P	P
Parsnips.....	a	PP			
Peach kernel oil.....	P	...	...	...	P <sup>2</sup>
Peanut oil.....	P	PP	...	...	P
Peas, fresh.....	P	PP	PPP	P	
Potato, sweet.....	PP	P			
White, boiled.....	P	PP	PP		
Prunes.....	a	P	a		
Rice, polished (also "red" or "brown")	a	a	a	a	a
Roe (fish-eggs).....	P	PP	?	P	P
Rye, cracked.....	P	PP			
Sesame oil.....	P	...	...	...	a
Shark and burbot oils.....	PP	a	a	P <sup>3</sup>	P
Soy-bean oil.....	P	...	...	...	P <sup>2</sup>
Spinach.....	PPP	PPP	PPP	P <sup>1</sup>	
Squash.....	PP	...	...	...	P <sup>4</sup>
Sweetbread thymus.....	a	a	a	...	P?
Tea, etc.....	a	a	a	a	a
Tomato.....	PP	PPP	PPP		
Wheat embryo.....	PP	PPP	a	slight	PP
Whey (from milk).....	?	PP	?	...	PP <sup>5</sup>
Yeast.....	a	PPP	a	P <sup>1</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> Irradiated.<sup>2</sup> From milk of cows on fresh pasturage.<sup>3</sup> Fertility good, but lactation indifferent.<sup>4</sup> Seeds.<sup>5</sup> Ferric citrate added.

# INDEX

**$\alpha$**  (ALPHA), in rotation, 181  
 **$\Delta$** , 127  
**A.**, abbreviation for acid, 69  
 Abderhalden, 235, 280, 341, 582, 773  
     reaction, 234, 235  
 Abel, 651, 655, 659  
 Absorbed materials, fate, 494  
 Absorbers, gas, 126  
 Absorption, 131, 277, 340, 483, 488  
     and colloids, 485  
     characteristics, 484, 485  
     duodenal, 482  
     large intestine, 491  
     mechanism, 486  
     of foods, 481  
     of inorganic substances, 491  
     oxygen utilization, 484  
     selective action, 484  
     summary, 493  
 Acceptor, hydrogen, 332  
     oxygen, 113  
 Accessory substances, foods, 132  
 Accumulator, 55  
 Acetal, reaction with phenylhydrazin, 158  
 Acetaldehyde, 151, 170, 523, 910  
 Acetanilid, 379  
 Acetate-acetic solution, 896  
 Acetic acid, 170, 255, 261, 497, 515, 519, 910  
     chondroitin sulphuric acid, 349  
     di-, 75  
     dissociation, 43, 50, 863  
     glacial, 863  
     in fat, 200, 202  
     normal solution, 863  
     reaction of solutions, 909  
     test for protid, 750  
     acid-acetate solution, 896  
     aldehyde, 520  
     anhydrid, 863, 911  
     method of purification, 863  
     ether, 727  
     ethyl ester, 193  
     methyl ester, 912  
 Aceto-acetic acid, 75, 515, 519, 520, 522, 766, 863  
     Bigwood-Ladd method, 767  
     gram-molecular equivalent of fat, 523  
     in standing urine, 766  
     manner of reporting, 767  
     nitrogen equivalent, 524  
     removal in betahydroxybutyric acid determinations, 771  
     synthesis by Gauthier's method, 863  
 Aceton, 501, 520, 674, 726, 766, 767, 864, 910  
     Bigwood-Ladd test, 767  
     mercury titration method, 768  
     method of reporting, 767  
     removal of, in betahydroxybutyric acid determinations, 771  
     test, 362  
     total acetone substances, method of Van Slyke, 767, 864  
     turbidimetric method of Folin, 769

Aceton-sodium-bisulphit, 769  
 Aceton-sulphit, 887  
 Acetphenetidin, 379  
 Acetyl, number of fats, 202  
 Acetyl-acetic acid, 75, 766  
 Acetylation, 208, 211, 213, 349  
 Acetylene, 910  
 Acetyl-salicylic acid, 227, 766  
 Achlorhydria, 430  
 Acholia, 467  
 Achroödextrin, 145  
 Achylia gastrica, 444, 703  
 Acid, 36, 396  
     acetic, 170, 216, 255, 261, 497, 515, 519, 910  
     butter fat, 200, 202  
     chondroitin sulphuric acid, 349  
     dissociation, 43, 863  
     glacial, 863  
     normal solution, 863  
     reaction of solutions, 909  
     aceto-acetic, 515, 519, 520, 522, 766, 863, 910  
     Bigwood-Ladd method, 767  
     gram-molecular equivalent of fat, 523  
     nitrogen equivalent, 524  
     synthesis by Gauthier's method, 863  
     acetylacetic, 75, 766  
     acetylsalicylic, 766  
     albuminate, 228, 338  
     salting out, 229  
     alloxyproteic, 735  
     alpha-amino, 217  
     alpha-amino-acetic, 216, 238  
     alpha-amino-caproic acid, 240  
     alpha - amino - delta - guanidin valerianic, 254  
     alpha-amino-glutaric, 252  
     alpha-amino-iso-butyl-acetic, 240  
     alpha - amino - iso - valerianic, 241  
     alpha-amino-propionic, 242  
     alpha-amino-succinic, 251  
     alpha - amino - thio - propionic, 910  
     alpha - delta - diamino - valerianic, 255  
     alpha-epsilon-diamino-caproic, 257  
     alpha-hydroxy-propionic, 370  
     alpha - pyrrolidin - carboxylic, 270  
     amid, 251  
     amino - 216, 401  
     classification, 238  
     determination, 287  
     heterocyclic, 268  
     in blood, 797, 817  
     indispensable, 533  
     in plant protids, 312  
     in urine, 730, 731  
     linkage, 279  
     not antigen, 321  
     solubility in ethanol, 272  
     to fatty, 260  
     arabic, 152  
     arabonic, 152  
     arachic, in butter fat, 200  
     arachidonic, 206  
     in egg-yolk, 207  
     in liver, 206  
     arsenophosphotungstic, 714

Acid, arsenio-18-tungstic, 716  
 aspartic, 251, 252, 254, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 496, 529, 553  
     in albumin, 257  
     in globulin, 257  
     iso-electric point, 909  
 average intake in U. S., 575  
 azelaic, 197  
 behavior in body, 74  
 benzoic, 532, 726  
 beta-amino-, 217, 252, 254  
 beta-di-thio-alpha-amino-propionic, 247  
 beta - hydroxy - alpha-amino - propionic, 245  
 beta - hydroxy - butyric, 240, 515, 520, 523, 766, 770  
 beta-hydroxy-valerianic, 245, 270  
     basis of prolin synthesis, 271  
 beta - iminazol - alpha - amino - propionic, 268  
 beta - indol - alpha - amino - propionic, 273  
 beta-keto-butyric, 519  
 beta-phenyl-alpha-amino-propionic, 259  
 beta-thio-alpha-amino-propionic, 246  
 bile, 239  
 boric, dissociation, 43  
 butyric, 515  
     in butter fat, 200  
 capric, in butter fat, 200  
 caproic, 241, 258  
 capronic, in butter fat, 200  
 caprylic, in butter fat, 200  
 carbinol, 152  
 carbollic, 745. See also *Phenol*.  
 4-carbon, 515  
 carbonyl, 152  
 cholalic, 465  
 cholic, 239, 465, 474  
     and glycin, 239  
 chondroitin - sulphuric, 343, 349, 518  
     structural formula, 349, 350  
 chondroitin, 349  
 chromic, 723, 879  
 cyanic, 528, 695, 696  
     test, 690  
 cyanuric, 689  
 delta-amino, 217  
 diacetic, 520, 766  
 diaminaol-propionic, 271  
 diamino-, 257, 300, 518  
 di - amino - mono - carboxylic, 254  
 diazobenzenesulphonic, 269, 366  
 diazotized sulphanilic, 366  
 dicarboxylic, 152  
 diethylbarbituric, 673  
 dihydroxystearic, 197, 198  
 di-nitro-naphthol-sulphonic, 254  
 dinitrosalicylic, 786  
 effect in coagulation, 222  
     of adding to distilled water, 42  
     of administering, 578  
     on di- and polyglucids, 164  
     on glucids, 162  
 elaidic, 197

- Acid, ethyl-methyl- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic, 245  
 euxanthic, 763  
 excretion, 575  
   in urine, 678, 679  
 fatty, 453  
   condensation, 515  
   from amino-, 260  
   in liver fat, 513  
   in perspiration, 346  
   table, 911  
   unsaturated, and lecithin, 204  
 fermentation-, 370  
   fixed, 75  
   formic, 325, 520, 910  
     in butter fat, 200  
   from glucids, 149, 152  
   fruit, 680  
   galactonic, 152  
   galacturonic, 152  
   gamma-amino-, 217, 253  
   gamma-hydroxy- $\alpha$ -pyrrolidin-carboxylic, 272  
   gastric, 562  
   gentisic, 264  
   gluconic, 912  
   glucuronic, 149, 267, 275, 278, 349, 507, 763, 912  
     preparation, 763  
   glutamic, 240, 249, 252, 272, 301, 305, 310, 311, 315, 339, 454, 496, 518, 553  
     in albumin, 257  
     in globulin, 257  
   glutaminc. See *Acid, glutamic*.  
   glutaric, 250, 252, 259  
   glyceric, 152  
   glycerophosphoric, 207  
   glycocholeic, 465  
   glycocholic, 239, 464, 465, 466  
   glyoxalic, 152, 307, 520  
   gorgoic, 262, 572  
   guaiaconic, 391  
   guanylic, 335, 509  
   hematinic, 471  
   hippuric, 532, 533, 666, 668, 726  
     clinical interest, 729  
     excretion, 730  
     Folin's method, 727  
     Kingbury and Swanson's method, 729  
   homocyclic, 259  
   homogentisic, 264, 265, 532, 673, 744  
   hydrochloric, 428, 576, 675, 890  
     antiseptic action, 430  
     buffer solution, 875  
     dissociation, 43  
     gastric, function, 429  
     origin, 428  
     normal secretion, 431  
     origin of gastric, 429, 432, 433  
     reaction of solutions, 909  
     test, 441, 442  
   hydrocyanic, dissociation, 43  
   hydrolysis of foods, 539  
   of sucrose, 43, 44  
   hydroxy, 75  
     in protid hydrolysis, 245  
   hydroxy-phenyl-acetic, 264  
   iminazol-acetic, 271  
   iminazol-lactic, 271  
   iminazol-propionic, 271  
   indol-acetic, 276, 743  
   indol-propionic, 275  
   indoxylsulphuric, 746  
   inosinic, 335, 367, 378, 509  
   inositol-hexaphosphoric, calcium-magnesium salt. See *Phytin*, 368.  
 Acid, iso-butyl acetic, 241  
   iso-caproic, 241, 258  
   iso-oleic, 197  
   iso-propyl- $\alpha$ -amino-acetic, 241  
   kephalin-linolic, 202  
   keto, 75, 161, 501  
   lactic, 169, 170, 244, 261, 291, 369, 370, 371, 372, 374, 497, 506, 508, 514, 522, 529  
     boiling-point, 372  
     fermentation, 168  
     ferric chlorid test, 373  
     quantitative method of Macleod, 372  
     test in gastric secretion, 444  
     Uffelmann's test, 373, 445  
   lactonic. See *Galactonic*.  
   lauric, in butter fat, 200  
   levulinic, 161, 165, 325  
   linoleic, 198, 203  
     in egg-yolk, 207  
   linolic, 198, 203, 206, 833  
   malonic, 250  
   mandelic nitrile, 190  
   margaric, 521  
   metaphosphoric, 227  
   methyl-glyoxalic, 243  
   methyl-guanidin-acetic, 359, 696  
   mixture, Folin's, 888  
   monaminomonocarboxylic, 238  
   mono-amino-dicarboxylic, 250  
   monochloracetic, 217  
   mouth bottle, 864  
   mucic, 152, 185  
   myristic, in butter fat, 200  
   naphthol-yellow-S, 259  
   nitric, 895  
     dissociation, 43  
   nitrohydrochloric, 866  
   nitrous, dissociation, 43  
     effect on amino-acids, 291  
     preparation, 291  
   nonylic, 521  
   nucleic, 254, 322, 323, 325, 534  
     animal, formula, 331  
     decomposition, 332  
     synthesis, 324  
   oleic, 206, 519, 833, 910  
     in egg-yolk, 207  
     in human fat, 199  
     in liver, 206  
   organic, in urine, 679  
   osmotic pressure, 118  
   oxalic, 152, 250, 577  
     dissociation, 43  
   oxyproteic, 735, 740  
   palmitic, 193  
     in butter fat, 200  
     in egg-yolk, 207  
     in human fat, 199  
     in liver, 206  
   para-hydroxy-phenyl-acetic, 266, 267  
   para-hydroxy-phenyl- $\alpha$ -amino-propionic, 262  
   para-hydroxy-phenyl-propionic, 266  
   paralactic, 370  
   pelargolic, 197  
   phenyl-acetic, 253, 261  
   phenyl-pyruvic, 260, 261  
   phenyl-sulphuric, 267  
   phloretic, 896  
   phosphocarnic, 367  
   phosphomolybdic, 776  
   phosphoric, 207, 323, 324, 325, 369, 498, 677, 773  
     dissociation, 43  
     in lecithin, 205  
     meta, 227  
   photungstic, 254, 709, 811  
   purenosinic, 203  
 Acid, picramic, 157, 362, 726  
   picric, 153, 362, 709, 896  
   Benedict's method of purification, 867  
   formula, 157  
   test for glucids, 158  
   potassium phthalate, 873  
   propionic, 241, 242, 259, 273, 521, 529  
   protocatechuic, 441  
   pyrogallic, 904  
   pyrrolidin carboxylic, 253  
   pyruvic, 169, 170, 243, 244, 528, 529  
   reduced oxalic, 307  
   ricinelaidic, 198  
   ricinoleic, 198, 540  
   saccharic, 149, 507, 912  
     preparation, 763  
   reduction to glucuronic, 763  
   salicylic, 766  
   sarco-lactic, 370  
   source in body, 74  
   standard, 37  
   stearic, 519  
     in butter fat, 200  
     in egg-yolk, 207  
     in human fat, 199  
     in liver, 206  
   strong and weak, 42  
   succinic, 250  
     buffer solution, 878  
   sulphanilic, 763  
   sulphosalicylic, 227, 899  
   sulphur, 779  
   sulphuric, 267, 317, 677, 900  
     dissociation, 43  
     two-thirds normal, 884  
   tannic, and tyrosin test, 236  
   dialysis, 102  
   effect on gelatin, 304  
   protid precipitant, 227  
   tartaric, 152, 181, 182  
   optical relations, 171  
   tartronic, 152  
   taurocholic, 464, 465, 466  
   trichloracetic, 505, 900  
   trihydroxybutyric, 152  
   trihydroxyglutamic, 152  
   tungstic, protid precipitant, 227  
   unsaturated, plasma, 512  
   uric, 254, 327, 328, 332, 333, 364, 400, 401, 418, 534, 708-719  
     absorption from blood by tissues, 810  
     and diet, 711  
     and exercise, 712  
     and wash-out effect, 712  
     and water drinking, 712  
     Benedict's method for urine, 714  
   blood, 365, 797, 798, 809  
     Benedict's method, 812  
     Folin's method, 813  
     in gout, 810  
   calculi, 713  
   clinical interest, 711  
   daily excretion, 711  
   destruction, 736, 810  
   fate in body, 334  
   Folin-Benedict quantitative method, 713  
   Folin's centrifuge method for urinary, 715  
   high excretion, 712  
   in perspiration, 335, 346  
   in saliva, 335  
   in urine, Morris' method, 716  
   low excretion, 712  
   pathologic variations on urinary, 712  
   physiologic variations in excretion, 711

- Acid, uric, preparation from urine, 711  
   tests, 710  
   variations in output, 711  
   uric-formaldehyde, 812  
   use in cooking, 219  
   in heat test for protid, 750  
   valerianic, 255  
   valeric, 521  
 Acid-base, 667  
   and rickets, 637  
   balance, 676  
   equilibrium, 574  
   regulation, 577, 703  
 Acidity, gastric, 675  
   curves, 443  
   free, 440, 441, 442  
   normal, 431  
   total, 440  
   momentary, 82, 575  
   of aromatic substances, 465  
   of urine, factors, 679  
   total gastric, 428, 431  
 Acidosis, 69, 73, 240, 255, 259, 499, 501, 520, 522, 558, 577, 666, 678, 720, 765, 809  
   acids, 75  
   in diabetes mellitus, 75  
   in lowered oxygen tension, 74  
   Marriott's method, 75  
   of pregnancy, 577  
   substances in urine, test, 766  
   uncompensated, 69  
   Van Slyke method, apparatus, 71  
 Acree, S. F., 307  
 Acree-Rosenheim reagent, 865  
   test, 307  
 Acrolein, 910  
   from glycerol, 195  
   test, 765  
   for fat, 194  
 Acromegaly, 353, 564, 655, 656, 658  
 Acrylic aldehyde, 194  
 Activity, 50  
 Acute yellow atrophy, 240, 457, 516, 531, 695, 703, 707, 818  
 Adamkevitch's reaction, 306  
 Addison, T., 646, 663  
   disease, 344, 646, 647, 648, 657  
 Adenase, 332, 333, 534  
 Adenin, 329, 333, 364, 534, 708  
   nucleoside, 330  
   nucleotide, 330  
 Adenoma with hyperthyroidism, 619, 645  
 Adenotid, 331  
 Adhesions, 265, 745  
 Adipocere, 517  
 Adipose tissue, 131  
 Adipositas dolorosa, 652  
 Adiposity, 657, 662  
 Adler, O. and R., 393  
   method for blood, 393  
 Adolescent goiter, 644  
 Adrenal cortex, 646, 661  
   medulla, 646, 662  
 Adrenalin, 263, 880  
   same as epinephrin, 136  
 Adrenals, 344, 498, 499, 627, 647, 650, 654, 656, 659, 660, 661  
   effect of putrefactive products, 277  
 Adrenin, same as epinephrin, 136  
 Adsorption, 96, 109, 160  
   attempts to block reticulo-endothelial system, 110  
   colloidal, 142  
   Freundlich's equation, 109  
   iodin by charcoal, 144  
   mechanism, 109, 110  
   Willard Gibbs' principle, 110, 111  
 Adulteration of butter, 560  
 Aëration apparatus of Myers for blood nitrogen, 802  
 Aërobic utilization of glucose, 506  
 Aërometer, 682  
 Agar-agar, 150, 188  
 Air pressure at different stations, 73  
 Alanin, 242, 244, 245, 252, 279, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 496, 528, 529, 726  
   beta, 217, 367  
   from glycogen, 244  
   from serin, 245  
   in albumin, 257  
   in globulin, 257  
   iso-electric point, 909  
   methylene, 287  
   optical relations, 242, 243, 529  
   producing glucose, 242  
   S. D. A., 553  
   source of glycin, 239  
   synthesis, 242  
 Alanyl-alanin, 279, 280  
   ethyl ester, 280  
   hydrolysis, 290  
 Albinism, 344, 531  
 Albumen, distinction from albumin, 218  
   egg, coagulation temperature, 222  
   electro-negative, 108  
   electro-positive, 108, 109  
   intermediate compounds in precipitation, 108  
   iso-electric point, 107  
   test, 102  
 Albumin, 218, 257, 300, 315, 399, 532, 533  
   absence of glycin, 238  
   absorbed from intestine, 483  
   characteristics, 221  
   crystallization, 221  
   derived from globulin by ultraviolet light, 239  
   dialysis, 221  
   difference from globulin, 315  
   differentiated from mucin, 738  
   effect of ultraviolet light, 221  
   egg, 448, 456  
   iso-electric point, 107  
   Esbach's method, 753  
   in urine, 747  
   Esbach's method, 226  
   tests, 751  
   iso-electric point, 228, 315  
   Kjeldahl method, 755  
   myogen as, 230  
   pH and salting out, 315  
   precipitable with basic lead acetate, 224  
   precipitation related to reaction, 221  
   Quick's method, 752  
   serum, iso-electric point, 107  
   test, 468  
 Albuminate, acid, 228, 338  
   alkali, 302  
 Albuminoid, 299  
 Albuminometer, 754  
 Albuminuria, 747  
 Albuminoid, 302, 351, 356  
 Albumose, 130, 230, 231, 232, 270, 338, 339, 463, 488, 489, 748  
   in constipation, 233  
   not antigen, 340  
   primary, 749  
   toxicity, 340  
 Albumosuria, 340, 748  
 Alcohol, 150, 153, 193, 432  
   absorption, 482  
   Cannizzaro reaction, 244  
   ethyl, 170  
   from glucids, 149  
 Alcohol, poisonous nature, 127  
   precipitant and coagulant of protid, 219  
   primary and secondary, 140, 147  
 Alcoholic fermentation, 169  
   sodium hydroxide, 865  
 Alcohols, aldehydes, and acids, table, 911  
 Aldehydase, 454  
 Aldehyde, 147, 150  
   Cannizzaro reaction, 244  
 Aldehydic sugar, 507  
 Aldol condensation, 112, 151, 165, 515  
 Aldoses, 140, 153, 154  
   distinguished from ketoses, 164  
 Alimentary glycosuria, 719, 760  
 Alkali albuminate, 229, 302, 338  
   from acid albuminate, 229  
   impossibility of conversion to acid albuminate, 229  
   effect of adding to distilled water, 42  
   of administering, 579  
   on gastric secretion, 432  
   on vitamin, 551  
   loss, 578  
   reserve, 69, 76, 577, 703, 809  
   carbonate in, 76  
   chlorid shift, 79  
   composition, 76  
   measurement, 70  
   mode of action, 70  
   phosphate in, 76  
   value as pH rises, 77  
   tetany, 639  
 Alkaline tide, 429, 576, 675  
   urine, how acquired, 680  
 Alkaloid, 225, 328  
   optical action, 182  
 Alkaloidal reagents, 223, 225, 709  
 Alkalosis, 576  
 Alkapton, 264  
 Alkaptonuria, 264, 265, 531, 673, 744, 746  
 Alkyl, 217  
 Allantoin, 334, 335, 736  
   chemical characteristics, 736  
   clinical interest, 736  
   decomposition, 737  
   quantitative method of Folin, 737  
   urinary, 735  
 Alledestin, 338  
 Allen, D. M., 833  
 Allen, F. M., 561, 755  
   law, 755  
 Allergy, 321  
 Allihn condenser, 870  
 Allo-, prefix, definition, 338  
 Alloglobulin, 338  
 Allomyosin, 338  
 Alloprotids, 338  
 Aloose, 173  
 Alloxan, 367, 710  
 Alloxantin, 710  
   formula, 367  
 Alloxantin-ammonia, 367  
 Alloxypoteic acid, 735  
 Almén's method of protid precipitation, 227  
   solution, 865  
 Almond protid, 312  
 Aloes, 391, 463  
 Aloin, 391  
 Alpha ( $\alpha$ ), 181  
 Alpha-amino-acetic acid, 216, 238  
 Alpha-amino acids, 217  
   determination, 287  
 Alpha-amino-caproic acid, 240  
 Alpha - amino - delta - guanidin - valerianic acid, 254



- Alpha-amino-glutaric acid, 252  
 Alpha-amino-iso-butyl-acetic acid, 240  
 Alpha-amino-iso-valerianic acid, 241  
 Alpha-amino-propionic acid, 242  
 Alpha-amino-succinic acid, 251  
 Alpha-amino-succinic amid, 251  
 Alpha-amino-thio-propionic acid, 910  
 Alpha-delta-diamino-valerianic acid, 255  
 Alpha-epsilon-diamino-caproic acid, 257  
 Alpha-glucosidase, 453  
 Alpha-hydroxypropionic acid, 370, 912  
 Alpha-naphthol, 165, 166, 391 solution, 865  
 Alpha-nucleotid, 347  
 Alpha-pyrrolidin-carboxylic acid, 270  
 Alpha-urate, 709  
 Alsborg, 421, 629  
 Altrose, 173  
 Alum in baking powder, 225  
 Aluminium hydroxide, 225 in water purification, 225 protid precipitant, 225 styptic action, 225  
 Alundum, 410 crucible, 882  
 Alveolar air, method of Rowntree-Marriott, 75  
 CO<sub>2</sub>, Fridericia apparatus, 74  
 Amandin, 312  
 Ambard, L., 561, 669, 804 coefficient, 804  
 Amid, acid, 251  
 Amin, 911 effect, 270 excretion, 270 formation by bacteria, 265 secondary, 363  
 Amino-acids, 129, 130, 131, 133, 182, 216, 230, 233, 234, 339, 401, 666 absorption, 488 amphoteric nature, 254 analysis, 250 and nutrition, 311 artificial, 529 beta-oxidation, 515 classification, 238 content of albumin and globulin, 257 of phosphoprotids, 338 of protamins and histons, 301 of scleroprotids, table, 305 converted to glucose, 496 derivation, 217 fasting, 532 fate, 528 Folin's method for urinary, 731 formol titration, 287 giving rise to keto-substances, 523, 524 heterocyclic, 268 homocyclic, 259 imino-group, 255 in blood, 797, 817 Folin's method, 819 in cerebrospinal fluid, 400 in diabetes mellitus, 531 in plant protids, 311, 312 increased utilization, 532 indispensable, 533 involvement in cystinuria, 531 keto-acids from, 522 kinds, 217 linkage, 278, 279 metabolism, 261, 274  
 Amino-acids, not antigen, 321 number found in complete analyses, 311 oxidation, 553 pathologic metabolism, 531, 532 pentane homologue, 250 producing urea, 529 production, 731 proportion to total nitrogen, 750 racemic, 529 reagent, 732 relation to growth, 533 responsible for specific dynamic action, 553 solubility in ethanol, 272, 273 storage, 528 structure, 217 sulphur-bearing, 246, 250 synthesized in body, 239 toxicity, 253 urinary, 731 Henriques-Sørensen method, 733 pathologic, 731 test, 731 utilization, 530, 533 stereochemical considerations, 529 Van Slyke's contributions, 65 method for free, 733 for urinary, 732  
 Amino-ethanol, 202, 208  
 Amino-naphthol-sulphonic acid, 885  
 Amino-nitrogen, 287 apparatus of Van Slyke, 292 compared to total nitrogen in protid, 282, 283 in protid, 289  
 Amino-purin, 329, 364  
 Amino-sugar. See *Glucosamin*.  
 Ammelide, 689  
 Ammonia, 530, 578, 668, 673, 674, 676, 679 as spare of alkali reserve, 678 blood, 798, 802, 808 excretion, 684 from urea, 703 Malfatti's method, 707 pathologic variations of urinary, 703 urinary, 702, 703 by cupric hydroxid method, 705 water, 865  
 Ammoniacal silver nitrate solution, 898  
 Ammonio-keto-cyanate, 688  
 Ammonium carbonate, normal solution, 865 chlorid, 697, 865 perfusion giving alanin, 244 cyanate, 689 hydroxid, concentrated, 865 normal solution, 865 percentage dissociation, 865 molybdate, 776, 865 nitrate normal solution, 865 oxalate solution, 865 permute, 704 solubility, 218 sulphate, principle of salting out, 123 saturated solution, 122 standard for blood analysis, 800 nitrogen solution, 847 sulphide solution, 865 urate, 788 calculi, 713  
 Amniotic fluid, 579  
 Ampholyte, iso-electric point, graph, 105  
 Amphoteric, 254 amino-acids, 288 definition, 103  
 Amygdalin, 453  
 Amyl-alcohol, 865  
 Amylase, 187, 419, 423, 453, 505 intestinal, 460  
 Amylene oxid, 177  
 Amyl-nitrite, 379  
 Amylobiose defined, 188  
 Amyloclastic function, intestine, 460  
 Amyloid, 518 degeneration, 518  
 Amylol, 245 mixture for Babcock determination, 865  
 Amylopectin, 146, 188  
 Amylopsin, 453, 460  
 Amylotetrose, defined, 188  
 Amylum, 146  
 -an, 149  
 Anabolism, 216  
 Anacidity, 674  
 Anaerobic utilization of glucose, 506  
 Anesthesia, 185, 672  
 Analgesic, 227 effect on blood uric acid, 810  
 Analyzer, 178, 181  
 Anaphylaxis, 321, 359  
 Anderson, G. H., 566  
 Anemia, 379, 672, 680, 713, 723, 551, 569, 830, 835 due to avitaminosis, 550 metabolism, 620 pernicious, 430  
 Angstrom unit, 127  
 Anhydrid, 148 linkage of amino-acids, 280  
 Anhydroglucose, crystal, 148  
 Levene's model, 174  
 Anilin, 159 acetate, 162, 163 paper, 866 treatment for bromin poisoning, 870  
 Animal starch. See *Glycogen*.  
 Anion, 36 effect on ptyalin, 426 shift, 79, 86  
 Anisotropic, 357  
 Anomaly, 603  
 Anorexia due to vitamin, 551  
 Anoxemia, 374, 457, 766 inducing acidosis, 74  
 Anthraquinon, 391  
 Antibodies, 182, 320  
 Anticoagulant, 884  
 Antifoaming mixture, 889  
 Antigen, 182, 320 albumose as, 340  
 Antiketogenesis, 521, 523  
 Antiketolysis, 522  
 Antilog defined, 41  
 Antineuritic vitamin, 543, 624, 625  
 Antipode, 529  
 Antipyretic, 227  
 Antirachitic factor, 567 function, 634 vitamin, 541, 547  
 Antiscorbutic agents, 547 substances, 641  
 Antixerophthalmic vitamin, 541, 634  
 Anuria, 224, 671, 672, 797  
 Apnea, 81  
 Apomorphin, 866  
 Appendicitis, 265  
 Appetite, loss due to vitamin-B-deficiency, 543 secretion, gastric, 431 in infants, 431  
 Apple, 640



- Apple, caloric value, 590  
 iron content, 568  
 reaction, 579  
 ripening, 419  
 sauce, salt content, 561
- Aqua regia, 866
- Aqueous humor, 400  
 reaction, 579
- Arabic acid, 152  
 gum, 150
- Arabinose, 152, 153, 497, 509
- Arabinosuria, 500
- Arabitol, 153
- Arabonic acid, 152
- Arachic acid in butter fat, 200
- Arachidonic acid, 206  
 in egg-yolk, 207  
 in liver, 206
- Arctic, diet in, 557
- Arginin, 254, 255, 300, 301, 305, 311, 315, 361, 496, 518, 532, 533, 696, 719  
 in albumin, 257  
 in globulin, 257  
 method of separation, 258, 259  
 nitrate, 259
- Argon in body, 134
- Armstrong, 21, 190
- Aromatic ring, 132, 368  
 in excretion, 666  
 metabolism, 253  
 rupture, 270, 271  
 saturated, 212
- Arsenic, 134, 343, 575  
 pentoxid, 714
- Arseniosphotungstic acid, 714
- Arsenio-18-tungstic acid, 716
- Arterial blood, reaction, 69
- Arterioles, 270
- Arteriosclerosis, 379, 564, 573, 796, 811  
 cholesterol, 210
- Arteriosclerotic, blood sampling, 63
- Arthritis, 742, 744  
 homogenitistic acid, 265
- Artichoke, Jerusalem, 139, 150, 166  
 sugar, 148, 166
- Aschoff, L., 110, 476
- Asparagin, 251
- Asparagus, 251, 674  
 caloric value, 591
- Aspartic acid, 251, 252, 254, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 496, 529, 553  
 in albumin, 257  
 in globulin, 257  
 iso-electric point, 909
- Asphyxia, 223
- Aspiration method for urea in urine, 702
- Aspirin, 227, 766
- Assimilation, 130, 494
- Ass's milk, 415
- Asthma, 359  
 thymic, 661
- Astringent action of alum, 225
- Asymmetry, optical, 172
- Athermata, 475  
 cholesterol, 210
- Athletic events, 748
- Atkinson, H. V., 516
- Atom, asymmetrical carbon, 172  
 chemical, 33, 34  
 physical, 33  
 structure, 29
- Atomic number, 31, 134  
 oxidations, 602  
 weights of substances in body, 134
- Atopy, 321
- Atrophy, 376, 456  
 muscle, 365
- Atropin, 866
- Atwater, 25
- Atwater-Rosa calorimeter, 593
- Aub, J. C., 663
- Auer, 564
- Auspumpung, 82, 576
- Autoclaved foods, 581
- Autolysis, 207, 340, 374, 399, 454, 456, 459, 461, 475, 517, 533, 534, 620, 718, 731, 736, 748, 749  
 Bradley's work, 135
- Auxiliary valencies, 35
- Aviation, studies in, 82
- Avitaminoses, 550, 624
- Azelaic acid, 197
- B., ABBREVIATION for base, 68
- Babcock, S. M., 406  
 bottles, 407  
 method for fat, 406
- Bacillus acidophilus, 169  
 length compared with size of colloidal particles, 98
- Bacon, 405  
 caloric value, 591
- Bacteria in feces, 132  
 use of inulin, 150
- Bacteriology, pH determinations, 83
- Bacto-pepton, 233
- Bailey, C. V., 828
- Bakelite compared to condensations in biochemistry, 112
- Baker, W., 795
- Baking powder, alum, 225  
 mucic acid in, 152
- Balance, analytical, use, 85  
 base, 575  
 for Babcock method, 408
- Balloon flask, 867
- Baly, E. C. C., 138, 378  
 artificial photosyntheses, 129  
 synthesis of glycin, 239
- Banana, 640  
 caloric value, 590  
 reaction, 579
- Bancroft, W. D., 124, 145
- Bang, I., 214, 820
- Banting, F. G., insulin, 20
- Banting, William, 556  
 cure for obesity, 556
- Barcroft, 384
- Barfoed, 160  
 reagent, 866  
 test, 160, 161
- Barger, 789
- Barium chlorid solution, normal, 866  
 hydroxid solution, 866
- Barkus, O., 508
- Barley, 626
- Barlow, Sir Thomas, 642  
 disease, 551, 642
- Barnett, M., 681
- Barometers for laboratory, 295
- Barometric and temperature data, standardization, 73  
 readings at different typical localities, 73
- Baryta mixture, 866  
 water, 866
- Basal metabolic rate, 587, 617, 644  
 affected by glucose and fructose, 616  
 by insulin, 616, 617  
 calculation, 608, 610  
 normal variations, 606  
 metabolism, 606  
 and fat, 615  
 Krogh's method, 601  
 normal and abnormal, 619
- Base, 36, 680  
 in blood, 68
- Base, loss of, in urine, 703  
 natural, 368  
 osmotic pressure, 118  
 retention, 575
- Base-balance, 575  
 daily, 577
- Basewod, K. A., von, 645  
 disease, 645
- Basic lead acetate, 224, 893
- Basophiles, 376
- Bathing, effect on skin excretory substances, 347
- Baths, hot, accessory to excretion, 346
- Battery, storage, 56
- Baumann, E. J., 553, 829
- Bayliss, W. M., 21, 124, 138, 493, 548  
 tampon action, 67
- Beans, 127  
 calcium content, 563  
 caloric value, 590  
 iron content, 568  
 kidney, protid, 312  
 protid, 312  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 reaction, 579  
 soy, 418  
 protid, 312
- Beaumont, A. E., 841
- Beaumont, G. E., 789
- Beaumont, William, 434, 480
- Beckmann, freezing-point method, 47  
 thermometer, 47, 48, 49, 589
- Beef, calcium content, 563  
 corned, caloric value, 591  
 iron in, 568
- Beer's colorimetric formula, 164, 700
- Beets, caloric value, 591  
 reaction, 579  
 salt content, 561  
 sugar, 139, 149, 150, 183, 367
- Behre, J. A., 814
- Bell-Doisy method for phosphates, 776
- "Belly-sweet-bread," 303
- Bence-Jones' protid, 749, 750  
 chemical characteristics, 749  
 crystallization, 750
- Benedict, F. C., 599, 608, 612, 622  
 basal metabolism method, 600
- Benedict, S. R., 19, 363, 370, 530, 665, 678, 703, 708, 711, 714, 719, 755, 793, 801, 808, 809, 811, 814, 815, 816, 823  
 arseniosphotungstic reagent, 714
- blood-sugar method, 158, 821
- creatin method, 725
- creatinin method, 725  
 solution, 867
- decolorizer for creatin determinations, 867
- glucid, test, 156
- method for inorganic phosphorus in blood, 838  
 for normal sugar in urine, 759  
 for purifying picric acid, 867  
 glucose and lactose, 160
- molybdic acid reagent for blood phosphorus, 867
- picric-picrate solution, 868
- quantitative glucid method, 157
- reagent for blood phosphorus, 868  
 for sulphur, 780  
 solution, 44, 184, 190  
 standard glucose solution, 868  
 phenol solution, 869  
 phosphorus solution, 869

- Benedict, S. R., sugar solution, 868  
 test, 167, 187  
   for urinary glucose, 760  
 total sulphur reagent, 869  
 uric acid in blood method, 812  
   method for urine, 714  
   reagent, 868  
 Benedict-Bock method for Nessler's solution, 867  
 Benedict-Hitchcock solution, 812, 869  
 Benedict-Nash ammonia reagent, 869  
 Benedict-Osterberg's boneblack for normal urinary sugar, 870  
 Benzaldehyde, 306  
   test for hippuric acid, 727  
 Benzene, saturated, 368  
 Benzinidin, 113, 391, 394, 780  
   solution for sulphates, 870  
   sulphate, 780  
   preparation, 870  
   test for blood, 393  
   for hemoglobin in urine, 744  
 Benzoic acid, 532, 726  
   detoxicated by glycine, 239  
 Benzoin, 751  
 Bergeim, 480  
 Berglund, H., 334, 495, 509, 530, 712, 756, 793, 797, 810, 816  
 Beriberi, 544, 551, 624, 625, 830  
   experimental, 626  
   wet, 570  
 Berkefeld filter, 450  
 Bernard, C., 190, 370, 397, 455  
   test for pancreatic products, 455  
 Bernstein, M., 561  
 Berthollet, 626  
 Bertrand, G., 344, 820  
 Best, insulin, 20  
 Besznanoff, N., 547  
 Beta-alanine, 217, 367  
 Beta-amino-acids, 217, 252, 254, 367  
   Beta-cholestanol, 474  
   Beta-di-thio-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 247  
   Beta-glucosidase, 453  
   Beta-hydroxy-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 245  
   Beta-hydroxybutyraldehyde, 515  
   Beta-hydroxy-butyric acid, 240, 501, 515, 520, 523, 766, 770  
   in acidosis, 75  
   removal of substances in urine in determinations, 771  
   Beta-hydroxypropionic acid, 912  
   Beta-hydroxy-pyridine, 545, 546  
   Beta-hydroxy-valerianic acid, 245, 270  
   basis of proline synthesis, 271  
   Beta-iminazol-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 268  
   Beta-iminazol-ethyl-amine, 269  
   Beta-indol-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 273  
   Beta-keto-butyric acid, 519  
   Beta-naphthoquinone-sulphonic acid, 885  
   Beta-nucleotid, 347  
   Beta-oxidation, 199, 261, 275, 515, 518, 519, 521  
   Beta-phenyl-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 259  
   Beta-thio-alpha-amino-propionic acid, 246  
   Beta-urate, 709  
   Beta-in, 367  
 Beverages, 327  
   effect on gastric secretion, 432  
   on metabolism, 618  
   on urine volume, 670  
 Beverages, water in, 346  
 Bial, M., 163  
   solution, 870  
   test, 761  
 Bicarbonate, 680  
   administration, 703  
   effect on vitamin, 551  
   in blood reaction, 68  
   in milk coagulation, 449  
   sodium, as standard alkali, 88  
   tetany, 639  
   used with milk, 405  
 Bichlorid poisoning, 671, 797, 811  
   cause, 224  
 Bichromate for creatinin determinations, 889  
   half-normal solution, 723  
 Biedl, 651, 656, 663  
 Bigwood, E. J., 766  
 Bigwood and Ladd's test, for acetone, 767  
 Bile, 249, 316, 439, 452, 458, 463, 464, 465, 673, 741, 751  
   accessory to enzyme action, 112  
   acids, 239  
   action on surfaces, 111  
   amount, 464  
   buffer action, 473  
   chlorin, 134  
   cholesterol, 210  
   cysts, 210  
   circulation, 463  
   composition, 464  
   concentration, 464  
   cyst, 464  
   gall-stones, 210  
   gastric regurgitation, 439  
   glycine in, 239  
   in fat digestion, 95, 112  
   inorganic substances, 473  
   iron, 473  
   lowering surface tension in oil, 112  
   of carnivores, 466  
   of herbivores, 466  
   osmosis, 463  
   pigments, 379, 462, 463, 464, 468, 469, 739, 743  
   attempts to prevent destruction by adsorption, 110  
   chemistry, 469  
   excretion, 469  
   extrahepatic origin, 469  
   summary, 471  
   tests, 471, 472  
   pressure, 463  
   reaction, 473, 579  
   regurgitated, 112, 471  
   salts, 249, 462, 463, 464, 705  
   chemistry, 464, 465  
   conjugation, 467  
   summary, 467  
   test, 467  
   sand, 477  
   sulphur content, 466  
   test by Udranski's foam method, 111  
   for, by Hay's sulphur method, 111  
   viscosity, cause, 473  
   water content, 473  
 Biliary calculi, 418, 474, 475  
   analysis, 478  
   pigment, 379  
 Bilipurpurin, 469  
 Bilirubin, 379, 469, 743  
   Hans Fischer's formula, 470  
   oxidation, 471  
 Biliverdin, 470, 471  
 Binger, C. A. L., 680  
 Biochemical normal data. *Inside Back Cover.*  
   periodicals, 23  
   reactions, peculiarities, 93  
 Biochemistry and clinical medicine, 18  
   biologic chemistry, physiologic chemistry, chemical physiology, 18  
   books on, 21, 26, 27  
   first laboratory, 22  
   teaching department, 22  
   foundations, 22  
   French influence, 21, 22  
   in hospitals, etc., 23  
   Lavoisier's work, 21  
   Liebig's influence, 22  
   methods, 19  
   Munich influence, 22  
   origins, 21  
   relations, 24  
   table of development, 24  
   value to mankind, 20  
   Voit's nutritional studies, 23  
 Biogen, 215  
 Biogenic chemistry, 18  
 Biosphere, 215  
 Bios, 149, 152, 250, 548, 549  
 Bisamylase, 187, 188  
 Biscuit, caloric value, 591  
 Bismuth, 153  
   absorption, 492  
 Bisulphite, 769  
 Bitters, 432  
 Biuret, 280, 689  
   formula, 282  
   group, 279  
   reaction, 281  
   test, 225, 339, 690  
 Bivalent ions, 222  
 "Bleeders," 223  
 Bloch, C. E., 542, 631  
 Blood, 313, 397, 568  
   accessory factors regulating reaction, 81  
   accuracy of analyses, 20  
   Adler's test, 393  
   albumin, 218, 220  
   alkali reserve, 69  
   cations, 81  
   measurement, 70  
   amino-acids, 400, 531, 797, 817  
   Van Slyke's method, 818  
   ammonia, 798, 802, 808  
   Benedict-Nash solution, 869  
   and clinical diagnosis, 790  
   arterial, reaction, 69  
   bases, 840  
   behavior in apnea, 81  
   benzidin test, 393  
   buffers, 68  
   summary, 81  
   calcium, 548, 635, 639, 648  
   carbon dioxide, 66  
   cell-volume, 798  
   chemical composition and seawater, 27  
   chemistry, 790  
   anticoagulant, 65  
   change in reaction through preservatives, 66  
   method of determining alkali reserve, 70  
   needles, 63, 64  
   obtaining blood for, 63  
   paraffin oil, 65  
   thymol in, 65  
   chlorid, 132, 834  
   shift, 79  
   Van Slyke's method, 836  
   for small amounts, 836  
   variations, 837  
   chlorin, 134  
   cholesterol, 210, 511, 829  
   Bloor's method, 831  
   clotting, 133  
   time, 223

- Blood coagulation, effect of magnesium, 565**  
**CO<sub>2</sub> combining power, 70**  
 apparatus of Van Slyke, 71  
 calculation, 73  
 normal, 73  
**collecting, 791**  
 for study of reaction, 65  
**composition compared with that of cerebrospinal fluid, 400**  
**copper, 134**  
 corpuscle, relative size to colloidal particles, 98  
**creatin, 668, 718, 719, 817**  
 content, 360  
**creatinin, 363, 797, 798, 805, 815**  
 clinical importance, 816  
 effect of feeding creatinin, 815  
 method, 816  
**Dare's method, 383**  
**detection by benzidin, 113**  
**dextrose. See Glucose.**  
**enzymes, 235**  
**fatty acids, 833**  
**finger-tip method for sugar, 825**  
**forming organs, 354**  
**Friederica method for alveolar CO<sub>2</sub>, 74**  
**gas, 384**  
**gases, Van Slyke's contributions, 65**  
**globulin, 218, 220**  
 related to age, 220  
**glucose, 502, 820**  
**inorganic constituents, 834**  
 phosphate, method, 838  
 seasonal variation, 638  
**in scurvy, 641**  
**ionic behavior, 80**  
**iron, 569**  
**lipids, 511**  
**magnesium, 565**  
**maintenance of neutrality, 66**  
**method for quantitative determinations of constituents, 790**  
 of obtaining from guinea-pig, 828  
 of withdrawing, 63  
**non-protid nitrogen, 793, 795, 798**  
 method of Folin, 798  
 of Myers, 801  
 pathologic variations, 795, 796  
 titration method, 803  
**occult, 394, 440**  
**peroxidase, 113**  
**phosphate, 501, 548, 680**  
 in reaction, 68  
**phosphorus, 566, 635, 639, 650, 837**  
**pigments, 377**  
**spectroscopy, 380**  
**plasma, 313**  
**chlorid, 561, 562**  
**preserving, 65**  
**pressure, disatolic, 359**  
 effect of amins, 270  
 of bile salts, 466  
 low, 671  
 modified by salt-free diet, 562  
 systolic, 359  
 variation for sex, 359  
**procuring, 792**  
**protids, 217**  
**ratio between protids, 748**  
 reaction, 66, 579, 909  
 CO<sub>2</sub> in, 68
- Blood reaction, extremes, 69**  
 how maintained, 67  
 modified by preservative, 66  
 popular misconceptions, 69  
**residual reducing substances, 820**  
**sampling in arteriosclerotic, 63**  
 in obese, 63  
**serum, 218**  
 iso-electric point, 107  
 potassium, 134  
 preparation for study, 217  
 temperature of coagulation, 222  
**sodium, 839**  
 carbonate in, 68  
**sugar, 399, 495, 501, 502, 504, 617, 820**  
 Benedict's method, 158  
 character, 820  
 diagram of different factors, 504  
 effect of insulin, 820  
 of yeast, 820  
 fate, 507  
 Folin's method, 824  
 iodometric method, 820  
 Myers' method, 828  
 picric acid method, 828  
 Rothberg-Evans modification of Folin's method, 827  
 Tervart's method, 820  
 tube, Folin's, 824  
 Kramer-Gittleman, 826  
**summary, 840**  
**table of analyses, 20**  
**Talqvist method, 383**  
**test, 377, 391, 393, 394**  
 spectroscopic, 381  
**total buffer value, 78**  
 reducing substance, 820  
**undetermined nitrogen, 797, 798**  
**urea, 797, 798, 802, 803, 805**  
 methods, 806  
 Myers' method, 808  
 normal, 804  
**uric acid, 797, 798, 805, 809**  
 absorption by tissues, 810  
 Benedict's method, 812  
 Folin's method, 813  
 in gout, 810  
 methods, 811  
 variations, 810, 811  
**value of buffers, 77**  
 of single pH determinations, 69  
**venous, reaction, 69**  
**Blood-vessels, 375, 376**  
**Bloor, 204, 213, 214, 475, 493, 512, 535, 829, 830, 833**  
 method for blood cholesterol, 831  
**Blum, F., 663**  
**Blunt, K., 719**  
**Bock, 801**  
**Bock-Benedict colorimeter, 823**  
**Body fats, character, 199**  
**fluids, chemical composition, 400**  
 sodium in, 565  
 human, efficiency, 584  
 position and metabolism, 618  
 proportions maintained, 375  
 size and metabolism, 618  
 surface, 606  
 measurement, 607  
 temperature, 39  
 normal, 131  
**Bogue, R. H., 124**  
**Bohr, 29**  
**Boiling-point, relation to ionic concentration, 44**  
**Bollman, 469**
- Bomb calorimeter, 587**  
**Bone, 133, 302, 348, 351, 577**  
 age differences, 351  
 ash, analysis, 352  
 fluorin in, 134  
 calcium, 351  
 content, 563  
 coloring-matters, 353  
 demineralizing, 354  
 difference between male and female, 351  
 earths, 352  
 fat, 353  
 inorganic constituents, 354  
 location of formation, 93  
 magnesium, 565  
 manner of association of inorganic substances, 353  
 marrow, 272, 349, 354, 376  
 metabolism and light, 353  
 oil, 354  
 phosphorus, 567  
 in lesions, 566  
 water content, 351  
**Boothby, 608, 617, 619, 620, 622, 645**  
**Boric acid, 42**  
 Borate buffer solutions, 878  
**Borax bead, 764**  
**Borchardt, 760**  
**Boric acid, 42**  
 buffer solution, 874  
 compared to HCl, 42  
 dissociation, 43  
 buffer solution, 872  
**Bottle, acid and salt-mouth, 864**  
**Bottling foods, 641**  
**Botulism, 256**  
**Bovie's potentiometer, 42**  
**Bovril extracts, analysis, 358**  
**Boyle's law, 73, 297**  
**Braconnot, 237**  
**Bradley, H. C., 106, 135, 448, 452, 480**  
 iso-electric point, 106, 107  
**Bradycardia, 644**  
**Bragg, Sir W., 29**  
**Brain, 193, 396, 399, 712**  
 and methyl-purins, 327  
 arsenic, 134  
 creatin content, 360  
 glycogenase, 506  
 inosite in, 212  
 iodine, 134  
 irritation causing glycosuria, 370  
 lipids, 203  
 magnesium in, 134  
 tumor, 400  
**Bread, caloric value, 591**  
 salt-rising, 169  
 white, 405  
 and iron deficit, 570  
**Breath, 666**  
 odor of skatol, 277  
**Breathing, effect of methyl purins, 327**  
 water excretion, 346  
**Bredig, G., 124**  
**Bright, R., 747**  
 disease, 686, 747, 748  
**Brockman, C. J., 92**  
**Bromocresol green, 891**  
 purple, 60, 891  
**Bromin poisoning, treatment, 870**  
 test for pancreatic digestion products, 455, 456  
 water, 871  
**Bromphenol blue, 60, 891**  
**Brom-thymol-blue, 60, 891**  
**Bronchitis and vitamin, 550**  
**Bronchopneumonia, fatty acids in liver, 513**  
**Bronzing of skin, 646**

- Broun, G. C., 480  
 Brown, 318  
 Brown, A. L., 837  
 Brown, E. G., 26  
 Brownian movement, 101  
   size of particles, 98  
 Bruecke's reagent, 871  
 Buchner, 497  
   funnel, 866  
 Bucket, Einhorn, 436  
 Buffer, 146, 265, 429, 451, 473, 699  
   blood, 68  
   enumerated, 69  
   definition, 67  
   Folin's, 887  
   solutions, 59, 871  
   exercise, 60  
   used in standardizing potentiometer, 56  
   storing solutions, 874  
   summary, 81  
   value, greatest, 67  
   of cell, 77  
 Bunge, 569  
 Bunker, C. W. O., 830  
 Bunting, C. H., 402  
 Burchard, Liebermann's reagent, 893  
 Burette, gas, 293  
 Burettes, calibration, 88  
 Burian, 711  
   and Schur, 694  
 Burner, micro-, 822  
 Burnett, 214  
 Burns, D., 92  
 Burns, 253, 359, 493  
   treated with Scharlach-R, 194  
 Butane, 910  
 Butter, 551, 573, 631, 634  
   adulterated with cocoanut oil, 560  
   fat, 200, 408, 567, 912  
   iodin number, 200  
   of ice cream, 420  
   volatile acids, 200  
   pigment, 379  
   Reichert-Meissl number, 202  
   saltless, 561  
   substitutes, 198, 581  
   test, 201  
 Buttermilk, 631  
   caloric value, 590  
 Butyl-alcohol method of Dakin, 311  
 Butylene ether, 149  
   oxid, 177, 507  
   ring, 176  
 Butyric acid, 515  
   in butter fat, 200  
  
 CABBAGE, 547, 552, 640  
   calcium content, 563  
   caloric value, 591  
 Cachexia, 830  
 Cadaverin, 256, 531  
 Cadmium element, 53  
   spark, 635  
 Caffein, 327, 708  
   as diuretic, 670  
   diuretic action, 328  
   for collapse, 872  
   formula, 329  
   toxic dose, 328  
 Cajori, R. A., 23  
 Cake, caloric value, 591  
 Calcified milk, 455  
 Calcium, 50  
   Calcium, 134, 255, 256, 359, 405, 449, 539, 548, 562, 634, 635, 639, 640, 648, 650, 655, 677, 774  
   antagonism of K, 565  
   bilirubinate, 470  
   Calcium, bone, 352  
   carbonate, 674  
   in hair, 343  
   caseinate, 451  
   chlorid, 562  
   in bone, 352  
   in milk, 415  
   entropy, 585  
   excretion, 667  
   fluorid, 352  
   gall-stones, 477  
   hypochlorite, 746  
   in bone, 351  
   in cereal, 567  
   in clotting and curdling, 133  
   in diet, 575  
   in European dietaries, 563  
   in hair, 343  
   in urine, 782  
   in U. S. dietaries, 563  
   inorganic and organic in diet, 564  
   isatinate, 746  
   necessary content in child, 563  
   intake, 563  
   oleate, 517  
   oxalate, 713  
   crystals, 788  
   solubility, 356  
   phosphate, 674  
   in hair, 343  
   in milk, 415  
   stellar crystals in urine, 787  
   tri, 567  
   regulation, 563  
   relation to protid diet, 563  
   soap, 567  
   source in dietaries, 564  
   test, 356  
   withdrawal under stress, 564  
   Calcium - magnesium - inositol - hexaphosphate. See *Phytin*.  
 Calculi, biliary, 474, 475  
   analysis, 478  
   pigment, 379  
   phosphate, 542  
   uric acid, 713  
   urinary, 739  
   calcium oxalate, 713  
   test, 713  
 Calibration of glassware, 84  
 Calomel, 463  
   element, 53  
 Caloric needs for boys, 611  
   relations of K/A ratio, 524  
   requirement, male and female, 586  
   value of foods, 590  
   of oxygen, 595  
 Calorie, defined, 192  
   large and small, 192  
   tables, Thomas Groom Co., 524  
 Calories, 584, 586  
   basal metabolism correlated with body weight, 609  
   boy's, surface area, 613  
   during growth, 614  
   evaluation 592  
   excess from fructose, 616  
   from glucose, 616  
   from muscular activity, 609  
   from urinary nitrogen, 605  
   girl's, surface area, 613  
   weight, 614  
   lost in excreta, 609  
   of female subjects, 613  
   per body surface, 606  
   per standard data, 610  
   percentage from protid, glucid and lipid, 612  
   used for growth, 609  
 Calorimeter, 590  
   Krogh's, 601  
   room, 593  
   Roth's, 599, 600  
  
 Calorimeters in U. S., 595  
 Calorimetric determination, 589  
 Calorimetry, 587, 592  
   direct, 593, 594  
   indirect, 593, 595  
   methods, 594  
 Cameron, A. L., 747  
 Cammidge, 499  
 Camphor, evidence of adaptation, 28  
   structural formula, 28  
 Cancer, 262, 263, 374, 418, 460, 531, 695, 703, 735, 749, 796, 811, 830  
   and Abderhalden reaction, 235  
   melanotic sarcoma, 344  
 Candy, 418  
 Cane sugar, 139, 149, 150, 183  
 Canning, effect on vitamin, 546  
   foods, 641  
 Cannizzaro reaction, 244  
 Cannon, W. B., 663  
 Cantaloup, caloric value, 591  
 Cantharides, 670  
 Capacity, 36  
 Capillaries, 270  
 Capillary electrometer, 55  
   poison, 269  
 Capric acid in butter fat, 200  
 Caproic acid, 241, 258  
   normal, 241  
 Capronic acid in butter fat, 200  
 Caprylic acid in butter fat, 200  
 Caramel, 151, 508, 520  
 Carbinol, 140, 147, 184  
   acid, 152  
 Carbohydrate, 127, 148. See *Glucids*.  
   defined, 139  
 Carbolic acid, 745. See also *Phenol*.  
   poisoning, 746  
 Carbon, 134  
   atom, asymmetry, 172  
   dioxid, 149, 380, 677, 684  
   absorber, 126  
   apparatus of Fridericia, 74  
   combining power, 70  
   apparatus of Van Slyke, 71  
   normal, 73  
   condensed to sugar, 128  
   conjugated forms, 74  
   content of air, 598  
   of blood, 66  
   elimination after insulin, 617  
   excretion, 132, 665, 666  
   flask, 701  
   from fermenting urinary sugar, 820  
   generation, 879  
   in apnea, 81  
   in bread making, 225  
   in neutrality regulation, 132  
   in perspiration, 347  
   loss affecting blood reaction, 82  
   causing change in pH, 399  
   reaction when applied to pure water, 66  
   tension, normal, 70  
   unsaturated nature, 537  
   efficiency, 585  
   entropy, 585  
   excretion, 684  
   monoxid hemoglobin, method of Van Slyke and Salvesen, 388  
   test, 381  
   number and fat utilization, 521  
   origin from nitrogen, 32  
   oxidation, 602  
   retained on high protid diet, 615  
   tetrachlorid, 194  
   boiling-point, 410



- Carbonate, 577, 666, 684  
alkali standard, 88, 89  
bone, 352  
effect on gastric secretion, 432  
in alkali reserve, 76  
in urine, 679  
ratio, 76  
test, 355  
value in buffering, 77
- Carbonic acid in blood reaction, 68
- Carbonyl, 140, 147, 184  
acid, 152
- Carcinoma, 447, 460, 735
- Cardia of stomach, 425
- Cardiac decompensation, 730
- Cardiac condenser, 100
- Cardiorenal diseases, 642
- Cardiovascular disease, 551
- Carlson, 428, 432, 435, 443, 447,  
480, 504, 659, 660, 662, 663
- Carminic acid, 777
- Carnin, 367
- Carnitin, 367
- Carnivores, 270  
acid excretion, 574
- Carnosin, 367, 368
- Carotene, 379
- Carotin, 739
- Carpenter, 596, 612, 622
- Carrots, 640  
caloric value, 591  
iodin content, 646  
reaction, 579  
salt content, 561
- Cartilage, 302, 303, 348  
glucid in, 142  
location of formation, 93
- Cascara, 672
- Casein, 240, 242, 252, 259, 289,  
311, 337, 347, 415, 448, 451,  
454, 455, 456, 532, 538  
as antigen, 321  
glycin, 239  
iso-electric point, 909  
method of determining, 105  
optimal reaction in tryptic di-  
gestion, 909  
pancreatic digest, 234  
prolin content, 272  
pure, 105  
solution, 872  
total nitrogen, 283
- Caseinogen. See *Casein*.
- Castor oil, 198, 540
- Castration, 652, 660
- Casta, 674  
urinary, 713
- Catabolism, 216, 530  
protid, 287
- Catalase, 454
- Catalysis, 569  
definition and etymology, 95  
in Kjeldahl method, 108  
of platinum sol, 96
- Catalytic action of water, 107
- Catalyzer, 93  
at end of reaction, 108
- Cataphoresis, 104  
adequate current, 104
- Catechol, 264, 391
- Catharsis by diglucids, 483  
due to diglucid, 510
- Cathartics, saline, and osmosis,  
117
- Cathcart, 341, 480, 493
- Cation, 36  
behavior in blood reaction, 81
- Caudal, defined, 186
- Cauliflower, caloric value, 591
- Celery, phosphoric acid in, 418
- Cell, buffer value, 77  
electric, 54  
Jecithin in, 204  
physical structure, 216  
proliferation, 277
- Cell volume, 798, 835
- Cellulose, 146, 148, 149, 150, 188,  
189  
affected by bacteria, 188  
decomposition, 189  
effect of iodine, 144  
in food, 492
- Celluloses, 139, 165
- Cement, tooth, 348
- Center, respiratory, 81
- Centigrade to Fahrenheit de-  
grees, 904
- Centrifuge, 408, 409  
cup, 715  
mounting for 50-ml. tube, 883  
tube, 15-ml., 715  
50-ml., 871
- Cephalad, defined, 186
- Cephalin. See *Kephalin*.
- Cereals, 546  
and teeth, 642  
decorticated, 581  
degerminated, 581  
iron content, 568  
milling, 551  
phosphorus content, 567
- Cerebral abscess, 400
- Cerebrosides, 202
- Cerebrospinal fluid, 397, 400  
change in reaction on stand-  
ing, 399  
findings in normal and  
pathologic cases, 400  
pH, 399  
reaction, 579  
specific gravity, 398  
pressure, 398
- Cerebrum, stimulation by  
methyl-purins, 327
- Cerumen, 345
- Cetti, professional faster, 615
- Cetyl alcohol, 889  
in cysts, 345
- Ch, 37  
converted to pH, 38, 41
- Chaikoff, I. L., 501, 521
- Chalaza, 415
- Channon, 474
- Charcoal, 160  
adsorption, 109  
of iodine, 144  
Merck's blood-charcoal, 160
- Charges, unequal distribution in  
colloidal solutions, 98, 99
- Charles' law, 73, 297
- Chase, A. F., 805
- Cheese, 127  
caloric value, 591
- Chemical atom, 33  
configuration and pharmaco-  
logic action, 208  
characteristic for biochem-  
istry, 910  
constitution and physical  
structure, 171  
correlations, 135  
machine, muscle, 374  
physiology, 18  
specialization, 342
- Cherry juice, reaction, 579
- Cherry-bark glucoside, 190
- Chicken broth, salt content, 561  
caloric value, 591  
heat production, 606
- Childs' acid-base requirement,  
577
- Chitin, 318, 349
- Chittenden, biochemist, 22, 310
- Chlorhematin, 469
- Chlorids, 401, 560  
blood, 132, 561, 834  
Van Slyke's method, 836  
variations, 837  
corpuscular, 835  
daily excretion, 132
- Chlorids in hair, 343  
in milk, 415  
in perspiration, 346  
in urine, Volhard method, 776  
Seelmann's method, 774  
serum, 835  
shift, 79, 80
- Chlorin, 134  
diets high and low in, 850  
entropy, 585  
in diet, 575  
loss from body, 562  
water, 872
- Chlorination, 127
- Chlorion, 222  
behavior in CO<sub>2</sub> transport,  
79  
test, 102, 354
- Chloroform and glycogenase,  
506  
as anesthetic, 872  
necrosis, 457
- Chlorophyl, 127, 253, 273, 377,  
379, 469, 624, 739
- Chlorosis, 569, 570, 672, 743
- Chocolat, 327, 534, 708  
and milk fat, 414
- Cholagogues, 463
- Cholalic acid, 465
- Cholangitis, 740
- Cholecystitis, 418
- Cholera, 256, 673
- Cholesterol, 474
- Cholesterol, 131, 193, 209, 416,  
418, 462, 464, 465, 466, 474,  
548, 634, 637, 638, 666  
acetate, 210  
alcohol, nature, 213  
as carrier of unsaturated acids,  
213  
blood, 511, 829  
Bloor's method, 831  
factors modifying, 830  
characteristics, 212  
chemical characteristics, 211  
crystal form, 210  
derivation of name, 210  
digitonin, 210  
esterification, 829  
esters, 475, 511, 512, 517  
in blood, 833, 210  
in ointments, 210  
function, 474, 517  
gall-stones, pure, 477  
in arteriosclerosis, 210  
in atheromatous arteries, 210  
in diabetes mellitus, 210  
in hair, 343  
in human blood, 210  
in nails, 345  
in nervous system, 210  
in pathology, 475  
in perspiration, 346  
in plants, 212  
in rickets, 210  
in skin, 345  
in thyroid cysts, 211  
in wool-fat, 210  
Liebermann's test, 211, 307  
origin, 474  
protecting against hemolysis,  
511  
globulin, 218  
reduction, 210  
solubility, 210, 475  
synthesis, 474  
test, 210  
Liebermann's, 211, 307  
unsaturation, 212  
Windsau's formula, 212
- Cholic acid, 239, 465, 474  
and glycin, 239
- Cholin, 203, 205, 207, 208, 324,  
367, 368, 395, 465, 719
- Chondroid marrow, 354



- Chondroitin sulphuric acid, 343, 349, 518  
structural formula, 349, 350  
test, 351
- Chondroitinic acid, 349
- Chorea, 573
- Chromaffin system, 646, 656, 662
- Chromatin, 142, 321, 533, 534  
and lecithin, 204  
phosphorus, 567
- Chromic acid, 723, 879
- Chromogen, 532  
in hair, 344
- Chromoprotids, 300, 318
- Chromosomes, 322
- Chwambath's fat extraction method. See *Soxhlet*.
- Chylomicrons, 512
- Chyme, 422, 439
- Chymosin, 428, 448, 449
- Cilia, 133
- Circulation of bile, 463
- Circulatory system, 375
- Cirrhosis, 673, 695, 703, 740  
liver, 467, 471
- Citrate, 680  
buffer solution, 875
- Citric acid, 226
- Citronella, formula, 212
- Claisen flask, 873
- Clark, E. P., 648
- Clark, W. M., 37, 59, 92, 124, 873  
activity, 50  
buffer solutions, 876  
hydrogen electrode apparatus, 57  
phthalate buffer solutions, 877
- Clark-Lubs indicators, 891  
solutions, 873
- Clasmatocyte, 469
- Classification of protids, 299
- Claude Bernard's piqure, 858
- Clay, diameter of suspension, 98
- Cleaning fluid, 879
- Climate, factor in urinary nitrogen excretion, 685
- Climbing, mountain, CO<sub>2</sub> in, 82
- Clinical medicine and biochemistry, 18
- Clothing, 670  
effect on metabolism, 617
- Clotting, 133, 448, 449, 455  
time, 223
- Clupein, 301
- CO<sub>2</sub> transportation, 76
- Coagulation, 448, 449  
and heat, dependence upon reaction, 222  
blood and milk and calcium, 564  
effect of ions, 222  
of magnesium, 565  
heat, 219  
pH and temperature, 314  
temperature, 221  
time, effect of pepton, 488
- Coalescence of particles and isoelectric point, 104
- Cocain, 225, 395
- Coccus bacterium, relative size to colloidal particles, 98
- Cochineal, 777
- Cocoa, 327, 618  
caloric value, 590
- Cocoa-butter, 328
- Cocoonut oil, 549  
crystals, 200  
in adulterated butter, 560  
Reichert-Meißl number, 202
- Cod-liver oil, 199, 512, 542, 552, 567, 573, 631, 634
- Coefficients, blood urea, 805  
of total solids in urine, 683  
Shaffer's creatinin, 722
- Coffee, 327, 432, 534, 618, 708  
cafein in, 328  
caloric value, 590  
salt content, 561
- Cohen, M., 401
- Cohn, E. J., 299
- Cohnheim, O., 454
- Cold-blooded animals, 606  
enzymes, 131
- Cole, C. C., 420
- Cole, S. W., 160, 307, 427, 455, 460, 789  
method for determining isoelectric point, 105
- Colitis, 551
- Collagen, 302, 303, 304, 348, 356, 530  
separation, 351
- Colligative, defined, 117  
relations and osmotic pressure, 118
- Collip, 428, 480, 535, 624, 639, 648, 649, 659, 677  
and insulin, 20
- Collodion tubes, 86, 879
- Colloid, 124, 430  
and absorption, 485  
hydrostatic relations, 122, 123, 124  
protected, 218
- Colloidal adsorption, 142
- Copper in sugar tests, 157
- Cupric hydroxid, 153
- Gold, formation, 97  
solution, 879
- Iron screening light, 128
- Nitrogen, 735  
correlations, 735  
particles, Brownian movement, 101  
cause of suspension, 98  
osmotic pressure, 117  
relative rate of motion, 99  
table of sizes, 98
- Platinum, 880
- Solutions and water, 122  
hydrophilic, 122  
hydrophobic, 122  
state, 33, 95, 215  
of food substances, 101  
states, stabilizing, 97  
suspensoids, 122
- Color related to unsaturation, 197
- Colorimeter, 700, 823  
calculation, Beer's formula, 700  
comparison for pH determinations, 61
- Coolidge, 62
- Colorimetric method for pH, 59  
set of solutions, 61
- Colorimetry, Beer's formula, 164
- Colostrum, 220
- Combination gall-stones, 477
- Combining power, CO<sub>2</sub>, 70
- Combustion apparatus, 126  
in caloric determination, 589  
of lactic acid, 140  
tube, 126
- Concentration defined, 36, 701  
of Cu to pH, 41
- Condensations, 306  
of aldehyde in Udranski's foam test, 112  
of fatty acid, 515  
of glucids, 151
- Condensed milk, 642
- Condenser, Allihn, 285, 870  
dark-ground, 99, 100, 101  
Hopkins' reflux, 290  
reflux, 410
- Condiments, 432
- Conductance related to resistance, 45
- Conductivity, 44  
and hydron determinations  
not identical, 50  
apparatus, 46  
principle of method, 45  
vessel, Ostwald, 46  
water, 36
- Congdon, C. C., 545, 549
- Conglutin, 312
- Congo-red paper, 880
- Conjugated protids, 300, 316
- Conjugation, 133, 275, 277, 278, 465, 467, 531, 666  
chemical, 138
- Connective tissue, 302, 316
- Constant adsorption of starch for iodine, 142  
ionization, 40
- Constipation, 265, 277, 551, 745  
effect of albumose, 233
- Control in experimentation, 43
- Controller for gas, 126
- Convulsions, 508  
effect of magnesium, 565  
hypoglycemic, 502, 617
- Cooking, 146  
of eggs, 315  
use of salt, 219
- Coördinates, 845
- Coördination, 35
- Copper, 134, 473  
toxicity, 225
- Coprosterol, 474
- Cori, C. F., 508
- Cori, G. T., 370
- Corn, 533, 538, 581, 628, 642  
caloric value, 590  
phosphoric acid in, 418  
protid, 257  
nutritional deficiency, 311  
starch, 139  
grains, 143
- Corn-oil, 549
- Cornea, 302
- Corner, G. W., 653
- Corpora lutea, 653
- Corpuscles, blood, 376  
fragility test, 114
- Correlations, 623
- Correlative systems, 135
- Corrosive sublimate, 224
- Cotton, 189  
effect of iodine, 144
- Cottonseed oil, 549
- Covalece, 35
- Cow's milk, composition, 415  
thyroid, iodine content, 571
- Cowgill, G. R., 545, 919  
expression for vitamin B requirements, 918
- Craniotabes, 353, 564
- Crawford, B. L., 399, 586
- Cream, 551  
Babcock method, 406  
pigment, 379
- Creatin, 125, 255, 358, 359, 360, 401, 573, 607, 648, 668, 699, 717  
and creatinin, 363  
function, 719  
and muscle activity, 360  
Benedict's method, 725  
blood, 719, 817  
clinical significance, 719  
coefficient, 722  
converted to creatinin in autolysis, 718  
diabetes, 720  
excretion, pathologic variations, 723  
constancy, 718  
in women at sexual events, 720  
in young, 360

- Creatin muscle content at different ages, 722  
 normal excretion, 722  
 origin, 361  
 quantitative method, 723  
 test, 723  
   to creatinin, equilibria, 361  
 Creatin-creatinin equilibria, 364  
 Creatin-free diet in children, 721  
 Creatinin, 255, 361, 363, 401, 558, 667, 696, 717, 722  
   and creatin, 363  
   Benedict's method, 725  
   blood, 363, 805, 814  
     distribution between plasma and corpuscle, 816  
     effect of feeding creatinin, 815  
   calculation, 724  
   determination in presence of acetone, 726  
   distinguishing test, 362  
   feeding, 364  
   Folin's method, 723  
   from creatin in autolysis, 718  
   in blood, 797, 798  
   in cerebrospinal fluid, 400  
   in muscle, 363  
   in urine, 362  
   Jaffé's reaction, 814  
   physiologic variations, 722  
   picrate, 726, 815, 816  
   preformed, 723  
   quantitative method, 723  
   sex differences, 719  
   solution, Folin's, 887  
   standard, 724  
     solution of Benedict, 867  
   test, 361, 725  
   testis, 363  
   two-hour excretion, 718  
   variation in excretion, 364  
 Creatinin-zinc chlorid solution, 883  
 Creatinuria, 720  
   and age, sex, etc., 720  
   intermittent, 720, 722  
   pathologic, 722  
   postpartum pregnancy, etc., 720, 722  
 Creighton, H. J., 92  
 Creosote, 673  
 Cresol, 267  
   para, 267  
   red, 60, 891  
 Cretinism, 643, 662  
 Croton oil, 670  
 Crowell, 626  
 Crucible, alundum, 882  
   Gooch, 882  
 Cryoscopy, apparatus, 48  
   defined, 47  
 Cryptorhetic system, 135, 623  
 Crystal, liquid, 203  
   structure, 33  
   violet, formula, 109  
   x-ray structure of, 35  
 Crystalline lens, 302  
 Cubic centimeter and ml., 36  
 Cucumber, reaction, 579  
 Cuorin, 203  
 Cupric hydroxid, 154, 155  
   colloidal, 153  
   glucids, 150  
   sulphate, 153  
   as catalyst, 108  
   in swimming pools, 225  
   precipitant for protid, 225  
 Cuprous hydroxid, glucids, 150  
   oxid, 154  
   thiocyanate, 157  
 Curare, 395  
 Curd, 405, 449, 451  
 Curdling, milk, 133  
 Curves, gastric, 444  
 Cushing, 663  
 Cushny, 182, 789  
 Custard, caloric value, 591  
 Cutter, I. S., 236  
 Cyanhemoglobin, 389  
 Cyanic acid, 528, 695, 696  
   test, 690  
 Cyanid poisoning, treatment, 880  
   potassium, fatal doses, 880  
 Cyanosis, enterogenous, 380  
 Cyanuric acid, 689  
 Cyanuromonamid, 689  
 Cyclic anhydride linkage of amino-acids, 280  
 Cycloclastic, 253  
   power, 132  
   reaction, 270, 271  
 Cycloses, 212  
 Cylinder, gas, 126  
 Cylinders, volumetric, calibration, 88  
 Cystein, 246, 247  
   test, 249  
 Cystic goiter, 644  
 Cystin, 133, 246, 247, 248, 252, 301, 302, 305, 310, 311, 312, 315, 339, 465, 467, 496, 530, 531, 532, 533, 538, 667, 773  
   and taurin, 249  
   calculi, 248  
   content in albumin, 315  
   contributing to glucose, 249  
   crystal, 247  
   in urine, 787  
   Folin and Looney's test, 249  
   in albumin, 257  
   in alkali albuminate, 229  
   in globulin, 257  
   in normal urine, 248  
   metabolism, 248  
   reaction with uric acid reagent, 249  
   relation to cystein, 247  
   sulphur, 134  
 Cystin-nitrogen ratio, 533  
 Cystinuria, 248, 256, 467, 531  
 Cystitis, 673, 680  
 Cysts, biliary, 210  
   sebaceous, 345  
 Cytase, 492  
 Cytolysis, 466  
 Cytoplasm, 216  
   chlorin, 134  
   potassium, 134  
 Cytosin, 326, 327  
   picrate, 327  
   platinchlorid, 327  
 Cytotid, 331  
 d-, MEANING of, in isomeres, 174  
 δ- ( $\Delta$ , delta), 49  
 Dahlia root, 150  
 Dakin, 182, 250, 311  
 Dale, H. H., 460  
 Dare's hemoglobinometer, 383  
 Dark meat, 375  
 Dark-ground condenser, 99, 100, 101  
 Davenport, C. B., 572  
 Day urine, 671  
 Deaminases, 332, 454  
 Deamination, 242, 334, 454, 528, 530, 605, 674, 678, 697, 731, 818  
   in liver, 270  
   kinds of, 529  
 Decarboxylation, 256, 519, 531  
   in fat metabolism, 199  
 Decinormal element, 53  
 Deen, van, test, 392  
 DeFrates, 637, 638  
 Degermination of grain, 626  
 de Graaf, C. J. W., 750  
 Dehydration synthesis, 130  
 Delta ( $\Delta$ ), 49  
   amino-acid, 217  
   depression of freezing-point, 44, 49  
   of bile, 463  
   of blood, 463  
   of colloidal solutions, 118  
 Dementia præcox, Abderhalden reaction, 235  
 Demethylation, 267  
 Deming, H. G., 53, 92, 312  
 Denatured protid, 230  
 Denigès' test, 237  
 Denis, 177, 236, 413, 507, 685, 749, 750, 753, 795, 809, 811, 830  
 Dentine, 348  
 Depot fat, 198, 512  
 Depression of freezing-point, 44  
   method of Beckmann, 47  
   of colloidal substances, 118  
 Dercum, 652, 660, 661, 663  
 Derick, 334, 711, 712, 810  
 Derived protids, 338  
 Dermatograph pencil, 60  
 Dermatomyositis, 719  
 Dermis, chemistry of, 345  
 Desaturation of fats, 199, 513, 519  
 Descartes' coordinates, 845  
 Desiccator, direction for making, 89  
   Hempel, 89  
 Detoxication, 133, 137, 246, 253, 267, 275, 465, 532, 648, 719, 278  
   by glycine, 239  
   function of hormone system, 663  
   theory of Jaffé-Paton, 361  
 Dextrin, 129, 145, 188, 422, 423  
   absorption, 482  
   dextrinase, 423  
 Dextrose. See *Glucose*.  
 Diabetes alternans, 713  
   insipidus, 655, 658, 671, 672  
   mellitus, 150, 151, 157, 164, 166, 167, 171, 177, 210, 240, 243, 335, 361, 418, 489, 496, 499, 500, 515, 519, 520, 521, 531, 558, 560, 657, 658, 662, 666, 671, 673, 674, 681, 695, 703, 713, 719, 722, 755, 796, 805, 815, 830, 835  
   acidosis, 75  
   and insulin, 20  
   Banting, 20  
   Best, 20  
   Collip, 20  
   definition, 370  
   initiated by phlorhizin, 370  
   Joslin, 20  
   metabolism, 619  
 Di-acetic acid, 75, 520, 766, 910  
 Dialysis, 219  
   method of obtaining colloidal suspensions, 101  
   dialyzing membranes, 879  
   Diaminazol propionic acid, 271  
   Diamino-acids, 257, 300, 518  
   Di-amino-mono-carboxylic acid, 254  
 Diaphragm in neutrality regulation, 81  
 Diarrhea, 457, 470, 492, 671, 673  
   experimental, 489  
 Distillation, Kjeldahl, 285  
 Di-azo reaction, 269, 367, 368, 740, 745  
   Ehrlich, 744, 880  
 Diazobenzene sulphonic acid, 269, 366  
 Diazotized sulphanilic acid, 366

- Dibenzoylornithin, 532  
 Dicarboxylic acid, 152  
 Di-cystein, 246  
 Diethylbarbituric acid, 673  
 Diets, abnormal and normal, 580  
 and urinary glucids, 756  
 and urine reaction, 680  
 beriberi, 627  
 carnivorous and caloric value  
 of oxygen, 595  
 comparative value of glucid  
 and protid, 617  
 creatin excretion, 722  
 deficient, 581  
 effect on non-protid nitrogen  
 of blood, 795  
 on urea, 695  
 on urine volume, 670  
 on weight, 556  
 fat and glucid, 559  
 and urinary ammonia, 704  
 fruit, 680  
 high protid, 712, 720, 740, 745  
 and urea, 694  
 effect on blood uric acid,  
 810  
 purin, 810  
 low and high chlorin, 850  
 phosphorus, 568  
 producing B-avitaminosis, 853  
 protid, 675  
 purified, 538  
 purin, 735  
 purin-free, 708  
 salt-free, 561  
 Differential thermometer, 47  
 Diffusion, 50, 113, 114, 115  
 Di-gallic acid, 900  
 Digestion, 130, 149, 150, 188,  
 290, 421  
 affected by vitamin-B-defi-  
 ciency, 544  
 and iso-electric point, 106  
 effect of HCl, 428  
 duodenal, 456  
 fat, rôle of bile, 95  
 gastric, 428, 456  
 intestinal, 453, 456  
 mineral content, 575  
 mixture, 231  
 native protids, 233  
 nucleoprotid, 333  
 relative rate of foods, 533  
 starch, 146, 460  
 Digitonin cholesterid, 210  
 Diglucidase, 453, 461  
 Diglucids, 149, 452  
 absorption, 482  
 catharsis, 489, 510  
 chemistry, 183  
 distinctive test, 161  
 effect of acids, 164  
 laxative effect, 483  
 properties, 184  
 rate of absorption, 483  
 Diglutamylcystin, 340  
 Di-hydrazon, 159  
 Dihydroxyacetone, 169, 170, 506  
 Di-hydroxy-benzene, 776  
 Di-hydroxy-stearic acid, 197, 198  
 Di-iodo-tyrosin, 262, 572  
 Di-keto-piperazin, 280, 281  
 Dimethyl-amin, 363  
 Di-methyl-di-keto-piperazin, 280  
 Di - nitro - naphthol - sulphonic  
 acid, 254  
 Dinitrosalicylic acid, 786  
 protid precipitant, 228  
 Di-peptid, 279, 280  
 Diphteria, 744  
 Diplegia, 643  
 Direct calorimetry, 593, 594  
 vision spectroscopy, 380  
 Disaccharids, 149, 183  
 Disease, effect on metabolism, 618  
 Dishes, caloric values, 590, 591  
 Disodium urate, 708  
 Dispersion, 97  
 Dissociation, 35, 312  
 constant and hydriion concen-  
 tration, 67  
 curve, buffering, 67  
 percentage, 38  
 of acetic acid, 863  
 of ammonium hydroxid, 865  
 table, 43  
 relation to boiling-point, 44  
 to freezing-point, 44  
 Distillation apparatus, 771  
 Kjeldahl, 286  
 Distribution of foods, 131  
 Diuresis, 670  
 effected by methyl-purins, 328  
 Diuretics modifying salt excre-  
 tion, 562  
 Divided current, 45  
 Dixanthylurea, 691  
 D-light, 178  
 D-line, 163, 380  
 D/N ratio, 496  
 experimental, 859  
 Dodds, E. C., 64, 789, 841  
 Dodge, F. D., 873  
 phthalate method, 873  
 Dog, heat production, 606  
 Doisy, 653, 654, 663  
 Dominance, 345  
 Donnan, F. G., 103  
 equilibrium, 98, 99, 103, 117,  
 430, 485  
 Doremus-Hind ureameter, 694  
 Double layer, Helmholtz, 51  
 Dough, 309  
 Doughnut, caloric value, 591  
 Douglas bag, 596  
 Downs, 463, 480  
 Drainage, duodenal, 458  
 Draper, J. W., 127  
 Draper-Grotrius law, 127  
 Dreyer, 613  
 tables, 915  
 Drinking, effect on gastric di-  
 gestion, 425  
 water, average amount daily,  
 346  
 Drinkwater, 26  
 Drying, effect on vitamin, 551  
 food, effect on vitamin, 546  
 oil, 198  
 Dubin, 634, 780  
 DuBois, D., 622  
 DuBois, E. F., 23, 26, 346, 535,  
 607, 611, 622  
 chart for determining surface  
 area, 609  
 of percentage calories, 612  
 formula for body surface,  
 608  
 table, 915  
 Dudley, 508  
 Dulcitol, 150, 153  
 Dunbar, C. O., 412  
 extraction apparatus, 412  
 duNolly, surface tension ap-  
 paratus, 120  
 Dunstan, W. R., 764  
 test for glycerol, 764  
 Duodenal absorption, 482  
 bucket of Einhorn, 436  
 drainage, 458  
 intubation, 457  
 Duplets, 34  
 Duplex slide rule in pH calcu-  
 lations, 41  
 Dust as catalyzer, 97  
 Dwarf, cretin, 643  
 heat production, 606  
 Dyes for colorimetric determina-  
 tion of pH, 59  
 Dyne, 119  
 Dyspnea, 703  
 Dystrophy adiposogenitalis, 651  
 EAR wax, 345  
 "Earthy" gall-stones, 478  
 Eclampsia, 796, 831  
 Ectoderm, chemical substances,  
 343  
 Eddy, 250, 548, 549, 550, 566,  
 582, 858  
 Edema, 642, 644, 551, 558, 671,  
 835  
 metabolism, 620  
 Edestin, hemp-seed, iso-electric  
 point, 107, 909  
 Edie, 450  
 Efficiency of human mechanism,  
 584  
 Effort, effect on metabolism,  
 618  
 Egg, 405, 720  
 albumin, 448, 456, 532  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 as food, 416  
 calcium content, 563  
 caloric value, 416, 590  
 chemistry, 415  
 cooking, 315  
 use of salt, 219  
 fat pigment, 379  
 iron content, 417, 568  
 phosphorus content, 417  
 source of iron, 568  
 use of acid in cooking, 219  
 white, 533  
 as secretion, 313  
 chemical composition, 317  
 coagulation temperature,  
 222  
 critical point, 314  
 electro-negative, 108  
 electro-positive, 108, 109  
 iso-electric point, 107  
 test for, 102  
 yolk, 546  
 fatty acids, 207  
 lecithins in, 204, 207  
 pigment, 379  
 Egg-plant, caloric value, 591  
 Egyptian teeth, 642  
 Ehrlich, 269  
 diazo-reaction, 269, 740, 744  
 indol reagent, 880  
 Eijkman, 627  
 Einhorn, M., 436  
 Einhorn-Rehfuß stomach tube,  
 435, 437  
 Elaidic acid, 197  
 Elastin, 302, 303, 305  
 Electric furnace, 126  
 Electrical conductivity, 44  
 impulse in muscle action, 140  
 unit, 584  
 Electrochemical series, 53  
 Electrode, conductivity, 46  
 dipping, 57  
 hydrogen, 51  
 vessel for pH determinations,  
 57  
 Electrolyte, amphoteric, iso-elec-  
 tric point, 105  
 osmotic pressure, 118  
 Electrometer, capillary, 55  
 Electrons, number of external, in  
 elements, 31  
 Electrostatic distance, 98  
 Elements in body, 134  
 proportion of known, in human  
 body, 91  
 reasons for occurrence, in body,  
 134, 135  
 table, 31  
 Elevation of boiling-point, 44  
 E-line, 163



- Elliott, 623  
 Embden, 508  
 Emerson, R. W., 29, 342  
   bomb calorimeter, 586  
 E. M. F., 53  
 Emotional albuminuria, 748  
 Empyema, 712  
 Emulsification, 462  
 Emulsin, 178, 453  
 Enamel, teeth, 348  
 Encephalitis, 400  
 Endemic goiter, 644  
 Endive, 640  
 Endocrines, 623  
   and disease, 660  
   correlations, 643  
   detoxication, 663  
   general, 658  
   interrelation, 659  
   substitution, 662  
   summary, 662  
 Endocrines, 642  
 Endogenous metabolism, 364  
 Endothermic reaction, 603  
 -ene, suffix, 140  
 Energetics, French beginnings, 21  
   of nutrition, 583  
 Energy, 586  
   expenditure on glucid and lipid  
   diet, 560  
   forms in body, 583  
   heat production by lipids, 192  
   maximum in human body, 584  
   produced by glucids, 140  
   producers, glucids, 139  
 Enol, 151, 153, 154, 166, 500, 766  
 Enterogenous cyanosis, 380  
 Enterohepatic bile circulation,  
 463  
 Enterokinase, 234, 454, 455, 459  
 Entropy, 585  
 Enzyme, 93, 124, 149, 150, 168,  
 177, 178, 182, 187, 235, 243,  
 244, 245, 262, 332, 333, 422,  
 423, 426, 446, 447, 452, 453,  
 454, 460, 461, 492, 498, 499,  
 500, 505, 506, 691  
   action, 131  
   and iso-electric point, 106,  
   107  
   optimal temperature, 131  
   as colloidal states of matter, 95  
   Bradley's work, 135  
   effect on nucleoproteids, 333  
   gastric, 428  
   graphic summary, 123  
   intermediate compound, 107  
   intestinal, 453  
   optimal reaction, 909  
   optimum temperature, 131  
   oxidizing, 364  
   peptic, 445  
   products different from those  
   of acid hydrolysis, 274  
   specificity, 171, 236  
   tissue and alimentary, 457  
   effect on nucleoproteids, 333  
 Eosinophiles, 376  
 Epinephrin, 182, 263, 264, 344,  
 463, 491, 501, 508, 646, 647,  
 648, 658, 719, 741, 880  
   comparative effect, 270  
   formula, 136  
   synthetically produced, 137  
 Epiphysis, 651  
 Epithelium, effect of putrefac-  
 tive substances, 277  
   loss of nitrogen in, 552  
 Epsom salts, 464  
   action of, in catharsis, 117  
 Epstein, A. A., 821  
 Equation, Nernst's, 59  
 Equilibrium, Donnan's, 98, 99,  
 103  
 Equivalent, hydrogen, 37  
 Erepisin, 452, 454, 455, 456  
   optimal reaction, 909  
   tissue, 456  
 Erg, 584  
   definition, 119  
 Ergot, 266, 269, 270  
 Erlenmeyer flask, 285, 713  
 Erythritol, 153, 764  
 Erythrocyte, 376  
   osmotic pressure, 115  
   relative size to colloidal par-  
   ticles, 98  
 Erythrodextrin, 145  
 Erythrose, 152, 153  
 Esbach, 226, 753  
   albuminometer, 754  
   method, 753  
   of protid precipitation, 226  
   reagent, 880  
   test, 304  
 Esquimaux, 557  
 Ester, 193  
   linkage, 325  
 Esterase, 453  
 Et-, prefix, 378  
 Ethane, 910  
 Ethanol, 170, 193, 910  
   boiling-point, 410  
   diameter of molecule, 98  
   fermentation, 169  
   table of dilution, 880, 881  
 Ether, 149  
   ethyl, boiling-point, 410  
   sulphuric, 911  
 Ether-like linkage in protid, 279  
 Ethereal sulphate, 261, 276, 277,  
 577, 773  
   in urine, method, 781  
   urinary sulphate, 779  
 Ethyl-acetate, 193, 727  
 Ethyl-aceto-acetate, 863  
 Ethyl-carbamate, 901  
 Ethyl-ether, 911  
 Ethyl-hydrosulphid, 246  
 Ethyl-methyl-alpha-amino-pro-  
 pionic acid, 245  
 Ethyl-nitric-ester, 193  
 Ethylene, 910  
   linkage of glucid, 154  
   oxid, 177  
 Etioporphyrin, 379  
 Eudiometer, 293  
 Euglobulin, 218  
 Euler, H., 138, 190, 214  
 Eunuch, 652  
 Eunuchoidism, 651, 657  
 Euxanthic acid, 763  
 Euxanthone, 763  
 Evans, F. A., 827  
 Evans, H. McL., 548  
   vitamin, 548  
 Evaporated milk, 642  
 Evaporation, cooling effect, 347  
   loss of heat, 131  
 Evolution, inorganic, 32  
   organic, 27, 28  
 Ewald, K. A., 438  
   meal, 438  
 Excretion, 131, 334, 345, 494,  
 565, 566, 574, 575, 576, 605,  
 665, 711, 718, 720, 740  
   amins, 270  
   carbon, 684  
   creatin, 360  
   creatinin and muscle creatin,  
   364  
   ethereal sulphates, 277  
   hippuric acid, 730  
   inorganic salts, 132  
   nitrogenous, 683, 685  
   in ways other than urinary,  
   684  
   normal glucids in urine, 756  
   of acid in urine, 678, 679  
   radicles, 703  
 Excretion of end-products of  
   combustion, 132  
   of hydrogen, 684  
   of iron, 570  
   oxygen, 684  
   pigments, 377  
   purin, 365  
   total, 332  
   summary, 789  
   to maintain osmotic relations,  
   132  
   reaction, 132  
   water, 346  
 Exercise, 464, 508, 530, 695, 712,  
 722, 748, 796  
   affecting metabolism, 617  
   behavior of blood in, 81  
   retention of potassium, 565  
   Exogenous metabolism, 694  
 Exophthalmic goiter, 572, 644,  
 655, 695, 719, 722  
   metabolism, 619  
 Exothermic reaction, 602  
 Exponents, 37  
 Exton, W. G., 751  
 Exton-Roch test for urinary  
 protid, 751  
 Extract, meat, 722  
   effect on gastric secretion,  
   432  
 Extraction apparatus, Dunbar,  
 412  
 Extractives, 358  
   effect on gastric secretion, 431  
   excretion, 365  
 Extractor, Soxhlet, 407  
 Extracellular nucleotids, 335  
 Extraordinary ray, 180  
 Extravasations, pigment, 379  
 Exudate, 680, 695  
   resolution, 457  
 Eye, 302  
   humors, 400  
 FAHRENHEIT to Centigrade de-  
 grees, 904  
 Falk, 23, 124  
 Falta, 663  
 Faraday-Tyndall phenomenon,  
 100  
 Fasting, 431, 495, 501, 532, 562,  
 565, 576, 577, 614, 675, 678,  
 695, 703, 720, 795, 804  
   and potassium excretion, 565  
   creatin, 360  
   heat production during, 606  
   ketosis, 501  
   metabolism during, 615  
 Fat-soluble A vitamin, 541  
 "Fatal" ratio, 496  
 Fatigue, 370, 371, 501, 560  
 Fats, 126, 127, 129, 131, 192, 374,  
 453, 464, 633  
   absorbed in intestine, 483  
   absorption, 482  
   accumulation in eunuchoid-  
   ism, 651  
   acetyl number, 202  
   action of bile, 112  
   and aceto-acetic acid, 522  
   and basal metabolic rate,  
   615  
   and water, 375  
   and xerophthalmia, 630  
   average molecular weight of  
   body, 523  
   beta-oxidation, 199  
   body character, 199  
   bone, 353  
   breast, 199  
   butter, 200  
   iodin number, 200  
   caloric value, 603  
   of oxygen with, 595

- Fats, calories from, due to fructose, 616  
 combustion, 199  
 common melting-points, 197  
 composition of human, 199  
 content of tissues, 199  
 crystals, 517  
 decarboxylation, 199  
 defined, 193  
 depot, 198, 512  
 desaturation, 199, 513, 519  
 detection, 194  
 diet and urinary ammonia, 704  
   in beriberi, 627  
   in sprue, 640  
   retention of phosphorus, 567  
 differentiated from mineral oil, 194  
 digestion, rôle of glycin, 239  
 dust, 487, 510, 512, 516  
 effect of, on urine reaction, 677  
 emboli, 488  
 fate in stomach, 452  
 fecal, 132  
   from fructose, 167  
   from glucid, 513  
   from protid, 260, 516  
   gram-molecule equivalent of keto-acids, 523  
 heat value, 131  
 hog, 200  
 human, 513  
   melting-point, 200  
   pigment, 379  
 hydrogenation, 197  
 identification by absorption, 195  
   in Arctic diet, 557  
   infiltration, 513, 516  
   in foods, 405  
   in ice-cream, 420  
   in milk of man and animals, 415  
   in stool, 471  
   in urine, method of detection, 764  
 iodine absorption, 195  
 kidney, 199  
 metabolism, 198, 515, 521, 523, 615, 658  
 nature of iodine absorption, 196  
 neutral, 396  
   defined, 194  
 odd-carbon, 519  
 organ, 198  
 osmic acid test, 194  
 ox, 200  
 oxidation, 198, 199, 518  
   interfered with by inosite, 369  
 pathology, 557  
 phosphorized, 193  
 phosphorus in formation, 567  
 pigment, 379  
 rancidity, 198  
 Reichert-Meißl number, 201  
 relation to glucid in metabolism, 520  
   to water, 528  
   metabolism, 557  
 respiratory quotient, 604  
 sheep, 200  
 solvents, 209  
 specific dynamic action, 615  
 storage, 513  
 subcutaneous, 199  
 synthesis, 498  
 test by Scharlach-R, 194  
   by Sudan III, 194  
 tissue, 512  
 transportation, 475, 487, 512  
 unsaturated, 512  
 utility in floating kidney, 557  
 Wijs' method, 195  
 withdrawal, 528
- Fatty acid, 129, 130, 453, 530  
 absorption, 487  
 blood, 511  
   carried as lecithin, 204  
   from amino-acid, 260  
   in blood, 833  
   in liver fat, 513  
   in perspiration, 346  
   solubility, 485  
   unsaturated, 487  
     and cholesterol, 213  
 degeneration, 374, 513, 516, 517  
 Faecal pigment, 739  
 Feces, 132, 277, 417, 475, 563, 566, 567, 570, 576, 577, 578, 579, 605, 666, 667, 684, 740, 745  
   bulk, food contributing, 580  
   "clay-color," 471  
   color, 470  
   of retained, 472  
   enzymes, 457  
   fat, 132, 471  
   koprosterol, 210  
   odor of, in urine, 674  
   reaction, 579  
   water excretion, 346  
 Feeding, rectal, 492  
 Fehling, 155  
   method, 150, 154, 155  
   solution, 145, 153, 881  
   test, 744  
 Felsner, H. V., 755  
 Felton, 675  
 Fermentation, 149, 167, 168, 174, 380, 430, 444, 449, 497  
   alcoholic, 169  
   amino-acids in muscle, 217  
   by gas bacillus, 169  
   lactic acid, 168, 370  
   relation to glucid metabolism, 171  
   test for urinary sugar, 762  
   tube, 170  
 Feron, W. R., 698  
 Ferratin, 569  
 Ferric ammonium sulphate, 775  
   chlorid as crystalloid, 103  
   normal solution, 882  
   protid precipitant, 224  
   test for aceto-acetic acid, 766, 767  
   ferrocyanid, 491  
   hydroxid, 103  
   iron, test, 102  
   thiocyanate, 776  
 Ferrocyanid, absorption, 491  
   potassium, 157  
   protid precipitant, 226  
 Fertility, 549  
 Fetus, 577, 679  
   iron, 134  
   metabolism, 620  
 Fever, 671, 673, 695, 722, 723, 740, 743, 815  
   and salicylates, 227  
   creatin, 360  
   excretion during, 365  
 Fibrin, 319, 429, 451, 532  
   optimum reaction for digestion by trypsin, 909  
 Fibrin-carmin, 882  
 Filter, Berkefeld, 450  
   folding paper for, 706  
   hardened, 336  
 Filtering apparatus, 882  
   size of particles, 98  
 Filtration hypothesis of urine secretion, 667  
 Fine, 811  
 Finger-tip method for blood, 825  
 Finas' diet, 563  
 Fischer, E., 172, 329, 341, 709  
 Fischer, Hans, 470
- Fish, caloric value, 591  
 Fiske, C. H., 697, 783, 795  
   method for total urinary base, 783  
 Fistula, 674  
   gastric, 433  
 Fixed acids, 75  
 Flame test for urinary calculi, 713  
 Flask, Erlenmeyer, 285, 713  
   Kjeldahl, 283, 284, 285  
   volumetric, calibration, 87  
 Fletcher, 371, 374  
 Flint, H. T., 119  
 Flora, bacterial, determined by products from *Bacillus acidophilus*, 169  
   defined, 169  
 Florence type flask, 704  
 Flour, 309  
   calcium content, 563  
   highly milled, 581  
   of whole wheat, 568  
   reaction, 579  
   wheat, 312  
   iron content, 568  
 Fluids, reaction, 909  
 Fluorid in blood chemistry, 65  
 Fluorin, 127, 134, 348  
   as preservative, 348  
   source of diseased teeth, 348  
 Fluoroscope, 425  
 Fluting filter, 706  
 Flutter-valve, 596  
 Foam test, 111, 470  
   for bile, Udranski's, involving Gibbs' principle, 111  
 Fog, water-vapor in, 594  
 Folded filter, 706  
 Folin, 19, 65, 167, 236, 334, 363, 364, 375, 413, 488, 530, 534, 535, 546, 665, 671, 676, 694, 695, 703, 704, 708, 711, 712, 717, 722, 725, 731, 749, 750, 756, 757, 773, 789, 795, 797, 804, 809, 810, 811, 812, 814, 816, 841  
   acid mixture, 888  
   allantoin method, 737  
   amino-acid reagents, 884  
   bichromate solution, 889  
   blood sugar method, 824, 827  
     tube, 824  
     urea method, 806  
   buffer solution, 887  
   creatinin solution, 887  
   cupric sulphate solution for lactose, 887  
   cyanid solution, 884  
   digestion tube, 793  
   Kjeldahl digesting shelf, 284  
   distilling apparatus, 286  
   lithium oxalate, 884  
   sulphate solution, 884  
   macro-method for urea in urine, 702  
   method for amino-acids in urine, 731  
   for blood amino-acids, 819  
   non-protid nitrogen, 798  
   for creatinin, 723  
   for hippuric acid, 727  
   for normal glucids in urine, 757  
   for urinary acidity, 676, 677  
   molybdenum reaction for glucids, 157  
   Nessler solution, 886  
   Ostwald pipettes, 72  
   oxalate for anticoagulant, 65  
   receiving tube for urea, 759  
   special pipette, 61  
   standard creatinin solution, 883



- Folin standard nitrogen solution, 887  
 protid solution, 889  
 sulphuric acid solution, two-thirds normal, 884  
 test, 305  
 total nitrogen method, 686  
 turbidimetric method for acetone, 769  
 urease solution, 887  
 uric acid in blood method, 813  
   formaldehyde solution, 884  
   in urine method by centrifuge, 715  
   reagent, 882, 888  
   test, 710  
 urinary urea method, 698  
 Folin and Denis' method for urinary protid, 753  
   phenol reagent, 882  
   uric acid reagent, 882  
 and Looney's quantitative method for determination of tryptophan, 275  
   for tyrosin, 267  
   test for cystin, 249  
 Folin-McEllroy lactose reagent, 883  
   sugar reagent, 883  
   test, 760  
 Folin-Shaffer-Marriott method for betahydroxybutyric acid, 770  
 Folin-Trimble reagent, 882  
 Folin-Wu blood methods, 798  
   pipette, 824  
   sugar solutions, 888  
   silver lactate solution, 883  
   sugar method, 757  
 Fondant, 167  
 Foods, 127  
   absorption, 481  
   summary, 493  
   accessory substances, 132  
   adulteration, 560  
   and urine reaction, 677  
   artificial, 539  
   synthesis, 529  
   calories, 587, 589  
   canned, 641  
   characteristic composition, 405  
   chemistry, 404  
   content iron, 568  
   deficient, 538  
   in amino-acids, 533  
   definition, 404  
   diabetic, 418  
   digestion, 421  
   effect of beverages taken with, on metabolism, 618  
   freezing, 641  
   fundamental chemical structure, 129  
   iodin content, 645, 646  
   isodynamic, 592  
   value, 559  
   ketogenic value, 524  
   mineral substances, 539  
   mode of formation, 130  
   of low salt content, 561  
   pigments, 739  
   preservation, effect on vitamin, 546  
   preservatives, 227  
   fluorin, 348  
   purin, 534  
   purpose of cooking, 146  
   rate of digestion, 533  
   repair, 131  
   sources, 127  
   sterilized, 641  
   substances, colloidal nature, 101  
 Foods, sulphate, 773  
   surveys, 861  
   synthesis, 128  
   tables, where obtainable, 524  
   uses, 131  
   vitamin content, 919  
   water in solid, 346  
 Formaldehyde, 151, 244, 680, 910  
   condensation, 128  
   effect on amino-compounds, 287  
   synthesized into glycine, 239  
 Formaldehyde-uric acid, 812  
 Formalin, 889  
 Formamid, 911  
 Formic acid, 325, 520, 910  
   in butter fat, 200  
 Formol titration, 287, 707, 734  
 Formulae, organic, 910  
 Fosse, R., method for xanthodiol, 691  
 Foster, D. L., 371, 373  
 Foster, M., 26  
 Fouchet, H., 471  
   test, 471  
 Four-carbon acids, 515  
 Fox, F. W., 474  
 Fraenkel, 190  
 Fragility test, 114  
 Frankforter, C. J., 704  
 Franklin, E. C., 36  
 Fraunhofer lines, 380  
 Freckles, pigment, 344  
 Free hydrochloric acid, 428  
 Freezing foods, 641  
   point and ionization, 44  
   apparatus, 48  
   method of Beckmann, 47  
 Fremery, M., 714  
 French, influence on biochemistry, 21, 22  
 Freundlich's adsorption equation, 109  
 Fridericia apparatus for acidosis, 74  
 Frog, pithing, 371  
 Fröhlich, 640, 655  
   syndrome, 655, 657, 661  
 Fructosan, 150, 166  
 Fructosazone, 159  
 Fructose, 148, 150, 159, 166, 174, 453, 495, 522, 756  
   absorption, 166  
   converted to fat, 167  
   to glucose, 166, 500  
   in diabetes, 166  
   in human tissues, 167  
   rate of absorption, 486  
   specific dynamic action, 616  
   structural formula in diglucids, 184  
   utilization, 166  
 Fructoside, 166  
 Fructosuria, 760  
 Fruit, 640  
   acid, 680  
   reaction, 579  
   salt content, 561  
   sugar, 139, 148, 166  
 Fuchsin-sulphurous acid solution, 889  
 Fuerth, von, 494, 535  
 Fuller's earth, 757  
 Fuming nitric acid, 895  
 Functional test, kidney, 729  
   liver, 729  
 Functions, primary vital, 125  
   two fundamental, 536  
 Fundus, stomach, 424  
 Funk, 545, 549, 627, 634  
   vitamin, 548  
 Funnel, physiologic, 881  
 Furfural, 162, 369  
   formula, 111, 162  
   in Udranski's test, 111  
 Furfural, methyl-hydroxy, 165  
   quantitative, 163  
 Furfural-levulinic acid, 165  
 Furnace, electric, 126  
 Fusel oil, 245  
 Fusion mixture, 889  
 GALACTOGOGUE, 414  
 Galactolipids, 203, 396, 397  
 Galactonic acid, 152  
 Galactosan, 149, 150, 188, 204  
 Galactose, 148, 149, 150, 152, 153, 173, 185, 203, 204, 207, 453, 495, 504, 508, 509, 510, 756  
   behavior, 495  
   from glucose, 508  
   from glycogen via glucose, 204  
   metabolism, 587  
   rate of absorption, 486  
   relative reducing power, 509  
   structural formula in diglucids, 184  
   test, 761  
   tolerance, 495  
 Galactosid, 149, 150, 508  
 Galactosuria, 500, 504, 509, 756  
 Galacturonic acid, 152  
 Gall-bladder, function, 464  
 Gall-stone, 131, 193, 210, 418, 470, 473, 474, 475  
   analysis, 478  
   effect of protid, 478  
   types, 476  
 Galvanometer, 45, 55  
 Gamgee, 689  
 Gamma-amino-acid, 217, 253  
 Gamma-hydroxy-alpha-pyrrolidinedicarboxylic acid, 272  
 Gamma-lactone, 176  
 Gamma sugar, 177, 507  
   medical interest, 177  
 Gangrene, 270  
 Gardner, J. A., 214, 474  
 Garrison, 26, 628  
 Garrod, 190, 248, 535  
 Gas absorption apparatus, Hempel, 292  
   analysis, 598  
   controller, 126  
   laws, 296  
   regulator, 56  
   relation of gram-molecule to volume, 604  
   standard volume, 73  
 Gas-bacillus causing "salt-rising bread," 169  
 Gas-pressure unit, 584  
 Gases, absorption in alimentary tract, 482  
   in perspiration, 347  
 Gasometric amino-nitrogen method for blood, 818  
   method for amino-acids, 291  
 Gastric acidity, 442, 675, 676  
   free, 440, 441  
   normal, 431  
   origin, 428  
   quantitative determination, 442, 443  
   expression of Schuetz for peptic activity, 446  
   total, 440  
 analysis, 373  
   collection of samples, 433, 434  
   fractional, 435  
   contents, 470  
   analysis, 439  
   curves, 443  
   digestion, 428  
   hydrochloric acid, 675  
   hyperacidity, 460  
   juice, 576

- Gastric juice, adult, reaction, 909  
 continuous secretion, 431  
 infants', reaction, 909  
 reaction, 39, 579  
 lipase, 452  
 motility, 439, 447, 457  
 peptic activity, 445, 446  
 reaction, 425  
 residuum, 431  
 secretion, antiseptic action, 430  
 Beaumont's description, 434  
 effect of low salt diet, 562  
 total, 447  
 variations, 431, 432  
 ulcers, relation to acidity, 433  
 Gastrin, 432, 459  
 Gastritis, 743  
 Gattermann, tables for gas analysis, 296  
 Gauthier method for synthesis of aceto-acetic ester, 863  
 Gelatin, 249, 272, 274, 302, 304, 348, 448, 532, 533, 581  
 absence of tyrosin, 262  
 amino-acid content, 305  
 as ion, 103  
 colloidal, 103  
 distinguishing from hydrolysis products, 304  
 glycin from, 239  
 in acid medium, 103  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 source, 239  
 test, 304  
 unequal distribution of charges on colloidal, 103  
 Gentian, 432  
 Gentisic acid, 264  
 Gephart, 346, 420, 622  
 Gerhardt's test for aceto-acetic acid, 766  
 Germ-layers, 342  
 Gettler, 563, 568, 795  
 Gibbs, J. Willard, 110  
 principle, 110  
 Gibson, R. B., 569  
 Gies, 214, 281, 348, 396, 522  
 biochemist, 22  
 biuret reagent, 889  
 test, 281  
 Giessen, first chemical laboratory, 22  
 Gigantism, 656, 657  
 Girasole. See *Artichoke*.  
 Gittleman, I. F., 825  
 Glacial acetic acid, definition, 113  
 Gland, 530  
 magnesium in, 134  
 meat in scurvy, 641  
 substances, 712  
 thyroid, 133  
 Glass as supercooled liquid, 49  
 discovery of, 194  
 effect on ultraviolet light, 128  
 Glassware, standardization, 84  
 Glass-wool, directions for handling, 335  
 Glauber, bone-oil, 354  
 Gliadin, 310, 311, 312, 538  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 Globin, 301, 376, 469  
 as antigen, 321  
 histidin, 269  
 Globulin, 218, 220, 257, 300, 313, 315, 399, 532, 533, 747  
 -albumin ratio, 748  
 coagulation, 219  
 by alcohol, 219  
 crystallization, 221  
 dialysis, 219  
 egg, crystalline, 314  
 iso-electric point, 107  
 eu-, 218  
 Globulin, increase in blood, 220  
 in spinal fluid, 220  
 in urine, 748  
 myosin as, 230  
 plant, 300, 312  
 practical applications, 219  
 precipitated by basic lead acetate, 224  
 precipitation by alcohol, 219  
 presence of glycin, 239  
 pseudo-, 218  
 serum, iso-electric point, 107  
 solubility, 314  
 test, distinguishing metaprotid, 229  
 transformed by ultraviolet light into albumin, 239  
 ultraviolet light, 221  
 Globulose, 339  
 Glomerulus, effect of phlorhizin, 370  
 Glucid-free diet, 558  
 Glucidas, 453  
 pancreatic, 461  
 Glucids, 127, 131, 151, 422, 464  
 action on metal hydroxids, 150  
 and lipid in metabolism, 616  
 in nutrition, 559  
 calories, 612  
 carbon atoms, 148  
 chemical characteristics, 150  
 definition, 140  
 classification, 147, 148  
 combined with protid, 142  
 defined, 139  
 dextrorotatory, 171  
 diet, caloric value of oxygen, 595  
 efficiency, 617  
 in beriberi, 627  
 effect of acid, 151, 161, 162  
 of alkali, 150, 151, 154  
 energy, 141  
 factor in nutrition, 558  
 forming fat, 498  
 functions, 142, 150  
 furnished on glucid-free diet, 558  
 general test, 165  
 graphic summary, 190, 559  
 heat value, 192  
 hydrated, 154  
 hydroxyls in, 148  
 in cartilage, 142  
 in chromatin, 142  
 in heredity substratum, 142  
 in medullary sheaths, 142  
 in normal urine, determination, 757  
 in nucleic acid, 325  
 in protid, 317  
 in sex substratum, 142  
 intermediate substances in metabolism, 666  
 intramolecular arrangements, 151  
 in urine, 755  
 lability, 150  
 metabolism, 374, 719  
 products, 665  
 normal, of urine, 497  
 nucleoprotid, 756  
 oxidation, 149, 150, 153  
 products, 151, 152  
 phosphoric acid, 142  
 place of absorption, 486  
 polymerization, 150  
 producing fat, 513  
 protid-sparing action, 530, 555  
 reduction, 149  
 in body, 514  
 products, 153  
 tests, 153, 336  
 relation to fat in metabolism, 520  
 Glucids, salt, 154  
 specific dynamic action, 553  
 structural uses, 141  
 synthesis, 558  
 utilization, 494  
 difference from yeast fermentation, 497  
 summary, 510  
 water in digested, 346  
 Glucitides, 129, 130  
 fate, 494  
 Gluco-fructoside, 166  
 Glucokin, 623  
 Glucolysis, 820  
 Gluconic acid, 149, 507, 912  
 Glucoprotid, 165, 300, 348, 400, 462, 468, 473  
 Glucosamin, 349  
 Glucosan, 149  
 Glucosazone, 147, 159, 761  
 Glucose, 129-131, 138, 145, 146, 148-151, 153, 158, 170, 172, 173, 180, 243, 245, 249, 252, 258, 259, 272, 324, 330, 353, 373, 374, 378, 399, 401, 447, 453, 460, 495, 500, 506, 520, 521, 522, 524, 555, 587, 603, 681, 726, 755, 757, 764, 767, 820  
 absorption, 486, 492  
 acid copper test, 160  
 active, 507  
 aldehydic, 507  
 alpha, rotation, 175, 176  
 amount capable of ingestion, 755  
 from amino-acids, 496  
 and fat, 508  
 anhydric ring, 174  
 anhydro, crystal, 148  
 Barfoed's test, 160  
 Benedict's standard solution, 868  
 work, 19  
 beta, rotation, 175, 176  
 blood, 502, 820  
 Benedict's method, 158  
 variations, 504  
 caloric value, 495  
 detection in urine, 760  
 distinguished from levulose, 164  
 equivalent of antiketogenic substance, 524  
 fate, 507  
 forms starch, 129  
 from alanin, 242  
 from fructose, 166  
 from glycogen, 185  
 from leucin, 240  
 from serin, 246  
 gamma, 507  
 heat value, 192, 193  
 hydrated, crystal, 148  
 hydrolyzed from sucrose, 44  
 in blood, 495  
 in candy, 419  
 in ice-cream, 420  
 injection, rate of, and assimilation, 756  
 origin from aldehyde, 128  
 oxidation, 520  
 in presence of keto-acid and peroxid, 523  
 oxydic, 507  
 paradoxical law, 755  
 phosphoric ester, 165  
 polymerization, 508  
 producing galactose, 508  
 relation of fermentation to metabolism, 170  
 relative reducing power, 509  
 ring form, 175  
 rotation, 175  
 specific dynamic action, 499

- Glucose, structural formula in diglucids, 184  
 test, distinguishing from lactose, 160  
 threshold, 757  
 tolerance test, 889  
 utilization, 498, 508  
 Glucosidase, alpha, 453  
 beta, 453  
 Glucosides, 149, 183, 190, 317, 325, 453, 901  
 as antigens, 321  
 Glucuronate, 267, 666, 763  
 Glucuronic acid, 133, 138, 149, 267, 275, 278, 349, 507, 763, 912  
 preparation, 763  
 Glutamic acid, 240, 249, 252, 272, 301, 305, 310, 311, 315, 339, 454, 496, 518, 553  
 in albumin, 257  
 in globulin, 257  
 lactim, 253  
 Glutamin, 253  
 Glutaminic acid. *See* *Glutamic acid*.  
 Glutamylcystein, 340  
 Glutaric acid, 250, 252, 259  
 Glutathion, 246, 249, 252, 339, 340, 454, 500, 569  
 as enzyme, 94  
 Glutelins, 300, 312, 313.  
 Gluten, 311, 538  
 Glutenin, 312  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 Glyceric acid, 152  
 aldehyde, 141, 169, 170, 506, 514  
 Glycerids. *See* *Fats*.  
 Glycerin. *See* *Glycerol*.  
 Glycerol, 129, 130, 153, 170, 193, 207, 374, 397, 453, 495, 496, 522, 912  
 absorption, 487  
 antiketogenic value, 524  
 borin, 764  
 extract of pig's stomach for pepsin, 231  
 in butter fat, 200  
 test, 764  
 acrolein, 194  
 Glycerophosphoric acid, 207  
 Glycerose, 152, 153  
 Glycin, 216, 217, 238, 241, 242, 301, 305, 311, 315, 465, 485, 496, 518, 528, 530, 532, 605, 726, 727, 731, 910  
 absence from albumin, 315  
 and cholic acid, 239  
 buffer solution, 875  
 crystal, 239  
 from alanin, etc., 239  
 in detoxication, 239  
 in fat digestion, 239  
 in urine, 240  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 occurrence, 239, 257  
 optical relations, 240  
 photographic, distinction from amino-acetic acid, 871  
 S. D. A., 553  
 synthesis, 239, 533  
 in body, 239  
 Glycin-NaCl solution, 871  
 Glycinin, 312  
 Glycocholic acid, 239, 464, 465, 466  
 Glycocoll, 216, 238. *See* *Glycin*.  
 Glycogen, 131, 139, 142, 148, 167, 185, 369, 370, 373, 374, 463, 494, 495, 501, 504, 505, 508  
 and pentose, 497  
 caloric value, 495  
 from alanin, 244  
 Glycogen from galactose, 204  
 from lipid, 496  
 from protid, 496  
 hydrolysis, 186, 187  
 in liver and muscle, 505  
 iodine test, 186  
 preparation, 185, 186  
 stored after insulin, 508  
 Glycogenase, 369, 370, 498, 499, 501, 505  
 and growth, 506  
 effect of reagents, 506  
 Glycogenesis, 498  
 Glycogenic function, 498  
 Glycogenolysis, 501, 502  
 Glycogenolytic function, 498  
 Glycol, 912  
 Glycol-aldehyde, 152, 912  
 Glycollic acid, 152, 912  
 Glycolysis, 820  
 Glycopriva, 577, 719  
 Glycoprotids, 300  
 Glycosuria, alimentary, 760  
 phlorizin, 370  
 renal, 370  
 Glycuresis, 504, 756  
 Glyoxal, 158, 912  
 Glyoxalase, 244  
 Glyoxalic acid, 152, 307, 520, 737, 912  
 reagent, 890  
 Gmelin's test, 472  
 Goat's milk, composition, 415  
 Godden, 567  
 Goiter, exophthalmic, 361, 719, 722  
 metabolism, 618, 619  
 Gold, diameter of suspension, 98  
 surface phenomena of particles, 97  
 Goldberger, 628  
 Goldschmidt, 493, 576  
 Gonadal diseases, 650  
 Gonads, 660  
 Gooch crucible, 882  
 Gorgoic acid, 262, 572  
 Gortner, 262, 344  
 Gout, 375, 709, 712, 713, 736, 797, 810, 811  
 de Graaff, C. J. W., 750  
 Graefe, von, 620  
 Graham, T., 101  
 Guaiaconic acid, 391, 393  
 oxygen receptor, 113  
 Guaiacon blue, 113  
 test for blood, 392  
 Guanase, 332, 333  
 Grains, 581  
 milling, 551  
 to grams, 683  
 Gram, H. C., 835  
 Grams to grains, 683  
 to ounces, 683  
 Granulose, 146  
 Grape-fruit, 546  
 caloric value, 591  
 reaction, 579  
 Grape-juice, reaction, 579  
 Grape-sugar, 139, 148  
 Gravel (urate), 713  
 Graves, R. J., 645  
 disease, 645  
 Gravity, 584  
 table, 908  
 Greens, 532, 640  
 Greenwald, 23, 574, 582, 681, 756, 785, 801, 814, 815, 834  
 total urinary base method, 785  
 Gregory, 21  
 Grenfell, 624  
 Grijns, 627  
 Gristle, 349  
 glucid component, 142  
 Gritterink, A., 750  
 Gross, A., 834  
 Gross, J., 756  
 Gross, M., 436  
 method for peptic activity, 445  
 Grotius, C. J. T., 127  
 Growth, 258, 533, 537, 539, 544, 548, 551  
 and phosphorus, 567  
 Growth-promoting vitamin, 541  
 water-soluble vitamin, 543  
 Guaiacon, 391, 393, 764  
 Guaiaconic acid solution, 889  
 Guanase, 534  
 Guanidin, 255, 256, 359, 361, 395, 696, 719  
 Guanin, 333, 335, 364, 534, 708  
 formula, 329  
 Guaninotid, 331  
 Guano, 329  
 Guanilic acid, 335, 509  
 Guenzberg's reagent, 441, 442  
 solution, 889  
 Gulose, 173  
 Gum, 149  
 Gum-arabic, 150  
 Gum-guaiacon, 113  
 Gum-mastic, 150  
 HAESER'S coefficient, 683  
 Haggard, 584  
 Hair, 302, 530  
 calcium, 343  
 cystein, 247  
 cystin content, 134  
 excretory function, 343  
 gray, 343  
 inorganic substances and erectile function, 343  
 loss of, 644  
 pigments, 343, 344  
 red, 343  
 sulphur, 134  
 content, 302  
 Haldane, J. S., 384, 596  
 Half-cell, 57  
 Ham, caloric value, 591  
 Hammarsten, 229, 402  
 Hammett, 351, 352, 718  
 Hanke, 269, 368, 745  
 Hanzlik, 83, 227, 708, 711  
 Harden, 190  
 Hardened filter, 336  
 Harris, 566, 915  
 Laboratories, casein supply, 105  
 tweed, cholesterol esters in, 210  
 Harris-Benedict equation for estimating body surface, 608  
 tables, 915  
 Hartmann, A. F., 820  
 Hash, caloric value, 591  
 Hastings, A. B., 680  
 Hawk, 447, 480, 708, 711, 789  
 Hay, M., 111  
 test, 467  
 Headache medicines, 379  
 Healing and blood phosphorus, 838  
 Heart, 505, 551, 730, 742  
 action and calcium, 564  
 disease, 671  
 effect of methyl-purins, 327  
 of potassium, 565  
 inosine in, 212  
 magnesium in, 134, 565  
 tissue, cuorin in, 203  
 Heat coagulation, 219  
 and iso-electric point, 314  
 energy, 140  
 from oxidation within and without body, 586  
 furnished by food, 131  
 lost through evaporation, 131  
 excretion, 605

- Heat of decomposition, 603  
 produced by lipids, 192  
 production and muscle work, 617  
   average, standard, 607  
   in different animals, 606  
   in young, 607  
 rigor, 371  
 test, 750  
 value of foods, 587
- Heaton, 549
- Heavy metals, absence from  
 body, 134  
 precipitation of protid, 223
- Hedin, 229
- Heft, 522, 566, 838
- Heidelberg, 319
- Height-weight formula, DuBois, 608  
 of Harris and Benedict, 608  
 graphic representation of DuBois, 609
- Heineman, 414, 415, 420
- Heinze, 689
- Heller, A. L. G., 751  
 test, 102, 229, 751
- Helmholtz double layer, 51
- Hematin, 320, 376, 469  
 hydrochlorid, 377
- Hematinic acid, 471
- Hematogen, 569
- Hematogenous jaundice, 466
- Hematoidin, 379, 743
- Hematopoietic organs, 354, 376
- Hematoporphyrin, 377, 378, 469, 673, 743  
 test, 743
- Hemibilirubin, 471
- Hemicellulose, 149
- Hemin, 377  
 crystals, 390  
 test, 377
- Hemoglobin, 253, 272, 273, 318, 376, 379, 380, 393, 469, 532, 568, 569, 739  
 and chlorophyll, 127  
 as peroxidase, 113  
 attempts to prevent destruction by adsorption, 110  
 benzidin test, 393  
 buffer action, 78  
 decomposition, 320  
 furnishing alkali, 78  
 histidin in, 269  
 in urine, 744  
 manometric method, 386  
 preparation, 318  
   simplified method, 320  
 products, 378  
 quantitative methods, 382  
   of Van Slyke, 384  
 reaction, 69  
 spectroscopic test, 381  
 test, 377, 391, 392, 394
- Hemoglobinometer, Dare, 383  
 Talqvist, 383
- Hemolysis, 115, 466, 798  
 cholesterol in, 511
- Hemolytic jaundice, 741
- Hemophilia, 223
- Hemopoietic organ, 272
- Hemoporphyrin, 377, 469  
 structural formula, 378
- Hemorrhage, 532, 570  
 increase of iron in blood following, 568, 569  
 metabolism, 620
- Hemosiderin, 379, 469
- Hempel, 292  
 form desiccator, 89  
 gas absorption pipette, 293  
 pipette, 292
- Hemp-seed oil, 549
- Henderson, L. J., 92
- Henderson, Y., 584, 596  
 gas analysis apparatus, 598
- Henriques, V., 733
- Henriques-Sorensen formol titration, 287
- Hepatic circulation, 463  
 efficiency test, 164
- Heptylic alcohol solution, 889
- Herbivores, 269  
 base excretion, 574  
 toxic substances in diet, 138
- Hereditary transmission, lecithin in, 204
- Heredity, chromatin related to, 142  
 nucleoprotid in, 322
- Herring, 171
- Herzmann, A. B., 448
- Hess, 548, 632, 635, 639  
 law, 586
- Heteralbumose, 232, 339
- Heterocyclic amino-acids, 268  
 ring, 254, 268
- Hewitt, J. A., 507
- Hexamethylenetetramin, 83, 680
- Hex-hydroxy-hydro-benzene, 368
- Hexone-bases, 258
- Hexose, 152, 317, 325  
 interchangeability, 500
- Hexosephosphate, 165, 170, 171, 353, 497, 498, 507, 521, 837
- Hibbard, 780
- Hibbert, E., 786
- High protid diet, 720
- Hill, 371, 373, 374, 402, 584  
 theory of muscle action, 140
- Hiller, A., 820
- Hilus, 145, 146
- Hinkel, 161
- Hippuric acid, 138, 532, 533, 666, 668, 726  
 clinical interest, 729  
 Folin's method, 727
- Kingbury and Swanson's method, 729  
 test, 727
- Hiser, 627
- Histamin, 266, 269, 270, 460  
 comparative effect, 270
- Histidin, 254, 258, 266, 268, 300, 301, 305, 311, 315, 317, 328, 367, 533, 745  
 and urea, 268  
 formula, 271  
 hydrochlorid, 259  
 in albumin, 257  
 in globulin, 257  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 metabolism, 271  
 method of separation, 259  
 percentage in protids, 269  
 putrefaction, 270
- Histon, 299, 301, 322, 376, 518, 534  
 not antigen, 321
- Hitchcock, E. H., 812
- Hoepple-Seyler's Zeitschrift, 25
- Hoff, van't, 171
- Hoffmann, 236  
 test for tyrosin, 236
- Hofmeister, 215
- Holst and Fröhlich, 640
- Holstein milk, 415
- Homocyclic acids, 259
- Homogentisic acid, 264, 265, 532, 673, 744  
 test, 744
- Hoofs, 348
- Hopkins, 216, 254, 307, 371, 374, 444, 539  
 lactic acid reagent, 890  
 test, 372  
 reflux condenser, 290
- Hopkins-Cole glyoxalic reagent, 890
- Hopkins-Cole mercuric sulphate  
 —H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> reagent, 267  
 reaction, 307  
 tyrosin reagent, 890
- Hopstock, 26
- Hordein, 310, 311
- Hormone, 463  
 mixtures, 651  
 ovarian, 651-655  
 pancreatic, 370  
 system, 135
- Horn, 343
- Hoskins, 623, 659, 663
- Host, 756
- Howard, C. P., 569
- Howe, P. M., 220
- Howell, W. H., 223  
 clotting time, 223
- Howland, J., 635
- Hubbard, 23, 675, 765, 840
- Hudson, 174, 176
- Huldschinsky, 634
- Human being, heat production, 606  
 fat, 199  
 milk, composition, 415
- Hume, H. V., 177, 507
- Humor, aqueous, reaction, 579  
 vitreous, reaction, 579
- Humors of eye, 400
- Hunger secretion, gastric, 431
- Hunt, L., 553
- Hunter, A., 360, 402, 711, 736
- Hunter, G., 368
- Huppert, H., 471  
 test, 471, 472
- Husband, A. D., 567
- Hussey, L. D. A., 641
- Huxley, 17, 21, 215
- Hyalomucoid, 400
- Hydrazin, 158, 505
- Hydrazon, 158, 159
- Hydrinden, 235
- Hydriodic acid in starch-iodin adsorption, 143
- Hydriod, 422. Same as *Hydrogen-ion*.  
 concentration, 50  
 and dissociation, 67  
 by voltmeter method, 54  
 converted to pH, 41  
 effect on sugar hydrolysis, 43  
 in body fluids, 50  
 of blood, maintained, 67  
 of gastric secretion, 428  
 determination and titration, 83  
 by potentiometer, 56  
 when used, 83
- Hydrobilirubin, 470
- Hydrocarbons, 910  
 not foods, 127
- Hydrocele, 475
- Hydrochinon, 776, 838
- Hydrochloric acid, 428, 576, 675, 890  
 and boric acid compared, 42  
 antiseptic action, 430  
 buffer solution, 875  
 free, 428  
 gastric, 562  
   function, 429  
   origin, 428, 429  
 ionization by cryoscopy, 50  
 normal secretion, 431  
 solution, 890
- Percentage dissociation, 43, 890  
 ionization, 38
- pH of solutions, 909  
 place of origin, 432, 433  
 test, 441



- Hydrocyanic acid, 190  
dissociation, 43  
Hydroferrocyanid, 226  
Hydrogen, 134  
acceptor, 332  
and hydroxyl ions, 39  
atomic composition, 30  
cyanic, 190  
cyanid, dissociation, 43  
electrode, 51  
entropy, 585  
equivalent, 37  
excretion, 684  
iodid, necessity in starch-iodin  
adsorption, 143  
ionic, 574  
oxidation, 602  
peroxid, catalysis by platinum  
sol, 96  
commercial, 113  
Merck's "Superoxyl," 392  
reaction involving nascent  
oxygen, 113  
replaceable, 37  
responsible for acidity, 36  
sulphid, 149, 380, 674  
preparation, 890  
Hydrogenation, 513, 551  
of fats and oils, 197  
Hydrogen-ion, 36-44, 50-52  
and amin-formation, 265  
concentration, gastric, 442  
of urine, Felton's method, 675  
Hydrolysis, 149, 529  
acid, effect on food, 539  
of sucrose, effect of hydron  
concentration, 43  
Hydrometer, 682  
Hydrophilic colloidal solutions,  
122  
Hydrophobic colloidal solutions,  
122  
Hydrosulphid, 246  
Hydrosynthesis, 280  
Hydroxy-acid, 75  
in protid hydrolysis, 245  
Hydroxy-amino-acid, 529  
Hydroxymethylfurfural, 308  
Hydroxy-methyl-pyrimidin, 326  
Hydroxy-phenyl-acetic acid, 264  
Hydroxy-purins, 332, 708  
Hydroxy-pyrimidin, 326  
Hygroscopic, defined, 189  
Hyperacidity, 443, 444, 460  
gastric, 440  
Hypercholesterolemia, 475, 477,  
830  
Hyperglycemia, 370, 501  
Hyperplasia thyroid under filthy  
conditions, 573  
Hypersensitization, 359  
Hypertension, 379, 561, 835  
Hyperthyroid, 136, 645, 661  
metabolism, 619  
Hypertonicity, 115, 123  
of muscle, 256  
"Hypo," 900  
Hypobromite method for urea,  
693  
solution, 890  
Hypochlorhydria, 703  
Hypochlorite, 746  
Hypodermic needles for blood  
chemistry, 822  
sizes, 794  
Hypoglycemia, 255, 502, 504, 646  
Hypoglycemic convulsion, 502,  
617  
Hypo-insulinism, 501  
Hypophysis, 651, 652, 655, 658,  
659  
Hypoplasia, renal, 748  
Hypothyroidism, 136, 570, 643  
metabolism, 619  
Hypotonicity, 115, 123  
Hypoxanthin, 327, 332, 333, 335,  
364, 367, 534, 708  
preparation, 366  
test, 366  
Hypoxanthin-silver nitrate, 365  
Hysteria, 695  
ICE-BOX, average temperature,  
314  
Ice-calorimeter, 602  
Ice-cream, 420  
caloric value, 591  
salt content, 561  
Iceland spar, 178  
Icterus, 673  
fragility test in, 115  
-id, suffix, defined, 192  
Idiocy, 643  
Idose, 173, 500  
Ileum, absorption, 482  
Iminazol, 346, 432  
acetic acid, 271  
colorimetric method, 368  
derivatives in urine, 745  
lactic acid, 271  
method for, 745  
propionic acid, 271  
ring, 268, 317, 328  
Imino-group in amino-acids, 255  
Immunity related to globulin of  
blood, 220  
Inborn error of metabolism, 248,  
264  
Index of acid excretion in urine,  
678  
uricolytic, 736  
Indian yellow, 763  
Indican, 276, 745, 746  
cotton plug test, 745  
reaction, 276  
test, 274, 277  
Indicanuria, 277, 745  
Indicator, 59  
Clark-Lubs, 60, 891  
for Kjeldahl method, 284  
Lamotte, 891  
range, 909  
Indigo, 276, 746  
Indigo-carmin, 697  
Indigo-sodium-disulphonate, 697  
Indogenide, 306  
of benzaldehyde, 306  
Indol, 276, 277, 306, 308, 571,  
740  
acetic acid, 276, 743  
distinguishing test, 362  
ethyl-amin, 276  
Legal's test, 362  
reagent of Ehrlich, 880  
ring, 273  
toxicity, 277  
Indol-propionic acid, 275  
Indoxyl, 276, 306  
glucuronate, 278  
potassium sulphate, 276  
Indoxyl-sulphuric acid, 746  
Inert elements, absence from  
body, 134  
Infant, heat production, 606  
Infantile myxedema, 643  
paralysis, 240  
scurvy, 546, 642  
tetany, 639  
Infantism, 662  
Infection, 374, 376, 672  
and iodine metabolism, 573  
and vitamin, 550  
bile pigment, 471  
loss of pigmentation, 344  
related to globulin of blood,  
220  
skin uncleanness, 347  
Inflammation, effect on gall-  
stone, 476  
Influenza, 475  
Inorganic blood phosphate, 838  
constituents in urine, 772  
of blood, 834  
excretion products of urine,  
684  
phosphorus of blood, 837  
salts, 133  
excretion, 132  
sources of foods, 128  
substances, 133, 134  
excretion, 667  
ignorance of, reason for loss,  
312  
in foods, 539  
in nutrition, 560  
in urine, function, 773  
methods, 774  
sulphate, 248  
method for urine, 781  
sulphur, 773  
urinary sulphate, 779  
Inosinic acid, 335, 367, 368, 509  
Inosite, 212  
pharmacological effects, 369  
Inositol, 368  
Inositol-hexaphosphoric acid,  
calcium-magnesium salt. See  
*Phytin*.  
Insulin, 140, 171, 374, 399, 498,  
499, 500, 501, 504, 506, 507,  
508, 520, 521, 530, 616, 657,  
658, 757, 820  
adsorption, 109  
and B. M. R., 617  
and lactic acid, 508  
assay, 502, 891  
Banting, 20  
Best, 20  
chemical nature, 500  
clinical unit, graphic repre-  
sentation, 502  
Collip, 20  
convulsive, 502  
discoverers, 20  
effect of treatment, statis-  
tically, 20  
on blood-sugar, 507  
on depancreatized animal,  
498  
on metabolism, 619  
on normal animal, 498  
on oxygen utilization, 499  
experimentation, 857  
inactivation, 498, 500  
MacLeod, 20  
method of commercial prep-  
aration, 891  
relations of units, 502  
to glucose utilization, 502  
shock, 503  
storage of glycogen, 508  
units, 503  
Intarvin, 521, 522  
Integer, defined, 41  
Integration, 394  
Integumentary system, 343  
Interface, 111, 216, 449  
Intermediate compound in en-  
zyme action, 107  
metabolism, 494  
Internal anhydrid, 148  
secretions and vitamins, 627  
International Congress of Pure  
and Applied Chemistry, no-  
menclature, 139, 192, 202  
Interstitial nephritis, 220, 671,  
672, 680, 713, 806  
diagnosis, 219  
Intestinal digestion, 453  
enzymes, 453  
epithelium, 270  
juice, reaction, 579, 909  
obstruction, 265, 277, 797, 815  
products, absorption, 492



- Intestinal secretion, reaction,  
460, 498  
stasis, 673, 727
- Intestine, 316, 745  
epithelium and detoxication,  
267  
erepsin, 456  
large, absorption, 491  
metabolism of tryptophan, 276
- Intravenous injection, method in  
rabbit, 858
- Intubation, duodenal, 457  
gastric, 436  
practical exercise, 436, 437,  
438
- Inulin, 150, 166
- Invert sugar, 167
- Invertase, 167, 467  
optimal reaction, 909
- Involution of uterus, 456
- Iodid, 746  
potassium for motility test,  
892
- Iodin, 134, 136, 570, 573, 575;  
643, 644, 645, 646  
absorbed by fats, 195  
absorption, 513  
by lanthanum acetate, 143  
effect of heat, 144  
decinormal solution, 892  
diagram, administration in  
goitrous areas, 570  
distribution, 571  
effect on cellulose, 144  
on starch, 142  
entropy, 585  
in thyroid, 571  
in urine, 782  
method, McClendon, 783  
Lugol's solution, 892  
nature of, 196  
number, 512, 517, 573  
variation in liver fat during  
disease, 513  
rash, 574  
relation to aromatic ring, 572  
saturation, 571  
seasonal variation, 571  
solutions, decolorized by thio-  
sulphate, 144  
for acetone determination,  
892  
tincture, 892  
utilization, 573  
white, 144
- Ion, 33, 36  
behavior in blood, 80  
concentration by boiling-point,  
50  
diffusion, 50  
distribution in colloidal states,  
103  
individual, determination, 50  
protid, 313  
quantitatively determined, 44  
mobility of potassium, 565
- Ionization, 34, 35, 430  
and osmotic pressure, 118  
constant, 40  
by different observers, 40  
determination of total, by  
freezing-point, 47  
dilution effect, 425  
of acetic acid, 863  
percentage of ammonium hy-  
droxid, 865  
related to ions present, 67  
relation of boiling-point, 44  
to freezing-point, 44
- Iris, pigments, 344
- Iron, 133, 134, 378, 405, 454, 473,  
568, 570, 575, 774  
chief source, 568  
content of milk, 417  
entropy, 585
- Iron, excretion, 570, 667  
found with manganese, 134  
in blood as peroxidase, 113  
in bone, 352, 353  
in eggs, 417  
in European diet, 568  
in urine, 782  
in U. S. diet, 568  
sex difference, 134  
storage, 569
- Irradiation, 551, 633, 653
- Irvine, J. C., 171
- Isatinate, 746
- Isobutane, 910
- Iso-butyl-acetic acid, 241
- Iso-caproic acid, 241, 258
- Isodynamic values, 592  
of foods, 559
- Iso-electric point, 104, 105, 106,  
228, 312, 314, 448, 891,  
909  
albumin, egg, 107  
and enzyme action, 106, 107  
blood globulin, 107  
serum, 107  
by Bovie's potentiometer,  
105  
edestin, hemp-seed, 107  
egg-white, 107  
globulin, blood, 107  
egg, 107  
method of determining of  
casein, 105  
serum, blood, 107
- Iso-leucin, 241, 245, 301, 305,  
311, 315  
in albumin, 257  
in globulin, 257
- Isomers, 173, 176
- Iso-oleic acid, 197
- Iso-propyl- $\alpha$ -amino-acetic  
acid, 241
- Isoquinolin, 225
- Isotonicity, 115, 123
- Isotropic, 357
- Iso-urea, 688
- itis, meaning, 265
- Ivory nut, 148
- JABORANDI. See *Pilocarpin*.
- Jack-bean meal, 690, 901
- Jaffé, 361  
reaction, 816  
for creatinin, 361, 725, 814  
test, indican, 746
- Jahr, H. M., 729
- Jaundice, 223, 465, 673  
fatty acids in liver, 513  
fragility test, 115  
hematogenous, 466  
hemolytic, 741
- Jejunum, absorption, 482
- Jellies, 139
- Jensen, F. W., 704
- Jersey milk, 415
- Jerusalem artichoke, 139, 150,  
166
- Jobling's theory of pellagra, 629
- Joffe and Poulton, 78
- Johnson and Veeder's table,  
nitrogen partition in children,  
721
- Johnson, M. R., 722
- Johnson, W. C., 681
- Jones, W., 321, 341, 789
- Joslin, 21, 619, 830  
studies on insulin, 20
- Joule, J. P., 584  
(unit), 584
- Juice, reaction of different, 579
- Junction, liquid, 55
- $k$ , 40
- Kahn, M., 522
- Kakke, 624
- Kaolin, 815  
to remove protid, 750
- K/A ratio, 523, 525, 560  
defined, 524  
from calories of food, 524
- Kastle, J. H., 394
- Kastle-Shedd method, 394
- Katabolism, protid, 287
- Kaassmaul, A., 436
- Keenan, 239
- Keidel tube, 791, 792
- Kekulé, 368
- Kendall, E. C., 23, 571, 643, 644
- Kephalin, 202, 208, 209, 396
- Kephalin-linolic acid, 202
- Kerasin, 203
- Keratin, 302, 305, 318, 342, 343  
probable origin, 27
- Keratomalacia, 542, 550, 631
- Kerr, 550
- Keto-acid, 75, 161, 501
- Keto-antiketogenesis, 522, 523,  
524
- Ketogenesis, 560
- Ketogenic value of food, 524
- Ketolysis, 520-523
- Ketolytic substance, 515
- Keton, 147, 158  
oxidized in presence of glucose  
and peroxid, 523
- Keto-phenyl-hydrazon, 159
- Ketose, 140, 166  
test, 164, 372, 760
- Ketosis, 501, 765
- Kidney, 277, 334, 375, 534, 678,  
684, 697, 712  
as absorber of blood uric acid,  
810  
calcium, 134  
chlorin, 134  
copper, 134  
creatin content, 360  
effect of phlorhizin, 370  
efficiency, 322  
factor in amino-acid metab-  
olism, 531  
fat, 199, 513  
floating, 557  
function, 684  
test by urea, 697  
magnesium in, 134  
meat in scurvy, 641  
origin of ammonia in, 703  
sensitiveness to uric acid, 712  
syntheses in, 667
- Kidney-bean protid, 312
- Killian, J. A., 401, 520
- Kilogram, equivalent in pounds,  
230
- Kimball, 664
- Kinase, 459
- Kingsbury, 23, 729, 810  
and Swanson, hippuric acid  
excretion, 730
- Kipp generator, 869
- Kiutsi, 236
- Kjeldahl digesting shelf, 284
- distilling apparatus, 285  
Folin's, 286  
flask, figure, 283  
method, 282, 283, 686  
catalysis in, 108  
for urinary protids, 755  
reaction, 108
- Klasom, 157
- Knecht, E., 786
- Knorr flask, 410
- Kober, 753
- Koch, W., 214
- Koessler, 368, 745
- Kolthoff, I. M., 878  
buffer solutions, 878
- Koprosterol, 210, 474, 475
- Kossel, 258, 259

- Kovarski, A., 820  
 Kramer, B., 635  
 Kramer, 29  
 Kramer-Gittleman blood sodium method, 839  
 sugar tube, 826  
 finger-tip method for blood sugar, 825  
 Kraus, 305  
 quantitative method for tryptophan, 308  
 tryptophan reagent, 892  
 Krogh, 601, 606, 622  
 Krueger, 534  
 Krumbaar, 664  
 Kugelmass, I. N., 569  
 Kumagawa, 516  
 Kutter and Ratner, 220  
 K<sub>w</sub>, 40  
 Kymograph, 601
- L*, MEANING of, in isomeres, 174  
 Labels, method of preserving, 62  
 Lactacidogen, 508  
 Lactagogue, 414  
 Lactalbumin, 259, 406, 415, 539  
 absence of glycine, 239  
 Lactam, 252, 272, 709  
 toxicity, 253  
 Lactase, 453, 461  
 Lactation, 414, 549, 551  
 Lactic acid, 139, 141, 169, 170, 244, 291, 369, 370, 371, 374, 497, 506, 508, 514, 522, 529, 912  
 boiling-point, 372  
 fermentation, 168, 370  
 ferric chlorid test, 373  
 in muscle contraction, 140  
 preparation, 372  
 quantitative method of Macleod, 372  
 test, 372  
 in gastric secretion, 444  
 Uffelmann's, 373, 445  
 Lactim, 709  
 glutamic acid, 253  
 Lacton, 148, 176, 252, 507  
 Lactonic acid. See *Galadonic*.  
 Lactosazone, 159, 761  
 Lactose, 131, 142, 149, 161, 183, 449, 452, 453, 489, 495, 504, 508, 756, 762, 764  
 adsorbed by charcoal, 160  
 detection, 167  
 in milk, amount in tumbler, 756  
 of man and animals, 415  
 metabolism, 587  
 Myers' method, 912  
 origin, 508, 509  
 quantitative determination, 413  
 relative reducing power, 509  
 structural formula, 184  
 test, 167, 761  
 distinguishing from glucose, 160  
 Lactosuria, 504, 509, 756  
 Ladd, W. S., 525, 766  
 Ladd and Palmer's K/A ratio, 525  
 LaForge, 349  
 Lamb's wool-fat, 193  
 Lambert, R. A., 631  
 Lamotte indicators, 891  
 Lamp, mercury, 128  
 ultraviolet quartz, 128  
 Lange, C., 97  
 colloidal gold reagent, 892  
 test, 97  
 reagent, 879  
 Langmuir, 33, 96
- Lanolin, 193, 345  
 in ointments, etc., 210  
 Lanthanum acetate and iodine adsorption, 143  
 Lard, melting-point, 200  
 Reichert-Meissl number, 202  
 Late eunuchoidism, 652, 657  
 Lattice structure of matter, 33  
 Laurent's half-shadow polariscope, 180  
 Lauric acid, 33  
 in butter fat, 200  
 Lavoisier, 21, 22, 586, 602  
 oxygen, 36  
 Law, Allen's glucose, 755  
 Boyle's, 73, 297  
 Charles', 73, 297  
 Draper-Grottus, 127  
 of LeChatelier, 312  
 of mass action, 40, 453  
 of similar functions, 125  
 LaWall's methanol reagent, 892  
 Lead acetate, 709, 893  
 basic, 893  
 formula, 223  
 precipitant for protid, 223  
 poisoning, 471, 713, 741, 811  
 powdered, 893  
 Leaf-green, 127  
 Leanness and metabolism, 618  
 Leathes, 198, 202, 214, 256, 535, 677  
 LeBel, J. A., 171  
 Lebensohn, 480  
 LeChatelier's law, 67, 312  
 Lecithin, 193, 202, 207, 324, 338, 367, 396, 416, 447, 453, 462, 464, 487, 511, 513, 719, 833  
 and chromatin, 204  
 as antigen, 321  
 chemistry, 204  
 from brain, 208  
 function, 206  
 graphic formula, 205  
 in egg-yolk, 207  
 kinds, 206  
 liver, 206  
 myelin, 209  
 protecting globulin, 218  
 unsaturated nature, 206  
 Lecitho-vitellin, 416  
 Lee, F. S., 277  
 Leeds and Northrup potentiometer, 56  
 Leffmann, 201, 765  
 and Beam's reagent, 893  
 Reichert-Meissl procedure, 201  
 Left-overs, effect on vitamin, 551  
 Legal's acetone test and Weyl's test, 362  
 indol test, 362  
 test for acetone, 362  
 Legumes, 251  
 calcium content, 563  
 iron in, 568  
 Legumin, 312  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 Lehmann, 203  
 Leiboff, S. L., 831  
 Lemon-juice, 552, 641  
 reaction, 579  
 Leningrad, laboratory, antedates  
 Liebig's, 22  
 Lens, crystalline, 302  
 silicon in, 134  
 Lettuce, 546, 631, 640  
 caloric value, 591  
 iron content, 568  
 Leube, W. D., 435  
 Leucin, 182, 233, 237, 240, 245, 258, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 518, 522, 529, 553  
 and glucose, 240  
 crystal, 240  
 formula, 238
- Leucin in acidosis, 240  
 in acute yellow atrophy of liver, 240  
 in albumin, 257  
 in disease, 240  
 in globulin, 257  
 in infantile paralysis, 240  
 in typhoid fever, 240  
 in urine of aviators, 240  
 phosphorus poisoning, 240  
 producing keto-acid, 524  
 Leucohydrobilirubin, 472  
 Leucosin, iso-electric point, 909  
 Leukemia, 712, 736, 749, 811  
 metabolism, 620  
 Leukocytes, 374, 376  
 Leukocytosis, 712  
 Levene, 23, 203, 206, 214, 349, 402, 535  
 model of glucose molecule, 174  
 Levinson, A., 399, 402, 729  
 Levulinic acid, 161, 165, 325  
 formula, 165  
 Levulose, 148, 164, 166, 504, 587, 764  
 distinguished from glucose, 164  
 relative reducing power, 509  
 Levulosuria, 164  
 Lewis, G. N., 33  
 ionization constant, 40  
 Lewis, H. B., 248, 532  
 Lewis, R. C., 821  
 Lewis-Benedict blood sugar tube, 822  
 Lewis, W. C. Mc., 92  
 Leydig cells, 652  
 Lieberkuehn, 229  
 jelly, 229  
 Liebermann, 211, 307  
 reagent, 893  
 test, 307  
 Liebig, 22, 257, 735  
 condenser, 410  
 Life characterized by organization, 216  
 meaning, 494  
 Ligament, 303  
 Ligamentum nuchæ, 302, 303  
 Light, 127, 404, 543, 624, 633  
 absorption and chemical effects, 127  
 destroying formaldehyde, 128  
 effect in bone disease, 353  
 effecting photosynthesis, 128  
 monochromatic, 178  
 optimal, for photosynthesis, 128  
 polarized, 171, 172  
 short-wave, 141  
 ultraviolet, 128  
 vitamin value, 548  
 Light meat and dark meat, 375  
 Lignoceric acid, 203, 204  
 Lime juice, 547  
 reaction, 579  
 juicers, 641  
 Lime-water, 415, 563, 893  
 effect on milk coagulation, 449  
 Linder, G. C., 820  
 Linkage, ester, 325  
 Linoleic acid, 198  
 in egg-yolk, 207  
 Linolic acid, 198, 203, 206, 833  
 Linseed oil, 549, 567  
 Lintner's starch, 146  
 Lipase, 135, 453  
 dissolved in lipid, 112  
 effect of bile-salts, 462  
 gastric, 428, 452  
 pancreatic, 461  
 Lipemia, 488, 489, 833  
 Lipid, 131, 191. See also *Fat*.  
 absorption, 487  
 and cholesterol, 830

- Lipid, caloric value, 603  
calories, 612  
characteristic of nervous system, 396  
converted to glycogen, 496  
defined, 193  
excretion of products, 666  
heat value, 192  
in bacteria, 537  
in skin, 345  
in urine, 763  
quantitative method, 765  
pathological occurrence, 765  
respiratory quotient, 604  
specific dynamic action, 553  
summary, 213  
of metabolism, 554  
of utilization, 526  
types, 193  
utilization, 510  
water in digested, 346
- Lipidase, 453
- Lipidtemns, 129, 130, 517, 763  
effect on gastric secretion, 432  
fate, 494
- Lipochrome, 379
- "Lipoid," 202
- Lippmann, 212
- Liquid crystals, 203  
junction, 55  
tissue, *See Blood*.
- Liquor ferri dialyzatus, 100  
folliculi, 653
- Liter, 36
- Liter-atmosphere, 584
- Lithium, 134  
oxalate, 798
- Litmus milk, 462
- Liver, 267, 269, 334, 376, 466, 469, 494, 498, 499, 505, 512, 528, 531, 534, 555, 568, 667, 695, 703, 707, 727, 731, 740, 742, 748, 773, 818, 830  
absorbing amino-acids, 731  
acute yellow atrophy, 457  
arsenic, 134  
atrophy, 253, 265  
autolysis, 456  
chloroform poisoning, 457  
cirrhosis, 467  
copper, 134  
creatin content, 360  
detoxicating organ, 137  
fat, 512  
iodin number, 513  
function test, 164, 729  
iodin, 134  
iron, 134, 569  
lecithins of, 206  
magnesium in, 134  
meat in scurvy, 641  
potassium, 134  
purinase, 364  
rôle in fat metabolism, 199  
storage of glycogen, 131  
zinc, 134
- Livetin, 416
- Living molecules, 494  
substance, colloidal nature, 101
- Livon, B., 535
- Lloyd, J. U., 757  
reagent, 757, 893
- Locke's solution, 397
- Loeb, J., 103, 124, 312, 486, 493  
describes Donnan equilibrium, 103  
theory of colloidal state, 103
- Loeb, L., 653, 664
- Loevenhart, 422
- Loew, 454
- Logarithm, 37, 38, 41, 59, 907
- Lomonossov, early chemical work, 22
- Long, J. H., 683  
coefficient, 683
- Looney, 249, 275
- Lotka, 27
- Love, A. G., 572
- Lubs, 59
- Luckardt, 435
- Ludwig's secretion hypothesis, 667
- Lueders, 664
- Luer type syringe, 64, 822
- Lugol's solution, 892
- Lund, G. S., 820
- Lundin, A., 522
- Lung, 684  
aid in maintenance of neutrality, 132  
calcium, 134  
lithium in, 134  
magnesium in, 134  
ventilation, factors, 81  
water excretion, 346
- Lupine seed protid, 312
- Lusk, 23, 405, 420, 496, 516, 527, 535, 553, 559, 563, 582, 583, 614, 615, 622  
theories of heat production, 131
- Lusk-Riche calorimeter, 588
- Lutein, 379
- Lymph, characterized, 485  
specific gravity, 398  
stasis, 764
- Lyon, 436, 439, 464, 480
- Lysin, 256, 257, 258, 300, 301, 305, 311, 315, 518, 533, 538  
formula, 258  
in albumin, 257  
in globulin, 257  
method of separation, 259  
picrate, 259
- $\mu$ . *See Mu*.
- Macallum, A. B., 27, 397, 481, 566, 834
- Macallum, A. Bruce, 811
- Machine, muscle a chemical, 374
- Macht, D. I., 485, 493
- Macklin, A. H., 641
- Maclean, 214, 403, 535
- MacLeod, J. J. R., 20, 124, 171, 372, 501, 521, 535, 664, 789  
insulin, 20
- Macrophage, 376
- Magath, 469
- Magendie, 397
- Magnesia mixture, 893
- Magnesium, 134, 539, 563, 564, 774  
amount excreted daily, 565  
and coagulation, 565  
carbonate and rickets, 635  
distribution, 565  
entropy, 585  
from aluminium, 32  
in blood and sea, 27  
in bone, 352  
in diet, 575  
in tooth, 348  
in urine, 782  
phosphate, 352  
requirement, 565  
sulphate, 464, 564  
absorption, 484  
mechanism of purgative action, 117  
solubility, 218, 472  
test, 356
- Magnifications of microscope, table, 915
- Maintenance, 258, 537
- Maize, 533, 538
- Mal de la rosa, 628
- Malachite green, 392
- Malaria and biochemistry, 21  
pigment, 344, 379
- Malfatti-Ronchese's method for urinary ammonia, 707
- Malignancy. *See Cancer*.
- Malone, 236
- Malonic acid, 250, 912
- Malt sugar, 139
- Maltase, 177, 178, 423, 453, 461  
optimal reaction, 909
- Maltosazone, 146, 761
- Maltose, 129, 130, 145, 146, 149, 161, 183, 188, 422, 423, 452, 461  
absorption, 482  
relative reducing power, 509  
structural formula, 184
- Maltosuria, 500
- Maly, 428, 429
- Mammary glands, 347, 508  
phosphorus, 347
- Man, heat production, 606
- Mandel, 229
- Mandelic acid nitrile, 190
- Manganese, 134, 135, 575
- Mann, 469
- Manna, 148
- Mannitol, 153, 764
- Mannose, 148, 153, 173  
relative reducing power, 509
- Maple syrup, reaction, 579
- Marasmus, 722
- Margaric acid, 521
- Margarin, 517
- Marie, P., 655  
disease, 655
- Marine, D., 660, 664
- Mariner's disease, 546
- Markowitz, 501, 521
- Marrian, 508
- Marriott, W. McK., 770  
method for acidosis, 75
- Marrow, bone-, 272, 354, 376  
chondroid, 354  
iron, 569
- Marsh, H. L., 782  
method for iodine in urine, 782
- Marshall, F. H. A., 664  
urease method, 701
- Mass, 36  
action, law of, 453
- Mastic, dialysis, 102
- gum, 150  
suspension, 893  
test, 102
- Matches, phosphorus, 265
- Maté, 328
- Mathews, 403, 535, 622, 809  
test, 167
- Matter, relations, 32
- Mattill, 545, 548, 549, 582
- Mayer's solution, 893
- McCarrison, 573, 627, 650
- McClendon, 23, 124, 645, 664, 783  
method, iodine, 783
- McClure, R. D., 651
- McCollum, 310, 348, 536, 547, 582, 622, 634
- McCrudden, F. H., 782, 830  
method for calcium and magnesium in urine, 782  
on hydron concentration, 37
- McElroy, 413
- McGuire, G., 815
- McLaughlin, L., 719
- McLean calculating rule, 805  
coefficient, 669, 804, 805
- McMaster, 480
- McNeal, 628
- Me-, prefix, 378
- Meal, Ewald, 438  
for incubation, 436  
fractionating, 438  
motility, 439

- Measuring pipettes, 906  
 Meat, diet in tetany, 648  
   effect on metabolism, 617  
   extract, 232, 722  
   light and dark, 375  
   raw, in scurvy, 641  
 Mechanical equivalent of heat, 584  
 Medicine and biochemistry, 18  
 Medulla oblongata as breathing center, 81  
 Medullary sheathes, glucid in, 142  
 Meissner's metapepton, 749  
 Meker burner, 725  
 Melancholia, 695  
 Melanin, 263, 344, 454, 532, 746  
   test, 746  
 Melanotic sarcoma, 263  
   pigment, 344  
   tumor, 673, 746  
 Meleney, 211  
 Mellibiose, 150  
 Mellor, J. W., 21, 92, 314  
 Melon, caloric value, 591  
 Melting-point, apparatus, 148  
   method, 147, 762  
 Meltzer, 564  
 Membrane, consequences on particles, 113  
   in organisms, 93  
   potential difference, Donnan's, 98, 99, 103  
 Mendel, 215, 311, 404, 534, 539, 542, 546, 558, 582, 631  
   experiments with rats on deficient foods, 538  
   little things in nutrition, 540  
 Mendeléeff, 29-31  
   periodic table, 31  
 Meningitis, epidemic, 400  
   cerebrospinal fluid, 399  
   tubercular, 400  
   cerebrospinal fluid, 399  
 Menopause, creatin, 360  
 Menstrual periods, creatin, 360  
 Menstruation, 644  
 Mental disease, 551  
 Menthol, 465, 674  
 Mercaptan, 246, 674, 910  
   sulphur, 302  
 Merck's blood charcoal, 160  
 Mercuric chlorid, 709  
   normal solution, 893  
   protid precipitant, 224  
   sulphate— $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  reagent of Hopkins-Cole, 267  
   precipitant for tryptophan, 267  
 Mercury, 492  
   in antisepsis, 224  
   vapor light, 548  
 Mesodermal structures, chemistry, 348  
 Metabolic adjuvants, 623  
   rate, 722  
   studies on blood and urine, 842  
 Metabolism, 257, 583  
   accelerated by thyroxin, 136  
   affected by effort or strain, 618  
   by outside temperature, 617  
   boy's, 611, 613  
   for different temperament, 614  
   weight, 614  
   calcium, 564  
   calories per surface area, average for different animals, 606  
   chamber, 592  
   daily variation, 614  
   determination of kind, 605  
   during fasting, 614  
   first year of life, 609  
   effect of beverages, 618  
   of clothing, 617  
 Metabolism, effect of disease, 618, 619  
   of insulin, 619  
   of muscle work, 617  
   of position of body, 618  
   of speed, 618  
   efficiency on glucid and lipid diet, 559  
   endogenous, 364  
   female, 613  
   following acclimatization, 618  
   from fructose, 616  
   from glucose, 616  
   girl, surface area, 613  
   weight, 614  
   glucid, 170, 719  
   high level, 615  
   protid, 615  
   inborn error, 248, 264  
   increase on protid diet, 615  
   intermediate, 494  
   Krogh's method, 601  
   male, female, and young, 586  
   mineral, 560  
   normals, 611  
   of amino-acids, 274, 311, 530  
   of fat, 198, 515  
   of lean person, 618  
   of obese, 615  
   of soldier at attention, 618  
   protid, 552  
   purin, 534  
   sitting, 618  
   stimulation by protid, 553  
   sugar, 244, 509  
   tables, 915  
   of basal metabolic rates from birth to childhood, 611  
   uric acid, 334  
 Metal sols, size of colloidal particles, 96  
   heavy, absence from body, 134  
 Metapepton, 749  
 Metaphosphoric acid, protid precipitant, 227  
 Metaprotid, 228, 229, 338  
   coagulation, 229  
   distinguished from globulin, 229  
   effect of heat, 229  
   of neutralizing solution, 229  
 Methane, 127, 172, 910  
 Methanol, 127, 910  
   detection, 892  
   in presence of ethanol, 893  
 Methemoglobin, 379, 382, 673  
   quantitative method, Stadie, 389  
   test, 382  
 Methemoglobinuria, 380  
 Methyl acetate, 912  
   alcohol, 127. See also *Methanol*.  
   amins, 911  
   ether, 911  
   ethyl carbinol, 245  
   glucoside, 183  
   glyoxal, 168, 169, 170, 244, 245, 317, 318, 497, 498, 506  
   glyoxalic acid, 243  
   guanidin, 359, 361, 648  
   acetic acid, 359, 696, 717  
   anhydrid, 361, 717  
   iminazol, 318  
   indol, 276  
   mercaptan, 674, 910  
   phenol, 267  
   purin, 534, 708  
   red, 60, 891  
 Methylation, 255, 359, 573, 733  
 Methylene alanin, 287  
   blue, 673  
 Methylhydroxyfurfural, 165  
 Mette, E. L. P., 446  
   pepsin test, 446  
   tubes, 894  
 Metzger, N., 401  
 Meyerhof, 371, 373, 374  
 Meyerhof-Hill theory of muscle action, 140  
 Mho, 46  
 Michaelis, 92, 124, 426  
 Micro-burner, 822  
 Microcosm, 29  
 Micron, 98  
 Microphage, 376  
 Microscope, table of magnifications, 915  
 Microscopic particles, sizes, 98  
 Miescher, 532, 535  
 Milk, 405, 448, 455, 495, 551, 569, 640, 667  
   adulterants, 913  
   alcohol-soluble protid, 311  
   and bicarbonate, 405  
   ass's reaction, 579  
   Babcock method, 406  
   buffer effect, 451  
   calcified, 455  
   calcium content, 563  
   caloric value, 590  
   canned, 543  
   chemistry, 405  
   clinical significance, 414  
   coagulation, 449  
   effect of magnesium, 565  
   time, 451  
   cold, drinking of, 450  
   cow's, reaction, 579, 909  
   creatin content, 360  
   curdling, 133  
   effect on urine acidity of cow's and mother's, 679  
   goat's, reaction, 579  
   human and animal, table, 415  
   clinical method, 409  
   reaction, 579, 909  
   iron content, 417, 568  
   modifying, 415  
   pasteurized, 635  
   pigment, 379  
   pipette for micro-Babcock, 407  
   powdered, 543  
   preparations, 631, 642  
   preservatives, 914  
   prolin in casein, 272  
   scheme for analysis, 912  
   skimmed, 542  
   solids, 414  
   souring, 168  
   total solids, 913  
 Milk-sugar, 131, 139, 142, 183  
 Miller, A. M., 809  
 Milliliter (ml), 36  
 Millimicron, 98  
 Milling of foods, 551  
 Million, 236  
   base, 698  
   reagent, 811, 894  
   test, 305  
   tyrosin test, 236  
 Minerals, atomic weights and numbers, 31  
   constituents of blood, 834  
   content of food in U. S., 575  
   metabolism, 560  
   substances, 133, 134, 539  
   excretion, 667  
   waters, reaction, 579  
 Miquel, P., 698  
 Mitchell, 582  
 Mitral stenosis, 730  
 Mixtures, phosphate, 60  
*mu.*. See *Millimicron*.  
 Modifying milk, 415  
 Moerner's reagent, 894  
   test, 237  
 Mohr pipette, 60



- Molar solutions, freezing-point, 118  
 Molasses, 150  
 Molecule, 33  
   active portions, 110  
   living, 494  
   method of formation, 34  
   orientation, 44  
 Molisch, 165  
   reaction, 165, 166, 318  
 Molybdc method for glucid, 157  
   solution, 865  
   trioxide, 776  
 Momentary acidity, 82  
 Monaminomonocarboxylic acids, 238  
 Mono-amino-di-carboxylic acids, 250  
 Monochloroacetic acid, 217  
 Monochloromethane, 127  
 Monogluclids, 148, 149, 151  
   alcohol from, 149  
   distinctive test, 161  
   oxidation, 149  
   rate of absorption, 483  
 Mononucleotid, 323, 325, 347, 367, 509, 534, 757  
 Monosaccharids, 148  
 Monosodium urate, 534, 708  
 Monovalent ions, effect on coagulation, 222  
 Moore, 494  
   test, 151  
 Morgan, H. J., 680  
 Morgan, T. H., 28  
 Morgulis, 508, 729, 730  
 Mori, 630  
 Moriz-Weisz test for tuberculosis, 269  
 Morphin, 225, 395, 650  
 Morris, J. L., 716  
   uric acid in urine, method, 716  
 Moseley, 30  
 Mosenthal, 682, 773  
 Motility, gastric, 439, 457  
 Mountain climbing, 576  
   acidosis, 74  
   CO<sub>2</sub> in, 82  
   iron in blood during, 569  
   retention of potassium, 565  
 Mouse, heat production, 606  
 Mouth, absorption in, 481  
 Movement, Brownian, 101  
   energy of, 140  
 Moyle, 371, 373  
 Mu, 98  
 Mucic acid, 152  
   test, 151  
   for lactose, 761  
   and galactose, 185  
 Mucin, 165, 316, 343, 462, 464, 468, 473, 508, 674, 738  
   differentiated from albumin, 738  
   probable origin, 27  
   test, 738  
 Mucoid, 350, 351, 356, 400  
 Mucus, gastric, 439  
   glucid in, 142  
   place of origin, 94  
 Mueller, 250  
 Muffin, caloric value, 591  
 Mulberry gall-stones, 477  
 Mulder's "protein," 215  
 Multiple endocrine sclerosis, 657  
   myeloma, 749  
 Mummies' teeth, 642  
 Mundell, J. J., 830  
 Murex, 367  
 Murexid, 367  
   test, 710  
 Murlin, 592, 606, 622  
 Muscarin, 207, 368  
 Muscle, 127, 255, 334, 375, 498, 499, 504, 505, 506, 530, 560, 584  
   amino-acid deamination, 731  
   and creatin, 360  
   bulk and creatinin excretion, 722  
   calcium, 134  
   cardiac, creatin content, 360  
   chemistry, 357  
   contraction, 373  
   and lactic acid, 371  
   creatin, 718  
   and creatinin excretion, 364  
   creatinin, 363  
   dystrophy, 830  
   ergot effect, 266  
   exercise, 508  
   and purin, 364, 365  
   fermentation of, and amino-acids, 217  
   glucids in, 142  
   glycogen, 369  
   iron, 568  
   mode of action, 374  
   not a combustion engine, 374  
   phosphorus, 347  
   plant substances in, 368  
   polarized light, 357  
   potassium, 134, 565  
   magnesium in, 134  
   protid, 230  
   purins, 364  
   reaction of expressed juice, 579  
   silicon in, 134  
   smooth, creatin content, 360  
   storage of glycogen, 131  
   striated, creatin content, 360  
   thoracic, in lung ventilation, 81  
   tone, 375  
   tonus, 256  
   and creatin, 719  
   wasting, 722  
   water content, 374  
   work affecting heat production, 617  
 Muscle-sugar, 368  
 Mustard, 432  
 Mutarotation, 175  
 Mutism, 643  
 Myelin formation, 203  
   of lecithin, 209  
 Myeloma, 749  
 Myers, 19, 535, 718, 805, 811, 816, 837, 841  
   apparatus for blood nitrogen determinations, 802  
   blood-sugar method, 828  
   urea method, 808  
   method for non-protid nitrogen of blood, 801  
   naphthol green reagent, 894  
   permanganate solution for calcium determinations, 894  
   staircase, 805, 806  
 Myers-Bailey blood-sugar tube, 827  
 Myogen, coagulation point, 230  
 Myosin, coagulation point, 230  
 Myositis, 719  
 Myristic acid, 33  
   in butter fat, 200  
 Myxedema, 644, 662  
   metabolism, 619  
 NAGANO, 487  
 Nails, 302, 343  
 Naphthalin, calorimetric standard, 588  
 Naphthol, alpha, 165, 166, 391  
   green reagent of Myers, 894  
 Naphthoquinon monosulphonate, 249  
 Nash, 370, 678, 808, 809  
   blood chemistry tube, 822  
 Nasmyth's membrane, 348  
 Native protids, 313  
 Naunyn, 477  
 Needle, blood, 63, 64, 794, 822  
 Neill, J. M., 680  
 Nephelometric method for protid, 753  
 Nephritis, 322, 375, 418, 558, 562, 671, 672, 695, 703, 713, 723, 727, 730, 745, 747, 773, 796, 797, 806, 811, 815, 818, 831, 835, 837, 901  
   amino-acids, 531  
   diagnosis, 219  
   glomerular, sugar in, 820  
   interstitial, 220, 680  
   metabolism, 620  
   parenchymatous, 220  
 Nephrosis, 723, 748, 796, 805, 811, 830  
 Nernst's equation, 58, 59  
 Nerve, 584  
   affection in vitamin deficiency, 545  
   effect of potassium on vagus, 565  
 Nervous disorders, calcium in, 564  
   system, 135, 394, 395, 396, 397, 501, 508, 551, 646  
   cholesterol in, 210  
 Nessler's reagent, 699  
   solution, Benedict-Bock method, 867  
   chemistry, 698  
   Folin's, 886  
   test for ammonia, 703  
 Nessler-Winkler solution, Folin's modification, 886  
 Nesslerization method for non-protid nitrogen of blood, 803  
 Neuberg, 151, 789  
 Neumann, A., 778  
   method for total urinary phosphates, 778  
 Neurasthenia, 811  
 Neurin, 207, 368  
 Neurokeratin, 342, 397  
 Neutral fat, 131  
   defined, 194  
   sulphur, 773  
   in urine, 779  
   method, 781  
 Neutrality, 36-40  
   blood, 66  
   definition, 38, 39  
   maintenance, Van Slyke's contribution, 65  
   phosphorus in maintenance of, 568  
   regulation, 67, 773  
 Neutrophils, 376  
 Newcomer, 597  
 Nichol, 178  
   prism, 180  
 Nicotin, 225, 395  
 Night urine, 671  
 Nihhydrin, 234, 235, 731  
 Nitric acid, 895  
   dissociation, 43  
   fuming, 895  
   normal solution, 895  
   oxid, absorbed by permanganate, 291  
 Nitrile, 190  
 Nitrite, 379  
 Nitrocellulose, 189  
 Nitroferrocyanid, 362  
 Nitrogen, 134, 666  
   amino- in blood, 817  
   argon accompanies, 134  
   blood, 224  
   by Kjeldahl method, 282, 283



- Nitrogen, calculation of standard for blood and urine analysis, 701  
calories from, 605  
colloidal, 735  
entropy, 585  
equilibrium, 249  
equivalence of keto-acid, 524  
excretion in avenues other than urine, 684  
fecal, 684  
Folin's standard, 887  
in foods, 405  
ingestion, 552  
partition, 688, 721  
percentage in protid, 287  
premortal rise, 565  
retention during high protid diet, 615  
standard for blood analysis, 800  
solutions, 847  
tables, 902  
total, 685  
physiological variations, 685  
undetermined, 734  
in blood, 797, 798  
urinary equivalent of antiketogenic substance, 524
- Nitrogenous compounds, 215  
equilibrium, 258, 274, 555, 615, 683, 720  
substances, 129  
and glucids, 142
- Nitrohydrochloric acid, 866
- Nitrometer, 293
- Nitron, 786  
picrate, 786
- Nitroprussid test for creatinin, 362
- Nitrosamin, 363
- Nitroso-compound, 363
- Nitrous acid, dissociation, 43  
effect on amino-acids, 291  
method for amino-acids, 287  
synthesis, 291
- Noble metals, absence from body, 134
- Noddack, 31
- Non-protid calories, 605  
nitrogen, 400, 793  
in blood, 793, 795, 798  
method of Folin, 798  
of Myers, 801  
titration method, 803  
of vitreous humor, 401  
pathological variations, 796  
R/Q, 610
- Non-sol glass, 831
- Nonylic acid, 521
- Norleucin, 241
- Normal biochemical data. See *Inside Back Cover*.  
element, 53  
glucid of urine, 497, 755  
Benedict's method, 759  
solution, 37, 38  
urinary sugar, Benedict-Osterberg bone-black reagent, 870
- Normality, 37  
definition, 90  
determined, 90  
Nosos, meaning, 265  
Nolly, du, 120, 121  
surface tension apparatus, 120
- N. P. N. See *Non-protid nitrogen*.
- Nubecula, 674, 738
- Nuclear membrane, 216
- Nuclei, 300  
calcium, 134
- Nucleic acid, 254, 322, 323, 325, 534  
animal, 325  
decomposition, 332
- Nucleic acid, graphic formula, 331  
plant, 325  
synthesis, 324
- Nucleinase, 534
- Nucleo-albumin. - See *Phosphoprotids*.
- Nucleoprotid, 254, 300, 301, 318, 321, 347, 508, 518  
alpha and beta, 347  
(B. typhosis), iso-electric point, 909  
effect of digestive agents, 333  
fate, 533, 534  
graphic formula, 323  
(pancreatic), iso-electric point, 909  
phosphorus content, 338  
synthesis, 317
- Nucleosidase, 534
- Nucleoside, 324, 325  
synthesis, 330
- Nucleotid, 323-325  
extranuclear, 335  
synthesis, 330
- Nucleotidase, 534
- Nucleus, atomic, 29, 33, 34  
cell, importance, 93  
chlorin, 134
- Nul-point apparatus, 46
- Number, atomic, 31  
biochemistry, 21
- Nutrition and amino-acids, 311  
Atwater, 23  
chemical aspects, 536  
Chittenden's work, 22  
energetics, 583  
glucid and lipid, 559  
glucids, 558  
infinitely small, 539  
minerals in, 560  
physiological economy, 310  
protid, 552
- Nylander's solution, 895
- Oat protid, 312
- Oatmeal, calcium content, 563  
caloric value, 590  
iron content, 568
- Obermayer, F., 746  
solution, 895  
test, 746
- Obesity, 375, 556, 645, 651, 655, 656  
drawing blood in cases of, 63  
effect on metabolism, 617  
metabolism, 615, 621  
sex-linked character, 557
- Obstetrics, use of ergot, 266
- Obstruction, intestinal, 277
- Occult blood, 394, 440
- Ochronosis, 344
- Odd-carbon fat, 519, 521, 522
- Odor of urine, 673, 674
- Ohm, 45
- Oil, 193  
bone, 354  
castor, 198  
cocoanut, crystals, 200  
Reichert-Meissl number, 202  
cod-liver, 199  
drying, 198  
hydrogenation, 197  
of citronella, 212  
of peppermint, 674  
olive, Reichert-Meissl number, 202  
paraffin, in blood chemistry, 65  
rancidity, 198  
vegetable, 549
- Oil-water phase boundary, 110
- Ointment, lanolin base, 210
- ol, suffix, 140
- Oleic acid, 206, 519, 833, 910  
in egg-yolk, 207  
in human fat, 199  
in liver, 206  
Oleid, 197. See also *Triolein*.  
Oleomargarin, 581  
Oliguria, 671, 672  
Olive-oil, 193, 542, 549, 567, 639  
Reichert-Meissl number, 202  
salt content, 561  
Oliver's test, 468  
Omelette, caloric value, 590  
Omentum, 512  
Omicron - hydroxymethyl - fur - fural, 165  
Onions, caloric value, 591  
odor, 674  
Onslow, 711  
Opie, 664  
Opium, 745  
Oppenheimer, C., 314  
Optical activity, 171, 178  
reaction of enzyme action, 909  
relations and physiologic action, 182  
changed, 243  
of amino-acid utilization, 529  
of sugars, 171  
Optimum reactions, 909  
Oral digestion, 422  
Orange, 546  
caloric value, 590  
reaction, 579  
Orcinol and tyrosin test, 236  
test, 163  
Ordinary ray, 180  
Organ fat, 198  
Organic substances in perspiration, 346  
Organization, 216  
Orientation, defined, 44, 110  
Ornithin, 255, 256, 532  
di-benzoyl-, 532  
Orsat apparatus, 598  
Orthophosphoric acid, 227, 325  
Ortho-phthalic anhydrid, 873  
Orthostatic albuminuria, 748  
Osazone, 146, 147, 158, 820  
method for melting-point, 147  
test, 145, 761  
Osborne, 311, 341, 542, 558  
-ose, suffix, 140, 148  
Osler, 26, 480  
Osmometer, 116  
Osmosis, 113-118  
factors, 116  
Osmotic pressure, 430  
and saline cathartics, 116, 117  
fragility test, 115  
of colloidal states, 117  
of electrolytes, 118  
Ossein, 351, 356  
Osseo-albumoid, 302  
Ossification, 352, 353  
Osteomalacia, 654, 743  
Osterberg, E., 759  
Ostwald, 124  
pyknometer, 683  
special properties of finely divided states, 95  
type conductance vessel, 46  
Ostwald-Folin pipette, 61, 72, 687  
used as stalagmometer, 119  
Ounce to grams, 683  
Ovarian hormone, 463, 653, 654  
Ovary, 627  
dependence upon other organs, 659  
transplantation, 653  
Ovokeratin, 342  
Ovomucin, 317  
Ovovitellin, 337, 416  
Ovulation, 653

- Oxalate, 897  
 anticoagulant, 65  
 calcium, crystals in urine, 788  
 lithium, 798  
 preventing milk coagulation, 449  
 stones, 713  
 Oxalic acid, 152, 250, 577, 912  
 dissociation, 43  
 poisoning and calcium, 564  
 reduced, 307  
 Oxidase, 332, 333  
 xanthin, 364, 534  
 Oxidation, 192, 246, 249, 374, 494, 499, 529, 537, 554, 571, 586, 602, 679, 696, 735, 773  
 beta, 199, 515, 521  
 of fats, 198, 199, 518  
 vitamin, 551  
 Oxydic sugars, 507  
 Oxygen, 134  
 as acid producer, 36  
 caloric value, 595  
 consumption, 642  
 and basal metabolism, 608  
 content of air, 598  
 effect on vitamin, 546  
 entropy, 585  
 evolution in photosynthesis, 128, 684  
 interchange with sulphur, 246  
 lack of causing autolysis, 457  
 method, Van Slyke, 384-388  
 receptor, 113  
 tank, 126  
 tension, lessened, causing acidosis, 74  
 utilization, 599, 606, 608, 610  
 during absorption, 484  
 quantitative relation of thyroxin, 136  
 Oxyhemoglobin, 376, 744  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 reaction, 69  
 spectroscopic test, 381  
 Oxyntic cells, 432, 433  
 Oxyprolin, 272, 279, 301, 305, 311, 315, 377  
 and ninhydrin, 235  
 in albumin, 257  
 in globulin, 257  
 Oxyprotic acid, 735, 740  
 Oxypurin, 333, 364  
 tests, 366  
 Oyster, caloric value, 591
- PAIRING, 276-278  
 Palladium, in hydrogen electrode, 51  
 Palmer, 379, 525  
 Palmitic acid, 833  
 formula, 33, 193  
 in butter fat, 200  
 in egg-yolk, 207  
 in human fat, 199  
 in liver, 206  
 Palmitid, 192  
 Pancreas, 166, 303, 454, 459, 461, 498, 499, 500, 502, 661, 662, 712  
 amount removable without diabetes, 167  
 creatin content, 360  
 enlargement in gigantism, 657  
 hormone, 370  
 manganese, 134  
 method of preparation of trypsin, 900  
 raw, in depancreatized animal, 501  
 reaction of expressed juice, 579  
 whole gland therapy, 658  
 Pancreatectomy, 502  
 Pancreatic digestion, 460, 461  
 Pancreatic digestion, test for distinguishing from gastric, 455  
 efficiency, test, 457  
 hormone, 463  
 insufficiency, 657  
 juice, reaction, 909  
 Pancreatin, 187  
 Pancreatitis, 459  
 Paper, 127, 139  
 effect of iodine, 144  
 Para-cresol, 267  
 Para-diamino-diphenyl-benzidin, 393  
 Para-di-methyl-amino-benzaldehyde, 740  
 Paradimethylbenzaldehyde, 746  
 Paraffin oil in blood chemistry, 65  
 solution for preserving labels, 62  
 Para - hydroxy - phenyl - acetic acid, 266, 267  
 Para - hydroxy - phenyl - alpha - amino-propionic acid, 262  
 Para - hydroxy - phenyl - ethyl - amin, 266  
 Para-hydroxy-phenyl-propionic acid, 266  
 Paralactic acid, 370  
 Paralysis, 562, 643  
 by potassium, 565  
 Paraphenylendiamin, 391, 394  
 test for blood, 394  
 Parathyroid, 255, 256, 498, 499, 563, 639, 640, 648, 659, 662  
 calcium, 359  
 extract, 648  
 unit, 648  
 Parathyroidectomy, 255, 359  
 Parathyroprivia, 648  
 Parenchymatous nephritis, 220, 671, 748  
 diagnosis, 219  
 Paresis, 695  
 Park, 633, 634, 651, 664  
 Pars intermedia, 658  
 Parturition, creatin, 360  
 Paste, starch, 144  
 Pasteur, 171, 181  
 Pasteurization, 551, 635  
 Paton, 256, 361, 549  
 Pavlov, 434  
 pouch, 434  
 Pavy's solution, 895  
 Pea protid, 312  
 Peach-kernel oil, 549  
 Peanut oil, 549  
 Pear, reaction, 579  
 Peas, calcium content, 563  
 caloric value, 591  
 Pectin, 139, 146, 149, 188, 189  
 acidity due to galacturonic acid, 152  
 effect of iodine, 144  
 Pelargonic acid, 197  
 Pelkan, K. F., 833  
 Pellagra, 628  
 Penal secretion, 345  
 Pentosan, 163, 497  
 Pentose, 149, 152, 162, 165, 317, 325, 335, 368, 497, 500, 509, 756, 757, 762  
 absorption, 486, 487  
 detection, 162  
 formula, 162  
 test of Bial, 761  
 Pentosuria, 509, 756  
 Pepper, 432  
 Peppermint oil, 674  
 Pepsin, 231, 428, 445, 447, 500  
 activator, 447  
 activity, quantitative equation, 446  
 and rennin, 450  
 table of action, 451  
 chemical and physical nature, 447  
 Pepsin from pig's stomach, 231  
 in feces, 457  
 Mette's method, 446  
 optimal reaction, 448, 450, 909  
 solution, 895  
 unit, 446  
 Pepsinogen, 447  
 Peptic activity, Mette's method, 446  
 quantitative method of Gross, 445  
 of Roaf, 445  
 Peptid, 230, 279, 280, 666  
 and ninhydrin, 235  
 Peptization and electrical charge, 97  
 by means of halogens on colloidal gold, 97  
 definition, 97  
 impossible with fluorid in colloidal gold preparation, 97  
 in French dressing, 122  
 Pepton, 130, 230, 231, 232, 339, 463, 468, 488  
 absorption, 482  
 and ninhydrin, 235  
 Bacto, 233  
 effect of Esbach's test, 304  
 not antigen, 321  
 Witte's, 270, 488, 895  
 Percentage dissociation, 38  
 Perfusion, 244  
 utilization of glucose, 506  
 Pericardial fluid, reaction, 579  
 Pericarditis, 806  
 Periodic table, 31  
 Peritoneal fluid, reaction, 579  
 Peritonitis, 797  
 Perlman, S. J., 480  
 Permanganate, 379  
 as absorber of nitric oxide, 291  
 potassium, 895  
 Permeability of membrane, effect of lactic acid, 141  
 Permutit, 704  
 Folin's special reagent, 705  
 Pernicious anemia, 430, 569, 672, 743, 835  
 Peroxid, hydrogen, purchasing, 113  
 Peroxidase, 133, 391, 454, 569  
 blood, 113  
 Perspiration, 345, 566, 665, 666, 684  
 acidity, 346  
 alkaline, 347  
 inorganic substances, 346  
 reaction, 579  
 water, 346  
 Pettenkofer's test, 468  
 Pfahler, 664  
 pH, 37, 40  
 by colorimetric method, 59  
 calculation, 41, 59  
 converted to  $\text{C}_\text{H}$ , 41  
 definition, 38  
 determinations by potentiometer, 56  
 in pharmacology, 83  
 determined by titration, 84  
 in bacteriology, 83  
 meaning of increase or decrease, 82  
 of blood modified by preservative, 66  
 of body fluids in health and disease, 66  
 of urine, 675  
 of water at body temperature, 39  
 at different temperatures, 39  
 Phagocytosis, 374, 376  
 Phanerosis, 516

- Pharmacological action and chemical configuration, 208
- Phase, 111  
colloidal, 33  
crystalloidal, 33
- Phaseolin, 312
- Phenacetin, 379
- Phenanthrenes, 211
- Phenol, 133, 228, 261, 745  
acidity, 465  
Benedict's standard solution, 869  
poisoning, 746  
reagent, Folin-Denis, 882  
red, 59, 60, 891  
responds to tyrosin test, 236  
source of pigment, 344  
test, 546
- Phenolphthalein, 60, 392, 394, 677, 896
- Phenolphthalin, 392, 896  
test for blood, 394
- Phenolsulphonephthalein, 59, 697  
for renal efficiency test, 896
- Phenyl acetal, 261  
acetic acid, 253, 261  
glycin, 871  
pyruvic acid, 260, 261  
salicylate, 228  
sulphuric acid, 267  
urethan, 901
- Phenylacetalhydrazon, 158
- Phenylacetamid, 379
- Phenylalanin, 259, 261, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 522, 529, 531, 533, 572  
crystal form, 260  
in albumin, 257  
in globulin, 257  
iso-electric point, 909  
producing keto-acid, 524
- Phenylglyoxosazone, 158
- Phenylhydrazin, 146, 147, 158, 159  
base, 761  
test, 761
- Phloretic acid, 896
- Phlorhizin, 241, 370, 619, 719, 896
- Phloroglucinol, 441, 889, 896  
and tyrosin test, 236  
formula, 162  
test, 162, 164
- Phloroglucinol-vanillin reagent of Guenzberg, 889
- Phosphate, 501, 507, 521, 548, 577, 579, 674, 679, 684, 750  
acid, 676, 680  
acidosis, 773  
behavior as buffer, 77  
calculi, 542  
buffer solutions, Clark, 876  
disodium monohydrogen, 60  
hexose, 497  
in alkali reserve, 76  
in blood reaction, 68  
in gastric acidity, 429  
in milk, 415  
in perspiration, 346  
in urine, Bell-Doisy method, 776  
mixtures, 60  
monopotassium dihydrogen, 60  
non-conjugated, in urine, 777  
preparation for buffer solutions, 873, 874  
primary, 68  
secondary, 68  
solutions required for analysis, 896  
stellar crystals in urine, 788  
tertiary, 68  
total, in urine, 778  
value in buffering, 77  
variation in season, 638
- Phosphatids, 202
- Phosphon, 222  
test, 355
- Phosphocarnic acid, 367
- Phospholipidase, 453
- Phospholipids, 202, 396, 416, 453, 462, 473, 511, 527, 667, 773  
nitrogenous, 207  
relation to nucleic acid, 567
- Phosphomolybdic acid, 776
- Phosphoprotids, 300, 337, 473, 667  
phosphorus content, 338
- Phosphoric acid, 207, 323, 324, 369, 396, 418, 498, 677, 773  
and glucids, 142  
different kinds, 227  
dissociation, 43  
in lecithin, 205  
meta, 227  
ortho, 227  
ester of glucose, 165
- Phosphorized fats, 193, 513
- Phosphorus, 133, 134, 337, 347, 401, 447, 518, 566, 625, 635, 639, 650, 666  
amount ingested daily, 566  
Benedict's standard solution, 869  
blood, 837  
bone, 352  
content of eggs, 417  
of milk, 417  
excretion, 566  
form of, for utilization, 567  
in child's blood, 566  
in chromatin, 567  
in diet, 575  
in U. S., 568  
in fat formation, 567  
in maintenance of neutrality, 568  
in mammary gland, 347  
in sugar metabolism, 567  
in urine reaction, 568  
maintenance demand, 566  
muscle, 347  
percentage in protids, 338  
poisoning, 240, 265, 353, 374, 457, 516, 531  
red, 265  
retention after certain diets, 567  
test, 336, 355  
to produce liver lesions, 896  
yellow, 265, 896
- Phosphotungstic acid, 254, 709, 811
- Photosynthesis, 128  
artificial, 129
- Phrenosinic acid, 203
- Phthalic buffer solutions, Clark, 877  
solution, 873
- Phthalein, 59. See also *Phenolsulphonephthalein*.  
test for kidney efficiency, 697, 896
- Phthalic anhydrid, 873
- Physical structure and chemical constitution, 171
- Physiological action and optical relations, 182  
chemistry, 18  
economy in nutrition, 310  
funnel, 881
- Physiologically normal saline, 897
- Phytin, 368, 638
- Phytosterol, 209, 466, 474  
acetate, 209
- Picramic acid, 362, 726  
formula, 157
- Picric acid, 153, 709, 896  
Benedict's method of purification, 867  
formula, 157  
in Esbach's reagent, 226  
protid precipitant, 226  
test for glucids, 158
- Picric-picrate solution of Benedict, 868
- Pie, caloric value, 591
- Pig, heat production, 606  
thyroid, iodin content, 571
- Pigment, 262  
bile, 379, 469  
blood, 344, 377, 380  
thyroid, iodin content, 571  
spectroscopic test, 381  
bone, 353  
butter-fat, 379  
common form (complex), 739  
effect of digestive juice, 379  
egg-fat, 379  
fat, 379  
gall-stone, 477  
hair, 343, 344  
human fat, 379  
in malaria, 344  
melanotic sarcoma, 344  
oxidation to melanin, 532  
plant, 273, 378, 379, 739  
prevention of destruction by adsorption, 110  
urinary, 379, 739  
abnormal, 742
- Pigmentation, 531  
inheritance of, 344, 345
- Pilocarpin, 182, 346
- Pineal, 651, 662
- Pineapple reaction, 579
- Pine-needle protid, 312
- Piotrovski's test. See *Biuret test*.
- Piperazin, 280
- Pipette, blood, of Folin-Wu, 824  
calibration, 61, 84  
care, 84  
contain, 61  
deliver, 61  
Hempel, 292  
Mohr, 60  
Ostwald-Folin, 61, 72, 687  
calibration, 88  
technic, 906  
tip-off, 61
- Piqure, 370, 501, 858
- Piria, 236  
test for tyrosin, 236
- Pithing of frog, 371
- Pituitary, 354, 499, 627, 655, 658, 661  
anterior lobe, 662  
posterior lobe, 662
- Pituitrin, 270, 501, 651, 655, 659  
tartrate, 655
- Placenta, 653
- Plant, difference from animals, 326  
globulins, 300, 312  
pigments, 273, 378, 379  
substances in muscle, 368]
- Plasma, blood, 313  
defined, 63  
lecithin, 511  
volume related to total blood volume, 71
- Plateau, 112  
curve of gastric acidity, 444  
law, 112
- Platinum black, surface phenomena, 96  
catalysis compared to peroxidase, 113  
colloidal, 880  
in hydrogen electrode, 51
- Plethora, basis of specific dynamic action, 554

- Plethysmograph used in blood chemistry, 63  
 Pleurisy, 671, 695  
 Plimmer, 215, 317, 341, 582, 737, 789  
   method for glucuronic acid, 763  
   tannic acid solution, 900  
 Pluriglandular conditions, 650, 651, 657  
 Pneumonia, 340, 457, 673, 680, 695, 712, 731, 741, 744, 811  
   resolution of exudate, 374  
 $\rho$ OH, 39  
 Poikilothermal animals, 606  
   enzymes, 131  
 Poincaré, 21  
 Poisons, detoxication, 137  
 Polarimeter, 181  
 Polariscope, 178  
   Laurent's, 180  
   tube, 179  
   use of lead acetate, 224  
 Polarization of molecules, 110  
 Polarized light, 171, 172, 357  
   analogy with sound, 178, 179  
 Polarizer, 178, 181  
 Polenski, 201  
 Poliomyelitis, 240, 712, 719  
 Polishing rice, 545  
 Polyglucid, 149, 150, 185  
   effect of acids, 164  
 Polyglucidase, 453  
 Polymerization, 150  
   of glucose, 508  
 Polyneuritis, 544, 551, 626  
   pigeon, 545  
 Polypeptid, 497  
 Polypeptid, 339, 500  
 Polyphenols, 710  
 Polysaccharids, 149  
 Polyuria, 658, 671, 681, 695  
 Polyvalent ions, 222  
 Porridge, caloric value, 590  
 Posner, 214  
 Postum, caloric value, 590  
 Potassium, 134, 398, 565, 774  
   aceto-acetate, 863  
   acid phthalate, 897  
   and vagus nerve function, 565  
   chlorate, 379  
   chlorid, 398  
   normal solution, 896  
   potential difference of ions, 55  
   cyanid, toxicity, 714  
   dichromate, half-normal solution, 723  
   standard solution, 896  
   entropy, 585  
   ferricyanid, 897  
   ferrocyanid, absorption, 491  
   protid precipitant, 226  
   in diet, 575  
   in fasting, 565  
   in urine, 782  
   ionic mobility, 565  
   oxalate, 897  
   anticoagulant, 65  
   permanganate, standard solution, 895  
   persulphate, 745  
   phthalate, acid, 873  
   relation to Na and to Ca, 565  
   to sodium excretion, 565  
   retention during formation of new tissue, 565  
   in vegetable diets, 565  
   sodium tartrate (Rochelle salt), 155  
   test, 356  
   thiocyanate, 897  
 Potato, 547, 640  
   calcium content, 563  
   Potato, iron content, 568  
   juice, iso-electric point, 909  
   phosphoric acid in, 418  
   reaction, 579  
   salt content, 561  
   starch, 139  
   grains, 143  
   sweet, 920  
   white, 641  
   Potential difference, 51, 52  
   in colloidal solutions, 99  
   fall described, 52  
 Potentiometer, 51, 52  
   apparatus, 55  
   Bovie's iso-electric point graph, 105  
   Leeds and Northrup, 56  
    $\rho$ H determinations, instructions, 56  
 Pound, equivalent in kilo, 230  
 Pratt, G. P., 729  
 Pratt, J. P., 653  
 Precipitation and iso-electric point, 104  
   of egg-white, intermediate compounds, 108  
 Pregnancy, 395, 475, 697, 703, 704, 796, 811, 830  
   acid-base balance, 577  
   creatin, 360  
   metabolism, 620  
   test by ninhydrin, 235  
   toxemias, 531, 671  
 Premortal rise of nitrogen, 565  
 Preservation of blood, 65  
 Preservative, fluorin, 348  
   food, 227  
 Pressure, converted to standard reading, 296  
   gas, 73  
   osmotic, 113-118  
 Primary albumose, 339  
   alcohol, 140, 147  
   phosphate, 68  
 Prisms, crossed, 180  
   polariscope, 178  
 Prolamins, 299, 309, 311, 312  
 Prolin, 270, 272, 301, 305, 311, 315, 377, 496, 518, 533  
   and ninhydrin, 235  
   copper compound, 272  
   formula, 271  
   in albumin, 257  
   in globulin, 257  
   test, 272  
 Promoter, definition, 93  
 Propanol, 910  
 Propionic acid, 241, 242, 259, 273, 521, 529  
 Proportions, body maintained, 375  
 Propylaldehyd, 523  
 Propylene oxid, 177  
 Prosecretin, 460  
 Prostate, 796  
   obstruction, 811  
 Prostectomy, 797  
 Prosthetic groups, 300, 318  
 Protalbumose, 232, 339, 749  
 Protamin, 269, 299, 300, 322, 333  
   not antigen, 321  
   precipitated by protids, 301  
   table, amino-acid content, 301  
 Proteans, 338  
 Protection, chemical, 137  
 Protein, Mulder's term, 215. See *Protids*.  
 Protose, 797  
 Protidase, 453  
 Protids (proteins), 127, 130, 131, 215  
   absorption, 488  
   Acree-Rosenheim, 307  
   Adamkiewicz's, 35  
   adequate in food, 580  
 Protids, adsorption by kaolin, 750  
   alcohol soluble, 311, 312  
   amino-nitrogen in, 289  
   analyses, 301, 305, 311, 315  
   and fat production, 260  
   as secretion product, 313  
   base, 577  
   basis of tests, 274  
   biuret test, 281  
   buffer value in cell, 78  
   caloric value, 603  
   of oxygen with, 595  
   calories, 610, 612  
   characteristics, 300  
   chemical structure, 216  
   circulating, 527  
   classification, 299  
   coagulation by alcohol, 219  
   colloidal nature, 339  
   combined with glucid, 142  
   conjugated, 300, 316, 376  
   critical point, 314  
   crystalline, 300, 314  
   daily loss, 552  
   definition, 339  
   denatured, 230  
   deposit, 527  
   derived, 338  
   dialysis, 219  
   diet and urea, 694  
   efficiency, 617  
   high, 556, 615, 712, 720, 740, 745, 810  
   in sprue, 640  
   difference from other foods, 527  
   in nutrition, 311  
   distribution, 300  
   effect on gall-stone formation, 478  
   in diet on urine volume, 670  
   egg, chemical composition, 317  
   Esbach's method, 753  
   excretion of products, 666  
   extracellular, 313  
   fate, 532  
   foreign, 359, 574  
   functions, 527  
   glucid compound, 165, 317  
   graphic summary, 298  
   Hopkins-Cole, 307  
   hydrolysis, 228, 230  
   practical application, 233  
   products, 338  
   in cerebrospinal fluid, 399  
   incomplete, 304, 533, 538  
   in milk, method, 912  
   in nutrition, 552  
   in urine, 220, 747  
   iodized, 574  
   ion, 313  
   iso-electric point and coagulation, 314  
   Kjeldahl method, 755  
   Levene-Rouiller tryptophan test, 308  
   levatoratory, 171  
   Liebermann's, 307  
   low and high diets, 795  
   metabolism, 587  
   graphic summary, 553  
   molecule, 257  
   muscle, 230  
   native, 313  
   nitrogen portion, function, 131  
   nitrogenous portion, heat producing, 131  
   of cell, 747  
   pigment bearer, 379  
   plant, 299, 300  
   iso-electric points, 312  
   precipitant, Folin's, 884  
   Van Slyke's work, 227



- Protids precipitated by alcohol,** 219  
 by Almèn's method, 227  
 by bichlorid, 224  
 by cupric sulphate, 225  
 by Esbach's method, 226  
 by ferric chlorid, 224  
 by ferrocyanid, 226  
 by metaphosphoric acid, 227  
 by picric acid, 226  
 by salicylates, 227  
 by sodium tungstate, 227  
 by tannic acid, 227  
 by trichloroacetic acid, 226  
**precipitation,** 223  
 producing fat, 516  
 glycogen, 496  
**proportion of body weight in** man, 527  
**Quick's method,** 752  
**racemized,** 182  
**respiratory quotient,** 604, 605  
**Rosenheim's test,** 307  
**salt,** 313, 430  
**scheme for analysis of hydrolysis products,** 231  
**simple,** 299  
 not antigen, 321  
**sparing action,** 555, 556, 616, 720  
**storage in body,** 527  
**stroma of cell, value as buffer,** 78  
**summary,** 297, 340  
**swelling,** 430  
**synthesis,** 278, 279, 281  
 per day, 577  
**temperature of coagulation,** 221  
**total of milk of man and animals,** 415  
**toxicity of different fractions,** 233  
**tryptophan reaction,** 307  
**utilization,** 527  
**water from digested,** 346  
**Protidtemns,** 130, 230, 338  
**and ninhydrin,** 235  
 fate, 494.  
 not antigens, 321  
**Protocatechuic acid,** 441  
**Protoplasm,** 215  
 bacterium, iso-electric point, 909  
 (B. coli communis), iso-electric point, 909  
 plant, iso-electric point, 909  
**Prune, caloric value,** 590  
**reaction,** 579  
**Prussian blue,** 491  
**Pryde, J.,** 507  
**Pseudo-alkalinity in urine,** 680  
 test, 680  
**Pseudoglobulin,** 218  
**Pseudohermaphroditism,** 662  
**Pseudopodia and metaprotid,** 230  
**Psychic stimulus, gastric,** 431  
**Ptomains,** 256  
 poisoning, 256  
**Ptyalin,** 187, 422, 423  
 co-enzyme, 426  
 effect of ions, 426  
 optimal reaction, 426, 909  
**Puberty goiter,** 644  
**Pucher, G. W.,** 163  
**Pulp, tooth,** 348  
**Purgatives, saline,** 116  
**Purified diets,** 538  
**Purin,** 318, 323-327, 375, 534  
 chemistry, 328  
 deaminization by nitrous acid, 365  
 diet, 735  
 enzymes, 332  
 escaping oxidation, 332  
**Purin, excretion,** 334, 666  
 high in diet, 810  
 methyl, 327  
 muscle, 364  
 nomenclature of ring, 328  
 nucleus, 328  
 pathology, 365  
 test, 337  
 total excretion, 332  
 trioxo, 709  
 urinary, 708  
**Purin-free diet,** 708  
**Purinases,** 332  
**Purple, Tyrrhean,** 367  
**Purpurin,** 742  
**Pus,** 374, 680, 748  
**Putrefaction,** 207, 261, 265, 266, 270, 274, 277, 674, 727, 745  
**Putrescin,** 256, 531, 911  
**Pyelitis,** 674, 680  
**Pyknometer,** 682  
**Pyrex glassware,** 60  
**Pyrimidin,** 323-326, 534, 545  
 chemistry, 328  
 nucleus, 328  
 silver salt, 327  
**Pyro,** 264  
**Pyrocatechin,** 391, 393, 441  
**Pyrogallie acid,** 904  
**Pyrogallol,** 264, 764  
**Pyrrol, 354, 377, 378, 469, 786**  
 ring, 273, 274  
**Pyrrolidin,** 253  
 carboxylic acid, 253  
 ring, 267, 270, 272, 274  
 synthesis, 272, 273  
**Pyruvic acid,** 169, 170, 243, 244, 528, 529, 912  
**QUARTZ glass,** 639  
 lamp, 128  
 mercury vapor lamp, 635  
 optical activity, 171  
 vessels for distillation, 36  
**Quastel,** 339  
**Quick, A. J.,** 752  
 critique on Esbach method, 753  
 method for protid, 752  
**Quinhydrin,** 394  
**Quinin,** 225  
**Quinolin,** 225  
**Quinon,** 394  
**RABBIT, method of obtaining**  
 blood, 503  
**Racemic amino-acids,** 529  
**Racemization,** 171, 181, 182, 275  
**Rachitic diet, Steenbock,** 855  
**Rachitis. See Rickets.**  
**Radasch,** 351, 432  
 graph of oxyntic cells, 433  
**Radio-active elements, absence**  
 from body, 134  
 substances, 31, 32  
**Radium,** 674  
**Raffinose,** 150  
**Raisin, iron content,** 568  
**Raiziss,** 780  
**Rancidity,** 198  
**Raoult, F. M., cryoscopy,** 47  
**Rapport, D.,** 516  
**Ratio, carbonate,** 76  
 fatal, 496  
 protid-nitrogen, 287  
**Ration, balanced,** 580  
**Ratner,** 220  
**Rats, albino, supplied,** 855  
**Ray, extraordinary,** 180  
 ordinary, 180  
**Rays of light,** 127  
**Reaction, 773. See also Test.**  
 Adamkiewicz's, 306  
**Reaction, bromin for tryptophan,** 308  
 caused by loss of CO<sub>2</sub>, 399  
 di-azo, 367, 368  
 gastric secretion, 428  
 Hopkins-Cole, 307  
 Liebermann's, 211, 307  
 Molisch, 166  
 of blood, 66  
 modified by preservative, 66  
 of body fluids, 579  
 of fluids, 36, 460, 909  
 of stomach, 425  
 of tissues, 426  
 of urine, 675  
 optimal, 909  
 quantitative expression, 38  
 range of from 0.1 normal H<sup>+</sup> to 0.1 normal OH<sup>-</sup>, 40  
**Read,** 211  
**Reaktionsgeschwindigkeit-Temperatur,** 449  
**Receptor, oxygen,** 113  
**Recessiveness,** 345  
**Record type syringe,** 64  
**Rectal feeding,** 492  
**Red blood-corpuscles,** 376  
 rays, 127  
**Reduced oxalic acid,** 307  
**Reducing power and sugar utilization,** 509  
 substances, cerebrospinal fluid, 399  
 in urine, 756  
**Reduction,** 529  
**Reflexes affected by methylpurins,** 327  
**Reflux condenser,** 290, 410  
**Refractometry,** 220  
**Rehfuß,** 435, 436, 443, 480  
**Reichert,** 318  
**Reichert-Meissl number,** 201  
**Reitmeyer,** 285  
 bulb, 285  
**Rejuvenescence,** 654  
**Renal diabetes,** 719  
 efficiency test, 729  
 function, 773  
 test by phenol red, 697  
 by urea, 697  
 glycosuria, 370, 504, 760  
**Rennin,** 428, 448, 455  
 action, 451  
 and pepsin, 450  
 table of action, 451  
**Repair function of foods,** 131  
 processes and phosphorus, 566  
**Reproduction and vitamin deficiency,** 544  
**Reproductive vitamin,** 548  
**Reserve, alkali,** 69  
**Residual gastric analysis,** 436  
**Residuum, effect of disease,** 447  
 gastric, 431, 436, 438, 447  
**Resins,** 151  
**Resistance box,** 45  
 electrical, 45  
 related to conductance, 45  
 to infection, 374  
**Resorcinol,** 673, 869  
 and tyrosin test, 236  
**Respiration, water excreted by,** 346  
**Respiratory center,** 81  
 diseases and vitamin, 550  
 quotient, 595, 603  
 and calories, 612  
 and insulin, 617, 619  
 change on feeding glucose, 616  
 rate and urine reaction, 677  
**Restaurant menus,** 589  
**Retention,** 224, 322, 346, 695, 697, 773, 796, 797, 835, 837  
 of base, 575



- Retention, phosphate, 680  
 Reticulo - endothelial system, block by adsorption, 110  
 Reticulo-endothelium, 469  
 Retinitis pigmentosa, 344  
 R. G. T., 449  
 Rheostat, 55, 126  
 Rheumatism, 551, 713, 742  
 Rhodonates, 776  
 Rhubarb, 463, 672  
   reaction, 579  
 Rhythmical structures, 133  
 Ribose, 325, 335, 368, 509  
 Rice, 624, 625  
   brown, 626  
   calcium content, 563  
   caloric value, 590  
   iron content, 568  
   polished, 545  
   red, 626  
   salt content, 561  
   starch, 139  
 Rich, 469  
 Richards, A. N., 667  
 Richards, M. B., 567  
 Riche, calorimeter, 588  
 Ricin, 540  
 Ricinelaic acid, 198  
 Ricinoleic acid, 98, 540  
 Rickets, 128, 133, 353, 543, 551, 552, 564, 567, 632, 636, 681, 837  
   adult, 543  
   calcion, 50  
   diet, 637  
   experimental, 854  
   healed, 633  
   of wild animals, 632  
   prevention, 637  
   symptoms, 854  
 Rider for balance, 86  
 Rigor, heat, 371  
   mortis, 564  
   effect of magnesium, 565  
 Ring, aromatic, 368  
   rupture of, 270, 271  
 Ringer, A. I., 521, 619  
 Ringer, S., 397  
   solution, 397, 647  
 Ripening, chemistry, 419  
 Roaf, 379  
   method for peptic activity, 445  
 Roberts, Sir Wm., 752  
   reagent, 897  
   test, 752  
 Robertson, 190, 214, 220, 341, 535, 582, 655  
 Robin, C., 139  
 Roch, C., 751  
 Rochelle salt, 155  
 Rockwood, 711, 841  
 Roentgen-ray analysis, 35  
 Rogoff, 647  
 Ronchese, method for urinary ammonia, 707  
 Rosaic acid, 742  
 Rose, W. C., 341, 403, 535, 789  
 Rosenberger, 255  
 Rosenfeld, 520, 535  
 Rosenheim, 214, 307  
   test, 307  
 Rosenheim and Drummond's method, 780  
 Rotation, specific, 181  
 Roth, 622  
   apparatus, 599  
   metabolism method, 600  
 Rothberg, V. E., 827  
 Rothberg - Evans' blood-sugar method, 827  
 Rothchild, 829, 830  
 Roughage, 417, 580  
 Rous, P., 426, 469, 480  
 Rowe, 190, 495, 509  
 Rowntree, 346  
 R/O, 603  
   defined, 595  
 Rubner, 615  
 Rule, slide-rule, 41  
 Running, effect on metabolism, 618  
 Rye, 270, 310  
   starch grains, 143  
 SACCHARIC acid, 149, 507, 912  
   preparation, 763  
   reduction to glucuronic, 763  
 Saccharose, 149, 166  
 Sajous, 664  
 Salad, caloric value, 591  
 Salicylates, 227, 766  
 Saline cathartics, 486  
   physiological normal, 897  
   purgatives, 116  
 Saliva, 187, 188, 316, 335, 422, 423, 461, 666  
   glucid in, 142  
   mucin, 165  
   place of action, 424  
   reaction of mixed, 909  
 Salivary efficiency, quantitative determination, 427  
   glands, 684  
 Salkowski, 210, 735  
 Sallowness due to avitaminosis, 551  
 Salmin, 254, 269, 301, 322  
 Salmon, metabolism, 532  
 Salol, 228, 691  
 Salomen, 534  
 Salt, 132, 560  
   causing melting, 44  
   excretion, 667  
   formation and iso-electric point, 104  
   in diet, 850  
   in milk, 415  
   inorganic, 133  
   in bile, 464  
   intake in dietaries in U. S., 561  
   NaCl, lattice structure, 35  
   osmotic pressure, 118  
   table-, with iodine, 644  
 Salt-free diet, 561  
   treatment for hypertension, 561, 562  
 Salting out, 122, 123, 124  
 Salt-pork, 581  
 Salt-rising bread, 169  
 Salvesen, 389  
 Samet, J., 756  
 Sanborne - Benedict apparatus, 600  
 Sand (urates), 713  
 Sander, F. V., method of preserving blood, 65  
 Sandiford, 619, 620, 622  
 Sandwich, caloric value, 591  
 Santonin, 672, 897  
 Saponin, 901  
 Sarcina ventriculi and fuscescens, 444  
 Sarcode, 215  
 Sarco-lactic acid, 370  
 Sarcolemma, 357  
 Sarcoma, 796  
   melanotic, 263  
   pigment, 344  
 Sausage, caloric value, 591  
 Scallop, source of glycogen, 186  
 Scarlet fever, 744  
   ointment, 194  
 Scatol, 276. See also *Skatol*.  
 Scharlach-R test for fat, 194  
 Schiff's aldehyde reagent, 897  
 Schittenhelm, 711  
 Schlesinger, W., 741  
   test for urobilin, 741  
 Schmiedeberg, 569  
 Schneider, 82, 565  
 Schryver, 341  
 Schuele, 438  
 Schuetz, E., 446  
   enzyme law, 446  
 Schweitzer's reagent, 189, 897  
 Science, Huxley's definition, 17  
 Scleroprotids, 299, 301, 508  
   affected by pigmentation, ochronosis, 344  
 Scorbutus. See *Scurvy*.  
 Scorched sugar, 508  
 Scott-Wilson reagent, 772  
   solution, 864  
 Screening by colloidal iron, 128  
 Scurvy, 546, 547, 551, 640  
   experimental, 854  
   in Arctic and Antarctic explorations, 641  
   infantile, 546, 642  
   in Germany and Ireland, 641  
   in military campaigns, 641  
   in Prussia, 642  
 S. D. A., 553  
 Searle apparatus for surface tension, 120  
 Sea-water, reaction, 579  
   salt content compared with that of blood, 27, 562  
 Sea-weed, composition, 150  
 Sebum, 345  
 Secondary alcohol, 140, 147  
   amin, 363  
   phosphate, 68  
 Secretin, 432, 459, 460, 463  
 Secretion, 463  
   theories of, 667  
 Secretions, alimentary, in feces, 132  
 Sedgwick, J. P., 420, 810  
 Sediment, urinary, 674  
 Seelman, J. J., 774  
   method for chlorid in urine, 774  
   reagents, 897  
 Selivanoff's reagent, 898  
   test, 164, 165, 372, 760  
 Selling, L., 805  
 Semipermeable membrane, 114  
 Sensitization, 540  
   photie, 378  
 Separatory funnel, 728  
 Serin, 245, 247, 279, 281, 301, 305, 311, 315, 496  
   contributor to glucose, 246  
   crystal form, 245, 246  
   in albumin, 257  
   in globulin, 257  
   in nucleoprotid, 246  
   in silk-proteid, 246  
   reduction to alanin, 245  
   source, 246  
 Serum absorbed from intestine, 483  
   albumin, denaturated, iso-electric point, 909  
   blood, 217, 218  
   coagulation temperature, 222  
   iso-electric point, 107  
   potassium, 134  
   chlorid, 835  
   defined, 63  
   protid, 257, 720  
 Sesame oil, 549  
 Settling, size of particles, 98  
 Severinghaus, 501, 522  
 Sex dependent upon lecithin, 204  
   glands, 643, 647, 650, 654, 655, 660  
   role of nucleoprotid in determination, 322  
 Sex-linked, definition, 347  
   development and epiphysis, 651  
   distribution of sulphur, 343

- SH sulphur, 779  
in urine, method, 781  
Shaffer, 364, 511, 515, 522-524, 535  
Shaffer-Hartmann blood sugar method, 820  
Shagreen, 347  
Shaking, device for, 705  
Shedd, O. M., 394  
Sheep's thyroid, iodine content, 571  
Sherman, 161, 405, 417, 420, 562, 563, 568, 575, 582, 637  
Sherwin, 789  
Shift, anion, 79, 80  
chloride, 79, 80  
Shivering and glycogen, 504, 505  
Shock, albumose, 489  
insulin, 503  
pepton, 488  
Shohl, 575, 582  
Shredded wheat, caloric value, 590  
salt content, 561  
Sight impairment in Fröhlich syndrome, 656  
Siler, 628  
Silicon, 134, 575  
entropy, 585  
Silk gelatin, 305  
protid, 246  
Silver lactate solution, 883  
mercuric cyanide, 864  
nitrate, 709  
ammoniacal, 898  
decinormal, 354  
solutions, 898  
thiocyanate, 776  
urate, 715  
Simple goiter, 644  
Simpson, 671, 718  
Siphon barometer, 295  
Sitting, metabolism affected by, 618  
Skatol, 276, 277, 308, 742  
sulphuric acid, 277  
Skatoxyl, 278  
glucuronate, 278  
Skin, 684  
bronzing, 646  
chemistry, 345  
excretory function, 132  
nitrogen loss through, 552  
pigments, 344, 532  
silicon in, 134  
water excreted by, 346  
Slater, 603  
Slide-rule, 41, 443, 805, 907  
Small stomach of Pavlov, 434  
Small's Lintner soluble starch, 898  
Smith, M., 821  
Smith, T., 220, 640  
Smith, W., 507  
Snake-bite, 223  
Soap, 487  
blood, 511  
calcium, 567  
Sodium, 50  
Sodium, 134, 397, 774  
aceto-acetate, 75  
alcoholate, 727  
amalgam, 898  
and potassium tartrate (Rochelle salt), 155  
antagonism of potassium, 565  
beta-naphthoquinon-sulphonate, 819  
bi-sulphite solution, 769  
carbonate, 639  
alkali standard, 88, 89  
in blood, 68  
chloride, 132, 398, 401, 429, 432, 560, 772, 773  
absorption, 484  
Sodium chlorid and muscle, 562  
blood, 132, 834  
excretion, 132, 667, 773  
in chloride shift, 80  
in cooking, 219  
in milk, 415  
in perspiration, 346  
rate of absorption, 483  
required amount daily, 561  
solubility, 218  
solutions, 898  
special pH solution, 899  
toxicity, 218  
cholate, 467  
citrate, buffer, 872  
cobalti-nitrite, 898  
test for potassium, 356  
ethoxid, 727  
ethylate, 898  
excretion in fasting, 565  
fluorid in blood chemistry, 65  
glycocholate, 462  
hydrogen carbonate in making standard alkali, 88  
hydrosulphite, 249, 900  
hydroxid, buffer solution, 874  
decinormal solution, 871  
standard, 91  
hypobromite, 890  
in blood, 839  
in body fluids, 565  
in diet, 575  
in urine, 782  
line, 380  
metaborate, 764  
nitrite solution, 898  
nitroferrocyanid, 362, 726  
nitroprussid. See *Sodium nitroferrocyanid*.  
permutit, 704  
phosphate buffer, 872  
normal solution, 898  
poisoning, 639  
pyro-antimonate, 839  
pyroborate, 764  
sulphite, 250  
taurocholate, 462  
test, 355  
thiosulphate, 900  
decolorizing agent for iodine solutions, 144  
tungstate, formula, 227  
protid precipitant, 227  
urate, 534, 708  
Sollmann, 190, 582  
Solubility and iso-electric point, 104  
Soluble starch, Lintner's, 146, 898  
Solute, 48  
Solutions, colloidal, osmotic pressure, 118  
particles suspended in, 98  
conductivity, 45  
molar, osmotic pressure, 118  
normal, 37  
standard, preparation, 84, 88  
Solvent, 48  
Soporifics, 673  
Sorbitol, 149, 150, 153  
Sorbosc, 174  
Sørensen, 37, 67, 92, 245, 448, 733  
borate buffers, 878  
citrate buffer solution, 875  
colorimetric method for hydron concentration, 59  
formol titration method, 287  
free gastric acidity test, 442  
glycin buffer solution, 875  
phosphate buffers, 877  
solutions, 871  
standard solutions showing buffering, 67  
synthesis of prolin, 270  
Soup, caloric value, 590  
Souring, milk, 168  
Soxhlet, F., 409  
method for fat, 407  
Soy-bean, 625  
meal, 418  
oil, 549  
protid, 312  
Spaghetti, caloric value, 591  
Specific dynamic action, 530, 552, 553, 555, 603, 616  
dependence upon thyroid, 553  
fat, 615  
of glucids and lipids, 553  
gravity, calculation, 683  
definition, 681  
method for urine, 682  
of urine, 681  
rotatory power, 181  
Spectroscope, 163  
Bial's test, 761  
d-line, 163  
direct vision, 380  
E-line, 163  
test for blood, 381  
blood pigments, 380, 381  
Speed, factor in metabolism, 618  
Spermaceti, 193  
Spermatozoa, 254, 269, 300  
Sphingomyelin, 203, 208  
Sphingosin, 203  
Spiegler, E., 752  
solution, 899  
test, 752  
Spinach, 631  
caloric value, 591  
iron content, 568  
Spinal fluid, 220, 397  
puncture, technic, 398  
Spirometer, 598  
Spleen, creatin content, 360  
extract, 463  
iron, 569  
Splenectomy, 569  
Sprew. See *Sprue*.  
Sprue, 639  
Squibb's separatory funnel, 728  
St. Martin, Alexis, 433, 434  
St. Vitus' dance, 573  
Stabilization of colloidal states, 97  
Stadie, 389  
Staircase effect in nitrogen of blood, Myers, 805, 806  
Stalagmometer, Traube's, 118  
Standard acid, 37  
ammonium sulphate solution, calculation, 701  
gas measurements, 73  
metabolism, 606  
nitrogen solution, Folin's, 887  
for blood analysis, 800  
preparation, 847  
solutions, calculations, 90  
preparation, 84, 88  
Standards for colorimetric determinations, 59  
Stanley, L. L., 664  
Starch, 127, 139, 146, 149, 151, 165, 183, 378, 419, 422, 453, 604  
animal, 131, 167, 369  
caloric value, 603  
cell, diagram, 146  
chemical structure, 145  
corn, grains, 143  
diameter of molecule, 98  
digestion, 460  
distinguished from protid, 142  
effect of heat on iodine adsorption, 144  
from glucose, 129  
grain, physical structure, 145  
hydrolysis, 144, 145

- Starch in foods, 405  
 in peas, 494  
 iodine effect, 142  
 Lintner's, 146  
 microscopic structure of grains, 142  
 molecular weight, 145  
 paste, 144  
 potato, 146  
   grains, 143  
 products of hydrolysis, 146, 147  
 raw, digestible, 146  
 roasted, 520  
 rye, grains, 143  
 soluble, 146  
   Small's method, 898  
 specific dynamic action, 616  
 structure, 187  
   wheat, grains, 143  
 Starch-free diet, 558  
 Starch-iodine test, 144  
 Starling, 347, 493  
 Starvation. *See Fasting.*  
 Steak, caloric value, 591  
   hydrolysis, 230  
   iron content, 568  
   phosphorus content, 417  
 Steapsin, 453  
 Stearic acid, 519  
   in butter fat, 200  
   in egg-yolk, 207  
   in human fat, 199  
   in liver, 206  
 Stearid, 496  
 Steenbock, 548, 634, 637  
   rachitic diet, 855  
 Steero cubes, analysis, 358  
 Stefánsson, 557, 640  
 Steinach, 653, 664  
 Stellar crystals (calcium phosphate) in urine, 787  
 Stenosis, pyloric, 481  
 Stercobilin, 470, 739, 740  
 Sterility, 549  
 Sterilization, 654  
   of food, 581, 641  
 Sterols, 193, 209, 396, 466, 666  
 Stewart, C. P., 339, 647, 664  
 Stiven, D., 505  
 Stokes' solution, 381, 899  
 Stoll, 378  
 Stomach, absorption in, 481  
   acidity, 442  
     free, 440, 441  
     normal, 431  
     origin, 432, 433  
     total, 440  
   analysis, collection of samples, 433, 434  
     of contents, 373  
   continuous secretion, 431  
   digestion in, 428  
   effect of hydrochloric acid on, 429  
   fat, 452  
   hyperacidity, 460  
   motility, 439, 447, 457  
   peptic activity, 445  
   quantitative expression for peptic activity, 446  
   reaction, relation to urinary acidity, 675  
   Roentgen picture, 424  
   secretion, total, 447  
     variations, 431  
   small, of Pavlov, 434  
   total acidity, 431  
 Stone, W. S., 796  
 Stones (urate), 713  
 Stool, clay-color, 471  
 Storage battery, 56  
   effect on vitamin, 551  
   fat, 513  
   of food substances in body, 527  
 Strain, effect on metabolism, 618  
 Stransky, 550  
 Strawberry reaction, 579  
 Stricture, pyloric, 460  
 Strong, 626  
   acids, 42  
 Strontium, rickets, 635  
 Strouse, S., 820  
 Structure maintained by glucids, 141  
 Structure-producing substances, 215  
 Strychnin, 395  
   as bitter principle, 432  
   group, 544  
 Sturin, 301  
 Styptic action of aluminium, 225  
 Subcutaneous fat, 199  
 Submicroscopic particles, sizes, 98  
 Substance "X" of Mattill, 548  
 Substantia nigra, pigment, 344  
 Substrate, 422  
 Succinic acid, 250  
   formula, 377  
   acid-borax buffer solutions of Kolthoff, 878  
 Sucrose, 453, 461  
 Sucrose, 149, 150, 151, 166, 183, 452, 453  
   absorption, 482  
   effect of strong and weak acids on hydrolysis, 43  
   metabolism, 587  
   structural formula, 184  
 Sudan-III, test for fat, 194  
 Sudoriferous glands, 345  
   drugs, 346  
 Suet, 193, 199, 512  
 Sugar, 127, 139, 165, 719  
   aldehydic, 507  
   amino. *See Glucosamin.*  
   artichoke, 148  
   artificially synthesized, 173  
   beet, 149, 150, 183, 367  
   Benedict's solution, 868  
   blood, 502, 504, 820  
     character, 820  
     fate, 507  
   cane, 149, 150, 166, 183  
   center, 370  
   cerebrospinal, 399  
   condensed from aldehyde, 128  
   content of candy, 418, 419  
   effect of hydriion concentration on hydrolysis, 43  
     of iodine, 144  
   excess in diet, 581  
   formation, 128, 129  
   fruit, 148  
   gamma, 177  
   grape, 148  
   in brain material, 397  
   in normal urine, 759  
     diagnostic value, 757  
   in ripening, 419  
   invert, 167  
   metabolism, 244, 587, 657, 658  
     compared to fermentation, 168  
   milk, 183  
   muscle, 368  
   of normal urine, 756  
   optical relation, 171  
   oxidation, 507  
   oxydic, 507  
   possible isomers, 173  
   scorched, 508  
   simple, table, 152  
   (sucrose), salt content, 561  
   table, 149, 166  
   tolerance, 504  
     for fructose, 167  
   utilization, 171  
     and reducing action, 509  
 Sugar-free diet, 558  
 Sullivan, 247, 249  
 Sulphanilic acid, 763  
 Sulphate, 467, 773  
   benzidine solution, 870  
   conjugating, 276  
   etheral, 261, 276, 277, 577, 773  
     in urine, method, 781  
   in perspiration, 346  
   inorganic, 248  
     in urine, method, 781  
   rate of absorption, 483  
   urinary, 785  
 Sulph-hydryl sulphur, 779  
 Sulphion, 222  
   rôle in anion shift, 80  
 Sulphonol, 743  
 Sulphosalicylic acid, 899  
   protid precipitant, 227  
 Sulphur, 133, 134, 401, 500, 518, 773  
   and colloidal nitrogen, 735  
   Benedict's reagent, 869  
   content of bile, 466  
   cystin, 302  
   dioxide, preparation, 899  
   entropy, 585  
   excretion, 667  
   graphic summary, 578  
   in amino-acid, 246  
   in diet, 575  
   in human hair, 302  
   in urine, 779  
   interchange with oxygen, 246  
   lead blackening, 302  
   loosely combined, 302  
   mercaptan, 302  
   neutral, 773  
     in urine, 779  
   sex distribution, 343  
   test for bile-salts, 468  
   total, 773  
   unoxidized, 302  
     in urine, method, 781  
     urinary, kinds, 773  
 Sulphuric acid, 133, 267, 317, 677  
   conjugating, 276  
   dissociation, 43  
   in conjugations, 277  
   in detoxications, 137, 138  
   solutions, 900  
   standard, 91  
   two-thirds normal, 884  
   ether, 911  
 Sulphydryl, 247  
 Sumner, J. B., 228, 697, 752, 786, 795, 840, 914  
   methanol method, 893  
   method for urinary ammonia, 705  
   test for urinary protid, 752  
   total urinary base method, 785  
 Sunlight, 377, 635  
   effect on foods, 581  
   on metabolism, 624  
 Supercooling, 49  
 Superoxyl, Merck's, 113, 392  
 Suppositories, absorption from, 492  
 Suppuration, 673  
 Suprarenin, 136. Same as *Epinephrin*.  
 Sure, Barnett, 548, 549  
 Surface, body, calories, 606  
   in colloidal phenomena, 95  
   phenomena, 96, 449  
   related to volume in spheres, 95  
   relative increase during subdivision of sphere, 95  
   tension, 110, 111, 112, 462, 466  
   and bile, 111  
   apparatus of du Noüy, 120  
   by stalagmometry, 118  
   Plateau's law, 112

- Suspension in colloidal solutions, cause, 98  
 Suspensoids, 122  
 Sutton, F., 777  
   method for phosphates, 777  
 Swanson, W. W., 729  
 Sweat, 666  
   glands, 345  
 Sweating accessory to excretion, 346  
 Sweeds (turnips), 552  
 Sweetbread, 303  
 Swelling of protid under influence of acid, 430  
 Swimming pools, use of cupric sulphate, 225  
 Sy, A. P., 410  
   extraction flask, 410  
 Sympathetic nervous system, 646  
   system and endocrines, 643  
 Sympathetic-mimetic, 266  
 Synambose, 232  
 Synergy, 499  
 Syntheses, kidney, 667  
 Synthesis, 216  
   artificial, 529  
   dehydration, 130  
   in kidney, 729  
   in liver, 730  
   of foods, 128  
   sugar, 129  
 Synthetic function in man, 537  
 Syphilis, 399, 400, 574, 746  
   controlled by chemistry, 20  
   loss of pigment formation, 344  
 Syringe, Luer, 64, 822  
   record, 64  
 Syrup, maple, reaction, 579
- TABES, 353  
 Table sugar, 149, 166  
 Tachycardia, 645  
 Tagatose, 174  
 Takadiastase, optimal reaction, 909  
 Takeuchi, T., 698  
 Talbot, 609, 613  
 Tallow, 195, 200  
   Reichert-Meißl number, 202  
 Tallqvist, T. W., 383  
   method for quantitative hemoglobin, 383  
 Talose, 173  
 Tank, oxygen, 126  
 Tanner, 250, 548  
 Tannic acid, aqueous suspension, exercise in dialysis, 102  
   effect on gelatin, 304  
   in diazo reaction, 745  
   Plimmer's solution, 900  
   protid precipitant, 227  
   responds to tyrosin test, 236  
   test, 102  
 Tare, 410  
 Tartaric acid, 152, 181, 182  
   optical relations, 171  
 Trartronic acid, 152, 912  
 Taschiro, 399, 584, 672  
 Taste buds, hydriion concentration effect on, 43  
 Taurin, 249, 465  
 Taurocholic acid, 464, 465, 466  
 Tautomerism, 154  
   defined, 164  
 Tea, 327, 432, 534, 618, 708  
   as diuretic, 670  
   caffeine from, 328  
   caloric value, 590  
 Tears, reaction, 579  
 Teeth, 347, 642  
   calcium, 564  
   origin, 27, 348  
 Teffer, 567
- Teichmann, L. T. S., 377  
   crystals, 390  
   test, 377  
 -tem, defined, 230  
 Temperature, body, variations, 671  
   effect on bile, 464  
   normal body, 131  
   of ice-box, 314  
   optimal, burning of lactic acid to maintain, 141  
   outside, and heat production, 617  
   variable in animals, 131  
 Ten Broeck, 182  
 Tendo achillis, 303, 316  
 Tendomucoid, 348, 350  
   test, 350, 351  
 Tendon, 530  
 Tension, normal, CO<sub>2</sub>, 70  
   surface, 110  
 Terpene, 211, 465  
   formula, 212  
 Terpin hydrate, 674  
 Tertiary phosphate, 68  
 Tervart, D. G. C., 820  
 Test, Abderhalden, 235  
   acetic acid for protid in urine, 750  
   achroödextrin, 145  
   acidosis substances in urine, 766  
   Acree-Rosenheim, 307  
   acrolein, 194, 765  
   Adamkiewicz's, 306  
   Adler's, 393  
   albumose, 752  
   aldoses, 164  
   ammonium urate, 713  
   amylopectin, 146  
   Barfoed's, 160, 161  
   basis of protid, 274  
   Benedict's, 167  
   glucid, 156  
   sugar, 760  
   benzaldehyde, 727  
   benzidin, 393  
   hemoglobin, 744  
   Bial's, 761  
   bile-pigment, 471  
   bile-salt, 467  
   biuret, theory, 282  
   blood, 377, 391, 392  
   by benzidin, 113  
   pigment, spectroscopic, 381  
   bromin, 308  
   for pancreatic digestion products, 455, 456  
   calcium, 356  
   calculi, 713  
   carbon monoxid hemoglobin, 381  
   carbonate, 355  
   cellulose, Schweitzer's, 189  
   chlorion, 102, 354  
   cholesterol, Liebermann's, 211  
   Salkowski's, 210  
   chondroitin sulphuric acid, 351  
   Claude Bernard, for pancreatic products, 455  
   clotting time, Howell, 223  
   Wright, 223  
   creatin, 723  
   creatinin, 361, 725  
   cyanic acid, 690  
   cystin, 249  
   Denigès', 237  
   dextrin, 146  
   distinctive for diglucids, 161  
   for monoglucids, 161  
   for starch, 142  
   distinguishing from protid, 142  
   Dunstan's, for glycerol, 764  
   erythroedextrin, 145
- Test, Esbach, 304  
 Exton-Roch for urinary protid, 751  
 fat, 194  
 Fehling's, 145, 150, 155  
 fermentation, 762  
 ferric chlorid aceto-acetic acid, 767  
 foam, 111, 470  
 Folin's, for uric acid in urine, 710  
 Folin-Looney tyrosin quantitative, 267  
 Folin-McEllroy's, 760  
   for albumen, 102  
   for ammonia, 703  
   for bile-pigments, 472  
   for bilirubin in urine, 743  
   for biuret, 690  
   for butter fat, 201  
   for cystin, Folin and Looney, 249  
   for fats by iodine absorption, 195  
   for ferric iron, 102  
   for galactose and lactose, mucic acid, 185  
   for globulin, 229  
   for indican, 746  
   for lactose, 161  
   for maltose, 161  
   for mastic, 102  
   for pancreatic efficiency, 457  
   for pregnancy, 235  
   for tannic acid, 102  
   for tyrosin, 236  
   for urinary protid (albumin), 750  
   for urochromogen, 740  
   Fouchet's, 471  
   fragility, 114  
   gelatin, 304  
   Gerhardt's, 766  
   Gies', 281  
   glucid, 153, 165  
   glucose, Barfoed's, 160  
   distinguishing from lactose, 160, 167  
   in urine, 760  
   glycerol by acrolein, 194  
   glycogen, iodine test, 186  
   glyoxylic acid, 307  
   Gmelin's, 472  
   guaiacum, 392  
   Guenzberg's, 441, 442  
   Hay's, 467  
   for bile-salts, 111  
   heat, for urinary albumin, 750  
   Heller's, 751  
   for egg-white, 102  
   hematoporphyrin, 743  
   hemin, 377  
   hemoglobin, 377, 391, 392, 393  
   spectroscopic, 381  
   hippuric acid, 727  
   Hoffmann's tyrosin, 236  
   homogentisic, 744  
   Hopkins' lactic acid, 372, 444  
   Huppert's, 471, 472  
   hydrochloric acid, 441, 442  
   hypoxanthin, 366  
   indican, 276, 745  
   Jaffé's, 746  
   for creatinin, 361  
   in urine, 725  
   Kastle-Shedd, blood, 394  
   ketoses, 164  
   lactic acid, 372  
   ferric chlorid, 373  
   in gastric secretion, 444  
   Uffelmann's, 445  
   lactose, 160, 167  
 Lange's colloidal gold for cerebrospinal syphilis, 97



- Test, Legal's acetone and Weyl's  
 test, 362  
 indol, 362  
 Liebermann's, 307  
 magnesium, 356  
 Mathews', 167  
 methemoglobin, 382  
 Mette's pepsin, 446  
 Millon's, 236  
 Moerner's, 237  
 Molisch, 165, 166, 318  
 Moore's, 151  
 mucic acid, 151  
   for lactose, 761  
 murexid, 367  
   for uric acid, 710  
 Nessler's, for ammonia, 703  
 nitroprussid, 362  
 Obermayer's, 746  
 Oliver's, 468  
 orcinol for pentose, 163  
 osazone, 145, 761  
 osmic acid test for fat, 194  
 oxypurins, 366  
 paraphenylenediamine, 394  
 pentose, 163  
   Bial's test, 761  
 pepton in urine, 752  
 Pettenkofer's, 468  
 phenol, 546  
 phenolphthalin for blood, 394  
 phenylhydrazine, 761  
 phosphorus, 355  
 phosphomolybdic - phosphotungstic acid for uric acid, 710  
 phosphorus, 336, 355  
 picric acid, 158  
 Piotrovski's. See *Biuret test*.  
 Piria's, 236  
 potassium, 356  
 protidemia in urine, 752  
 prolin, 272  
 protid, 281  
 pseudo-alkalinity in urine, 680  
 purin, 337  
 Robert's, 752  
 Rosenheim's, 307  
 Schlesinger's, 741  
 Schweitzer's, for cellulose, 189  
 Selivanoff, 164, 372, 760  
 sodium, 355  
   cobalti-nitrite for potassium, 356  
 Sorensen's free acidity, 442  
 spectroscopic, for blood, 381  
 for hemoglobin, 381  
 Spiegler's, 752  
 Stokes', for oxyhemoglobin, 381  
 Sullivan's, 249  
 sulphur, 468  
 Sumner's, for urinary protid, 752  
 Teichmann, 377  
 tendomucoid, 350, 351  
 thiophen for lactic acid, 372  
 tolerance, 486  
 Tollens', 162  
 Trommer's, 155  
 trypsin, 457, 458, 459  
 tryptophan, 306, 307  
   Levene-Rouiller, 308  
 tyrosin, negative in gelatin, 305  
 Udranski's, 470, 473  
   foam test, 111  
 Uffelmann's, 373  
 urea, 689  
   as dioxanthylurea, 691  
 urease for urea, 690  
 urinary amino-acids, 731  
 urobilin, 741  
 urobilinogen, 741  
 urochrome, from blood, 382
- Test, uroscopogen, 743  
 van Deen's, 392  
 Weyl's, for creatinin, 362  
 xanthin, 366
- Testes, 627, 661, 662  
 creatin content, 360  
 creatinin, 363  
 dependence upon other organs, 659
- Testicular hormone, 463
- Tetanus, 255  
 effect of magnesium, 565
- Tetany, 255, 359, 639, 643, 648,  
 649, 650, 655, 681  
 and thyroid, 650  
 thyreopriva, 255
- Tethylin, 655
- Tetrahedron, carbon atom  
 model, 172
- Tetramylose, 188
- Tetranucleotid, 325, 534
- Tetrose, 149, 152
- Thannhauser, 474
- Theis, R. C., 796, 809, 838
- Theobromin, 327, 708  
 formula, 329  
 in cocoa-butter, 328
- Theophyllin, 708
- Thermochemistry, 601, 602, 603
- Thermometer, Beckmann's, 47  
 scales, 904
- Thermostat, 56  
 home-made, 231
- Thiele tube, 147, 762
- Thimble, extraction, 410
- Thioalbumose, 232
- Thiocyanate, cuprous, 157  
 for Volhard's method, 900
- Thiophen, 165, 372, 444, 890  
 test for lactic acid, 372
- Thiosulphate decolorizes iodine  
 solutions, 142, 144  
 for acetone determinations, 900
- Thistle-tube, 116
- Thompson-McFadden Commission on pellagra, 628
- Thoracic muscles in lung ventilation, 81
- Thorpe, aim of biochemistry, 20
- Threshold, glucose, 757
- Thrush. See *Sprue*.
- Thudicum, 202, 214, 403
- Thymin, 326, 327
- Thyminotid, 331
- Thymol, 746, 751  
 and tyrosin test, 236  
 blue, 60, 891  
 alkaline range, 60  
 in blood chemistry, 65
- Thymus, 303, 506, 627, 650, 651,  
 660, 661, 662, 712  
 extracts, 463  
 histon, 301  
 persistent, 661
- Thyreoglobulin, 571
- Thyroid, 133, 136, 498, 571, 627,  
 643, 652, 655, 659, 660, 661,  
 662  
 and S. D. A., 553  
 arsenic, 134  
 deficiency, 643  
 disease and uncleanness, 573  
 extract, 463  
 gland, 262  
 iodine, 134
- Thyroidectomy, 573  
 effect on metabolism, 619  
   on specific dynamic action, 553
- Thyroxin, 133, 571, 643, 644,  
 645, 659  
 and specific dynamic action, 553  
 as enzyme, 93, 94  
 effect on metabolism, 619
- Thyroxin formula, 136  
 Kendall's discovery, 23  
 normal amount, 643  
 quantitative relation to metabolism, 136  
 relation to tryptophan, 274  
 synthetically produced, 137
- Tilden, 26
- Tisdall, 566
- Tissot's method, 596
- Tissue enzyme, 461  
 erepsin, 456  
 fat content, 199  
 graphic summary, 402  
 proliferation, 277  
 reaction, 426  
 special chemistry, 342  
 summary of chemistry, 401
- Titanous chlorid, 786
- Titratable acidity, 82
- Titration, 82  
 curve, 42  
 method for non-protid nitrogen of blood, 803  
 of alkali and acid, 90  
 use, 83
- Toast, salt content, 561
- Tolerance, fructose, 167  
 sugar, 504  
 tests, 486
- Tollens, B., 162, 190
- Toluene, 701  
 formula, 231
- Tomato, 546, 631, 641  
 reaction, 579
- Toronto unit of insulin, 502
- Torsion balance, du Noüy's, for surface tension, 120, 121
- Total acidity, gastric, 428, 431,  
 440  
 base in urine, 783  
 nitrogen, 685  
 of protid, 282  
 solids, 683  
 sulphur, 773  
 urinary sulphate, 779  
 method, 780
- Toxemia of pregnancy, 395, 531,  
 811  
 related to blood globulin, 220
- Toxic goiter, 645
- Toxicity and kind of protid product, 233  
 of albumose, 233  
 of phenol, 228  
 of salicylates, 228  
 of salol, 228
- Toxins, 137
- Transfer pipettes, 906
- Transplantation, 653
- Transportation of fat, 487
- Trauma curve of gastric acidity, 444  
 fatty acids in liver following, 513
- Tricalcium phosphate, 352, 567
- Trichloroacetic acid, 505  
 protid precipitant, 226  
 solutions, 900
- Triglycerid, 149, 150
- Triglycerosan, 188, 189
- Trihydroxybenzene, 212
- Trihydroxybutyric acid, 152
- Trihydroxyglutaric acid, 152
- Triketohydrindenhydrate, 234,  
 235
- Trimethylamin, 207, 209
- Tri-methyl-uracil, 546
- Trioleid, 194, 604  
 melting-point, 197
- Trioses, 149, 152
- Tri-oxypurin, 709
- Tripalmitid, 193, 194, 512  
 melting-point, 197
- Tri-peptid, 282



- Triple phosphate crystals in urine, 788
- Tristearid, 194, 512
- melting-point, 197
- Trommer, 155
- test, 155
- Tropics, diet in, 557
- Trypsin, 234, 243, 454, 455, 457, 500, 900
- analysis for, 458
- effect on insulin, 498
- fate, 457
- in feces, 457
- optimal reaction on casein, 909
- on fibrin, 909
- test, 458, 459
- for pancreatic efficiency, 457
- Trypsinogen, 459
- Tryptophan, 275, 301, 305, 311, 315, 454, 456, 500, 533, 538, 745
- and thyroxin, 274
- crystal form, 273
- Folin - Looney quantitative method, 275
- formulae in metabolism, 276
- in albumin, 257
- in globulin, 257
- Levene-Rouiller test, 308
- metabolism, 275
- quantitative determination of Kraus, 308
- separable from tyrosin, 267
- test, 306, 307
- Tsang, 495, 756
- Tube, collodion, 66
- combustion, 126
- preparation of gastric, 436
- Tuberculosis, 269, 557, 564, 647, 650, 652, 673, 674, 723, 740, 742, 744, 806, 835
- cerebrospinal fluid, 399
- Tuberin, iso-electric point, 909
- Tumors, 374, 517
- melanotic, 673
- Tungstic acid, protid precipitant, 227
- Tunicin, 148
- Tuning-forks used to explain polarization, 179
- Tunncliffe, H. E., 339
- Turbidimetry, 769
- Turgidity produced by lactic acid, 141
- Turnbull's blue, 226
- Turnip, 552
- calcium content, 563
- iron content, 568
- Turpentine, 673, 674
- experimental, 901
- Tweed, Harris, cholesterol esters in, 210
- Tyndall phenomenon, 100
- Typhoid fever, 240, 475, 650, 680, 743
- Tyramin, 265, 269
- comparative effect, 270
- formula, 266
- Tyrod, 397
- solution, 397
- Tyrosin, 233, 234, 262, 266, 279, 301, 305, 311, 315, 344, 454, 500, 518, 522, 531, 553, 746
- crystals, 263, 786
- Denigès' test, 237
- 3, 5-di-iodo-, 572
- formula, 236
- in albumin, 257
- in globulin, 257
- iso-electric point, 909
- Moerner's test, 237
- Piria's test, 236
- producing keto-acid, 524
- quantitative test of Folin and Looney, 267
- Tyrosin separable from tryptophan, 267
- test of Folin and Denis, 236
- Tyrosinase, 262, 263, 454
- Tyrranean purple, 367
- UDRANSZKI, L., 111
- foam test, 111, 470, 473
- Uffelmann, J., 373
- reagent, 901
- test, 373
- Ulcers, gastric, relation to acidity, 433
- Ultramicroscope, 99-101, 512
- Ultraviolet light, 141, 548, 634
- and albumin, 221
- Uncompensated acidosis, 69
- Underhill, 535, 582, 789, 841
- Undetermined nitrogen in cerebrospinal and other fluids, 400
- in urine, 734
- Unsaturated acid, plasma, 512
- fats, 195
- fatty acids and lecithin, 204
- Unsaturation, 197, 198
- related to color, 197
- Uracil, 326, 327, 328, 545
- Uranium acetate, 777, 901
- nephritis, reagents, 901
- nitrate, 901
- Urate, 674, 708, 713
- alpha, 709
- and uric acid stones, 713
- beta, 709
- Folin's method of detection in urine, 710
- gravel, 713
- monosodium, 709
- sand, 713
- Urea, 132, 255, 256, 281, 282, 401, 528, 529, 532, 577, 666, 668, 674, 680, 684, 688
- action of nitrous acid, 692
- and histidin, 268
- as conjugated CO<sub>2</sub>, 74
- blood, 797, 802, 803, 805
- methods, 806
- Myers' method, 808
- pathological considerations, 804
- tube used in determinations, 793
- carbamid formula, 689
- clinical significance, 694
- conjugated cyanic acid and ammonia, 697
- cyclic formula, 688
- deamination, 703
- on skin, 347
- decomposition, 689
- diuretic, 698, 901
- effect of diet, 695
- estimation, 692
- from amino-acids, 696
- from ammonium chlorid, 697
- functional test for kidney efficiency, 697
- hypobromite method, 693
- hypophalogenite reaction, 693
- in blood, 798
- in cerebrospinal fluid, 400
- in perspiration, 346
- Marshall's method, 701
- molecular nitrogen from, 692
- nitrate, 691
- nitrogen, proportion of total nitrogen, 685
- pathological variations in urinary, 695
- precipitation test as dioxanthyl-urea, 691
- preparation, 692
- radicle in purin, 328
- Urea salts, 688
- solubility, 689
- synthesis, 695, 696
- tests, 689
- therapeutic uses, 697
- tube, Watson-White, 807
- unsaturated nature, 538
- urinary, normal amount, 695
- quantitative methods, 698
- Ureometer, 694
- Urease, 690, 698, 701, 733
- Folin's solution, 887
- gastric, 428
- method of action, 698
- solution, preparation, 901
- table of time of action, 702
- test for urea, 690
- Uremia, 346, 672
- cerebrospinal fluid, 400
- Ureometer. See *Ureometer*.
- Urethan, 901
- Uric acid, 132, 154, 322, 327, 328, 332, 333, 364, 367, 401, 418, 534, 684, 708
- absorption from blood by tissues, 810
- acidity of, 709
- and diet, 711
- and exercise, 712
- and high protid diet, 712
- and nitrogen ingestion, 712
- and wash-out effect, 712
- as conjugated CO<sub>2</sub>, 74
- Benedict's direct method, 714
- method for urine, 714
- work, 19
- blood, 797, 805, 809
- in gout, 810
- methods, 811
- variations in different states, 810
- calculi, 713
- constancy in urinary, 708
- crystalline shape, 709
- daily excretion, 711
- destruction, 736, 810
- detection in urine, 710
- effect of water intake, 712
- excretion into saliva, 335
- fate in body, 334
- Folin-Benedict quantitative method, 713
- Folin's method for urine by centrifuge, 715
- formaldehyde, 812
- high excretion, 712
- in blood, 365, 798
- in cerebrospinal fluid, 400
- in perspiration, 335, 346
- injection, 736
- low excretion, 712
- pathological variations in urinary, 712
- physiological variations in excretion, 711
- precipitants, 709
- preparation from urine, 711
- reducing power, 709
- salts, 708
- solubility, 709
- solution, Benedict - Hitchcock solution, 869
- tests, 710
- urinary, constancy in, 708
- Morris' method, 716
- variations in output, 711
- Uricolytic index, 736
- Urine, 132, 269, 274, 322, 334, 370, 374, 377, 379, 382, 471, 497, 529, 533, 534, 568, 576, 577, 579, 655, 665, 666, 667
- aceton, Bigwood-Ladd test, 767
- method of reporting, 767

- Urine, acetyl-acetic acid, 766  
 acid, 674  
 acid-base factors on reaction, 677  
 acidity in terms of reagent acid, 677  
 of night, 676  
 albumin, 686, 747  
 differentiated from mucin, 738  
 sensitivity of tests, 747  
 tests, 751  
 albuminuria, 747  
 albumoses, 748  
 test, 752  
 alkaline, 674, 678, 679, 680  
 reaction, how acquired, 680  
 tide, 675  
 alkaptonuria, 264, 746  
 allantoin, 735  
 quantitative method, 737  
 amino-acids, 731, 748  
 Folin's method, 731  
 ammonia, 668, 674, 676, 678, 702, 703  
 by Malfatti's method, 707  
 clinical significance, 703  
 decreased output, 703  
 effect of water drinking, 704  
 from urea, 703  
 in children, 721  
 increased elimination, 703  
 morning excretion, 703  
 on fat diet, 704  
 quantitative methods, 704  
 Sumner's method, 705  
 test, 703  
 ammonium sulphate standard  
 for analysis, 701  
 urate, 788  
 appearance, 674  
 artificial alteration of reaction, 680  
 Bence-Jones protid, 749  
 Benedict's reagent for sulphur, 780  
 sugar test, 760  
 betahydroxybutyric acid, 770  
 Bial's test for pentose, 761  
 calcium, 774, 782  
 calories from nitrogen, 605  
 chlorid, method of Seelman, 774  
 clinical value of studies, 668  
 of volume, 671  
 collection, 843  
 color, 672, 745  
 concentrated, 672  
 conservation of alkali reserve  
 by ammonia, 703  
 constancy in uric acid excretion, 708  
 creatin, 360, 717  
 in children, 721  
 creatinin, 667, 717  
 constancy of excretion, 718  
 in children, 721  
 cystin, 248  
 crystals, 787  
 cystinuric, odor, 531  
 daily excretion, 711  
 day, 671, 672  
 decreased volume, 671  
 definition, 667  
 dextrose. See *Glucose*.  
 di-acetic acid, 766  
 different protids giving different reaction, 677  
 effect of clothing on volume, 670  
 of factors on volume, 670  
 of water intake on uric acid, 712  
 Esbach's method, 753
- Urine, ethereal sulphates, 261, 276, 773, 779  
 method, 781  
 excretion of acid in fetus, 679  
 factors modifying reactions, 677  
 fasting, effect on reaction, 677  
 fat, 764  
 method of detection, 764  
 fermentation test, 762  
 fixation of specific gravity, 681  
 Folin and Berglund's method  
 for normal glucids, 757  
 Folin and Denis' method for  
 protid, 753  
 Folin-McEllroy's sugar test, 760  
 Folin's macro method for urea, 702  
 uric acid method by centrifuge, 715  
 general characteristics, 668  
 globulin, 747  
 glucids, 755  
 glucuronates, 763  
 glycin, 240  
 guanidin in, 255  
 hemoglobin, 744  
 Henriques-Sørensen's amino-acid method, 733  
 hippuric acid, 727  
 Kingbury and Swanson's  
 method, 729  
 homogenetic acid, 744  
 hydrogen ion concentration,  
 method of Felton, 675  
 iminazol derivatives, 745  
 in diabetes insipidus, 658  
 index of acid excretion, 678  
 indican, test, 745  
 inorganic salts, 674  
 substances, 684, 772, 774  
 function, 773  
 sulphate, 779  
 method, 781  
 sulphur, 773  
 iron, 570, 774, 782  
 Jaffé's creatinin test, 725  
 reaction, 667  
 test for indican, 746  
 lactose, 756  
 leucin in, at high altitudes, 240  
 lipids, 763  
 lipidtens, 763  
 loss of base, 703  
 magnesium, 774, 782  
 manner of reporting aceto-acetic acid, 767  
 Marsh's method for iodine, 782  
 Marshall's urease method for  
 urea, 701  
 maximal acidity, 675  
 alkalinity, 675  
 melanin, test, 746  
 mercury titration method for  
 acetone, 768  
 methods for inorganic substances, 774  
 of removal of salicylates, 766  
 methyl-guanidin and guanidin  
 in, 359  
 mineral substances, 684  
 modification due to evolution, 684  
 morning, 740  
 Morris' uric acid method, 716  
 mucic acid test, 761  
 mucin, 674, 738  
 neutral sulphur, 773, 779  
 method, 781  
 night, 671, 672, 720  
 nitrogen, 131, 683  
 equivalence of antiketogenic  
 substance, 524  
 loss, 552
- Urine nitrogen, partition, 688  
 nitrogenous excretion in different climates, 685  
 non-conjugated phosphates, 777  
 normal glucids, 756, 820  
 determination, 757  
 volume, 672  
 nubecula, 674, 738  
 nucleo-albumin, 738  
 Obermayer's test, 746  
 odor, 531, 673, 674  
 of herbivores, 674  
 osazone test for sugar, 761  
 oxidation products of fats, 765  
 pathological variations in urea, 695  
 in volume, 671  
 of ammonia, 703  
 of uric acid excretion, 712  
 pentose, 756  
 pepton, 748  
 test, 752  
 pH, 39, 676  
 phenylhydrazin test, 761  
 phosphate, 674, 750  
 Bell-Doisy method, 776  
 physical characteristics, 669  
 pigments, 379, 739, 751  
 polyphenols, 710  
 potassium, 774, 782  
 protid in, 747  
 bedside test, 751  
 Kjeldahl method, 755  
 nephelometric method, 753  
 origin, 747  
 test, 750, 751  
 protiditens, 748  
 pseudo-alkalinity, 680  
 purins, 708  
 quantitative method for fat, 765  
 tests for protid, 752  
 Quick's method for total protid, 752  
 reaction, 39, 579, 674, 680, 909  
 acidity partitioned among  
 several factors, 679  
 after bath, 678  
 and exercise, 678  
 compared to that of distilled  
 water, 676  
 drop-plate method, 675  
 during day, 677  
 method of Felton, 675  
 of children, 679  
 on certain diets, 677  
 under different physiologic  
 states, 678  
 pathologic states, 679  
 relation between serum globulin and serum albumin  
 in albuminuria, 748  
 to blood, 668  
 Roberts' test, 752  
 seasonal variations in specific  
 gravity, 681  
 sediment, 674  
 Selivanoff's ketose test, 760  
 sodium, 774, 782  
 chlorid, 561, 772  
 specific gravity, 398, 667, 681  
 after water drinking, 682  
 and volume, relation, 681  
 calculation, 683  
 hourly variations, 681  
 in children, 721  
 method, 682  
 of summer and winter, 669  
 pathological variations, 681  
 stellar crystals, calcium phosphate, 787  
 substances in perspiration, 346

- Urine, sugar in normal, diagnostic value, 757  
sulphur, 779  
suppression, 671  
taste, 673  
test for acidosis substances, 766  
  for bilirubin, 743  
  for creatin, 723  
  for creatinin, 725  
  for mucin, 738  
  for protditemns, 752  
theories of secretion, 667  
thymol in, 751  
titration figure for acidity, 676  
total acetone method of Van Slyke, 767  
  base, 783  
  by method of Greenwald, 785  
  by Sumner's method, 785  
excretion, water, 346  
nitrogen, 685  
  Folin's macro-method, 686  
  micro-method, 687  
  in children, 721  
  methods, 685  
  phosphates, 778  
  solids, 683  
  sulphate, 779  
  method, 780  
triple phosphate crystals, 788  
turbidity, 674, 749  
tyrosin crystals, 786  
undetermined nitrogen, 734  
  in children, 721  
urate, 674, 708  
  method of detection of, Folin, 710  
urea, 668, 688, 692  
  effect of diet, 695  
  estimation, 692  
  following ammonium chlorid ingestion, 697  
  from conjugated cyanic acid and ammonia, 697  
  in children, 721  
  normal amount, 695  
  quantitative methods, 698  
uric acid, 708  
  and diet, 711  
  and high protid diet, 712  
  and nitrogen ingestion, 712  
  Benedict's direct method, 714  
  calculi, 713  
  clinical interest, 711  
  crystalline shape, 709  
  detection, 710  
  effect of exercise, 712  
  on Benedict's solution, 709  
  on Fehling's solution, 709  
  excretion over long periods, 711  
  Folin-Benedict quantitative method, 713  
  high excretion, 712  
  in children, 721  
  lactam and lactim, 709  
  low excretion, 712  
  murexid test, 710  
  physiological variations in excretion, 711  
  precipitants, 709  
  prepared from, 711  
  solubility, 709  
  tests, 710  
  variations in output, 711  
urobilin, 740  
uro-erythrin, test, 742  
Van Slyke's method for free amino-acids, 733
- Urine, Van Slyke's method for total amino-acids in, 732  
variations in specific gravity of day and night, 681  
Volhard's chlorid method, 776  
volume, 669, 671  
  in children, 721  
  wash-out effect on uric acid, 712  
Uriniferous tubules, reaction, 675  
Urinoid, 673  
Urinometer, 682  
  standardizing, 682  
Urobilin, 470, 739-741, 751  
  test, 741  
Urobilinogen, 470, 471  
  spectrum test, 741  
  test, 741  
Urochrome, 269, 379, 382, 739, 742, 751  
  distinguishing test, 382  
Urochromogen, 269, 740  
  test, 740  
Uro-erythrin, 711, 742  
  test, 742  
Uromelanin, 742  
Urorosein, 743  
Uroroseinogen, 743  
  test, 743  
Urotropin, 83, 680  
Uterus, 266, 375  
  effect of amins, 270  
  involution, 456, 720  
Utilization of digested substances, 494
- VACUUM tube for collection of blood, 791  
Vagina, secretions, 345  
Vagus nerve and calcium, 564  
Valence, 34, 430  
  and absorption, 483  
  effect on coagulation, 222  
Valencies, auxiliary, 35  
Valerianic acid, 255  
Valeric acid, 521  
Valin, 241, 301, 305, 311, 315  
  crystal form, 241  
  in albumin, 257  
  in casein, 242  
  in globulin, 257  
  occurrence, 242  
Van Creveld, S., 507  
van Deen, I., 392  
  test for blood, 392  
Vanillin, 441, 889  
  and tyrosin test, 236  
  reaction with tryptophan, 308  
Van Slyke, 19, 23, 65, 77, 92, 420, 680, 693, 708, 731, 820, 914  
  acetone solution, 864  
  acidosis method, calculation, 73  
  amino-nitrogen apparatus, 292  
  diagrams, 283  
  method, 287, 291  
  reagents, 905  
  tables, 902  
  apparatus for CO<sub>2</sub> combining power, 71  
  blood chlorid method for small amounts, 836  
  coefficient, 805  
  method for alkali reserve, 70  
  for amino-nitrogen in blood, 818  
  for blood chlorid, 836  
  for free amino-acids in urine, 733  
  for total acetone substances in urine, 767  
  for urinary amino-acids, 732  
  illustrated, 76
- Van Slyke precision hemoglobin method, apparatus, 385, 386  
protid precipitants, reference, 227  
quantitative method for hemoglobin, 384  
solutions for oxygen determinations, 901  
Abderhalden reaction, 235  
van 't Hoff, 171  
Vascular system, 375  
Vasoconstriction by epinephrin, 136, 137  
Vasomotor action affected by methyl-purins, 327  
Vasotomy, 653  
Veal, 533  
Veeder, B. S., 721, 722  
Vegetable, 631  
  ash, reaction, 574  
  caloric value, 591  
  diet, toxic substances in, 138  
  iron, 568  
  overcooked, 581  
  toxicity when cooked in copper vessels, 225  
Venipuncture, 791, 792  
  method, 63  
Venous blood, reaction, 69  
Vernier, 905  
Vernix caseosa, 345  
Vernon, 480  
Veronal, 377, 673  
Vertebrae, cervical, fracture in delivery, 353  
Verworm, 494  
Vicilin, iso-electric point, 909  
Vill, distribution, 482  
Vinegar, natural, reaction, 579  
  synthetic, reaction, 579  
Violet rays, 127  
Viscosity and iso-electric point, 104  
Vision, limits of unaided, 98  
Visscher, M. B., 507  
Vitamin, 133, 274, 322, 404, 533, 540, 580, 623  
  A, 541, 547, 550, 567, 629, 631, 633  
    chemical nature, 543  
    amount necessary to protect, 551  
    and endocrines, 643  
    and internal secretions, 627  
  B, 327, 543, 550, 551, 624, 625  
    amount protective, 546, 920  
    chemical nature, 554  
  C, 546, 551, 552, 642  
    chemical nature, 547  
    properties, 546  
  deficiency, experimental, 854  
  D, 547, 551, 552, 563, 564  
    chemical nature, 548  
  E, 548, 551  
    of Sure, 548  
  effect of agents, 551  
  reproductive, chemical characteristics, 549  
  tables of, 919  
  "X," 547, 633  
Vitellin, 337, 416  
Vitreous humor, 400, 401  
  reaction, 579  
Voit, 23, 583  
Volhard's chlorid method, 836  
  reagents, 905  
  halogen method, 783  
  method for chlorid, 775, 776  
Volhard-Harvey reagents, 898  
Voltmeter, used in hydron determinations, 54  
Volume and surface relation, 95  
  cell, 835  
  converted to standard, 296

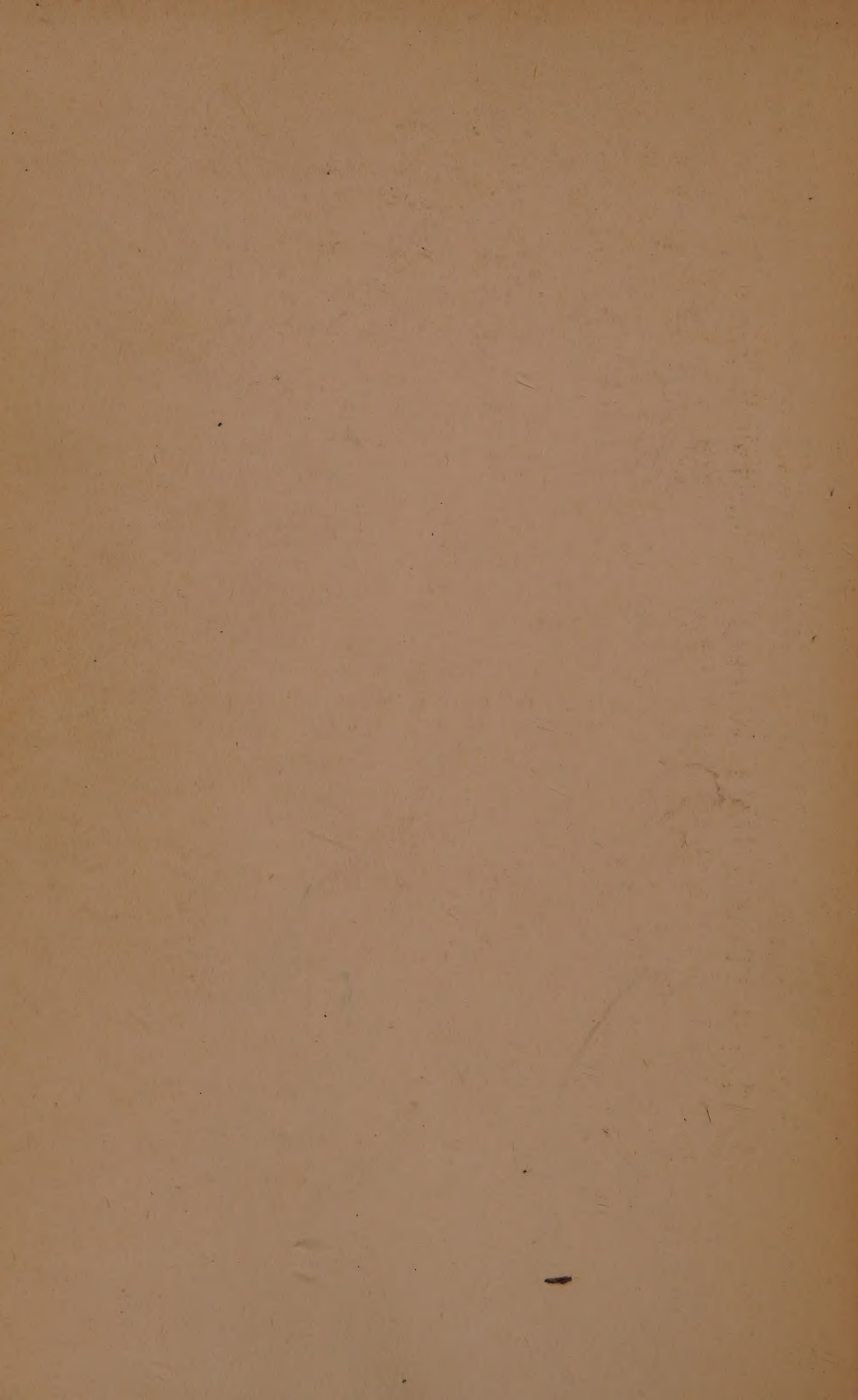
- Volume of gas related to temperature and pressure, 73  
 Vomitus, color, 471  
 von Fuert, 344, 494, 535
- WAGNER, 393  
 Walker, 689  
 Walking, effect on metabolism, 618  
 Wash-bottle, 84, 126  
 Wash-out effect on uric acid, 712  
 Wassermann tubes, 114  
 Water absorber, 126  
 absorption, 492  
 and iso-electric point, 104  
 in stomach, 481  
 amount daily, 346  
 and fat, 375  
 as acid, 43  
 balance, 346  
 condensed to sugar, 128  
 conductivity, 36  
 drinking, 704  
 and uric acid excretion, 712  
 and urine volume, 671  
 effect of drinking on digestion, 425  
 excretion, 132, 666  
 hydron concentration, 37  
 in tooth, 348  
 iodine content, 645, 646  
 ionization, 35, 36, 37, 193  
 mineral, reaction, 579  
 proportion of  $H^+$  and  $OH^-$ , 39  
 pure, 36  
 reaction, 579, 909  
 relations to colloidal states, 122  
 to fat metabolism, 557  
 rôle in muscle contraction, 140  
 weight at different temperatures, 908  
 Water-oil phase boundary, 110  
 Water-soluble B, 543, 920  
 Water-vapor, 594  
 Watson, T., 807  
 Watson-White urea tube, 807  
 Watt-hour, 584  
 Wax, 193  
 ear, 345  
 Waxy degeneration, 374  
 Weak acids, 42  
 Weber-Fechner law, 670  
 Webster, R. W., 789  
 Weed, L. H., 403  
 Weighing bottles, 89  
 directions, 89
- Weight, effect of diet, 556  
 increase by diet, 556  
 Weights, analytical, 86  
 Wells, 341, 535, 747  
 Werner, A., auxiliary valencies, 35  
 Werner, E. A., 689, 789  
 Weston element, 53  
 Wet beriberi, 625  
 Weyl, 362  
 test for creatinin, 362  
 Wheat, 252, 538  
 caloric value, 590  
 flour, 309, 312  
 iron content, 568  
 germ oil, 549  
 iodine content, 646  
 phosphoric acid in, 418  
 protid, 312  
 starch grains, 143  
 Wheatstone bridge, 45  
 Whey, 405  
 Whipple, 403, 480, 739  
 White blood corpuscles, 376  
 rats, supplied, 855  
 White, H. L., 807  
 Whitehorn, J. C., 837  
 "White-line" of rickets, 636  
 Wichowski, 711, 735  
 Wiener, B. S., 509  
 Wijs, H., 195  
 ionization constant, 40  
 method for fats, 195  
 solution, 905  
 Wilder, 617  
 Wildiers, 548, 549  
 Wilensky, 829, 830  
 Willard Gibbs' principle, 110  
 Williams, 327, 544, 550  
 Willstaetter, 378  
 Wilson, D. W., 92, 750  
 Wilson, E. B., 322  
 Wilson, J. A. charges on colloidal particles, 99  
 Winter, L. B., 507  
 Winter and Smith, 507  
 Witte's pepton, 233, 270, 488, 895  
 Woehler's synthesis of urea, 688, 689  
 Wohl and Neuberg, 151  
 Wolf, C. G. L., 820  
 Wolny, 201  
 Wolter's method for iron in urine, 782  
 Woodman, 143  
 Woodyatt, 755  
 Wool-fat, 193  
 cholesterol, 210
- Work, muscle affecting metabolism, 617  
 unit, 584  
 Worsnop, B. L., reference, 119  
 Wound healing, 838  
 Wright, 223, 765  
 Wright's method for clotting time, 223  
 Wu, 157, 230, 798, 824  
 Wurster-red, 394  
 Wurtz, 26
- XANTHIN, 327, 332, 333, 364, 368, 534, 708  
 oxadase, 332, 333, 534  
 oxidation, 367  
 preparation, 366  
 test, 366, 367  
 Xanthin-silver nitrate, 365  
 Xanthone, 691  
 Xanthophyl, 379  
 Xanthohydrol, 691  
 X-Chromosome, 322  
 Xerophthalmia, 541, 543, 630, 633  
 Xerosis, 631  
 x-ray analysis, 35  
 of matter, 33  
 "X"-vitamin, 547  
 Xylose, 162, 497, 500, 509
- YEAST, 167, 171, 174, 245, 544, 546, 627  
 fermentation, 762  
 iso-electric point, 909  
 -yde, suffix, 140  
 Yen, D., 230  
 Yolk, egg, pigment, 379  
 source of iron, 568  
 Youngburg, 163  
 Yudkin, A. M., 631
- ZeE<sub>N</sub>, 257, 258, 274, 310, 311, 533, 538, 539  
 Zeitschrift für physiologische Chemie, 25  
 Zentmeyer, W., 664  
 Zeolite, 704  
 Zinc, 134, 473  
 behavior in solution of ions, 51  
 electrode, 104  
 sulphate in electrode solution, 104  
 Zucker, 634, 637, 681  
 Zymogen, 447, 454  
 Zymolyte, 422













3 2044 045 135 761

## NORMALS

## URINE:

Total nitrogen	15	grams per 24 hours		
Urea nitrogen	12.5	"	"	"
Ammonia nitrogen	0.5	gram	"	"
Creatinin as such	1.0	"	"	"
Coefficient (adults) (Shaffer)	9.5	mgs. per kilo body weight		
Uric acid as such	0.6	gram per 24 hours (endogenous)		
Hippuric acid nitrogen	0.10	"	"	"
Allantoin nitrogen	0.012	"	"	"
Amino-nitrogen	0.15	"	"	"
"Normal" sugar	2.5	grams	"	"
Sodium chlorid	15	"	"	"
Phosphoric acid	2	"	"	"
Sulphur (total) as SO <sub>3</sub>	3	"	"	"
Inorganic	2.7	"	"	"
Ethereal	0.25	gram	"	"
"Neutral"	0.16	"	"	"
Sodium as Na <sub>2</sub> O	4	grams	"	"
Potassium as K <sub>2</sub> O	2	"	"	"
Calcium	0.7	gram	"	"
Magnesium	0.3	"	"	"
Iron	0.01	"	"	"
Acid-base balance (fasting)	425 mls.	decinormal negative base balance		
estimated for twenty-four hours.				

## BLOOD:

Total nitrogen	2.5	gs. per 100 mls. whole blood		
Non-protid nitrogen	0.025	g. per	"	"
Urea nitrogen	0.012	"	"	"
Ammonia nitrogen	Insignificant			
Uric acid as such	0.003	g. per 100 mls. whole blood		
"Creatinin" as such	0.0015	"	"	"
Amino-nitrogen	0.012	"	"	"
Creatin as such	0.006	"	"	"
Blood-sugar	0.1	"	"	"
Cholesterol	0.140	"	"	"
Lipids	0.650	"	"	"
Lecithin	0.325	"	"	"
Chlorid as NaCl	0.5	"	"	"
Phosphorus, inorganic	0.005	"	"	"
Sodium	0.325	"	"	"
Calcium	0.01	"	"	"
CO <sub>2</sub> combining power	65 mls.	CO <sub>2</sub> per 100 mls. blood-plasma.		
Blood reaction:				

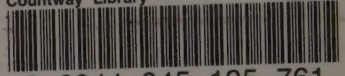
Arterial..... pH 7.25

Venous..... pH 7.35



5.A.164  
Applied biochemistry, 1925  
Countway Library

AIV8969



3 2044 045 135 761